



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 1 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

For purposes of reference, all Proclamations, Government Notices, General Notices and Board Notices published are included in the following table of contents which thus forms a weekly index. Let yourself be guided by the gazette numbers in the righthand column:

### Weekly Index

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>GOVERNMENT NOTICE</b>		
<b>Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Department of</b>		
R.482 Agricultural Pests Act (36/1983) :Importation of Controlled Goods without a Permit	11	41622
<b>Higher Education and Training, Department of</b>		
477 National Qualifications Framework Act (67/2008) :Guidelines on Strategy and Priorities for the National Qualifications Framework (NQF), 2018/19 .....	12	41621
<b>Independent Communications Authority of South Africa</b>		
488 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act (13/2000) :Machine Related Service Migration .....	4	41628
<b>Labour, Department of</b>		
R.483 Occupational Health and Safety Act (85/1993), as amended :Incorporation of Safety Standards into Driven Machinery Regulations, 2015 .....	13	41622
R.484 Occupational Health and Safety Act (85/1993), as amended :Incorporation of safety standards into Lift, Escalator and Passengers Conveyor Regulations, 2010 .	14	41622
<b>Non-Governmental Organization</b>		
R.485 Wet op Drankprodukte (60/1989) :Wyn van Oorsprong-skema: Wysiging .....	15	41622
R.486 Wet op Drankprodukte (60/1989) :Regulasies: Wysiging .....	18	41622
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of</b>		
478 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Portion 9, Van Wyksvlei 407 JT .....	17	41621
479 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) :The remaining extent of Portion 1 of the farm 275 JS .....	19	41621
<b>Social Development, Department of</b>		
R.487 South African Social Security Agency Act (9/2004) :Government agency set up to ensure the efficient and effective management, administration and payment of social assistance .....	42	41622

Alle Proklamasies, Goewermentskennisgewings, Algemene Kennisgewings en Raadskennisgewings gepubliseer, word vir verwysingsdoeleindes in die volgende Inhoudopgawe ingesluit wat dus weeklikse indeks voorstel. Laat uoud deur die Koerantnommers in die regterhandse kolom lei:

### Weeklikse Indeks

No.	Bladsy No.	Koerant No.
<b>GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS</b>		
<b>Landbou, Bosbou en Visserye, Departement van</b>		
R.482 Agricultural Pests Act (36/1983) :Importation of Controlled Goods without a Permit	11	41622
<b>Hoër Onderwys en Opleiding, Departement van</b>		
477 National Qualifications Framework Act (67/2008) :Guidelines on Strategy and Priorities for the National Qualifications Framework (NQF), 2018/19 .....	12	41621
<b>Onafhanklike Kommunikasie-owerheid van Suid-Afrika</b>		
488 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act (13/2000) :Machine Related Service Migration .....	4	41628
<b>Arbeid, Departement van</b>		
R.483 Occupational Health and Safety Act (85/1993), as amended :Incorporation of Safety Standards into Driven Machinery Regulations, 2015 .....	13	41622
R.484 Occupational Health and Safety Act (85/1993), as amended :Incorporation of safety standards into Lift, Escalator and Passengers Conveyor Regulations, 2010 .	14	41622
<b>Nie-Regeringsorganisasie</b>		
R.485 Wet op Drankprodukte (60/1989) :Wyn van Oorsprong-skema: Wysiging .....	15	41622
R.486 Wet op Drankprodukte (60/1989) :Regulasies: Wysiging .....	18	41622
<b>Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>		
478 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Portion 9, Van Wyksvlei 407 JT .....	17	41621
479 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) :The remaining extent of Portion 1 of the farm 275 JS .....	19	41621
<b>Maatskaplike Ontwikkeling, Departement van</b>		
R.487 South African Social Security Agency Act (9/2004) :Government agency set up to ensure the efficient and effective management, administration and payment of social assistance .....	42	41622

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>South African Revenue Service</b>			<b>Suid-Afrikaanse Inkomstediens</b>		
480 Tax Administration Act (28/2011) :Incidents of Non-compliance by a person in terms of Section 210 (2) of the Act that are subject to a fixed amount penalty in accordance with Sections 210 (1) and 211 of the Act .....	21	41621	480 Wet op Belastingadministrasie (28/2011) :Gevalle van Nienakoming deur 'n persoon ingevolge Artikel 210(2) van die Wet wat onderhewig is aan 'n vastebedrag-boete ooreenkomstig Artikels 210 (1) en 211 van die Wet .....	22	41621
<b>Transport, Department of</b>			<b>Vervoer, Departement van</b>		
481 National Railway Safety Regulator Act (16/2002) :Determination of permit fees under section 23 (2) (a) of the National Railway Safety Regulator Act.....	23	41621	481 National Railway Safety Regulator Act (16/2002) :Determination of permit fees under section 23 (2) (a) of the National Railway Safety Regulator Act.....	23	41621
<b>GENERAL NOTICE</b>			<b>ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS</b>		
<b>Board / Raad</b>			<b>Board / Raad</b>		
234 Marketing of Agricultural Products Act (47/1996) :Invitation to Directly Affected Groups in the Grain Industry to Forward Comments Regarding the Request from the South African Grain Information Service (SAGIS).....	31	41621	234 Marketing of Agricultural Products Act (47/1996) :Invitation to Directly Affected Groups in the Grain Industry to Forward Comments Regarding the Request from the South African Grain Information Service (SAGIS).....	31	41621
<b>Economic Development Department</b>			<b>Ekonomiese Ontwikkeling Departement</b>		
235 Competition Act (89/1998), as amended :Notification of complaint referral .....	33	41621	235 Competition Act (89/1998), as amended :Notification of complaint referral .....	33	41621
236 Competition Tribunal :Notification of Decision to approve merger .....	35	41621	236 Competition Tribunal :Notification of Decision to approve merger .....	35	41621
<b>Electoral Commission</b>			<b>Verkiegingskommissie</b>		
247 Local Government: Municipal Electoral Act (27/2000) :Official List of Voting Stations ..	4	41627	247 Local Government: Municipal Electoral Act (27/2000) :Official List of Voting Stations .....	4	41627
<b>Labour, Department of</b>			<b>Arbeid, Departement van</b>		
237 Labour Relations Act (66/1995), as amended :Essential Services Committee – Section (71) investigation.....	36	41621	237 Labour Relations Act (66/1995), as amended :Essential Services Committee – Section (71) investigation.....	36	41621
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of</b>			<b>Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>		
238 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) :Erf 8273, Cape Town .....	38	41621	238 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) :Erf 8273, Cape Town .....	38	41621
239 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994), as amended :Erf 8819, in District Six, City of Cape Town .....	39	41621	239 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994), as amended :Erf 8819, in District Six, City of Cape Town .....	39	41621
240 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Erf 124984, portion of Erf 82511, Retreat .....	40	41621	240 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Erf 124984, portion of Erf 82511, Retreat .....	40	41621
<b>South African Reserve Bank</b>			<b>Suid-Afrikaanse Reserwebank</b>		
245 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933) :Notice and Order of Forfeiture .....	4	41625	245 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933) :Notice and Order of Forfeiture .....	4	41625
<b>Trade and Industry, Department of</b>			<b>Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van</b>		
246 International Trade Administration Commission :Customs Tariff Applications: List 04/2018 .....	4	41626	246 International Trade Administration Commission :Customs Tariff Applications: List 04/2018 .....	4	41626

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>Transport, Department of</b>			<b>Vervoer, Departement van</b>		
241 Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy (CMTP) :Small Harbours Development: Announcement and invitation to complete questionnaire .....	41	41621	241 Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy (CMTP) :Small Harbours Development: Announcement and invitation to complete questionnaire .....	41	41621
242 International Air Service Act (60/1993) :Grant/Amendment of International Air Service License .....	42	41621	242 International Air Service Act (60/1993) :Grant/Amendment of International Air Service License .....	42	41621
<b>BOARD NOTICE</b>			<b>RAADSKENNISGEWINGS</b>		
56 Landscape Architectural Profession Act (45/2000) :For Implementation April 2018 Procedure for the Nomination of Council Members.....	43	41621	56 Landscape Architectural Profession Act (45/2000) :For Implementation April 2018 Procedure for the Nomination of Council Members.....	43	41621
57 Landscape Architectural Profession Act (45/2000) :For Implementation 1 April 2018, Rates 2018/2019 .....	44	41621	57 Landscape Architectural Profession Act (45/2000) :For Implementation 1 April 2018, Rates 2018/2019 .....	44	41621
58 Allied Health Professions Act (63/1982) as amended :Inquiry by the Professional Board for Chiropractic and Osteopathy (PBCO) into the unprofessional conduct1 of a registered practitioner, in accordance with section 23 and 24 of the Act.....	45	41621	58 Allied Health Professions Act (63/1982) as amended :Inquiry by the Professional Board for Chiropractic and Osteopathy (PBCO) into the unprofessional conduct1 of a registered practitioner, in accordance with section 23 and 24 of the Act.....	45	41621
59 The Pharmacy Act (53/1974) :Competency Standards for Pharmacists .....	47	41621	59 The Pharmacy Act (53/1974) :Competency Standards for Pharmacists.....	47	41621
60 Mine Health and Safety Act (29/1996) :Notice to Invite Nominations to Serve on the Board of the Mining Qualifications Authority .....	93	41621	60 Mine Health and Safety Act (29/1996) :Notice to Invite Nominations to Serve on the Board of the Mining Qualifications Authority .....	93	41621

**IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

**THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS WILL NOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY ERRORS THAT MIGHT OCCUR DUE TO THE SUBMISSION OF INCOMPLETE / INCORRECT / ILLEGIBLE COPY.**

**No FUTURE QUERIES WILL BE HANDLED IN CONNECTION WITH THE ABOVE.**

**Contents**

<i>No.</i>		<i>Gazette No.</i>	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>PROCLAMATIONS • PROKLAMASIES</b>			
13	Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act (74/1996): Referral of matters to existing Special Investigating Unit and Special Tribunal: Eastern Cape.....	41650	15
13	Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekenhede en Spesiale Tribunale (74/1996): Verwysing van Aangeleenthede na Bestaande Spesiale Ondersoekenhede: Oos-Kaap.....	41650	18
14	Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act (74/1996): Referral of Matters to Existing Special Investigating Unit and Special Tribunal .....	41650	21
14	Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekenhede en Spesiale Tribunale (74/1996): Verwysing van Aangeleenthede na Bestaande Spesiale Ondersoekenhede en Spesiale Tribunaal .....	41650	24
15	Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act (74/1996): Amendment of Proclamation No. R. 8 of 2017 .....	41650	27
15	Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekenhede en Spesiale Tribunale (74/1996): Wysiging van Proklamasie No. R. 8 van 2017 .....	41650	30
16	Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act (74/1996): Referral of Matters to Existing Special Investigating Unit.....	41650	33
16	Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekenhede en Spesiale Tribunale (74/1996): Verwysing van Aangeleenthede na Bestaande Spesiale Ondersoekenhede.....	41650	36
<b>GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENSKENNISGEWINGS</b>			
<b>Environmental Affairs, Department of/ Omgewingsake, Departement van</b>			
516	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (39/2004): Notice of Intention to Amend the List of Activities which result in Atmospheric Emission which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage .....	41650	39
517	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (39/2004): Draft National Dust Control Regulations.....	41650	54
518	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (39/2004): Notice of intention to amend the 2012 National Framework for Air Quality Management in the Republic of South Africa .....	41650	61
<b>Health, Department of/ Gesondheid, Departement van</b>			
519	Dental Technicians Act (19/1979): Regulations regarding the Registration and Training of Student Dental Technicians and Student Dental Technologies.....	41650	174
<b>Home Affairs, Department of/ Binnelandse Sake, Departement van</b>			
520	Births and Deaths Registration Act (51/1992): Alteration of Surnames.....	41650	193
521	Births and Deaths Registration Act (51/1992): Alteration of forenames .....	41650	210
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of/ Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>			
522	Restitution of the Land Rights Act (22/1994): Portion 35, Goedgedacht 228 IR .....	41650	219
523	Restitution of the Land Rights Act (22/1994): The remaining extent of Portion 46 (Now known as Dullstroom Ext 5) .....	41650	221
524	Restitution of the Land Rights Act (22/1994): The Remaining extent of Portion 1, Boschmansfontein 182 IS.....	41650	223
525	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Various Properties.....	41650	225
526	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended: The Remaining extent of Portion 2, Welgevonden 272 IR..	41650	226
527	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Portion of an unregistered and unsurveyed land in Cabazana Location Mabunzi Village in Ward 26, in Mount Ayliff, Umzimvubu Local Municipality, Alfred Ndzo District Municipality .....	41650	232
528	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Erf 64 & 65, Central Port Elizabeth .....	41650	233
529	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Strenpantain (registered as Streepfontein), Fam No. 237, in Burgersdorp in Gariep Local Municipality, Joe Gqabi District Municipality .....	41650	234
530	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended: Amendment of Gazette 925 of 2003 dated 28th March 2003 as contained in Government Gazette Number 24600 in respect of the Farm Ullapool No. 493 commonly known as Cicerha Farm situated in Elliot, Sakhisizwe Local Municipality under Chris Hani District, Eastern Cape Province ..	41650	235
531	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994 as amended): Lot No. 1967, 1968, 1969 and 2061, Pimville .....	41650	236

## GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS

**Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Department of/ Landbou, Bosbou en Visserye, Departement van**

265	Marketing of Agricultural Products Act (47/1996) (MAP Act): Macadamia Industry: Application for the continuation of statutory measures .....	41650	237
-----	--	-------	-----

**Independent Communications Authority of South Africa/ Onafhanklike Kommunikasie-owerheid van Suid-Afrika**

266	Electronic Communications Act (36/2005): Hereby issues a notice regarding the Final National Radio Frequency Plan 2018 .....	41650	239
-----	--	-------	-----

**Non-Governmental Organization/ Nie-Regeringsorganisasie**

267	Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990): Inspection Fees .....	41650	506
-----	--	-------	-----

**Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of/ Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van**

268	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Remainder Erf 988, Somon's Town .....	41650	507
-----	---	-------	-----

269	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Various Private Properties in the Town of Caledon and Erf 4031, Caledon .....	41650	508
-----	---	-------	-----

270	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Erf 8604, Zonnebloem, Cape Town.....	41650	509
-----	--	-------	-----

271	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994), as amended: Erf 528, Simon's Town .....	41650	510
-----	---	-------	-----

272	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Erf 1096, Simon's Town .....	41650	511
-----	--	-------	-----

273	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994), as amended: Erf 531, Simon's Town .....	41650	514
-----	---	-------	-----

274	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994), as amended: Erf 57957, Cape Town at Claremont.....	41650	515
-----	--	-------	-----

**South African Reserve Bank/ Suid-Afrikaanse Reserwebank**

275	Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended: Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Exchange Control Regulation 22B .....	41650	516
-----	--	-------	-----

276	Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended: Notice and Order of Forfeiture .....	41650	517
-----	---	-------	-----

277	Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended: Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Leadmore Trading Enterprise (Pty) Limited, registration number 2015/042631/07(the "Respondent") .....	41650	521
-----	--	-------	-----

278	Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended: Notice of Order of Forfeiture: Adam Commodities Distributors (Pty) Limited, registration number 2013/097731/07 (the "Respondent") .....	41650	522
-----	--	-------	-----

**Tourism, Department of/ Toerisme, Departement van**

279	Tourism Act (3/2014): Publication for Comments: The National Tourism Grading System for Tourism .....	41650	523
-----	---	-------	-----

**Trade and Industry, Department of/ Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van**

280	Standards Act (8/2008): Standards Matters .....	41650	904
-----	---	-------	-----

281	Standards Act, 2008: Standards Matters.....	41650	907
-----	---	-------	-----

282	Anti-Dumping Regulations (ADR) of the International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (the Commission): Sunset Review Publication - 2018.....	41650	910
-----	---	-------	-----

**Transport, Department of/ Vervoer, Departement van**

283	Civil Aviation Act (13/2009): Invitation by the Minister of Transport for Application or Nomination for Appointment to the Civil Aviation Appeal Committee .....	41650	915
-----	--	-------	-----

## BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS

68	Engineering Profession Act (46/2000) ("The Act"): Before the Disciplinary Tribunal of the Engineering Council of South Africa .....	41650	916
----	---	-------	-----

69	Board of the Road Accident Fund (56/1996): Road Accident Fund Regulations, 2008 .....	41650	917
----	---	-------	-----

70	Financial Markets Act (19/2012): Financial Sector Conduct Authority (FSCA): Proposed amendments to the A2X Trading Rules: Publication for comment.....	41650	918
----	--	-------	-----

71	Skills Development Act (97/1998): Nominations for Members to Serve on the Chamber Committees of Safety and Security SETA (SASSETA) .....	41650	919
----	--	-------	-----

# Closing times for **ORDINARY WEEKLY** **2018** **GOVERNMENT GAZETTE**

*The closing time is 15:00 sharp on the following days:*

- **28 December 2017**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **05 January 2018**
- **05 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **12 January 2018**
- **12 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **19 January 2018**
- **19 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **26 January 2018**
- **26 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 February 2018**
- **02 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **09 February 2018**
- **09 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **16 February 2018**
- **16 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **23 February 2018**
- **23 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 March 2018**
- **02 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **09 March 2018**
- **09 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **16 March 2018**
- **15 March**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **23 March 2018**
- **22 March**, Thursday for the issue of Thursday **29 March 2018**
- **28 March**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **06 April 2018**
- **06 April**, Friday for the issue of Friday **13 April 2018**
- **13 April**, Friday for the issue of Friday **20 April 2018**
- **19 April**, Thursday for the issue of Thursday **26 April 2018**
- **25 April**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **04 May 2018**
- **04 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **11 May 2018**
- **11 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **18 May 2018**
- **18 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **25 May 2018**
- **25 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **01 June 2018**
- **01 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **08 June 2018**
- **08 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **15 June 2018**
- **15 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **22 June 2018**
- **22 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **29 June 2018**
- **29 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **06 July 2018**
- **06 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **13 July 2018**
- **13 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **20 July 2018**
- **20 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **27 July 2018**
- **27 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **03 August 2018**
- **02 August**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **10 August 2018**
- **10 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **17 August 2018**
- **17 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **24 August 2018**
- **24 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **31 August 2018**
- **31 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **07 September 2018**
- **07 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **14 September 2018**
- **14 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **21 September 2018**
- **20 September**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **28 September 2018**
- **28 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **05 October 2018**
- **05 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **12 October 2018**
- **12 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **19 October 2018**
- **19 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **26 October 2018**
- **26 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 November 2018**
- **02 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **09 November 2018**
- **09 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **16 November 2018**
- **16 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **23 November 2018**
- **23 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **30 November 2018**
- **30 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **07 December 2018**
- **07 December**, Friday for the issue of Friday **14 December 2018**
- **13 December**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **21 December 2018**
- **19 December**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **28 December 2018**

# LIST OF TARIFF RATES FOR PUBLICATION OF NOTICES

**COMMENCEMENT: 1 APRIL 2018**

## NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL

Notice sizes for National, Provincial & Tender gazettes 1/4, 2/4, 3/4, 4/4 per page. Notices submitted will be charged at R1008.80 per full page, pro-rated based on the above categories.

Pricing for National, Provincial - Variable Priced Notices		
Notice Type	Page Space	New Price (R)
Ordinary National, Provincial	1/4 - Quarter Page	252.20
Ordinary National, Provincial	2/4 - Half Page	504.40
Ordinary National, Provincial	3/4 - Three Quarter Page	756.60
Ordinary National, Provincial	4/4 - Full Page	1008.80

## EXTRA-ORDINARY

All Extra-ordinary National and Provincial gazette notices are non-standard notices and attract a variable price based on the number of pages submitted.

The pricing structure for National and Provincial notices which are submitted as **Extra ordinary submissions** will be charged at **R3026.32** per page.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

The **Government Printing Works (GPW)** has established rules for submitting notices in line with its electronic notice processing system, which requires the use of electronic *Adobe Forms*. Please ensure that you adhere to these guidelines when completing and submitting your notice submission.

### CLOSING TIMES FOR ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICES

1. The *Government Gazette* and *Government Tender Bulletin* are weekly publications that are published on Fridays and the closing time for the acceptance of notices is strictly applied according to the scheduled time for each gazette.
2. Please refer to the Submission Notice Deadline schedule in the table below. This schedule is also published online on the Government Printing works website [www.gpwnonline.co.za](http://www.gpwnonline.co.za)

All re-submissions will be subject to the standard cut-off times.

**All notices received after the closing time will be rejected.**

Government Gazette Type	Publication Frequency	Publication Date	Submission Deadline	Cancellations Deadline
National Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Regulation Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00, to be published the following Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Petrol Price Gazette	As required	First Wednesday of the month	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Road Carrier Permits	Weekly	Friday	Thursday 15h00, to be published the following Friday	3 days prior to publication
Unclaimed Monies (justice, labour or lawyers)	January / As required 2 per year	Any	15 January / As required	3 days prior to publication
Parliament (acts, white paper, green paper)	As required	Any		3 days prior to publication
Manuals	As required	Any	None	None
State of Budget (National Treasury)	Monthly	Any	7 days prior to publication	3 days prior to publication
Legal Gazettes A, B and C	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Tender Bulletin	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Gauteng	Weekly	Wednesday	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
Eastern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Northern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
North West	Weekly	Tuesday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
KwaZulu-Natal	Weekly	Thursday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Limpopo	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Mpumalanga	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Gauteng Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	Wednesday before the First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
Northern Cape Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
National Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
Mpumalanga Liquor License Gazette	2 per month	Second & Fourth Friday	One week before	3 days prior to publication

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

### EXTRAORDINARY GAZETTES

3. *Extraordinary Gazettes* can have only one publication date. If multiple publications of an *Extraordinary Gazette* are required, a separate Z95/Z95Prov *Adobe* Forms for each publication date must be submitted.

### NOTICE SUBMISSION PROCESS

4. Download the latest *Adobe* form, for the relevant notice to be placed, from the **Government Printing Works** website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za).
5. The *Adobe* form needs to be completed electronically using *Adobe Acrobat / Acrobat Reader*. Only electronically completed *Adobe* forms will be accepted. No printed, handwritten and/or scanned *Adobe* forms will be accepted.
6. The completed electronic *Adobe* form has to be submitted via email to [submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za). The form needs to be submitted in its original electronic *Adobe* format to enable the system to extract the completed information from the form for placement in the publication.
7. Every notice submitted **must** be accompanied by an official **GPW** quotation. This must be obtained from the *eGazette* Contact Centre.
8. Each notice submission should be sent as a single email. The email **must** contain **all documentation relating to a particular notice submission**.
  - 8.1. Each of the following documents must be attached to the email as a separate attachment:
    - 8.1.1. An electronically completed *Adobe* form, specific to the type of notice that is to be placed.
      - 8.1.1.1. For *National Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* notices, the notices must be accompanied by an electronic Z95 or Z95Prov *Adobe* form
      - 8.1.1.2. The notice content (body copy) **MUST** be a separate attachment.
    - 8.1.2. A copy of the official **Government Printing Works** quotation you received for your notice .  
(Please see *Quotation* section below for further details)
    - 8.1.3. A valid and legible Proof of Payment / Purchase Order: **Government Printing Works** account customer must include a copy of their Purchase Order. **Non-Government Printing Works** account customer needs to submit the proof of payment for the notice
    - 8.1.4. Where separate notice content is applicable (Z95, Z95 Prov and TForm 3, it should **also** be attached as a separate attachment. (Please see the *Copy Section* below, for the specifications).
    - 8.1.5. Any additional notice information if applicable.
9. The electronic *Adobe* form will be taken as the primary source for the notice information to be published. Instructions that are on the email body or covering letter that contradicts the notice form content will not be considered. The information submitted on the electronic *Adobe* form will be published as-is.
10. To avoid duplicated publication of the same notice and double billing, Please submit your notice **ONLY ONCE**.
11. Notices brought to **GPW** by "walk-in" customers on electronic media can only be submitted in *Adobe* electronic form format. All "walk-in" customers with notices that are not on electronic *Adobe* forms will be routed to the Contact Centre where they will be assisted to complete the forms in the required format.
12. Should a customer submit a bulk submission of hard copy notices delivered by a messenger on behalf of any organisation e.g. newspaper publisher, the messenger will be referred back to the sender as the submission does not adhere to the submission rules.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****QUOTATIONS**

13. Quotations are valid until the next tariff change.
  - 13.1. **Take note:** GPW's annual tariff increase takes place on **1 April** therefore any quotations issued, accepted and submitted for publication up to **31 March** will keep the old tariff. For notices to be published from 1 April, a quotation must be obtained from **GPW** with the new tariffs. Where a tariff increase is implemented during the year, **GPW** endeavours to provide customers with 30 days' notice of such changes.
14. Each quotation has a unique number.
15. Form Content notices must be emailed to the *eGazette* Contact Centre for a quotation.
  - 15.1. The *Adobe* form supplied is uploaded by the Contact Centre Agent and the system automatically calculates the cost of your notice based on the layout/format of the content supplied.
  - 15.2. It is critical that these *Adobe* Forms are completed correctly and adhere to the guidelines as stipulated by **GPW**.
16. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO GPW ACCOUNT HOLDERS:**
  - 16.1. **GPW** Account Customers must provide a valid **GPW** account number to obtain a quotation.
  - 16.2. Accounts for **GPW** account customers **must** be active with sufficient credit to transact with **GPW** to submit notices.
    - 16.2.1. If you are unsure about or need to resolve the status of your account, please contact the **GPW** Finance Department prior to submitting your notices. (If the account status is not resolved prior to submission of your notice, the notice will be failed during the process).
17. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO CASH CUSTOMERS:**
  - 17.1. Cash customers doing **bulk payments** must use a **single email address** in order to use the **same proof of payment** for submitting multiple notices.
18. The responsibility lies with you, the customer, to ensure that the payment made for your notice(s) to be published is sufficient to cover the cost of the notice(s).
19. Each quotation will be associated with one proof of payment / purchase order / cash receipt.
  - 19.1. This means that **the quotation number can only be used once to make a payment.**

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****COPY (SEPARATE NOTICE CONTENT DOCUMENT)**

20. Where the copy is part of a separate attachment document for Z95, Z95Prov and TForm03
- 20.1. Copy of notices must be supplied in a separate document and may not constitute part of any covering letter, purchase order, proof of payment or other attached documents.
- The content document should contain only one notice. (You may include the different translations of the same notice in the same document).
- 20.2. The notice should be set on an A4 page, with margins and fonts set as follows:
- Page size = A4 Portrait with page margins: Top = 40mm, LH/RH = 16mm, Bottom = 40mm;  
Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;
- Page size = A4 Landscape with page margins: Top = 16mm, LH/RH = 40mm, Bottom = 16mm;  
Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;

**CANCELLATIONS**

21. Cancellation of notice submissions are accepted by **GPW** according to the deadlines stated in the table above in point 2. Non-compliance to these deadlines will result in your request being failed. Please pay special attention to the different deadlines for each gazette. Please note that any notices cancelled after the cancellation deadline will be published and charged at full cost.
22. Requests for cancellation must be sent by the original sender of the notice and must accompanied by the relevant notice reference number (N-) in the email body.

**AMENDMENTS TO NOTICES**

23. With effect from 01 October 2015, **GPW** will not longer accept amendments to notices. The cancellation process will need to be followed according to the deadline and a new notice submitted thereafter for the next available publication date.

**REJECTIONS**

24. All notices not meeting the submission rules will be rejected to the customer to be corrected and resubmitted. Assistance will be available through the Contact Centre should help be required when completing the forms. (012-748 6200 or email [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)). Reasons for rejections include the following:
- 24.1. Incorrectly completed forms and notices submitted in the wrong format, will be rejected.
- 24.2. Any notice submissions not on the correct *Adobe* electronic form, will be rejected.
- 24.3. Any notice submissions not accompanied by the proof of payment / purchase order will be rejected and the notice will not be processed.
- 24.4. Any submissions or re-submissions that miss the submission cut-off times will be rejected to the customer. The Notice needs to be re-submitted with a new publication date.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****APPROVAL OF NOTICES**

25. Any notices other than legal notices are subject to the approval of the Government Printer, who may refuse acceptance or further publication of any notice.
26. No amendments will be accepted in respect to separate notice content that was sent with a Z95 or Z95Prov notice submissions. The copy of notice in layout format (previously known as proof-out) is only provided where requested, for Advertiser to see the notice in final Gazette layout. Should they find that the information submitted was incorrect, they should request for a notice cancellation and resubmit the corrected notice, subject to standard submission deadlines. The cancellation is also subject to the stages in the publishing process, i.e. If cancellation is received when production (printing process) has commenced, then the notice cannot be cancelled.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTER INDEMNIFIED AGAINST LIABILITY**

27. The Government Printer will assume no liability in respect of—
  - 27.1. any delay in the publication of a notice or publication of such notice on any date other than that stipulated by the advertiser;
  - 27.2. erroneous classification of a notice, or the placement of such notice in any section or under any heading other than the section or heading stipulated by the advertiser;
  - 27.3. any editing, revision, omission, typographical errors or errors resulting from faint or indistinct copy.

**LIABILITY OF ADVERTISER**

28. Advertisers will be held liable for any compensation and costs arising from any action which may be instituted against the Government Printer in consequence of the publication of any notice.

**CUSTOMER INQUIRIES**

Many of our customers request immediate feedback/confirmation of notice placement in the gazette from our Contact Centre once they have submitted their notice – While **GPW** deems it one of their highest priorities and responsibilities to provide customers with this requested feedback and the best service at all times, we are only able to do so once we have started processing your notice submission.

**GPW** has a 2-working day turnaround time for processing notices received according to the business rules and deadline submissions.

Please keep this in mind when making inquiries about your notice submission at the Contact Centre.

29. Requests for information, quotations and inquiries must be sent to the Contact Centre ONLY.
30. Requests for Quotations (RFQs) should be received by the Contact Centre at least **2 working days** before the submission deadline for that specific publication.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

### PAYMENT OF COST

31. The Request for Quotation for placement of the notice should be sent to the Gazette Contact Centre as indicated above, prior to submission of notice for advertising.
32. Payment should then be made, or Purchase Order prepared based on the received quotation, prior to the submission of the notice for advertising as these documents i.e. proof of payment or Purchase order will be required as part of the notice submission, as indicated earlier.
33. Every proof of payment must have a valid **GPW** quotation number as a reference on the proof of payment document.
34. Where there is any doubt about the cost of publication of a notice, and in the case of copy, an enquiry, accompanied by the relevant copy, should be addressed to the Gazette Contact Centre, **Government Printing Works**, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001 email: [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za) before publication.
35. Overpayment resulting from miscalculation on the part of the advertiser of the cost of publication of a notice will not be refunded, unless the advertiser furnishes adequate reasons why such miscalculation occurred. In the event of underpayments, the difference will be recovered from the advertiser, and future notice(s) will not be published until such time as the full cost of such publication has been duly paid in cash or electronic funds transfer into the **Government Printing Works** banking account.
36. In the event of a notice being cancelled, a refund will be made only if no cost regarding the placing of the notice has been incurred by the **Government Printing Works**.
37. The **Government Printing Works** reserves the right to levy an additional charge in cases where notices, the cost of which has been calculated in accordance with the List of Fixed Tariff Rates, are subsequently found to be excessively lengthy or to contain overmuch or complicated tabulation.

### PROOF OF PUBLICATION

38. Copies of any of the *Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* can be downloaded from the **Government Printing Works** website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za) free of charge, should a proof of publication be required.
39. Printed copies may be ordered from the Publications department at the ruling price. The **Government Printing Works** will assume no liability for any failure to post or for any delay in despatching of such *Government Gazette*(s).

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS CONTACT INFORMATION

**Physical Address:**
**Government Printing Works**

149 Bosman Street

Pretoria

**Postal Address:**

Private Bag X85

Pretoria

0001

**GPW Banking Details:**
**Bank:** ABSA Bosman Street

**Account No.:** 405 7114 016

**Branch Code:** 632-005

**For Gazette and Notice submissions:** Gazette Submissions:

**For queries and quotations, contact:** Gazette Contact Centre:

**E-mail:** [submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za)
**E-mail:** [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)
**Tel:** 012-748 6200

**Contact person for subscribers:** Mrs M. Toka:

**E-mail:** [subscriptions@gpw.gov.za](mailto:subscriptions@gpw.gov.za)
**Tel:** 012-748-6066 / 6060 / 6058

**Fax:** 012-323-9574

---

**PROCLAMATIONS • PROKLAMASIES**

---

**PROCLAMATION NO. 13 OF 2018**

**by the  
PRESIDENT of the REPUBLIC of SOUTH AFRICA**

**SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNITS AND SPECIAL TRIBUNALS ACT, 1996 (ACT NO. 74 OF 1996): REFERRAL OF MATTERS TO EXISTING SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNIT AND SPECIAL TRIBUNAL**

WHEREAS allegations as contemplated in section 2(2) of the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act No. 74 of 1996) (hereinafter referred to as the "Act"), have been made in respect of the affairs of the Department of Provincial Planning and Treasury of the Eastern Cape, Eastern Cape Development Corporation, Eastern Cape Department of Safety and Liaison, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, Buffalo City Metropolitan Municipality, King Sabata Dalindyebo Local Municipality, OR Tambo District Municipality and Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (hereinafter collectively referred to as "the Institutions");

AND WHEREAS the Institutions or the State may have suffered losses that may be recovered;

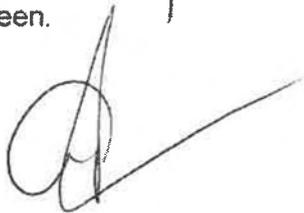
AND WHEREAS I deem it necessary that the said allegations should be investigated and civil proceedings emanating from such investigation should be adjudicated upon;

NOW, THEREFORE, I hereby, under section 2(1) of the Act, refer the matters mentioned in the Schedule, in respect of the State Institutions, for investigation to the Special Investigating Unit established by Proclamation No. R. 118 of 31 July 2001 and determine that, for the purposes of the investigation of the matters, the terms of reference of the Special Investigating Unit are to investigate as contemplated in the Act, any—

- (a) serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of the Institutions;
- (b) improper or unlawful conduct by employees of the Institutions;
- (c) unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property;
- (d) unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice having a bearing upon State property;
- (e) intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property;
- (f) offence referred to in Part 1 to 4, or section 17, 20 or 21 (in so far as it relates to the aforementioned offences) of Chapter 2 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act No. 12 of 2004), and which offences were committed in connection with the affairs of the Institutions; or
- (g) unlawful or improper conduct by any person, which has caused or may cause serious harm to the interests of the public or any category thereof,

which have taken place between 5 December 2013 and the date of publication of this Proclamation or which took place prior to 5 December 2013 or after the date of publication of this Proclamation, but is relevant to, connected with, incidental or ancillary to the matters mentioned in the Schedule or involve the same persons, entities or contracts investigated under authority of this Proclamation, and to exercise or perform all the functions and powers assigned to or conferred upon the said Special Investigating Unit by the Act, including recovery of any losses suffered by the Institutions or the State, in relation to the said matters in the Schedule.

Given under my Hand and the Seal of the Republic of South Africa at Johannesburg this 13 day of May Two thousand and eighteen.



**President**

By Order of the President-in-Cabinet:



**Minister of the Cabinet**

### Schedule

1. Maladministration in the affairs of the Department of Provincial Planning and Treasury of the Eastern Cape and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation in relation to the allocation of funds to be used for the funeral of former President Mandela and any related unauthorised, irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred by any of the Institutions or the State.
  
2. The procurement of, or contracting for goods, works or services by the Institutions in relation to the funeral of former President Nelson Mandela and payments made in respect thereof in a manner that was—
  - (a) not fair, competitive, transparent, equitable or cost-effective; or
  - (b) contrary to applicable-
    - (i) legislation,
    - (ii) manuals, guidelines, circulars, practice notes or instructions issued by the National Treasury or the relevant Provincial Treasury; or
    - (iii) manuals, policies, procedures, prescripts, instructions or practices of or applicable to the respective organs of state; or
  - (c) conducted or facilitated by or through the unlawful, irregular or improper intervention of officials or employees of the Institutions,and related unauthorised, irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred by any of the Institutions or the State.

**PROKLAMASIE NO. 13 VAN 2018****van die  
PRESIDENT van die REPUBLIEK van SUID-AFRIKA****WET OP SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEDE EN SPESIALE TRIBUNALE, 1996  
(WET NO. 74 VAN 1996): VERWYSING VAN AANGELEENTHEDE NA  
BESTAANDE SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEID**

AANGESIEN bewerings soos beoog in artikel 2(2) van die Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekenehede en Spesiale Tribunale, 1996 (Wet No. 74 van 1996) (hierna na verwys as die "Wet"), gemaak is in verband met die aangeleenthede van die Departement van Provinsiale Beplanning en Tesourie van die Oos-Kaap, Oos-Kaapse Ontwikkelings Korporasie, Oos-Kaapse Departement van Veiligheid en Kommunikasie, Oos-Kaapse Parke en Toerisme Agentskap, Buffalo City Metropolitaanse Munisipaliteit, King Sabata Dalindyebo Plaaslike Munisipaliteit, OR Tambo Distriks Munisipaliteit en Nelson Mandela Metropolitaanse Munisipaliteit (hierna na gesamentlik verwys as "die Instellings");

EN AANGESIEN die Instellings of die Staat verliese gely het wat verhaal kan word;

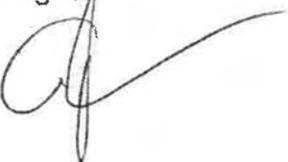
EN AANGESIEN ek dit nodig ag dat gemelde bewerings ondersoek en siviele geskille voortspruitend uit sodanige ondersoek bereg moet word;

DERHALWE verwys ek hierby, kragtens artikel 2(1) van die Wet, die aangeleenthede in die Bylae vermeld, ten opsigte van die Instellings, vir ondersoek na die Spesiale Ondersoekenehede ingestel by Proklamasie No. R. 118 van 31 Julie 2001 en bepaal dat, vir die doeleindes van die ondersoek van die aangeleenthede, die opdrag van die Spesiale Ondersoekenehede is om soos beoog in gemelde Wet, ondersoek te doen na enige beweerde—

- (a) ernstige wanadministrasie in verband met die aangeleenthede van die Instellings;
- (b) onbehoorlike of onregmatige optrede deur werknemers van die Instellings;
- (c) onregmatige bewilliging of besteding van publieke geld of eiendom;
- (d) onwettige, onreëlmatige of nie-goedgekeurde verkrygende handeling, transaksie, maatreël of praktyk wat op Staatseiendom betrekking het;
- (e) opsetlike of nalatige verlies van publieke geld of skade aan publieke eiendom;
- (f) misdryf bedoel in Dele 1 tot 4, of artikel 17, 20 of 21 (vir sover dit op voornoemde misdrywe betrekking het) van Hoofstuk 2 van die Wet op die Voorkoming en Bestryding van Korrupte Bedrywighede, 2004 (Wet No. 12 van 2004), en welke misdrywe gepleeg is in verband met die sake van die Instellings; of
- (g) onwettige of onbehoorlike optrede deur enige persoon wat ernstige benadeling vir die belange van die publiek of enige kategorie daarvan veroorsaak het of kan veroorsaak,

wat plaasgevind het tussen 5 Desember 2013 en die datum van publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie of wat plaasgevind het voor 5 Desember 2013 of na die datum van publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie, wat relevant is tot, verband hou met, insidenteel of bykomstig is tot, die aangeleenthede vermeld in die Bylae of wat dieselfde persone, entiteite of kontrakte betrek wat ondersoek word kragtens die volmag verleen deur hierdie Proklamasie, en om al die werksaamhede en bevoegdhede wat deur die Wet aan die gemelde Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid toegewys of opgedra is, uit te oefen of te verrig in verband met die genoemde aangeleenthede in die Bylae, insluitend die verhaaf van enige verliese wat deur die Instellings of die Staat gely is.

Gegee onder my Hand en die Seël van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika te Johannesburg  
op hede die .....13.....dag van .....Mei..... Twee  
duisend-en-agtien.

President 

Op las van die President-in-Kabinet:

  
Minister van die Kabinet

**BYLAE**

1. Wanadministrasie in die aangeleenthede van die Departement van Provinsiale Beplanning en Tesourie van die Oos-Kaap en die Oos-Kaapse Ontwikkelings-korporasie ten opsigte van die toekenning van fondse vir die gebruik vir die begrafnis van voormalige President Nelson Mandela en enige verwante ongemagtigde, onreëlmatige of vrugtelose en verkwiste uitgawes wat deur enige van die Instansies of die Staat opgedoen was.
  
2. Die aanskaffing van, of kontraktering van goedere, werke of dienste deur die Instellings in verband met die begrafnis van voormalige President Nelson Mandela en betalings wat gemaak is op 'n wyse wat—
  - (a) nie regverdig, mededingend, deursigtig, billik of koste-effektief was nie;
  - (b) teenstrydig was met toepaslike –
    - (i) wetgewing;
    - (ii) handleidings, riglyne, omsendskrywes, praktyknotas of instruksies wat deur die Nasionale Tesourie of relevante Plaaslike Tesourie uitgevaardig is; of
    - (iii) handleidings, beleid, prosedures, voorskrifte, instruksies of praktyke van of wat op die betrokke Instellings van toepassing is;
  - (c) gedoen of gefasiliteer is deur die onregmatige, onreëlmatige of onbehoorlike ingryping van beamptes of werknemers van die Instellings, en verwante ongemagtigde, onreëlmatige of vrugtelose en verkwiste uitgawes wat deur die Instansies of die Staat opgedoen is.

**PROCLAMATION NO. 14 OF 2018**

**by the  
PRESIDENT of the REPUBLIC of SOUTH AFRICA**

**SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNITS AND SPECIAL TRIBUNALS ACT, 1996 (ACT NO. 74 OF 1996): REFERRAL OF MATTERS TO EXISTING SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNIT AND SPECIAL TRIBUNAL**

WHEREAS allegations as contemplated in section 2(2) of the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act No. 74 of 1996) (hereinafter referred to as the "Act"), have been made in respect of the affairs of the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport (hereinafter referred to as "the Department");

AND WHEREAS the State or the Department suffered losses that may be recovered;

AND WHEREAS I deem it necessary that the said allegations should be investigated and civil proceedings emanating from such investigation should be adjudicated upon;

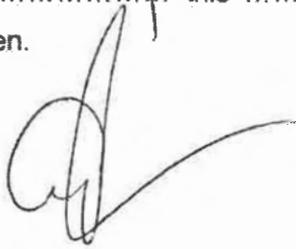
NOW, THEREFORE, I hereby, under section 2(1) of the Act, and after consultation with the Premier of the KwaZulu-Natal Province, refer the matters mentioned in the Schedule in respect of the Department, for investigation to the Special Investigating Unit established by Proclamation No. R. 118 of 31 July 2001 and determine that, for the purposes of the investigation of the matters, the terms of reference of the Special Investigating Unit are to investigate as contemplated in the Act, any alleged—

- (a) serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of the Department;
- (b) improper or unlawful conduct by employees or officials of the Department;
- (c) unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property;
- (d) unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice having a bearing upon State property;
- (e) intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property;

- (f) offence referred to in Parts 1 to 4, or section 17, 20 or 21 (in so far as it relates to the aforementioned offences) of Chapter 2 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act No. 12 of 2004), and which offences were committed in connection with the affairs of the Department; or
- (g) unlawful or improper conduct by any person, which has caused or may cause serious harm to the interests of the public or any category thereof,

which took place between 1 February 2005 and the date of publication of this Proclamation or which took place prior to 1 February 2005 or after the date of publication of this Proclamation, but is relevant to, connected with, incidental or ancillary to the matters mentioned in the Schedule or involve the same persons, entities or contracts investigated under authority of this Proclamation, and to exercise or perform all the functions and powers assigned to or conferred upon the said Special Investigating Unit by the Act, including the recovery of any losses suffered by the State or the Department, in relation to the said matters in the Schedule.

Given under my Hand and the Seal of the Republic of South Africa at Johannesburg this 13 day of May Two thousand and eighteen.



**President**

By Order of the President-in-Cabinet:



**Minister of the Cabinet**

**SCHEDULE**

1. The consolidation and disposal of—
  - (a) Portion 56 of 36 of Erf 348 Verulam and Portion 1 of Erf 347 Verulam (consolidated into Erf 10626 Verulam);
  - (b) Portion 1 of Erf 6673 Pinetown, Erf 6672 Pinetown, Portion 1 of Erf 6671 Pinetown, Portion 1 of Erf 6670 Pinetown (Portion 1 of Erf 6669 Pinetown), Portion 0 of Erf 6671 Pinetown, Portion 1 of 6668 Pinetown and Portion 1 of 6255 (Extension 59) Pinetown (consolidated into Erf 30660 Pinetown);
  - (c) Portion 79 of Farm No 937 of the Farm Zeekoegat; and
  - (d) Portion 246 of Farm No 1570 Lot 44, Ethekwini,by the Department, which properties belonged to or were under the control of the State or the Department, in a manner that was—
  - (i) not fair, equitable, transparent, competitive or cost-effective;
  - (ii) contrary to applicable—
    - (aa) legislation;
    - (bb) manuals, guidelines, circulars, practice notes or instructions issued by the National Treasury or the relevant Provincial Treasury; or
    - (cc) manuals, policies, procedures, prescripts, instructions or practices of or applicable to the Department;
  - (iii) conducted by or facilitated through the improper or unlawful conduct of employees or officials of the Department to corruptly or unduly benefit themselves or others; or
  - (iv) fraudulent,and any related unauthorised, irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred by the Department.
  
2. The failure by the Department to collect rent in terms of a lease agreement which was concluded between the Department and a third party in respect of the leasing of Erf 10626 Verulam.
  
3. Corruption, irregularities, malpractices or maladministration in the affairs of the Department relating to the matters referred to in paragraphs 1 and 2 of this Schedule, including the causes of such corruption, irregularities, malpractices or maladministration and any losses, damages or actual or potential prejudice which the Department or the State may have suffered.

**PROKLAMASIE NO. 14 VAN 2018**  
**van die**  
**PRESIDENT van die REPUBLIEK van SUID-AFRIKA**

**WET OP SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEDE EN SPESIALE TRIBUNALE, 1996**  
**(WET NO. 74 VAN 1996): VERWYSING VAN AANGELEENTHEDE NA**  
**BESTAANDE SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEID EN SPESIALE TRIBUNAAL**

AANGESIEN bewerings soos beoog in artikel 2(2) van die Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekeenhede en Spesiale Tribunale, 1996 (Wet No. 74 van 1996) (hierna na verwys as die "Wet"), gemaak is in verband met die aangeleentheid van die KwaZulu-Natal se Departement van Vervoer (hierna na verwys as "die Departement");

EN AANGESIEN die Staat of die Departement moontlike verliese gely het wat verhaal kan word;

EN AANGESIEN ek dit nodig ag dat gemelde bewerings ondersoek en siviele geskille voortspruitend uit sodanige ondersoek bereg moet word;

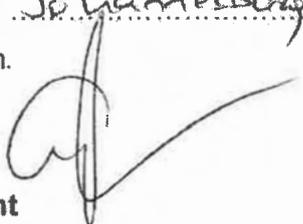
DERHALWE verwys ek hierby, kragtens artikel 2(1) van die Wet, na oorleg met die Premier van die KwaZulu-Natal Provinsie, die aangeleentheid in die Bylae vermeld ten opsigte van die Departement, vir ondersoek na die Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid ingestel by Proklamasie No. R. 118 van 31 Julie 2001 en bepaal dat, vir die doeleindes van die ondersoek van die aangeleentheid, dit die opdrag van die Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid is om soos beoog in gemelde Wet, ondersoek te doen na enige beweerde—

- (a) ernstige wanadministrasie in verband met die aangeleentheid van die Departement;

- (b) onbehoorlike of onregmatige optrede deur werknemers of beamptes van die Departement;
- (c) onregmatige bewilliging of besteding van publieke geld of eiendom;
- (d) onwettige, onreëlmatige of nie-goedgekeurde verkrygende handeling, transaksie, maatreël of praktyk wat op Staatseiendom betrekking het;
- (e) opsetlike of nalatige verlies van publieke geld of skade aan publieke eiendom;
- (f) misdryf bedoel in Dele 1 tot 4, of artikel 17, 20 of 21 (vir sover dit op voornoemde misdrywe betrekking het) van Hoofstuk 2 van die Wet op die Voorkoming en Bestryding van Korrupte Bedrywighede, 2004 (Wet No. 12 van 2004), en welke misdrywe in verband met die sake van die Departement gepleeg is; of
- (g) onwettige of onbehoorlike optrede deur enige persoon wat ernstige benadeling vir die belange van die publiek of enige kategorie daarvan veroorsaak het of kan veroorsaak,

wat plaasgevind het tussen 1 Februarie 2005 en die datum van publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie of wat plaasgevind het voor 1 Februarie 2005 of na die datum van publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie, maar wat relevant is tot, verband hou met, insidenteel of bykomstig is tot, die aangeleenthede vermeld in die Bylae of wat dieselfde persone, entiteite of kontrakte betrek wat ondersoek word kragtens die volmag verleen deur hierdie Proklamasie, en om al die werksaamhede en bevoegdhede wat deur die Wet aan die gemelde Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid toegewys of opgedra is, uit te oefen of te verrig in verband met die genoemde aangeleenthede in die Bylae, insluitend die verhaal van enige verliese wat deur die Staat of die Departement gely is.

Gegee onder my Hand en die Seël van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika te Johannesburg op hede die Johannesburg dag van May Twee duisend-en-agtien.

  
President

Op las van die President-in-Kabinet:

  
Minister van die Kabinet

**BYLAE**

1. Die konsolidasie en verkoop van—
- (a) Gedeelte 56 van 36 van Erf 348 Verulam en Gedeelte 1 van Erf 347 Verulam (gekonsolideer in Erf 10626 Verulam);
- (b) Gedeelte 1 van Erf 6673 Pinetown, Erf 6672 Pinetown, Gedeelte 1 van Erf 6671 Pinetown, Gedeelte 1 van Erf 6670 Pinetown (Gedeelte 1 van Erf 6669 Pinetown), Gedeelte 0 van Erf 6671 Pinetown, Gedeelte 1 van 6668 Pinetown en Gedeelte 1 van 6255 (Uitbreiding 59) Pinetown (gekonsolideer in Erf 30660 Pinetown);
- (c) Gedeelte 79 van Plaas No 937 van die Plaas Zeekoegat; en
- (d) Gedeelte 246 van Plaas No 1570 Perseel 44, Ethekwini,
- deur die Departement, welke eiendomme behoort het aan of onder beheer was van die Staat of die Departement, op 'n wyse wat—
- (i) nie regverdig, billik, deursigtig, mededingend of koste-effektief was nie;
- (ii) strydig was met toepaslike—
- (aa) wetgewing;
- (bb) handleidings, riglyne, omsendbriewe, praktyknotas of instruksies wat deur die Nasionale Tesourie of toepaslike Provinsiale Tesourie uitgevaardig is; of
- (cc) handleidings, beleid, prosedures, voorskrifte, instruksies of praktyke van, of wat op die Departement van toepassing is;
- (iii) uitgevoer is of gefasiliteer is deur die onbehoorlike optrede van werknemers of beamptes of van die Departement om hulself of andere op 'n korrupte of onbehoorlike wyse te bevoordeel; of
- (iv) bedrieglik was,
- en enige verwante ongemagtigde, onreëlmatige of vrugtelose en verspilde uitgawes wat deur die Departement opgeloop is.
2. Die versuim van die Departement om huurgeld in te vorder ingevolge 'n huurooreenkoms wat aangegaan is tussen die Departement en 'n derde party vir die verhuring van Erf 10626 Verulam.
3. Korrupsie, onreëlmatighede, wanpraktyke of wanadministrasie in verband met die aangeleenthede van die Departement verbandhoudend met die aangeleenthede waarna verwys word in paragrawe 1 en 2 van hierdie Bylae, insluitende die oorsake van sodanige korrupsie, onreëlmatighede, wanpraktyke of wanadministrasie en

enige verlies, skade of werklike of potensiele nadeel wat die Departement of die Staat mag gely het.

**PROCLAMATION NO. 15 OF 2018**

*by the*

*President of the Republic of South Africa*

**SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNITS AND SPECIAL TRIBUNALS ACT, 1996 (ACT NO. 74 OF 1996): AMENDMENT OF PROCLAMATION NO. R. 8 OF 2017**

Under section 2(4) of the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act No. 74 of 1996), I hereby amend Proclamation No. R. 8 of 2017, by—

- (a) the further extension of the period referred to in the fourth paragraph of the Proclamation to the date of publication of this Proclamation;
- (b) the substitution for paragraph 1 of the Schedule to the Proclamation of the following paragraph:

“1. The procurement of, or contracting for goods, works or services by or on behalf of the District Municipality and payments made in respect thereof in a manner that was—

- (a) not fair, competitive, transparent, equitable or cost-effective;
- (b) contrary to applicable—
  - (i) legislation;
  - (ii) manuals, guidelines, practice notes, circulars or instructions issued by the National Treasury or the relevant Provincial Treasury;
  - (iii) manuals, policies, procedures, prescripts, instructions or practices of or applicable to the District Municipality; or
- (c) conducted by or facilitated through the improper conduct of—
  - (i) councillors, officials or employees of the District Municipality (hereinafter collectively referred to as “the personnel of the

District Municipality"); or

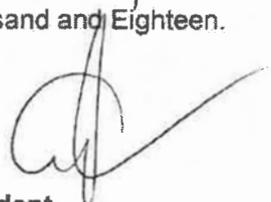
- (ii) contractors, suppliers or service providers of the District Municipality or any other person or entity,

to corruptly or unduly benefit themselves or any other person or entity, and related unauthorised, irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred by the District Municipality, the local municipalities that fall within the area of the District Municipality or the State in relation to—

- (aa) the supply, construction or commissioning of Ventilated Improved Pit toilets (hereinafter referred to as "VIP toilets"), which goods, works or services were procured in terms of the Greater Giyani Municipality - MDM 2014-004 Tender and the Greater Tzaneen Municipality or the greater area of the Tzaneen Municipality - MDM 2014-005 Tender (hereinafter referred to as "the Tenders") ; or
  - (bb) the construction, installation, repair, refurbishment, maintenance or removal of boreholes within the area of the District Municipality and relevant local municipalities that fall within the area of the District Municipality by Twin Corner Constructions And Protects (Pty) Ltd, Tsireledzo Trading Enterprise CC, Rembua Trading (Pty) Ltd, Piesons Investment CC and Amadwala Trading 373 (Pty) Ltd.; and
- (c) the substitution for paragraph 2 of the Schedule to the Proclamation of the following paragraph:
- "2. Maladministration in the affairs of the District Municipality and any losses or prejudice suffered by the District Municipality, the local municipalities that fall within the area of the District Municipality or the State as a result of such maladministration in relation to—
- (a) the supply, construction or commissioning of VIP toilets, which goods, works or services were procured in terms of the Tenders;
  - (b) the failure or refusal by the District Municipality to refund erroneous or premature payments amounting to R304 101 000, which were received by the District Municipality from the National Treasury or the national transferring officer (Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs);
  - (c) the establishment or regular maintenance of a vendor database or masterfile;
  - (d) approximately R210.4 million that the District Municipality was required

- to return to National Treasury, when the District Municipality did not spend the money during the 2012/2013 financial year in respect of the Municipal Infrastructure Grant and Water Services Operating Grant;
- (e) the failure or refusal by the District Municipality to address issues raised by, or implement recommendations of the Auditor-General of South Africa as set out in the Annual Audit Report relating to the District Municipality for the 2013/2014 financial year; and
  - (f) the construction, installation, repair, refurbishment, maintenance or removal of boreholes within the area of the District Municipality and relevant local municipalities that fall within the area of the District Municipality, by Twin Corner Constructions And Protects (Pty) Ltd, Tsireledzo Trading Enterprise CC, Rembua Trading (Pty) Ltd, Piesons Investment CC and Amadwala Trading 373 (Pty) Ltd,
- including the causes of such maladministration and related unauthorised, irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure incurred by the District Municipality, the local municipalities that fall within the area of the District Municipality or the State.”.

Given under my Hand and the Seal of the Republic of South Africa at  
Johannesburg this 13 day of May Two  
Thousand and Eighteen.



**President**

By Order of the President-in-Cabinet:



**Minister of the Cabinet**

**PROKLAMASIE NO. 15 VAN 2018**  
van die  
**PRESIDENT van die REPUBLIEK van SUID-AFRIKA**

**WET OP SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEDE EN SPESIALE TRIBUNALE, 1996**  
**(WET NO. 74 VAN 1996): WYSIGING VAN PROKLAMASIE NO. R. 8 VAN 2017**

Kragtens artikel 2(4) van die Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekeenhede en Spesiale Tribunale, 1996 (Wet No. 74 van 1996), wysig ek hierby Proklamasie No. R. 8 van 2017, deur—

- (a) die verdere verlenging van die tydperk vermeld in die vierde paragraaf van die Proklamasie tot die datum van publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie; en
- (b) die vervanging van paragraaf 2 van die Bylae tot die Proklamasie deur die volgende paragraaf:

“1. Die aanskaffing van, of kontraktering vir goedere, werke of dienste deur of namens die Distriksmunisipaliteit en betalings wat in verband daarmee gemaak is op 'n wyse wat—

- (a) nie regverdig, mededingend, deursigtig, billik of koste-effektief was nie; of
- (b) strydig was met toepaslike —
  - (i) wetgewing;
  - (ii) handleidings, riglyne, praktyknotas, omsendskrywes of instruksies wat deur die Nasionale Tesourie of relevante Plaaslike Tesourie uitgevaardig is; of
  - (iii) handleidings, beleid, prosedures, voorskrifte, instruksies of praktyke van, of wat op die Distriksmunisipaliteit van toepassing is; of
- (c) gedoen of gefasiliteer was deur die onbehoorlike optrede van—
  - (i) raadslede, beamptes of werknemers van die Distriksmunisipaliteit (hierna na gesamentlik na verwys as “die personeel van die Distriksmunisipaliteit”); of
  - (ii) kontrakteurs, verskaffers of diensverskaffers van die Distriksmunisipaliteit of enige ander persoon of entiteit, om hulself of enige ander persoon of entiteit op 'n korrupte of onbehoorlike wyse te bevoordeel,

en enige verwante ongemagtigde, onreëlmatige of vrugtelose en verspilde uitgawes wat deur die Distriksmunisipaliteit, die plaaslike munisipaliteite wat binne die area van die Distriksmunisipaliteit geleë is of die Staat in verband met die—

- (aa) verskaffing, oprigting of ingebruikneming van Ventilering Verbeterde Puttoilette (hierna na verwys as "VVP toilette"), aangegaan was, welke goedere, werke of dienste aangeskaf was ingevolge die "Greater Giyani Municipality - MDM 2014-004" Tender en die "Greater Tzaneen Municipality or the greater area of the Tzaneen Municipality - MDM 2014-005" Tender (hierna na verwys as "die Tenders"); of
- (bb) die konstruksie, installing, herstel, opknapping, instandhouding of verwydering van boorgate binne die gebied van die Distriksmunisipaliteit en relevante plaaslike munisipaliteite wat binne die gebied van die Distriksmunisipaliteit val deur Twin Corner Constructions And Protects (Edms) Bpk, Tsireledzo Trading Enterprise BK, Rembua Trading (Edms) Bpk, Piesons Investment BK en Amadwala Trading 373 (Edms) Bpk.; en
- (c) die vervanging van paragraaf 2 van die Bylae tot die Proklamasie deur die volgende paragraaf:

"2. Wanadministrasie in die aangeleenthede van die Distriksmunisipaliteit en enige verliese of nadeel wat deur die Distriksmunisipaliteit, die plaaslike munisipaliteite wat binne die area van die Distriksmunisipaliteit geleë is of die Staat gely is as gevolg van sodanige wanadministrasie ten opsigte van—

  - (a) die verskaffing, oprigting of ingebruikneming van die VVP toilette, welke goedere, werke of dienste aangeskaf ingevolge die Tenders;
  - (b) die versuim of weiering deur die Distriksmunisipaliteit om foutiewe of voortydige betalings ten bedrae van R304 101 000, wat deur die Distriksmunisipaliteit vanaf die Nasionale Tesourie of die "national transferring officer" (Departement van Koöperatiewe Regering en Tradisionele Sake) ontvang is, terug te betaal;
  - (c) die totstandbringings of gereelde hersiening van 'n verkopersdatabasis of meesterlêer;
  - (d) ongeveer R210.4 miljoen wat die Distriksmunisipaliteit aan die Nasionale Tesourie moes terughandig, toe die Distriksmunisipaliteit nie die geld gedurende die 2012/2013 finansiële jaar ten opsigte van die "Municipal Infrastructure Grant and Water Services Operating Grant" bestee het nie;

- (e) die versuim of weiering deur die Distriksmunisipaliteit om aangeleenthede wat geopper was, of om aanbevelings van die Ouditeur-Generaal van Suid-Afrika soos uiteengesit in die Jaarlikse Ouditeursverslag ten opsigte van die Distriksmunisipaliteit vir die 2013/2014 finansiële jaar, aan te spreek of te implementeer; en
- (f) die konstruksie, installering, herstel, opknapping, instandhouding of verwydering van boorgate binne die gebied van die Distriksmunisipaliteit en relevante plaaslike munisipaliteite wat binne die gebied van die Distriksmunisipaliteit val, deur Twin Corner Constructions And Protects (Edms) Bpk, Tsireledzo Trading Enterprise BK, Rembua Trading (Edms) Bpk, Piesons Investment BK en Amadwala Trading 373 (Edms) Bpk,

insluitende die oorsake van die wanadministrasie en verwante ongemagtigde, onreëlmatige of vrugtelose en verspilde uitgawes wat deur die Distriksmunisipaliteit, die plaaslike munisipaliteite wat binne die area van die Distriksmunisipaliteit geleë is of die Staat aangegaan is.”

Gegee onder my Hand en die Seël van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika te Johannesburg, op hede die 13 dag van Mei

Tweeëuisend-en-agtien.



**President**

Op las van die President-in-Kabinet:



**Minister van die Kabinet**

**PROCLAMATION NO. 16 OF 2018**

by the  
**PRESIDENT of the REPUBLIC of SOUTH AFRICA**

**SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNITS AND SPECIAL TRIBUNALS ACT, 1996 (ACT NO. 74 OF 1996): REFERRAL OF MATTERS TO EXISTING SPECIAL INVESTIGATING UNIT**

WHEREAS allegations as contemplated in section 2(2) of the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act No. 74 of 1996) (hereinafter referred to as the "Act"), have been made in respect of the affairs of the Media, Information and Communication Technologies Sector Education and Training Authority (hereinafter referred to as "the MICT SETA");

AND WHEREAS the MICT SETA or the State suffered losses that may be recovered;

AND WHEREAS I deem it necessary that the said allegations should be investigated and civil proceedings emanating from such investigation should be adjudicated upon;

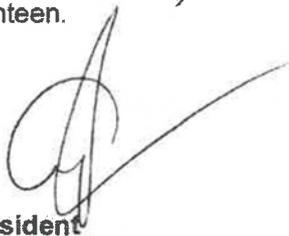
NOW, THEREFORE, I hereby, under section 2(1) of the Act, refer the matters mentioned in the Schedule in respect of the MICT SETA, for investigation to the Special Investigating Unit established by Proclamation No. R. 118 of 31 July 2001 and determine that, for the purposes of the investigation of the matters, the terms of reference of the Special Investigating Unit are to investigate as contemplated in the Act, any alleged—

- (a) serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of the MICT SETA;
- (b) improper or unlawful conduct by employees or officials of the MICT SETA;
- (c) unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property;
- (d) unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice having a bearing upon State property;

- (e) intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property;
- (f) offence referred to in Parts 1 to 4, or section 17, 20 or 21 (in so far as it relates to the aforementioned offences) of Chapter 2 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act No. 12 of 2004), and which offences were committed in connection with the affairs of the MICT SETA; or
- (g) unlawful or improper conduct by any person, which has caused or may cause serious harm to the interests of the public or any category thereof,

which took place between 1 April 2014 and the date of publication of this Proclamation or which took place prior to 1 April 2014 or after the date of publication of this Proclamation, but is relevant to, connected with, incidental or ancillary to the matters mentioned in the Schedule or involve the same persons, entities or contracts investigated under authority of this Proclamation, and to exercise or perform all the functions and powers assigned to or conferred upon the said Special Investigating Unit by the Act, including the recovery of any losses suffered by the MICT SETA or the State, in relation to the said matters in the Schedule.

Given under my Hand and the Seal of the Republic of South Africa at Johannesburg this 13 day of May Two thousand and eighteen.



**President**

By Order of the President-in-Cabinet:



**Minister of the Cabinet**

---

**SCHEDULE**

1. Maladministration in the affairs of the MICT SETA in relation to the allocation of discretionary grant funding to Lylacorp (Pty) Ltd, Network Infraco (Pty) Ltd, Bandwith Technologies, Inforcomm (Pty) Ltd, Hallmark Technologies CC, SPL Communications CC, Centretech Broadcasting CC, Northern Lights Trading, Nashua (Pty) Ltd and Broadband College of Technology and any losses or prejudice suffered by the MICT SETA or the State as a result of such maladministration.

2. Any undisclosed or unauthorised interests which officials or employees of the MICT SETA may have had in Lylacorp (Pty) Ltd, Network Infraco (Pty) Ltd, Bandwith Technologies, Inforcomm (Pty) Ltd, Hallmark Technologies CC, SPL Communications CC, Centretech Broadcasting CC, Northern Lights Trading, Nashua (Pty) Ltd and Broadband College of Technology and the extent of any benefit so derived by such officials or employees of the MICT SETA.

3. Any unlawful or irregular conduct by—

- (a) officials or employees of the MICT SETA; or
- (b) any other person or entity,

relating to the allegations referred to in paragraph 1 of this Schedule.

**PROKLAMASIE NO. 16 VAN 2018**  
**van die**  
**PRESIDENT van die REPUBLIEK van SUID AFRIKA**

**WET OP SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEDE EN SPESIALE TRIBUNALE, 1996**  
**(WET NO. 74 VAN 1996): VERWYSING VAN AANGELEENTHEDE NA**  
**BESTAANDE SPESIALE ONDERSOEKEENHEID**

AANGESIEN bewerings soos beoog in artikel 2(2) van die Wet op Spesiale Ondersoekeenheede en Spesiale Tribunale, 1996 (Wet No. 74 van 1996) (hierna na verwys as die "Wet"), gemaak is in verband met die aangeleentheid van die "Media, Information and Communication Technologies Sector Education and Training Authority" (hierna na verwys as "die MICT SETA");

EN AANGESIEN die MICT SETA of die Staat verliese gely het wat verhaal kan word;

EN AANGESIEN ek dit nodig ag dat die gemelde bewerings ondersoek en siviele geskille voortspruitend uit sodanige ondersoek bereg moet word;

DERHALWE verwys ek hierby, kragtens artikel 2(1) van die Wet, die aangeleentheid in die Bylae vermeld, ten opsigte van die MICT SETA, vir ondersoek na die Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid ingestel by Proklamasie No. R. 118 van 31 Julie 2001 en bepaal dat, vir die doelwindses van die ondersoek van die aangeleentheid, die opdrag van die Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid is om soos beoog in gemelde Wet, ondersoek te doen na enige beweerde—

- (a) ernstige wanadministrasie in verband met die aangeleentheid van die MICT SETA;
- (b) onbehoorlike of onregmatige optrede deur werknemers van die MICT SETA;
- (c) onregmatige bewilliging of besteding van publieke geld of eiendom;

- (d) onwettige, onreëlmatige of nie-goedgekeurde verkrygende handeling, transaksie, maatreël of praktyk wat op Staatseiendom betrekking het;
- (e) opsetlike of nalatige verlies van publieke geld of skade aan publieke eiendom;
- (f) misdryf bedoel in Dele 1 tot 4, of artikel 17, 20 of 21 (vir sover dit op voornoemde misdrywe betrekking het) van Hoofstuk 2 van die Wet op die Voorkoming en Bestryding van Korrupte Bedrywighede, 2004 (Wet No. 12 van 2004), en welke misdrywe gepleeg is in verband met die sake van die MICT SETA; of
- (g) onwettige of onbehoorlike optrede deur enige persoon wat ernstige benadeling van die belange van die publiek of enige kategorie daarvan veroorsaak het of kan veroorsaak,

wat plaasgevind het tussen 1 April 2014 en die datum van die publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie of wat plaasgevind het voor 1 April 2014 of na die datum van die publikasie van hierdie Proklamasie, wat relevant is tot, verband hou met, insidenteel of bykomstig is tot, die aangeleenthede vermeld in die Bylae of wat dieselfde persone, entiteite of kontrakte betrek wat ondersoek word kragtens die volmag verleen deur hierdie Proklamasie, en om al die werksaamhede en bevoegdhede wat deur die Wet aan die gemelde Spesiale Ondersoekeenheid toegewys of opgedra is, uit te oefen of te verrig in verband met die genoemde aangeleenthede in die Bylae, insluitend die verhaal van enige verliese wat deur die MICT SETA of die Staat gely is.

Gegee onder my Hand en die Seël van die Republiek van Suid Afrika te Johannesburg op hede die 13 dag van May Twee duisend-en-agtien.

  
**President**

Op las van die President-in-Kabinet:

  
**Minister van die Kabinet**

**BYLAE**

1. Wanadministrasie in die werksaamhede van die MICT SETA en enige verliese of nadeel gely deur die MICT SETA of die Staat as gevolg van wanadministrasie met betrekking tot die toekenning van diskresionêre toelae befondsing aan Lylacorp (Edms) Bpk, Network Infraco (Edms) Bpk, Bandwith Technologies, Inforcomm (Edms) Bpk, Hallmark Technologies BK, SPL Communications BK, Centretech Broadcasting BK, Northern Lights Trading, Nashua (Edms) Bpk en Broadband College of Technology.

2. Enige ongeopenbaarde of ongemagtigde belange wat beamptes of werknemers van die MICT SETA mag gehad het in Lylacorp (Edms) Bpk, Network Infraco (Edms) Bpk, Bandwith Technologies, Inforcomm (Edms) Bpk, Hallmark Technologies BK, SPL Communications BK, Centretech Broadcasting BK, Northern Lights Trading, Nashua (Edms) Bpk en Broadband College of Technology en die omvang van enige voordeel wat sodanige beamptes of werknemers van MICT SETA daaruit bekom het.

3. Enige onwettige of onreëlmatige optrede deur—

- (a) beamptes of werknemers van die MICT SETA; of
- (b) enige ander persoon of entiteit,

in verband met die bewerings uiteengesit in paragraaf 1 van hierdie Bylae.

## GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS

## DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS

NO. 516

25 MAY 2018

**NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: AIR QUALITY ACT, 2004  
(ACT NO. 39 OF 2004)****NOTICE OF INTENTION TO AMEND THE LIST OF ACTIVITIES WHICH RESULT IN ATMOSPHERIC EMISSION WHICH HAVE OR MAY HAVE A SIGNIFICANT DETRIMENTAL EFFECT ON THE ENVIRONMENT, INCLUDING HEALTH, SOCIAL CONDITIONS, ECONOMIC CONDITIONS, ECOLOGICAL CONDITIONS OR CULTURAL HERITAGE**

I, Bomo Edna Edith Molewa, Minister of Environmental Affairs, hereby, under section 21(4)(a) read with section 57(1) of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004), give notice of my intention to amend the list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage, set out in the Schedule hereto.

Members of the public are invited to submit to the Minister, within 30 days from the date of the publication of this notice in the *Gazette*, written representations or objections on the proposed amendments to the following addresses:

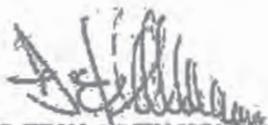
By post to: The Director-General: Department of Environmental Affairs  
Attention: Mr Olebogang Matshediso  
Private Bag X447  
Pretoria  
0001

By hand at: 473 Steve Biko Road, Environment House, Arcadia, Pretoria

By e-mail: [omatshediso@environment.gov.za](mailto:omatshediso@environment.gov.za)

Any inquiries in connection with the notice can be directed to Ms Elizabeth Masakoameng at 012 399 9202 or Mr Olebogang Matshediso at 012 399 9215

Comments received after the closing date may not be considered.



**BOMO EDNA EDITH MOLEWA  
MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS**

## SCHEDULE

### Definitions

1. In this Schedule, “the List” means the list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage, published under Government Notice No. 893 of 22 November 2013, as amended by General Notice No. 551 of 12 June 2015.

### Amendment of paragraph 11 of the List

2. Paragraph 11 of the List is hereby amended—

(a) by the substitution for paragraph 11 of the following paragraph:

#### **“Postponement or Suspension of compliance time frames**

(11) As contemplated in the National Framework for Air Quality Management in the Republic of South Africa, published in terms of section 7 of this Act, an application may be made to the National Air Quality Officer for the postponement or suspension of the compliance time frames **[in paragraphs (9) and (10)]** for an existing plant.; and

(b) by the insertion of the following paragraphs after paragraph 11:

“(11A) An existing facility’s application contemplated in paragraph (11) may be made for a once-off postponement of the compliance timeframes with new plant standards.

(11B) A postponement of compliance timeframes may only be granted for a period not exceeding five years, and no postponement of compliance timeframes will be valid beyond 31 March 2025.

(11C) An existing facility to be decommissioned by 2030 may apply for a once-off suspension of compliance timeframes with new plant standards for a period not beyond 2030.

(11D) A once-off suspension application of compliance timeframes with new plant standard contemplated in paragraph (11C) must be accompanied by a clear decommissioning schedule.

(11E) A once-off suspension application of compliance timeframes with new plant standards contemplated in paragraph (11C) shall not be accepted after 31 March 2019.

(11F) An existing facility granted a once-off suspension of compliance timeframes with new plant standards shall comply with existing plant standards during the suspension period until the existing plant is decommissioned.

(11G) No postponement of compliance timeframes with existing plant standard or a suspension of compliance timeframe with existing plant standard shall be granted.”

### Substitution of Subcategory 2.4 of the List

3. The following Subcategory is hereby substituted for Subcategory 2.4 of the List:

“Subcategory 2.4: Storage and Handling of Petroleum Products

<b>Description:</b>	Petroleum products storage tanks and product transfer facilities.
---------------------	---

<b>Application:</b>	All permanent immobile liquid storage tanks larger than 1000 cubic meters cumulative tankage capacity at a site.
---------------------	--

- (a) The following transitional arrangement shall apply for the storage and handling of raw materials, intermediate and final products with a vapour pressure greater than 14kPa at operating temperature—

Leak detection and repair (LDAR) program approved by licensing authority to be instituted, by 01 January 2014.

- (b) The following special arrangements shall apply for control of Total Volatile Organic Compounds (TVOCs) from storage of raw materials, intermediate and final products, except during loading and offloading. (Alternative control measures that can achieve the same or better results may be used)—

- (i) Storage vessels for liquids shall be of the following type:

True vapour pressure of contents at product storage temperature	Type of tank or vessel
<b>Type 1:</b> Up to 14 kPa	Fixed-roof tank vented to atmosphere, or as per Type 2 and 3
<b>Type 2:</b> Above 14 kPa and up to 91 kPa with a throughput of less than 50'000 m <sup>3</sup> per annum	Fixed-roof tank with Pressure Vacuum Vents fitted as a minimum, to prevent "breathing" losses, or as per Type 3
<b>Type 3:</b> Above 14 kPa and up to 91 kPa with a throughput greater than 50'000 m <sup>3</sup> per annum	a) External floating-roof tank with primary rim seal and secondary rim seal for tank with a diameter greater than 20m, or b) fixed-roof tank with internal floating deck / roof fitted with primary seal, or c) fixed-roof tank with vapour recovery system.
<b>Type 4:</b> Above 91 kPa	Pressure vessel

- (ii) The roof legs, slotted pipes and/or dipping well on floating roof tanks (except for domed floating roof tanks or internal floating roof tanks) shall have sleeves fitted to minimise emissions.
- (iii) Relief valves on pressurised storage should undergo periodic checks for internal leaks. This can be carried out using portable acoustic monitors or if venting to atmosphere with an accessible open end, tested with a hydrocarbon analyser as part of an LDAR programme.
- (c) The following special arrangements shall apply for control of TVOCs from the loading and unloading (excluding ships) of raw materials, intermediate and final products with a vapour pressure of greater than 14kPa at handling temperature. Alternative control measures that can achieve the same or better results may be used:

- (i) All installations with a throughput of greater than 50'000 m<sup>3</sup> per annum of products with a vapour pressure greater than 14 kPa, must be fitted with vapour recovery / destruction units. Emission limits are set out in the table below—

<b>Description:</b>	Vapour Recovery Units		
<b>Application:</b>	All loading/ offloading facilities with a throughput greater than 50 000 m <sup>3</sup> per annum		
<b>Substance or mixture of substances</b>		<b>Plant status</b>	<b>mg/Nm<sup>3</sup> under normal conditions of 273 Kelvin and 101.3 kPa.</b>
<b>Common name</b>	<b>Chemical symbol</b>		
Total volatile organic compounds from vapour recovery/ destruction units using thermal treatment.	N/A	New	150
		Existing	150
Total volatile organic compounds from vapour recovery/ destruction units using non-thermal treatment.	N/A	New	40 000
		Existing	40 000

- (ii) For road tanker and rail car loading / offloading facilities where the throughput is less than 50'000 m<sup>3</sup> per annum, and where ambient air quality is, or is likely to be impacted, all liquid products shall be loaded using bottom loading, or equivalent, with the venting pipe connected to a vapour balancing system. Where vapour balancing and / or bottom loading is not possible, a recovery system utilizing adsorption, absorption, condensation or incineration of the remaining VOC's, with a collection efficiency of at least 95%, shall be fitted.”.

#### Amendment of Category 5 of the List

4. Category 5 of the List is hereby amended—

(a) by the substitution in Subcategory 5.4 for paragraph (a) of the following paragraph:

“(b) The following special arrangement shall apply—

(i) Emissions from cooling, grinding and fugitive dust capture processes are not subject to the oxygen content reference condition.

(ii) Where pyritic limestone is used, a sulphur dioxide limit of 400 mg/Nm<sup>3</sup> shall apply.”;

(b) by the addition in paragraph (a) of Subcategory 5.5 of the following subparagraph:

“(xviii) Where pyritic limestone is used, a sulphur dioxide limit of 400 mg/Nm<sup>3</sup> shall apply.”.

(c) by the addition in Subcategory 5.9 of the following paragraph:

“(a) The following special arrangement shall apply:

(i) Where co-feeding with waste materials with calorific value allowed in terms of the Waste Disposal Standards published in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No.59 of 2008) as amended, occurs, additional requirements under Subcategory 1.6 shall apply.

(ii) The applicable emission limit for Total Fluorides shall be as set out in Subcategory 5.9.

(iii) Additional requirements under Subcategory 1.6 shall continue to apply even after the waste ceases to be waste in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008), as amended.”.

### Amendment of Category 9 of the List

5. Category 9 of the List is hereby amended—

(a) by the substitution for subcategory 9.2 of the following subcategory:

#### **Subcategory 9.2: Chemical Recovery Furnaces**

<b>Description:</b>		The recovery of chemicals from the thermal treatment of spent liquor using furnaces.	
<b>Application:</b>		All installations producing more than 1 ton per month.	
Substance or mixture of substances		Plant status	mg/Nm <sup>3</sup> under normal conditions of 5% O <sub>2</sub> , 273 Kelvin and 101.3 kPa.
Common name	Chemical symbol		
Particulate matter	N/A	New	50
		Existing	100
Hydrogen sulphide	H <sub>2</sub> S	New	15
		Existing	15
Sulphur dioxide	SO <sub>2</sub>	New (Kraft Process)	30
		Existing (Kraft Process)	300
		New (Bisulphite Process)	300
		Existing (Bisulphite Process)	450
Oxides of nitrogen	NO <sub>x</sub> expressed as NO <sub>2</sub>	New (Kraft Process)	300
		Existing (Kraft Process)	300
		New (Bisulphite Process)	300
		Existing (Bisulphite Process)	400

(b) by the substitution for subcategory 9.5, of the following subcategory:

**Subcategory 9.5: Wood Drying and the Production of Manufactured Wood Products**

<b>Description:</b>	The drying of wood using direct-fired kilns; and the manufacture of laminated and compressed wood products.		
<b>Application:</b>	All installations producing more than 10 tons per month.		
<b>Substance or mixture of substances</b>		<b>Plant status</b>	<b>mg/Nm<sup>3</sup> under normal conditions of 273 Kelvin, 10% O<sub>2</sub>, and 101.3 kPa.</b>
<b>Common name</b>	<b>Chemical symbol</b>		
Particulate matter	N/A	New	150
		Existing	200
Oxides of nitrogen	NO <sub>x</sub> expressed as NO <sub>2</sub>	New	500
		Existing	700

### Substitution of Annexure A to the List

6. The following Annexure is hereby substituted for Annexure A to the List:

#### “ANNEXURE A - METHODS FOR SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of the Notice. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies. Information on currently valid national and international standards can be obtained from South African Bureau of Standards.

Substance group	Parameter	Methods for Sampling and Analysis of Pollutants	
		Standard Reference Method	Title
Measurement Planning	Measurement planning and measurement sites selection	BS EN 15259	Requirements for the measurement sections and sites and for the measurement objective, plan and report.
Quality Assurance	Competence of testing and calibration laboratories	ISO 17025	General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories.
		DD CEN/TS 15675:2007	Air quality. Measurement of stationary source emissions. Application of EN ISO/IEC 17025:2005 to periodic measurements.
		BS EN 14181	Stationary Source Emissions – Quality assurance of automated measurement systems.
	Continuous Emission Monitoring Systems (Includes portable analysers)	BS EN 15267-2	Air quality. Certification of automated measuring systems. Initial assessment of the AMS manufacturer's quality management system and post certification surveillance for the manufacturing process.
		BS EN 15267-3	Air quality. Certification of automated measuring systems. Performance criteria and test procedures for automated measuring systems for monitoring emissions from stationary sources.

	Portable analysers	BS EN 50379-2	Specification for portable electrical apparatus designed to measure combustion flue gas parameters of heating appliances. Performance requirements for apparatus used in statutory inspections and assessment.
		DD CEN/TS 15674:2007	Air quality. Measurement of stationary source emissions. Guidelines for the elaboration of standardised methods.
Secondary Parameters	Determination of gas velocity and flow rate	ISO 10780	Stationary Source Emissions - Measurement of velocity and volume flow rate of gas streams in ducts
		ISO 14164	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the volume flow rate of gas streams in ducts - Automated method
		BS EN ISO 16911-1	Stationary source emissions. Manual and automatic determination of velocity and volume flow rate in ducts. Manual reference method
		BS EN ISO 16911-2	Stationary source emissions. Manual and automatic determination of velocity and volume flow rate in ducts. Automated measuring systems.
		USEPA Method 1	Sample and Velocity Traverses for Stationary Sources
		USEPA Method 2	Determination of stack gas velocity and volumetric flow rate (Type S Pitot Tube)
		USEPA Method 2A	Direct measurement of gas volume through pipes and small ducts
		USEPA Method 2B	Determination of exhaust gas volume flow rate from gasoline vapor incinerators
		USEPA Method 2C	Determination of gas velocity and volumetric flow rate in small stacks or ducts (standard pitot tube)



ISO 10396	Stationary source emissions — Sampling for the automated determination of gas emission concentrations for permanently-installed monitoring systems.
BS EN 15058	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of carbon monoxide (CO). Reference Method: Non-Dispersive Infrared Spectrometry
BS EN 50379-2	Specification for portable electrical apparatus designed to measure combustion flue gas parameters of heating appliances. Performance requirements for apparatus used in statutory inspections and assessment
BS EN 50379-3	Specification for portable electrical apparatus designed to measure combustion flue gas parameters of heating appliances. Performance requirements for apparatus used in non-statutory servicing of gas fired heating appliances
ASTM D6348	Standard test method for determination of gaseous compounds by Extractive Direct Interface Fourier Transform Infrared (FTIR) Spectroscopy
BS EN 13284-1	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of low range mass concentration of dust: manual gravimetric method
ISO 9096	Stationary Source Emissions - Manual determination of mass concentration of particulate matter
ISO 12141	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of mass concentration of particulate matter (dust) at low concentrations - Manual gravimetric method
ISO 10155	Stationary Source Emissions - Automated monitoring of mass concentrations of particles. Performance characteristics, test methods and specifications.
Dust	Particulate Matter

			USEPA Method 5	Determination of particulate matter emissions from stationary sources.
			USEPA Method 17	Determination of particulate matter emissions from stationary sources
			ISO 23210	Stationary source emissions -- Determination of PM <sub>10</sub> /PM <sub>2,5</sub> mass concentration in flue gas -- Measurement at low concentrations by use of impactors
			ISO 25597	Stationary source emissions -- Test method for determining PM <sub>2,5</sub> and PM <sub>10</sub> mass in stack gases using cyclone samplers and sample dilution
			ASTM D1739	Standard Test Method for Collection and Measurement of Dustfall (Settleable Particulate Matter).
Metals	Arsenic Antimony Chromium Cobalt Copper Manganese Nickel Cadmium Thalium Vanadium Lead		BS EN 14385	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the total emission of As, Cd, Cr, Co, Cu, Mn, Ni, Pb, Sb, Tl and V
			USEPA Method 29	Determination of metals emissions from stationary sources
			BS EN 14884	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of total mercury: automated measuring systems

		BS EN 13211	Stationary Source Emissions - Manual method of determination of the concentration of total mercury
	Chromium	USEPA Method 304	Determination of chromium emissions from decorative and hard chromium electroplating and chromium anodising operations—isokinetic method.
Organic Compounds	Polychlorinated Dioxins/Furans	BS EN 1948	Stationary Source Emissions – Determination of the mass concentration of PCBBS/PCDFS and Dioxin-like PCBs
		USEPA Method 23	Determination of Polychlorinated Dibenzop-Dioxins and Polychlorinated Dibenzofurans from stationary sources
	Acrylonitrile	USEPA Method 0031	Sampling method for volatile organic compounds
	Methylamines	BS EN 13649	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of individual gaseous organic compounds. Activated carbon and solvent desorption method
	Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons	ISO 11338-1	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of gas and particle-phase polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Part 1: Sampling
		ISO 11338-2	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of gas and particle-phase polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Part 2: Sample preparation, clean-up and determination.
	Total Volatile Organic Compounds	BS EN 12619	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of total gaseous organic carbon. Continuous Flame Ionisation Detector Method
		BS EN 13526	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of total gaseous organic carbon in flue gases from solvent using processes. Continuous Flame Ionisation Detector Method

Inorganic Compounds	Hydrogen Sulphide	BS EN 13649	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of individual gaseous organic compounds. Activated Carbon and Solvent Desorption Method
		USEPA Method 18	Measurement of gaseous organic compound emissions by gas chromatography
		USEPA Method 25A	Determination of total gaseous organic concentration using a flame ionization analyzer
		USEPA Method 25B	Determination of total gaseous organic concentration using a nondispersive infrared analyzer
		USEPA Method 21	Determination of volatile organic compound leaks
		BS EN 13649	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of individual gaseous organic compounds. Activated Carbon and Solvent Desorption Method (Use NIOSH 1600 for analysis)
		USEPA Method 11	Determination of hydrogen sulfide content of fuel gas streams in petroleum refineries
		USEPA Method 15	Determination of hydrogen sulfide, carbonyl sulfide, and carbon disulfide emissions from stationary sources
		USEPA Method 16A	Determination of Total Reduced Sulfur Emissions from Stationary Sources (Impinger Technique)
		USEPA Method 16B	Determination of Total Reduced Sulfur Emissions from Stationary Sources (Gas Chromatograph Analysis)
USEPA Method 16C	Determination of Total Reduced Sulfur Emissions from Stationary Sources (Real Time Data)		

Chlorine /Hydrogen Chloride	BS EN 1911	Stationary source emissions. Determination of mass concentration of gaseous chlorides expressed as HCl. Standard reference method
	USEPA Method 26	Determination of hydrogen halide and halogen emissions from stationary sources non-isokinetic method
	USEPA OT Method 29	Sampling and analysis for hydrogen cyanide emissions from stationary sources
	Method 426	Determination of cyanide emissions from stationary sources
	NIOSH 7904	CYANIDES, aerosol and gas.
	USEPA Method 26A	Determination of hydrogen halide and halogen emissions from stationary sources non-isokinetic method
	ISO 15713	Stationary Source Emissions - Sampling and determination of gaseous fluoride content
	ISO 7935	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of sulphur dioxide. Performance characteristics of automated measuring methods
	ISO 10396	Stationary source emissions — Sampling for the automated determination of gas emission concentrations for permanently-installed monitoring systems.
	BS EN 14791	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of mass concentration of sulphur dioxide. Reference method
Hydrogen Cyanide	USEPA Method 8	Determination of sulfuric acid and sulfur dioxide emissions from stationary sources
	ISO 10849	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of the mass concentration of nitrogen oxides. Performance characteristics of automated measuring systems
Total Flourides/ Hydrogen Flouride		
Oxides of Sulphur		
Oxides of Nitrogen		

		ISO 10396	Stationary source emissions — Sampling for the automated determination of gas emission concentrations for permanently-installed monitoring systems.
		BS EN 14792	Stationary Source Emissions - Determination of mass concentration of nitrogen oxides (NO <sub>x</sub> ). Reference Method: Chemiluminescence
		ASTM D6348	Standard test method for determination of gaseous compounds by Extractive Direct Interface Fourier Transform Infrared (FTIR) Spectroscopy
		USEPA Method 7D	Determination of Nitrogen Oxide Emissions from Stationary Sources (Alkaline-Permanganate/Ion Chromatographic Method)
	Ammonia	EPA CTM 027	Ammonia Analysis
		ASTM D6348	Standard test method for determination of gaseous compounds by Extractive Direct Interface Fourier Transform Infrared (FTIR) Spectroscopy

#### Short title and commencement

7. This Notice is called the 2018 Amendments to the list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, and takes effect on the date of publication in the *Government Gazette*.

## DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS

NO. 517

25 MAY 2018

**NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: AIR QUALITY ACT, 2004  
(ACT NO. 39 OF 2004)****DRAFT NATIONAL DUST CONTROL REGULATIONS**

I Bomo Edna Edith Molewa, Minister of Environmental Affairs, hereby under section 53(o), read with section 32 and 57 of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004), give notice of my intention to repeal and replace the National Dust Control Regulations, 2013, published in Government Notice No. 827, Gazette No. 36974 on 1 November 2013, with the regulations in the Schedule hereto.

Members of the public are invited to submit to the Minister, within 30 (thirty) days from the date of the publication of this notice in the *Gazette*, written representations or objections to the following addresses:

By post to: The Director-General: Department of Environmental Affairs  
Attention: Mr O Matshediso  
Private Bag X 477, Pretoria, 0001

By hand at: Environment House, 473 Steve Biko Road, Arcadia

By e-mail: [OMatshediso@environment.gov.za](mailto:OMatshediso@environment.gov.za)

Any inquiries in connection with the notice can be directed to Ms Elizabeth Masekoameng on (012) 399 9202 or Mr O Matshediso at (012) 399 9215

Comments received after the closing date may not be considered.



**BOMO EDNA EDITH MOLEWA**  
**MINISTER OF WATER AND ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS**

## SCHEDULE

### Definitions

1. In these regulations any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act has that meaning, and unless the context indicates otherwise -

**"ASTM D1739"** means the American Standard for Testing and Materials method D1739 (latest version), which is the standard test method for the collection and measurement of dustfall (Settleable Particulate Matter);

**"air quality officer"** means an officer appointed in terms of section 14 of the Act as an air quality officer;

**"dustfall (or settleable particulate matter)"** means any material composed of particles small enough to pass through a 1 mm screen and large enough to settle by virtue of their weight into the sampling container from the ambient air;

**"dustfall monitoring programme"** means monitoring of the dustfall on a continuous basis;

**"dust management plan"** means a plan detailing measures for the prevention or mitigation of dust emissions;

**"listed activity"** means an activity listed in terms of section 21 of the Act;

**"mining operation"** means any operation relating to the act of mining and matters directly incidental thereto;

**"Non- residential area"** means any area not classified for residential use as per local town planning scheme;

**"premises"** means any land and structures thereon including stockpiles of materials, roadways and other means of conveyance, from which dust may be generated through anthropogenic or natural activities or processes;

"residential area" means any area classified for residential use in terms of the local town planning scheme; and

"the Act" means National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No.39 of 2004).

#### **Purpose of the Regulations**

2. The purpose of these Regulations is to prescribe general measures for the control of dust.

#### **Application of the Regulations**

3. These Regulations apply uniformly in all provinces of the Republic of South Africa.

#### **Dustfall standard**

4. Acceptable dustfall rates for residential and non-residential areas are set out in the table -

<b>Restriction Area</b>	<b>Dustfall rate (D) (mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day, 30-days average)</b>	<b>Permitted frequency of exceeding dust fall rate</b>
<b>Residential area</b>	<b>D &lt; 600</b>	<b>Two within a year, not sequential months.</b>
<b>Non-residential area</b>	<b>D ≤ 1200</b>	<b>Two within a year, not sequential months.</b>

5. Where exceedance in dustfall rate is as a result of naturally occurring, non-anthropogenic source and extreme weather or geological event, such exceedences will be exempted.
6. A standard test method to be used for measuring dustfall rate and the guideline for locating sampling points shall be ASTM D1739. The latest version of this method shall be used.

**Dustfall monitoring programme**

7. An air quality officer may require any person, through a written notice, to undertake a dustfall monitoring programme as contemplated in regulation 12, if an officer reasonably suspects that the person is contravening regulation 4.
8. A person mentioned in regulation 7 must, upon receipt of a notice from an air quality officer, implement a dustfall monitoring programme.
9. Notwithstanding regulation 4, any person conducting a mining operation; or any listed activity that requires a fugitive dust emission management plan, must implement a dustfall monitoring programme.
10. A person required to implement a dustfall monitoring programme must, within three months of the implementation of the dustfall monitoring programme, submit a first dustfall monitoring report as contemplated in regulation 13 to an air quality officer.
11. Where a person mentioned in regulation 7 or regulation 9 has undertaken a dustfall monitoring programme prior to the promulgation of these Regulations, a monitoring report of that programme may be accepted by an air quality officer if it meets the requirements of regulation 13.
12. A dustfall monitoring programme must include but not limited to—
  - (1) the establishment of a network of dust monitoring points using method ASTM D1739: 2010, sufficient in number to establish the contribution of the person to dustfall in residential and non-residential areas in the vicinity of the premises, to monitor identified or likely sensitive receptor locations; and
  - (2) a schedule for submitting to the air quality officer, monthly dustfall monitoring reports.

**Contents of a dustfall monitoring report****13. A dustfall monitoring report must provide—**

- (1) information on the location of sampling sites, including latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates, and a position indicator on a topographic map;
- (2) information on classification of the area where samplers are located, in terms of residential and non-residential;
- (3) information on sensitive receptors;
- (4) proof that standard methods used for site selection, sampling and analysis; and where applicable any accreditation for use of such methods;
- (5) dustfall monitoring results, including a tabular summary of dustfall rates for the monitoring period compared to the limit values set out in Regulation 4, and a comparison with monthly historical results for at least the previous four years for each site, where available;
- (6) meteorological data including at least hourly values for wind speed and wind direction for the sampling area; and
- (7) any other relevant data that might influence the results.

**Implementation of a dust management plan****14. Any person who has exceeded acceptable dustfall rates set out in regulation 4 must—**

- (1) implement a dust management plan; and
- (2) within three months after submission of a first dustfall monitoring report, submit a dust management plan contemplated under subregulation 14 (1) to an air quality officer.

15. Notwithstanding regulation 14, any person conducting a mining operation; any listed activity that requires a fugitive dust emission management plan; or any person conducting any activity in such a way as to give rise to dust that may exceed acceptable dustfall rates set out in regulation 4 must, prior to undertaking such activity, implement a dust management plan.
16. A dust management plan, contemplated in regulation 14 and 15, must -
- (1) identify all possible sources of dust within the affected site;
  - (2) detail the best practicable environmental measures to be undertaken to prevent or mitigate dust emissions;
  - (3) detail an implementation schedule;
  - (4) identify the line management responsible for implementation;
  - (5) incorporate the dust fall monitoring programme; and
  - (6) establish a register for recording all complaints received by the person regarding dustfall, and for recording follow up actions and responses to the complainants.
17. Any person who is required to implement a dust management plan must include a proof of implementation of a dust management plan in the monitoring reports.

#### **Ambient air quality monitoring for PM<sub>10</sub>**

18. An air quality officer may require any person to undertake continuous ambient air quality monitoring for PM<sub>10</sub> in accordance with a notice published in terms of section 9 of the Act, if the dustfall monitoring report contemplated in regulation 10 indicates non-compliance with regulation 4.

#### **Offences**

19. A person is guilty of an offence if that person contravenes or fails to comply with a provision of regulation 8; 9; 10; 14; 15; 17; and 18.

**Penalties**

20. A person convicted of an offence referred to in regulation 19 is liable to in the case of a first conviction to a fine not exceeding R5 million or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding five years; and in the case of a second or subsequent conviction to a fine not exceeding R10 million or imprisonment for a period not exceeding 10 years and in respect of both instances to both such fine and such imprisonment.

**Transitional arrangement, and the repeal of regulations**

21. These Regulations take effect on 1 November 2019, unless otherwise indicated in the text.
22. The Regulations promulgated by Government Notice No.R827, published in Gazette No. 36974 of 1 November 2013 are hereby repealed with effect from 1 November 2019.

**Short title and commencement**

23. These Regulations are called the National Dust Control Regulations, 2018.

## DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS

NO. 518

25 MAY 2018

**NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: AIR QUALITY ACT, 2004  
(ACT NO. 39 OF 2004)****NOTICE OF INTENTION TO AMEND THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY  
MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA**

I, Bomo Edna Edith Molewa, Minister of Environmental Affairs, hereby under section 7(5) and (6)(a), read with section 57(1) of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004), give notice of my intention to amend the 2012 National Framework for Air quality Management in the Republic of South Africa, as set out in the Schedule hereto.

Members of the public are invited to submit to the Minister, within 30 days from the date of the publication of this notice in the *Gazette*, written comments or objections on the proposed amendments to the 2012 National Framework for Air Quality Management in the Republic of South Africa to the following addresses:

By post to:     The Director-General  
                  Department of Environmental Affairs  
                  Attention: Advocate Avhantodi Munyai  
                  Private Bag X447  
                  Pretoria  
                  0001

By hand at:    473 Steve Biko street, Ground Floor (Reception) Environment House, Arcadia, Pretoria.

By e-mail:     amunyai@environment.gov.za.

Any inquiries in connection with the notice can be directed to Ms Elizabeth Masekoameng at 012 399 9202 or Advocate Avhantodi Munyai at 012 399 9211.

**Comments received after the closing date may not be considered.**



**BOMO EDNA EDITH MOLEWA  
MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS**



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	I
LIST OF TABLES.....	V
LIST OF FIGURES.....	VI
<b>1. INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1 BACKGROUND.....	7
1.2 OVERVIEW.....	7
1.3 PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK .....	7
1.4 GUIDING PRINCIPLES .....	8
1.5 STRUCTURE OF THE DOCUMENT .....	8
<b>2. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY CONTEXT .....</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1 INTRODUCTION.....	9
2.2 NATIONAL POLICY.....	9
2.2.1 <i>Background</i> .....	9
2.2.2 <i>National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (the NEMA)</i> .....	9
2.2.3 <i>National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (the AQA)</i> .....	10
2.2.4 <i>Other related national legislation</i> .....	10
2.3 MUNICIPAL BY-LAWS.....	13
2.4 INTERNATIONAL POLICY .....	13
2.4.1 <i>Greenhouse gases and climate change</i> .....	14
2.4.1.1 United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC).....	14
2.4.1.2 South Africa's UNFCCC obligations.....	14
2.4.1.3 South Africa's contributions to the global effort to reduce GHG emissions .....	14
2.4.2 <i>Stratospheric ozone depletion</i> .....	15
2.4.2.1 The Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer .....	15
2.4.2.2 The Montreal Protocol on Substances that deplete the Ozone Layer .....	15
2.4.3 <i>Persistent pollutants</i> .....	17
2.4.3.1 The Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) .....	17
2.4.3.2 International concerns around Mercury, Lead and Cadmium .....	17
2.4.4 <i>Regional policy</i> .....	18
2.4.5 <i>The AQA and International Policy</i> .....	18
<b>3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>19</b>
3.1 INTRODUCTION.....	19
3.2 GOVERNMENT'S ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES .....	19
3.2.1 <i>The National Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA)</i> .....	19
3.2.2 <i>Provincial environmental departments</i> .....	21
3.2.3 <i>Municipalities</i> .....	22
3.2.4 <i>Other national departments</i> .....	22
3.3 INDUSTRY.....	23
3.4 LABOUR.....	24
3.5 THE GENERAL PUBLIC .....	24
<b>4. APPROACH TO AIR QUALITY GOVERNANCE.....</b>	<b>25</b>
4.1 INTRODUCTION.....	25
4.2 THE ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE CYCLE .....	25
4.2.1 <i>Information management</i> .....	25
4.2.2 <i>Problem identification and prioritisation</i> .....	27
4.2.3 <i>Strategy development</i> .....	28
4.2.4 <i>Standard setting</i> .....	28
4.2.5 <i>Policy and regulation development</i> .....	30
4.2.6 <i>Environmental impact management</i> .....	30
4.2.7 <i>Authorisations</i> .....	31
4.2.8 <i>Compliance monitoring</i> .....	32
4.2.9 <i>Enforcement</i> .....	33
4.3 THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE FUNCTIONS BY THE THREE SPHERES OF GOVERNMENT .....	33

4.4	THE NEED FOR VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL INTEGRATION .....	34
4.4.1	<i>MINMEC: Environment</i> .....	35
4.4.2	<i>MINTEC: Environment</i> .....	35
4.4.3	<i>The Committee for Environmental Coordination (CEC)</i> .....	35
4.4.4	<i>The National–Provincial Air Quality Officers’ Forum</i> .....	36
4.4.5	<i>The Provincial–Municipal Air Quality Officers’ Forum</i> .....	36
4.4.6	<i>The Annual Air Quality Management Governance Lekgotla</i> .....	36
4.5	3D GOVERNANCE MODEL .....	36
4.6	CROSS-CUTTING ISSUES.....	37
<b>5.</b>	<b>TOOLS FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>38</b>
5.1	INTRODUCTION.....	38
5.2	AIR QUALITY INFORMATION MANAGEMENT .....	38
5.2.1	<i>The South African Air Quality Information System (SAAQIS)</i> .....	38
5.2.1.1	Ambient air quality information .....	39
5.2.1.2	Ambient air quality monitoring norms and standards in SAAQIS.....	39
5.2.1.3	Information on AQ legislation, policies, and regulations .....	40
5.2.1.4	South African air quality research reference database .....	40
5.2.1.5	Information regarding Air Quality Management Plans .....	40
5.2.1.6	Information on policy, legislation and regulations .....	40
5.2.1.7	Additional aspects of the SAAQIS.....	40
5.2.2	<i>Air quality publications</i> .....	41
5.2.3	<i>Air quality reporting</i> .....	41
5.2.3.1	State of air reporting.....	41
5.2.3.2	The Air Quality Officers’ annual reports .....	41
5.2.3.3	South African Air Quality Index .....	41
5.2.3.4	The National Air Quality Indicator .....	43
	<b>APPENDIX 1: NATIONAL AIR QUALITY INDICATOR STATIONS .....</b>	<b>45</b>
5.2.4	<i>South African Atmospheric Emission Licence and Inventory Portal</i> .....	48
5.2.4.1	System for National Atmospheric Emission Licensing (SNAEL).....	48
5.2.4.2	National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS) .....	49
5.2.4.3	Atmospheric emission inventory information management .....	49
5.3	PROBLEM IDENTIFICATION AND PRIORITISATION .....	49
5.3.1	<i>Introduction</i> .....	49
5.3.2	<i>Identifying and prioritising pollutants of concern</i> .....	50
5.3.3	<i>Identifying and prioritising emitters of concern</i> .....	51
5.3.4	<i>Identifying and prioritising areas of concern</i> .....	51
5.3.4.1	National and Provincial Priority Areas of Concern .....	51
5.3.4.2	Municipal Areas of Concern .....	53
5.4	STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT .....	54
5.4.1	<i>Introduction</i> .....	54
5.4.2	<i>Awareness-raising</i> .....	54
5.4.3	<i>Standard setting</i> .....	54
5.4.3.1	The generic standard setting process .....	55
5.4.3.2	South African national ambient air quality standards.....	56
5.4.3.3	Listed activities and related emission standards.....	58
5.4.3.4	Standard-setting process for listed activities.....	61
5.4.3.5	Controlled Emitters.....	64
5.4.3.6	Controlled Fuels.....	66
5.4.3.7	Noise and odour.....	67
5.4.3.8	Dust.....	67
5.4.4	<i>Regulations</i> .....	67
5.4.5	<i>Economic instruments</i> .....	69
5.4.6	<i>Air Quality Management Plans</i> .....	69
5.4.6.1	The AQMP development process .....	70
5.4.6.2	The national air quality management planning support programme.....	71
5.4.6.3	The National Air Quality Management Plan .....	71
5.4.6.4	AQMPs for other National Government Departments.....	71
5.4.6.5	Priority Area AQMPs .....	72
5.4.6.6	Provincial AQMPs .....	72
5.4.6.7	Municipal AQMPs.....	72
5.4.6.8	Pollution Prevention Plans .....	72
5.4.6.9	AQMP reporting requirements .....	73

5.4.6.10	Human health impact assessments .....	73
5.4.7	<i>National Air Quality Management Strategies</i> .....	73
5.5	IMPACT MANAGEMENT .....	73
5.5.1	<i>Environmental Impact Assessments</i> .....	73
5.5.2	<i>EIA-AEL procedural relationship</i> .....	73
5.5.3	<i>Specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment Reports</i> .....	75
5.5.3.1	Human health impacts .....	75
5.5.3.2	Ambient air quality standards .....	75
5.5.3.3	Point source emission standards .....	76
5.5.3.4	Mitigation measures .....	76
5.5.3.5	Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL) requirements .....	76
5.5.3.6	Odour, noise and dust .....	76
5.5.4	<i>Atmospheric Impact Reports</i> .....	76
5.6	AUTHORISATIONS .....	77
5.6.1	<i>Introduction</i> .....	77
5.6.2	<i>Procedures and timeframes in relation to various authorisations under AQA</i> .....	78
5.6.2.1	Procedure and timeframes for new AEL with EA .....	78
5.6.2.2	Procedure and timeframes for a new AEL without EA .....	78
5.6.2.3	Procedure and timeframes for AEL renewal .....	79
5.6.2.4	Procedures and timeframes for AEL review .....	79
5.6.2.5	Procedures and timeframes for AEL variation .....	80
5.6.2.6	Procedures and timeframes for AEL transfer .....	82
5.6.3	<i>Consequences of conducting a listed activity without an AEL</i> .....	83
5.7	COMPLIANCE MONITORING .....	85
5.7.1	<i>Introduction</i> .....	85
5.7.2	<i>National measures</i> .....	85
5.7.3	<i>Provincial measures</i> .....	85
5.7.4	<i>Municipal measures</i> .....	85
5.8	ENFORCEMENT .....	85
5.8.1	<i>Offences</i> .....	85
5.8.2	<i>By-laws</i> .....	86
5.8.2.1	Local government competence .....	86
5.8.2.2	Schedule 4 functional areas .....	86
5.8.2.3	Model air pollution control by-laws .....	86
5.9	CROSS-CUTTING PRINCIPLES .....	87
5.9.1	<i>Public Participation</i> .....	87
5.9.1.1	The importance of public participation in air quality decision-making .....	87
5.9.1.2	Promoting best practices for effective and equitable public participation .....	87
5.9.1.3	Provision of up-to-date information on project activities .....	87
5.9.1.4	Effective announcement of public participation opportunities .....	87
5.9.1.5	Ensuring early and balanced participation .....	87
5.9.1.6	Responding to stakeholder contributions .....	88
5.9.1.7	Addressing the needs of vulnerable groups .....	88
5.9.1.8	Professional and skilled process management .....	88
5.9.1.9	Issues relevant for specific air quality decision-processes .....	88
5.9.1.10	Raising awareness and engaging the public in air quality decision-processes .....	88
5.9.2	<i>Capacity development</i> .....	88
5.9.2.1	Introduction .....	88
5.9.2.2	Definition of capacity building .....	89
5.9.2.3	Strategies for capacity building .....	89
5.9.2.4	Technical capacity development .....	89
5.9.3	<i>Information dissemination</i> .....	91
5.9.4	<i>National Air Quality Officer's (NAQO) Report</i> .....	91
6.	<b>THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK REVIEW PROCESS</b> .....	<b>92</b>
6.1	BACKGROUND TO THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK REVIEW PROCESS .....	92
6.2	REVIEW OF THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK .....	93
6.3	PROGRESS WITH RESPECT TO THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS .....	94
6.4	THE FUTURE .....	99
6.4.1	<i>Horizon Scanning</i> .....	99
6.4.2	<i>Potential Issues for Future Development</i> .....	99
7.	<b>REPEAL OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA</b> .....	<b>100</b>

8. SHORT TITLE AND COMMENCEMENT .....100  
REFERENCES .....101  
GLOSSARY AND DEFINITIONS .....102  
APPENDIX 1: NATIONAL AIR QUALITY INDICATOR STATIONS .....104  
APPENDIX 2: MUNICIPAL AIR QUALITY RATING .....107  
APPENDIX 3: INDICATORS TO BE INCLUDED IN THE NATIONAL AQO'S ANNUAL REPORT .....108

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: National legislation directly or indirectly linked to the management of air quality .....	11
Table 2: National departments, other than DEA, that have an interest or responsibilities in respect of managing atmospheric emissions within their jurisdictions .....	23
Table 3: Typical AQA governance functions relating to information management .....	26
Table 4: Typical AQA governance functions relating to problem identification and prioritisation .....	27
Table 5: Typical AQA governance functions relating to strategy development .....	28
Table 6: Typical AQA governance functions relating to standard setting .....	28
Table 7: Typical AQA governance functions relating to policy and regulation development .....	30
Table 8: Typical AQA governance functions relating to authorisations. ....	31
Table 9: Typical AQA governance functions relating to compliance monitoring.....	32
Table 10: SAAQIS ambient air quality related implementation targets.....	39
Table 11: SAAQIS policy and legislation related implementation targets.....	40
Table 12: South African AQI bands for NO <sub>2</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> and CO.....	42
Table 13: Health messages to be communicated to the public for the different AQI bands .....	42
Table 14: National Atmospheric Emissions Inventory Modules development targets .....	49
Table 15: Pollutants of concern.....	51
Table 16: Declared national priority areas.....	52
Table 17: The 2013 list of activities and associated emissions standards .....	58
Table 18: Schedule of Government notices and regulations in terms of the AQA .....	67
Table 19: The National Air Quality Officer's Annual Report related implementation targets .....	92
Table 20: Progress against the 2012 National Framework indicators .....	94

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: The environmental governance cycle for continued improvements in environmental quality.....	25
Figure 2: Intergovernmental horizontal and vertical coordination and cooperation structures associated with air quality governance.....	35
Figure 3: The 3D governance model.....	37
Figure 4: Location of National Air Quality Indicator Stations.....	48
Figure 5: Summary of a process for priority area declaration and management.....	52
Figure 6 : Metropolitan and District Municipalities Air Quality Ratings.....	53
Figure 7: The generic standard setting process.....	55
Figure 8: The standard setting process for ambient air quality.....	57
Figure 9: Procedure for the identification of listed activities.....	61
Figure 10: The generic air quality management planning process.....	70
Figure 11: The interrelationship between the atmospheric emission licensing and environmental impact assessment processes.....	75
Figure 12: Process flow for AEL without EIA.....	78
Figure 13: Process flow for AEL renewal.....	79
Figure 14: Process flow for AEL review.....	80
Figure 15: Process flows for AEL variation.....	81
Figure 16: Process flows for AEL variation (with no potential increase in emissions).....	82
Figure 17: Process flow for AEL transfer.....	83
Figure 18: Section 22A process flow cart.....	84
Figure 19: Timetable for the National Framework review process.....	93

## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Background

The requirements for a National Framework on Air Quality Management in South Africa are stipulated in Section 7 of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004), herein after referred to as the Air Quality Act or the AQA. The AQA requires the Minister, by notice in the Gazette, to establish a National Framework for achieving the objectives of the AQA. To this end, the minister published the 1<sup>st</sup> National Framework in 2007. As an inaugural framework, the 2007 framework was a less technical document that aimed at unpacking the AQA in some detail to ensure that all South Africans understand the intentions of the Act. The AQA further stipulates in section 7(5) (b) that the National framework must be reviewed in intervals of no more than 5 years. As such the 2007 National Framework was reviewed in 2012, leading to the publication of the 2012 National Framework. In accordance with the same clause, the framework was reviewed in 2017 and this document presents the revision of the 2012 National Framework.

### 1.2 Overview

The AQA is pivoted on the Bill of Rights contained in the Constitution of South Africa (1996), hereafter referred to as “the constitution”. The Bill enshrines the rights of all people in the country and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom. The state must respect, protect, promote and fulfil the rights in the Bill of Rights.

Section 24 of the Constitution states that everyone has the right:

- a. *To an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and*
- b. *To have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that -*
  - i *prevent pollution and ecological degradation;*
  - ii *promote conservation; and*
  - iii *secure ecologically sustainable development and the use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development*

In order to give effect to this right in the context of air quality, it is necessary to ensure that levels of air pollution are not harmful to human health or well-being, meaning that ambient air quality standards are achieved. To achieve this, the AQA provides an objectives-based approach to the management of air quality at different governance and operational levels and is the legislative means to ensuring that the rights described above are upheld. This framework presents the implementation framework of the AQA.

### 1.3 Purpose and scope of the National Framework

The purpose of the National Framework is to achieve the objectives of the AQA, and as such the National Framework provides a medium- to long-term plan of the practical implementation of the AQA. The Framework provides mechanisms, systems and procedures to promote holistic and integrated air quality management through pollution prevention and minimisation at source, and through impact management with respect to the receiving environment from local scale to international issues. Hence, the National Framework provides norms and standards for all technical aspects of air quality management.

Section 7(1) of the AQA requires the National Framework to include the following:

- Mechanisms, systems and procedures to –  
attain compliance with ambient air quality standards;  
give effect to the Republic’s obligations in terms of international agreements;
- National norms and standards for –
  - the control of emissions from point and non-point sources;
  - air quality monitoring;
  - air quality management planning;
  - air quality information management; and
- Any other matter which the Minister considers necessary for achieving the object of the AQA.

Section 7(2) of the AQA requires that the norms and standards established in the National Framework are aimed at ensuring:

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- Opportunities for public participation in the protection and enhancement of air quality;
- Public access to air quality information;
- The prevention of air pollution and degradation of air quality;
- The reduction of discharges likely to impair air quality, including the reduction of air pollution at source;
- The promotion of efficient and effective air quality management;
- Effective air quality monitoring;
- Regular reporting on air quality; and
- Compliance with the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements.

The National Framework, in terms of Section 7(3) of the AQA:

- binds all organs of state in all spheres of government; and
- may assign and delineate responsibilities for the implementation of the AQA amongst:

The different spheres of government; and different organs of state.

#### 1.4 Guiding principles

The National Framework is informed by the principles set out in Section 2 of the NEMA.

“SMART” principles are also relevant to goal and objective setting in air quality management. SMART principles are:

- **Specific:** Goals should be detailed and should relate to narrowly-defined tasks.
- **Measurable:** Goals should have defined end-points and a mechanism for benchmarking progress.
- **Achievable:** Goals should be set within the context of practical limitations.
- **Realistic:** Goals should acknowledge the current situation and aim to reach air quality goals that are protective of the right to an environment that is not harmful to health and well-being.
- **Time-related:** Time constraints should be factored into goal-setting exercises, and time frames provided for achieving goals that are set.

#### 1.5 Structure of the document

- **Chapter 1** provides the purpose of the National Framework and its scope.
- **Chapter 2** provides insights into the legislative and policy context relating to air quality management.
- **Chapter 3** describes the roles and responsibilities of the stakeholders in respect of air quality management.
- **Chapter 4** outlines the integrative air quality governance cycle emphasising the dependence of successful implementation on horizontal and vertical integration.
- **Chapter 5** discusses problem identification and prioritisation, norms and standards for the setting of ambient air quality standards, for Listed Activities and emission standards, Controlled Emitters, Controlled Fuels and Air Quality Management Plans (AQMPs) and provides information on regulations, compliance and enforcement, air quality impact assessments and the linkages between the approval process for Environmental Impact Assessments (EIAs) and the application for an Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL). The underpinning principles of public participation, capacity development and information dissemination are also covered in Chapter 5.
- **Chapter 6** discusses the National Framework review process.

## 2. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY CONTEXT

### 2.1 Introduction

The management of air quality in South Africa is influenced by policy and legislation developed at international, national, provincial and municipal levels. National policy provides the critical reference point for air quality management and is discussed in detail in Paragraph 2.2. Provincial legislation expands on the national approach and can be used to address particular air quality issues, although there are currently no examples of provincial air quality legislation within South Africa. Municipal authorities influence air quality governance through the introduction of by-laws, which are legally enforceable within the municipal authority's jurisdiction (Paragraph 2.3). In an international context, trans-boundary air pollution and global air quality impacts are relevant. South Africa has obligations under multi-lateral environmental agreements, which are discussed in Paragraph 2.4. Some progress towards regional air pollution agreements within the southern African context has recently been made and is discussed in Paragraph 2.4.4.

### 2.2 National policy

#### 2.2.1 Background

Since 1965, the approach to air pollution control in South Africa was informed and driven by the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 (Act No. 45 of 1965) (hereinafter "the APPA"). The APPA did not set targets or standards that would permit the achievement of an environment that is not harmful to health or well-being. This requirement is now contained in the Bill of Rights in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, (see Paragraph 1.2 of this document). The Constitution is thus the pivotal piece of legislation that informs all environmental legislation.

Given this environmental right, it was clear that air quality legislation that included an underlying drive towards cleaner air was needed. Following on from this, the publication in May 2000 of a critical policy document, the White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management for South Africa – A Policy on Pollution Prevention, Waste Minimisation, Impact Management and Remediation (IP&WM, 2000) marked a turning point for pollution and waste governance in South Africa. From an air quality management perspective, the new policy represented a paradigm shift in approach and necessitated the introduction of a new approach to air quality management, which is detailed in Paragraph 2.2.3.

The new national air quality legislation forms one of a suite of laws that are framed within overarching environmental management legislation, which is outlined in Paragraph 2.2.2 as a precursor to the discussion on national air quality legislation.

#### 2.2.2 National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (the NEMA)

The NEMA as amended provides the legislative framework for environmental management in South Africa. Its purpose is to provide for cooperative environmental governance, and it defines principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment. Some of the key principles of the NEMA were mentioned in Paragraph 1.4. Further principles from Chapter 1 of the NEMA that are relevant to air pollution are:

- *pollution avoidance or minimisation* - that pollution and degradation of the environment must be avoided, or, where they cannot be altogether avoided, are minimised and remedied;
- *waste avoidance and consideration of life cycle assessment* - that waste is avoided, or where it cannot be altogether avoided, it must be minimised and re-used or recycled where possible or disposed of in a responsible manner;

The NEMA further provides for the establishment of the fora or advisory committees as a body to encourage stakeholder participation (Section 3 of the NEMA). Cooperative governance is outlined in Chapter 3 of the NEMA and mechanisms for conflict resolution in Chapter 4. Integrated Environmental Management is used as a guiding philosophy to ensure that impacts are considered across different spheres of influence, including social dimensions (Chapter 5 of the NEMA). Chapter 6 of the NEMA takes cognisance of obligations in terms of international agreements, while Chapter 7 provides legislative means for compliance and enforcement. Methods of compliance, enforcement and protection within the jurisdiction of the NEMA are detailed, and the process for developing Environmental Management Cooperation Agreements, which are a mechanism for cooperative governance, is outlined in NEMA Chapter 8.

The NEMA provides government with the regulatory tools to implement the National Environmental Management Policy. The AQA forms one of the many pieces of legislation that fall under the ambit of the NEMA.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**2.2.3 National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (the AQA)**

The AQA represents a distinct shift from exclusively source-based air pollution control to holistic and integrated effects-based air quality management. It focuses on the adverse impacts of air pollution on the ambient environment and sets standards for pollutant levels in ambient air. At the same time it sets emission standards to minimise the amount of pollution that enters the environment.

The objects of the legislation as stated in Chapter 1 are as follows:

- to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for -  
the protection and enhancement of the quality of air in the Republic;  
the prevention of air pollution and ecological degradation; and  
securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development; and
- generally to give effect to Section 24(b) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, in order to enhance the quality of ambient air for the sake of securing an environment that is not harmful to the health and well-being of people.

The National Framework is one of the significant functions detailed in Chapter 2 of the AQA. The framework serves as a blueprint for air quality management and aims to achieve the air quality objectives as described in the preamble of the AQA.

Chapter 3 of the AQA covers institutional and planning matters summarised as follows:

- The Minister may establish a National Air Quality Advisory Committee as a subcommittee of the NEAF established in terms of the NEMA;
- Air Quality Officers (AQOs) must be appointed at each level of government (national, provincial, municipal);
- Each national department or province preparing an Environmental Implementation Plan (EIP) or Environmental Management Plan (EMP) in terms of the NEMA must include an Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP). Each municipality preparing an Integrated Development Plan (IDP) must include an AQMP;
- The contents of the AQMPs are prescribed in detail;
- Each organ of state is required to report on the implementation of its AQMP in the annual report submitted in terms of the NEMA.

In Chapter 4 of the AQA, air quality management measures are outlined in terms of:

- the declaration of Priority Areas, where ambient air quality standards are being, or may be, exceeded;
- the listing of activities that result in atmospheric emissions and which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment;
- the declaration of Controlled Emitters;
- the declaration of Controlled Fuels
- other measures to address substances contributing to air pollution, that may include the implementation of a Pollution Prevention Plan or an Atmospheric Impact Report;
- the requirements for addressing dust, noise and offensive odours.

Licensing of Listed Activities through an Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL) is addressed in Chapter 5 of the AQA, international air quality management in Chapter 6 and offences and penalties in Chapter 7.

**2.2.4 Other related national legislation**

There are many other pieces of national legislation that impact either directly or indirectly on the implementation of the AQA. These have been captured in Table 1 showing the links and relevance to air quality management in general and the implementation of the AQA in particular.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Table 1: National legislation directly or indirectly linked to the management of air quality

Legislation	Air quality management links	Relevance
National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act No. 102 of 1980)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides for the protection of significant State or private assets, relative to national security</li> <li>Regulates the flow of information regarding Key Point activity</li> <li>Allows for measures to be implemented to maintain the security of a Key Point</li> </ul>	Many significant emitters have been classified as National Key Points, and the Act is used to regulate access to information
Protection of Information Act, 1982 (Act No. 84 of 1982)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Covers the protection of information related to defence, terrorism and hostile organisations</li> <li>Information regarding these activities in any form is prohibited access and cannot be disseminated</li> <li>Prohibited places can be declared, which also fall under this protection</li> </ul>	Can be used to regulate access to information on air quality
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regulates burning of veld, except in state forests</li> <li>Allows for control and prevention of veld fires through prescribed control measures</li> <li>Allows for control measures to be prescribed regarding the utilisation and protection of veld that has been burned</li> </ul>	Addresses controlled burning, which directly impacts on ambient air quality
Local Government Municipal Structures Act, 1988 (Act No. 117 of 1998)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishes municipal categories</li> <li>Designates functions and powers of municipalities</li> </ul>	Specifies that responsibility for integrated development planning, within which air quality management plans must reside, rests with district municipalities
National Veld and Forest Fires Act, 1988 (Act No. 101 of 1998)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Purpose is to combat and prevent veld, forest and mountain fires</li> <li>Fire Protection Agency can be designated for control and has power to conduct controlled burning with respect to conservation of ecosystems and reduction of fire danger</li> <li>Lighting, maintenance and using of fires is regulated</li> </ul>	Addresses controlled burning, which directly impacts on ambient air quality
National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishes strategy to address management of water resources including protection and use of water</li> <li>Establishes management agencies</li> <li>Provides for pollution prevention and remediation, including land-based sources</li> <li>Addresses emergency incidents, including land-based pollutant sources</li> </ul>	Pollution sources from land-based activities that impact on water resources
Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides a framework for planning by local government</li> <li>Describes contents of an integrated development plan and the process to be followed</li> </ul>	Air quality management plans are to be incorporated into integrated development plans
Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides for the health and safety of persons at work, including atmospheric emission from workplaces</li> <li>Sets out certain general duties of employers and to their employees</li> <li>Empowers the Minister of Labour to make regulations regarding various matters</li> <li>Further require any employer to ensure that their activities do not expose non-employees to health hazards</li> </ul>	The air emissions from the workplace environment has atmospheric quality implications

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Legislation	Air quality management links	Relevance
Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Facilitates constitutional right of access to any information whether held by State or another person (if it is related to exercise or protection of a right)</li> <li>Details the means to access records, whether public or private</li> <li>Does not detract from provisions in the NEMA Section 1 and Section 2</li> <li>Allows for denial of access based on defence, security or international relations</li> </ul>	Promotes access to information, including air quality information, although it has provisions for refusing access
Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act No. 3 of 2000)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details the administrative procedure to be followed when carrying out an administrative action, and the process of review</li> </ul>	Formal interactions between government departments, the public and other stakeholders by informing due process in decision-making
International Trade Administration Act, 2002 (Act No. 71 of 2002)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishes the International Trade Administration Commission as an administrative body</li> <li>Regulates the import and export of controlled substances</li> </ul>	Import and export control related to ozone-depleting substances through the declaration of controlled substance
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>States that environmental authorisation is required for obtaining prospecting and mining right.</li> <li>For environmental authorisations, scoping, EIA, specialist reports (including air quality specialist report), and EMP are needed. The Act states that it is necessary to submit an environmental management programme if applying for a mining right, and an environmental management plan if applying for reconnaissance permission</li> <li>The Minister is required to consult with any state department which administers any law relating to matters that affect the environment and must request the comments of that department on the environmental plan or programme being considered</li> <li>Provisions are made for monitoring and auditing of environmental performance</li> <li>Regulation 64 of MPRDA regulations stipulates that, the holder of a mining right or permit must comply with laws relating to air quality management and control</li> <li>Stockpiles require compliance monitoring and decommissioning</li> <li>Closure certificate authorisation is dependent on approval from other environmental departments that potential environmental impacts have been addressed</li> </ul>	Grants the decision-making power on matters potentially affecting the air environment to the Minister of Minerals and Energy in the case of mining activities but includes the obligation to comply with the AQA
National Health Act, 2003 (Act No. 61 of 2003)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Makes reference to the performing of environmental pollution control by municipalities.</li> <li>Municipal health services are defined as including the responsibility for environmental pollution control</li> <li>The responsibility for municipal health services rests with metropolitan and district municipalities</li> <li>National and provincial departments of health have the duty to perform environmental pollution control</li> </ul>	Air quality management falls within environmental pollution control

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Legislation	Air quality management links	Relevance
Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act No. 13 of 2005)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determines a framework to facilitate interaction and coordination, in the implementation of legislation, between spheres of government</li> <li>• Principles of participation, consultation and consideration are included</li> <li>• Establishes structures for coordination at different spheres of government</li> <li>• Establishes an implementation protocol mechanism as a tool for coordination</li> <li>• Provides mechanisms for conflict resolution, including the appointment of a facilitator</li> </ul>	Provides mechanisms for coordination and conflict resolution across spheres of government in aspects of legislative implementation
National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promotes cleaner technology, cleaner production and consumption practices for pollution minimisation</li> <li>• Addresses impacts of waste disposal on the environment, including air</li> <li>• Provides for numerous measures related to waste disposal including standards, integrated waste management planning, municipal waste management, priority wastes, licensing, waste management information system</li> </ul>	Closely linked through issues of emissions to the air from thermal treatment activities and landfill sites
Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act No. 57 of 2002)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides for the declaration of certain areas as disaster areas;</li> <li>• Disaster is defined as including the damage to the environment;</li> <li>• Provides for an integrated and co-ordinated disaster management policy that focuses on preventing or reducing the risk of disasters, mitigating the severity of disasters, emergency preparedness, rapid and effective response to disasters and post-disaster recovery;</li> <li>• Provides for the establishment of national, provincial and municipal disaster management centres.</li> </ul>	Certain air pollution episodes can be disastrous. Inversely, certain disasters result in air pollution.
Accreditation for Conformity Assessment, Calibration and Good Laboratory Practice, 2006 (Act No. 19 of 2006)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides national and international recognition of the reliability of data produced by conformity assessment bodies involved in air quality management.</li> </ul>	An accreditation service can be used to provide confidence to stakeholders regarding the reliability of data produced by conformity assessment bodies.

### 2.3 Municipal by-laws

According to Section 156(2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, a municipality may make and administer by-laws for the effective administration of matters that it has the right to administer. Air pollution is listed as a matter in which local government has authority and national or provincial government may not compromise or impede a municipality's right to exercise its powers or perform its functions. Within this context, municipalities may develop by-laws that deal with air pollution. The Model Air Pollution Control By-laws have been developed and published by the Minister in on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of July 2010 (Gazette No. 3342; Notice 579). See paragraph 5.8.2 of this document.

### 2.4 International policy

South Africa has ratified several multilateral environmental agreements relating to air quality and is obligated to implement the conditions of these agreements.

South Africa's commitments in the international arena address three major air quality issues, namely, greenhouse gases and associated climate change; stratospheric ozone depletion and persistent organic pollutants (POPs).

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**2.4.1 Greenhouse gases and climate change****2.4.1.1 United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC)**

The United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) provides the framework for addressing climate change as a global issue and was founded in 1992, and came into force in 1994. It provides a broad consensus for establishing institutions and practices to address climate change by introducing processes of on-going review, discussion and information exchange. The UNFCCC also differentiated between the responsibilities of developed and developing countries, by designating Annex 1 and Non-Annex 1 status, respectively, to parties to the convention. Developed countries have greater commitments as stated in Annex 4 of the Convention. The framework convention is expanded on through protocols, of which the Kyoto Protocol is the most recent and well recognised.

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in August 1997, and is classified as a non-Annex 1 Party, or a developing country. South Africa has obligations as stated in Article 4 Paragraph 1 of the UNFCCC, including the preparation of the National Communication, which incorporates an inventory of greenhouse gases (GHGs).

During December 2015, countries across the globe committed to a new International Climate Agreement by the conclusion of the UNFCCC Conference of the Parties (COP21) in Paris. In preparation for this Agreement, countries had to agree to publicly outline what post-2020 climate actions they intend to take under a new international agreement, known as their Intended Nationally Determined Contributions (INDCs). The process for INDCs pairs national policy-setting — in which countries determine their contributions in the context of their national priorities, circumstances and capabilities — with a global framework that drives collective action toward a low-carbon and climate-resilient future. After the Paris Agreement, the INDCs have now become Nationally Determined Contributions (NDCs). Thus, countries are expected to implement what they have presented in their INDCs and periodic report on progress towards their implementation. South Africa's NDC reflects the country's ambition for reducing emissions, taking into account its domestic circumstances and capabilities.

**2.4.1.2 South Africa's UNFCCC obligations**

In terms of the provisions of the UNFCCC and the Kyoto Protocol, the Republic must:

- Prepare and periodically update a national inventory of greenhouse gas emissions and sinks.
- Formulate and implement national and, where appropriate, regional programmes to mitigate climate change and facilitate adequate adaptation to climate change.
- Promote and cooperate in the development, application and diffusion of technologies, practices and processes that control, reduce or prevent anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases.
- Implement the Nationally Determined Contributions (NDCs) to global GHG reductions and periodic report on progress towards its implementation

**2.4.1.3 South Africa's contributions to the global effort to reduce GHG emissions**

The Government of South Africa has published a National Climate Change Response White Paper (October 2011) that presents the Government's vision for an effective climate change response and the long-term, just transition to a climate-resilient and lower-carbon economy and society. The Policy has two objectives:

- To effectively manage inevitable climate change impacts through interventions that build and sustain South Africa's social, economic and environmental resilience and emergency response capacity; and
- To make a fair contribution to the global effort to stabilise greenhouse gas (GHG) concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that avoids dangerous anthropogenic interference with the climate system within a timeframe that enables economic, social and environmental development to proceed in a sustainable manner.

In addition to the policy and as a first step towards meeting its international obligations referred to Section 2.4.1.2 above, South Africa used the AQA to regulate greenhouse gas emissions. The following three instruments were promulgated:

**Declaration of GHGs as priority air pollutants**

The Minister declared following greenhouse gases as priority air pollutants and require a person falling within the category specified in this Notice to prepare and submit to the Minister a pollution prevention plan for approval, in terms of section 29(1) read with section 29(4) of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004):

- Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>);

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- Methane (CH<sub>4</sub>);
- Nitrous oxide (N<sub>2</sub>O);
- Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs);
- Perfluorocarbons (PFCs); and
- Sulphur hexafluoride (SF<sub>6</sub>).

**National Pollution Prevention Plans Regulations**

The Minister made the National Pollution Prevention Plans Regulations, in terms of section 53(a), (o) and (p) read with section 29(3) of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004). The purpose of these regulations is to prescribe the requirements that pollution prevention plans of greenhouse gases declared as priority air pollutants need to comply with in terms of section 29(3) of the Act. Implementation of these plans will help South Africa register its progress towards attainment of its emission reduction objective and tracking its NDC.

**National Greenhouse Gas Emission Reporting Regulations**

The minister has promulgated the National GHG reporting regulations in terms of section 53 (aA), (o) and (p) read with section 12 of AQA. The purpose of these Regulations is to introduce a single national reporting system for the transparent reporting of greenhouse gas emissions, which will primarily be used to:

- Inform policy formulation, implementation and legislation;
- Enable the Republic of South Africa to meet its reporting obligations under the United Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and instrument treaties to which it is bound; and
- Establish and maintain a National GHG emissions inventory.

**2.4.2 Stratospheric ozone depletion****2.4.2.1 The Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer**

The Vienna Convention was agreed upon in 1985, with countries expressing commitment to conduct research and share information on stratospheric ozone depletion. The convention focused on the protection of human health and the environment from adverse effects resulting from anthropogenic influences on ozone destruction. Chemicals responsible for ozone destruction were also identified and monitored. The convention provided the framework for a binding agreement on addressing ozone depletion. The convention is also viewed as significant as it demonstrates the cooperation of international governments to address a global environmental issue. South Africa acceded to the convention in January 1990.

**2.4.2.2 The Montreal Protocol on Substances that deplete the Ozone Layer**

The Montreal Protocol was signed in September 1987 as a means of addressing the production, supply and use of ozone-depleting substances (ODS). It puts in place procedures for the phasing out of ODS such as chlorofluorocarbons and halons. The schedules for phase-out and obligations take cognisance of developed and developing country status, designated as Article 5 and non-Article 5 parties respectively. The protocol was significantly amended in 1990 (London Amendment) and 1992 (Copenhagen Amendment), with further amendments made in 1997 (Montreal Amendment) and 1999 (Beijing Amendment). The amendments served to include additional obligations and additional ozone-depleting substances, such as methyl bromide, hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) and methyl chloroform, and also to tighten schedules of compliance.

South Africa has ratified the protocol in January 1990, and acceded to all the amendments. South Africa is currently in full compliance with the conditions of the protocol.

**Obligations**

Parties are required to reduce or eliminate/ban the consumption of ozone depleting substances (ODS) identified in the Protocol. (Consumption is defined as production plus imports minus exports of controlled substances).

**Trade measures**

- Parties are required to ban the import and export of controlled substances, as well as of products relying on the use of these substances, from and to States not party to the Protocol;
- Parties are to implement a licensing system for the import and export of new, used, recycled or reclaimed controlled

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

substances, from and to other Parties to the Protocol;

- Parties are to implement measures to control the import and export of products and equipment relying on the use of controlled substances, from and to other Parties to the Protocol;
- Ban the import of HCFCs from non-parties, starting January 1, 2004; and
- Ban on trade in bromochloromethane with non-parties as of January 1, 2001.

**Reporting**

Parties are to provide annual statistical data to the Secretariat of the Protocol on their production and consumption of controlled substances, as well as on their imports and exports of controlled substances. Production is defined as total production minus amounts destroyed or used as chemical feedstock. Consumption is defined as production plus imports minus exports. Trade in recycled and used chemicals is not included in the calculation of consumption in order to encourage recovery, reclamation and recycling.

**South Africa's contribution to the Montreal protocol**

South Africa does not produce the ODSs but only imports them into the country. The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) as the focal point for the implementation of the Montreal Protocol on substances that deplete the ozone layer. In fulfilling South Africa's obligations to the Montreal Protocol, the Minister of Environmental affairs promulgated the Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone Depleting Substances were promulgated on 8<sup>th</sup> May 2014. The Regulations provide for the banning, phase-out schedules/milestones of ODSs. The types of ODS that are typically consumed in South Africa includes HCFC 222 use in refrigeration, HCFC 141b used in rigid and integral skin polyurethane foam, HCFC 142b used in manufacturing extruded polystyrene and Methyl bromine used in agricultural goods.

The management of the ODSs in South Africa is done by DEA in collaboration with South African Revenue Services (SARS), International Trade Administration Commission (ITAC), Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) with regular engagements with industry stakeholders that deal with ozone depleting substances. Any company that wish to Import ODSs into the country must apply to the DEA for a recommendation. After considering the quota allocated to that particular company, DEA then recommends to ITAC for the issuance of the Permit to import such chemical. It is through the quota allocation system that ODS are being managed and gradually phased out as required by the Montreal Protocol.

**2.4.2.3 Obligations for South Africa according to the Vienna Convention and Montreal Protocol related to air quality**

South Africa's phase out obligations are summarised in Table 3: Typical AQA governance functions relating to information management. Table 3 below:

**Table 3: Phase out schedule for South Africa**

Substance	South Africa	
	Consumption Freeze	Phase Out
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFC)	01 July 1999	01 January 2010 (with possible essential-use exemption)
Halons	01 January 2002	01 January 2010 (with possible essential-use exemption)
Other Fully Halogenated CFCs	-	01 January 2010 (with possible essential-use exemption)
Carbon Tetrachloride	-	01 January 2010 (with possible essential-use exemption)
Methyl Chloroform	01 January 2003	01 January 2015 (with possible essential-use exemption)

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs)	01 January 2013	97.5 % HCFC phase-out by 01 January 2030 and thereafter, consumption restricted to the servicing of refrigeration and air conditioning equipment existing at that date.  100% HCFC reduction by January 1, 2040
Methyl Bromide	01 January 2002	01 January 2015 (with possible essential-use exemption)
Bromochloromethane (BCM)	-	01 January 2002 (with possible essential-use exemption)
Bromodifluoromethane (HBFCs)	-	1 January 1996 (with possible essential-use exemptions).

### 2.4.3 Persistent pollutants

#### 2.4.3.1 *The Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs)*

The Stockholm Convention was signed in May 2001, and came into force in May 2004. The Convention is intended to address the production and use, or banning, of POPs for the protection of human health and the environment. Twelve pollutants are considered in the convention, including pesticides such as dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT), industrial chemicals of hexachlorobenzene and polychlorinated biphenyls, and unintended by-products including dioxins and furans. Intentionally produced POPs are targeted for reduction and elimination, and unintentional production requires feasible elimination. The management and disposal of stockpiles of obsolete chemicals are also addressed. Trade restrictions are included in the convention. Reporting processes, implementation plans and information provision measures are also included in the convention.

South Africa ratified the convention in 2002, and it came into force in 2004. DDT is still in use in the country despite the provisions of the convention, as sufficient epidemiological evidence has been provided to motivate its continued use in the control of malaria vectors. The use of the chemical is monitored through a reporting structure. A National Implementation Plan (NIP) for the Convention was approved and published by the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs in September 2012 and was submitted to the Convention Secretariat. The NIP requires monitoring and reporting of the Dioxins and Furans for priority areas in the South African Environment Outlook. The Africa Stockpiles Programme is also a significant measure as funds are provided by developed countries for the safe disposal of POPs and contaminated soil.

#### 2.4.3.2 *International concerns around Mercury, Lead and Cadmium*

The United Nation Environmental Programme (UNEP) a globally legally binding instrument on mercury under the Minamata Convention. The aim of the instrument is to minimise the effects of mercury to humans and environment with the goal of eliminating anthropogenic mercury release and production where feasible. Based on the advanced text, the convention addresses the following mercury issues:

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- Mercury supplies
- International trade in mercury (and mercury products)
- Mercury products and processes
- Mercury in artisanal small-scale gold mining
- Mercury emissions and releases into the environment
- Storage, waste and contaminated sites
- Financial resources and technical and implementation assistance
- Awareness raising, research and monitoring, and communication of information

South Africa has signed (but not ratified) the Minamata Convention text in Japan, 2013. The country is currently completing a Cost-Benefit Analysis to find out what will be the socio-economic implications for South Africa if it ratifies the Minamata Convention on mercury for all affected sectors and industries.

With regard to Lead and Cadmium, UNEP have been working to address these pollutants since 2003. UNEP has identified priorities for action in connection with lead and cadmium. These priorities include the push to eliminate leaded paints and fuels and the promotion of environmentally sound management throughout the life cycle of lead and cadmium batteries. South Africa has already phased out leaded fuels but will monitor developments in this field in the future.

#### 2.4.4 Regional policy

Southern Africa has made progress toward developing environmental management policy across the region, including initiatives through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD) and the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

#### 2.4.5 The AQA and International Policy

The AQA contains a number of direct and indirect references to "the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements". South Africa's membership of the "global community" is recognised in the preamble to the AQA as follows "...atmospheric emissions of ozone-depleting substances, greenhouse gases and other substances have deleterious effects on the environment both locally and globally". Furthermore, greenhouse gases are captured in the definitions section of AQA.

The AQA also includes a number of direct references and provisions regarding South Africa's commitments in respect of air quality related multilateral environmental agreements as illustrated in the following -

- **The National Framework** - In terms of section 7(1) of AQA, the Minister must establish a national framework for achieving the objectives of the Act and this framework must include, among others, mechanisms, systems and procedures to give effect to "the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements" (Section 7(1) (b)). Furthermore, the national norms and standards established by the national framework must be aimed at ensuring "compliance with the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements" (Section 7(2) (h)).
- **National monitoring and information management standards** - In terms of section 8(c) of AQA, the national framework must establish national standards for, among others, the collection and management of data necessary to "assess compliance with the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements" (Section 8(c) (v)).
- **Air Quality Management Plans** - In terms of section 16(1) (a) of AQA, air quality management plans must, among others, seek to implement the Republic's obligations in respect of international agreements (Section 16(1) (a) (vii)).
- **Controlled Emitters** - In terms of section 23(2) of the AQA, in declaring a controlled emitter the Minister or MEC must, among others, "take into account the Republic's obligations in terms of any applicable international agreement" (Section 23(2)(c)).
- **Controlled Fuels** - In terms of section 26(2) of the AQA, in declaring a controlled fuel the Minister or MEC must, among others, "take into account the Republic's obligations in terms of any applicable international agreement" (S.26(2)(c)).
- **International Air Quality Management** - The AQA contains an entire chapter dedicated to international air quality management, namely, Chapter 6. It deals with air pollution that has impacts outside of our borders, as well as with contraventions of multilateral environmental agreements that address environmental pollution. It makes provision

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

for the investigation of offences, or possible offences, and the passing of regulations to address the air quality impacts.

- **Greenhouse Gas Emission Monitoring** - Section 43 of the AQA requires an atmospheric emission licence to specify, among others, greenhouse gas emission measurement and reporting requirements (Section 43(1) (l)).
- **Regulations** - Section 53 of the AQA empowers the Minister to make regulations regarding, among others, "any matter necessary to give effect to the Republic's obligations in terms of an international agreement relating to air quality ..." (Section 53(a)). Furthermore, these regulations may "incorporate, by reference, any code of practice or any national or international standard relating to air quality" (Section 55(1) (d)).

### 3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT

#### 3.1 Introduction

Everyone, to a greater or lesser extent, is responsible for some form of atmospheric emission that has an impact on air quality. Hence, everyone has a role and various responsibilities in respect of air quality management as the following illustrates.

#### 3.2 Government's roles and responsibilities

The role of government is, according to Section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, to use legislative and other means to improve air quality and progressively ensure that ambient air is not harmful to health and well-being. Specific government's roles and responsibilities are clearly spelt out in various government policies and legislation (see Chapter 2 in this document). However, these roles and responsibilities differ across departments and spheres of government

In this regard, departments and spheres of government with specific air quality management mandates, including the Department of Environmental Affairs, the provincial environmental management departments and all municipalities, exercise their roles and functions by implementing the governance cycle described in Chapter 4 of this document. The relationships between different spheres of government in terms of air quality roles and responsibilities should be as stipulated in The Constitution of the Republic South Africa, 1996.

These differing roles and responsibilities are summarised in the following paragraphs.

##### 3.2.1 The National Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA)

The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is the national Lead Agent for environmental management, and hence air quality management, and must therefore provide national norms and standards to ensure coordinated, integrated and cohesive air quality governance.

To this end, the AQA provides for a number of DEA responsibilities within the governance cycle, which is described in Chapter 4. The Minister responsible for Environmental Affairs has a number of exclusive air quality management responsibilities as summarised below:

In this regard, the Minister must:

- Establish the National Framework that must include the items specified in Paragraph 1.2.
- Designate an officer in the Department as the national air quality officer to be responsible for coordinating matters pertaining to air quality management in national government (Section 14(1) of the AQA).
- Identify substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the Minister reasonably believes present such a threat, and the subsequent establishment of national standards for ambient air quality for these substances (See Paragraphs 5.2.3.4 and 5.4.3.2 on problem identification and prioritisation and ambient air quality standards), and the establishment of national emission standards from point and non-point sources for these substances or mixture of substances (See

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Paragraphs 5.4.3.3 on Listed Activities and emission standards).

- Prescribe the manner in which ambient air quality measurements must be carried out and reported and the manner in which measurements of emissions from point and non-point sources are carried out and reported (See Paragraphs 0 and 5.2.3 on ambient air quality monitoring and air quality reporting).
- Assume the role of a Licensing Authorities in terms of section 36(5) of AQA.
- Preparing a national air quality management plan (AQMP) (See Paragraph 5.4.5, on air quality management planning), and preparing an annual report providing information on progress regarding the implementation of the AQMP.
- Publish and maintain a national list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions and which the Minister reasonably believes have a detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social, economic and ecological conditions, or cultural heritage, and for establishing minimum emission standards in respect of a substances or mixture of substances resulting from the Listed Activity (See Paragraph 5.4.3.3, page 58, on Listed Activities).
- Execute the overarching auditing function to ensure that adequate ambient and compliance monitoring occurs nationally.
- Enforce compliance with the AQA, the National Framework and any other relevant legislation.
- Review the impact on air quality of all government policies, strategies, plans, programmes and actions and ensuring that they conform to any other relevant legislation.
- Ensure that air quality information is accessible to all stakeholders (See Paragraph 5.2.1, page 38, on SAAQIS).

The Minister may also:

- Establish a national Air Quality Advisory Committee to advise the Minister on the implementation of AQA.
- Declare an area a national Priority Area if the Minister reasonably believed that ambient air quality standards are being exceeded or are likely to be exceeded, or the area requires specific air quality management action to rectify the situation (See Paragraph 5.4.6.5 on priority area air quality management planning).
- Prescribe the regulations necessary for implementing and enforcing the approved Priority Area AQMP (See Paragraph 5.4.4, page 67, on regulations).
- Declare an appliance or activity as a Controlled Emitter if that appliance or activity results in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, presents a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the Minister reasonably believes present such a threat (See Paragraph 5.4.3.5, page 64, on Controlled Emitters).
- Declare a substance or a mixture of substances, which when used as a fuel in a combustion process, results in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the Minister reasonably believes presents such a threat, as a Controlled Fuel (See Paragraph 5.4.3.6, page 66, on Controlled Fuels).
- Declare any substance contributing to air pollution as a priority air pollutant (See Paragraph 5.3.2 on identifying and prioritising pollutants of concern).
- Investigate situations which create, or are anticipated to contribute to air pollution across the Republic's borders, or air pollution that violates, or is likely to violate, an international agreement binding on the Republic in relation to the prevention, control or correction of pollution and for prescribing measures to prevent, control or correct the emissions within the Republic in consultation with the Cabinet member responsible for foreign affairs.
- Prescribe measures for the control of dust, noise and offensive odours (See Paragraph 5.5.3.6, page 76).
- Carry out atmospheric emission licensing functions in terms of section 36(f), (g) and (3B)
- Issue an integrated environmental authorisation for activities identified in section 24(2) of NEMA and section 19(1) of NEM: Waste Act.
- Make regulations regarding any matter necessary to give effect to the Republic's obligations and information

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

relating to energy that is required for compiling atmospheric emission reports.

### 3.2.2 Provincial environmental departments

Provincial environmental departments are the provincial Lead Agents for environmental management, and hence air quality management, in each province and must therefore provide, where necessary, provincial norms and standards to ensure coordinated, integrated and cohesive air quality governance in the province.

As with the national department, provincial departments have a number of responsibilities within the governance cycle which is described in Chapter 4 of this document. However, each provincial Member of the Executive Committee (MEC) responsible for the environment has a number of exclusive air quality management powers as summarised below:

In this regard, the MEC must:

- Designate an officer in the provincial administration as the provincial Air Quality Officer (AQO) who is responsible for the coordination of all air quality related matters in the province.
- Prepare a provincial AQMP as a component of the EIP (See Paragraph 5.4.6.6).
- Prepare an annual report providing information on progress regarding the implementation of the AQMP and compliance with the provincial implementation plan.
- Process an application for an Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL) if the applicant is a municipality in the province.
- Review the AQMPs received from the municipalities.

The MEC may also:

- Identify substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or any other way, present a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the MEC reasonably believes present such a threat, and the subsequent establishment of provincial standards for ambient air quality for these substances, and the establishment of provincial emission standards from point and non-point sources for these substances or mixture of substances if national standards are not sufficiently strict (See problem identification and prioritisation in Paragraph 5.2.3.4).
- Declare an area as a provincial Priority Area if the MEC reasonably believes that ambient air quality standards are being exceeded or are likely to be exceeded, or the area requires specific air quality management action to rectify the situation.
- Prepare an AQMP for the area in consultation with the AQOs in the affected municipalities (See Paragraph 5.4.6.5), and presenting this plan to the MEC within a stipulated time frame.
- Prescribe the regulations necessary for implementing and enforcing the approved Priority Area AQMP.
- Publish and maintain a provincial list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions and which the MEC reasonably believes have a detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social, economic and ecological conditions, or cultural heritage.
- Establish minimum emission standards in respect of a substance or mixture of substances resulting from the Listed Activity if implementing national standards does not achieve the desired improvement in ambient air quality in the province.
- Declare an appliance or activity as a Controlled Emitter if that appliance or activity results in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, presents a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the MEC reasonably believes presents such a threat.
- Declare a substance or a mixture of substances, which when used as a fuel in a combustion process, results in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, presents a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the MEC reasonably believes presents such

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

a threat, as a Controlled Fuel.

- Declare any substance contributing to air pollution as a provincial priority air pollutant.
- Prescribing measures for the control of dust, noise and offensive odours in the province.
- Establish a programme of public recognition of significant achievement in air pollution prevention in the province.

### 3.2.3 Municipalities

As with the national department and the provincial departments, municipalities have a number of responsibilities within the governance cycle which is described in Chapter 4 of this document. However, each municipality has a number of exclusive air quality management powers as summarised below:

In this regard, the municipality must:

- Designate a municipal AQO from its administration.
- Develop an AQMP for inclusion in its Integrated Development Plan (IDP) in accordance with Chapter 5 of the Municipal Systems Act (See air quality management planning in Paragraph 5.4.6.7, page 72).
- Prepare an annual report including progress regarding the implementation of the AQMP and compliance with the plan.
- Enforce and ensure compliance with the requirements of the regulations developed in terms of the AQA

The municipality may also:

- Establish municipal standards for emissions from point, non-point and mobile sources if a municipality, in terms of its by-laws, identifies a substance or mixture of substances in ambient air which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or any other way, presents a threat to health or well-being or the environment, or which the municipality reasonably believes presents such a threat.
- Require the appointment of an Emission Control Officer in a given company (Section 48 of AQA), thereby extending the powers of the authority by ensuring that the Emission Control Officer is responsible for the company applying the correct measures to minimise emissions.

In addition, Metropolitan and District Municipalities must:

- Implement the atmospheric emission licensing system, and carry out the responsibility for performing the functions of the licensing authority as set out in Chapter 5 of the AQA.

Note: When appointing and designating air quality officers in terms of Section 14 (1) to (3) of the AQA, all spheres of government must ensure that the person designated is of the calibre and academic qualifications that will enable him/her to perform the duties of the AQO which include among others;

- Coordination of matters of air quality within his/her jurisdiction;
- Ensuring representation in meetings with other government officials, industry, NGOs, and other stakeholders;
- Providing input and making decisions on behalf of his/her department on air quality matters at various air quality forums;
- Work with Environmental Management Inspectors on AQA matters;
- Input into the national atmospheric emissions inventory
- Reporting on the state of air;
- Reporting on implementation of AQMP for the jurisdiction; etc.

### 3.2.4 Other national departments

There are a number of national departments that, within their various jurisdictions, have an impact on air quality and, hence, have an interest or responsibilities in respect of managing atmospheric emissions within their jurisdictions as summarised in Table 2 below.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**Table 2: National departments, other than DEA, that have an interest or responsibilities in respect of managing atmospheric emissions within their jurisdictions**

National departments, other than DEA, that have an interest or responsibilities in respect of managing atmospheric emissions within their jurisdictions	
National Department	Examples of interest or responsibility
Department of Energy (DoE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions resulting from the use of fossil fuels;</li> </ul>
Department of Mineral Resources (DMR)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions from mining haul roads;</li> <li>Dust from mine spoil tailings dumps and other mining operations;</li> <li>Dust from open-cast mining operations;</li> <li>Emissions from fires in coal mines, including abandoned mines.</li> </ul>
Department of Health (DoH)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Household fuel burning;</li> <li>Emissions from household products;</li> <li>Emissions from building materials, furniture, floor coverings, adhesives, etc.;</li> <li>Emissions from medical waste treatment plants;</li> <li>Emissions from hospital boilers.</li> </ul>
Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dust from agricultural activities (e.g. ploughing);</li> <li>Emissions from stubble burning;</li> <li>Emissions from sugar cane burning;</li> <li>Emissions from un-surfaced farm roads;</li> <li>Emissions from crop-spraying;</li> <li>Emissions from the burning of fire breaks;</li> <li>The impact of emissions on soil quality (e.g. acidification).</li> <li>Emissions from veld and forest fires;</li> <li>Emissions sinks (e.g. forests as carbon sinks);</li> </ul>
Department of Labour (DoL)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions within the workplace.</li> </ul>
Department of Water Affairs (DWA)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The impact of emissions on water quality (e.g. acidification).</li> </ul>
Department of Transport (DoT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions from various forms of transport (road, rail, aviation and maritime)</li> <li>Emissions from transport infrastructure construction.</li> </ul>
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions from various changes in land-use (e.g. the change from virgin to agricultural land)</li> </ul>
Department of Cooperative Governance (DCG)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions from national disasters where such emissions occur.</li> </ul>
Department of Human Settlements (DHS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emission from coal and wood burning, especially in dense, low-income communities.</li> </ul>
Department of Defence (DoD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions from the use and/or testing of explosives and other weapons.</li> </ul>
Department of Public Enterprises (DPE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions from State-owned enterprises.</li> </ul>
Department of Trade and Industry (DTI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emissions resulting from technology choices.</li> </ul>
Department of Science and Technology (DST)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Development and deployment of technologies to curb emissions and associated research activities.</li> <li>National Global Change Research and related activities</li> </ul>

With regard to specific air quality management responsibilities, national departments that are responsible for preparing an Environmental Implementation Plan (EIP) or Environmental Management Plan (EMP) in terms of Chapter 3 of the NEMA are responsible for:

- Including an AQMP in their respective plans (See Paragraph 5.4.6 on air quality management planning).
- Preparing an annual report providing information on progress regarding the implementation of its AQMP.

### 3.3 INDUSTRY

Emissions from some industries often have a measurable impact on air quality. In this regard, industry too has a responsibility not to impinge on everyone's right to air that is not harmful to health and well-being. Furthermore, in terms of section 28 of the NEMA, industries that cause, have caused or may cause significant pollution or degradation of the environment must take reasonable measures to prevent such pollution or degradation from occurring, continuing or

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

recurring, or, in so far as such harm to the environment is authorised by law or cannot reasonably be avoided or stopped, to minimise and rectify such pollution or degradation of the environment.

In terms of the AQA, certain industries have further responsibilities, including:

- Taking reasonable steps to prevent the emission of any offensive odour caused by any activity on their premises.
- Take reasonable and effective steps to control dust from their activities
- Compliance with any relevant standards for emissions from point, non-point or mobile sources in respect of substances or mixtures of substances identified by the Minister, MEC or municipality.
- Compliance with the measurements requirements of identified emissions from point, non-point or mobile sources and the form in which such measurements must be reported and the organs of state to whom such measurements must be reported.
- Compliance with relevant emission standards in respect of controlled emitters if an activity undertaken by the industry and/or an appliance used by the industry is identified as a controlled emitter.
- Compliance with any usage, manufacture or sale and/or emissions standards or prohibitions in respect of controlled fuels if such fuels are manufactured, sold or used by the industry.
- Comply with the Minister's requirement for the implementation of a pollution prevention plan in respect of a substance declared as a priority air pollutant.
- Comply with an Air Quality Officer's legal request to submit an atmospheric impact report in a prescribed form.
- Comply with the requirements of the regulations on emissions reporting developed in terms of section 12 of AQA

Furthermore, industries identified as Listed Activities (See Paragraph 5.4.3.3) have further responsibilities, including:

- Making application for an Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL) and complying with its provisions.
- Compliance with any minimum emission standards in respect of a substance or mixture of substances identified as resulting from a listed activity.
- Designate an Emission Control Officer if required to do so.
- Comply with a licensing officer's directive as contemplated in section 22A (4)(a) – (g) and sub section (7)

### 3.4 Labour

Workers tend to be in the frontline of pollution problems and exposure to hazardous environments. Recognising this, the NEMA protects workers refusing to do environmentally hazardous work by providing that no person is civilly or criminally liable or may be dismissed, disciplined, prejudiced or harassed on account of having refused to perform any work if the person in good faith and reasonably believed at the time of the refusal that the performance of the work would result in an imminent and serious threat to the environment. Furthermore, the NEMA also protects 'whistle-blowers' by providing that no person is civilly or criminally liable or may be dismissed, disciplined, prejudiced or harassed on account of having disclosed any information, if the person in good faith reasonably believed at the time of the disclosure that he or she was disclosing evidence of an environmental risk and the disclosure was made in accordance with certain provisions.

### 3.5 The general public

As mentioned in the introduction, everyone, to a greater or lesser extent, is responsible for some form of atmospheric emission that has an impact on air quality. Hence, everyone has a role and social responsibility in respect of air quality management. As private individuals, we all have a responsibility not to impinge on everyone's right to air that is not harmful to health and well-being. As with industries, in terms of section 28 of the NEMA, persons that cause, have caused or may cause significant pollution or degradation of the environment must take reasonable measures to prevent such pollution or degradation from occurring, continuing or recurring, or, in so far as such harm to the environment is authorised by law or cannot reasonably be avoided or stopped, to minimise and rectify such pollution or degradation of the environment.

Notwithstanding the above, it can be argued that there is a social responsibility for everyone to actively participate in air quality governance by participating in the development of the regulatory framework for air quality management. In this regard, the AQA provides numerous opportunities to submit to the Minister or MEC written or oral representations on or objections in respect of, for example:

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- The National Framework or any amendment to the framework.
- Ambient air quality standards.
- The declaration of priority areas Priority area air quality management plans.
- The listing of activities that require and Atmospheric Emission Licence to operate.
- The declaration of controlled emitters.
- The declaration of controlled fuels.
- Any regulation.

Finally, the public may be directly affected by air pollution. The public and civil society groups therefore contribute local perspectives and also have an important watchdog role to play in bringing to the attention of the authorities through their municipal AQO, matters of concern or of non-compliance.

## 4. APPROACH TO AIR QUALITY GOVERNANCE

### 4.1 Introduction

Air quality governance can be described in terms of a simplified environmental governance cycle as illustrated in Figure 1. The governance cycle provides a useful framework for achieving continuous improvement over time. An overview of each of the components with reference to the governance roles and responsibilities contained in, or implied by, the AQA is given in Paragraph 4.2.

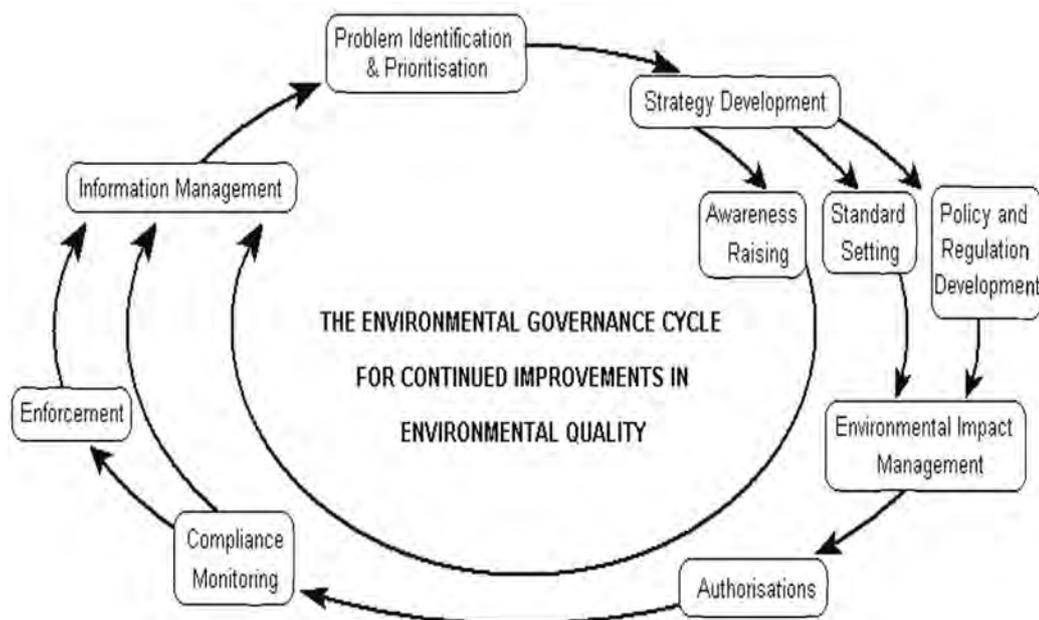


Figure 1: The environmental governance cycle for continued improvements in environmental quality

## 4.2 The environmental governance cycle

### 4.2.1 Information management

Informed decision-making is fundamental to good governance and decisions can only be informed if decision-shapers and decision-makers have ready access to accurate, relevant, current and complete information. The information management component of the governance cycle is critical and is often described as the engine that drives the cycle towards continuous improvements in environmental quality.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Given the above, it the AQA contains a number of information related provisions as illustrated in Table 3.

**Table 3: Typical AQA governance functions relating to information management**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to information management						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
Establish and maintain national norms and standards for air quality monitoring	7(1)(d)	PR	I	I	I	I
Establish and maintain national norms and standards for air quality information management	7(1)(f)	PR	I	I	I	I
Monitor ambient air quality and point, non-point and mobile source emissions	8(a)	O	O	PR	PR	PR
Monitor ambient air quality and the performance of municipalities in implementing the AQA	8(b)	O	PR	I	I	I
Establish and maintain national standards for the collection and management of data necessary to assess: (i) compliance with the AQA; (ii) compliance with ambient air quality and emission standards; (iii) the performance of organs of state in respect of air quality management plans and priority area air quality management plans; (iv) the impact of, and compliance with, air quality management plans and priority area air quality management plans; (v) compliance with the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements; and (vi) access to information by the public.	8(c)	PR	I	I	I	I
The compilation and submission of an annual report including information on - (a) air quality management initiatives undertaken during the reporting period; (b) the level of compliance with ambient air quality standards; (c) measures taken by to secure compliance with those standards; (d) compliance with any applicable priority area air quality management plans; and (e) air quality monitoring activities.	17	PR	PR	I	I	I
The consideration of any sound scientific information in the declaration of a controlled emitter	23(2)(d)(i)	PR	PR	I	I	I
The consideration of any sound scientific information in the declaration of a controlled fuel	26(2)(d)(i)	PR	PR	I	I	I
The development of regulations in respect of monitoring	53(m)	PR	PR	I	I	I
The development of regulations with respect to emissions measurements and reporting	12(b)(c)	PR	I	I	I	I
Review emissions reports provided by industry in the NAEIS in line with AEL		PR	PR	PR	PR	I
<b>Key:</b>	<b>PR</b>	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	<b>I</b>	Input	<b>O</b>	Oversight & support

The functions of the South African Weather Service (SAWS) in ambient air quality monitoring, as prescribed in the South African Weather Service Act of 2001, as amended are to:

Typical SAWS functions relating to information management						
Function	SAWS Act, as Amended Ref.	DEA	SAWS	Municipalities		
				PRO	Metro/ Dist.	Local
Provide such ambient air quality information services as is necessary to achieve the objectives of the Air Quality Act.	4(aA)	O	PR	I	I	I
Collect ambient air quality information data over the Republic of South Africa	4(aB)	O	PR	I	I	I

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Typical SAWS functions relating to information management						
Function	SAWS Act, as Amended Ref.	DEA	SAWS	Municipalities		
				PRO	Metro/ Dist.	Local
Act as the custodian of the SAAQIS	4(aC)	O	PR			
Manage, operate, maintain and develop NAAQMN	4(aD)	O	PR			
The Weather Service may issue ambient air quality forecasting	4(b) 5	O	PR			
The Weather Service may issue air quality warning Before issuing ambient air quality warnings, the Weather Service must – Inform the Minister Provide the Minister with all relevant information pertaining to the ambient air quality warning Afford the Minister a reasonable opportunity to consult with relevant Ministers or any other stakeholder whose area of responsibility may be affected by the air quality warning.	4(b) 6 & 7	O	PR			

<b>Key:</b>	<b>PR</b>	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	<b>I</b>	Input	<b>O</b>	Oversight & support
-------------	-----------	---	----------	-------	----------	---------------------

#### 4.2.2 Problem identification and prioritisation

Information and information management is not an end in itself. The gathering, storage and reporting of information is to no avail unless it is used for a purpose. Information must be analysed to identify air quality problems being experienced and also to establish whether air quality interventions are effective. AQA will not provide a solution to air quality problems in South Africa unless these problems are identified and defined and prioritised for action.

There are a number of sections in the AQA that deal with problem identification and prioritisation, including, those provided in Table 4.

**Table 4: Typical AQA governance functions relating to problem identification and prioritisation**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to problem identification and prioritisation						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
The identification of pollutants which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment	S.9(1)(a)	PR	PR			
The declaration of an area as a priority area if ambient air quality standards are being, or may be, exceeded in the area, or any other situation exists which is causing, or may cause, a significant negative impact on air quality in the area; and the area requires specific air quality management action to rectify the situation	S.18(1)	PR	PR			
The publication of a list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions and which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage	S.21(1)(a)	PR	PR			
The declaration of any appliance or activity, or any appliance or activity falling within a specified category, as a controlled emitter if such appliance or activity, or appliances or activities falling within such category, result in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health or the environment.	S.23(1)	PR	PR			

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Typical AQA governance functions relating to problem identification and prioritisation						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
The declaration of a substance or mixture of substances which, when used as a fuel in a combustion process, result in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health or the environment, as a controlled fuel.	S.26(1)	PR	PR	I	I	I
The declaration of any substance contributing to air pollution as a priority air pollutant and requiring persons falling within a specified category to submit and implement a pollution prevention plan in respect of the priority air pollutant.	S.29(1)	PR	PR	I	I	I

<b>Key:</b>	PR	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	I	Input	O	Oversight & support
-------------	----	---	---	-------	---	---------------------

#### 4.2.3 Strategy development

Once problems have been identified and prioritised, strategies must be devised to address the problems. These strategies are further detailed into plans of action that guide the interventions aimed at addressing the problems.

AQA requires a comprehensive planning regime as the examples in Table 5 illustrates.

**Table 5: Typical AQA governance functions relating to strategy development**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to strategy development						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
The establishment and maintenance of national norms and standards for air quality management planning	S.7(1)(e)	PR	I	I	I	I
The development of air quality management plans as a component of environmental implementation plans or environmental management plans submitted in terms of Chapter 3 of the NEMA.	S.15(1)	PR	PR	I	I	I
The development of air quality management plans as a component of integrated development plans as required by the Municipal Systems Act	S.15(2)	O	O	PR	PR	PR
The development of Priority Area Air Quality Management Plans	S.19	PR	PR	I	I	I
Assessment and approval of pollution prevention plans in respect of a priority air pollutant	S.29(1)	PR	PR	I	I	I

<b>Key:</b>	PR	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	I	Input	O	Oversight & support
-------------	----	---	---	-------	---	---------------------

#### 4.2.4 Standard setting

Environmental improvements may also come about if certain minimum standards are set as targets and these standards are properly monitored and enforced. AQA is largely based on the use of this strategy as Table 6 illustrates.

**Table 6: Typical AQA governance functions relating to standard setting**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to standard setting						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
The setting of national norms and standards for: the control of emissions from point and non-point sources; air quality monitoring; air quality management planning; and air quality information management	7(1)	PR	I	I	I	I
The setting of national standards for municipalities to monitor: ambient air quality; and point, non-point and mobile source emissions.	8(a)	PR	I	I	I	I

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Typical AQA governance functions relating to standard setting						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
The setting of national standards for monitoring: ambient air quality; and the performance of municipalities in implementing this Act.	8(b)	PR				
The setting of national standards for the collection and management of data necessary to assess: compliance with the AQA; compliance with ambient air quality and emission standards; the performance of organs of state in respect of air quality management plans and priority area air quality management plans; the impact of, and compliance with, air quality management plans and priority area air quality management plans; compliance with the Republic's obligations in terms of international agreements; and access to information by the public.	8(c)	PR				
The setting of national ambient air quality standards for identified substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment	9(1)(b)	PR				
The setting of national standards for emissions from point, non-point or mobile sources with respect to identified substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment	9(1)(c)	PR				
The setting of provincial ambient air quality standards for identified substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment	10(1)(b)	O	PR			
The setting of provincial standards for emissions from point, non-point or mobile sources with respect to identified substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment	10(1)(c)	O	PR			
The setting of municipal standards for emissions from point, non-point or mobile sources in the municipality in respect of identified substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment in the municipality	11(1)	O	O	PR	PR	PR
The setting of national/provincial minimum emission standards in respect of a substance or mixture of substances resulting from a listed activity	21(3)(a)	PR	PR			
The setting of national/provincial emission standards of any specified substance or mixture of substances that may be emitted from a controlled emitter	24(1)	PR	PR			
The setting of national/provincial standards relating to controlled fuels, including: standards for the use of the controlled fuel in combustion processes; standards for the manufacture or sale of the controlled fuel; specifications, including maximum or minimum levels or concentrations of the constituents of substances or mixtures of substances, for the composition of controlled fuels; and the prohibition of the manufacture, sale or use of the controlled fuel	27	PR	PR			
The setting of national standards for the control of noise, either in general or by specified machinery or activities or in specified places or areas; or for determining a definition of noise; and the maximum levels of noise.	34(1)	PR				
Make regulations that incorporate by reference any code of practice or any national or international standard relating to air quality.	55(1)(d)	PR	PR			

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Typical AQA governance functions relating to standard setting						
Function		AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities	
					Metro	Dist.
<b>Key:</b>	PR	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	I	Input	O	Oversight & support

#### 4.2.5 Policy and regulation development

Although the AQA provides the legislative framework for air quality management and despite the fact that the making of by-laws in respect of air quality management is an exclusive municipal competence, the AQA also directs or implies a number of functions in this regard as illustrated in the Table 7.

**Table 7: Typical AQA governance functions relating to policy and regulation development**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to policy and regulation development							
Function		AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
					Metro	Dist.	Local
The development and promulgation of regulations necessary for implementing and enforcing approved priority area air quality management plans, including: funding arrangements; measures to facilitate compliance with such plans; penalties for any contravention of or any failure to comply with such plans; and regular review of such plans.		S.7(1)(e)	PR	PR	I	I	I
The development and promulgation of regulations in respect of measures to prevent, control or correct the release of a substance into the air from a source in the Republic that may have a significant detrimental impact on air quality, the environment or health in a country other than the Republic.		S.50(2)	PR	I	I	I	I
The development and promulgations of regulations in respect of: any matter necessary to give effect to the Republic's obligations in terms of an international agreement relating to air quality; and matters relating to environmental management cooperation agreements, to the extent that those agreements affect air quality;		S.53	PR	I	I	I	I
The development and promulgations of regulations in respect of: emissions, including the prohibition of specific emissions, from point, non-point and mobile sources of emissions, including motor vehicles; open fires and incinerators; ozone-depleting substances; codes of practice; records and returns; labelling; trading schemes; powers and duties of air quality officers; appeals against decisions of officials in the performance of their functions in terms of the regulations; incentives to encourage change in behaviour towards air pollution by all sectors in society; requirements in respect of monitoring; the avoidance or reduction of harmful effects on air quality from activities not otherwise regulated in terms of this Act; any matter that may or must be prescribed in terms of this Act; or any other matter necessary for the implementation or application of this Act.		S.53	PR	PR	I	I	I
<b>Key:</b>	PR	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	I	Input	O	Oversight & support	

#### 4.2.6 Environmental impact management

Through impact assessment the safety, health and environmental impacts of developments and activities are scrutinised. This process encourages participation by all stakeholders and provides decision-makers with detailed information to determine whether an activity may proceed or not, and in the case of an approval provides information on the mitigation measures that must be introduced to ensure that safety, health and environmental impacts are kept to acceptable levels.

Reference to impact management is made in a number of sections of the AQA, including:

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- An AQO may require any person to submit an Atmospheric Impact Report if it is reasonably believed that the person has contravened or failed to comply with the AQA or any conditions of a licence and the contravention has had, or may have, a detrimental effect on the environment (Section 30(a));
- An AQO may require any person to submit an Atmospheric Impact Report if a review of a licence is undertaken (Section 30(b));
- The application for an AEL, when the effect or likely effect of the pollution emitted or likely to be emitted by a Listed Activity on the environment must be considered (Section 39(b)); and,
- Significant trans-boundary impacts require management through preventative, control or corrective measures (Section 50(2)).

Furthermore, environmental impact management has been rolled out nationally and provincially in the form of the environmental impact assessment (EIA) process. This participatory process provides government with the detailed information required for it to make an informed decision on whether a development may go ahead or not and, in the case of a go-ahead, exactly what measures must be taken to ensure that safety, health and environmental impacts are kept to acceptable levels.

The use and importance of the EIA tool is fully acknowledged by the AQA and, as such, the use of EIAs is inextricably linked to the AQA's atmospheric emission licensing process as discussed in Paragraph 5.5.2.

#### 4.2.7 Authorisations

An authorisation (permission, permit, licence, etc.) is a key component of traditional "command and control" regulatory practise. The principle authorisation in the AQA is the AEL, which is described in detail in Section 36 to Section 49 and summarised in Table 8: Typical AQA governance functions relating to authorisations. Table 8. Implementation of the AQA atmospheric emission licensing system by licensing authorities is set out in Chapter 5 and other provisions of the AQA.

**Table 8: Typical AQA governance functions relating to authorisations.**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to authorisations						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
Issuance of an Atmospheric Emission Licence if a provincial organ of the state, which has been delegated the power to perform the licensing authority by the metropolitan or district municipality	S.36(5)(a)	PR				
Issuance of an atmospheric emission licence; if the listed activity falls within the boundaries of more than one province;	S.36(5)(b)	PR				
Issuance of an Atmospheric Emission Licence, if the listed activity forms part of a matter declared as a national priority in terms of a Cabinet decision and notice referred to in section 24C(2B0) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998, as amended by the National Management Laws Second Amendment Act, 2013	S.36(5)(c)	PR				
Issuance of an Atmospheric Emission Licence, if the listed activity relates to the activities listed in terms of section 24(2) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998, or in terms of section 19(1) of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008, and the Minister has been identified as the competent authority	S.36(5)(d)	PR				

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Typical AQA governance functions relating to authorisations						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
Issuance of an Atmospheric Emission Licence, if the listed activity relates to a prospecting, mining exploration or production activity as contemplated the mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No.28 of 2002), in the area for which the right has been applied for, and the Minister as the competent authority in terms of section 24C of [Subsection (5) added by section 5 (c) of Act 20, 2014].	S.36(5)(e)	PR	I	I	I	I
Transferring of Provisional Atmospheric Emission Licence and Atmospheric Emission Licence if ownership of an activity for which a provisional atmospheric emission licence was issued is transferred.	S.44(1)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Review of Provisional Atmospheric Emission Licence and Atmospheric Emission Licence at intervals specified in the licence, or when circumstances demand that a review is necessary.	S.45(1)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Variation of Provisional Atmospheric Emission Licence and Atmospheric Emission Licence.	S.46(1)(a)-(d)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Renewal of Provisional Atmospheric Emission Licence and Atmospheric Emission Licence on application by the holder of the licence.	S.47(1)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
<b>Key:</b> PR Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction I Input O Oversight & support						

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 36(5) (a)-(e), the review, variation, transfer and renew of a Provisional Atmospheric Emission Licence (PAEL) and Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL) shall remain the function of the licensing authority that issued the initial AEL. This is done to account for (i) the intent of section 36(5) (a)-(e) which is to address service delivery aspects of new AELs, (ii) the constitutional mandate of municipalities, (iii) concurrence in performing AQM functions, and (iv) ensuring continuity in AEL management.

#### 4.2.8 Compliance monitoring

Compliance with norms and standards is an important element of the environmental governance cycle (see Figure 1) and follows authorisation. Table 9 provides examples of these functions.

**Table 9: Typical AQA governance functions relating to compliance monitoring**

Typical AQA governance functions relating to compliance monitoring						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
Monitoring potential illegal listed activities	S.51(1)(a)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Monitoring compliance with emission standards in respect of the manufacture, sale or use any appliance or conducting of an activity declared as a controlled emitter	S.51(1)(a)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Monitoring compliance in respect to reasonable steps to prevent the emission of any offensive odour caused by any activity.	S.51(1)(a)	O	O	PR	PR	PR
Monitoring compliance with directives to submit or to implement a pollution prevention plan	S.51(1)(b)	PR	PR	I	I	I
Monitoring compliance with directives to submit an atmospheric impact report	S.51(1)(c)	PR	PR	PR	PR	PR

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Typical AQA governance functions relating to compliance monitoring						
Function	AQA Ref.	DEA	Prov.	Municipalities		
				Metro	Dist.	Local
Monitoring compliance with notification requirements in respect of mines that are likely to cease mining operations within a period of five years	S.51(1)(d)	PR	I	I	I	I
Monitoring compliance with conditions or requirements of an atmospheric emission licence	S.51(1)(e)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Monitoring any application for an atmospheric emission licence, or for the transfer, variation or renewal of such a licence to ensure that it does not contain false or misleading information	S.51(1)(f)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Monitoring any information provided to an air quality officer to ensure that it does not contain false or misleading information	S.51(1)(g)	PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Monitoring compliance with conditions subject to which exemption from a provision of the AQA was granted	S.51(1)(h)	PR	I	I	I	I
Monitor compliance with the requirements of the National Dust Control Regulations	S32 (regs)	I	I	PR	PR	PR
Monitor compliance with the emission standards set out for activities declared as controlled emitters in terms of section 23	S23 (regs)	O	O	O	PR	PR
Monitor compliance with the emission standards set out for activities declared as controlled emitters in terms of section 23; for facilities that have been issued with an AEL		PR	PR	PR	PR	I
Monitor compliance with the requirements for emission reporting according to the regulations developed in terms of section 12(b) and (c) in the event such reporting requirements are not stipulated in the AEL	S12	PR	I	I	I	I
<b>Key:</b>	<b>PR</b>	Principle Responsibility in relevant jurisdiction	<b>I</b>	Input	<b>O</b>	Oversight & support

#### 4.2.9 Enforcement

The AQA is regarded as a “specific environmental management Act” under the NEMA (see Section 1 of NEMA) and, as such, may be enforced by the Environmental Management Inspectors – the so-called “Green Scorpions”.

With reference to the Green Scorpions, and as an example of compliance and enforcement provisions contained in the AQA, an Environmental Management Inspector may require the holder of the licence, on request, to submit to the inspector a certified statement indicating – (i) their compliance monitoring records; (ii) particulars of instances of non-compliance; (iii) the reasons for instances of non-compliance; and (iv) any action taken, or to be taken, to prevent a recurrence of the instance of non-compliance.

This notwithstanding, enforcement and/or compliance promotion actions in response to significant non-compliance must be taken in respect of the various examples of compliance monitoring described in the previous paragraph.

Furthermore, enforcement is also addressed in the following sections of AQA:

- The Minister or MEC may prescribe penalties for any contravention of or any failure to comply with Priority Area AQMPs (Section 20(c));
- An AEL must specify the penalties for non-compliance (Section 43(1)(k)), and can include other measures necessary for enforcement (Section 43(1)(m)); and,
- Sections on offences (Section 51) and penalties (Section 52 and Section 55(2)).

### 4.3 The implementation of the functions by the three spheres of government

Although the above sections provide a clear indication of the various air quality management functions to be implemented by the affected spheres of government, as the national, provincial and local spheres of government are autonomous, “how” these functions are to be implemented is up to each department and/or municipality. As such, it is important that all provinces and municipalities that experience air quality issues within their jurisdictions build the necessary organisational capacity to implement these functions in an efficient and effective manner and in a manner that is commensurate with the

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

air quality problems to be addressed. In this regard, organisational capacity refers to the structures (including sustainable funding), systems, skills, strategies, incentives and interrelationships necessary to implement these functions in an efficient and effective manner and in a manner that is commensurate with the air quality problems to be addressed.

Notwithstanding the above, although the national department cannot dictate how other autonomous spheres of government should capacitate themselves to implement their air quality management functions, it will continue to provide assistance and guidance to all spheres of government through various means, including, but not limited to: the hosting of air quality governance events (see, for example, Paragraph 4.4.6); the development of various implementation manuals, regulations, guidelines, software, standard formats, templates and best practise case studies aimed at the efficient and effective implementation of the AQA (see, for example, Paragraphs 5.4.6.2 and 5.4.2); and the hosting of short-courses in the use of these implementation manuals, guidelines, software, standard formats and templates (see Paragraph 5.9.2.4). Through this assistance and guidance, the national department also wishes to ensure that the AQA and its National Framework are implemented in a coherent, cohesive, integrated and uniform fashion.

The creation and maintenance of dedicated air quality management capacity in municipalities is necessary to ensure effective air quality management; especially for municipalities in **Error! Reference source not found.** As such, provincial departments are encouraged to liaise with such municipalities with a view to cooperative agreements in respect of air quality management functions. This is especially relevant in respect to the atmospheric emission licensing function when considering Section 36(2) of the AQA which reads – “If a metropolitan or district municipality has delegated its functions of licensing authority to a provincial organ of state in terms of section 238 of the Constitution, that provincial organ of state must for the purposes of this Act be regarded as the licensing authority in the area of that municipality”.

In line with the above, district municipalities are also encouraged to liaise with local municipalities with a view to cooperative agreements in respect of air quality management functions.

Notwithstanding the above, how each sphere of government plans to implement its air quality management functions must be spelt out in the required provincial and municipal air quality management plans (see Paragraphs 5.4.6.6 and 5.4.6.7 respectively).

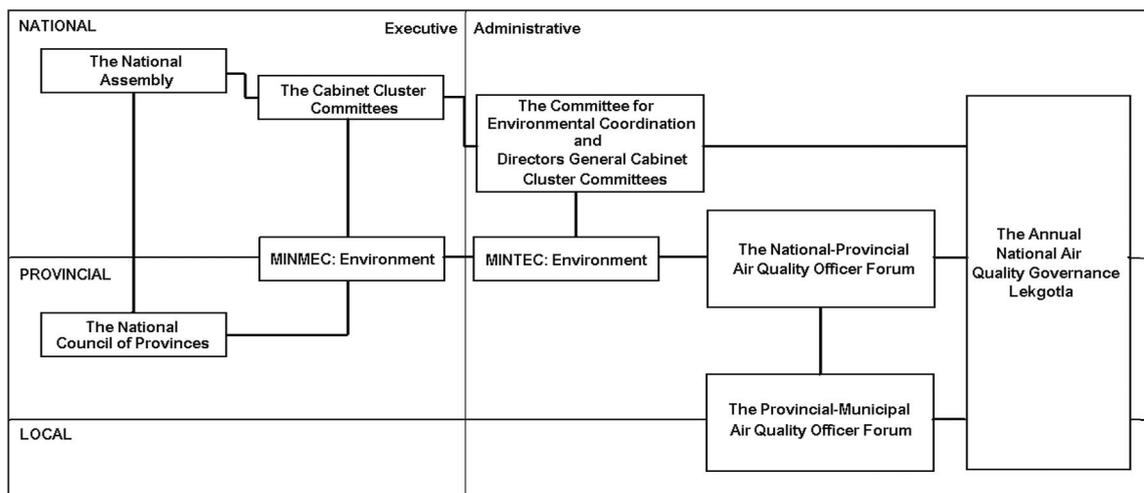
#### 4.4 The need for vertical and horizontal integration

Government in South Africa is constituted as national, provincial and local spheres of government. The Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act (Act No. 13 of 2005) establishes a framework for the three spheres of government to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations and to provide for mechanisms and procedures to facilitate the settlement of intergovernmental disputes. All spheres of government must work together and integrate as far as possible their actions in the provision of services. The object of this Act is to provide within the principles of cooperative government set out in Chapter 3 of the Constitution, a framework for national, provincial and local spheres of government and all organs of state to facilitate coordination in the implementation of policy and legislation.

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, national and provincial spheres of government have concurrent executive and legislative powers in pollution control matters, while the local sphere of government has exclusive executive and legislative powers in air pollution matters. Effective execution of duties requires integration between the spheres of government as provided for by the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act (Act No. 13 of 2005).

Coupled with vertical integration between spheres of government, is the need for horizontal integration in order to improve air quality management. Intergovernmental coordination and cooperation are fundamental to good air quality governance. To achieve the above, government has created a number of structures to ensure both horizontal and vertical integration as illustrated in Figure 2.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



**Figure 2: Intergovernmental horizontal and vertical coordination and cooperation structures associated with air quality governance.**

Although Figure 2 provides the full set of linkages to the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces, structures specifically involved in intergovernmental coordination and cooperation in respect of air quality governance as described below.

#### 4.4.1 MINMEC: Environment

The MINMEC: Environment is a standing intergovernmental body consisting of the Minister for Environmental Affairs and members of the provincial Executive Councils (MECs) responsible for environmental management functions. MINMEC meets quarterly.

#### 4.4.2 MINTEC: Environment

The MINTEC: Environment is a standing intergovernmental body that provides technical input into the MINMEC. The MINTEC consists of the Director General of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the heads of the provincial departments responsible for environmental management functions. MINTEC also meets quarterly.

#### 4.4.3 The Committee for Environmental Coordination (CEC)

The Committee for Environmental Coordination was established in terms of Section 7 of the NEMA. The object of the Committee is to promote the integration and coordination of environmental functions by the relevant organs of state, and in particular to promote the achievement of the purpose and objectives of environmental implementation plans and environmental management plans.

The functions of the Committee include the following:

- Scrutinising, reporting and making recommendations on the environmental implementation plans;
- Investigating and making recommendations regarding the assignment and delegation of functions between organs of state under this Act or any other law affecting the environment and regarding the practical working arrangements, including memoranda of understanding, between the organs of state represented by members and other organs of state;
- Investigating and recommending the establishment of mechanisms in each province, with the concurrence of the MEC, for providing a single point in the province for the receipt of applications for authorisations, licences and similar permissions required for activities under legal provisions concerned with the protection of the environment where such authorisations, licences or permissions are required from more than one organ of state, and procedures for the coordinated consideration of such applications by the organs of state concerned;
- Making recommendations to coordinate the application of integrated environmental management, including

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

cooperation in environmental assessment procedures and requirements and making determinations regarding the prevention of duplication of efforts;

- Making recommendations aimed at securing compliance with the NEMA principles and national norms and standards contemplated in Section 146(2)(b)(i) of the Constitution;
- Making recommendations regarding the harmonisation of the environmental functions of all relevant national departments and spheres of government;
- Advising the Minister on providing guidelines for the preparation of environmental management plans and environmental implementation plans; and
- Endeavouring to ensure compliance with the NEMA principles by making appropriate recommendations, requiring reports from its members and advising government on law reform.

The CEC comprises: the Director-General: Environmental Affairs, who acts as chairperson; the Director-General: Water Affairs; the Director-General: Energy; the Director-General: Minerals Resources, the Director-General: Rural Development and Land Reform DRDLR; the Director-General: Human Settlement; the Director-General: Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries; the Director-General: Health; the Director-General: Labour; the Director-General: Science and Technology; the Director-General: Transport, the heads of provincial environmental departments; and a representative from the South African Local Government Association (SALGA).

#### 4.4.4 The National–Provincial Air Quality Officers’ Forum

The National–Provincial Air Quality Officers’ Forum is a subset of the existing MINTEC Working Group Two (WGII). WGII meetings address air quality management issues in all spheres of government. Quarterly WGII deliberations on air quality management issues are regarded as the deliberations of the National–Provincial Air Quality Officers’ Forum.

#### 4.4.5 The Provincial–Municipal Air Quality Officers’ Forum

Every province needs to establish a Provincial–Municipal Air Quality Officers’ Forum and convene quarterly forum meetings. In order to facilitate the efficient, effective and cohesive functioning of these forums, the national department provided all provincial AQOs with generic terms of reference for such forums.

The overall objective of the Forum is framed as a desired outcome as follows: *“An effective governance framework is developed, maintained and implemented in a manner that ensures that the unacceptable current and future impacts of atmospheric emissions are minimised, mitigated or managed in line with government policy, legislation, goals, strategies, norms and standards that are protective of everyone’s right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being and protect the environment for the benefit of present and future generations through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure ecologically sustainable development and the use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.”*

#### 4.4.6 The Annual Air Quality Management Governance Lekgotla

The Air Quality Governance Lekgotla is the premier event for AQOs to engage and uphold the spirit of Chapter 3 of the Constitution, which recognises that national, provincial and local spheres of government are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The event provides AQOs from all spheres of government with a unique opportunity to discuss and debate ways and means of addressing the various governance challenges, interact with their peers, share experiences and lessons learned and discuss planning for the year ahead. The Lekgotla also provides the national department with an effective platform for informing all spheres of government about the national AQA rollout plans and progress reports.

### 4.5 3D governance model

The emphasis on both vertical and horizontal integration for effective environmental governance may be expressed in a multi-dimensional 3D governance model depicted in Figure 3. The central vertical core represents the coordinating department of each of the spheres of government, ranging from the national sphere, and the provincial spheres to municipalities. Vertical integration between the spheres of government is expressed by the vertical arrows. Responsibilities for elements within the environmental governance cycle rest with various government spheres, hence integration between them is critical.

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

The need for horizontal integration is expressed by the interrelationships which radiate from each of the coordinating departments, terminating in circles that represent subsidiary but important departments and stakeholders in the implementation of air quality governance.

**4.6 Cross-cutting issues**

Underpinning the 3D governance model described above are three cross-cutting issues essential for its successful integration. These are public participation, capacity development and information dissemination. Described as one of the fundamental principles of sustainable development, public participation ensures the public's right to know and the right to participate in decision-making and is considered further in 5.9.1. Capacity development is of particular importance in the South African context and is judged as critical for the successful implementation of the AQA (See 5.9.2). The third cross-cutting issue, namely information dissemination, relates to all aspects of air quality management and is addressed in Paragraph 5.9.3.

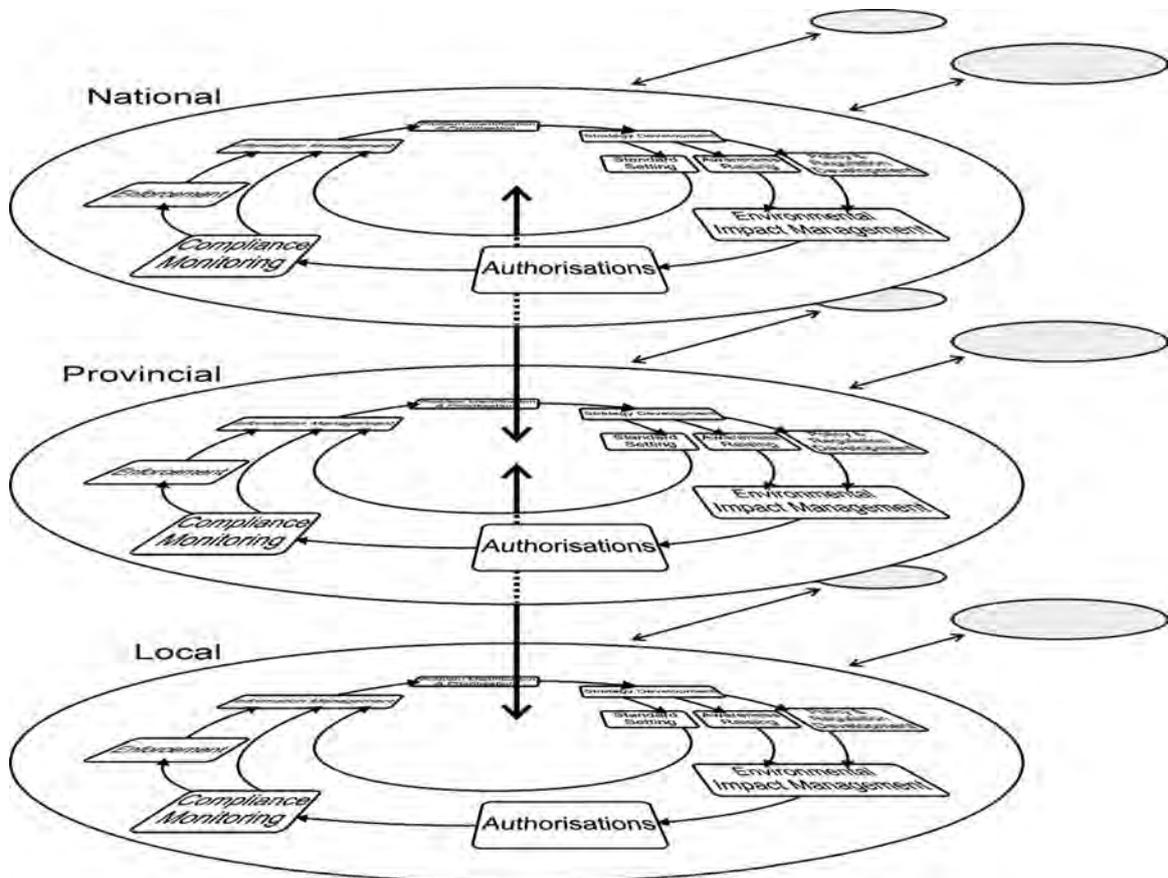


Figure 3: The 3D governance model

## 5. TOOLS FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK

### 5.1 Introduction

The implementation of the National Framework is dependent on a combination of both process/governance and technical mechanisms/measures. The process issues are overarching and integrated throughout the National Framework and include among others cooperative governance and enforcement. The technical mechanisms and measures are more specific and include norms and standards for matters relating to air quality management and meeting the requirements of the AQA.

### 5.2 Air quality information management

Informed decision-making is fundamental to good governance and decisions can only be informed if decision-shapers and decision-makers have ready access to accurate, relevant, current and complete information. Constructive participation in, and implementation of, air quality management matters are also dependent on the same information. Section 32 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, states that all South Africans have the right of access to any information held by the state, and any information that is held by another person and that is required for the exercise or protection of any rights. Section 32 further states that national legislation must be enacted to give effect to this right. In this regard, the Promotion of Access of Information Act, 2000 was enacted to give effect to the constitutional right of access to information. For example, Section 31(1)(a) of the NEMA provides that “every person is entitled to have access to information held by the State and organs of state which relates to the implementation of the NEMA and any other law affecting the environment, and to the state of the environment and actual and future threats to the environment, including any emissions to water, air or soil and the production, handling, transportation, treatment, storage and disposal of hazardous waste and substances”. Implicit in this right is that all South Africans shall have access to air quality information and that access shall be facilitated by the AQA and through the National Framework. In order to uphold this right and effectively address the air quality information requirements contained in the AQA, the national department, in partnership with the South African Weather Service (SAWS), have established the South African Air Quality Information System (the SAAQIS), and developed guidance manuals and publications to provide support to AQOs and air quality information to a wider audience. Air quality information management is discussed in this paragraph, considering the requirements of the SAAQIS (5.2.1), the DEA publication series (5.2.2) and air quality reporting (5.2.3).

The South African Weather Service (SAWS) is the custodian of the SAAQIS. In this regard, SAWS shall:

- Provide technical infrastructure and expertise for the management of the SAAQIS, operate and maintain the infrastructure of the SAAQIS and safeguard all databases to ensure ambient air quality information is available for present and future generations;
- Develop and upgrade the SAAQIS and NAAQMN infrastructure (technology, instruments, systems, research and development) in consultation with Department to ensure seamless and nation-wide integration with the national strategies on the implementation of the AQA;

#### 5.2.1 The South African Air Quality Information System (SAAQIS)

The SAAQIS (<http://saaqis.environment.gov.za>) makes air information available to stakeholders, provide a common system for managing air quality in South Africa and provide uniformity in the way data, information and reporting are managed in South Africa. A central aim of the SAAQIS is that it allows the public access to air quality information. Improving the availability of information facilitates transparency in processes, informs decision making, and builds capacity. The SAAQIS streamlines the flow of relevant information; provides a tool to assist in managing air quality and builds awareness about air quality among stakeholders in general.

The SAAQIS aims to:

- Ensure that air quality information management and reporting requirements directed or implied by the AQA are met efficiently and effectively;
- Ensure that air quality management decisions, interventions, activities and actions are informed by accurate, current and complete information;
- Ensure that accurate, current, complete and relevant air quality information is available to all stakeholders and the public;
- And provide all South African's with information on the state of their air quality and the status of efforts to

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

progressively ensure their right to air that is not harmful to health and well-being.

SAAQIS includes the following air quality information input modules, extraction modules and applications tools:

- Ambient air quality information;
- Norms and standards for air quality monitoring;
- Air quality related legislation and regulations;
- Norms and standards for air quality information management;
- Air Quality Management Plans;
- Air quality publications; and
- Technical and scientific air quality reports.

Each one of these modules has a number of different sub-modules that are designed for the different functions as required for the effective dissemination of information to the public.

#### 5.2.1.1 *Ambient air quality information*

The ambient air quality information component of SAAQIS is a dynamic online system with two main modules for managing ambient air quality stations, data and reporting of information to the public and a module for managing all assets procured by government for the purpose of effectively monitoring ambient air quality. All ambient monitoring data collected for the purpose of assessing compliance with the Air Quality Act by national, provincial, district/metropolitan and local municipalities shall be made available to SAAQIS for dissemination to the public. The SAAQIS provides tools for user to manage ambient monitoring data (importing, verifying, validating, analysing, exporting and reporting). The data management application provides users with ability to perform quality assurance and quality control (QA/QC), data storage and presentation/reporting routines online in order to meet monitoring and reporting requirements for ambient data. The asset management system allows for users to create and manage ambient monitoring assets inventory (instruments and spares), as well as managing/reporting stations operations such as calendar of visits, activities during visits (instrument calibration and maintenance, repairs, and any other station operations). The SAAQIS ambient monitoring component is designed to meet requirements of ISO 17025 and will be used by monitoring networks as part of the quality system for SANAS accreditation.

SAAQIS contains a comprehensive built-in ambient air quality station management applications. The applications include an online Asset Management module that provides assistance with the importing of raw data into the system and associated reporting requirements, validation, assessment and exporting of the data, as well as the reporting and viewing of processed data. Both applications are designed to be compliant with ISO: 17025 testing laboratory quality system requirements. The ambient air quality implementation targets for SAAQIS are summarised in Table 10.

**Table 10: SAAQIS ambient air quality related implementation targets**

Key Milestone, Product or Output	Timeframe
SAAQIS Upgrade	2017/18
Reporting of all government-owned air quality monitoring stations into SAAQIS	As per outcome 10 delivery agreement
National Ambient Air Quality Monitoring Strategy	2018/9
Live reporting of air quality monitoring stations into SAAQIS	2018/9

#### 5.2.1.2 *Ambient air quality monitoring norms and standards in SAAQIS*

In order to ensure integrity, quality and representativity of the ambient monitoring data, ambient air quality monitoring for compliance purposes shall be conducted according to prescribed norms and standards. The SAAQIS will make national norms and standards for ambient air quality monitoring available. The norms and standards for air quality monitoring will include the following:

- Procedures on ambient monitoring programme design, pollutants to monitor, considerations on siting of stations and monitoring station classifications.
- Procedures on the use of verified monitoring equipment, reference and equivalence monitoring methods in accordance with appropriate norms.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- Procedures on how ambient air quality data will be recorded, analysed, processed, reported and archived following best-practice principles.
- Guidance on monitoring station operation, maintenance and calibration following best-practice principles.
- Quality control and quality assurance procedures fit for ambient air quality monitoring and reporting.
- Guidance concerning air quality measurements by passive sampling.
- Systems for transferring data in SAAQIS.
- National Air Quality Index for simplified reporting of daily air quality to the general public.

AQ monitoring Norms and Standards will also include guidance on the use of alternative air quality monitoring methods such as passive sampling and low-cost sensors (commercial micro-sensors). These alternative methods generally:

- Provide cheaper options to ambient monitoring compared to the reference methods of continuous ambient monitoring in areas where screening assessments are required.
- Can be used cautiously to improve the spatial and temporal coverage in continuous ambient monitoring.

#### 5.2.1.3 Information on AQ legislation, policies, and regulations

SAAQIS provides current legislation, regulations and by-laws through a user-friendly interface. The interface helps the user find relevant parts of the legislation and regulations. The SAAQIS provides search facilities in the documents, general advice to stakeholders and guidance as to roles and responsibilities of different actors and agencies within the various regulations that are available.

**Table 11: SAAQIS policy and legislation related implementation targets**

Key Milestone, Product or Output	Timeframe
All current policy and legislation	Ongoing

#### 5.2.1.4 South African air quality research reference database

A large body of scientific literature that has been generated by the South Africa air quality scientific community over the years has been drawn together into the *South African Air Quality Research Reference Database*. This includes information on publications in the formal peer reviewed literature, presentations at international and national scientific conferences, 'grey literature' i.e. institutional research reports and post graduate theses. The database is searchable by fields that include details of the publication, and where this information is housed and available. The database has a facility for authors to record new material as it is published. This database is made publicly available via a link from the SAAQIS.

#### 5.2.1.5 Information regarding Air Quality Management Plans

Methodological approaches and guidance on the standards expected for development of the Air Quality Management Plans (AQMP manual) are available via the SAAQIS. AQMPs that have been developed at national, provincial and municipal spheres, and for Priority Areas are also made available.

#### 5.2.1.6 Information on policy, legislation and regulations

SAAQIS provides current legislation, regulations and by-laws through a user-friendly interface. The interface helps the user find relevant parts of the legislation and regulations. The SAAQIS provides search facilities in the documents, general advice to stakeholders and guidance as to roles and responsibilities of different actors and agencies within the various regulations that are available.

#### 5.2.1.7 Additional aspects of the SAAQIS

The SAAQIS is intended to provide a complete solution to the management of air quality information in South Africa, therefore the components discussed are expanded on and enhanced through mechanisms for education and skills development and accessing support on air quality issues and management. Provisions may also be included in the SAAQIS for:

- Interactive learners centre with information on air quality for school children and members of the public to stimulate interest in environmental matters.
- A support centre or helpdesk for assistance on air quality information related queries;
- A national website for updates on air quality status;
- A media library containing air quality information from media sources;
- A database of key stakeholders;

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- A library of relevant links to relevant national and international air quality information.
- Complaints register for the public to send air quality concerns directly to the relevant air quality official

### 5.2.2 Air quality publications

A series of information booklets are being developed by the national department with the objective of advancing the science and understanding of air quality management and to address the responsibility regarding the provision of air quality information to the public. The information series is also aimed at providing air quality management practitioners with technical guidance. The completed publications are available from the national department and will be available for downloading on SAAQIS.

### 5.2.3 Air quality reporting

The main objective of reporting on air quality is to convey information to a target user group, with variation in the purpose and content of air quality reports according to user groups. The following sections outline different types of air quality reports that may be required. Reporting on international commitments is governed by the stipulations in the Climate Change White Paper.

#### 5.2.3.1 State of air reporting

State of environment report is necessary to describe baseline environmental conditions against which changes or trends may be measured. These reports are important in prioritising and setting goals for environmental management and will include a chapter on the state of the air. This chapter will be reviewed every 5 years and include the following:

- A set of defined indicators to measure ambient air quality;
- Information on:
  - Air quality standards and objectives;
  - Ambient air quality monitoring activities;
  - Listed Activities and their related emissions;
  - Status of ambient air quality and trends;
- Air quality management initiatives.

#### 5.2.3.2 The Air Quality Officers' annual reports

In order to meet the progress reporting requirements in respect of air quality management plans, all municipal AQOs will be required to submit a Municipal Air Quality Officer's Annual Report to the provincial AQO at least 1 month prior to the Annual National Air Quality Governance Lekgotla (see Paragraph 4.4.6, page 36). The provincial AQOs will then use these reports to inform the compilation of a Provincial Air Quality Officer's Annual Report to be submitted to the National AQO at least 2 weeks prior to the Lekgotla. The National AQO will then compile the draft National Air Quality Officer's Annual Report for presentation to the Lekgotla for ratification and submission for publication. Details on the structure and content of the National Air Quality Officer's Annual Report can be found in Paragraph 5.2.3.2 of this document.

#### 5.2.3.3 South African Air Quality Index

South Africans have a right to access ambient air quality monitoring information monitored at all the stations commissioned by government. However, ambient pollutant measurements can be complex for the general public to understand how the measured concentrations translate to the quality of air and associated health effects. The Department of Environmental Affairs has developed a South Africa Air Quality Index (AQI) in line with best international practices in order to simplify the reporting of air quality to the general public.

The AQI is a simplified tool for reporting LIVE air quality to the general public. The index tells

- How clean or polluted air is on a scale of 0 (clean air) to 10 (much polluted air), Table 12.
- What associated health effects might be of concern to the general population, with focus on sensitive groups such children, the elderly and people with medical dispositions that can be exacerbated by poor air quality, Table 13 .

Table 12: South African AQI bands for NO<sub>2</sub>, SO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>3</sub>, PM<sub>10</sub>, PM<sub>2.5</sub> and CO.

Air Quality Status	Summary Message	Bands	NO <sub>2</sub> Bands (ppb)	NO <sub>2</sub>	SO <sub>2</sub> Bands (ppb)	SO <sub>2</sub>	Ozone Bands (ppb)	Ozone	PM10 Bands (ug/m3)	PM10	PM2.5 Bands (ug/m3)	PM2.5	CO	CO Bands (ppb)
Low	Good	1	0-66	0	0-115	0	0-26	0	0-25	0	0-12	0	0	0-10000
		2	67-133	67	116-231	116	27-53	27	26-50	26	13-26	13	10000	10001-20000
		3	133-200	133	232-350	232	54-80	54	51-75	51	27-40	27	20000	20001-30000
Moderate	Moderate	4	201-267	201	351-400	351	81-107	81	76-95	76	41-50	41	30000	30001-35000
		5	268-334	268	401-450	401	108-134	108	86-95	86	51-60	51	35000	35001-40000
High	Unhealthy	6	335-400	335	451-500	451	135-160	135	96-105	96	61-70	61	40000	40001-45000
		7	401-467	401	501-550	501	161-187	161	106-115	106	71-80	71	45000	45001-50000
Very High	Very Unhealthy	8	468-534	468	551-600	551	188-213	188	116-125	116	81-90	81	50000	50001-55000
		9	535-601	535	601-650	601	214-240	214	126-136	126	91-100	91	55000	55001-60000
Hazardous	Hazardous	10	>602	602	>651	651	>241	241	>136	136	>101	101	60000	>60000

Table 13: Health messages to be communicated to the public for the different AQI bands.

AQI	Levels of Health Concern	Accompanying health messages for at-risk individuals*	Accompanying health messages for the general population
Low	Good	Enjoy your usual outdoor activities.	Enjoy your usual outdoor activities.
Moderate	Moderate	Adults and children with lung problems, and adults with heart problems, who experience symptoms, should consider reducing strenuous physical activity, particularly outdoors.	Enjoy your usual outdoor activities.
High	Unhealthy	Adults and children with lung problems, and adults with heart problems, should reduce strenuous physical exertion, particularly outdoors, and particularly if they experience symptoms. People with asthma may find they need to use their reliever inhaler more often. Older people should also reduce physical exertion.	Anyone experiencing discomfort such as sore eyes, cough or sore throat should consider reducing activity, particularly outdoors.
Very High	Very Unhealthy	Adults and children with lung problems, adults with heart problems, and older people, should avoid strenuous physical activity. People with asthma may find they need to use their reliever inhaler more often.	Reduce physical exertion, particularly outdoors, especially if you experience symptoms such as cough or sore throat.
Hazardous	Hazardous	Adults and children with lung problems, adults with heart problems, and older people, should avoid strenuous physical activity. People with asthma may find they need to use their reliever inhaler more often.	Reduce physical exertion, particularly outdoors, especially if you experience symptoms such as cough or sore throat.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

The AQI focuses on health effects people may experience within a few hours or days after breathing polluted air. The index has no bearing on pollution control requirements for specific sources; nor does it serve to implement the national ambient air quality standards (NAAQS) in litigation. Rather, it provides information on air quality and health that will help individual citizens take prudent, self-protective actions to avoid or reduce exposures of concern or avoid contributing to air pollution on days when unhealthy air quality is predicted.

The AQI:

- Sends a clear and consistent message to the public by providing nationally uniform information on air quality;
- Is keyed appropriately to the national ambient air quality standards which have a scientific basis relating to air quality and public health, essentially a way of conveying scientific/medical advice to the public in an easily understood form.
- Is simple and easily understood by the public.

In the future, the AQI will be used for communicating air quality forecasting information to the public.

#### 5.2.3.4 The National Air Quality Indicator

The national department has developed a methodology for calculating and ascertaining an indicator to monitor the state and trend of air ambient quality in South Africa, the National Air Quality Indicator (NAQI). The methodology will be published as part of the National Norms and Standards for Air Quality Monitoring during 2018.

Identifying pollutants to be considered in the national indicator is relatively easy as the pollutants must include those for which the National Ambient Air Quality Standards have been set - the criteria pollutants. However, although all monitoring stations are measuring some of the criteria pollutants, they may not be measuring all of the pollutants. At least for the immediate future, the pollutants chosen for the indicator are those:-

- That are considered to be problems at the majority of measurement points, i.e. problem pollutants at a national scale; and
- That are measured at the majority of stations; and where historical data sets are available to measure progress since, at least, 2005.

From these criteria, particulate matter (PM<sub>10</sub> of aerodynamic diameter equal or less than 10 µm) is the first obvious choice with sulphur dioxide (SO<sub>2</sub>) second. There is really no benefit in considering an indicator in respect of pollutants that seldom, if at all, exceed national standards such as carbon monoxide.

The NAQI has been developed to weigh, balance and manipulate data in such a way as to provide a verifiable and reportable measure of air quality at the national scale that is broadly accepted as being an adequate indicator, much like the National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) are broadly accepted as a proxy for air that is not harmful to health and well-being. The NAQI will be used by a range of stakeholders from air quality managers to the general public. The main purposes of a NAQI are to:

- Inform the objectives of the AQA (enhancement, protection, governance).
- Monitor national progress in implementing AQA policy targets – towards national compliance by 2020.
- Provide an overall picture on the efficacy of air quality interventions.
- Provide a monitoring tool to measure the effects of policy responses.
- Serve as an environmental air quality indicator in order to assess the condition and reflect air quality trends nationally.
- Provide a tool to support policy-makers in air quality management, policy development, prioritisation and evaluation; and
- Serve as a communication tool on air quality matters by simplifying complex atmospheric observations to plots and figures easily understood by the public.

The indicator has been developed on the following basic principles:

- *Simple, but not simplistic* - As the indicator is meant to provide all South Africans with an indication of the quality of their air as well as whether this quality is improving or getting worse, the indicator must be simple enough for anyone to understand. However, it should not attempt to over-simplify what is actually a very complex concept, i.e.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

the indicator should not end up being regarded as simplistic and of little value by air quality managers.

- *Credibility* - Everyone should have confidence that the indicator provides a fair indication of the quality of their air as well as whether this quality is improving or getting worse.
- *Transparency and complexity* - In order to ensure the credibility of the indicator, methodologies of defining the indicator and the types and sources of data must be fully transparent, i.e. anyone should theoretically be able to generate the indicator.
- *Accuracy and reproducibility* - In order to reinforce the credibility of the indicator, the data used in the generation thereof must be accurate, complete and current. Furthermore, the use of the agreed methodologies must render the same result every time.
- *Sensitivity* - The indicator must be sensitive enough to demonstrate significant changes over time, but must not be so sensitive as to allow dramatic changes resulting from once-off or isolated events.
- *Balance* - As discussed above, the indicator must provide a balanced measure, for e.g. if one solitary measurement reflects non-compliance it would be unfair for the indicator to reflect that the entire nation is non-compliant.

The total number of the NAQI stations across the length and breadth of the country is forty-two (42) (Figure 4 and

## APPENDIX 1: NATIONAL AIR QUALITY INDICATOR STATIONS

Station Name	Province	District/ Metro	Local Municipality	Owner	Classification	Reporting to SAAGIS	Latitude	Longitude	Pollutants
Saltworks	EC	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	COEGA	Urban	No	-33.763778	25.683428	
Walmer	EC	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	Nelson Mandela Metro	Industrial	No	-33.985667	25.588083	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3, CO
Pelononi	FS	Mangaung Metro	Mangaung Metro	Mangaung Metro	Urban	No	-29.138472	26.241917	SO2, NO, NO2, NOx, CO, PM10, PM2.5
Zamdela	FS	Fezile Dabi DM	Metsimaholo LM	DEA	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-26.845083	27.855778	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, O3, CO, Pb and BTEX
Alexandra	GP	Johannesburg Metro	Johannesburg Metro	Joburg Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-26.106972	28.110556	PM10, PM2.5, SO2,
Bedfordview	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Traffic	Yes	-26.178611	28.133194	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Buccleugh	GP	Johannesburg Metro	Johannesburg Metro	Joburg Metro	Traffic	Yes	-26.011833	28.117556	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, O3
Diepkloof	GP	Johannesburg Metro	Johannesburg Metro	DEA	Urban	Yes	-26.250736	27.956447	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, O3, CO, Pb and BTEX
Elandsfontein	GP	West Rand DM	Merafong City LM	Eskom	Peri-Urban	Yes	-26.245517	27.417522	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NO, NO2, NOx, O3, BCM, Hg, H2S
Etwatwa	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	No	-26.116611	28.475417	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Germiston	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Industrial	No	-26.227361	28.177333	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Olievenhoutbosch	GP	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-25.911611	28.093250	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Olifantsfontein	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Industrial	No	-25.973123	28.237202	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Roslyn	GP	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Industrial	Yes	-25.625167	28.094778	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3, CO, VOC
Soshanguve	GP	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-25.492000	28.093733	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Springs	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Urban	No	-26.270361	28.416000	PM10, SO2, NOx, CO
Vanderbijlpark	GP	Sedibeng DM	Ermitsien LM	Sedibeng DM	Industrial	Yes	-26.688639	27.816667	SO2, CO
CBD - RBCAA	KZN	Uthungulu DM	Uthungulu DM	RBCAA	Traffic	Yes	-28.744700	32.049242	PM10, SO2

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

City Hall - Durban	KZN	eThekweni Metro	Ethekeweni Metro	eThekweni Metro	Traffic	Yes	-29.961160	30.038830	PM10, NOx
Ganges	KZN	eThekweni Metro	Ethekeweni Metro	eThekweni Metro	Industrial	Yes	-29.948500	30.964528	PM10, SO2, NOx
King Shaka	KZN	eThekweni Metro	Ethekeweni Metro	ACSA	Industrial	No	-29.622972	31.102639	
Settlers	KZN	eThekweni Metro	Ethekeweni Metro	eThekweni Metro	Urban	Yes	-29.958750	30.978750	SO2
Southern Works	KZN	eThekweni Metro	Ethekeweni Metro	eThekweni Metro	Traffic	Yes	-29.956944	30.973139	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx
Lephalale	L	Waterberg DM	Lephalale LM	DEA	Urban	Yes	-23.681918	27.723216	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, O3, CO & BTEX
Phalaborwa	L	Mopani DM	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	L Province	Urban	Yes	-23.932049	31.139471	SO2, NO, NO2, NOx, O3, PM10, PM2.5
Ermelo	MP	Gert Sibande DM	Msukaligwa LM	DEA	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-26.493361	29.968028	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, O3, CO, Pb, Hg and BTEX
Middleburg - DEA	MP	Nkangala DM	Steve Tshwete LM	DEA	Urban	Yes	-25.796111	29.462778	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, O3, CO, Pb, Hg and BTEX
Sasol Club	MP	Gert Sibande DM	Govan Mbeki LM	Sasol	Industrial	Yes	-26.550639	29.079028	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NO, NO2, NOx, O3, CO & H2S
Karoo	NC	Namakwa DM	Namakwa District Municipality	SAWS	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-31.398641	19.140214	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, NO, NO2, BC and O3
Mafikeng	NW	Ngaka Modiri Molema DM	Mafikeng LM	NW Province	Background	Yes	-25.830667	25.611583	SO2
Marikana Community Centre	NW	Bojanala DM	Rustenburg LM	Rustenburg LM	Urban	Yes	-25.698444	27.480111	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3 & CO
Weiwegund	NW	Dr Kenneth Kaunda DM	Tlokwe Local Municipality	NW University	Background		-26.569444	26.939167	
Xanadu	NW	Bojanala DM	Madiberg LM	SAWS	Background	Yes	-25.747122	27.924610	PM10, PM2.5, SO2, NOx, NO, NO2, BC and O4
Cape Point	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	SAWS	Background	Yes	-34.353292	18.489764	CO, NO & O3
City Hall - CT	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Traffic	Yes	-33.925285	18.423839	NOx, SO2 & CO
Foreshore	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Traffic	Yes	-33.913833	18.425167	PM10, NOx, VOC
George	WC	Eden DM	George LM	WC Province	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-33.981219	22.473231	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3, CO
Khayelitsha - CT Metro	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Industrial	Yes	-34.015583	18.653556	PM10, PM2.5, NOx, SO2, VOC

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Potsdam	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-33,837825	18,624824	VOC
Somerset West	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-34,077355	18,831800	SO2
Table View	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-33,819667	18,514333	PM10, PM2.5 NOx, SO2, H2S,
Worcester	WC	Cape Winelands DM	Breede Valley LM	WC Province	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-33,627500	19,468361	PM10, SO2, NOx, O3, CO, H2S

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

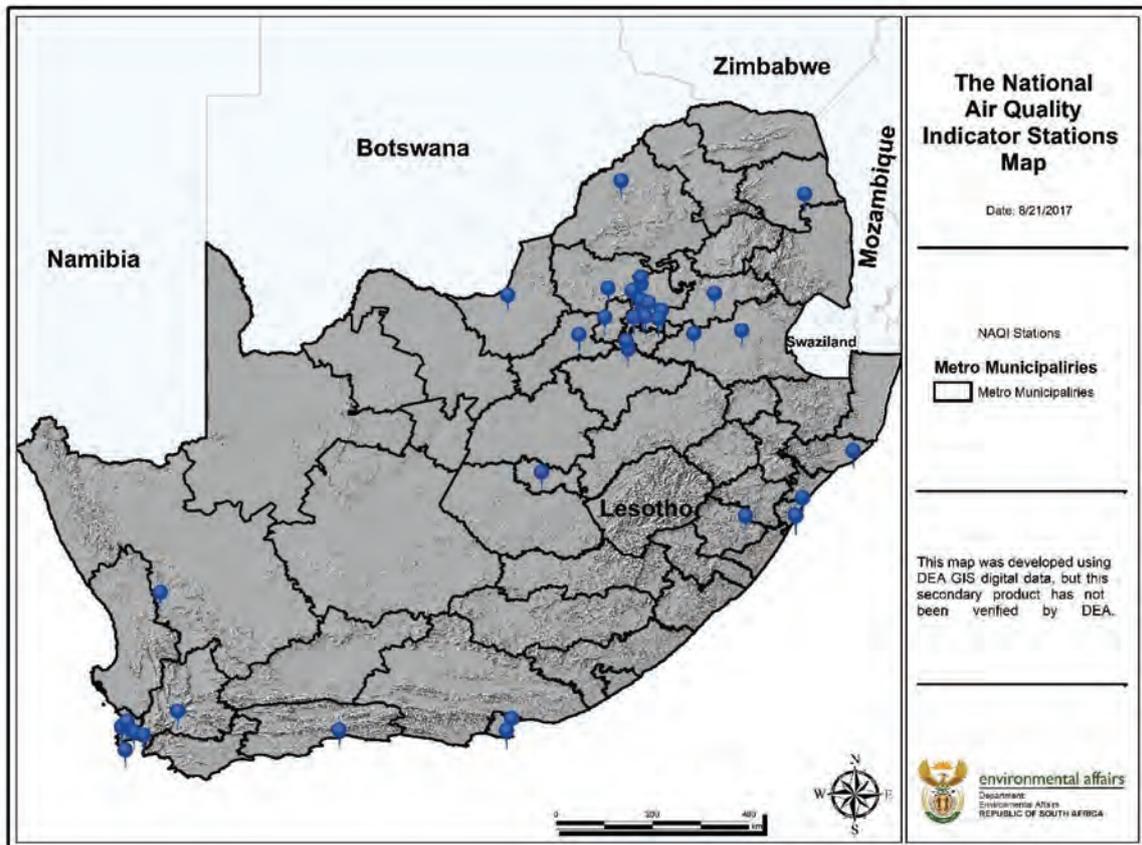


Figure 4: Location of National Air Quality Indicator Stations

#### 5.2.4 South African Atmospheric Emission Licence and Inventory Portal

The national department has established the South African Atmospheric Emission Inventory and Licence Portal (SAAELIP). SAAELIP is an online portal for the management of AEL as well as the estimation, compilation and reporting of atmospheric emission inventories nationally. SAAELIP provides a seamless integration between the management of AELs and the reporting of atmospheric emissions. The portal is comprised of two components, namely; the System for National Atmospheric Emission Licensing (SNAEL) and the National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS).

##### 5.2.4.1 System for National Atmospheric Emission Licensing (SNAEL)

SNAEL provides the ability for Atmospheric Emission Licensing Authorities to:

- Process AEL applications and issues PAEL/AEL applications online.
- Schedule licensing related inspections and track inspection results.
- Manage online compliance reporting.
- Facilitate communication with the AEL holders on the status of the emission inventory annual reports.

For the regulated and listed activities, SNAEL will allow for the AEL holder to:

- Apply and submit an AEL online
- Track the status of an application
- Submit emission compliance reports online
- Track historical versions of all applications and emissions reports

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

In an effort to improve transparency and promote access to information, the SNAEL also affords the public to view non-confidential information of the AEL. All AEL management matters to be undertaken under Chapter 5 of the NEMAQA shall be undertaken through SNAEL with immediate effect. All facilities that had been granted AELs through a manual application process and outside of the SNAEL have up until 31 March 2020 to register their details on the SNAEL and upload such AELs.

#### 5.2.4.2 National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS)

NAEIS is an online system for the national reporting of atmospheric emissions. NAEIS reporting regulations require annual emissions inventory reports from listed activities, Mines and Quarries, Section 23 operating on those facilities with AELs, to be reported in the form necessary for the compilation of the national emission inventory. The system also provide an emission inventory reporting platform for non-listed activities, including all sector categories from the Intergovernmental Panel for Climate Change (IPCC) such as Energy; Industrial Processes and Product Use (IPPU); Agriculture, Forestry and Other Land Use (AFOLU) and Waste. Emissions are estimated inside NAEIS or outside the system depending on the emission sources types. The NAEIS also provides guidance and methodologies for the compilation both air pollutants and greenhouse gases emission inventories following best international practices. These tools will be available for emission inventory compilation by all spheres of government. The NAEIS also serve as a platform for current and future emissions estimations. The NAEIS includes the following with regard to emission inventories:

- Details of emissions from all source types (e.g. point, mobile, area, line, volume).
- Details of emissions by pollutant and greenhouse gas type.
- Norms and standards for emission inventories compilation.
- Examples of emission inventories compiled in South Africa.
- Search tools to interrogate the inventories.
- Details of licensed emissions.
- A database of emission factors for various activities.
- Documentation on Best Available Techniques (BAT).

**Table 14: National Atmospheric Emissions Inventory Modules development targets**

Key Milestone, Product or Output	Timeframe
<b>Emission Inventory tools to be developed in the SAAQIS</b>	
Emission inventory compilation tool	Ongoing
Top-down and bottom-up Greenhouse Gas Inventory compilation tool	2017/18
Emission data reporting facilitation tool	Ongoing
Emission data report/view generating tool	Ongoing
Emission data import facility component	Ongoing
Emission data assessment tool	Ongoing
Emission data export tool	Ongoing
Emission inventory guidelines, manuals and reporting regulations	Ongoing

#### 5.2.4.3 Atmospheric emission inventory information management

Emission inventory information for air pollutants and greenhouse gases from all source sector types will be accessible from the National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS). A National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System Data Management Policy will be developed to specify the protocols for data management and levels of accessibility for all users including stakeholders/general public. This data management policy and associated work packages will also give guidance with regard to the specific location of the NAEIS according to legal mandates, objectives of and the desired integrity of the system.

## 5.3 Problem identification and prioritisation

### 5.3.1 Introduction

There are a number of areas in South Africa that have recognised air quality problems (see Paragraph 5.3.4). These are areas where there are industrial activities resulting in emissions at various levels depending on quantities emitted and

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

number of pollutant sources per area; low-income residential areas using coal and wood stoves for cooking and heating; and other sources of pollution that are identified in various AQMPs. As South Africa is a relatively dry country, dust pollution is also problematic. Sources of dust include construction, agricultural and industrial activities and mining and dust from un-surfaced roads in a large number of rural villages and low-income urban residential areas is a significant air pollution problem. Vehicle emissions from trucks and private vehicles exacerbate the air pollution problem.

A standard approach is required to identify situations of poor air quality and to quantify the scale and nature of the non-compliance in order to prioritise its importance for air quality management intervention. Prioritising poor air quality situations allows for a structured and coordinated approach to addressing the issues, including the focussing of resources. There are a number of sections in the AQA that deal with problem identification and prioritisation, including, among others:

- The Minister must identify pollutants which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well-being or the environment or which the Minister reasonably believes present such a threat (Section 9(1)(a));
- The Minister may declare an area as a priority area if the Minister reasonably believes that: ambient air quality standards are being, or may be, exceeded in the area, or any other situation exists which is causing, or may cause, a significant negative impact on air quality in the area; and the area requires specific air quality management action to rectify the situation (Section 18(1));
- The Minister must publish a list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions and which the Minister reasonably believes have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage (Section 21(1)(a));
- The Minister may declare any appliance or activity, or any appliance or activity falling within a specified category, as a controlled emitter if such appliance or activity, or appliances or activities falling within such category, result in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health or the environment or which the Minister reasonably believes presents such a threat (Section 23(1));
- The Minister may, by notice in the *Gazette*, declare a substance or mixture of substances which, when used as a fuel in a combustion process, result in atmospheric emissions which through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health or the environment or which the Minister reasonably believes present such a threat, as a controlled fuel (Section 26(1)); and
- The Minister may declare any substance contributing to air pollution as a priority air pollutant and require persons falling within a specified category to submit and implement a pollution prevention plan in respect of the priority air pollutant (Section 29(1)).

The underlying requirement for problem identification and prioritisation is information. Some guidelines are provided here for identifying and prioritising pollutants, emitters and areas of concern.

### 5.3.2 Identifying and prioritising pollutants of concern

Section 9 of the AQA provides the Minister with a legal mandate to identify a national list of pollutants of in the ambient which present a threat to human health, well-being or environment, herein referred to as criteria pollutants, and establish acceptable ambient air quality standards for such pollutants. Eight criteria pollutants have been identified to date (see Table 15) in accordance with Section 9 of the AQA. Ambient air quality standards have been established and gazetted for all of these criteria pollutants. In time and according to defined/identified need, additional pollutants are added to the list. These future pollutants can be categorised as either of national or provincial significance. In the case of pollutants that have a provincial significance the MEC may declare these as provincial pollutants of concern. The following guidelines will be applied when identifying and prioritising pollutants of concern:

- The possibility, severity and frequency of effects, with regard to human health and the environment as a whole, with irreversible effects being of special concern;
- Ubiquitous and high concentrations of the pollutant in the atmosphere;
- The feasibility of monitoring the air pollutant;
- Potential environmental transformations and metabolic alterations of the pollutant, as these changes may lead to the production of chemicals with greater toxicity or introduce other uncertainties;
- Persistence in the environment, particularly if the pollutant is not biodegradable and able to accumulate in humans,

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- the environment or food chains;
- The impact of the pollutant taking the following criteria into consideration;
- Size of the exposed population, living resources or ecosystems;
- The existence of particularly sensitive receptors in the zone concerned;
- Pollutants that are controlled by international conventions.

Furthermore, the Minister may declare any substance contributing to air pollution as a priority pollutant in terms of section 29 of AQA. Any person conducting an activity which involves emission of a priority pollutant may be required to develop, submit and implement an atmospheric pollution prevention plan in the manner that has been prescribed by the minister.

**Table 15: Pollutants of concern**

Criteria pollutants declared in terms of section 9 of AQA	Priority Pollutants declared in terms of section 29 of AQA	Possible Future Pollutants of Concern	
		National Pollutants	Local Pollutants
Sulphur dioxide (SO <sub>2</sub> ); Nitrogen dioxide (NO <sub>2</sub> ); Ozone (O <sub>3</sub> ); Carbon monoxide (CO); Lead (Pb); Particulate matter (PM <sub>10</sub> ); Particulate matter (PM <sub>2.5</sub> ); Benzene (C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>6</sub> ).	Carbon dioxide (CO <sub>2</sub> ) Methane (CH <sub>4</sub> ) Nitrous oxide (N <sub>2</sub> O) Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs) Perfluorocarbons (PFCs) Sulphur hexafluoride (SF <sub>6</sub> )	Mercury (Hg); Dioxins; Furans; POPs; Other VOCs; N <sub>2</sub> O;	Chrome (Cr <sub>6</sub> <sup>+</sup> ); Fluoride (particulate and gas); Manganese (Mn). Hydrogen Sulphide (H <sub>2</sub> S) Asbestos Black carbon

### 5.3.3 Identifying and prioritising emitters of concern

The following factors must be considered when identifying and prioritising emitters of concern:

- Emitters located in relatively close proximity to sensitive receptors, e.g. residential areas, schools, hospitals or sensitive ecological areas;
- Emitters of pollutants of concern based on volumes of emission and the nature of the pollutant, i.e. those identified in Table 15;
- Emitters that cannot, or do not, operate successfully within the conditions of their AEL;
- Emitters that are not regulated by an AEL, but emit pollutants identified to be of concern;
- Peak emissions in short time steps, and;
- Emitters of pollutants identified by multilateral environmental agreements that are ratified by South Africa.

### 5.3.4 Identifying and prioritising areas of concern

Air quality areas of concern are all areas where the ambient air quality does not comply with the national ambient air quality standards. In some cases this includes areas where there is sufficient evidence suggesting that the area(s) will not be able to comply with national ambient air quality standards in the near future.

#### 5.3.4.1 National and Provincial Priority Areas of Concern

According to section 18 of AQA, the minister (in case of national) or the MEC (for province) may declare an area as a national or provincial priority area respectively if either believes that:-

- Ambient air quality standards are being, or may be, exceeded in the area, or any other situation exist which is causing, or may cause, a significant negative impact on air quality in the area; and
- The area requires specific air quality management action to rectify the situation.

The Minister or MEC may at a later stage withdraw the declaration of a priority area if the area has achieved compliance with ambient air quality standards for a period of at least two years. The process for declaration and management of priority area is summarised in Figure 5: Summary of a process for priority area declaration and management below:

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

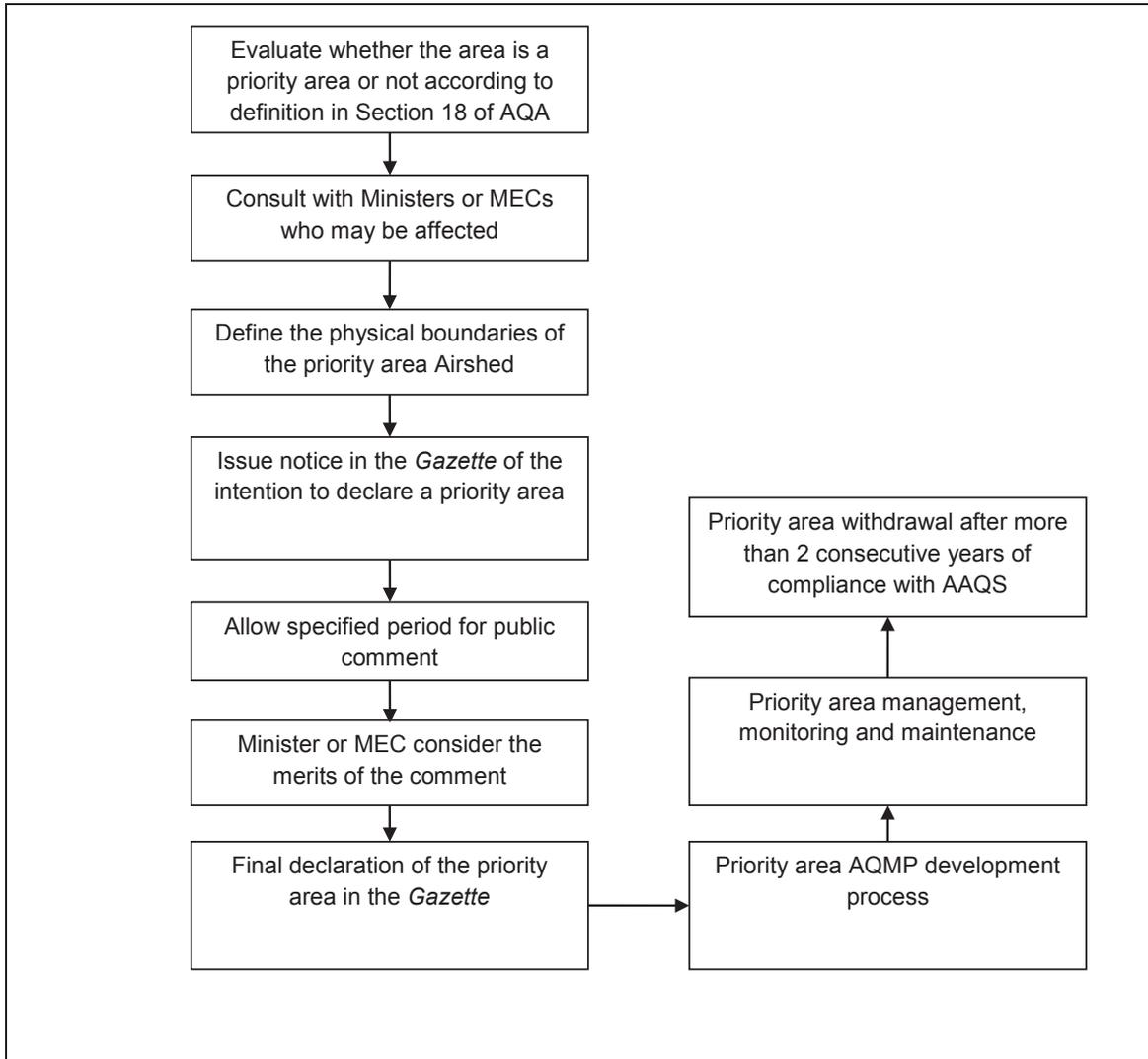


Figure 5: Summary of a process for priority area declaration and management

At national level, the following national priority areas (Table 16 below) have been declared by the Minister. No provincial priority areas have been declared to-date.

Table 16: Declared national priority areas

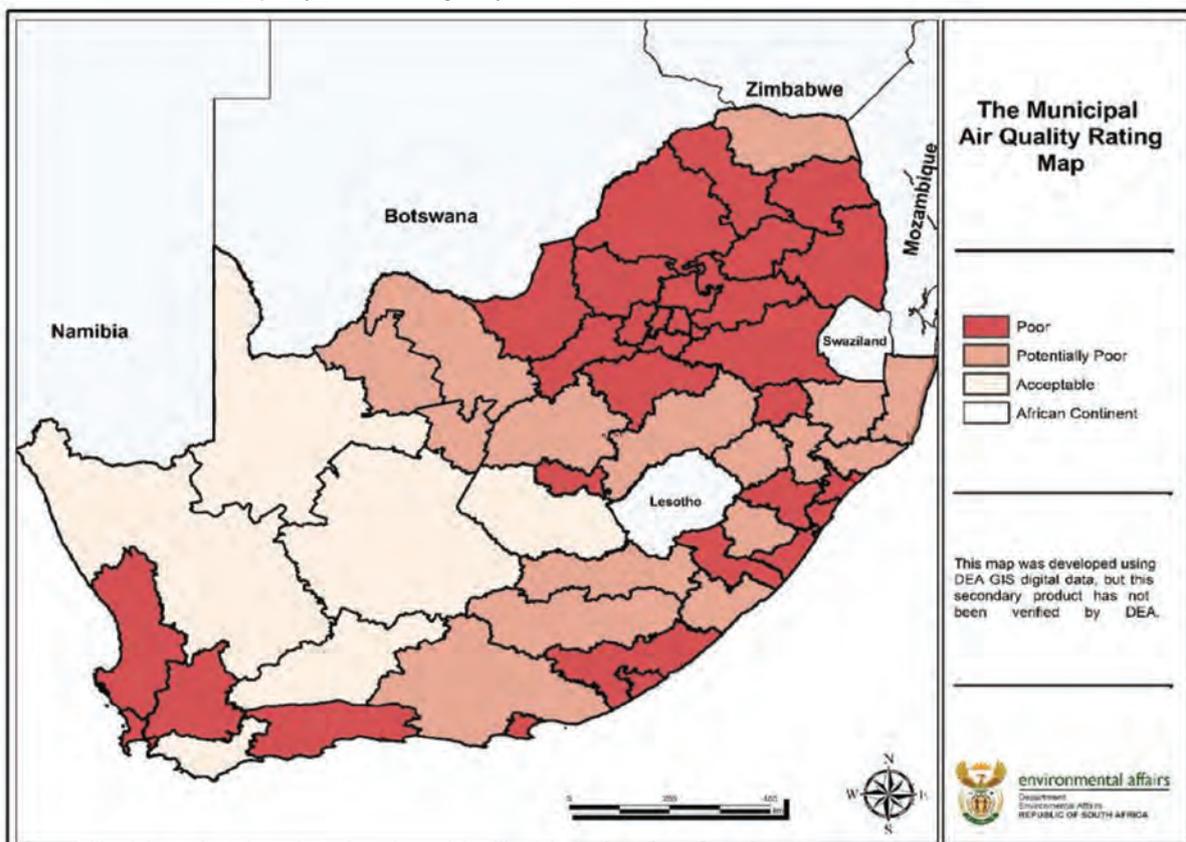
Priority area	Status
Vaal Triangle Airshed Priority Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Declared in 2006.</li> <li>AQMP published in 2009, and</li> <li>Midterm review was conducted in 2013.</li> </ul>
Highveld Priority Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Declared in 2008.</li> <li>AQMP published in 2012, and</li> <li>Midterm review conducted in 2017</li> </ul>
Waterberg Bojanala Priority Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WBPA was declared in 2013, and</li> <li>AQMP published in 2015</li> </ul>

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.3.4.2 Municipal Areas of Concern**

Since 2005, the DEA has attempted to identify areas of concern within the republic with emphasis mostly on Metropolitan and District Municipalities. Such areas were listed in table 24 of the 2007 National Framework and Table 19 in the 2012 National Framework. In these tables, the National Framework classified municipalities as either:

- **Acceptable** – generally good air quality;
- **Potentially Poor** – air quality may be poor at times or deteriorating; or
- **Poor** – ambient air quality standards regularly exceeded.



**Figure 6 : Metropolitan and District Municipalities Air Quality Ratings**

The most recent classification of municipalities of concern is provided in Figure 6 : Metropolitan and District Municipalities Air Quality Ratings and APPENDIX 2: MUNICIPAL AIR QUALITY RATING and is based on the prevalence of sources of emissions for each source category as follows:

- Source category 1 = Listed activities : Prevalence = The number of Section 21 facilities reporting to the NAEIS,
- Source category 2 = Domestic fuel burning: Prevalence =The number of households using coal/fuelwood/ paraffin according to Statistics South Africa,
- Source category 3 = Vehicle emissions: Prevalence =The predicted vehicle emissions based on vehicle sales and fuel sales, and
- Source category 4 = Mining emissions: Prevalence = the number of mines.

Each municipality (district level) was classified as having either lower, middle or upper prevalence value for each source category. The classification into either upper, middle or lower was based on the relative prevalence to other districts. Where the municipality was in the upper range in any (1 or more) category (ies), then the municipality was classified as poor. Where the municipality was in the middle range in two or more of the sources above, then the municipality was also classified as poor. Where the municipality was in the middle range for all sources it was classified as “potentially poor”. Lastly, where the municipality was in the lower range for all sources then it was classified as acceptable. The final

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

categorisation was verified by ambient air quality data where possible. It is believed that in future, when the country-wide monitoring network improves, this classification will be based solely on monitoring data.

Municipalities that are classified as poor or potentially poor should receive priority attention in terms of air quality management planning and priorities for resource allocation. This such classification has implications terms of ambient air quality monitoring as follows:

- Municipalities where ambient air quality is classified as poor – Must undertake continuous ambient air quality monitoring
- Municipalities where ambient air quality is classified as potentially poor – Must undertake continuous ambient air quality monitoring in its localised pollution hotspots and passive monitoring elsewhere within the municipality
- Municipalities where ambient air quality is classified as acceptable – Must undertake continuous screening to inform the need for continuous monitoring in localised hotspots.

## 5.4 Strategy development

### 5.4.1 Introduction

This section of the National Framework provides details on the mechanisms and norms and standards to address the air quality issues that have been identified and prioritised in the previous section. The various sections that follow, namely Awareness-raising, Standard Setting, Regulations and Air Quality Management Planning are directly aligned with the stages of the governance cycle (Figure 1).

### 5.4.2 Awareness-raising

The AQA does not provide specifically for awareness-raising activities, however, awareness-raising is one of the strategies identified in the air quality governance cycle depicted in Figure 1 aimed at addressing air pollution problems. In contrast to the formulation of policy and legislation, and the setting of norms and standards, awareness-raising aims to bring about positive changes in air quality by voluntary rather than forced means. Improvements in public knowledge through environmental education, sharing of knowledge and experience, and access to information, can lead to voluntary changes that are often more sustainable than forced changes initiated by legislation.

Awareness-raising is directly linked to two of the cross-cutting issues in the National Framework, namely capacity development (See Paragraph 5.9.2) and information dissemination (See Paragraph 5.9.3). By raising awareness, community well-being and empowerment is promoted and a contribution is made to capacity development. It is important to recognise the value and potential of well-informed and committed citizens for effecting positive change in air quality. Meaningful public involvement in air quality management issues will be strongly encouraged (See Paragraph 5.9.1). Access to information is a key factor in raising awareness and increasing the knowledge of the public (See Paragraph 5.2.1).

Strategies to raise awareness will emphasise the adverse impacts of air pollution, climate change and ozone layer protection, human health and the environment; and the benefits of clean air. All spheres of government have a responsibility to raise awareness around air quality issues amongst the public, the private sector and their own departments. Strategies to raise awareness include, among others the following:

- Media campaigns in the press, on radio, television, bill boards, etc.
- Public seminars and workshops;
- Distribution of information material
- Effective education programmes developed for primary and secondary schools taking into account the local context;
- The organisation of clean air events to coincide with recognised events such as World Environment Day; and
- Maintenance of an informative and up-to-date website.

### 5.4.3 Standard setting

The AQA provides for the setting of standards for:

- Ambient air quality;
- Listed activities;
- Controlled emitters, and
- Controlled fuels.

The setting of these standards shall follow problem identification and prioritisation process. Depending on the nature of

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

the standard, the process followed in establishing the standards must consider various factors such as, but not limited to:

- The health, safety and environmental protection objectives;
- Analytical methodology;
- Technical feasibility;
- Monitoring capability; and
- Socio-economic consequences.

#### 5.4.3.1 The generic standard setting process

The process of developing standards (for ambient air quality, emitted air pollutants by listed activities, controlled emitters and controlled fuels) in terms of AQA is summarised in Figure 7 below.

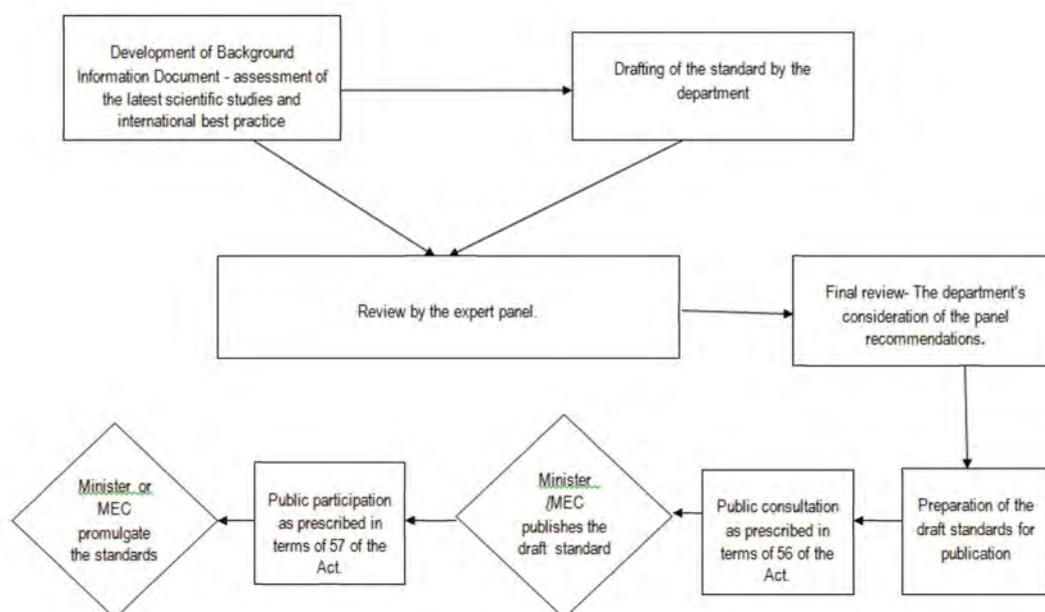


Figure 7: The generic standard setting process

The process in figure above can be divided into three main steps namely: standard drafting, review by the technical and affected sectors, and publication of standards

#### Standard drafting

According to AQA, the Minister must (or MEC or municipality may) identify substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air (Section 9(1)(b)), emitted pollutants (Section 9(1)(c)), controlled emitters (Section 23(1)) or controlled fuels (Section 26(1)) that present a threat to health, well-being or the environment through any means. The identification of these will consider the guidelines provided on problem identification and prioritisation in Paragraph 5.2.3.4 of this document.

During the standard setting process, the national or provincial department will assess the latest scientific and technological information about either the pollutant or emission source (in case of an emitter) that present a threat to environment or well-being. This assessment will include but not limited to health and environmental risk assessment, establishment of potential to emit; possible control measures and any other factor that may be necessary for decision-making.

#### Review of proposed standard by expert panel

The department will establish and chair the expert panel for the review of recommended standards. This expert panel will include, but not necessarily be limited to representatives from: the national department, affected national departments, provincial and municipal government, industry, business, civil society and the academia. In this regard, the department, together with the relevant organisations will make every effort to ensure that the membership of the expert panel is representative and balanced.

In developing the recommendation on the standard, the expert panel shall follow specific processes outlined for ambient air quality standards, and for emission standards for listed activities, controlled emitters and controlled fuels. The role of

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

the expert panel is to undertake an independent review of the standard proposed by an organ of state based on the latest scientific information.

Once the expert panel has submitted its findings/review outcomes, the department must establish the standard in accordance with AQA. In terms of Section 56(2), the standard setting process must include: (a) consultations with all Cabinet members whose areas of responsibility will be affected by the standards, (b) consultations with the MECs responsible for air quality in each province that will be affected by the standards, and (c) allow public participation in the process in accordance with Section 57.

**Publication of the standard**

With regard to Section 57(1) of the AQA the Minister must give notice of the proposed standards in: (a) the Gazette; and (b) at least one newspaper distributed nationally. In accordance with Section 57(2) of the AQA the notice described above must: (a) invite members of the public to submit written representations on or objections to the standards to the Minister within an appropriate time (a minimum of 30 days) of publication of the notice in the Gazette; and (b) contain sufficient information to enable members of the public to submit meaningful representations or objections.

In respect of Section 57(3), the Minister may in appropriate circumstances allow any interested person or community to present oral representations or objections to the Minister, or a person designated by the Minister. In terms of Section 57(4), the Minister must give due consideration to all representations or objections received or presented before setting the standards.

In considering the technical complexity that may be associated with these standards, the Minister will positively consider a comment period longer than the minimum requirement.

**5.4.3.2 South African national ambient air quality standards****Introduction**

In order to uphold the constitutional right to an environment that is not harmful to health and well-being, the setting of ambient air quality standards is mandatory. This document provides clarity on how these standards will be set.

Ambient air quality standards are defined in the Integrated Pollution and Waste Management policy (IP&WM, 2000) as those that define "*targets for air quality management and establish the permissible amount or concentration of a particular substance in or property of discharges to air, based on what a particular receiving environment can tolerate without significant deterioration*".

In line with the World Health Organisation's position, the primary aim of ambient air quality standards is to provide a uniform basis for the protection of public health and ecosystems from the adverse effects of air pollution, and to eliminate or reduce to a minimum, exposure to those pollutants that are known or likely to be hazardous.

Ambient standards therefore provide the benchmark for air quality management and governance. Examples of how ambient standards are used are as follows:

- To objectively define what quality of ambient air South Africans agree is not harmful to their health and well-being; To inform decisions on what type of developments are appropriate in specific areas;
- To use as a yardstick to measure air quality management performance;
- To provide the basis for triggering air quality governance interventions.

The IP&WM Policy clearly recognises both the political and technical dimensions of standard setting, namely:

- The universal, consultative application of the standards-setting process, taking into account the needs of, and information possessed by, the polluter, government departments, the scientific community and civil society;
- Guidelines for the development of the approach to, and the setting of standards, drawn up as part of the national strategies in collaboration with all relevant parties;
- The provision of access for civil society to the standards-setting process and the standards themselves, in accordance with the commitment to more readily available air quality management information.

**Process for ambient air quality standards setting**

The standards setting process is more than just the identification of the defined standard of a specific pollutant. A number of factors beyond the exposure-response relationship need to be taken into account. These factors include understanding the current concentration of pollutants and exposure levels of the population, the specific mixture of air pollutants, and the specific social, economic and cultural conditions encountered within a country. A technical and legal process must be followed to ensure the proposed ambient air quality standards can be achieved in practice and at a justifiable cost.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

This process also includes the review of all available toxicological and epidemiological information and all available information of the effects on the receiving environment. The specific standard setting process is depicted in Figure 8: The standard setting process for ambient air quality and includes:

- Identification of critical factors for health impact;
- Identification of sensitive sub-populations;
- Review of available databases for health status;
- Review of available databases for ambient air quality information, and
- Review and assessment of international guidelines and standards.

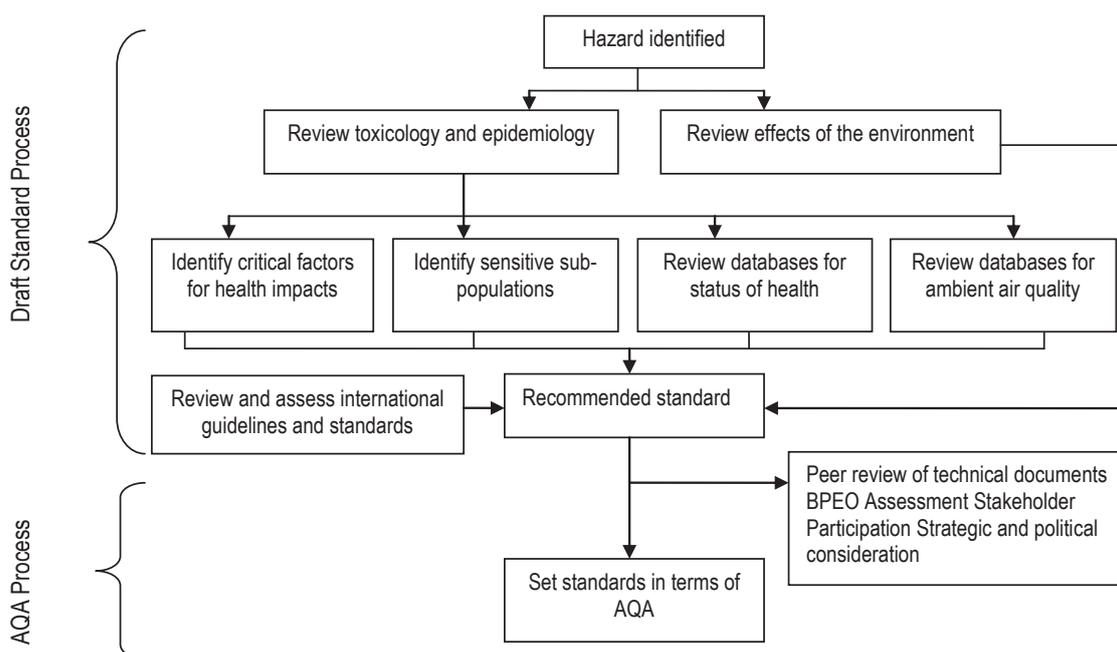


Figure 8: The standard setting process for ambient air quality

A standard may have many components that define it as a "standard". These components may include some or all of the following:

- **Limit values** – a numerical value associated with a unit of measurement and averaging period that forms the basis of a standard;
- **Averaging period** – a period of time over which an average value is determined;
- **Permissible frequencies of exceedance** - a frequency (number/time) related to a limit value representing the tolerated exceedance of that limit value, i.e. if exceedances of the limit value are within the tolerances, then there is still compliance with the standard;
- **Measurement method**- a scientifically accepted standard reference method ; and
- **Compliance time frames** – a date when compliance with the standard is required. This provides a transitional period that allows for activities to be undertaken ensuring compliance by the compliance date.

Given the above, a standard often comprises a limit value for an averaging period with associated tolerances and compliance time frames.

The limit values (concentrations) are based on a scientific process. A further review of the limit values and a feasibility assessment is however required in order to establish ambient air quality standards that includes amongst other, political and socio-economic considerations, which are agreed by all South Africans. This further process includes:

- Technical feasibility, i.e. is it possible to monitor the pollutant with the accuracy required by the proposed limit value?
- Economic feasibility, i.e. can the proposed limit values for the selected pollutant be achieved in practice at an

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

affordable cost?

- Cost-benefit, i.e. is the cost of achieving the proposed limit value offset by similar reductions in the externalised cost to society associated with current levels of the pollutant?
- Public participation that assures, as far as possible, social equity or fairness, and understanding of the scientific and economic consequences.
- Socio-economic considerations, e.g. consideration of the social and economic implications of compliance or non-compliance.
- Strategic and political considerations, e.g. considerations of ambient standards in energy planning.

#### 5.4.3.3 Listed activities and related emission standards

##### Introduction

One of the tools for controlling industrial emissions to the atmosphere is the traditional permit or licence which identifies activities that may only operate if they are correctly permitted to do so by the regulatory authority, and only if the conditions set in the permit or licence are met. This form of regulation was the basis for regulatory control of industrial emissions in terms of the APPA and has been repeated, with some significant modifications, in the AQA.

Section 21 of the AQA states that the Minister must publish a list of activities which result in atmospheric emissions, and which he/she reasonably believes have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage. The list applies nationally. The MEC may publish a list of activities which applies to the relevant province only.

Once identified, these activities are known as Listed Activities and require an AEL or provisional AEL in order to operate. Section 21 of the AQA also requires the setting of minimum emission standards for specified pollutants or mixtures of substances emitted by the identified activities. The permissible amount, volume, emission rate or concentration of the pollutant or mixture of pollutants must be specified as well as the manner in which measurements of such emissions must be carried out.

To this end, the Minister has in March 2010 published the first list of activities and their associated minimum emission standards in the gazette (Government Gazette No.33064, Notice No.248 of 31 March 2010). The list was revised and the amended list was promulgated in November 2013 (Government Gazette No 37054, Notice No. 893 of 22 November 2013). This list provides the minimum requirements for emissions control and reporting in the country. Table 17 provides the activities listed on this Notice:

**Table 17: The 2013 list of activities and associated emissions standards**

The 2013 List of Activities	
Categories	Sub-Categories
1. Combustion Installations	Subcategory 1.1 Solid Fuel Combustion Installations Subcategory 1.2: Liquid Fuel Combustion Installations Subcategory 1.3: Solid Biomass Combustion Installations Subcategory 1.4: Gas Combustion Installations Subcategory 1.5 Reciprocating Engines Subcategory 1.6: Waste Co-feeding Combustion Installations
2. Petroleum Industry, the Production of Gaseous and Liquid Fuels as well as Petrochemicals from Crude Oil, Coal, Gas or Biomass	Subcategory 2.1: Combustion Installations Subcategory 2.2: Catalytic Cracking Units Subcategory 2.3: Sulphur Recovery Units Subcategory 2.4: Storage and Handling of Petroleum Products Subcategory 2.5: Industrial Fuel Oil Recyclers
3. Carbonisation and Coal Gasification	Subcategory 3.1: Combustion Installations Subcategory 3.2: Coke Production Subcategory 3.3: Tar Processes Subcategory 3.4: Char, Charcoal and Carbon black Production

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

	Subcategory 3.5: Electrode Paste Production Subcategory 3.6: Synthetic Gas Production and Cleanup
4. Metallurgical Industry	Subcategory 4.1: Drying and Calcining Subcategory 4.2: Combustion Installations Subcategory 4.3: Primary Aluminium Production Subcategory 4.4: Secondary Aluminium Production Subcategory 4.5: Sinter Plants Subcategory 4.6: Basic Oxygen Furnaces Subcategory 4.7: Electric Arc Furnaces (Primary and Secondary) Subcategory 4.8: Blast Furnaces Subcategory 4.9: Ferro-Alloy Production Subcategory 4.10: Foundries Subcategory 4.11: Agglomeration Operations Subcategory 4.12: Pre-Reduction and Direct Reduction Subcategory 4.13: Lead Smelting Subcategory 4.14: Production and Processing of Zinc, Nickel and Cadmium Subcategory 4.15: Processing of Arsenic, Antimony, Beryllium, Chromium and Silicon Subcategory 4.16: Smelting and Converting of Sulphide Ores Subcategory 4.17: Precious and Base Metal Production and Refining Subcategory 4.18: Vanadium Ore Processing Subcategory 4.19: Production and /or Casting of Bronze, Brass and Copper Subcategory 4.20: Slag Processes Subcategory 4.21: Metal Recovery Subcategory 4.22: Hot Dip Galvanizing Subcategory 4.23: Metal Spray
5. Mineral Processing, storage and handling	Subcategory 5.1: Storage and Handling of Ore and Coal Subcategory 5.2: Drying Subcategory 5.3: Clamp Kilns for Brick Production Subcategory 5.4: Cement Production (using Conventional Fuels and Raw Materials) Subcategory 5.5: Cement Production (using alternative Fuels and/or Resources) Subcategory 5.6: Lime Production Subcategory 5.7: Lime Production (using alternative Fuels and/or Resources) Subcategory 5.8: Glass and Mineral Wool Production Subcategory 5.9: Ceramic Production Subcategory 5.10: Macadam Preparation Subcategory 5.11: Alkali Processes
6. Organic Chemical Industry	The production, or use in production of organic chemicals not specified elsewhere including acetylene, acetic, maleic phthalic anhydride or their acids, carbon disulphide, pyridine, formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, acrolein and its derivatives, acrylonitrile, amines and synthetic rubber. The production of organo-metallic compounds, organic dyes and pigments, surface active agents. The polymerisation or co-polymerisation of any unsaturated hydrocarbons, substituted hydrocarbon (including vinyl chloride). The manufacture, recovery or purification of acrylic acid or any ester of acrylic acid. The use of toluene di-isocyanate or other di-isocyanate of comparable volatility; or recovery of pyridine.
7. Inorganic Chemical Industry	Subcategory 7.1: Production and or Use In Manufacturing Of Ammonia, Fluorine, Fluorine Compounds, Chlorine, and Hydrogen Cyanide Subcategory 7.2: Production of Acids Subcategory 7.3: Production of Chemical Fertilizer

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

	<p>Subcategory 7.4: Production, Use in Production or Recovery of Antimony, Arsenic, Beryllium, Cadmium, Chromium, Cobalt, Lead, Mercury, and or Selenium, by the Application of Heat.</p> <p>Subcategory 7.5: Production of Calcium Carbide</p> <p>Subcategory 7.6: Production or Use of Phosphorus and Phosphate Salts not mentioned elsewhere</p> <p>Subcategory 7.7: Production of Caustic Soda</p>
8. Thermal Treatment of Hazardous and General Waste	<p>Subcategory 8.1: Thermal Treatment of General and Hazardous Waste</p> <p>Subcategory 8.2: Crematoria and Veterinary Waste Incineration</p> <p>Subcategory 8.3: Burning Grounds</p> <p>Subcategory 8.4: Drum Recycling Processes</p>
9. Pulp and Paper Manufacturing Activities including By-Products Recovery	<p>Subcategory 9.1: Lime Recovery Kiln</p> <p>Subcategory 9.2: Chemical Recovery Furnaces</p> <p>Subcategory 9.3: Chemical Recovery Copeland Reactors</p> <p>Subcategory 9.4: Chlorine Dioxide Plants</p> <p>Subcategory 9.5: Wood Burning, Drying and the Production of Manufactured Wood Products</p>
10. Animal Matter Processing	<p>Processes for the Rendering Cooking, Drying, Dehydrating, Digesting, Evaporating Or Protein, Concentrating Of Any Animal Matter Not Intended for Human Consumption</p>

*Procedure for the listing of activities*

In publishing a list of activities, the Minister or MEC is required to follow a consultative process as outlined in Sections 56 and 57 of the AQA. This includes consultation with all Cabinet members (members of the Executive Council in the case of the MEC), whose areas of responsibility will be affected by the listing, and public participation by allowing for a minimum 30-day comment period.

The identification and prioritisation of the activities to be added or removed from the list of activities shall be based on but not limited to factors outlined in 5.3.3. The targeting of industries where the benefits of regulation are expected to outweigh the costs, based on experience from developed and developing countries, substantially reduces the risks of economic impacts arising due to the emission standards set.

The listing of activities therefore must be informed by appropriate analysis, such as cost-benefit analysis (CBA). In targeting industry sectors for which information on emissions and impacts is less available or inconclusive, particularly those comprising small and/or older operations, provision for CBA studies will be made so as to extend the list of activities and associated set of national minimum emission standards in a manner which does not lead to unjustified economic impacts or mass non-compliance.

In summary, the procedure for listing of activities is depicted in the flowchart in **Error! Reference source not found.** The identification of all potential Listed Activities will be based on assessment of local industries based on but not limited to factors outlined in 5.3.3 (Step 1 in Figure 9: Procedure for the identification of listed activities **Error! Reference source not found.**). A prioritisation process based on those known to be significant emitters will be undertaken to arrive at an revised list of Listed Activities. Prioritisation will be informed by appropriate analysis (e.g. CBA) which would include potential detrimental effects to human health (Step 2). Thereafter, there is an appropriate comment period for a minimum 30-day period (Step 3) and the publication of the final list of Listed Activities (Step 4). There is provision for a regular review of the Listed Activities every five years (Step 5), but this does not preclude the ability of the Minister or MEC to amend the list either by adding further activities (Step 6) or removing activities (Step 7) from the list at shorter time intervals.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

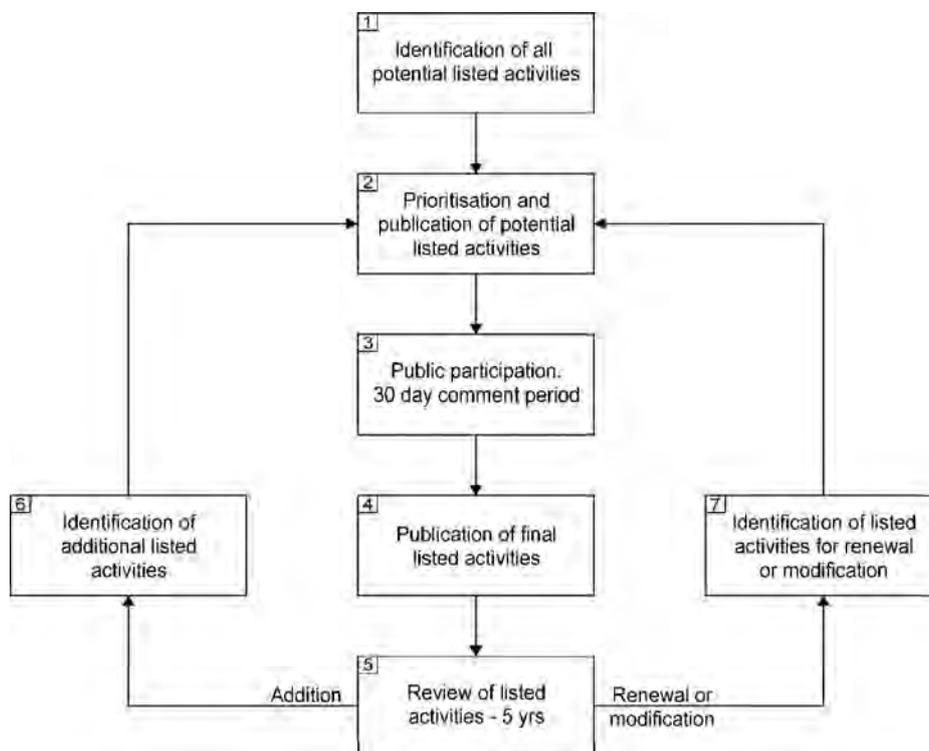


Figure 9: Procedure for the identification of listed activities

## 5.4.3.4 Standard-setting process for listed activities

The approach for establishing emissions standards for Listed Activities will follow the generic approach outlined in Paragraph 5.4.3.1 of this document. As the result of the variety of emission standards that might be established, and different approaches that may be adopted, the criteria followed by the department shall form part of the draft technical standard that will be used by the Expert Panel. In adopting the criteria to follow, the department shall use the following principles outlined in this section.

*The use of Best Practicable Environmental Option*

As discussed above, the process to establish national emission standards will be based on the application of the Best Practicable Environmental Option (BPEO) principle informed by the Best Available Technology/Technique (BAT) approach. Section 4(2)(b) of NEMA requires that “environmental management must be integrated, acknowledging that all elements of the environment are linked and interrelated, and it must take into account the effects of decisions on all aspects of the environment and all people in the environment by pursuing the selection of the best practicable environmental option” (BPEO). The national department has defined BPEO as the option that provides the most benefit or causes the least damage to the environment as a whole, at a cost acceptable to society in the long-term as well as in the short-term (DEAT, 2004).

The BPEO test for a decision comprises the following components:

- **Best** – meaning “state of the art”, most effective or most beneficial. “best” is informed by information provided in peer-reviewed local and international literature;
- **Practicable** – meaning feasible, realistic, possible, workable, practical, viable or doable, i.e. it is the opposite of impossible. “practicability” is informed by cost-benefit analyses (CBA), accessibility, cost effectiveness, availability and other information provided in peer-reviewed local and international literature; and
- **Environmental option** – meaning that the option must be measured in terms of its impact on the environment, where the environment means the surroundings within which humans exist and that are made up of: (i) the land, water and atmosphere of the earth; (ii) micro-organisms, plant and animal life; any part or combination of (i) and

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

(ii) and the interrelationships among and between them; and the physical, chemical, aesthetic and cultural properties and conditions of the foregoing that influence human health and wellbeing.

In the standard setting context, specifically with respect to technically-based standards (e.g. emission standards) the “best” component of BPEO principle will be informed through the use of the Best Available Technology/Technique (BAT) approach. BAT implies the consideration of technologies or techniques that deliver pollution controls to the best degree technologically possible, without economic or other considerations. In this regard BAT is measured with reference to best practice documentation published internationally.

In the application of BAT for the purpose of informing emissions standards and monitoring protocols for the prioritised industry types, reference must be made to the best practice documentation published internationally. Emission standards must not prescribe the use of one specific technique of technology (i.e. where possible, technology forcing must be avoided).

A lower limit can be set for activity, throughput or production rate, or uncontrolled emission rate to prevent the inclusion of a large number of small facilities, which would be more appropriately controlled under Section 23 (Controlled Emitters) of the AQA if control is deemed necessary. Emission standards must be specified primarily for point sources (stacks and vents) where emission monitoring is possible. Where the control of diffuse emissions is considered significant enough to warrant inclusion in national standards (e.g. fugitive dust at bulk ore/coal handling and processing plants and certain metallurgical industries; evaporative emissions from bulk chemical storage and handling), emission limits expressed in the form of specific best practice control measures which are applicable across individual industries must be stipulated (e.g. floating roof tanks), or alternatively, a comprehensive fugitive emission management plan must be put in place.

Only those pollutants recognised to pose a potential threat to health and/or the environment must be selected for the setting of emission standards for each industry type selected (with the exception of incineration for which an extended number of substances must be regulated in line with current local and international experience). Reference must be made to international information and approaches in the selection of the most suitable substances to target. Where appropriate, use will be made of surrogate parameters to reduce compliance monitoring costs. In the procedure which is described below, there is a mechanism for reviewing this recommendation.

#### *Format for expressing emission standards*

The AQA stipulates that emission standards must include the permissible amount, volume, emission rate or concentration of that substance or mixture of substances that may be emitted and the manner in which measurements must be carried out. This requirement in the AQA came about as a result of the manner in which emission standards have been historically specified within the APPA Registration Certificates (i.e. typically as emission concentrations without limits on volumetric flows or on total masses of emissions). The specification of a total mass as a permissible amount or a volume in a general national minimum emission standard intended to regulate a number of individual industries is problematic, unless it is specified on a per unit production or output basis i.e. a performance standard.

Emission standards must be expressed either as an emission concentration or a performance standard (i.e. amount of pollutant emitted per unit of activity) or, where appropriate, a combination of both, with the actual concentration or level of performance taken from BAT. Total masses of emissions permissible can be included in the AELs of Listed Activities.

#### *Measurement of emissions*

The AQA stipulates that the manner in which the measurement of emissions from Listed Activities is undertaken must be specified. For purposes of compliance monitoring, it is necessary to carry out measurement of emissions.

The emission monitoring required clearly depends on the nature of the source, the pollutant and the emission standard. Emission standards expressed as emission concentrations require direct stack monitoring. The sector-specific monitoring method and frequency will be taken from internationally available best practice documentation. In most cases, continuous emissions monitoring will be prescribed for the larger sources of criteria pollutants as is typically best practice, with periodic (e.g. annual) testing campaigns stipulated for metals, persistent organic compounds etc. Continuous stack monitoring will be required in areas that are not in compliance with ambient air quality standards, especially within declared priority areas where the emissions from the stack significantly contribute to poor air quality in the area. Emission standards expressed as a performance standard (e.g. kg of pollutant per ton product) requires a combination of direct monitoring and product tonnage tracking methods.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

*Compliance time frames*

Compliance time frames have been informed by industry cycles. Based on international experience, an effective approach would be to set minimum time frames for compliance nationally (taking account of industry cycles), with provision being made for more restricted compliance time frames to be specified by provinces or municipalities for industries within their jurisdictions and/or stricter timetables being negotiated for inclusion in permits. Compliance time frames, in line with international trends are typically:

- 2 to 3 years in the case of new or substantially modified facilities;
- 5 to 10 years in the case of existing facilities, potentially differentiated by age.

*Phase-in and transitional arrangements*

As outlined above, the initial list of activities comprises industry types which are known to be potentially significant in terms of their atmospheric emissions, and where based on experience from developed and developing countries, economic risks are likely to be minimal. Additional measures to reduce risk during this initial phase include: (i) restricting pollutants for which emission standards are specified to the key ones for that industry type, thus reducing compliance monitoring and reporting costs; (ii) taking industry cycles into account in the setting of national minimum compliance timeframes, and (iii) making provision for industries to apply for extensions based on impact assessments being undertaken.

Allowance is made for emission standards to be varied to take account of the age of facilities. The setting (retention) of less stringent emission standards for older facilities has a place in the regulatory process internationally. It is however notable that these emission standards are not static, but that there are time frames within which facilities are expected to meet firmer standards. Generally, the approach adopted is to link required improvements to major plant modifications and to take advantage of industry cycles.

A further transitional arrangement practised internationally is the specification of general emission standards for application to industries for which sector-specific emission standards are not yet applicable. Taking into account the recommendation that a select list of industry types be prioritised for the setting of specific emission standards, general emission standards for application to industries which are initially not listed are to be used.

*Compliance tolerances*

Compliance tolerances will be dealt with as part of the standard setting process.

*Postponement/suspension of compliance timeframes*

Given the potential economic implications of emission standards, and mindful that emission standard setting in South Africa was not based on comprehensive sector-based CBA (at least not for the initial group of Listed Activities), provision is made for specific industries to apply for possible extensions to compliance time frames for new plant standards. A proponent of a Listed Activity will be allowed to apply for a postponement or suspension of the compliance date and such an application will be considered based on the following conditions being met:

- An application is accompanied by a completed Atmospheric Impact Report (as contemplated in Section 30 of the AQA); and demonstration that the industry's air emissions are not causing direct adverse impacts on the surrounding environment;
- The application is accompanied by a concluded public participation process undertaken as specified in the NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations;
- The application is submitted to the National Department on or before 31 March 2019;
- Ambient air quality in the area is in compliance with the applicable National Ambient Air Quality Standards; and
- Other requirements as may be specified by the National Air Quality Officer.

It should be noted that the year 2020 marks 10 years since the publication of the 2010 AQA Section 21 notice (Listed activities and minimum emission standards). Therefore, sufficient time has been afforded to industry towards compliance with the initial MES by 2020. In upholding the objectives of the AQA, the Department provides certainty regarding postponement or suspension of compliance timeframes in the following order:

- Existing facilities may apply for a once-off postponement of compliance timeframes for new plant standards. A postponement if granted will be for a period not exceeding 5 years and no postponement would be valid beyond 31 March 2025;

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- Existing facilities that will be decommissioned by 2030 may apply for a once-off suspension of compliance timeframes with new plant standards for a period not beyond 2030. An application must be accompanied by a clear decommissioning schedule and no such application shall be considered after 31 March 2019;
- Existing facilities that will be granted a suspension of compliance timeframes shall comply with existing plant standards during the suspension period until they are decommissioned; and
- No postponement of compliance timeframes or a suspension of compliance timeframes shall be granted for existing plant standards.

#### 5.4.3.5 *Controlled Emitters*

##### *Introduction*

According to Section 23 of the AQA, the Minister or MEC may declare any appliance or activity, or any appliance or activity falling within a specified category, as a controlled emitter if it results in atmospheric emissions which present a threat to health or the environment or which the Minister or MEC reasonably believes presents such a threat. The controlled emitter regulatory tool is principally for the management of emissions from widespread, small-scale emitters.

The following controlled emitters have been identified and the status of declaration is presented in Table 18:

- Small boilers
- Temporary asphalt plants
- Small scale char and charcoal plants

Other examples of potential emitters include, but not limited to, the following:

- Fuel transfer facilities

##### *Identification of controlled emitters*

The procedure for identification and declaration of controlled emitters will be based on a prioritisation process taking account of the following factors:

- Severity of impacts on health and well-being;
- Activity likely to yield the most incremental improvement in ambient air quality;
- International experience;
- Availability of technology.

In declaring an appliance or activity as a controlled emitter, the Minister or MEC is required to:

- follow a consultative process in accordance with sections 56 and 57 of the AQA;
- to apply the precautionary principle contained in the NEMA;
- to take account of international obligations;
- to consider any sound scientific information; and
- to consider any risk assessments.

Activities/appliances likely to be declared potential controlled emitters within the next five years will be prioritised following a similar procedure outlined in Paragraph 5.4.3 of this document.

##### *Standard-setting process for controlled emitters*

Once an appliance or activity is declared a controlled emitter, emission standards must be set. The standards must set the permissible amount, volume, emission rate or concentration of any specified substance or mixture of substances that may be emitted from the controlled emitter. The manner in which the measurements of emissions from controlled emitters must be carried out must also be prescribed. International best practice, with the consideration of local circumstances, must be used to inform the principles upon which standards are based and the standard setting process.

##### *Implementation of the controlled emitters*

Section 25 of AQA prohibits the manufacturing and sale of any appliance; and operation of any activity declared a controlled emitter, unless such appliance or activity complies with emission standards.

Where the Minister or MEC has identified an appliance as a significant emission source, and requires that emission standards be applicable at the level of manufacturing and/ or sale, the Minister or MEC will collaborate with the Minister of Trade and Industry to ensure that such standards are established and implemented at the level of manufacturing by the relevant statutory bodies under the National Technical Infrastructure. This collaboration involves establishment of the standards or technical specifications by South African Bureau of Standards (the SABS), and adoption and enforcement of

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

such standards as compulsory specifications by the National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications (NRCS). The process tabled below will be followed for such standards.

Steps	Process	Empowering Provisions	Output	Responsibility
1	Identification of an appliance that needs to be declared as a controlled emitter.	S.23 AQA	Background Information Document	Minister/ MEC
2	Submission of the new project request to the SABS with full justification on the need for the development of the standard.	SANS 1 -1 Standards Act	New project under the SABS	Minister/ MEC
4	Development of the National Standard	SANS 1 -1 Standards Act	South African National Standard/ Technical Specification	SABS
5	Submission of a request for development of a Technical Regulation/ Declaration of SANS as a compulsory specification	NRCS Act	Formal Request and Background Information Document	Minister/ MEC
6	Development of a Technical Regulation/ Declaration of SANS as a compulsory specification	NRCS Act	Technical Regulation/ Compulsory Specification	NRCS/ the DTI
7	Compliance monitoring and inspection of the Compulsory Specification	NRCS Act	Compliance with the Compulsory Specification	NRCS
8	Maintenance of the compulsory specification	NRCS Act		NRCS

Where the Minister or MEC has declared an activity as a controlled emitter, and established the emission standards for such activity at operation level, the implementation of such standards lies with local authorities. The following process shall be followed to manage controlled emitter activities in municipal jurisdictions.

Steps	Process	Empowering Provisions	Output	Responsibility
1	Submission of a notification to use an appliance or conduct an activity declared a controlled emitter in the municipal jurisdiction, using prescribed registration form.	S.23 Notice	Notice to declare an appliance as a controlled emitter.	Controlled emitter.
2	Consideration of the notification letter/registration form and issuance of a registration letter/certificate: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Once the air quality officer is satisfied that the appliance or activity meets the controlled emitter description and that the requirements of the Notice will be met.</li> </ul>	None	A registration letter/certificate to conduct a controlled emitter.	Municipality
3	Add the activity in the database of the controlled emitters	None	A database of controlled emitters.	Municipality

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 130 - PART 2**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 2 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

4	Submission of emissions report to the air quality officer/ municipal compliance and enforcement section	S.23	Emissions Compliance report	Controlled emitter
5	Continuous compliance monitoring and enforcement	S.23	Compliance with the emission standards	Municipality

**Compliance time frames**

Compliance time frames will be established for each of the controlled emitters taking account risks to human health, relative contribution to ambient air quality levels, and ability to monitor for compliance.

**Compliance tolerances**

Compliance tolerances will be determined as part of the standards setting process.

**5.4.3.6 Controlled Fuels****Introduction**

Section 26 of AQA provides for the Minister or MEC to declare a substance or mixture of substances as a controlled fuel, if when it is used as a fuel in a combustion process, it results in emissions to the atmosphere which the Minister or MEC reasonably believes present a threat to health or the environment. Controlled fuels may be defined as those substances or mixtures of substances that have caloric value but are not controlled by the Department of Energy and are sometimes referred to as alternative fuels.

Examples of potential controlled fuels include:

- Waste organic chemicals;
- Tyres; and
- Spent pot linings.

**Procedure for identification of controlled fuels**

Identification of controlled fuels is likely to be influenced by other legislation, especially the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008) as most of these are classified as wastes or by-products. As these pieces of legislation promote the re-use of substances or mixture of substances that have specified calorific values, the controlled fuel tool shall be used to ensure that this reuse is conducted in a manner that does not impact negatively on ambient air quality. Currently, the National Policy on Thermal Treatment of General and Hazardous Waste provides the framework in which thermal waste treatment technologies shall be implemented in the country with respect to the following:

- Incineration of general and hazardous waste in dedicated incinerators or other high temperature thermal treatment technologies, including but not limited to pyrolysis and gasification; and
- The co-processing of selected general and hazardous waste as alternative fuels and/or raw materials (AFR) in cement production.

In relation to this policy framework, thermal treatment and the use of AFRs are listed in terms of Section 21 of the AQA, and associated minimum emission standards are specified. The Minister has published the national norms and standards for the assessment of waste for landfill disposal, which restricts the land filling of waste with specific calorific value. These norms and standards are aimed at promoting the reuse of this waste is further supported by the AQA with respect to combustion of waste in a manner that does not impact negatively on ambient air quality.

As further policy framework is developed for the use of alternative fuels and raw materials, controlled fuel tool will, where appropriate, be used to regulate the manufacture, use and/or prohibition of such fuels. Where requirements are made in other legislation (e.g. AFR requirements in the thermal treatment policy), such requirements shall be adopted and/or implemented using other air quality tools (e.g. listed activities).

**Standard-setting process for controlled fuels**

The generic procedure described in Paragraph 5.4.3 above on standard setting will be utilised for setting standards for controlled fuels.

**Compliance time frames**

Timeframes for compliance for controlled fuels will be dealt with as part of the standards setting process.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.4.3.7 Noise and odour**

Section 34 of the AQA makes provision for the Minister to prescribe national standards for the control of noise in general or by specified machinery or activities or in specified places or areas. In so doing, as well as defining noise and determining maximum levels of noise.

Notwithstanding the above, the impact of noise and odour are usually localised and, hence, are best managed at the provincial and local level through regulations and by-laws. In order to promote a uniform approach to noise and odour management, the national department has dealt with these issues in its model air pollution control by-laws (see 5.8.2.3, page 86).

Section 35 of the AQA makes provision for the Minister or the MEC to prescribe measures for the control of offensive odours emanating from specified activities. It is the responsibility of the occupier of any premises to take all reasonable steps to prevent the emission of any offensive odour caused by any activity on their premises.

The DEA has developed a best practice guidance document for odour management from the three main industrial sectors regulated in terms of Category 10 (Animal Matter Processing) of the listed activities and associated minimum emission standards. The sectors covered include fishmeal plants, tanneries and rendering plants. While the document is limited to these sectors, the principles and techniques described in the document are broadly applicable to other sectors which generate noxious or offensive odours.

**5.4.3.8 Dust**

Section 32 of the AQA makes provision for the Minister or the MEC to prescribe measures for the control of dust in specific places or areas, or by specified machinery or in specific instances. While dust generally does not pose a health risk, it may be regarded as a nuisance. It is the responsibility of the owner of the dust generating activity to take reasonable measures to limit the nuisance factor.

With respect to this, the Minister has published in the gazette the National Dust Control Regulations for the control of dust in all areas (Government Gazette No.36974, Notice No.827 of 01 November 2013). These regulations provide requirements for measures for the control of dust in all areas, which includes the requirements for monitoring, dust management plan development and implementation and reporting.

**5.4.4 Regulations**

Table 18 below lists the regulations that have been promulgated to-date and those that are intended to be promulgated under AQA.

**Table 18: Schedule of Government notices and regulations in terms of the AQA**

Ref.	Description	Current status
AQA Section 64(2)	Commencement notice of certain sections of the AQA (excluding sections 21, 22, 36 to 49, 51(1), 51(1)(f), 51(3), 60 and 61)	Published on 09 September 2005 (Notice 898, Government Gazette No.28016)
AQA Section 18(1)	Vaal Triangle Air-Shed Priority Area Declaration	Declared on 21 April 2006 (Notice 365, Government Gazette No.28732).
AQA Section 7(1)	2007 National Framework for air quality management in the Republic of South Africa	National framework final publication was done on 11 September 2007 (Government Gazette No.30284). <b>Repealed by the 2012 National Framework</b>
AQA Section 7(1)	2012 National Framework for air quality management in the Republic of South Africa	2012 National framework final publication was done on 29 November 2013 (Notice Number 919, Government Gazette No.37078)
AQA Section 9(1)(a) & (b)	Notice identifying substances in ambient air and establishing national standards for the permissible amount or concentration of each substance in ambient air – the 1 <sup>st</sup> ambient air quality standards.	Published on 09 June 2006(Notice 528, Government Gazette No.28899)
AQA Section 18(1)	Notice declaring the 2 <sup>nd</sup> National Priority Area (Highveld Priority Area).	Declared as the National Priority Area on 23 November 2007 (Notice 1123, Government Gazette No. 30518).
AQA Section 19(5)	Notice publishing the Vaal Triangle Air-shed Priority Area Air Quality Management Plan	The VTAPA AQMP final publication was on 28 May 2009(Notice 613, Government Gazette No.32263)

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Ref.	Description	Current status
AQA Section 20	Regulations for implementing and enforcing the Vaal Triangle Air-shed Priority Area Air Quality Management Plan.	Promulgated on 29 May 2009 (Notice 614, Government Gazette No.32254)
AQA Section 21(1) & (3)	List of activities which result in atmospheric emissions and establishing minimum emission standards for each listed activity.	The final publication was done on 31 March 2010 (Notice 248, Government Gazette No. 33064). <b>Repealed by notice 893 of 2013</b>
AQA Section 21	List of activities which result in atmospheric emissions and establishing minimum emission standards for each listed activity.	Published on 22 November 2013 (Notice 893, Government Gazette No. 37054)
AQA Section 21(1)(b)	Amendments to the list Activities and Associated Minimum Emission Standards identified in terms of Section 21 Of the National Environmental Management: AQA	Published on 12 June 2015 Notice Number 551 Government Gazette 38863
AQA Section 53(p)	Regulations on model air pollution control by-laws to be adopted by municipalities.	Promulgated on 02 July 2010(Notice 579, Government Gazette No.33342).
AQA Section 9(1)	National ambient air quality standards	Final publication was done on 24 December 2009(Notice 1210, Government Gazette No.32816)
AQA Section 64	Minister's notice bringing the remainder of the AQA into operation, namely, sections 21, 22, chapter 5, 51(1)(e), 51(1)(f), 51(3), 60 and 61 (APPA repealed)	Notice published on 26 March 2010(Notice 220, Government Gazette No.33041)
AQA Section 32	Draft National Dust control regulations	Published on 1 November 2013 (Notice 827, Government Gazette 36974)
AQA Section 9(1)	National Ambient air quality standard for particulate matter of aerodynamic diameter less than 2.5 micron metres	Notice published on 29 June 2012 (Notice 486, Government Gazette No.35463)
AQA Section 18(1)	Declaration of Waterberg Priority Area incorporating Bojanala platinum district	Declared as a National Priority Area on 08 March 2013 (Notice 154, Government Gazette No.36207)
AQA Section 19(5)(a)	Highveld Priority Area AQMP	Final AQMP was published on 02 March 2012(Notice 144, Government Gazette No.35072)
AQA Section 53(aA), (o) and (p) read with section 12	National Greenhouse Gas emission reporting Regulations	Promulgated on 3 April 2017 (notice Number 622, Government Gazette No.40762)
AQA Section 29(1) read with section 29(4)	Declaration of GHGs as Priority Air Pollutants	Promulgated on 21 July 2017(Notice Number 710, Government Gazette No.40996)
AQA Section 53(a), (o) and (p) read with section 29(3)	National Pollution Prevention Plans Regulations	Promulgated on 21 July 2017(Notice Number 712, Government Gazette No.40996)
AQA Section 53(o) read with section 30	Regulations prescribing the Format of atmospheric impact report.	Published on 02 April 2015 (Notice Number 284, Government Gazette No.38633)
AQA Section 23	Declaration of Small boilers as controlled emitters	Published on 01 November 2013 (Notice Number 831, Government Gazette No.36973)
AQA Section 23(1) and section 24	Declaration of temporary asphalt plants as controlled emitters	Published on 28 March 2014 (Notice Number 201, Government Gazette No.37461)
AQA Section 53(a)	Regulations Regarding Air Dispersion Modelling	Promulgated on 11 July 2014 (Notice Number: 533, Government Gazette No. 37804)
AQA Section 12	National Atmospheric Emission Reporting Regulations	Promulgated on 02 April 2015 (Notice Number: 283 Government Gazette No. 38633)
AQA Section 23	Declaration of small-scale char and small-scale charcoal plants as controlled emitters and establishment of emission standards	Promulgated on 18 September 2015 (Notice Number: 602 Government Gazette No. 39220)

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Ref.	Description	Current status
AQA Section 19	Waterberg-Bojanala Priority Area AQMP	Promulgated 09 December 2015 (Notice Number: 1207 Government Gazette No. 39489)
AQA Sections 37, 44, 45 and 47	Regulations prescribing the atmospheric emission licence Processing fee	Promulgated on 11 March 2016 (Notice Number: 250 Government Gazette No. 39805)
AQA Section 53(la)	Regulations for the procedure and criteria to be followed in the determination of an administrative fine in terms of section 22A	Gazetted on 18 March 2016 (Notice Number: 332 Government Gazette No. 39833)
NEMA 24(J)a)	Air quality offsets guidelines	Published on 18 March 2016 (Notice 333, <i>Government Gazette</i> No. 39833)

#### 5.4.5 Economic instruments

The National Treasury developed a draft policy paper to outline the role that market-based instruments, specifically environmentally-related taxes and charges, could play in supporting sustainable development in South Africa, and to outline a framework for considering their potential application (National Treasury, 2006). The draft policy paper focuses on the options for environmental fiscal reform and the policies and measures capable of contributing to both revenue requirements and environmental objectives.

Options include:

- Levies;
- Reforms to existing environmentally-related taxes;
- Development of new environmentally-related taxes;
- Reforming non-environmentally-related taxes with environmental incentives; and
- Fiscal incentives to improve environmental outcomes.

With regard to air quality related taxes and charges, the National Treasury has introduced CO<sub>2</sub> emissions tax on new passenger motor vehicles. The main objective of this tax is to influence the composition of South Africa's vehicle fleet to become more energy efficient and environmentally friendly. New passenger cars will be taxed based on their certified CO<sub>2</sub> emissions at R75 per g/km for each g/km above 120 g/km. The emissions tax currently apply to passenger cars, but will be extended to commercial vehicles once agreed CO<sub>2</sub> standards for these vehicles are set.

#### 5.4.6 Air Quality Management Plans

Section 15 of AQA stipulates that each national department or province responsible for preparing an environmental implementation plan or environmental management plan must include in that plan an air quality management plan. Furthermore, each municipality must include an air quality management plan in its integrated development plan (IDP) (Municipal Systems Act: Chapter 5). The DEA has developed and published a manual for AQMP development in South Africa in order to provide guidance to all spheres of government on the processes involved in developing an AQMP. The first manual was published in 2008 and was reviewed and re-published in 2012. The aim of the manual is to improve and harmonise the quality of AQMPs produced by the various spheres of government. Further to authorities' AQMPs, the Act states that a person conducting a listed activity (see Paragraph 5.3.3) which involves the emission of a substance declared as a priority air pollutant may be required to develop, submit and implement a pollution prevention plan (Section 29 of the AQA). This latter plan may also be regarded as a form of air quality management planning.

All air quality management plans (AQMPs) are logical descriptions of interventions and required resources aimed at implementing a strategy or strategies to achieve a specific air quality objective(s).

The nature of the involvement and the degree or depth of management required in each of the generic activities will vary for different government departments and for different planning and implementation spheres in government. Furthermore, the intensity of air quality management planning, implementation and control will differ depending on the class of air quality experienced in the area.

The successful development and implementation of an AQMP is also dependant on multi-stakeholder involvement throughout the process. Thus the identification and establishment of stakeholder groups must be done in the beginning of AQMP development.

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.4.6.1 The AQMP development process**

Notwithstanding the class of air quality experienced in a given area, all air quality management planning follows a systematic process illustrated in Figure 10. The process of AQMP development starts with the establishment of stakeholder groups, defining of the boundaries of the AQMP geographic area and the establishment of a baseline. Baseline assessment involves gathering of both geographic and air quality information which is critically important in informing the AQMP. Geographic information include population and statistics, topography, land-use, climatology and other geo information that has implication for air quality. Air quality information should include the type and location of the various sources of air quality, emissions inventories an ambient air quality status as determined through air quality monitoring and dispersion modelling. Any dispersion modelling exercise for AQMP development should be done in accordance with the Regulations on Air Dispersion Modelling (Notice Number: 533, Government Gazette No. 37804).

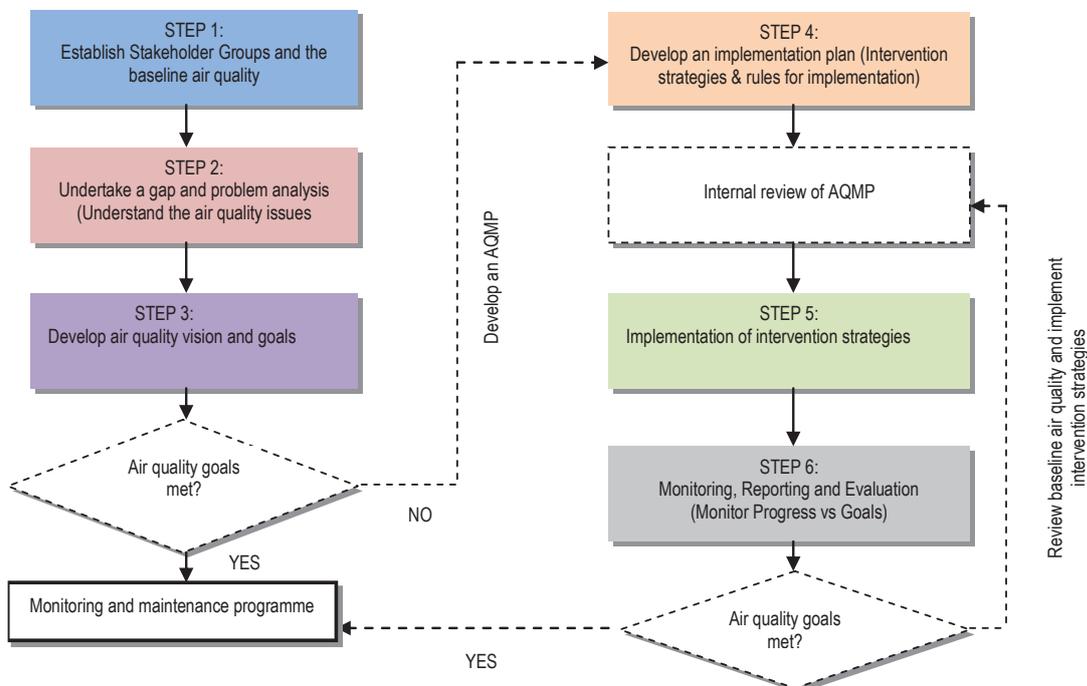
The next step in AQMP development is Gap Analysis. Whether data exists or not, an assessment needs to be made on the adequacy of the data; with recommendations of how such data can be improved or how data can be acquired (in case it does not exist).

Based on the baseline information the goal of the AQMP is established. Where air quality standards are not met, the general goal will be to ensure compliance with standards. Where there is compliance, the goal will be to maintain good air quality or to further improve air quality.

Step 4 is especially required where AQMP goals are not met. The step involves the development of interventions to achieve specific air quality/ AQMP objectives.

Implementation of interventions stipulated in the AQMP should be monitored and reported on. Since no air quality conditions remain the same over time, it is important that the AQMP revised from time to time to cater for the changing air quality issues.

The Air Quality Management Planning Manual for has been developed by DEA to elaborate on this process. The manual is available in the SAAQIS website.



**Figure 10: The generic air quality management planning process**

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.4.6.2 The national air quality management planning support programme**

The national department has developed an AQMP Support Programme to ensure that the DEA provide effective and efficient support to AQMP development country wide thereby fulfilling the requirements of Section 15 of the AQA. The support program identified areas that require priority in terms of AQMP support. These are areas that have poor air quality, have demonstrated the need for support and there are resources available in a short to medium term to support them.

**5.4.6.3 The National Air Quality Management Plan**

As the National Framework includes a logical description of the national department's interventions and required resources aimed at implementing a strategy or strategies to achieve the objectives of the AQA, the National Framework serves as the DEAs' Air Quality Management Plan as contemplated in section 15(1) of the AQA.

**5.4.6.4 AQMPs for other National Government Departments**

Each national department that is responsible for preparing an environmental implementation plan or environmental management plan must include in that plan an air quality management plan (NEMA: Chapter 3). The main air quality management goal for national government departments is: to ensure that activities that fall within their jurisdiction do not compromise ambient air quality; to ensure implementation of the Republic's obligations in respect of international agreements; and to ensure that their air quality management plan is coordinated with the National AQMP, i.e. the National Framework. Not all national departments need to actively participate in the development of the national AQMP. The list below provides an indication of departments that must prepare AQMPs and make an input to the national AQMP:

- The Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) sets regulations, norms, standards and guidelines for dust control from mine spoil tailings and other mining operations.
- The Department of Energy (DoE) is also involved in fuel specifications, the use of low-smoke fuels and renewable energy initiatives.
- The Department of Health (DoH) sets regulations and guidelines for all medical wastes and treatment facilities, in consultation with the national department, and regulates the medical industry within the context of environmental and health legislation.
- The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) is involved in dust from agricultural activities and the use of herbicides and pesticides.
- The Department of Labour (DoL) sets regulations for air quality in workplaces.
- The Department of Water Affairs (DWA) sets regulations for forest and veld fires.
- The Department of Transport (DoT) sets regulations in respect of roads and various modes of transport.
- The Department of Defence (DoD) is involved in military exercises that have an impact on air quality.
- The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) is involved in the improvement of rural livelihoods through among other things energy projects, education and awareness etc.
- The Department of Human Settlement (DHS) is involved in allocation of houses for low-income earners. Also develops energy efficient housing guidelines.
- The Department of Trade and Industry (DTI) is involved in the setting of standards for alternative energy technologies.

**Air quality information**

In order to contribute towards a coordinated approach to air quality management in South Africa, national government department must have a fundamental understanding of the air quality implications of their technology, development and economic planning. While this may not be air quality information *per se*, information on motor vehicle emission characteristics and fuel specifications, as example, have implications on air quality, as do national planning decisions on public transport alternatives.

**Control options (interventions)**

Development of interventions will require coordinated decision making and the nature of the control options will vary from department to department.

**Implementation of interventions**

Implementation of interventions may not be limited to a single department and will require coordinated governance, hence the need for horizontal integration (see Figure 2).

**Evaluate change and efficacy of intervention**

The efficacy of these interventions will be evaluated, through the National Framework review process and through evidence of improved air quality in state of the air reporting.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**Climate change response**

In order to contribute toward a coordinated approach to climate change response in South Africa, national government departments must have a fundamental understanding of the climate change implications of their technology, development and economic planning and/or their vulnerability to climate change.

**5.4.6.5 Priority Area AQMPs**

AQMPs for declared priority areas must be developed in accordance with the manual for AQMP development in South Africa (including other related regulations, guidelines, software, standard formats, templates and best practise case studies that may be available) and should be aimed at the efficient and effective implementation of the air quality management planning and reporting regime.

**5.4.6.6 Provincial AQMPs**

Each province responsible for preparing an environmental implementation plan must include in that plan an air quality management plan (NEMA: Chapter 3).

As with the priority area AQMPs, provincial AQMPs must be developed in accordance with the Manual for AQMP Development in South Africa (including other related regulations, guidelines, software, standard formats, templates and best practise case studies that may be available) and should be aimed at the efficient and effective implementation of the air quality management planning and reporting regime.

**5.4.6.7 Municipal AQMPs**

Each municipality must include an air quality management plan in its Integrated Development Plan (Municipal Systems Act: Chapter 5).

As with the priority area AQMPs and provincial AQMPs, municipal AQMPs must be developed in accordance with the Manual for AQMP Development in South Africa (including other related regulations, guidelines, software, standard formats, templates and best practise case studies that may be available) and should be aimed at the efficient and effective implementation of the air quality management planning and reporting regime.

The status of AQMP development each year (indicating those municipalities that have developed and those that are in the process of developing AQMPs), will be published annually in the National Air Quality Officer's (NAQO) Annual report.

**5.4.6.8 Pollution Prevention Plans**

According to section 29 of the QA, the Minister may declare any substance contributing to air pollution as a priority air pollutant, thereby requiring emitters of such pollutants to develop pollution prevention plans.

The Minister has so far declared GHGs as priority air pollutants. As such require a person conducting identified production process which involves emission of greenhouse gases in excess of 0.1 Megatonnes (Mt) annually, reported as carbon dioxide equivalents (CO<sub>2</sub>-eq), and/or if so directed by the Minister to submit a pollution prevention plan to the Minister for approval. The implementation of these plans would ensure that South Africa is able to fulfil its UNFCCC obligations, particularly its NDC.

**Air quality information**

The air quality information requirements for an emission reduction strategy must include a comprehensive site emission inventory. Detailed information is also required on concentrations of pollutants in ambient air from monitoring, and where appropriate complemented by air dispersion modelling in order to measure progress towards the specified goal.

**Control options (interventions)**

Control options available to other emitters may include, but not be limited to:

- Alternative fuels;
- Alternative technology;
- The installation of emissions abatement technology;
- Process changes; and/or
- Behavioural changes, e.g. selection of a non-polluting mode of transport.

**Implementation of interventions**

Implementation of interventions will be specific to the intervention and the targeted emission source or sources. The rules for implementation and sequence of events will have to be agreed upon among the participating government departments and experts. For point sources this will be specified in the AEL.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**Evaluate change and efficacy of intervention**

The efficacy of the interventions needs to be evaluated through measurement specific to the intervention, e.g. emission monitoring for emissions reduction or licence interventions, or ambient monitoring for interventions that impact on residential sources. In this case the AEL must establish time frames for measurement and reporting.

**5.4.6.9 AQMP reporting requirements**

Section 17 of AQA requires that all National departments that are required to develop AQMPs, report on implementation of their AQMPs as part of the annual EIP or EMP reporting contemplated in section 16 (1)(b) of NEMA.

Each province or municipality that is required to develop an AQMP in terms of section 15 of AQA, also needs to submit a report on implementation of the AQMP. This report should be submitted as part of the Air Quality Officers' report described in Paragraph 5.2.3.2 of this document.

A report on implementation of an AQMP for emitters of priority pollutants will be provided as part of their respective AEL requirements and will be submitted to the relevant licensing authority.

**5.4.6.10 Human health impact assessments**

One of the objectives of the AQA is to give effect to section 24(b) of the constitution in order to enhance the quality of ambient air for the sake of ensuring an environment that is not harmful to health and well-being of the people. For this reason therefore, air quality management and planning should take into account the impacts of air quality on human health and the interventions developed should be aimed primarily at minimising the of air pollution on the health of the people.

**5.4.7 National Air Quality Management Strategies**

In order to manage non-industrial emission sources contributions to ambient air quality, the department is developing specific strategies aimed at reducing emissions from these non-point sources. Firstly, the department has drafted a strategy to Address Air Pollution in Dense Low-income Settlements. The strategy focuses on the establishment of a coordinating structure consisting of various departments with the aim of ensuring that efforts to reduce emissions in low-income settlements are effective and focuses on priority areas. Secondly, the department has drafted an Integrated Strategy on the Control of Vehicle Emissions This strategy focuses on interventions aimed at reducing emissions from motor vehicles at national level and with major focus on large metropolitan areas. All these strategies have been developed in collaboration with the implementing departments and entities.

It is encouraged that, provinces and municipalities develop strategies that allow for effective management of non-point sources and incorporate such into the respective AQMPs. Example, Gauteng Province (through Gauteng Department of Agriculture and Rural Development) is developing a strategy for the control of dust from mines in collaboration with the Department of Mineral Resources.

**5.5 Impact management****5.5.1 Environmental Impact Assessments**

The Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process is well established in South Africa. It aims to assess the likely Impacts of a proposed development or activity, with the intention of providing sufficient information to aid decision-making. The key legislation for the implementation of the EIA process is NEMA, together with the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations (as amended), read with the most recent listing notice.

The requirements of the AQA interface with the EIA process in a number of ways that are addressed in the following paragraphs. First, the process of granting an AEL is related to the issuing of an Environmental Authorisation (EA) for an EIA application as discussed in Paragraph 5.5.2 of this document. The intergovernmental cooperation and coordination that is required is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.** Secondly, the AQA has introduced some fundamental changes to air quality legislation in South Africa that will shape and inform the specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment reports, which generally form part of an EIA process. These latter aspects are considered in Paragraph 5.5.3 of this document.

**5.5.2 EIA-AEL procedural relationship**

The linkage between the EIA process for a listed activity and the AQA's atmospheric emission licensing process is illustrated in the simplified flow chart in Figure 11. National Department of Environmental Affairs, Metropolitan and district municipalities are charged with implementing the atmospheric emission licensing system (Section 36 of the AQA). Exceptions include circumstances in which they have delegated this function to a provincial organ of state in terms of

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

section 238 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, or when a municipality applies for an AEL, in which case a provincial organ of state is designated by the MEC as the licensing authority.

The competent authority in the case of EIA applications, either province or national, is responsible for the issuing of an EA for a listed activity.

The EIA and AEL applications and decision-making processes are phased as shown in Figure 11 to take account of the information needs of each. When considering an application for an AEL, according to section 39 of the AQA, the licensing authority must take into account, amongst others, the pollution being or likely to be caused by that activity and the effect on the environment, including health, economic conditions, cultural heritage and ambient air quality.

In order for the licensing authority to properly discharge its duties, this information must be available to inform the decision. Hence, it is necessary for the EIA process and specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment to have been completed prior to the decision on an AEL application by the licensing authority. It is important that there be one information gathering phase and this is most appropriately done during the EIA process. The licensing authority and competent authority reviews must be synchronised and interaction between the relevant municipal and provincial authorities as shown in Figure 11. Ideally, they should review the information jointly. The applicant needs to ensure that all the necessary information and relevant documentation is received by both EIA and AEL authorities at the right time to allow for alignment.

An EA in the EIA process must precede and inform the AEL decision. The EIA process is required to consider all potential environmental impacts, not only impacts of atmospheric emissions. The specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment is one of a number of possible specialist studies. Conceivably, the listed activity could result in significant impacts, other than those on the atmosphere, which could result in a negative EA, thus negating the need for an AEL application.

The public participation requirements of the EIA process are also more comprehensive and may contribute meaningfully to the atmospheric emission licensing process if the two processes are aligned. The public participation process required

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

for an AEL application is specified in section 38 (3) of the AQA. An applicant must bring the application to the attention of relevant organs of state, interested persons and the public. The applicant is required to publish a notice in at least two newspapers in the area where the listed activity is to be undertaken. By aligning the public participation of the two processes, it is clear that the interests of the public are served through the more comprehensive public participation requirements of the EIA process, which may include newspaper advertisements, preparation of Background Information Documents, mail drops, public meetings and on-site notices; duplication of the public participation process is avoided; and the requirement to bring the AEL application to the attention of stakeholders can be limited to two newspaper advertisements in view of the extensive public participation that was undertaken as part of the EIA process.

**5.5.3 Specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment Reports**

In general, all development applications involving listed activities will be required to undergo an EIA and will require a specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment study. Through its various requirements, the AQA prescribes and informs the scope and content of such specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment studies. The key elements of the AQA that are relevant to the EIA process are summarised, followed by the establishment of norms for a specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment report based on these requirements. Key requirements of the AQA are as follows:

**5.5.3.1 Human health impacts**

One of the objectives of the AQA is to give effect to our constitutional right to an environment that is not harmful to the health and well-being of people (section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa). The emphasis on human health requires that the specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment for a proposed listed activity includes an assessment of potential health impacts. The level of detail required is dependent on the nature and extent of atmospheric emissions and could range from a simple comparative assessment of predicted ambient air quality levels with ambient air quality standards through to a full health risk assessment.

**5.5.3.2 Ambient air quality standards**

The AQA is effects-based legislation, with the result that activities that result in atmospheric emissions are to be determined with the objective of achieving health-based ambient air quality standards. Each new development proposal with potential

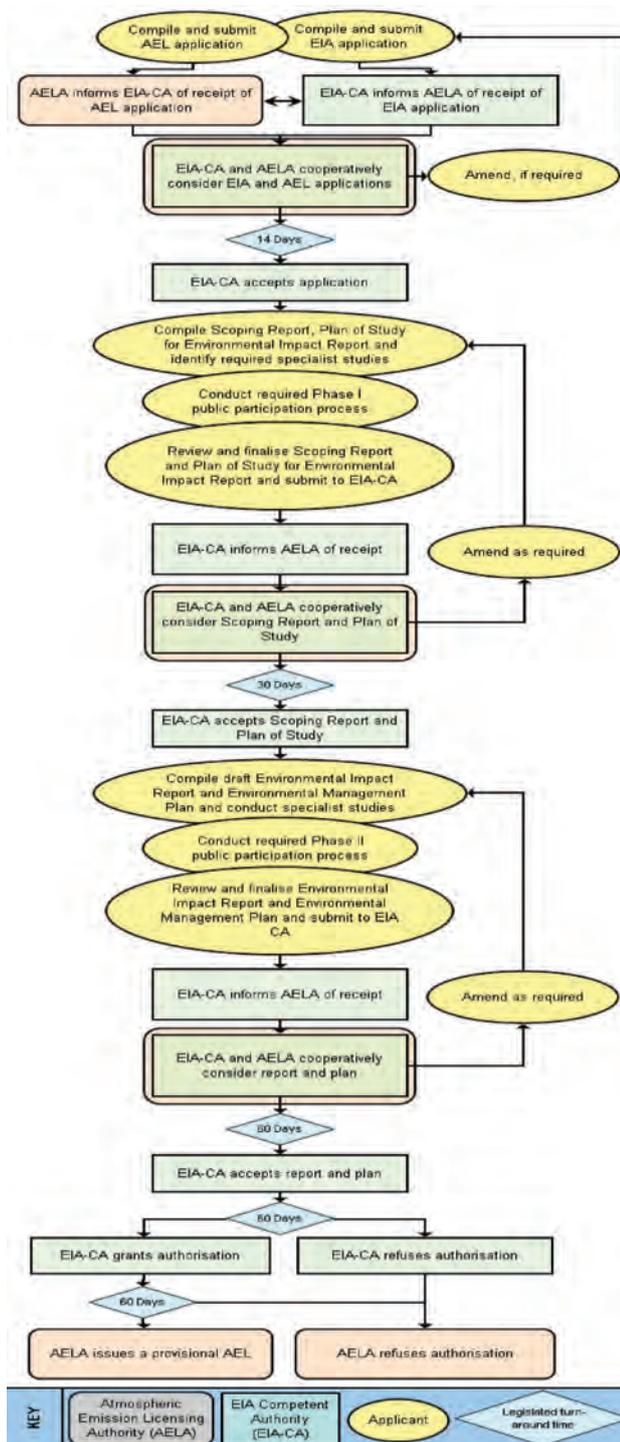


Figure 11: The interrelationship between the atmospheric emission licensing and environmental impact assessment processes

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

impacts on air quality must be assessed not only in terms of its individual contribution, but in terms of its additive contribution to baseline ambient air quality i.e. cumulative effects must be considered.

**5.5.3.3 Point source emission standards**

The AQA may also prescribe minimum standards for certain point source emissions and these must be taken into account in the specialist study.

**5.5.3.4 Mitigation measures**

Related to the above, the AQA states that the Best Practicable Environmental Option (BPEO) that would prevent, control, abate or mitigate pollution, must be used.

**5.5.3.5 Atmospheric Emission Licence (AEL) requirements**

Notwithstanding the procedural linkages between an EIA and an AEL (see Paragraph 5.5.2), the AQA prescribes factors that need to be taken into account by licensing authority when considering an application for an AEL (Section 39 of the AQA) and also stipulates the contents of AELs (Section 43 of the AQA).

Factors that need to be taken into account include, amongst others:

- the effect or likely effect of pollution on the environment, including health, social and economic conditions, cultural heritage and ambient air quality.
- the contents of an AEL or provisional AEL must include, amongst others:
- the maximum allowed amount, volume, emission rate or concentration of pollutants that may be discharged into the atmosphere under normal working conditions, and under normal start-up, maintenance and shut-down conditions;
- any other operating requirements relating to atmospheric discharges, including non-point source.

The information required by the licensing authority in the licensing process, such as atmospheric emission impacts, discharges to the atmosphere under various scenarios and fugitive emissions, is best addressed in the specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment study.

**5.5.3.6 Odour, noise and dust**

The national Minister or the provincial Member of the Executive Council (MEC) may prescribe measures for the control of dust, noise and offensive odours. Further, the occupier of any premises must take all reasonable steps to prevent the emission of any offensive odour caused by an activity on the premises. Currently there is no obligation to consider odour, noise and dust impacts as part of the specialist Air Quality Impact Assessment study, but there may be circumstances where these are required, particularly if it is likely that the AEL will specify conditions in respect of odour and noise in accordance with Section 43(2) (a) of the AQA.

**5.5.4 Atmospheric Impact Reports**

An AQO may require the submission of an Atmospheric Impact Report in terms of section 30 of the AQA, if:

- The AQO reasonably suspects that a person has contravened or failed to comply with the AQA or any conditions of an AEL and that detrimental effects on the environment occurred or there was a contribution to the degradation in ambient air quality. The environment is defined as including health, social, economic and ecological conditions, as well as cultural heritage;
- A review of a provisional AEL or an AEL is undertaken in terms of section 45 of the AQA.

The DEA has published the regulations with respect to the Atmospheric Impact Report in October 2013 (Notice 747, Government Gazette No. 36904). The format for an Atmospheric Impact Report includes the following aspects, among others:

- Introductory section containing, amongst other, company details, location and nature of the activity;
- Individual process details including a balance sheet of inputs, outputs and emissions;
- Detailed information on point source and fugitive emissions, and a summary of emissions under emergency and

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- upset conditions;
- Impact of the activity on ambient air quality in the area;
- Compliance history; and
- Current or planned air quality interventions.

## 5.6 Authorisations

### 5.6.1 Introduction

Authorisation is required in order to operate any listed activity anywhere in the Republic if that activity appears on the national list, or anywhere in a province where the activity may be listed. The authorisation for the operation of a listed activity is gained through the atmospheric licensing process, described in Chapter 5 of the AQA. Some relevant excerpts are provided here:

DEA as well as metropolitan and district municipalities are charged with implementing the atmospheric emission licensing system and must for this purpose perform the functions of licensing authority as set out in Chapter 5 of the AQA and other provisions of the AQA

Application for atmospheric emission licences and the procedure for licence applications are discussed in sections 37 and 38 of the AQA.

As contemplated in Sections 37(1), 44(2)(b) & 47(2) of the AQA, henceforth the SNAEL is the required form for all applications for atmospheric emission licences including review, renew and variation of AELs. The objective is to have all AELs in the SNAEL by 2020.

The factors to be taken into account by licensing authorities are detailed in section 39 of the AQA; and include, among others:

- any applicable minimum standards set for ambient air and point source emissions;
- the best practicable environmental options available that could be taken to prevent, control, abate or mitigate that pollution; and to protect the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, cultural heritage and ambient air quality, from harm as a result of that pollution;

The issuing of AELs and the contents of an AEL is detailed in sections 42 and 43 of the AQA. A provisional AEL and an AEL must specify:

- the activity in respect of which it is issued;
- the premises in respect of which it is issued;
- the person to whom it is issued;
- the period for which the licence is issued;
- the name of the licensing authority;
- the periods at which the licence may be reviewed;
- the maximum allowed amount, volume, emission rate or concentration of pollutants that may be discharged in the atmosphere -under normal working conditions; and under normal start-up, maintenance and shut-down conditions;
- any other operating requirements relating to atmospheric discharges, including non-point source or fugitive emissions;
- point source emission measurement and reporting requirements;
- ambient air quality measurement and reporting requirements;
- penalties for non-compliance;
- greenhouse gas emission measurement and reporting requirements; and
- any other matters which are necessary for the protection or enforcement of air quality.

Furthermore, an AEL may:

- specify conditions in respect of odour and noise;
- require the holder of the licence to comply with all lawful requirements of an environmental management inspector carrying out his or her duties in terms of the NEMA, including a requirement that the holder of the licence must, on request, submit to the inspector a certified statement indicating:
  - the extent to which the conditions and requirements of the licence have or have not been complied with;
  - particulars of any failure to comply with any of those conditions or requirements;
  - the reasons for any failure to comply with any of those conditions or requirements; and
  - any action taken, or to be taken, to prevent any recurrence of that failure or to mitigate the effects of that failure.

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.6.2 Procedures and timeframes in relation to various authorisations under AQA**

The timeframes within which a Licencing Authority must make decision on AEL applications are specified under Section 40 of the AQA. However, these timeframes only relate to new AEL applications. There are no provisions in the AQA in relation to timeframes within which Licencing Authorities must make decisions on transfer, review, variation and renewal of AELs or Provisional AELs. In addition, the AQA does not make provisions on how AEL applications that do not have Environmental Authorisations or Waste Management Licences should be handled. The current practice is that Licencing Authorities use their discretion on the timeframe within which they make decisions on these applications. In order to bring about uniformity in this regard, the timeframes as specified in this National Air Quality Framework shall apply, which timeframes are specified hereunder.

**5.6.2.1 Procedure and timeframes for new AEL with EA**

The procedure for issuing an AEL that has to undergo an EIA process is outlined in section 5 and section 5.6.1. The interrelationship between the EIA and AEL application processes is summarised in Figure 11 timeframes within which a Licencing Authority must make decision on an AEL application specified under Section 40 of the AQA.

**5.6.2.2 Procedure and timeframes for a new AEL without EA**

All AEL applications that do not require an Environmental Authorisation in terms of NEMA shall be subjected to the following additional processes that would have been undertaken during the EIA process:

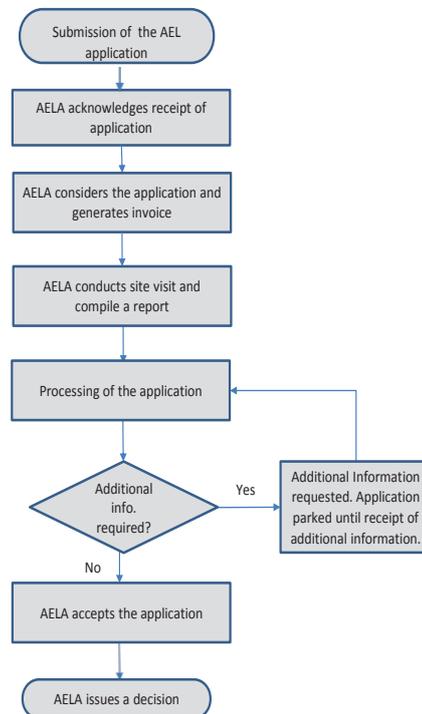
- The applicant shall undertake an Atmospheric Impact Assessment exercise and compile an Atmospheric Impact Report (AIR) in terms of Government Notice 747- regulations prescribing the format of an Atmospheric Impact Report.
- Interested and affected parties shall be engaged through a Public Participation exercise undertaken in accordance with NEMA. Comments and responses from the Interested and Affected Parties shall form part of the AIR.

The licensing authority will process the application following the process outlined in Figure 12.

**Minimum application requirements:**

- Specialist Air Quality Impact Report;
- Public Participation Report;
- Emissions Monitoring Report;
- Waste License (if applicable);
- License Processing Fee; and
- Any other addition information that may be required

**Processing timeframe: 90 days**



**Figure 12: Process flow for AEL without EIA**

The Licencing Authority shall upon receipt of a complete application for AEL without Environmental Authorisation or Waste Management Licence, made in terms of the AQA, make a decision on the application within 90 days of the receipt of a complete application.

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.6.2.3 Procedure and timeframes for AEL renewal**

Section 47 of AQA requires that the holder of an AEL or PAEL license apply for a renewal of a license upon its expiry date. This implies that:

- Each AEL and PAEL must specify the period for which the licence is valid by stating its expiry date (AQA S. 43(1)(d)); and
- The applicant has a duty to apply for the renewal of an AEL/PAEL before the expiry date stipulated in the license.

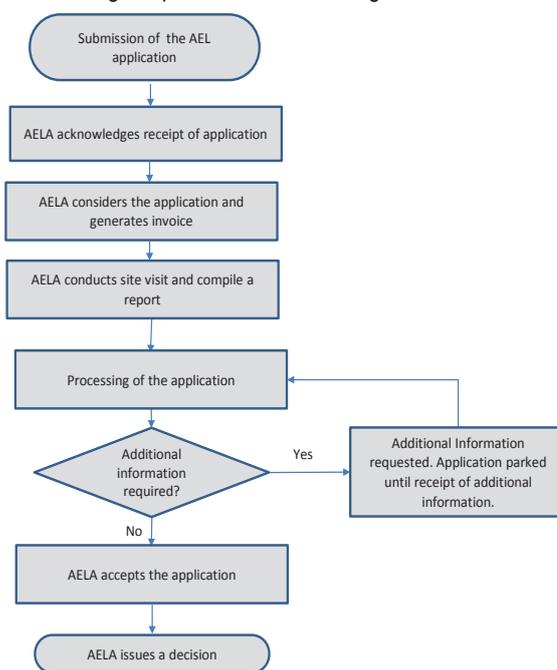
It should be noted that for PAEL, an application for renewal is permissible only once (AQA S.47 (4)).

The licensing authority will process the application following the process outlined in Figure 13.

**Minimum Application requirements:**

- Atmospheric Impact Report;
- License Processing fee;
- Emissions Monitoring Report;
- Air Quality Audit/Compliance report; and
- Any other additional information that may be required

**Processing timeframe = 60 days**



**Figure 13: Process flow for AEL renewal**

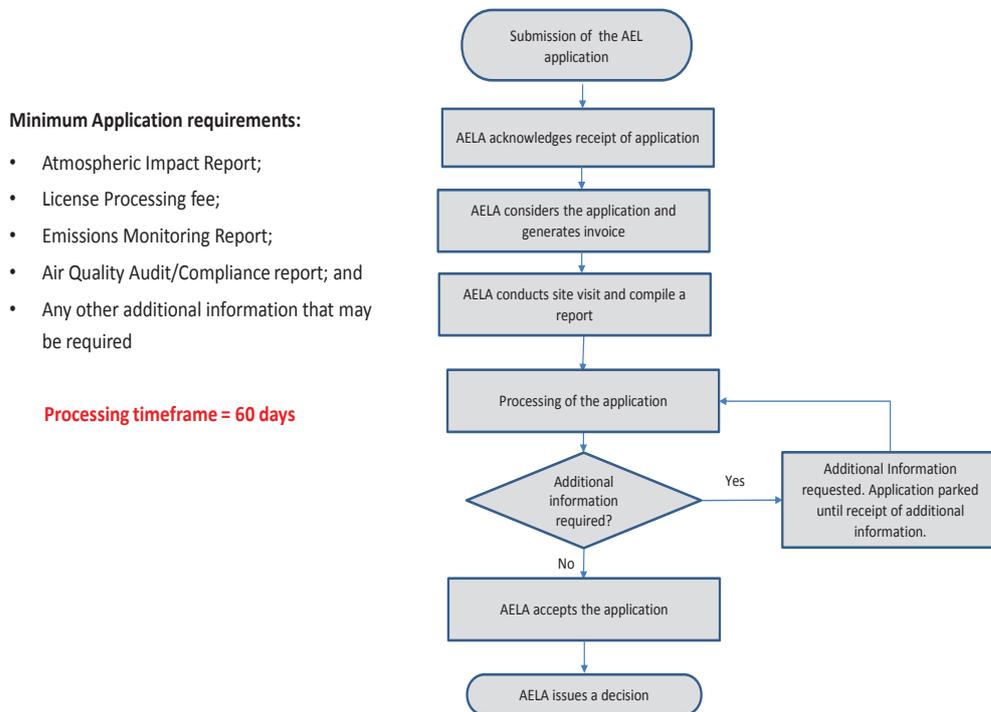
The Licencing Authority shall upon receipt of a complete application for renewal of an AEL/Provisional AEL make a decision on the application within 60 days of the receipt of the application.

**5.6.2.4 Procedures and timeframes for AEL review**

Section 45 of AQA specifies the provisions for renewal of an AEL or PAEL at intervals specified in the licence or when circumstances necessitate the review. The review of an AEL or PAEL involves assessing or monitoring the licenced facility to ensure ongoing compliance with the licence requirements or other requirements and provisions such as Directive or Compliance Notices. A renew of a license is triggered by the Licencing Authority only.

The licensing authority will process the application following the process outlined in Figure 14.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



**Figure 14: Process flow for AEL review**

A licensing authority shall upon receipt of all required information, make a decision on the application for a review of an AEL within 60 days of receipt of complete application information.

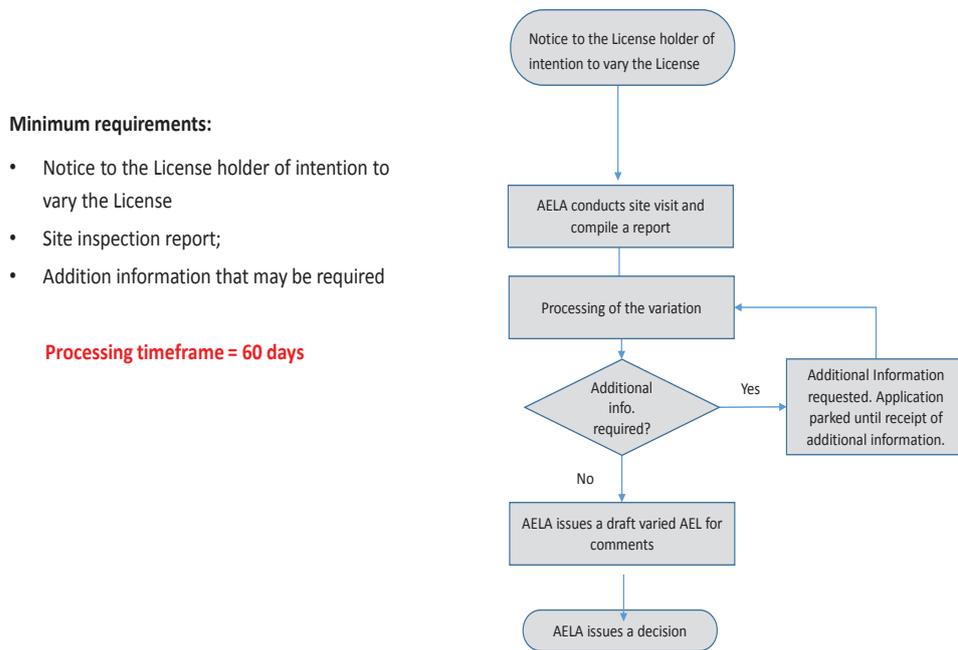
#### 5.6.2.5 Procedures and timeframes for AEL variation

According to section 46 (1) of AQA a licensing authority may vary the license, meaning amending the text in the license;

- If after reviewing the AEL in terms of section 45, the licensing authority deem it necessary to amend a license (AQA S46(1)(f);
- If the license is being transferred in terms of AQA section 44 (AQA S. 46(1) (e);
- At a written request by the license holder (AQA S. 46(1)(d);
- If it is necessary or desirable to accommodate demands brought about by impacts on socio-economic circumstances and it is in the public interest to meet those demands. Example, amending the license following a successful application for postponement of Minimum Emission Standards (AQA S.46(1)(c);
- If it is necessary or desirable for the purposes of achieving ambient air quality standards (AQA S.46(1)(b);
- If it is necessary or desirable to prevent deterioration of ambient air quality (AQA S.46(1)(a); or
- There is a change in legislation that requires that such changes be effected in the AEL

The licensing authority will follow the outlined in Figure 15: Process flows for AEL variation **Error! Reference source not found.** to vary the license.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



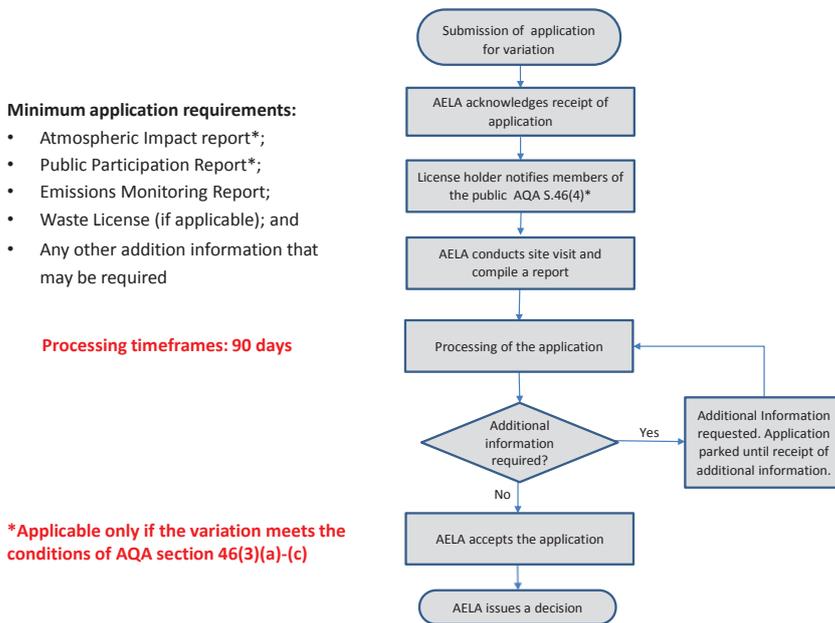
**Figure 15: Process flows for AEL variation**

According to AQA S. 46(1) (d), the license holder may request the licensing authority to vary the AEL. Typical circumstances where such a request can be made include among others,

- When there is a change in performance of emission control technology;
- When there is an incident that will affect the emissions over a longer period of time;
- When the applicant detect an error in the license.
- 

The licensing authority will process the application for a variation following the process outlined in Figure 16: Process flows for AEL variation (with no potential increase in emissions).

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



**Figure 16: Process flows for AEL variation (with no potential increase in emissions)**

Based on the above, where the application of a variation is likely to result in increased emissions and/or increased environmental impact, and the proposed variation has not been subjected to public consultation (AQA S.46 (3) (a)-(c)); the licensing authority may trigger the review of an AEL in terms of AQA section 45 before varying the AEL. In such cases, the application for variation should be accompanied by documents required for the review of an AEL (including public participation report and atmospheric impact report). The requirements for public participation for a variation of AEL are stated in AQA section 46(4).

The Licencing Authority shall upon receipt of a complete application for variation of an AEL/Provisional AEL, make a decision on the application within 60 days of the receipt of complete application information.

**5.6.2.6 Procedures and timeframes for AEL transfer**

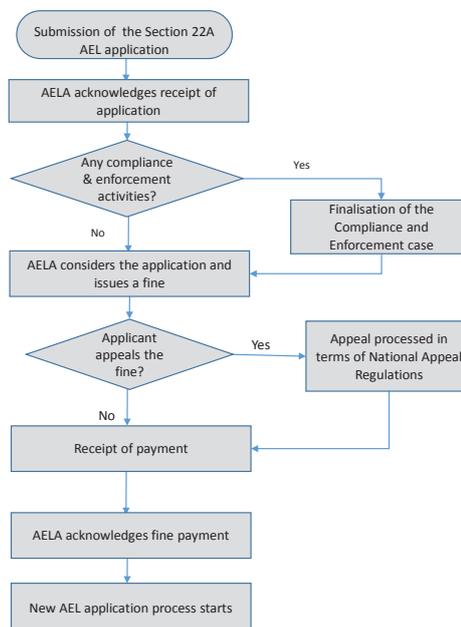
In accordance with AQA section 44, a person conducting a listed activity must inform the licensing authority of any change in ownership of a listed activity and apply for a transfer of AEL and PAEL associated with such a listed activity. The licensing authority will process the application following the process outlined in Figure 17.

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**Minimum requirements**

- Administrative fine
- Specialist Air Quality Impact Report;
- Public Participation Report
- Emissions Monitoring Report (if any);
- Waste License (if applicable);
- License Processing Fee
- Any other addition information that may be required

**Processing Time Frame: 60 days from acknowledgement of receipt of proof of fine payment by the AELA**



**Figure 17: Process flow for AEL transfer**

The Licencing Authority shall upon receipt of a complete application for transfer of an AEL/Provisional AEL make a decision on the application within 30 days of the receipt of the application.

**5.6.3 Consequences of conducting a listed activity without an AEL**

Conducting a listed activity without an AEL is an offence according to section 22 read with section 51 of AQA. It should be noted that a person can conduct a listed activity within a facility that has been issued with an AEL (see the definition of listed activity in AQA). Section 22A of AQA provides for a person who has been operating a listed activity without an AEL to apply for an AEL. The application must comply with all the requirements as stipulated in section 37 of AQA. The process for granting or refusing the application is preceded by the administrative fine that must be paid as a penalty for operating illegally. The procedure for determining the fine is outlined in the Regulations for the Procedure and Criteria to be followed in the Determination of an Administrative Fine in terms of section 22A of the Act, 2016 ( gazette). The regulation enables the licensing authority to calculate the fine based on:

- The number of years that the facility has operated without a licence (starting from the effective date Section 22A i.e. 2013; and
- Whether the facility is located in an area declared as national priority area in terms of section 18 of the AQA.

If it comes to the attention of the licensing authority that the applicant is under criminal investigation for the contravention of, or failure to comply with section 22, the licensing authority may defer a decision to issue a provisional atmospheric emission licence or an atmospheric emission licence until such time that the investigation is concluded. In this regard, the submission of an application or the issuing of a provisional atmospheric emission licence or an atmospheric emission licence in terms of AQA Section 22A, or the payment of an administrative fine, must— (a) in no way derogate from the authority of the environmental management inspector or the South African Police Service, to investigate any transgression of this Act; (b) in no way derogate from the National Prosecuting Authority’s legal authority to institute any criminal prosecution; or (c) not indemnify the applicant from liability in terms of section 51(1)(a).

The procedure for processing applications for an AEL in accordance with section 22A is outlined in Figure 18: **Section 22A process flow cart** below.

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**Minimum requirements**

- Administrative fine
- Specialist Air Quality Impact Report;
- Public Participation Report
- Emissions Monitoring Report (if any);
- Waste License (if applicable);
- License Processing Fee
- Any other addition information that may be required

**Processing Time Frame: 60 days from acknowledgement of receipt of proof of fine payment by the AELA**

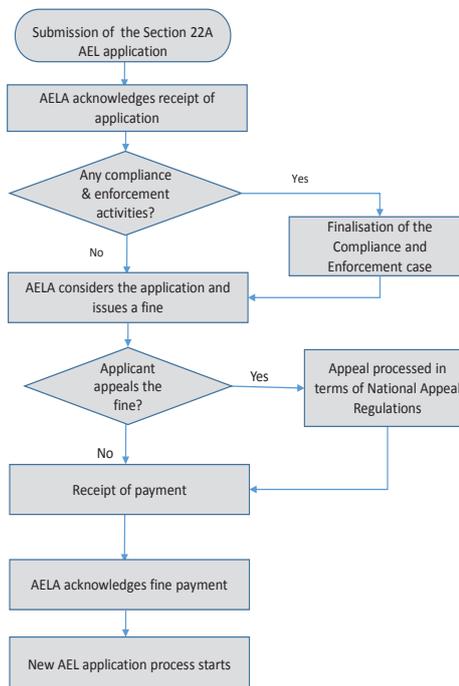


Figure 18: Section 22A process flow cart

## 5.7 Compliance monitoring

### 5.7.1 Introduction

An important element of the environmental governance cycle is that of ensuring compliance with air quality management requirements as stated in the relevant legislation. A number of tools are provided for in the AQA, including compliance monitoring, the provision of emission control officers, and processes for voluntary compliance measures. These tools allow for the analysis of the compliance of various regulated activities, and are used in relation to the most appropriate level of government.

### 5.7.2 National measures

National responsibilities in terms of compliance monitoring relate to responsibility in respect of international commitments, monitoring compliance with goals of national Priority Area AQMPs (See Paragraph 5.4.5) and with conditions relevant to air quality contained in Authorisations issued by national government. Reporting on compliance will be included in the national AQO's annual report.

National government will further undertake compliance monitoring on behalf of provinces if province fails to fulfil its executive obligation in this respect (See Chapter 3 of this document on roles and responsibilities).

EMI at the National Department may conduct compliance monitoring activities in any facility issued with an AEL within the country. The National Department EMIs should inform and share the findings of the compliance monitoring activities with the responsible licensing authority.

### 5.7.3 Provincial measures

The provincial AQO is responsible for monitoring compliance with the targets specified in the provincial AQMP and for reporting compliance in the annual report. The provincial AQO is also responsible for compliance monitoring with the conditions relevant to air quality contained in EIA and AEL authorisations that are issued by the province.

### 5.7.4 Municipal measures

The municipality AQO also has compliance monitoring and reporting requirements regarding AQMPs that are consistent with requirements at national and provincial levels. Compliance monitoring at municipal level deals specifically with AELs, and uses licences as the primary means to ensure compliance with ambient air quality standards.

The Atmospheric Impact Reports are an additional means of monitoring compliance and can be requested of any individual that is under reasonable suspicion of contravening the AQA or causing negative impacts, as well as within the context of a licensing process (See Paragraph 5.5.4).

In addition, the municipality are also responsible for compliance monitoring for dust generating activities as contemplated in the national Dust Control Regulations (described in section 5.4.3.8.), as well as compliance monitoring with respect to any notice issued in terms of section 23 of AQA.

## 5.8 Enforcement

In terms of Chapter 7 of the NEMA, the functions of the Environmental Management Inspectors (EMIs) are to monitor compliance with, and enforce the NEMA and specific environmental management legislation, known as "specific environmental management acts".

The following officials may be designated as EMIs:

- Officials in the national department and other organs of state. These officials are designated by the Minister.
- Officials in provincial environmental departments and provincial organs of state, and municipalities. These officials are designated by the MEC.

Officials designated as EMIs in terms of the NEMA are able to enforce the AQA. EMIs are given a range of powers that include rights of inspection, investigation, gathering of evidence and enforcement, to enable them to fulfil their functions.

### 5.8.1 Offences

Section 51(1) of the AQA, a person is guilty of an offence if that person:

- conducts a listed activity without a provisional AEL or AEL as of the 1<sup>st</sup> April 2013;
- contravenes or fails to comply with a condition or requirement of an AEL;
- emits air pollutants at concentrations above emission limits specified in an AEL as a result of a listed activity;
- manufactures, sells or uses any appliance or conducts an activity declared as a controlled emitter, that does not comply with specified standards;
- operates a controlled emitter when emissions from that controlled emitter do not comply with standards;
- fails to take all reasonable steps to prevent the emission of any offensive odour caused by an activity on their

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

- premises;
- fails to submit or to implement a pollution prevention plan when required to do so;
- fails to submit an atmospheric impact report when required to do so;
- fails to notify the Minister of the likely cessation of mining activities and the plans that are in place for rehabilitation and the prevention of pollution by dust once mining operations have ceased;
- supplies false or misleading information in an application for an AEL, or for the transfer, variation or renewal of such a licence;
- supplies false or misleading information to an AQO;
- contravenes or fails to comply with a condition subject to which exemption from a provision of this Act was granted in terms of Section 59.

Penalties (Section 52 of the AQA) may be incurred if a person is convicted of an offence as described above. A person is liable to a fine not exceeding R5 million, or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding 5 years and in case of a second or subsequent conviction, to a fine not exceeding 10 years or in both instances to both a fine and such imprisonment. A fine must be determined with due consideration of the following factors:

- the severity of the offence in terms of the impact, or potential impact, on the health, well-being, safety and the environment;
- the monetary or other benefits which accrued to the convicted person through the commission of the offence; and
- the extent of the convicted person's contribution to the overall pollution load of the area under normal working conditions.

In addition to penalties, other regulatory tools include an Atmospheric Impact Report (section 30 of the AQA), which is discussed in detail in Paragraph 5.5.4 of this document, and a Pollution Prevention Plan (section 29 of the AQA). The Minister or MEC may declare any substance contributing to air pollution as a priority air pollutant, and require any person responsible for the emission of such a substance to prepare, submit for approval and implement a pollution prevention plan in respect of a substance declared as a priority air pollutant.

## 5.8.2 By-laws

### 5.8.2.1 Local government competence

Section 156 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, provides for the powers and functions of municipalities. Section 156(1)(a) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa states that "A municipality has executive authority in respect of, and has the right to administer the local government matters listed in Part B of Schedule 4 and Part B of Schedule 5".

Section 156(2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 – "A municipality may make and administer by-laws for the effective administration of the matters which it has the right to administer". Section 156(3) of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 – "A by-law that conflicts with national or provincial legislation is invalid. If there is a conflict between a by-law and national or provincial legislation that is inoperative, the by-law must be regarded as valid for as long as that legislation is inoperative".

### 5.8.2.2 Schedule 4 functional areas

In Part A of Schedule 4 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, which are the (functional areas of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence), one of the functional areas listed is "pollution control" while "air pollution" is listed in Part B of Schedule 4. This means that national and provincial spheres of government must cooperate in regulating and/or administering pollution control matters, while local government has exclusive executive and administrative authority in dealing with air pollution matters. In addition, in terms of Section 151(4) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, the national or a provincial government may not compromise or impede a municipality's ability or right to exercise its powers or perform its functions.

### 5.8.2.3 Model air pollution control by-laws

Section 46(1) of the NEMA allows the Minister to make model by-laws aimed at establishing measures for the management of environmental impacts of any development within the jurisdiction of a municipality, which may be adopted by a municipality as municipal by-laws. In terms of section 46(2) of the NEMA, any municipality may request the Director-General to assist it with the preparation of by-laws on matters affecting the environment and the Director-General may not unreasonably refuse such a request.

The AQA brings the system of air pollution control in line with the constitutional allocation of functions between the national, provincial and local spheres of government. It is within this constitutional approach and cooperative governance that the department has developed model air pollution control by-laws on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of July 2010 (Gazette No. 3342; Notice 579). The

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

by-laws were published under AQA and may be adapted and adopted by municipalities. The objective of the model air pollution control by-laws is to ensure uniformity across the country on air quality management and not to impose the model bylaw on municipalities. The uniformity in air quality management will nonetheless assist government in implementing and enforcing air quality management plans and achieving acceptable ambient air quality.

One of the purposes, as set out in section 46(4) (a) of the NEMA, is to mitigate adverse environmental impacts. The model by-laws include measures for environmental management, including the following –

- auditing, monitoring and ensuring compliance; and
- reporting requirements and the furnishing of information.

## 5.9 Cross-cutting principles

### 5.9.1 Public Participation

#### 5.9.1.1 *The importance of public participation in air quality decision-making*

Government plays a crucial role in achieving and maintaining clean air in South Africa, but it cannot reach this goal alone. Active participation and contributions from individual citizens and citizen groups is of utmost importance in developing, implementing and enforcing air quality management decisions within the context of the AQA. The potential benefits of public participation are numerous. If well-planned and managed, public participation can bring new and important knowledge to the table, mediate between conflicting perspectives early in the process and facilitate more efficient air quality governance. Equally important, public participation in air quality management plays a vital role in strengthening and deepening democracy in South Africa and in giving effect to the constitutional right to an environment which is conducive to health and well-being.

Section 4(2) of the NEMA, which is the overarching environmental law in South Africa embodies a number of principles aimed at ensuring effective and equitable public participation. These principles were listed in Paragraph 1.4 of this document.

#### 5.9.1.2 *Promoting best practices for effective and equitable public participation*

When designing and implementing air quality decision-processes, all three spheres of government in South Africa must strive to apply best practices of engaging with stakeholder groups and citizens, with the goal of reaping the full benefits of public participation. Although the AQA prescribes a standard approach to participation in its Sections 56 and 57, experience suggests that implementing the following measures and principles will significantly contribute towards ensuring effective and equitable participation, as called for in the NEMA. However, experience has also shown that a “one-size-fits-all” approach to public participation is not always effective or efficient and, as such, a flexible and innovative approach to participation must be considered.

#### 5.9.1.3 *Provision of up-to-date information on project activities*

To keep stakeholders informed about on-going and planned air quality management projects and decision-processes (and related public participation opportunities), all three spheres of government must make relevant information available in a timely manner through, for example, dedicated air quality management websites and other suitable means, such as actively notifying known stakeholders (See information dissemination in Paragraph 5.9.3, page 91). At the national level, the DEA will publish a monthly newsletter, the *National Air Quality Office News*, providing a regular overview of on-going and planned air quality related projects, decision-processes and other initiatives. In addition to websites and newsletters, other media will be considered to reach communities (See Paragraph 5.4.2).

#### 5.9.1.4 *Effective announcement of public participation opportunities*

Public participation opportunities for air quality decision-processes referred to in the AQA must be publicised on the national department websites and in other appropriate media and notifications sent electronically to stakeholders directly using up-to-date databases and electronic mailing lists. Special efforts will be made to ensure that vulnerable and affected communities are informed about relevant decision-processes. Information on the stage in the decision-process at which public participation is planned and the type of public participation activities envisaged will assist stakeholders in planning their participation and assigning necessary time and resources. It will also allow stakeholders to suggest possible adjustments to the envisaged public participation process early in the decision-process.

#### 5.9.1.5 *Ensuring early and balanced participation*

Public participation must take place early in the process, when key options are still open. This will ensure that all perspectives are captured and can be properly assessed at the outset. It will also ensure that all stakeholder groups have equal opportunities to convey their views. For major decision-processes, consideration must be given to the organisation

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

of stakeholder workshops and other participatory tools that facilitate in-depth interaction and deliberation at early stages, and which promote face-to-face dialogue.

**5.9.1.6 Responding to stakeholder contributions**

Providing feedback and acknowledging written contributions from stakeholders is considered essential to participatory processes and will strengthen the relationship and build trust between government and the public. To address related stakeholder expectations in a practical manner, government must prepare concise response documents that explain the rationale for final decisions or outcomes. Government must also provide explanation on why important comments may not have been addressed. The response document must be made available to the public on request.

**5.9.1.7 Addressing the needs of vulnerable groups**

Vulnerable groups and communities have specific needs in order to effectively participate in air quality decision-making. Capacity constraints include lack of technical and human resources as well as lack of financial resources to attend meetings. Government must take cognisance of these constraints when organising meeting locations and times and when setting timelines for public comment.

**5.9.1.8 Professional and skilled process management**

Ensuring that public participation processes are managed in a professional manner will enhance the quality of engagement and strengthen the relationship of government with stakeholders. Relevant measures include, for example, neutral facilitation of meetings, making meeting and workshop reports available in a timely manner, and keeping stakeholders informed concerning follow-up activities. The national department will engage, as appropriate, in capacity building activities aimed at strengthening the skills of officials in all spheres of government concerning effective management of stakeholder processes.

**5.9.1.9 Issues relevant for specific air quality decision-processes**

The AQA includes more than 20 sections authorising government to initiate subsidiary decision-processes. In addition, there are public participation requirements in other existing legislation, such as the Promotion of Access to Information Act, Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, the Public Audit Act and the Municipal Systems Act apply. Government is responsible for the implementation of public participation in development of air quality management tools including the standard setting process and air quality management planning (See Chapters 3 and 4 of this document). Participation in the emission licensing process falls under the responsibility of the applicant (See Paragraph 5.5.2 of this document).

**5.9.1.10 Raising awareness and engaging the public in air quality decision-processes**

Progress towards achieving the goal of clean air in South Africa requires raising awareness and the meaningful involvement of all citizens (See Paragraph 5.4.2 of this document on awareness-raising and Paragraph 5.9.2 of this document on capacity development).

**5.9.2 Capacity development****5.9.2.1 Introduction**

Capacity development is a cross-cutting issue that underpins every element of the environmental governance cycle illustrated in Figure 1. Within the AQA, capacity development is not explicitly addressed, however, its consideration and inclusion is necessitated by the obligation for the fulfilment of the duties and responsibilities stipulated in the AQA and elaborated upon in Chapters 3 and 4 of this document.

The scarcity of skills in South Africa is a key constraint to service delivery within both government and the country at large. National government has recognised this through the passing of the Skills Development Act (Act No. 97 of 1998), which aims to provide an institutional framework to devise and implement strategies to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce. The national department has taken up the challenge through the initiation of an internship programme and the development of an internship policy, and by addressing capacity development as an integral part of many of their projects.

Whilst the skills shortage applies generally in South Africa, the shortage is critical in the field of air quality. The limited pool of current air quality specialists, along with the paradigm shift in approach to air quality management, justifies the need for urgent intervention. A multi-pronged approach to capacity development is needed, where tertiary level training at regional centres, complemented by in-service training, and other interventions are considered. In addition, there is the need for capacity development amongst the general public in order to ensure that civil society can fully contribute to the air quality management process in an effective manner. These latter aspects were addressed in Paragraph 5.4.2 of this document.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**5.9.2.2 Definition of capacity building**

Although capacity development is often seen as simply the provision of extra financial or staff resources, or the provision of extra skills through training and education, capacity development must be seen as the attempt to build an organisation's capacity to fulfil its role efficiently and effectively. The section below therefore describes a diverse range of strategies that can be implemented to allow effective and appropriate air quality work to be carried out at all levels of governance.

**5.9.2.3 Strategies for capacity building**

Strategies of capacity development can be distinguished based on the proposed outcomes and the approach of stakeholders to the project. They are categorised as follows:

- Applying additional financial and physical resources - addressing a simple lack of resources within a well-managed organisation to stimulate growth;
- Improving the organisational and technical capabilities - addressing lack of technique and proper structure through activities such as technical assistance, training, systems improvement and better working conditions;
- Helping to settle on a clear strategic direction - addressing lack of consistent direction, overextending, inappropriate objectives or lack of political consensus on organisational purpose though inducing policy dialogue for action and capacity development;
- Protecting innovation and providing opportunities for experimentation and learning - addresses lack of a protected learning space through development of social capital and creation of opportunities to experiment and learn;
- Strengthening the bigger organisational system - addresses systemic capacity through emphasising the development of interrelationships and resolving public policy issues collectively – public-private partnerships;
- Helping to shape an enabling environment - addresses the lack of an enabling environment through creating protected pockets of capacity development or trying to improve institutions and broader social and political patterns;
- Creating more performance incentives and pressures - addresses structural incentives that lead to poor performance by redesigning organisations and improving the overall approach to governance and democratisation.

By identifying the type of strategy to be pursued based on the desired outcomes as well as informed by the current context of capacity, the most appropriate path of capacity development can be followed. This allows the outcomes of the programme or project to fulfil the need identified prior to implementation.

Implicit in the list of strategies outlined above, is recognition that capacity development is much more than training and awareness programmes for individuals. It is also about organisational, management, financial and technical systems and procedures. Having noted this broad definition, proposed interventions for improving technical capacity in the field of air quality management are presented in the next section.

**5.9.2.4 Technical capacity development**

A variety of interventions is needed to address the skills shortage in air quality management. All are relevant, with some addressing longer term needs, others the immediate needs and others the need for an informed public.

**Tertiary level qualifications**

Tertiary level programmes present a long term planning measure aimed at securing future capacity in the field of air quality management. They provide an opportunity to enhance research in the field and to add to the national body of knowledge on air quality management. These inputs are necessary to guide the implementation of the AQA into the future.

There is a need to strengthen tertiary institution offerings in the air quality field. There are few national specialists in air quality and they are scattered across a handful of institutions around the country. A coordinated approach to offering a post-graduate qualification (NQF level 7 and/or 8 i.e. the equivalent of Honours and/or Masters degrees), which could be jointly offered at one or more institutions is recommended.

**Internships**

Internships provide a means to invest in young people and to provide them with relevant experience that will enable them to function effectively in the work place in the future. These programmes are targeted at providing on-the-job training under the guidance of a mentor and they provide a useful bridge between formal tertiary level training and employment. Internships also provide a means to directly transfer the expertise of people with long-standing professional experience to those with only a practical or theoretical training.

**In-service short courses**

Short courses provide a means of addressing current capacity needs and targeting particular people and skills that are most urgently needed for intervention. Short training courses, generally ranging from one to five days, are the fundamental

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

aspect of capacity development for those who are already in employment. They provide a means for building on existing skills, refreshing or updating skills, for imparting specialist knowledge, and importantly they directly enhance the internal capacity in an organisation. In many cases single day courses can provide sufficient steerage in the process for AQOs to learn about key issues and follow up any specific issues relating to their own local issues through the means of a helpdesk facility (see below).

The most urgent need is for capacity development amongst government officials at all levels tasked with implementing the AQA. To this end, the national department will consider the development of a suite of air quality modules which could be South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) accredited at NQF level 7 and delivered to relevant government officials in all spheres of government. In this regard, the use of e-learning through the SAAQIS (see Paragraph 5.2.1.7 of this document) will be investigated to provide broad access to the short courses.

A modular structure is proposed, with modules falling into one of the following categories:

- Bridging training module – a single module on air quality science designed to impart basic knowledge to an employee with no previous formal air quality courses;
- Basic training modules – a suite of modules designed to provide basic detail on all aspects of air quality management – both the scientific aspects and also the policy context;
- Specialist training modules – a suite of modules designed to provide advanced training in selected topics;
- Refresher training module/s – a module designed to provide scientific and technological updates on air quality science.

**Partnerships**

Bilateral partnerships (e.g. municipality-municipality and province-province) are an excellent means of promoting the replication of best practices and lessons learned, and allowing smaller, less capacitated provinces and municipalities to benefit from the experiences of their stronger counterparts. Pilot projects will be initiated by the national AQO and each of the provincial AQOs.

**Forums**

Quarterly provincial forums between province and municipalities as outlined in Paragraph 4.4.5 of this document must be used as a capacity development platform for provincial and municipal officials. Such forums can promote the sharing of experiences, the dissemination of ideas and the replication of best practice. These forums are important both in building a sense of 'community' within the air quality profession, as well as playing a key role in the feeding of information on the effectiveness of the air quality management process upwards from municipal to national levels.

**Public awareness campaigns**

Capacity development is not confined to individuals working in the air quality field. There will also be awareness-raising amongst the general public using the approaches outlined in Paragraph 5.4.2 of this document. An informed and knowledgeable civil society leads to better decision-making.

**Guidance**

One of the key strategies for approaching the issue of capacity development is not to rely on there being a dispersed number of individual expert AQOs all trained to carry out their roles independently. Effective use of resources requires that specialist AQOs are used where they are needed most, where there are numerous pollution sources – or other issues leading to poor air quality. Where expert AQOs are not needed, all that is required is sufficient capacity to be able to ensure that good air quality is maintained.

One way to ensure that non-specialist AQOs are capable of making this judgement is by setting out clear and detailed guidance as to how initial screening and scoping analyses should be carried out. When these studies indicate the likelihood of a significant threat to good air quality, the municipal government will then be able to decide the most appropriate means to approach the problem (for example seeking new skilled officers or training up existing staff).

This guidance can also be used to outline key technical aspects of more advanced analyses; however, the basic role is to ensure that initial assessment of local air quality issues is carried out in a reliable and consistent manner which does not necessarily rely on the technical expertise of the officer responsible. By ensuring that this guidance is clear and prescriptive, it can also play an important role in developing the basic skills of untrained AQOs.

**National AQO communiqués**

Based on frequently asked questions in the various intergovernmental air quality governance forums (see Paragraph 4.4 of this document), the National AQO will continue to compile various discussion, briefing and guidance documents aimed

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

at providing guidance on air quality governance issues. The documents are circulated to all government air quality managers.

### 5.9.3 Information dissemination

All aspects of implementing the National Framework require the dissemination of information. The main instrument of dissemination of information will be through the SAAQIS. However, the SAAQIS has limitations in this regard in that it does not necessarily provide access to all stakeholders, especially those that do not have the necessary technology or prior exposure to air pollution information. This means that a strategy for reaching these parts of the population must be developed and tools other than the SAAQIS are needed.

The dissemination of information will raise awareness in the population and this awareness will greatly support the achievement of compliance with air quality standards. Dissemination of information is a skill and experts may be employed to inform and/or drive this process. At the same time, on-going public participation processes will identify the best ways of effectively communicating with all stakeholder groups of the population (see also 5.2.1.3 of this document). The following approaches to disseminating air quality information will be considered, amongst others:

- Newspaper articles;
- Booklets/Pamphlets /brochures/leaflets;
- Posters on air pollution in central places such as schools and hospitals;
- Radio, national and local;
- TV;
- Public meetings;
- Bill boards; or
- Website.

Key information will, where appropriate, be made available in more than one South African official language. The dissemination of information can be done through different stakeholders. Possible routes for dissemination may include:

- The formal schooling system;
- Programmes targeting women;
- Programmes targeting health professionals;
- Programmes targeting political bodies and parties;
- Programmes targeting religious organisations;
- Programmes targeting industry; or
- Programmes targeting NGOs.

To be able to conduct successful awareness-raising, information is required at the appropriate technical level and teachers (or facilitators) need to be trained in the subject matter. The SAAQIS will have a dedicated facility for educational and awareness-raising material so that it is readily available for course presentations and awareness-raising campaigns. Based on this, material and courses can be accessed, printed and copied and made available.

### 5.9.4 National Air Quality Officer's (NAQO) Report

The National Air Quality Officer will report on an annual basis on the progress relating to the implementation of the National Framework (see also Paragraph 5.2.3.2 of this document). The reports will be issued annually and will be based on the previous year's assessment indicators but will also allow the reporting of additional information relating to the implementation of the National Framework. The draft report will be presented by the National Air Quality Officer during the Annual Air Quality Governance Lekgotla, with the final report published by March each year.

This report will include:

- Progress with respect to implementation of the National Framework;
- Progress on implementation of provincial and municipal AQMPs;
- A list of priority issues collated by air quality officers at a national, provincial and regional level;
- An identification of recommendations that are required to improve the indicator output;
- Recommendations for the development of new indicators or the amendment of existing indicators;
- A commentary by the national department on the recommendations and proposals, and taking appropriate action

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

on these recommendations over the subsequent 12 months.

**Table 19: The National Air Quality Officer's Annual Report related implementation targets**

Key milestones	Target date
Publication of the National Air Quality Officer's Annual Report	Annually from 2007/8

A set of indicators have been established to guide this review (appendix 3: INDICATORS TO BE INCLUDED IN THE NATIONAL AQO'S ANNUAL REPORT). These indicators will have three basic functions; to simplify, quantify and communicate key information about both the quality of air in South Africa, and the efficacy of the air quality management process itself.

The assessment indicators will be:

- objective;
- scientifically sound;
- easily understandable and explainable;
- able to develop and illustrate trends over time and differences between geographical areas;
- sensitive to the change that they are intended to measure;
- measurable and capable of being updated regularly; and
- based on readily available data and information.

## 6. THE NATIONAL FRAMEWORK REVIEW PROCESS

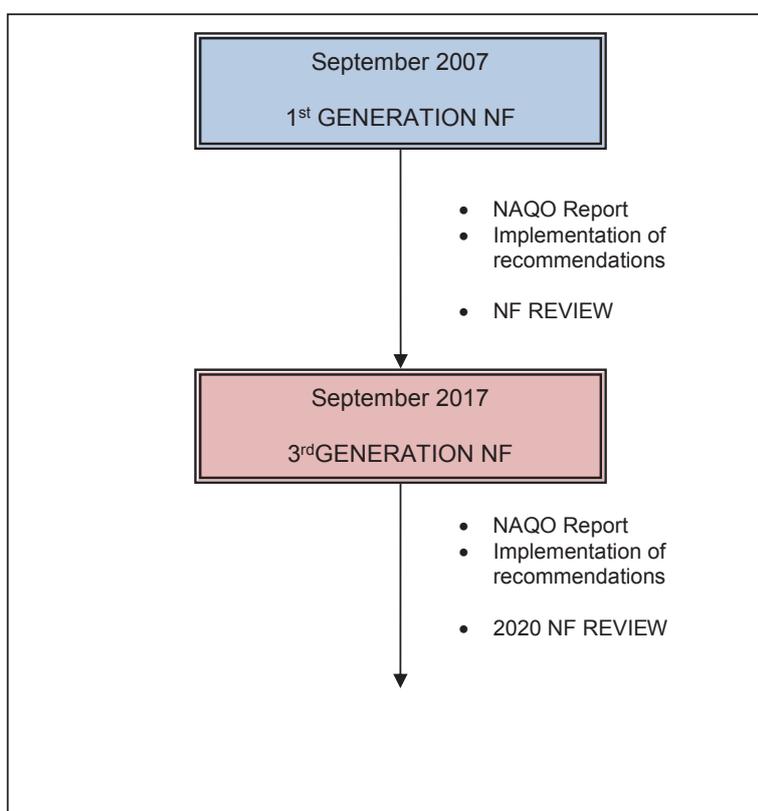
### 6.1 Background to the National Framework review process

According to section 7(5) of the AQA, the National Framework “must be reviewed by the Minister at intervals of not more than five years”, section 7(6) of the AQA continues, “Before publishing the National Framework, or any amendments to the framework, the Minister must follow a consultative process in accordance with sections 56 and 57”. (Section 56 and 57 of the AQA outline the consultative and public participation processes to be considered). To ensure that the National Framework is both efficient and effective it is essential that both the air quality and the governance processes are continually assessed.

The 2012 National Framework provided a timetable for the review of the framework (refer to figure 12 of the 2012 National Framework). This version of the National Framework serves as the 3<sup>rd</sup> generation National Framework following the review process conducted in 2017. The amended timetable for the review of the National Framework is therefore suggested in the Figure 19.

The NAQO report and recommendations from AQOs and stakeholders will inform the review process.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



**Figure 19: Timetable for the National Framework review process**

The process of reviewing the National Framework over the next five years will centre on two key activities (see Figure 19):

- The National Air Quality Officer's Annual Report, including reporting on the National Framework Assessment Indicators and implementation of recommendations from the said report; and
- An Independent Review of the National Framework.

## 6.2 Review of the National Framework

The 5 year review of the National framework must be undertaken to ensure assessment of the implementation of the process. The review will incorporate extensive consultation with various stakeholders including, but not limited to, members of the National-Provincial AQO forum, the Provincial-Municipal AQO forum, air quality practitioners and other interested parties including representatives of industry, NGOs and civil society groups. The outcome of the consultation should be a review report which the Department should consider for any potential redrafting of the 2022 national Framework. .

The review of the National Framework should incorporate:

- all of the beneficial aspects and lessons learnt in the existing National Framework development and consultation phases;
- all recommendations generated over the previous 5 years in the National Framework Indicator Assessment Reports (in the NAQO report), and the Independent Review;
- an assessment of the review process itself.

As stated in section 7(6) of AQA, before publishing the National Framework, or any amendments to the framework, the Minister must follow a consultative process in accordance with sections 56 and 57 of the AQA. At these consultative stages

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

there is also the opportunity to include a Horizon Scanning exercise to further identify any information gaps and future issues for consideration.

### 6.3 Progress with respect to the 2012 National Framework Indicators

The 2012 National Framework listed several indicators for its implementations which were adopted from the inaugural 2007 framework. Progress against indicators and targets set out in the 2012 National Framework is outlined in Table 20 below:

Table 20: Progress against the 2012 National Framework indicators

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN RESPECT OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS					
Progress rating key	Complete/ target exceeded/ target met	On track to meet target	Target not met, but good progress	Little, if any, progress	No information available at time of writing
No.	Indicator	Baseline (2012)	Target	Progress as in 2017	
<b>1.</b>	<b>Problem Identification and Prioritisation</b>				
1.1	Number of pollutants with associated ambient air quality standards.	8	9	In progress for H2S.	
1.2	Initial set of Listed Activities identified with associated minimum emission standards.	1	1	Achieved. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
1.3	Number of National Priority Areas declared	3	3	Achieved. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
1.4	Number of Provincial Air Quality Areas declared.	0	1	Little Progress. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
1.5	Number of Metropolitan and District Municipalities with air quality that does not conform to ambient air quality standards.	21	15	Good progress made. Indicator difficult to measure and hence will be removed. The NAQI will be used instead.	
1.6	Number of Controlled Emitters declared.	3	3	Achieved. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date	
1.7	Number of Controlled Fuels declared.	0	0	Achieved.	

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN RESPECT OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS					
Progress rating key	Complete/ target exceeded/ target met	On track to meet target	Target not met, but good progress	Little, if any, progress	No information available at time of writing
No.	Indicator	Baseline (2012)	Target	Progress as in 2017	
					Indicator will be removed because there is no target to-date.
<b>2.</b>	<b>Strategy development</b>				
2.1	Number of National Priority Area AQMPs under implementation.	3	3	Achieved. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
2.2	Number of Provincial Priority Area AQMPs under implementation.	0	1	No declaration of Provincial PA to-date. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
	Number of Provinces with AQMPs in place.	6	9	6 of 9 provinces have AQMPs as in baseline Indicator maintained.	
2.3	Number of Metropolitan and Municipalities with AQMPs in place.	44	53	Approx. 21 districts, 7 metros and 23 locals municipalities have AQMPs. Indicator maintained.	
2.4	Strategy for addressing air pollution in dense, low-income settlements published.	1	1	Strategy was published for public comment. Indicator maintained.	
	Integrated strategy for the control of vehicle emissions published.	1	1	Strategy compiled and finalised but not published	
<b>3.</b>	<b>Standard-setting</b>				
3.1	Identify additional pollutants requiring ambient air quality standards.	1	1	Investigations for H2S standard ongoing Indicator	

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN RESPECT OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS					
Progress rating key	Complete/ target exceeded/ target met	On track to meet target	Target not met, but good progress	Little, if any, progress	No information available at time of writing
No.	Indicator	Baseline (2012)	Target	Progress as in 2017	
					maintained.
3.2	Number of pollutants with associated ambient air quality standards.	8	9	Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date	
3.3	Initial set of Listed Activities identified with associated minimum emission standards.	1	1	MES published. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
3.4	Number of Controlled Emitters and associated standards declared.	1	3	3 notices published. Indicator will be removed because there is no target to-date.	
3.5	Number of Controlled Fuels and associated standards or prohibitions declared.	0	0	Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
<b>4.</b>	<b>Awareness-raising</b>				
4.1	Number of air quality related publications available.	10	23		
<b>5.</b>	<b>Air Quality Impact Management</b>				
5.1	Number of National Priority Area AQMPs under implementation.	3	3	Achieved. Indicator maintained.	
5.2	Number of Provincial Priority Area AQMPs under implementation.	0	1	No provincial priority area declared. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
5.3	Number of Cleaner Production best practise guidelines published.	1	3	Achieved	
5.4	Regulation in respect of the prescribed form for Atmospheric Impact Report (S.30 of the AQA).	1	1	Achieved. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.	
<b>6.</b>	<b>Atmospheric Emission Licensing</b>				
6.1	AEL Manual published.	1	1	Indicator will be removed because	

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN RESPECT OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS					
Progress rating key	Complete/ target exceeded/ target met	On track to meet target	Target not met, but good progress	Little, if any, progress	No information available at time of writing
No.	Indicator	Baseline (2012)	Target	Progress as in 2017	
					there is no new target to-date.
6.2	Atmospheric Emission License Processing Fee Calculator published.	1	1		
6.3	Annual progress report on the National Licensing Authorities 'support programme.	1	5		Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.
<b>7.</b>	<b>Compliance Monitoring</b>				
7.1	Number of government ambient air quality monitoring stations.	94	100		>130 monitoring stations. Target modified.
7.2	Number of EMIs trained in air quality compliance monitoring.	260	300		Number to be verified. Indicator maintained.
7.3	Number of Atmospheric Emission License holders submitting annual emission reports.	-	-		No target provided. Indicator maintained.
<b>8.</b>	<b>Enforcement</b>				
8.1	Number of EMIs designated	-	-		Numbers to be verified. Indicator maintained.
8.2	Model Air Pollution Control By-Laws.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.
	Number of District and Metropolitan Municipalities with air pollution by-laws.	-	-		Number to be verified. Indicator to be deleted because the number depends on need basis
<b>9.</b>	<b>Information Management</b>				
9.1	SAAQIS Phase 1 – ambient air quality module and associated packages.	1	1		
9.2	SAAQIS Phase II system completed.	1	1		Phase II completed as NAEIS

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN RESPECT OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS					
Progress rating key	Complete/ target exceeded/ target met	On track to meet target	Target not met, but good progress	Little, if any, progress	No information available at time of writing
No.	Indicator	Baseline (2012)	Target	Progress as in 2017	
					Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.
	Format required for the internet-based National Atmospheric Emissions Inventory Reporting established by the National AQO.	1	1		As part of NAEIS Indicator will be removed because there is no new target to-date.
9.3	National Atmospheric Emissions Inventory inclusion in the SAAQIS Phase II completed.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.15	Database of Listed Activities available in the SAAQIS.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.16	All current policy and legislation available in the SAAQIS	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.17	Air quality scientific literature resource library.	1	1		
9.18	Norms and standards for air quality monitoring.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.19	All current available AQMPs.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.20	Support centre/help desk.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.21	DEA air quality publications and guideline documents.	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
9.24	Key stakeholder database	1	1		Achieved. Indicator maintained.
10.1	Participation in the Annual Air Quality Governance Lekgotla.	350	-		Numbers to be verified. Indicator will be deleted.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN RESPECT OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK INDICATORS					
Progress rating key	Complete/ target exceeded/ target met	On track to meet target	Target not met, but good progress	Little, if any, progress	No information available at time of writing
No.	Indicator	Baseline (2012)	Target	Progress as in 2017	
10.2	Number of operational Provincial-Municipal AQOFs.	9		Numbers to be verified. Indicator will be deleted.	

Given that the target for most of the indicators achieved and there is no intent to meet a new target in the next five years, it is recommended that such indicators be removed and be replaced with the new indicators listed in Appendix 1.

## 6.4 The future

The review process outlined in the previous section clearly establishes the principle of on-going change within the National Framework. In addition to the identification of improvements and refinements that can be made to the process, the success of the process itself will lead to further need to change and adapt the National Framework. Firstly, as the National Framework process leads to a more detailed assessment and analysis of air pollution in South Africa the development in air pollution science will potentially highlight new sources or other problems that were previously unseen and need to be taken into account by the National Framework. Secondly, as improvements are made to air quality by reductions in key primary pollutants and the targeting of issues that are relatively easily addressed, the significance of other pollutants (particularly secondary pollutants) will increase and the focus of the National Framework may need to be adjusted accordingly.

### 6.4.1 Horizon Scanning

In order that new and emerging issues can be identified and remedial actions formulated before they become problematic, it is useful to engage in the process of 'Horizon Scanning'. Horizon Scanning allows proactive rather than reactive development and delivery of preventative and adaptive policies and strategies. Horizon Scanning also provides the opportunity for the National Framework to remain abreast with international air quality management techniques, science and research. Horizon Scanning is a structured procedure for identifying issues and prioritising them according to their importance and relevance. It is based on risk assessment and ranks issues numerically according to their perceived scale, probability, trend, degree of recognition and potential impacts. The outcomes from Horizon Scanning exercises can be categorised as, for example, low probability but high consequence events such as pollution arising from extreme weather conditions, or alternatively high probability and high consequence events such as pollution from increased motor vehicle usage in urban areas.

The consultation workshops during Independent Review stage will include Horizon Scanning by relevant stakeholders including air quality practitioners and other stakeholders such as industry and the general public. All of the air quality issues that have been identified during the development of the preceding generations of the National Framework but have not been prioritised for action can be readdressed and reconsidered for inclusion in the next generation of the National Framework. Additionally, new and emerging issues can be logged and discussed at any stage by AQOs, air quality practitioners and members of the public through appropriate Air Quality Forums e.g. training events, awareness-raising events, municipal/provincial meetings etc. AQOs at municipal, provincial and national levels are responsible for maintaining an evolving list of priority and emerging issues. This list can be published annually in the annual National Framework Indicators Assessment Report (in the NAQO report).

### 6.4.2 Potential Issues for Future Development

Possible future issues and research priorities identified to date include but are not limited to:

- Consideration of new or emerging pollutants, their impact on health and the establishment of health-based

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

objectives;

- Consideration of existing, new and/or emerging pollutants, their impact on the environment and ecosystems and the establishment of appropriate objectives;
- Development of proactive management of future potentially problematic sources (e.g. new fuels);
- Consideration of policies and strategies to address both climate change and air pollutant emissions to deliver co-benefit solutions;
- Investigation of trans-boundary air pollution sources and their impacts on South Africa;
- Development of strategies to deal with ambient concentrations of heavy metals and POPs, their impact and the establishment of suitable objectives;
- Development of strategies for tackling nuisance pollutants such as odours and dust and the establishment of guidelines and objectives for effective management;

## **7. REPEAL OF THE 2012 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA**

The 2012 National Framework for Air Quality Management in the Republic of South Africa (Notice 919, Government Gazette No.37078) of November 2013 may be repealed.

## **8. SHORT TITLE AND COMMENCEMENT**

This framework is called the draft 2017 national framework for air quality management in the republic of South Africa.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## REFERENCES

- Canadian International Development Agency (2000): *Capacity Development: Why, What and How*. CIDA policy branch: occasional paper 1 (1): 1-8.
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (2004): *Criteria for determining alternatives in EIA*. Integrated Environmental Management Information Series No. 11. Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Pretoria. 12pp.
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism (2007): *The National Air Quality Management Programme, Output C.4: Initial State of Air Report*. Prepared by CSIR for the Chief Directorate: Air Quality and Climate Change, Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, 121pp.
- European Commission (2003): *Integrated Pollution Prevention and Control (IPPC) Reference Document on the General Principles of Monitoring*. Seville.
- European Union (1996): Directive 96/61/EC of 24 September 1996. Accessed online at <http://www.kvvm.hu/szakmai/eper/docs/96L0061.pdf>.
- Government Gazette (2000): *The White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management for South Africa: a policy on pollution prevention, waste minimisation, impact management and remediation*. 20978: 3-81.
- Government Gazette (2003): *Joint Implementation Strategy for the Control of Exhaust Emissions from Road-going Vehicles in, the Republic South Africa, Final draft*. Notice 3324. 25741: 3-46.
- Government Gazette (2006): *Regulations relating to Qualification Criteria, Training and Identification of, and Forms to be used by, Environmental Management Inspectors*. Regulation 494. 28869: 3-16.
- Morgan, P. (1998): *Capacity and Capacity Development – some Strategies*. CIDA policy branch. Note prepared for the Political and Social Policies Division, 13pp.
- National Treasury (2006): *A Framework for Considering Market-based Instruments to Support Environmental Fiscal Reform in South Africa*, Government of South Africa
- Palmer Development Group (2006): *Compliance Monitoring System and Implementation Plan, Output A.1: Draft Status Quo Report, Second draft, Appendix 1*. Prepared for the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, 197pp.
- South African Bureau of Standards (2005): *South African National Standards, Ambient air quality – Limits for common pollutants*, SANS 1929: 2005.
- United Kingdom Environment Agency (2003): *Integrated Pollution Prevention and Control (IPPC). Environmental Assessment and Appraisal of BAT*. Horizontal Guidance Note IPCC H1 Version 6, p2, Bristol.
- van Niekerk, W.A. (2001): *Technical Background Document for the Development of a National Ambient Air Quality Standard for Sulphur Dioxide*.
- World Health Organisation (1998): *World Health Organisation Air Quality Guidelines for Europe*. WHO Regional Publications.
- World Health Organisation (2000): *World Health Organisation Air Quality Guidelines for Europe, Second Edition*. WHO Regional Publications, European Series, No. 91.

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**GLOSSARY AND DEFINITIONS**

<b>Air Quality Management Plan</b>	means a plan referred to in section 15 of AQA
<b>Air Quality Officer</b>	means an officer appointed in terms of section 14 of AQA as an air quality officer
<b>Ambient air quality standards</b>	values that define targets for air quality management and establish the permissible amount or concentration of a particular substance in or property of discharges to air based on what a particular receiving environment can tolerate without significant deterioration
<b>Atmospheric Emission Licence</b>	means an atmospheric emission licence contemplated in Chapter 5 of AQA
<b>Bioaccumulation</b>	occurs when an organism absorbs a toxic substance at a rate greater than that at which the substance is lost, i.e. it accumulates the substance over time. Thus, the longer the biological half- life of the substance the greater the risk of chronic poisoning, even if environmental levels of the toxin are very low.
<b>Clean technology</b>	includes the wind power, solar power, biomass, hydropower, biofuels, information technology, electric motors, lighting, and many other appliances that are now more energy efficient.
<b>Clean fuels</b>	any fuel that does not contain heavy metals and having a maximum benzene content of 3%, aromatics content of 42%, sulphur level of 500ppm and a maximum of oxygenate content of ethers and selected alcohols of less than 2.7%. Diesel that contains less than 500ppm of sulphur will also be included
<b>Controlled emitter</b>	means any appliance or activity declared as a controlled emitter in terms of section 23 of AQA
<b>Controlled fuels</b>	means any fuel as defined under Section 26 of AQA
<b>Cost- Benefit Analysis</b>	the process that involves weighing the total accepted costs against the total expected benefits in order to choose the best option
<b>Ecological degradation</b>	is related to the deterioration of the environment both in terms of quantity and extinction of some wildlife species and quality like air, water or land pollution
<b>Emission inventory</b>	a listing or register of the amount of pollution entering the atmosphere from all sources within a given time and geographic boundaries
<b>Emission standard</b>	a specific limit to the amount of pollutant that can be released to the atmosphere by a specified source
<b>Environmental Management Systems</b>	a part of the management system of an organisation in which specific competencies, behaviours, procedures and demands for the implementation of an environment policy are defined
<b>Fugitive sources</b>	sources of emissions that are difficult to identify and quantify. As the name implies, fugitive emissions include gases that “escape” from badly managed or maintained processes, e.g. leaky pipe-work
<b>Greenhouse gases (GHG)</b>	means gaseous constituents of the atmosphere, both natural and anthropogenic, that absorb and re-emit infrared radiation, and includes carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxide
<b>Homologated</b>	an item that is accredited or approved by an authority
<b>ISO 14001</b>	a system of environmental management standards that assist organisations to minimise the negative impacts, aid compliance and facilitate continual improvement

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

<b>Listed activity</b>	means any activity listed in terms of section 21 of AQA
<b>Mitigation measures</b>	efforts to attempt to prevent pollution or to reduce the effects of pollution that occur
<b>Mobile source</b>	means a single identifiable source of atmospheric emission which does not emanate from a fixed location
<b>Non-point source</b>	means a source of atmospheric emissions which cannot be identified as having emanated from a single identifiable source or fixed location, and includes veld, forest and open fires, mining activities, agricultural activities and stockpiles
<b>Offensive odour</b>	means any smell which is considered to be malodorous or a nuisance to a reasonable person
<b>Ozone- depleting substance</b>	means a substance having chemical or physical properties which, by its release into the atmosphere, can cause a depletion of the stratospheric ozone layer; i.e. chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) compounds, commonly called freons, and of bromofluorocarbon compounds known as halons CFCs, halons and other contributory substances are commonly referred to as ozone- depleting substances
<b>Persistent organic pollutants (POPs)</b>	organic compounds that are resistant to environmental degradation through chemical, biological, and photolytic processes. Because of this, they have been observed to persist in the environment, to be capable of long-range transport, bioaccumulate in human and animal tissue, bio-magnify in food chains, and to have potential significant impacts on human health and the environment i.e. aldrin, chlordane, DDT, dieldrin, endrin, heptachlor, hexachlorobenzene, mirex, polychlorinated biphenyls, polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, polychlorinated dibenzofurans, and toxaphene.
<b>Point source</b>	means a single identifiable source and fixed location of atmospheric emission, and includes smoke stacks and residential chimneys
<b>Priority area</b>	means an area declared as such in terms of section 18 of AQA
<b>Priority area air quality management plan</b>	means a plan referred to in section 19 of AQA
<b>Provisional atmospheric emission licence</b>	means a provisional atmospheric emission licence contemplated in Chapter 5 of AQA
<b>Quality assurance and control</b>	activities that determine the level of confidence in produced data and reduce error
<b>Stratospheric ozone depletion</b>	describes the observable decline of stratospheric ozone layer as a result of anthropogenic activities
<b>Sustainable development</b>	Balancing the fulfilment of human needs with the protection of the natural environment so that these needs can be met not only in the present, but in the indefinite future. The term was used by the Brundtland Commission which coined what has become the most often quoted definition of sustainable development as development that "meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.

## APPENDIX 1: NATIONAL AIR QUALITY INDICATOR STATIONS

Station Name	Province	District/ Metro	Local Municipality	Owner	Classification	Reporting to SAAQIS	Latitude	Longitude	Pollutants
Saltworks	EC	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	COEGA	Urban	No	-33.763778	25.683428	
Walmer	EC	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	Nelson Mandela Bay Metro	Nelson Mandela Metro	Industrial	No	-33.985667	25.688083	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO
Pelononi	FS	Mangaung Metro	Mangaung Metro	Mangaung Metro	Urban	No	-29.138472	26.241917	SO <sub>2</sub> , NO, NO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , CO, PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub>
Zamdela	FS	Fezile Dabi DM	Metsimaholo LM	DEA	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-26.845083	27.855778	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, Pb and BTEX
Alexandra	GP	Johannesburg Metro	Johannesburg Metro	Joburg Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-26.106972	28.110556	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub>
Bedfordview	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Traffic	Yes	-26.178611	28.133194	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Bucleugh	GP	Johannesburg Metro	Johannesburg Metro	Joburg Metro	Traffic	Yes	-26.011833	28.117556	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub>
Diepkloof	GP	Johannesburg Metro	Johannesburg Metro	DEA	Urban	Yes	-26.250736	27.956447	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, Pb and BTEX
Elandsfontein	GP	West Rand DM	Merafong City LM	Eskom	Peri-Urban	Yes	-26.245517	27.417522	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO, NO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , BCM, Hg, H <sub>2</sub> S
Etwatwa	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	No	-26.116611	28.475417	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Germiston	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Industrial	No	-26.227361	28.177333	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Olievenhoutbosch	GP	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-25.911611	28.093250	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Olifantsfontein	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Industrial	No	-25.973123	28.237202	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Roslyn	GP	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Industrial	Yes	-25.625167	28.094778	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, VOC
Soeshangwe	GP	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-25.492000	28.093733	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Springs	GP	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Ekurhuleni Metro	Urban	No	-26.270361	28.416000	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , CO
Vanderbijlpark	GP	Sedibeng DM	Ermfuleni LM	Sedibeng DM	Industrial	Yes	-26.688639	27.816667	SO <sub>2</sub> , CO
CBD - RBCAA	KZN	Uthungulu DM	Uthungulu DM	RBCAA	Traffic	Yes	-28.744700	32.049242	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub>

THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

City Hall - Durban	KZN	eThekwi Metro	Ethekewini Metro	eThekwi Metro	Traffic	Yes	-29.961160	30.038830	PM <sub>10</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub>
Ganges	KZN	eThekwi Metro	Ethekewini Metro	eThekwi Metro	Industrial	Yes	-29.948500	30.964528	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub>
King Shaka	KZN	eThekwi Metro	Ethekewini Metro	ACSA	Industrial	No	-29.6222972	31.102639	
Settlers	KZN	eThekwi Metro	Ethekewini Metro	eThekwi Metro	Urban	Yes	-29.956750	30.978750	SO <sub>2</sub>
Southern Works	KZN	eThekwi Metro	Ethekewini Metro	eThekwi Metro	Traffic	Yes	-29.956944	30.973139	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub>
Lephalale	L	Waterberg DM	Lephalale LM	DEA	Urban	Yes	-23.681918	27.723216	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO & BTEX
Phalaborwa	L	Mopani DM	Ba-Phalaborwa LM	L Province	Urban	Yes	-23.932049	31.139471	SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , NO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub>
Ermelo	MP	Gert Sibande DM	Msulungwa LM	DEA	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-26.493361	29.968028	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, Pb, Hg and BTEX
Middleburg - DEA	MP	Nkangala DM	Steve Tshwete LM	DEA	Urban	Yes	-25.796111	29.462778	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, Pb, Hg and BTEX
Sasol Club	MP	Gert Sibande DM	Govan Mbeki LM	Sasol	Industrial	Yes	-26.550639	29.079028	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , NO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO & H <sub>2</sub> S
Karoo	NC	Namakwa DM	Namakwa District Municipality	SAWS	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-31.398641	19.140214	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , NO <sub>2</sub> , BC and O <sub>3</sub>
Matifeng	NW	Ngaka Modiri Molema DM	Matifeng LM	NW Province	Background	Yes	-25.830667	25.611583	SO <sub>2</sub>
Marikana Community Centre	NW	Bojanala DM	Rustenburg LM	Rustenburg LM	Urban	Yes	-25.698444	27.480111	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> & CO
Welwegund	NW	Dr Kenneth Kaunda DM	Tlokwe Local Municipality	NW University	Background		-26.569444	26.939167	
Xanadu	NW	Bojanala DM	Madiberg LM	SAWS	Background	Yes	-25.747122	27.924610	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , NO <sub>2</sub> , BC and O <sub>4</sub>
Cape Point	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	SAWS	Background	Yes	-34.353292	18.489764	CO, NO & O <sub>3</sub>
City Hall - CT	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Traffic	Yes	-33.925285	18.423839	NO <sub>x</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> & CO
Foreshore	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Traffic	Yes	-33.913833	18.425167	PM <sub>10</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , VOC
George	WC	Eden DM	George LM	WC Province	Suburban (Low Income Residential Settlements)	Yes	-33.981219	22.473231	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO
Khayelitsha - CT Metro	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Industrial	Yes	-34.015583	18.653556	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , VOC

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Potsdam	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-33.837825	18.524824	VOC
Somerset West	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-34.077355	18.831800	SO <sub>2</sub>
Table View	WC	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Cape Town Metro	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-33.819667	18.514333	PM <sub>10</sub> , PM <sub>2.5</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> S,
Worcester	WC	Cape Winelands DM	Breede Valley LM	WC Province	Suburban (Medium & Upper Residential Settlement)	Yes	-33.627500	19.468361	PM <sub>10</sub> , SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, H <sub>2</sub> S

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## APPENDIX 2: MUNICIPAL AIR QUALITY RATING

Municipality	Municipal Areas of Concern
Central Karoo	Acceptable
Namakwa	Acceptable
Overberg	Acceptable
Pixley ka Seme	Acceptable
Z F Mqcawu	Acceptable
Xhariep	Acceptable
Ngaka Modiri Molema	Poor
Umgungundlovu	Poor
Alfred Nzo	Poor
Amajuba	Poor
Amathole	Poor
Bojanala	Poor
Buffalo City	Poor
Cape Winelands	Poor
Capricorn	Poor
City of Cape Town	Poor
City of Johannesburg	Poor
City of Tshwane	Poor
Dr Kenneth Kaunda	Poor
Eden	Poor
Ehlanzeni	Poor
Ekurhuleni	Poor
eThekweni	Poor
Fezile Dabi	Poor
Gert Sibande	Poor
Sekhukhune	Poor
iLembe	Poor
Mangaung	Poor
Mopani	Poor
Nelson Mandela Bay	Poor
Nkangala	Poor
Sedibeng	Poor
Ugu	Poor
Waterberg	Poor
West Coast	Poor
West Rand	Poor
Cacadu	Potentially Poor
Chris Hani	Potentially Poor
Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati	Potentially Poor
Frances Baard	Potentially Poor

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Joe Gqabi	Potentially Poor
John Taolo Gaetsewe	Potentially Poor
Lejweleputswa	Potentially Poor
O.R.Tambo	Potentially Poor
Sisonke	Potentially Poor
Thabo Mofutsanyane	Potentially Poor
Umkhanyakude	Potentially Poor
Umzinyathi	Potentially Poor
Uthukela	Potentially Poor
Uthungulu	Potentially Poor
Vhembe	Potentially Poor
Zululand	Potentially Poor

### APPENDIX 3: INDICATORS TO BE INCLUDED IN THE NATIONAL AQO'S ANNUAL REPORT

PROPOSED INDICATORS FOR THE NAQO REPORT			
No.	Indicator	Baseline, 2017	Target
<b>1.</b>	<b>Problem Identification and Prioritisation</b>		
1.2	Number of Controlled Emitters declared.	3	4 (printing works)
<b>2.</b>	<b>Strategy development</b>		
2.1	Number of Provinces with AQMPs in place.	6	9
2.2	Number of Metropolitan Municipalities with AQMPs in place	7	
2.3	Number of District Municipalities with AQMPs in place	23	
2.5	Strategy for addressing air pollution in dense, low-income settlements published.	1	
<b>3.</b>	<b>Standard-setting</b>		
3.2	Number of Controlled Emitters and associated standards established.	3	4 (printing works notice)
<b>4.</b>	<b>Awareness-raising</b>		
4.1	Number of air quality related publications available.	23	25
<b>5.</b>	<b>Air Quality Impact Management</b>		
5.1	Number of Cleaner Production best practise guidelines published.	3	4
<b>6.</b>	<b>Atmospheric Emission Licensing</b>		
6.1	SNAEL SOPs and Manuals	0	1
6.2	Number of AELs issued within legislated timeframes	0	100%
<b>7.</b>	<b>Compliance Monitoring</b>		

## THE 2017 NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

PROPOSED INDICATORS FOR THE NAQO REPORT			
No.	Indicator	Baseline, 2017	Target
7.1	Number of government ambient air quality monitoring stations meeting minimum data requirements.	35	60
7.2	Number of EMLs trained in air quality compliance monitoring.	803	1000
<b>8.</b>	<b>Enforcement</b>		
8.1	Number of EMLs designated	-	-
<b>9.</b>	<b>Information Management</b>		
9.1	Percentage of facilities with AELs reporting to National Atmospheric Emissions Inventory System	70%	90%
9.2	SAAQIS upgrade – ambient air quality module and associated packages completed.	1	1
9.3	All current policy and legislation available in the SAAQIS	1	1
9.4	Air quality scientific literature resource library.	1	1
9.5	Norms and standards for air quality monitoring.	1	1
9.6	All current available AQMPs.	1	1
9.9	Air Quality Officer's database available on SAAQIS	1	1
9.10	Key stakeholder database	1	1

## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 519

25 MAY 2018

**DENTAL TECHNICIANS ACT, 1979 (ACT NO. 19 OF 1979)****REGULATIONS REGARDING THE REGISTRATION AND TRAINING OF  
STUDENT DENTAL TECHNICIANS AND STUDENT DENTAL TECHNOLOGISTS**

The Minister of Health has, under section 50(1)(f) of the Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act No. 19 of 1979), on the recommendation of the South African Dental Technicians Council, made the regulations in the Schedule.

Interested persons are invited to submit any substantiated comments or representations on the proposed regulations to the Director-General of Health, Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001, for the attention of the Director: Public Entities Governance: Ms M Mushwana, MushwM@health.gov.za, within three months from the date of the publication of this notice.

**DR PA MOTSOALEDI, MP****MINISTER OF HEALTH**

DATE: 9/5/2018

**SCHEDULE**  
**ARRANGEMENT OF REGULATIONS**

1. Definitions
2. Approval of training institutions
3. Local advisory committee
4. Admission of student dental technicians
5. Registration of student dental technician or student dental technologist
6. Information to be supplied by approved institution
7. Removal of names from the register of student dental technicians or student dental technologists
8. Minimum curriculum for dental technology
9. Syllabus
10. Examinations
11. Completion of academic years of study
12. Proficiency
13. Qualification to practice the profession as dental technician
14. Qualification to practice the profession as dental technologist
15. Moderator and examiners
16. Education inspectors
17. Investigation into education and training at approved institution
18. Evaluation of final practical examination question paper, work models and examples of completed tasks
19. Evaluation of final practical examination

20. Offences
21. Repeal
22. Short title and commencement

## SCHEDULE

### Definitions

1. In these regulations any expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act bear that meaning and, unless the context indicates otherwise—

**"approved institution"** means a public higher education institution or private institution approved by the Council whose purpose is to qualify dental technicians and dental technologists who ultimately have the intention to seek registration as a practitioner in the field of dental technology;

**"co-operative education", "work integrating learning " and "practical laboratory exposure"** mean education that combines learning in the lecture room with learning in the dental laboratory, where academic knowledge is applied through relevant work experience outside the lecture room and the challenges and insights so gained are brought back to the lecture room for further analysis and reflection, work-integrating-learning and practical laboratory exposure;

**"council"** means the South African Dental Technicians Council;

**"Council on Higher Education"** means the body established in terms of section 4 of the Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act No. 101 of 1997);

**"education committee"** means the committee established by the council in terms of section 11 of the Act;

**"education inspector"** means an inspector referred to in regulation 16;

**"employer"** means the owner of a registered dental laboratory and who employs a registered dental technician or dental technologist;

**"extended curriculum programme "**means learning activities at the lower end of the higher education band that are intended to enable students from disadvantaged educational backgrounds to acquire the academic foundation necessary for succeeding in higher education, and that must lead to a purposeful and structured set of learning outcomes that lead to an approved and recognised professional qualification;

**"final summative practical assessment"** means the last practical assessment in any appropriate subject in any academic year that is intended to assess the student's fitness for an approved purpose, at a given level, but specifically referring to those assessments at the end of a programme that would be presented to or considered by the council for professional registration purposes;

**"Higher Education Quality Committee"** means the certification authority established by the Council on Higher Education in terms of section 7(3) of the Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act No. 101 of 1997);

**"laboratory"** means a dental laboratory registered under section 30 of the Act;

**"local advisory committee"** means a committee established by an approved institution under regulation 3 and the expression **"liaison committee"** has a corresponding meaning;

**"minimum requirements"** means—

- (a) the annual determined requirements approved by the council on the recommendation of an education inspector, in conjunction with the education committee of the council; and
- (b) for the purposes of regulations 18 and 19, the annual determined requirements contemplated in paragraph (a) for practical education and training required by the approved syllabus of an approved institution for the appropriate practical subject, of which the successful completion may be considered by the council for registration purposes;

**"NQSF"** means a national qualifications sub-framework as contemplated in the National Qualifications Framework Act, 2008 (Act No. 67 of 2008);

**"professional study"** means study at an approved institution for any of the council approved qualifications and aligned to the prevailing NQSF or any national structure that may replace it from time to time, and the expressions "professional study in dental technology" and "study in dental technology" have corresponding meanings;

**"Regulations"** means these Regulations;

**"senate"** means the highest authority at a university of technology or a similar approved structure at a private institution; and

**"the Act"** means the Dental Technicians Act, (Act No. 19 of 1979).

## Approval of training institutions

2. (1) An application by a training institution for permission to offer or provide any education or training which is intended to qualify a person to practice the profession of a dental technician or dental technologist, as the case may be, must be submitted by that institution to the council at least six months prior to the commencement of such education or training.

(2) A training institution must, in support of its application, submit the following information to the council:

- (a) The number of student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be, that can be trained simultaneously;
- (b) the facilities and, subject to subregulation (5), staff available for the practical and theoretical training of student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be;
- (c) the equipment and materials that are available for such training;
- (d) the study material that is available for the practical training of student dental technicians or student dental technologists as the case may be; and
- (e) whether offering any of the approved qualifications at the approved institution has been approved by all other reporting structures both internal and external to the said approved institution, where applicable.

(3) On receipt of an application contemplated in subregulation (1), the council may—

- (a) request from the applicant or any other person any further information that it deems necessary to enable it to consider the application; and
- (b) cause a complete inspection of the training institution concerned to be carried out by an education inspector, the council or another structure of council, if deemed necessary.

(4) The council may determine the number of student dental technicians who may be enrolled as first-year students at an approved institution during any one year.

(5) An approved institution may employ only registered dental technicians or dental technologists registered with the council in the education and training of student dental technicians or student dental technologists in the dental technology specific subjects which are the theoretical and practical subject in the disciplines of dental technology, any subject directly supporting such related subjects, jurisprudence and any related subjects associated with professional ethics and practice: Provided that the latter cluster may be offered by the registrar or deputy registrar of the council.

### **Local advisory committee**

3. (1) An approved institution must establish a local advisory committee, the majority of members of which must consist of registered dental technicians or dental technologists who are in good standing with the council and one dentist registered under the Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 of 1974), to practice that profession, if such inclusion is possible or if such inclusion is advisable on a needs basis.

(2) The local advisory committee must advise the approved institution concerned on any matter relating to the education of student dental technicians and student dental technologists, as the case may be, such as admission requirements, course structuring, research, prescribed training, academic and practical standards and the way in which co-operative education can best be achieved.

### **Admission of student dental technicians**

4. Before an approved institution accepts a person for admission as a student dental technician, such person must be tested by the institution by means of selection tests approved by the council.

### **Registration of student dental technician or student dental technologist**

5. (1) An application for registration as a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, must be made to the council within 90 days after the commencement of the applicant's study in dental technology: Provided that the council may grant an extension of the period, as it considers appropriate.

(2) An application for registration as a student dental technicians must be accompanied by—

- (a) a certified copy of a birth certificate or, if the applicant is unable to submit a birth certificate, alternative proof of age and correct names to the satisfaction of the registrar;
- (b) a certificate, which is equivalent to any grade 12 or equivalent educational qualification that regulates admission to a higher educational institution at the level of such specific qualification;
- (c) a declaration from the approved institution concerned indicating that the applicant has commenced studies in dental technology at that approved institution, and indicating the year of study for which the applicant is enrolled and the date on which he or she was so enrolled; and

(d) a registration fee as determined by council from time to time.

(3) A student dental technician must not be registered by the council if any of the documents referred to in subregulation (1)(a), (b) or (c) have not been received as well as the payment referred to in subregulation(2)(d)by 30 April of the applicable year of study.

(4) An approved institution may, on the grounds of previous education or training of a student dental technician in dental technology, grant such a student exemption from studies for a specific study year, as long as the requirements of council are upheld.

(5) A student dental technician whose registration as such has expired but, who, within one year thereafter, resumes his or her professional study, must submit an application for re-registration to the council within 14 days of the resumption of his or her professional study: Provided that the council may extend the period of 14 days, as it considers appropriate.

(6) An application referred to in subregulation (5) must be accompanied by—

- (a) a declaration indicating that the applicant has resumed his or her professional study;
- (b) the original registration certificate issued by the council; and
- (c) an amount as determined by the council from time to time.

(7) Despite regulation 7, the name of a student dental technician who interrupts his or her professional study for not more than one year and who applies in writing to the council to continue his or her studies in the following year, must not be removed from the register of student dental technicians during the said period.

(8) A person who applies for re-registration in terms of subregulation (5) but who is not able to submit his or her original certificate as required in terms of regulation 6(b) must apply to the council for a certified copy of his or her original registration certificate, for which a fee as determined by council from time to time must be payable.

(9) An application for re-registration as a student dental technologist must be accompanied by—

- (a) a certified copy of the relevant approved and recognised qualification in dental technology of the applicant concerned, or other proof from the approved institution that the applicant has complied with the requirements for the prerequisite qualification;
- (b) a declaration from the approved institution concerned indicating that the applicant has commenced studies towards the appropriate qualification at that approved institution, and the date on which he or she was so enrolled; and
- (c) a registration fee as determined by the council from time to time.

(10) A student dental technologist must not be registered or re-registered by the council if any of the documents referred to in subregulation (9)(a) or (b) as well as the payment referred to in subregulation (9)(c) have not been received by 30 April of the applicable year of study.

(11) Any application for registration or re-registration, together with the applicable documents and fees, submitted after the period of 90 days referred to in subregulation 1, or the period of 14 days referred to in subregulation 5(5), as the case may be, must be subject to an additional registration fee as determined by the council for each month or portion of a month that the application is overdue, subject to any extension that the council may grant.

(12) No person must be registered or re-registered unless he or she has complied with subregulation 2, 5 or 8, as the case may be, and with subregulation 11, where applicable.

(13) A registration certificate in a format approved by the council must be issued to each student dental technician and student dental technologist, as the case may be.

#### **Information to be supplied by approved institution**

6. (1) An approved institution must, as soon as possible after 15 March of each year, submit a list to the council indicating the full names of all—

- (a) student dental technicians and student dental technologists, as the case may be, enrolled at such approved institution on 15 March of that year;
- (b) student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be, who abandoned their studies during the preceding 12 months, and, in cases where students have discontinued their professional study, the date of such discontinuation;
- (c) student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be, who temporarily abandoned their studies during the preceding 12 months, together with the reasons for such temporary abandonment and the date, where possible, on which such persons anticipate resuming their studies; and
- (d) student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be, who, after the temporary abandonment of their studies, resumed their studies during the preceding 12 months.

(2) Every approved institution must notify the council within 30 days after a student dental technician or dental technologist, as the case may be, has been found guilty by such an approved institution, of misconduct in terms of the rules and regulations of the

approved institution concerned, and must furnish the council with full particulars of such conduct.

(3) If a student is in contravention of the statutes under the administration of the council, such contravention must be reported to the registrar of the council for decision and possible action.

#### **Removal of names from register of student dental technicians or student dental technologists**

7. The registrar must remove the name of a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, from the register of student dental technicians or student dental technologists as the case may be, that is kept in terms of section 20 of the Act—

- (a) as soon as he or she has been registered as a dental technician or dental technologist or 30 days after the registrar receives notice of the name of such student in accordance with regulation 11 ; or
- (b) as soon as evidence has been submitted to the satisfaction of the registrar that the student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, has abandoned his or her professional study in South Africa.

#### **Minimum curriculum for dental technology**

8. (1) (a) The period of professional study in dental technology must be from the date of registration as a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, at an approved institution until the date on which the appropriate recognised qualification, entitling such student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, to register as a dental technician or dental technologist, is awarded

(b) The period referred to in paragraph(a) must consist of at least the minimum time prescribed for that qualification level as it appears on the NQSF, inclusive of both academic training at an approved institution and such practical laboratory exposure as may be determined under regulation 12.

(2) From the first year of study all subjects must be aimed at training in dental technology.

(3) The syllabus for professional study for any of the council approved qualifications at any of the NQSF must consist of systematic instruction and, where applicable, practical work, and must cover the following:

- (a) All aspects of modern dental technology that are benchmarked internationally;
- (b) Dental Materials Science supportive of the aspects referred to in paragraph (a) and underpinned by the appropriate applied and biosciences;
- (c) Dental Technology and other related legislation that impacts on the profession of dental technology;
- (d) professional conduct and ethics;
- (e) general business competence focused on the application in dental technology;
- (f) profession specific and work-integrating-learning, aimed at preparing students for the world of work in general, but focused on the profession of dental technology, which must enable student dental technicians to successfully participate as employees in a registered dental laboratory, and student dental technologists as employers, entrepreneurs or supervisors of dental laboratories; and
- (g) the ability to engage and conduct profession-directed-research that must contribute to the development of the dental technology profession.

### **Syllabus**

9. (1) The curriculum and syllabus must be determined by each approved training institution in accordance with the profession and local liaison committee and must be presented to the council for approval as must be the case when any changes to the approved curriculum and syllabus are made.

(2) The curriculum and syllabus contemplated in subregulation (1) must contain all the aspects provided for in regulation 8(3).

### **Examinations**

10. (1) An approved institution must—
- (a) evaluate the progress of a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, in respect of the subjects referred to in regulation 8(3) and conduct the examinations in those subjects in accordance with the rules framed by the academic board of such approved institution as approved by the council; and
  - (b) at the end of the period contemplated in regulation 8(1), examine the student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, by means of a practical examination in dental technology in accordance with the rules framed by the academic board of such approved institution, where the Act and the Regulations are silent, but such rules may not be in contravention of the Act and the Regulations.

(2) A student dental technician or student dental technologist must not be permitted to continue with a higher level of a subject unless he or she has passed the preceding level.

(3) A student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, may receive recognition from the senate or from a similar structure with the same mandate, of an approved training institution, for a subject when he or she has passed the examination in such subject in accordance with these Regulations.

(4) (a) A student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, must not be allowed to complete any qualification in dental technology in more than double the normal time period prescribed for that qualification, and must not be allowed to repeat any level of any recognised and approved qualification more than once.

(b) In the event where a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, enrolls on the Extended Curriculum Programme, a further one year must be allowed.

(c) The council may, based on verifiable evidence, consider appeals from students and grant the necessary extensions if, in the council's opinion, grounds for such extension exist.

(d) The extension contemplated in paragraph (c) must be subject to the promotion and re-admission rules of the approved institution and any concessions granted under such rules.

(5) If a student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, fails his or her first year of study, he or she must be permitted by the council to continue with his or her appropriate qualification if—

- (a) he or she applies for re-selection and re-registration for the following year, together with other new applicants; and
- (b) his or her application is successful.

(6) A student dental technician must not be admitted to the examination at the end of his or her third year of study unless he or she—

- (a) has successfully completed an accredited first-aid course; and
- (b) is in possession of a current competence certificate issued by an accredited first-aid provider.

(7) Despite the requirements of the Act and Regulations and subject to the conditions laid down by the Department of Higher Education and Training and the Higher Education Quality Committee of the Council on Higher Education, every approved institution must have the right to prescribe its own rules regarding theoretical and practical evaluation of student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be.

### Completion of academic years of study

11. (a) An approved institution must, on or before 31 December of each year, furnish the registrar in writing with the name of each student dental technician and student dental technologist as the case may be, at such approved institution, who has complied with the requirements for the appropriate, approved and recognised qualification regardless of whether the qualification is withheld on institutional grounds.

(b) The withheld qualifications must be communicated to the council as an addendum to this requirement.

### Proficiency

12. (1) An approved institution, in collaboration with the local advisory committee, must determine at what stage and for what period a student dental technician or a student dental technologist as the case may be, must undergo practical laboratory exposure .

(2) (a) For the purposes of subregulation (1), the owner of a dental laboratory must not employ a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, unless such dental laboratory is registered with the council and has obtained written approval from the approved institution, to employ such student.

(b) An approval contemplated in paragraph (a) must not be issued unless the approved institution is satisfied that proper practical training as a student dental technician or a student dental technologist, as the case may be, must be conducted at such registered laboratory.

(3) An approved institution, in collaboration with the local advisory committee, must ensure that the proficiency acquired through practical laboratory exposure and other practical work, together with academic training, is sufficient for a student dental technician or a student dental technologist to be employed as a dental technician or dental technologist, as the case may be.

(4) (a) Despite regulation 8, a student dental technologist must be trained in general dental laboratory management, which must form an integral part of his or her academic training.

(b) The dental technology specific subjects and business practice related subjects must form the basis of training of student dental technologists in general dental laboratory management.

**Qualification to practice profession as dental technician**

13. (1) An approved institution must award the appropriate qualification as approved by council to a student dental technician, if the student has passed the examinations prescribed for that qualification and otherwise complied with the requirements determined by the senate of that approved institution for that qualification.

(2) The appropriate qualification as approved by council and awarded by an approved institution must be recognised by the Council as a qualification which entitles the holder thereof to registration as a dental technician in terms of section 18 of the Act and to practise the profession as a dental technician.

(3) A dental technician must be entitled to practice his or her profession in the capacity of an employee only, and may not supervise a dental laboratory.

(4) For the purpose of this regulation, the qualification for registration and to practise the profession as a dental technician includes the Diploma: Dental Technology (240 credits), the Diploma: Dental Technology (360 credits), the Advanced Diploma: Dental Technology, the National Diploma: Dental Technology or qualifications previously issued or recognised by council for this purpose.

**Qualification to practice profession as dental technologist**

14. (1) An approved institution must award the appropriate qualification as approved by council to a student dental technologist if the student has passed the examinations prescribed for that qualification and otherwise complied with the requirements determined by the senate of that institution for that qualification.

(2) The appropriate qualification as approved by council and awarded by an approved institution must be recognised by the council as the qualification which entitles the holder thereof to registration as a dental technologist in terms of section 18 of the Act and to practise the profession as a dental technologist.

(3) A dental technologist must be entitled to practice his or her profession in the capacity of an employee or an employer.

(4) For the purposes of this regulation, the qualification for registration and to practise the profession as a dental technologist includes the Professional Degree: Dental Technology, the Post Graduate Diploma: Dental Technology, BTech: Dental Technology, the National Higher Diploma: Dental Technology, Diploma: Dental Technology, or any qualifications previously issued or recognised by council for this purpose.

**Moderator and examiners**

15. The council must appoint an external moderator and four external examiners, one from each of the disciplines of Complete Dentures, Removable Partial Dentures, Fixed Prosthodontics and Orthodontics, from the practicing profession of dental technology to assist with the evaluation of the final practical assessment referred to in regulation 10(1)(b).

**Education inspectors**

16. (1) In order to enable the council to determine whether the minimum requirements and standards at an approved institution are being met and whether the evaluation is effective as a means of determining the competence of the students concerned, the council may annually, at its first meeting, appoint one or more dental technicians or dental technologists as education inspectors to carry out investigations into such matters at approved institutions and to report to the council thereon.

(2) The fees and allowances payable to an education inspector for the performance of his or her functions must be the same as those payable to a member of the council.

**Investigation into education and training at approved institution**

17. (1) An education inspector, on the instruction of the council, may be present whenever the approved institution concerned conducts a final assessment in respect of academic progress made by student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be, and may investigate any matter concerned with the education of such students, and must report to the council on such examination or investigation.

(2) An investigation must not be carried out by an education inspector unless—

- (a) the council has decided that an investigation is to be carried out at that specific approved institution; or
- (b) an approved institution requests the council, in writing, to cause an investigation to be carried out, and the council approves such investigation.

(3) The examination or matter in connection with which the education inspector submits a report must be mentioned specifically in the report.

(4) The education inspector must declare in his or her report whether or not the minimum requirements and standards for education and training, as prescribed by the council, are being maintained, and whether the assessment is effective as a means of

determining the competence of student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be.

(5) The education inspector must attach to his or her report, any other evaluation reports, question papers, memoranda, work models, examples of completed tasks or any other documents or observations relevant to the report.

(6) The education inspector must submit his or her report to the registrar within one month of the completion of the investigation.

(7) The registrar must submit the report to the education committee of the council which may, if it is of the opinion that the report is lacking in any respect, may order that the education inspector submit an amended or additional report.

(8) The report must thereafter be submitted to the Rector and Vice-Chancellor of the approved institution concerned for comment, and the comments must be furnished within one month of receipt of the report to the registrar.

(9) The report and the comments, if any, of the approved institution concerned, must be submitted to the education committee of the council for its first meeting thereafter or a special meeting may be convened for this purpose.

(10) If the education committee of the council is of the opinion that the report reveals deficiencies in the education and training or in the assessment of the competence of student dental technicians or student dental technologists, as the case may be, the education committee must report to the council accordingly and the council may take such steps as it deems necessary to ensure that the deficiencies are remedied.

#### **Evaluation of final practical examination question papers, work models and examples of completed tasks**

18. For purposes of the final summative assessment of the appropriate council approved and recognised qualification, the summative practical assessment question paper, work models and examples of completed tasks must be approved by the council in accordance with the following procedure:

- (a) Unless an approved institution provides a well-motivated explanation that is acceptable to the registrar, for an extension, an approved institution must send the following items to the registrar by registered post or by courier on or before 15 August of the particular year:
- (i) a copy of the final practical summative assessment paper;
  - (ii) work models;
  - (iii) examples of completed tasks; and
  - (iv) a copy of the practical year syllabus;

- (b) the registrar must send the items referred to in paragraph (a) to the education inspector on or before 20 August of that year;
- (c) the education inspector must consider the items referred to in paragraph (a) and must advise the council in his or her report in the format required by the council whether, in his or her opinion, the minimum requirements have been met;
- (d) if the education inspector is of the opinion that the minimum requirements have not been met, the education inspector must make the necessary suggestions for changes in his or her report;
- (e) the education inspector must submit his or her report and the items referred to in paragraph (a) to the registrar on or before 3 September of that year and the registrar must submit the report and the items to the education committee of the council for consideration;
- (f) the registrar must inform the relevant department of an approved institution on or as soon after 3 September of that year, of the conclusion reached by the education committee and, where applicable, of the suggestions made by the Education Committee;
- (g) an approved institution whose summative assessment paper does not comply with the minimum requirements must submit a new or revised practical summative assessment question paper, together with work models and examples of completed tasks, to the registrar before 25 September of that year;
- (h) the registrar must re-submit the items referred to in paragraph (g) to the education inspector on or before 30 September of that year;
- (i) the education inspector must submit a new report in the format required by the council and the items referred to in paragraph (g) to the registrar before 5 October of that year, stating in the report whether, in his or her opinion, the new or revised items comply with the minimum requirements;
- (j) the registrar must submit the new report and new or revised items to the education committee of the council for consideration;
- (k) if the education committee of the council is of the opinion that the report referred to in paragraph (i) reveals that the minimum requirements are not being met or that the approved institution failed to comply with the dates referred to in paragraphs (a) and (g), the education committee must report to the council accordingly and the council may take such steps as it may deem necessary;
- (l) the onus must be on the approved institution, the council or the education inspector, as the case may be, to provide proof that documents, models and examples have been dispatched; and

- (m) no approved institution may commence with the summative practical assessment before approval is granted by the council.

#### **Evaluation of final practical examination**

**19.** (1) The education inspector must, if the council so directs, be present for such period as the council may determine, at the final summative practical assessment of any or all the dental technology specific subjects that has a compulsory practical component and which is reflective of the professional skills of the student dental technician or student dental technologist, as the case may be, and which is part of the appropriate, approved and recognised qualification conducted by an approved institution.

(2) The education inspector must declare in his or her report contemplated in regulation 16(1), report to the council whether in his or her opinion—

- (a) the summative practical assessment was an effective and valid means of evaluating the students concerned;
- (b) the summative practical assessment was completed in a manner consistent with the minimum requirements; and
- (c) the summative practical assessment tasks were of such a standard as to show that the students concerned are able to practice the profession of dental technician or dental technologist, as the case may be.

(3) For the purposes of subregulation (2), the education inspector must complete a mark sheet containing a comparison of the mark allocation for the various subsections as allocated by the approved institution's internal and external assessors, examiners and the moderator referred to in regulation 15, as well as a supplementary report in a prescribed format as required by council, as part of his or her report contemplated in regulation 16(1), whereupon the following procedure must be applicable:

- (a) the education inspector must submit his or her report to the registrar not later than 31 December of that year;
- (b) the registrar must submit the report to the education committee of the council which, if the report is lacking in any respect, may order that the education inspector submit an amended or additional report;
- (c) the report, together with the amended or additional report must, if necessary, be submitted to the Rector and Vice-Chancellor of the approved institution concerned for comment, who must respond within one month of receipt of the report; and
- (d) the report and the response contemplated in paragraph (c), if any, must be submitted to the education committee of the council for its first meeting thereafter or, if necessary, for a special meeting convened for that purpose.

(4) The moderator and examiners appointed in terms of regulation 15 must, as soon as possible after each final practical examination, submit a report to the council—

- (a) regarding the marks achieved by each student dental technician or student dental technologist concerned, as the case may be; and
- (b) on how the summative practical assessment was conducted, the standard of the completed tasks produced during such assessment and any other matter which in their opinion should be brought to the council's attention.

(5) (a) If the education committee of the council is of the opinion that the results of the summative practical assessment, taken as a whole, do not at least reflect the minimum standard or that the conditions under which the assessment was conducted were unacceptable or if the results of the approved institution reveals irregularities or inconsistencies, as reflected in the reporting referred to in subregulation (3), such education committee must report to the council accordingly and the council must take such steps against the approved institution as it may deem necessary.

(b) If the council is of the view that the examination results of the summative practical assessment, taken as a whole, do not at least reflect the minimum standard, the council may request one or more particular students to be re-examined by the approved institution as a condition for his or her registration as a dental technician or dental technologist, as the case may be.

### **Offences**

20. Any owner of a registered dental laboratory who fails to comply with regulation 12(2) must be guilty of an offence and upon conviction liable to a fine as determined by the council.

### **Repeal**

21. The regulations published under Government Notice No. R 156 of 23 February 2001, are hereby repealed.

### **Short title**

22. These regulations are called the Regulations Regarding the Registration and Training of Student Dental Technologists and come into effect on the date of publication in the *Gazette*.

## DEPARTMENT OF HOME AFFAIRS

NO. 520

25 MAY 2018

## ALTERATION OF SURNAMES IN TERMS OF SECTION 26 OF THE BIRTHS AND DEATHS REGISTRATION ACT, 1992 (ACT NO. 51 OF 1992)

The Director-General has authorized the following persons to assume the surnames printed in *italics*:

1. Emmanuel Cebolenkosi Hlongwane - 930522 5244 080 - 2187 A Zola South, KWAXUMA, 1868 - *Ndlozi*
2. Mpho Kenneth Motlhala - 931013 5709 081 - 27522 Bereng Street, MAMELODI EAST, 0122 - *Tebele*
3. Dimakatso Veronica Rahlogo - 930524 0355 085 - 1490 Mandela Village, KWAMHLANGA, 1022 - *Maimela*
4. Sandile Mfeka - 931208 6049 087 - 888 Nanda Roadmolweni Ward A, HILLCREST, 3652 - *Masango*
5. Zolani Philegarret Maseko - 930428 5547 086 - 1406 Block W, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Mahlangu*
6. Kabelo Daniel Mathews Sephuma - 930117 5201 089 - 42 Cooper Street, Cyrildene, JOHANNESBURG, 2192 - *Selota*
7. Gadabi Petrus Ralulimi - 650306 6002 087 - G 568 Sonop, REGOROGILE, 0250 - *Segone*
8. Dineo Trudie Ngakaemang - 850606 1076 087 - 5455 Haakbosdraai, Newtown, POSTMASBURG, 8420 - *Nthekang*
9. Teboho Marks Phadi - 681008 5371 082 - 3382 L Extension, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Rampa*
10. Jafta Pogiso Sebolao - 811203 5911 085 - 0854 Mogopa Section, Bethane, BRITS, 0250 - *Mothobi*
11. Magdeline Lesego Kgasi - 851217 0703 082 - 233 B Morokong Section, JERICHO, 0189 - *Morake*
12. Sandile Gabela - 990108 5575 082 - T 182, UMLAZI, 4066 - *Shezi*
13. Terrence Theko Ntebe - 820924 5995 088 - 1909 Rolihlahla Crescent, CROSSROADS, 7755 - *Modise*
14. Justice Resemate Maswanganye - 611023 5724 086 - 2921 Klipgat C, MADIBENG, 0202 - *Phora*
15. Tsumbedzo Percy Livhoga - 970612 6208 084 - Stand No 621, MADODONGA, 3354 - *Ralufhe*
16. Khayalakhe Christopher Vavani - 721122 5766 084 - 2284 Twalo Street, Sizamile, PORT NOLLOTH, 8220 - *Mvimbi*
17. Godfrey Melvin Ubisi - 880316 6141 084 - Stand No 40258, New Stand, MAJAKANENG, 0359 - *Ndlovu*
18. Nkanyiso Nxumalo - 981124 5901 088 - P O Box 380, NONGOMA, 3900 - *Mntambo*
19. Sindisiwe Ntuli - 970904 1293 082 - Bahulazi Area, TUGELA FERRY, 3010 - *Njokwe*
20. Mphumuzeni Makhunga - 610116 5681 081 - P O Box 32, TUGELA FERRY, 3010 - *Zondi*
21. Mafihle Khomotso Makutu - 940219 6041 080 - P O Box 512, ATOK, 0749 - *Matsimela*
22. Sinenhlanhla Penelope Manyisa - 890614 0424 086 - 161 Kwa Makhutha, AMANZIMTOTI, 4126 - *Sibiya*
23. Sphamandla Andile Nene - 980112 6292 087 - Mxhosa, MAPHUMULO, 4410 - *Zuma*
24. Amishkumar Patel - 730917 5258 084 - P O Box 604, CROWN MINES, 2025 - *Gandhi*
25. Ewouda Cecilia Rykaart - 520331 0034 082 - 8 Utrecht Stret, Die Heuwel, WITBANK, 1035 - *Coertze*
26. Cebo-Elihle Thobelani Nkomo - 980522 6053 083 - 7026 Ashwel Road, MAYVILLE, 4091 - *Hlongwa*
27. Nokwazi Slindile Mdletshe - 980207 0733 084 - Madwaleni Area, MTUBATUBA, 3935 - *Shezi*
28. Khwezi Dominic Tunza - 980902 5252 086 - C 332 Umgababa Road, KWAMASHU, 4360 - *Ngcobo*
29. Prince Makofane - 940520 5883 087 - 1022 Zakheni, KWAMHLANGA, 1022 - *Magotle*
30. Martin Sibusiso Khumalo - 960210 5443 083 - 3155 Cowvillage, Mzinoni, BETHAL, 2310 - *Vilakazi*

31. Bongumusa Zamokwakhe Zulu - 921018 5959 083 - No 138-3rd Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Thwala*
32. Lebogang Malwa - 930717 0179 089 - 37-10th Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Phiri*
33. Mduduzi Dennis Motheane - 901002 5296 088 - 3997 Green Village, SOWETO, 1863 - *Buthelezi*
34. Siphosethu Levy Makhubela - 980513 5605 080 - P O Box 5, MBAMBISO, 1335 - *Mkhatshwa*
35. Mandisa Magagula - 981026 1194 081 - Stand 545, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Langa*
36. Lerato Ralebitso - 980317 0973 083 - 1070 Maloka Street, Ngwathe, EDENVILLE, 9535 - *Sithole*
37. Zamani Mfeka - 980214 6033 089 - 888 Inanda Road, HILLCREST, 3652 - *Masango*
38. Nonhlanhla Tracey Zuma - 980315 0761 086 - 4198 Road 2, KWANDENGEZI, 3607 - *Bezuidenhout*
39. Qaphelani Mfanufikile Gumede - 980514 6022 085 - Shikishela Area, MTUBATUBA, 3935 - *Ntshangase*
40. Danny Makanyane Mokadi - 980424 5853 086 - Stand No 224, TSIMANYANE, 0453 - *Mathale*
41. Kamogelo Fortune Leponesa - 980111 5269 088 - 7 Mount View Village, 34 Leadwood Street, WINCHESTER HILLS, 2091 - *Segobaetso*
42. Faith Noluthando Jali - 980405 1195 085 - No 1104 Bottle Brush, CHATSWORTH, 4092 - *Mdalane*
43. Sanele Christopher Mtolo - 980306 5507 087 - Sthwama Road, Osolos, MOLWENI, 3653 - *Shange*
44. Tyler Lindin Maart - 961216 5153 084 - 14 Dipper Road, Pelican Park, CAPE TOWN, 7945 - *Stenekamp*
45. Sinazo Annelisa Andiswa Bavuma - 981102 0257 086 - 26 Long Grove Mews Station Road, MAWBURY, 7700 - *Klaas*
46. Sergio Darryl Daniels - 950908 5194 083 - 1 Drury Court, Lavender Hill, RETREAT, 7945 - *De Jongh*
47. Siyabonga Mhlongo - 970302 6055 087 - B 855 Nkandla Road, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Gcaba*
48. Thabang Clement Kwatala - 980302 5788 082 - P O Box 8883, RADITSHABA, 0718 - *Madima*
49. Brutus Kwena Manamela - 970111 5616 082 - 15084 Extension 76, POLOKWANE, 0699 - *Howard*
50. Given Nozipho Simphiwe Dimba - 971124 0586 084 - H 939 Mndoni Road, KWAMASHU, 4368 - *Luthuli*
51. Simphiwe Godfrey Nongwanya - 970717 5803 080 - 18496 Irag, SASOLBURG, 1947 - *Wagaba*
52. Mkhululi Whitney Cabela - 970325 5755 084 - 646,12646 Lindelani, NTUZUMA, 4359 - *Ngcobo*
53. Mlungisi Petros Mthethwa - 990730 6060 085 - Ozweleni Reserve, ULUNDI, 3838 - *Buthelezi*
54. Kabelo Mothibedi - 940110 5859 087 - E1828 Masosobane Section, PHOKENG, 0335 - *Motsepe*
55. Nicholus Mlungisi Mazibuko - 880605 6064 084 - Block 19, Unit 168, Uthingo Park, WITBANK, 1034 - *Mula*
56. Lunga Nat Zungu - 850125 5381 088 - 1616 Emacobeni, Ward 44, INANDA, 4066 - *Khoza*
57. Helena Fatima Ndlovu - 890707 0568 082 - 27 Chiphawen, PHOENIX, 4068 - *Zitha*
58. Xolani Bongani Nkosi - 840610 6597 082 - Ndatshana Area, NQUTHU, 3135 - *Ziqubu*
59. Mpho Letoane - 830824 5858 088 - Red Ivory, Extension 1, PROTEA GLEN, 1839 - *Mpunzi*
60. Thabang Michael Mashinini - 880808 6321 088 - 1037 Tshepiso, Phase 01, SHARPVILLE, 1928 - *Mazibuko*
61. Lungile Tsalong - 950721 0369 083 - No 21491 Tshelimnyama Road, PINETOWN, 3600 - *Simamane*
62. Thobeka Thulile Mzinyane - 951008 0912 081 - Ophondweni Area, MTUBATUBA, 3938 - *Gumede*
63. Thabiso Shabane - 950102 5766 088 - U50 Umlazi, ISIPINGO RAIL, 4031 - *Phakathi*
64. Lucky Hlungwane - 950417 6160 085 - 543 Lekateng Section, MMANTSERRE, 0370 - *Khoza*

65. Mthokozisi Doctor Hlengwa - 950917 6016 088 - Kwamashu C1984, 125 Amanzimtoti Road, KWAMASHU, 4019 - *Buthelezi*
66. Mfanafuthi Wiseman Phetla - 810525 5888 082 - 20963 Ntubane Street, VOSLOORUS, 1475 - *Zwane*
67. Xolani Emmanuel Malinga - 990919 5193 084 - Xumbe Area, CARTORIDGE, 3600 - *Dladla*
68. Mfihlakalo Christopher Sthembele Shoji - 990826 5770 086 - Mpumazi Res, ESHOWE, 3815 - *Xulu*
69. Peter Mahlako Makofane - 710401 6018 080 - 859 Hospital View, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Malebana*
70. Brandon Labuschagné - 970114 5227 082 - 61 Strathmore Road, CAMPSBAY, 8005 - *Hackwill*
71. Xolani Mboyisa - 930914 6152 083 - Kwa Hlophekhulu Location, ULUNDI, 3838 - *Majola*
72. Temoso Malatji - 990829 0181 085 - 208 Extension B, Majeje, PHALABORWA, 1390 - *Nukeri*
73. Mantage Phillistus Monakedi - 620128 0652 080 - Stand 931, SIYABUSWA, 0472 - *Mokgabudi*
74. Katlego Thulani Serepong - 900221 5230 084 - 781 Anker Street, SILVERTON, 0184 - *Ndhlazi*
75. Florah Monika Mahlangu - 841119 0225 087 - Stand No 779, Tokologo, MHLUZI, 1055 - *Sindane*
76. Natefo Masedi Victoria Mogotsi - 970627 0509 089 - 163 Extension 1, PAARDEKRAAL, 0300 - *Ledingwane*
77. Mbali Rangula - 970507 1024 082 - 4020 Zibjuzuzwe Street, IRABGE FARN, 1841 - *Mbovane*
78. Ntuthuko Masango - 970216 5981 087 - Nsuzwe Area, TONGAAT, 3242 - *Mzobe*
79. Kwanele Khulekani Mhlongo - 971029 5985 084 - Swayimana Location, WARTBURG, 3233 - *Sikhakhane*
80. Tumelo William Marate - 970422 5600 087 - 20133 Vergenoeg Village, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Thabong*
81. Stanley Mpanza - 971221 5165 086 - A229 Jacaranda Avenue, MOUNTAINVIEW, 4000 - *Zondi*
82. Gift Zipho Siphwi Dimba - 971124 5636 082 - H 939 Mndoni Road, KWAMASHU, 4360 - *Luthuli*
83. Sphakamiso Charles Mkhize - 950810 6300 083 - 3605 Kwamakhutha, AMANZIMTOTI, 4126 - *Tenza*
84. Siphokuhle Kandekana - 990914 1228 083 - Quluqu Area, NGCOBO, 5050 - *Deku*
85. Zenzele Chonco - 961223 6476 084 - Nyamvubu Area, GREYTOWN, 3250 - *Nene*
86. Thabang Justice Sidiya - 951018 6076 088 - 5626 Seiso Street, Phahameng Location, BLOEMFONTEIN, 9781 - *Rapuleng*
87. Nicholus Koekemoer - 950426 5811 085 - Stand No 105, Gutshwa, KABOKWENI, 1245 - *Thabethe*
88. Sakhile Khuzwayo - 950109 6030 083 - 57 Ezimangweni Area, Emnala Road, INANDA, 4309 - *Khoza*
89. Lesley Thoka - 951111 6238 087 - P O Box 1407, SESHEGO, 0742 - *Moloto*
90. Queeneth Nolwazi Mabena-Makhabela - 740621 0461 085 - 5410 Jackson Mthembu, EMALAHLENI, 1039 - *Mabena*
91. Thulani Nicholus Ngwenya - 840702 5788 083 - Stand No 2888, Sbeth Section, PIET RETIEF, 2380 - *Nkosi*
92. Mokgadi Patrick Phasha - 801223 5550 081 - Ga Mmela, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Malerotho*
93. Bongani Patrick Phetla - 870207 5949 084 - 456 Rabotapi Street, Moshoeshoe Section, KATLEHONG, 1432 - *Zwane*
94. Akhona Ngxanga - 890225 6068 080 - 15481 Kwezi Street, STRAND, 7140 - *Vonco*
95. Samuel Mandla Mtshwene - 850703 5477 088 - Stand 1768, VERENA D, 0458 - *Mthombeni*
96. Modibe Lazarus Maponya - 810606 5852 086 - 627 Nsama Street, Southern Gate Way, Extension 5, POLOKWANE, 0700 - *Lamola*
97. Balindile Cele - 881017 0415 081 - P O Box 64256, CHOBOKI CENTER, 4110 - *Shinga*
98. Smangele Primrose Mngunikazi - 860711 0385 089 - 322 Westrich Road, NEWLANDS WEST, 4037 - *Mkhize*

99. Tumelo Faith Tshalatsi - 870715 5588 082 - House No E3026, Lenatong Section, PHOKENG, 0335 - *Sejake*
100. Peter Mohale Lebetho - 820513 5642 087 - 2881 Nkitsing Street, Ratanda Location, HEIDELBURG, 2403 - *Mosimanegape*
101. Senamile Luyanda Mthembu - 860214 1522 081 - 1149 Khabazela Road, AVOCA HILL, 4051 - *Nxumalo*
102. Siphon Hezekiel Uamba - 891118 5917 085 - Stand 1280, STEENBOK, 1347 - *Ngomane*
103. Ontiretse Mongalenyane - 970102 6143 085 - 5 Mark Street, Paballelo, UPINGTON, 8801 - *Seitshagetso*
104. Vusi Mogane - 830412 5690 089 - Stand no 361, Simile Location, SABIE, 1260 - *Malatji*
105. Lindiwe Maggie Lephoto - 790817 0560 087 - 3866 RDP, STANDERTON, 2430 - *Lephoto*
106. Mboniseni Nzimande - 821219 5730 083 - CC 6177, Cato Crescent, MAYVILLE, 4020 - *Thusi*
107. Nonazo Cleopatra Kepe - 650910 0644 081 - 633 Short Street, CLEWER, 1036 - *Siyona*
108. Jabulani Mpho Khumalo - 841208 5753 084 - 6215 Ivory Park, MIDRAND, 1600 - *Phuti*
109. Tukisi Johannes Mangwale - 800117 5637 081 - MosesSection, Tshamahansi, MOKOPANE, 0600 - *Ramotshela*
110. Moses Kgaugeto Maredi - 870422 5451 086 - 8203 Zone 8, Winnie Mandela Park, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Komana*
111. Phillip Makwane Mahloko - 720220 5850 089 - Stand no 513, Botloputunya, TAFELKOP, 0474 - *Tolo*
112. Vinolia Shiwe Thebe - 850907 0394 087 - 7 – 9 New Main Road, KIMBERLEY, 8300 - *Makehle*
113. Zakhona Prudence Mthembu - 890709 0612 084 - No 5 / 134, UMLAZI, 4031 - *Mqadi*
114. Mahlatse Masha - 870704 6321 081 - Stand no 33, Medala Stands, SEHLAKHANE, 1047 - *Ratau*
115. Thembinkosi Lawrence Tshabalala - 841003 5309 080 - 10964 Extension 6 A, ORANGE FARM, 1805 - *Mzotsha*
116. Alexia Mpanza - 920105 0267 082 - 175 Bouquet Street, ROSETTENVILLE, 2190 - *Macie*
117. Victor Nkwana Mashigwana - 761202 5424 081 - Stand no 71, Ramogwerane, GROBLERSDAL, 0470 - *Mashegoana*
118. Nozuko Zoko - 830205 1045 088 - Cartu Area, DUTYWA, 5001 - *Mteto*
119. Thabiso Dan Makhapetja - 870530 5704 088 - Metipane Village, MODJADJISKLOOF, 0835 - *Sedulawesi*
120. Stephinah Daphney Baloyi - 860602 1166 083 - Marirone Village, BOLOBEDU, 0837 - *Selowa*
121. Madimetja Frans Lebipi - 740606 7058 083 - Mehlareng Village, GOMPIES, 0631 - *Masela*
122. Thembinkosi Richard Shabangu - 870802 5657 081 - Stand no 554, KABOKWENI, 1245 - *Ngwenyama*
123. Bantubathi Sotiya - 740116 5768 089 - Bengu Area, LADY FRERE, 5410 - *Menziwa*
124. Makete Nurse Matsekoleng - 780906 0494 082 - Stand no 705, Mohlalaothane, GA-RAKGWADI, 0400 - *Matlala*
125. Xolani Siboniso Mncube - 730125 5597 085 - Mvutshini Reserve, GINGINDLOVU, 3800 - *Mpanza*
126. Howard Karabo Moses Mkandaweri - 790506 5556 089 - 8 Moloantoa Street, ATTERIDGEVILLE, 0008 - *Monama*
127. Sophie Shongwe - 770519 0203 080 - 10229 No, Rethabile, MAMELODI EAST, 0122 - *Mlombo*
128. Roselinah Hleziphi Malembe - 640328 0266 081 - 33 Vosman, Kwa-Guqa, WITBANK, 1035 - *Mabena*
129. Immanuel Bhekithemba Magubane - 710211 5468 081 - E 677 Mzilikazi Road, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Nhleko*
130. Maggie Kutu - 721021 0439 087 - P O Box 2052, POLOKWANE, 0700 - *Makgabo*
131. Khonzeni Protasia Ndovela - 791103 0445 085 - Cguma Location, MARGATE, 4275 - *Nxumalo*
132. Tumelo Motsumi - 821005 6188 086 - 48 Bethlehem, RUSTENBURG, 0300 - *Masega*

133. Philemon Babili Hlophe - 830325 5751 083 - 5758 Lefero Street, Ackerville, EMALAHLENI, 1039 - *Dhlamini*
134. Jonas Sekwati Mtshелеle - 851026 5811 083 - 954 Cerasin Avenue, LOTUS GARDENS, 0183 - *Makhale*
135. Philiswa Sobanti - 820808 1084 080 - 25 Saxon Village, Norkem Park, KEMPTON PARK, 1620 - *George*
136. Moeketsi Elijah Ramathesele - 880904 5306 087 - 6181 Ramokhoase Street, SHARPEVILLE, 1600 - *Machitje*
137. Eugene Billy Mitchel Mashego - 881229 5365 084 - P O Box 45, PILGRAMS, 1290 - *Mitchell*
138. Lesego Edwin Mmela - 000113 5715 082 - 2343 Kanana, Extension 1, HAMMANSKRAAL, 0400 - *Mothiba*
139. Phillip Selepe Ledwaba - 890313 5571 088 - Stand no 10004, MASHASHANE, 0743 - *Ngobeni*
140. Tabudi Lucas Seanego - 770112 5752 085 - 8959 Extension 24, Mhluzi, MIDDELBURG, 1050 - *Mokoatedi*
141. Matome Solomon Moohu - 840215 5949 084 - P O Box 11, GA-MOTHIBA, 0726 - *Nhlongo*
142. Nothile Constance Nkosi - 930925 0918 089 - 7236 Kwalo Street, DAVEYTON, 1520 - *Hlabisa*
143. Bhekuyise Simphiwe Ntombela - 860329 5558 087 - 1605 Wembezi, Emahashini, ESTCOURT, 3310 - *Dlamini*
144. Agrineth Mavis Mathabela - 990523 0627 086 - 5962 Extension 1, Moleleki, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Makwakwa*
145. Tshepo Ernest Moremedi - 780113 5487 084 - 19191 Section K, MAMELODI WEST, 0182 - *Mokgatle*
146. Thabang Kgotso Righobert Mofokeng - 000216 5383 080 - M 485 Mandela Section, SAKHILE, 2430 - *Nyathi*
147. Xolani Mtshali - 000117 5471 083 - 1330 Dongzazela Street, Twatwa West, DAVEYTON, 1520 - *Zitha*
148. Michael John Packer - 000213 5072 086 - 58 Hospital Road, BRAKPAN, 1541 - *Du Plessis*
149. Lwazi Nkosinathi Masina - 930425 5971 084 - Stand no 3369, Extension 10, BARBERTON, 1300 - *Sithole*
150. Phenyio Samuel Kgosieng - 890721 5670 082 - House no C100, Glenred, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Mosinkiemang*
151. Nhlanhla Melokwakhe Mkhize - 840927 5716 087 - E 223 Mnyayiza Road, Kwa Mashu, DURBAN, 4001 - *Mthethwa*
152. Lawrence S'bonelo Nzuzo - 890917 5607 088 - P O Box 3220, THOKOZANI, 3201 - *Buthlezi*
153. Olebile Macdonald Kgomojoo - 850803 5398 084 - House no D34, Ncwelengwe, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Mannere*
154. Rofniwa Phasha - 870629 6222 080 - Tshikuwi, DZANANI, 6955 - *Nebulu*
155. Thamsanqa Sithokwakhe Mthembu - 831102 6041 080 - J 375 Phahla Road, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Ngidi*
156. Sello Gift Mosadi - 811119 5759 086 - 452 A Phiri, Seshoeshoe Street, MOROKA, 1818 - *Bahetanye*
157. Lindelwa Pekana - 840227 0727 084 - Stand no 40, SIYABUSWA, 0472 - *Maila*
158. Kwadi Richard Tlhabakwe - 730129 5747 088 - 755 Witby Street, SUIDERBERG, 0082 - *Rammego*
159. Xolani Mthimunya - 000321 6009 088 - House no 217, Komati Power Station, WITBANK, 1035 - *Maseko*
160. Xolani Thusi - 870623 5647 082 - 31 Triumph Road, KENVILLE, 4051 - *Hlophe*
161. Diketso Junior Ngobe - 850914 6141 082 - 53 – 10th Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Mashele*
162. Bongani Ludwick Mgiba - 840823 5446 082 - 702 / 55 Aksum Crescent, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Lusenga*
163. Joyce Busi Malobola - 860323 0910 088 - Moshising, LYDENBURG, 1120 - *Masilela*
164. Norman Elphas Motau - 840127 5476 085 - P O Box 9240, BURGERSFORT, 1150 - *Mashoeu*
165. Mfanufikile Treasure Ntshangase - 861114 5653 081 - B 1483 Mpangele Road, KWAMASHU, 4360 - *Mthethwa*
166. Thando Gola - 811019 5520 084 - 43473 Phase 3, Scenery Park, EAST LONDON, 5200 - *Mzuzu*

167. Nokuthula Tholi Mlambo - 930412 1307 083 - P O Box 110, JOZINI, 3969 - *Gumbi*
168. Banele Sandile Mphale - 971230 6300 089 - 21097 Extension 30, Gauteng Street, DAVEYTON, 1519 - *Maseko*
169. Pertunia Mmatlou Tsholo - 950601 0611 082 - Stand no 3, MMOTONG, 0751 - *Ngubane*
170. Malose Charles Maduwe - 860601 6219 087 - 12 / 2475 Esselen Park, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Baloyi*
171. Lebogang Lukhele - 780621 5752 083 - 14 Leeuwen Street, GLEN VISTA, 2001 - *Setuke*
172. Serame Lukhele - 820630 5739 083 - 14 Leeuwen Street, GLEN VISTA, 1700 - *Setuke*
173. Tebogo Tlou Medingwane - 871004 5386 089 - 31 Indiana, Four Oceans Street, SALDANNA, 7395 - *Photo*
174. Slindile Sandiswa Xaba - 981120 5128 086 - J 2025, Bhejane Road, ESIKHAWINI, 3887 - *Dladla*
175. Sinenhlanhla Makhosazana Zungu - 980411 1269 086 - P O Box 603, UBOMBO, 3970 - *Phiri*
176. Rafanani Ndou - 951009 5634 084 - Mapuloni, TSHIXWADZA, 0975 - *Siaga*
177. Uviwe Tokota - 970418 5460 084 - 41 Nu 18, MDANTSANE, 5219 - *Mbeki*
178. Pride Thandeka Kweyama - 980810 0182 085 - B 1506, Folweni Township, ISIPINGO RAIL, 4110 - *Kati*
179. Mandilakhe Johnson Maranjana - 920720 5280 086 - Mandileni Area, MT FRERE, 5080 - *Mvambi*
180. Anele Gabelane - 910204 5297 087 - 40561 Soto Location, MOOIPLAAS, 5288 - *Nqunjana*
181. Dibone Clifford Motshepe - 851105 6320 086 - 791 Katlehong Gardens, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Mazibuko*
182. Elliot Bongani Mzizi - 771108 5624 083 - 70092 Zone 24, Extension 19, SEBOKENG, 1983 - *Maseko*
183. Albert Seko Manana - 780702 5916 082 - 11309 Ngezu Street, PALMRIDGE, 1458 - *Maseko*
184. Muziwakhe Ntombela - 891016 6148 082 - 6279 Extension 2, ORANGE FARM, 1841 - *Mlotshwa*
185. Benton Njabulo Magudulela - 850617 5851 086 - 25 Palm Glades, Sonnieveld, BRAKPAN, 1541 - *Mnyakeni*
186. Steven Paledi Raliphaswa - 861230 5265 088 - 3187 Njongwe Street, ORLANDO EAST, 1806 - *Nkonyeni*
187. Lawrence Mabuya - 830917 5731 089 - 448 Forest Hill, Moroke, DRIEKOP, 1129 - *Sekhukhune*
188. Sunnyboy Masimula - 900312 5537 089 - 36121 Milenyane Tsele Street, MAMELODI EAST, 0122 - *Mtshweni*
189. N Sabelo Isak Sithole - 950104 5351 085 - No 1826, BOEKENHOUTHOEK, 0458 - *Mthimunye*
190. Mathapelo Felicia Mokoena - 950724 0385 083 - 727 Metsimaholo, ORANJEVILLE, 1995 - *Khumalo*
191. Sabelo David Chirwa - 911025 5501 080 - 336 Thwala Street, Kwaguqa, EMALAHLENI, 1039 - *Khumalo*
192. Ikageng Ramolamo Makgoga - 920729 5583 084 - 13 – 19th Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Tshehla*
193. Nokukhanya Nomzamo Cebekhulu - 960908 1168 089 - Dabhazi Area, NONGOMA, 3980 - *Mazibuko*
194. Zethembe Sphamandla Xulu - 901110 5731 085 - 6194 Cato Crest, MAYVILLE, 4091 - *Dlamini*
195. Tshwale Archimedes Malindi - 870308 5911 080 - 261 / 3 Heath Road, Small Farms, EVATON, 1982 - *Ratiba*
196. Lufuno Nelwamondo - 000111 6001 080 - Ha-Matsa, NZHELELE, 0993 - *Sikhathi*
197. Zamantungwa Nyawose - 000105 0733 086 - Gugwini Ward 14, HARDING, 4680 - *Dlamini*
198. Dolly Mamonkgane Modisha - 000120 0451 084 - 373 Sephaku Village, NEBO, 1059 - *Lerobane*
199. Qhawe Fortune Bongisipho Ngcobo - 780826 5429 083 - C 617 Bhambayi, INANDA, 4309 - *Zulu*
200. Sbusiso Blessing Nkwanyana - 780316 6061 085 - K 1691 Xulamasele Road, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Ndlovu*

201. Zimkhitha Madyini - 930621 1158 086 - Nqadu Area, WILLOWVALE, 5040 - *Kwenene*
202. Craig Stapelton Casey-Hughes - 810401 5034 087 - 36 Le Rosa, Blaauwklippen Close, KRAAIFONTEIN, 7570 - *Hughes*
203. Monde Patrick Makalima - 560131 5779 082 - Khwebulana Area, TSOMO, 5400 - *Jini*
204. Zodwa Christinah Buthelezi - 710821 0422 089 - Smozomeni Area, RICHMOND, 3780 - *Mthembu*
205. Pinkie Winnie Mlambo - 890430 0094 088 - 2409 Dark City, POORTJIE, 1805 - *Xolo*
206. Sandile Cosmos Zondi - 830208 5335 083 - 8 Sorgenfrei Road, WARTBURG, 3233 - *Mkhize*
207. Mamphago Melida Malatji - 740311 1072 087 - Private Bag X4007, TZANEEN, 0850 - *Sekgololo*
208. Rofhiwa Netshifhefhe - 860805 5868 089 - Vondwe, THOHOYANDOU, 0950 - *Mandada*
209. Sibongile Sellinah Hlatshwayo - 870101 2669 086 - 13406 Extension 8, Mshado Street, Palmridge, GERMISTON, 2430 - *Nhlapo*
210. Thandekile Sidwell Jokazi - 760829 5502 085 - Swxako Area, TSOLO, 5170 - *Banjwa*
211. Puleng Mello - 991118 6209 085 - P O Box 80255, MPHAALELE, 0236 - *Matsimela*
212. Nhlanhla Ngubeni - 000325 5190 088 - 3410 Braamfischer, Phase 1, DOBSONVILLE, 1863 - *Ngcobo*
213. Happy Mphako Maepa - 000101 2732 085 - Ga-Moretsele, JANE FURSE, 1035 - *Magakoe*
214. Simphiwe Mdakane - 991214 0532 083 - Ngodini Area, ESTCOURT, 3310 - *Hadebe*
215. Wandile Zwane - 991015 5263 081 - Fordeville, ESTCOURT, 3310 - *Sithomo*
216. Solomon Madala Mathebula - 661020 5345 085 - 15 Newforest Trust, THULAMAHASHE, 1365 - *Mnisi*
217. Sithembele Qwela - 770409 5568 085 - Tambo Village, No 14, WYNBERG, 7824 - *Mqikela*
218. Ramokone Lina Monama - 450708 0418 080 - Stand no 130, Prospect, GA-MATLALA, 0748 - *Ngwasheng*
219. Sifundo Derrick Ndaba - 940614 6330 089 - Tatane Area, LOSKOP, 3330 - *Ngxongo*
220. Johannes Joegoe - 630606 5256 088 - 3528 Gousblom Street, CALVINIA, 8190 - *Hugo*
221. Lucky Jackie Motubatse - 920724 5393 089 - 3034 Sasol Section D, MABOLOKA, 0197 - *Molema*
222. Bulelani Nyalambisa - 970506 5798 089 - Zingqayi Area, BUTTERWORTH, 4960 - *Cabela*
223. Simamkele Mnakaniso - 981231 5429 083 - Slovo Park, UMTATA, 5100 - *Mavundla*
224. Genalemang Gladys Montshoei - 660505 0842 087 - 8831 K 9, KUTLOANONG, 9483 - *Moncho*
225. Seja Sarah Malapile - 410403 0365 080 - Ga-Maetetja, LEPHALALE, 0555 - *Koko*
226. Tebatso Wiston Chichongue - 990527 5817 089 - P O Box 1610, CHUENESPOORT, 0745 - *Mashabane*
227. Adolphus Matoyi - 600216 5379 082 - Mfezane Road, WILLOWVALE, 5040 - *Mboxela*
228. Hleziphi Winnie Zondi - 691002 0932 087 - D 48 Ngwazeni Road, KWANGCOLOSI, 3650 - *Shelembe*
229. Jacques Ledikwanyana - 790423 5700 081 - 3989 Phase 12, BRAAMFISCHER, 0300 - *Letshwiti*
230. Babazile Elizabeth Ngubane - 770827 0880 082 - P O Box 13, KWANGWANASE, 3973 - *Mkhwanazi*
231. Zakhele Ngobese - 921125 6279 088 - 262724 Magaba Road, HAMMARSDALE, 3700 - *Blose*
232. Busy Shorn Nikelo - 941109 6031 083 - 3183 Thambo 12, STINKWATER, 2745 - *Makondo*
233. Lavious Moloko Sethake - 791216 5588 087 - 15 Natuur Avenue, NATURENA, 2075 - *Nailana*
234. Lukanyo Sompá - 960904 5877 080 - Dumsi Area, NTABANKULU, 5130 - *Mlahlwa*

235. Nkosinamandla Wonderboy Biyela - 961016 5647 089 - Mahlayizeni Area, NKANDLA, 3805 - *Sithole*
236. Bongani Mbanjwa - 841026 5729 080 - Fairview Location, IXOPO, 3276 - *Bomvana*
237. Refilwe Alfred Manyike - 821112 5748 082 - 12082 Juventus Street, Mohlakeng, RANDFONTEIN, 1760 - *Sefularo*
238. Sello Patrick Semono - 820224 5880 087 - 1808 Bismuth Street, Extension 26, CLAYVILLE, 1666 - *Moraka*
239. Toki Hendrick Maletle - 811103 5392 080 - 7 Hoep-Hoep Street, Spa-Park, BELA-BELA, 0480 - *Aschendorf*
240. Dineo Gladys Rasilo - 970528 1218 086 - MOTsekana Location, MALUTI, 4740 - *Temeki*
241. Nyameko Mzamo - 970517 5993 083 - 10 Coziar Road, MONTCLAIR, 4440 - *Matshoba*
242. Mliko Jacob Xaba - 621214 5414 087 - NO 581, Section 1, MADADENI, 2951 - *Ntombela*
243. Elliot Thembinkosi Sinyangana - 640217 5672 080 - 6 Appolo Way, Khwezi Park, KHAYELITSHA, 7784 - *Lingani*
244. Patrick Moleko Phukuile - 780427 5807 087 - 96 Tsenelong Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Papo*
245. Mbuyisile Waza - 790910 6153 088 - RR 1310 Site B, KHAYELITSHA, 7525 - *Sikade*
246. Brightman Lungisa Mbatha - 850224 5590 085 - 1 Bachelor Flat, Salmon Street, Westville Prison, DURBAN, 4001 - *Jalubane*
247. Mbulaheni Wilson Khanyile - 391113 5157 084 - Stand no 23, Tshiphehle, MAKHADO, 0920 - *Khangale*
248. Joseph Lebogang Skosana - 970721 5712 085 - 6149 Extension 3, MHLUZI, 1053 - *Kwapeng*
249. Frans Musa Mahlangu - 970812 5724 087 - Stand no 2044, BOEKENHOUTHOEK, 0458 - *Sibiya*
250. Siyanda Thobelani Mkhize - 971104 5696 088 - P O Box 110, NQUTU, 3885 - *Ntuli*
251. Mashudu Patrick Mudau - 970415 6243 089 - House no 1639, Extension 4, MUSINA, 0900 - *Mbedzi*
252. Lena Philani Makhubela - 950824 0079 080 - 1843 Mashemong, TEMBA, 0407 - *Radebe*
253. Siphokuhle Celimpilo Khanyile - 980519 6323 086 - Kilmon Location, UNDERBERG, 3257 - *Sabela*
254. Lucius Tsimollo Khoza - 000329 5747 087 - 1505 / 32 No, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Bovu*
255. Mzikayise Vuyani - 760602 6170 081 - Goqwana Area, LUSIKISIKI, 4800 - *Hlikani*
256. Thobela Qegu - 841224 5811 087 - 4469 Melkbos Street, Loungville, ST HELENA BAY, 7390 - *Titima*
257. Clive Zwelakhe Bushula - 870817 5440 080 - 1367 Kati Street, QUEENSTOWN, 5320 - *Papiyana*
258. Zolile Morris Booï - 860123 5824 080 - Nomlacu Area, BIZANA, 4800 - *Mnqayi*
259. Phakamani Trueman Xulu - 890601 6236 085 - 39 Loft Terrance, EMPANGENI, 3950 - *Ndlovu*
260. Njabulo Vincent Ngubeni - 861113 5471 080 - Baviaanspoort Maximum Correctional Gate, MAMELODI, 0100 - *Dlalisa*
261. Steven Mpilo Ndaba - 830717 5910 083 - P O Box 102417, MEERENSEE, 3910 - *Fakazi*
262. Sello Jacob Matlala - 560302 5870 086 - 21642 Extension 3, MAMELODI EAST, 0122 - *Mahloma*
263. Andile Mbatha - 930414 1236 080 - 4339 Phindangene Road, KWAMASHU, 4360 - *Mhlongo*
264. Lwando Makhandela - 980628 6216 081 - Mbasngweni Area, NTABANKULU, 5130 - *Ndoyisile*
265. Anthony Da Camara - 950713 5137 086 - 24 Kruger Street, St Gcouldey, SPRINGS, 1559 - *Hayes*
266. Nkheteni Khumari - 930609 6154 085 - Stand no 5066, MAULUMA, 0926 - *Ratshihume*
267. Thabo Mbombi - 931201 5677 081 - 1033 Zone 3, Ga-Magongoa, MOKOPANE, 0600 - *Sebebana*
268. Thamsanqa Simo Mthembu - 931214 6261 086 - Mdonini Area, PONGOLA, 3170 - *Nkosi*

269. Johannes Albertus De Jager - 790522 5011 082 - 46 Juliana Street, CARLETONVILLE, 2449 - *Fensham*
270. Moramang John Makoatsane - 920828 5473 088 - 9884 Naledi Section, Kgotsong, BOTHAVILLE, 9660 - *Mohapi*
271. Baphelele Gwagcwa - 980911 0466 088 - 5PH Room 14, Blyvoor, CARLETONVILLE, 2499 - *Mangaliso*
272. Kagiso Theodore Mekgwe - 970226 5068 082 - 6984 Zone 6, GA-RANKUWA, 0208 - *Mathibedi*
273. Sixeko Yikani - 941209 6093 081 - 9338 Mathews Goniwe, TSAKANE, 1550 - *Tyhulu*
274. Joseph Sadike - 790608 5793 082 - 979 Danny Kekane Street, Central Western Jabavu, SOWETO, 1809 - *Tsekeledi*
275. Bonginkosi Joseph Sithole - 850811 5234 084 - 658 Khumalo Valley, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Moratsana*
276. Aaron Lucky Sadike - 810705 6151 082 - 979 Danny Kekane Street, Central Western Jabavu, SOWETO, 1809 - *Tsekeledi*
277. Dumisani Lawrence Maxase - 800803 5645 089 - 68 Room, Denver Mens Hostel, DENVER, 2094 - *Nkabinde*
278. Moses Reki Mndebele - 641129 5621 083 - Stand no 402, Vlakraagte NO 2, MKOBOLA, 0458 - *Skosana*
279. Matsobane Freddy Tjale - 580808 5908 086 - Ga-Molepo, POLOKWANE, 0700 - *Makgae*
280. Sicelo Ma-Awu - 740606 6976 087 - 24 – 068 Lee Street, DELFT, 7100 - *Dyasi*
281. Thabo Joseph Mashifane - 750219 5322 084 - Stand no 938, KUTUPU, 1059 - *Malatji*
282. Rithabile Mkuwana - 910120 5959 080 - 392 Eureka Park, Meloding, VIRGINIA, 4900 - *Makgele*
283. Tandile Patrick Ntshiza - 630211 5712 089 - 36963 Nu 29, MOTHERWELL, 6211 - *Dondashe*
284. Dinah Molokedi - 521224 0361 085 - 14 Flora Street, Paballelo, UPINGTON, 8800 - *Phiri*
285. Tabiso Mtyuthuli - 750316 6157 087 - Ngozi Area, NTABANKULU, 5150 - *Nogaya*
286. Malizole Madondi - 981231 5584 085 - Nqgatyana Area, ELLIOTDALE, 5070 - *Sonwabo*
287. Lopang Aubrey Motswana - 870403 6031 085 - RDP 5971, MOTHIBISTAD, 8474 - *Mooko*
288. Tsholofelo Phildofia Hartebees - 980305 0563 087 - 212 Casewell Street, Mapoteng, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Gaosenkwe*
289. Lungani Zondi - 990214 5815 088 - Ntembisweni Area, GREYTOWN, 3250 - *Sithole*
290. Sandile Dumisani Thusi - 990305 5453 084 - Sokhulu Area, MTUBATUBA, 3935 - *Mbokazi*
291. Andiswa Mdluli - 990827 6155 087 - 611 Gumede Street, Bhekuzulu, VRYHEID, 3100 - *Shabalala*
292. Andile Phumlani Cele - 990118 5593 084 - Olakeni Area, MBAZWANA, 3974 - *Shange*
293. Felicia Ndzele - 990717 1034 082 - 25689 Tyhlan Street, Asanda Village, STRAND, 7140 - *Matutu*
294. Nkosinohando Luvuno - 991226 0689 085 - Nkande Area, BLOODRIVER, 3102 - *Coka*
295. Molatlhegi Lucas Baardman - 740505 5588 085 - 17873 Extension 11, Ikageng, POTCHEFSTROOM, 2520 - *Mnanzana*
296. Chuma Gift Mboxela - 821018 5942 080 - 1222 Francois Crescent, Extension 30, Riversideview, FOURWAYS, 2186 - *Sithupha*
297. Dikgang Eric Motlhola - 620919 5975 082 - Gorataele Section, Borakalalo Village, LEHURUTSHE, 2870 - *Matlhola*
298. Goitsemodimo Isaac Tau - 860803 5894 080 - 10246 Modimola Village, MAHIKENG, 2745 - *Kehetoge*
299. Taliitha Iponeng Mudau - 570717 0957 083 - D 1090 Ikageng, MOSENTHAL, 0301 - *Mmoalefi*
300. Njabulo Joel Majola - 830818 5965 083 - Lurholweni Location, BIZANA, 4800 - *Hoyiya*
301. Bibion Errol Shusha - 771015 5620 088 - Kwandzumkhwe Location, MARGATE, 4800 - *Jaca*
302. Bote Koos Nkasha - 660825 5419 081 - 2351 Extension 4, Letsopa Location, OTTOSDAL, 2610 - *Maitshotlo*

303. Sinesipho Mtwecu - 991008 0163 083 - M 16666 Section 7, KTC, NYANGA, 7750 - *Xotongo*
304. Sipiwe Proffesor Nzimande - 950623 6311 087 - Ntando Road, PINETOWN, 3600 - *Nene*
305. Tau Norman Biyela - 740227 5862 085 - D 43 Lindelani Township, NTUZUMA, 4351 - *Khuzwayo*
306. Thapelo Manna Legodi - 880614 5478 089 - 7 Tamarisk Street, PALMRIDGE, 1458 - *Lobi*
307. Asemahle Gift Mapolisa - 990608 5696 085 - 5185 Zone 9, THEMBALETHU, 6529 - *Tsholeka*
308. Thandiwe Geraldine Sedikane - 990905 0266 082 - 1230 Wilas Farm, GRASMERE, 1829 - *Nhlapo*
309. Harvey Ralephete Boshielo - 940506 5700 082 - 40105 Maserumule Park, NEBO, 1059 - *Mashiloane*
310. Patricia Mmaboi Mpepele - 660204 0875 087 - Stand no 1372, MMANETLHAKE, 0432 - *Maloka*
311. Tebogo Joseph Morwanyane - 791222 5407 088 - 274 Maxwell Street, Maruping Village, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Phillips*
312. Sipho Mandindi - 800624 6180 086 - 553 Mofolo South, SOWETO, 1801 - *Phangalele*
313. Jacob Nkonoane - 620323 5340 084 - 1194 Khetsi Street, KOPPIES, 9540 - *Marumo*
314. Julean Boniswa Bernicia Horn - 901126 0166 085 - 928 Alpha Street, Paballelo, UPINGTON, 8800 - *Ntaka*
315. Petrus Lebohng Ramatlama - 970206 6287 089 - 57639 J B Mafora, Block 1, BLOEMFONTEIN, 9323 - *Seutlwadi*
316. Sphamandla Ndaba - 931121 6124 083 - 487 / 61 Block 8, Snake Park, DOORNKOP, 1723 - *Zwane*
317. Alina Mamokotsela Phele - 970625 1289 081 - 9448 Kgotsong, BOTHAVILLE, 9660 - *Moeti*
318. Bulelani Madikizela - 920703 5621 087 - Mabhelani Area, Zimbane Location, MTHATHA, 5100 - *Nqabeni*
319. Wonderboy Nhlanhla Mthiyane - 951212 5335 088 - 972 Mosolodi Street, Klipspruit, SOWETO, 1717 - *Mathe*
320. Katlego Maswanganye - 980305 0791 084 - 28 Gordon Grey Street, Den Pienaarville, KRUGERSDORP, 1739 - *Pele*
321. Nkanyiso Kenny Maunde - 930712 5368 084 - 39 Greenwood Park, PARKINGTON GROOVE, 4051 - *Shoba*
322. Phiwayinkosi Nhlonipho Khumalo - 961015 5793 083 - P O Box 1806, MELMOTH, 3835 - *Biyela*
323. Nkosingiphile Sonto Sibiya - 960915 1487 088 - P O Box 209, Matshamhlophe Area, NONGOMA, 3950 - *Buthlezi*
324. Oratile Aobakwe Letloenyane - 961222 5452 088 - 4 Sanric Gardens, 767 Arcadia Street, ARCADIA, 0083 - *Obuseng*
325. Zinhle Promise Maphosa - 951223 1149 084 - P O Box 2068, Helpmekaar Farm, CAROLINA, 1185 - *Nzimande*
326. Paige Camille Edwards - 960428 0105 081 - 1 Westminster Drive, CRAIGHALL PARK, 2196 - *Westergaard*
327. Ronel Mashianoke Tau - 961201 0777 087 - Stand no 12808, Chocolate Street, MHLUZI, 1050 - *Malebhe*
328. Sibusiso Makunga - 961027 5902 085 - Block KK, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Mtshali*
329. Betty Nothando Masuku - 791105 0616 086 - Stand no 724, TWEEFONTEIN E, 1022 - *Mokwena*
330. Nomthandazo Precious Ngidi - 930902 0909 087 - H 135 Dingane Road, UMLAZI, 4031 - *Bhengu*
331. Ayanda Petros Sibeko - 930326 6260 081 - Stand no E187, Fernie B, ELUKWATINI, 1192 - *Mthembu*
332. Nokukhanya Candice Mashaba - 931009 0483 086 - E 965 Mandela Road, KWAMASHU, 4360 - *Ngobese*
333. Sipho Jan Mthimunya - 930221 5630 089 - 5435 Zuma Street, Extension 10, EMALAHLENI, 1039 - *Zunguza*
334. Ndumiso Sizwe Sithembiso Nhleko - 870719 5758 083 - P O Box 1133, MTUBATUBA, 3935 - *Vilakazi*
335. Nqobile Bengu - 940510 0939 083 - P O Box 959, HILLCREST, 3650 - *Ndlela*
336. Nonkululeko Nomvula Ndima - 931225 1851 085 - 38 Lusaka Section, Vusmusi, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Nkosi*

337. Nhlanhla Mthokozisi Shozi - 930418 5433 080 - CC 1923, Cato Crest, MAYVILLE, 4000 - *Chiliza*
338. Sihle Erick Ngcamu - 931023 5569 088 - B 332 Mzomusha, INANDA, 4309 - *Sibisi*
339. Ndumiso Busani Madlala - 930614 5398 089 - Boboyi Location, PORT SHEPSTONE, 4240 - *Nyawose*
340. Phelokazi Ndaleni - 930616 1179 082 - Ward 8, Umkhoba, HARDING, 4680 - *Manci*
341. Matshidiso Ashmalash Makuwa - 960828 1246 083 - P O Box 244, STEELPOORT, 1133 - *Mabelane*
342. Luyolo Nazo - 830505 5503 085 - 3469 Tyutyu Central, Bisho, KING WILLIAMS TOWN, 5600 - *Boniwe*
343. Zama Qalase - 680821 5731 084 - 38 Mabona Street, BISHO PARK, 5608 - *Dubula*
344. Joseph Ganyaza - 570609 5722 085 - Boklein Area, NGCOBO, 5050 - *Sizani*
345. Ntombizakhe Cynthia Baskiti - 730618 0544 086 - 2833 Tembisa, PORT ALFRED, 6170 - *Ditana*
346. Samuel Tabohane - 890820 6271 088 - 18 Molopo Street, VREDENBURG, 7380 - *Morolong*
347. Sindiswa Patience Mpanza - 960925 1000 088 - A 229 Jacaranda Avenue, Mountview, VERULAM, 4340 - *Zondi*
348. Simphiwe Enest Zwane - 960627 6033 086 - Stand no 200, MBAMBISO, 1335 - *Lukhele*
349. Sibusiso Rockard Nxumalo - 750707 5575 081 - P O Box 260, ZIMBALI, 4422 - *Mkhwanazi*
350. Thato Modiba - 980712 5135 086 - 24735 Inkunzi Street, Extension 3, DIEPKLOOF, 1864 - *Pitse*
351. Mlungisi Gerald Melusi Dubazana - 940214 5933 080 - Whard 20, DUNDEE, 3000 - *Zulu*
352. Maanda Nedohe - 970606 5683 081 - Site no 93, Block C, POLOKWANE, 0700 - *Mulelu*
353. Jordan Bekker - 980615 5129 084 - 193 Blaauberg Road, TABLE VIEW, 7441 - *Leondiris*
354. Queen Monama - 980131 0457 082 - Stand no 40, KGOBOANE, 0400 - *Maila*
355. Lenda Phindile Ndala - 930708 0921 083 - NO 30232 Zakweni, KWAMHLANGA, 1022 - *Mahlangu*
356. Kulani Lovers Hlungwani - 970731 5568 080 - Mabidi, VUWANI, 0952 - *Masuluke*
357. Lucky Lawrence Mbethe - 770613 5444 086 - Acton Homes, BERGVILLE, 3350 - *Khumalo*
358. Kutlwano Kenneth Lethaba - 940917 5912 082 - 3291 Extension 5, Riet Valley, LUSAKA, 2730 - *Seadimo*
359. Nonkululeko Nene - 940721 0298 087 - 1292 Bendile Street, Jabulani, KWA XUMA, 1868 - *Kumalo*
360. Njabulo Wonderboy Msweli - 940427 7049 081 - Mandlankala, ESIKHAWINI, 3887 - *Mthethwa*
361. Simanga Tony Sibiya - 940225 6215 087 - A 150 Sandwana Road, INANDA, 4010 - *Hlongwane*
362. Nokuphiwa Makeleni - 800420 0265 084 - 8820 Goldberg Street, Newville, QUEENSTOWN, 5320 - *Bucwa*
363. Charles Sanna Mahlangu - 821008 5401 088 - NO 2460, THEMBALETHU, 1022 - *Mgidi*
364. Thetelele Isaac Ntando - 591007 5749 080 - 277 Coolbreeze, DUDUZA, 1496 - *Maqungo*
365. Joel Malosi Mokoka - 640417 5883 089 - 14433 Ramapate Street, MAMELODI EAST, 0122 - *Ledwaba*
366. David Sello Tswai - 630430 5695 082 - 339 Leon Crescent, East Bank, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Monama*
367. Andrew Sibisi - 830430 5833 087 - 5400 Breezy Street, Extension 2, Braamfischerville, DOBSONVILLE, 1863 - *Mtshali*
368. Surprice Mompati - 820614 5668 088 - 859 A Ndlovu Road, Zone 5, MEADOWLANDS, 1852 - *Ramushu*
369. Aaron Mahlangu - 951030 5789 082 - Stand no 2044, BOEKENHOUTHOEK, 0458 - *Sibiya*
370. Richard Thapelo Seqhobane - 950525 5396 086 - 1303 Phahameng, BRANDFORT, 9400 - *Mofoti*

371. Michaela Bernelee Titus - 951231 0019 083 - 22 Laburning Street, Glenwood, DURBAN, 4001 - *Wyngaard*
372. Sibusiso Xaba - 951022 5813 087 - I Lowe Street, Ramaphosa, BOKSBURG, 1460 - *Miya*
373. Lunga Theo Mavata - 930819 5540 081 - 2906 Molambila Street, PHILLIPI, 7785 - *Ntsendwana*
374. Sharon Makitla - 940710 0690 088 - Stand no 59, Lesehleng A, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Phora*
375. Nonhlanhla Susan Shabalala - 941113 0345 085 - 252 Credi Section, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Simelane*
376. Mduduzi Victor Dlamini - 940530 5890 081 - 1 Bhele Street, 979 NO, KWA-GUQA, 1030 - *Tlou*
377. Londeka Snethemba Preinca Gumede - 940826 0776 089 - 930492 Mpolweni Mission, PIETERMARITZBURG, 3200 - *Ndlela*
378. George Komeni - 940903 5957 087 - 4589 Kgotsong, BOTHAVILLE, 9660 - *Mahlatsane*
379. Vincent Musa Chauke - 811001 5896 086 - Flat C 25, Phase 1, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Tshabalala*
380. Ncebakazi Nonze - 970830 0657 086 - 20 Velco Avenue, Linton Grace, PORT ELIZABETH, 6001 - *Ngqawana*
381. Nikiwe Sitheni Mtshali - 971210 0741 082 - Ntinini Area, NQUTU, 3135 - *Sibiya*
382. Bongane Vincent Zulu - 890822 5161 088 - 302 Mthambela Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Dlamini*
383. Mantsho Nathaniel Tjatji - 820721 5661 086 - Masemla Area, JANE FURSE, 1085 - *Leshilo*
384. Amos Johan Ndhlovu - 810527 5474 087 - Crowquet Lawn, MHALA, 1365 - *Mkhabela*
385. Jabulani Khulekani Bongumusa Sabane - 860813 5666 081 - Ophondweni, SIKHEMELELE, 3965 - *Gumede*
386. Asanda Caroline Sodaba - 990905 0752 081 - 4 Lusaka Street, WELLINGTON, 7600 - *Mfenyana*
387. Thabang Ngobene - 991129 6233 082 - No 1186, Mathysensloop, MKOBOLA, 0458 - *Motshweni*
388. Abongile Zenzile - 991118 5859 088 - 6356 Mthatha Street, Asia Park, MOSSELBAY, 6506 - *Fihlani*
389. Rethabile Makete - 990830 0350 084 - 2202 Unit 8, GA-RANKUWA, 0208 - *Moshoeshoe*
390. Lunga Khatshuka - 910905 5909 089 - Amandawe, SCOTTBURGH, 4180 - *Jackson*
391. Sandise Mkenke - 990817 5971 089 - Sitebo Area, NGCOBO, 5050 - *Ntengo*
392. Zanele Phungula - 990209 1118 081 - Matimatolo Area, GREYTOWN, 3250 - *Lembethe*
393. Zandile Dawethi - 990719 1040 085 - 76 Inanda Street, JCC Camp, MOSSELBAY, 6506 - *Mkiva*
394. Ntandoyenkosi Manners Mpopu - 990322 0653 089 - 3917 New Stands, Bhekuzulu Location, VRYHEID, 3100 - *Hlongwane*
395. Nokwanda Buthelezi - 990222 1116 088 - 18806 Rebecca Tlaripe Street, Extension 14, KAGISO, 1754 - *Msimango*
396. Collen Malemone - 900308 5290 083 - 771 Buyisani Street, Kingsway, BENONI, 1502 - *Magana*
397. Yonela Silingo - 981015 5990 081 - Ntlonyana Area, ELLIOTDALE, 5070 - *Delanto*
398. Lwazi Perfect Mkhize - 950323 6077 081 - Kwa Dlamini, ESTCOURT, 3310 - *Radebe*
399. Olebogeng Johannes Tsitsi - 910522 5489 085 - 92 A Lesung North, RUSTENBURG, 0300 - *Mokoena*
400. Thalente Sithole - 980827 0327 080 - A 20 Xolani Road, KWA MASHU, 4359 - *Gumede*
401. Bernard Tshetlho - 760412 6008 087 - 104 Banedile Street, Kagung Village, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Mogatle*
402. Timothy Tomoti Mothoka - 660831 5577 084 - 6749 Extension, BELA-BELA, 0480 - *Molebatsi*
403. Alpheus Moloko Kgobe - 840720 5600 082 - 3085 Ndende Street, Zone 2, PIMVILLE, 1809 - *Tladi*
404. Phillip Mahlakhu Mamabolo - 770911 5757 089 - 19 – 16 Avenue, Alexandra Township, JOHANNESBURG, 2090 - *Mathiba*

405. Gift Siphon Phetla - 790228 5570 081 - 14709 Extension 9, PALMRIDGE, 1401 - *Zwane*
406. Phumlani Ciliza - 000120 6266 080 - Kwanzimakwe Location, MUNSTER, 4278 - *Shange*
407. Sakhiwe Nsindiso Dlamini - 000105 5732 083 - 187073 Umzinyata Area, INANDA, 4001 - *Ncengwa*
408. Mngqobi Sipehelele Dimba - 000502 5397 083 - House no 939, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Luthuli*
409. Xolisile Londiwe Nala - 000302 0914 085 - Nkanini Reserve, ESHOWE, 3815 - *Magwaza*
410. Wanda Fakuni - 980910 6048 080 - Zingqayi Area, BUTTERWORTH, 4960 - *Mbelani*
411. Wandile Fakuni - 980910 6049 088 - Zingqayi Area, BUTTERWORTH, 4960 - *Mbelani*
412. Morongoa Maggie Matiapoto - 980728 0524 082 - 457 Esiphethweni Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Maribeng*
413. Palesa Molokomme - 970602 0498 088 - 23 – 15th Avenue, Joe Nhlanhla Street, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Sweleni*
414. Pontsho Zacharia Maja - 930529 5389 088 - P O Box 16142, GA-RAKGOATLA, 0632 - *Sebati*
415. Simphiwe Mbatha - 980613 5820 083 - 4863 Drieziek, ORANGE FARM, 1805 - *Xulu*
416. Koketso Caroline Mbhalathi - 920202 1512 085 - P O Box 70, BURGERSFORT, 1150 - *Mankge*
417. Nomvula Naledi Mngadi - 990520 0223 080 - 8928 Extension 6 B, ORANGE FARM, 1841 - *Nkwana*
418. Rotshidzwa Manyuwa - 960207 6076 086 - P O Box 659, FONDWE, 0969 - *Mudau*
419. Nthabiseng Veronica Mashai - 980422 0518 084 - Phaphadi Village, MAMAILA, 0800 - *Monareng*
420. Sifundo Khayelihle Nxumalo - 940810 5775 080 - W 487, UMLAZI, 4001 - *Ngcobo*
421. Sifiso Obediah Maphosa - 980912 5509 088 - 720 Block JJ, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Masilela*
422. Tshagofatso Peter Aphone - 960409 5623 088 - Molelane, ZEBEDIELA, 0628 - *Kekana*
423. Sphamandla Kumalo - 890529 6175 088 - 22 Mshini Road, Nazareth Island, PINETOWN, 3600 - *Jwara*
424. Zanele Valentine Ramatsebe - 711209 0388 089 - 819 Koedoeberg Road, Faerie Glen, PRETORIA, 0001 - *Ngwenya*
425. Nonhlanhla Pinky Ngcobo - 850928 0557 085 - 1127 Riverdene, NEULANDS WEST, 4020 - *Jones*
426. Isaac Lekgola Dinale - 881228 5756 086 - 382 Dilopye, HAMMANSKRAAL, 0400 - *Kungwane*
427. Siyanda Mhlongo - 880930 6050 085 - F 1660 Amanqe Area, NTUZUMA, 4359 - *Ngcobo*
428. Boikanyo Mmudi - 860503 5828 084 - 861 Maatla Street, PUDIMOE, 8581 - *Mokgadi*
429. Boitumelo Gaopalelwe Valerie January - 871112 0410 083 - 42 West park Gardens, WEST PARK, 0001 - *Kapari*
430. Silulami Nelson Hoza - 870428 5873 088 - 11061 Phase 5, BLOEMFONTEIN, 9323 - *Smith*
431. Constance Maringa - 830930 0449 086 - 32 Khensani Crescent, Extension 2, LOTUS GARDENS, 0010 - *Mokwena*
432. Lucas Vusi Nkuna - 780102 6031 082 - Skhilla, LYDENBURG, 1120 - *Lesinya*
433. Lucky Simosakhe Mlangeni - 730713 5843 086 - 1550 Union Road, KLIPTOWN, 1811 - *Mtolo*
434. Princess Ntokozi Nxumalo - 781029 0584 080 - Mvunyane, Ezidomvu, PIET RETIEF, 3105 - *Mncube*
435. Nobuhle Elizabeth Shabangu - 770822 0350 087 - Stand no 2728, KWAGGAFONTEIN, 0400 - *Mnguni*
436. Oneboy Kebiditsemang Tshameng - 720606 7564 084 - 909 Phemelo Street, Takeng Section, BATLHAROS, 8426 - *Olepeng*
437. Thabo Andrew Mhlanga - 790202 6599 084 - 6718 Extension 3, Mhlaombe, WINTERVELDT, 0198 - *Nkomo*
438. Joseph Thabo Mtsweni - 700803 5506 084 - 3598 Extension 1, MHLUZI, 1053 - *Mazibuko*

439. Dineo Nyakalebalo Mathiba - 980714 5400 080 - Strydkraal, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Masha*
440. Granny Mokoena - 890103 0457 080 - 5185 Phase 3, Tshepiso, SHARPEVILLE, 1928 - *Nyembe*
441. Simon Seikanelo - 880101 6636 089 - 1295 Kokolofute Street, Borolelo Location, SWARTRUGGENS, 2835 - *Setlhare*
442. Daniel Makgongwane Mosima - 881012 5405 088 - 3442 Lukhele Street, Extension 1, MHLUZI, 1053 - *Mashilo*
443. Themba Shadrack Jele - 850124 5943 088 - 2233 Newtown, MIDDELBURG, 1050 - *Nkambule*
444. Winston Themba Matlala - 800416 5313 085 - 42 Molema Street, Moretele View, MAMELODI WEST, 0122 - *Mahlaola*
445. Rodney Lebogang Raseala - 860714 6122 084 - 35191 Monamane Street, Extension 6, MAMELODI EAST, 0001 - *Khoza*
446. Mcoseleli Shorty - 740212 5864 083 - 10534 Ngxingxolo Location, MOOIPLAAS, 5288 - *Mjutu*
447. Precious Khumalo - 791019 0813 082 - 1291 Uthekwane Street, Extension 3, KWA GUQA, 1010 - *Maseko*
448. Lebo Edgar Ramoeto - 000122 5547 080 - Mamatlepa Village, BOLOBEDU, 0800 - *Lesoka*
449. Phumlani Sikakane - 000508 6024 089 - Gcobheni Area, ESHOWE, 3815 - *Gazu*
450. Mookgo Precious Tshabangu - 971205 0741 082 - Stand no 61, GA-MATSEA, 0720 - *Bopape*
451. Joseph Mudau - 991017 5526 087 - 834 Unit G, MANKWENG, 0727 - *Ramoraswi*
452. Shadi Rahab Phakathi - 591025 0550 089 - 241 Zone F, LEBOWAKGOMO, 0737 - *Marobolla*
453. Lindelani Nkosinathi Ndimande - 800901 5765 087 - House no 34, Omo-Orange Road, NTUZWANA, 4360 - *Mokoena*
454. Ayanda Godslove Mkhize - 890711 5722 082 - House no 730331, Umzinyathi Mission, INANDA, 4310 - *Ngidi*
455. Arnold Sandile Cofu - 690506 5715 082 - 96 Rise Gate Drive, Southgate, PHOENIX, 4068 - *Mathe*
456. Fannie Willie Malatsi - 710603 5377 082 - Bothashoek, BURGERSFORT, 1150 - *Seshwene*
457. Londeka Michelle Sehako - 000131 0619 083 - 21 Savanna Townshouses, Chris Street, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Chauke*
458. Nkosinathi Dlamini - 810627 5267 083 - 61014 Ekuphakameni, INANDA, 4310 - *Thusini*
459. Humbulani Remember Munyai - 981230 6255 083 - Tshitavha, THOHOYANDOU, 0950 - *Manenzhe*
460. Philile Mavundla - 990724 0416 088 - 480144 Esketheni Area, INANDA, 4023 - *Ndimande*
461. Mbali Valerian Ngcobo - 990617 0878 085 - 1316 Kingdom Avenue, Newlands West, DURBAN, 4001 - *Ngubane*
462. Luyanda Spilingane - 990830 5819 083 - Gqutyini Area, NGCOBO, 5050 - *Mgidi*
463. Lungelo Mahlaba - 991128 5727 086 - Machunwini, UMZIMKULU, 3297 - *Mzolo*
464. Veli Sifiso Nxumalo - 990808 6215 089 - Kombazi Area, NONGOMA, 3950 - *Mthembu*
465. Lindokuhle Sibonelo Maliwa - 990902 5171 086 - 2042 Dube Village, DURBAN, 4001 - *Mchunu*
466. Luyanda Siphwe Gcabashe - 990628 6013 080 - CC 4310 Vusi Mzimela Road, MAYVILLE, 4091 - *Mbongwa*
467. Anna Dukwana - 990625 1295 084 - Zoxambuzi Area, NGQELENI, 5140 - *Mzila*
468. Phillip Phelelani Moyo - 991116 5366 088 - Jaza Mncaka Road, KWA MASHU, 4020 - *Xhakaza*
469. Palesa Hans - 990303 0911 081 - White City, INANDA, 4310 - *Msomi*
470. Nokwanda Noxolo Nkambule - 990829 1147 085 - 873 / 63 Mqantsa Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Nsibande*
471. Kwazikwakhe Mdakane - 990920 1447 086 - Ngonyameni Area, LOSKOP, 3330 - *Mswane*
472. Kiara Angeleen Srimulu - 990421 1263 086 - 43 Riverview Road, OTTOWA, 4339 - *Govender*

473. Peter Jabulani Koza - 990208 5153 086 - 890 Tshamahansi, LYDENBURG, 1120 - *Mahlangu*
474. Katlego Shedley Phala - 990530 0309 086 - P O Box 556, BOCHUM, 0790 - *Maleka*
475. Luyanda Gumbi - 990724 0298 080 - 996 Bendile Street, Jabulani, KWA XUMA, 1868 - *Buthelezi*
476. Tebogo Mothoa - 990912 5093 081 - 2578 Andries Molaudi Street, DOBSONVILLE, 1863 - *Moitse*
477. Emmanuel Bongani Mlenzana - 990215 6430 082 - 271 B Tselapedi Section, RAMOTSE, 0400 - *Munguambe*
478. Khanyisa Mafilibana - 990310 0938 089 - B 100 Nkanini, Kayamondi, STELLENBOSCH, 7599 - *Sidlayi*
479. Lindokuhle Nkosikhona Xulu - 990113 5848 083 - 14 Overbroke Place, PHOENIX, 4065 - *Maphumulo*
480. Rangoato Nomsa Makanyane - 990909 0906 085 - P O Box 21340, ROOSENKAL, 1066 - *Tau*
481. Tharinadon Drusilla Kennedy - 991211 0313 084 - 23 Kiewiet Street, WOLSELEY, 6830 - *Louw*
482. Njabulo Gift Nhleko - 991118 5789 087 - Ncotshane A Section, PONGOLA, 3170 - *Mbedzi*
483. Mpendulo Thabo Mdleko - 990728 5419 088 - P O Box 11, Khayaletu Store, HARDING, 4680 - *Mhlongo*
484. Lungelo Gumede - 990703 6104 088 - 0480 Sago Area, KWANDENGEZI, 3607 - *Shange*
485. Nomfundo Viola Mtolo - 990515 0604 081 - L 1078 Mpiselo Road, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Ngema*
486. Sphelele Andile Mntambo - 990312 6064 084 - Sofeya Area, EMONDLO, 3105 - *Jiyane*
487. Sthokozile Cwele - 990128 0806 084 - K 1786 Dada Road, KWA MASHU, 4020 - *Ngcobo*
488. Makgotso Mahoa- 830314 0980 087 -242 Klipspringer Avenue, Leondale, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Mabuza*
489. Thandi Eugene Mahlangu- 890520 0277 087 -20563 Koti Street, Extension 11, TSAKANE, 1550 - *Mnyakeni*
490. Norwampholo Lionnet Mogashoa- 770617 5552 087 -Malatane, LEBOWAKGOMO, 0737 - *Kanyane*
491. Jean Martin Pretorius- 871031 5060 083 -282 Gans-Se- Nes Street, Featherbrook Estate, KRUGERSDORP, 1735 - *Claassens*
492. Natalie Natasha Vermaak - 820618 0101 086 -10 Ponta Do Sol, Lente Road, KLOPPERPARK, 1601 - *Ooshuizen*
493. Livuwani Baloyi- 000107 0178 080 -84-10 Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Ndou*
494. Agreement Mokoena- 890511 5533 087 -Stand 10446, Ivory Park, MIDRAND, 1632 - *Makama*
495. Matamela Thalutshedzo- 980728 0542 084 -Sheshe Village, MUTALE, 0974 - *Matamela*
496. Dominic Malesela Kganyago- 990326 5142 089 -No 446 Suid Street, POLOKWANE, 0699 - *Mamabolo*
497. Tumelo Motsamayi- 971129 5631 082 -Thornville Area, RICHMOND, 3780 - *Sikhakhane*
498. Gxarasa Zameka- 721026 0739 089 -3089 Tantaloo Road, Masiphumelele, FISH HOEK, 7975 - *Gxarisa*
499. Dzingaphi Phineas Nkosi- 990709 5471 089 -Stand No 204, MOTETI, 0472 - *Mailola*
500. Bassanio Mariri- 860203 5940 084 -3082 Unomqwashe, Extension 4, Gem Valley, MAMELODI, 0122 - *Mamushi*
501. Rhina Moshiane Nkaidimeng- 940501 0650 085 -Ga Oria, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Mmola*
502. Allen Khoza- 890207 5418 086 -4150 Greenwell's Glory, Albertsdal, ALBERTON, 1448 - *Ndlovu*
503. Ntando Mhlaba- 990428 6049 089 -P O Box 44, ESIKHAWINI, 3887 - *Ntanzi*
504. Funzani Innocentia Ramapulana- 980802 0126 089 -House No 52, Kock Street, MAKHADO, 0920 - *Mamorobela*
505. Kediemetse Leier- 000220 0525 083 -392 Mapoteng Village, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Letlhoanye*
506. Morwangwato Mzulu Mmela- 930331 6119 089 -Makhutso, MARBLE HALL, 0450 - *Sebesebe*

507. Phomelelo Girly Makwana- 970927 0568 089 -Dihlabaneng, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Kgoloko*
508. Stanley S'khumbuzo Witbooi- 820521 6021 086 – H 65 Imizamo Yethu, HOUT BAY, 7806 - *Pamla*
509. Nhlanhla Stanley Hlophe- 820209 5851 089 -5540 Mokaba Crescent, Extension 7, Etwatwa, DAVEYTON, 1520 - *Zungu*
510. Tshwarelo Marule- 960424 6134 084 -Stand No 131, Jabulani, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Mothupi*
511. Kamogelo Afrika- 980204 0177 081 -3 Joubert Street, Glenmarans, KEMPTON PARK, 1619 - *Sekhamane*
512. Maphuti Collins Malope- 881025 5298 089 -P O Box 1066, TJANE, 1122 - *Malapane*
513. Frans Tebogo Mgidi- 770421 5273 087 -243 Ramokonopi East, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Mahlatji*
514. Phumeza Tshuma – 890116 0624 087 – and a minor child - Qhayiya Tshuma – 060831 0660 089 - P O Box 116, DUTYINI, 4735 - *Mbulana*
515. Khomotjo Makofane – 910813 0748 082 – and a minor child – Believe Makofane – 110714 6403 086 - P O Box 38, DRIEKOP, 1129 - *Mampa*
516. Tlangelani Reginah Maluleke – 890730 0503 081 – and a minor child – Sibusiso Gift Maluleke – 070405 6412 080 - Private Bag X1402, LENYENYE, 0931 - *Ngobeni*
517. Thobile Twala – 940820 1349 087 – and a minor child – Sboniso Twala – 140204 6243 082 - Stand No E295, FERNIE, 2335 - *Sibanyoni*
518. Zodwa Mazozo – 920513 1319 085 – and a minor child – Lubanjalo Likwezi Mazolo - 150316 0335 081 - Mahlamvu Area, MQANDULI, 5080 - *Sichoto*
519. Kagisho Thapelo Abednego Moagi – 841211 5858 085 – and a minor child Kagiso Moagi – 130703 5302 080 - 142 Reabota Street, Mhluzi, MIDDELBURG, 1050 - *Phathakge*
520. Masonwabe David Lunda – 761222 5984 082 – your wife Cynthia Ntombethemba Lunda -790217 0655 088 – and a minor child Sinje Lunda – 060301 1049 088 - Canca Area, MOUNTFRERE, 5090 - *Mahloane*
521. Maisela Queen Lekalake – 960814 0316 085 – and a minor child – Keitumetse Elizabeth Lekalake – 171215 0976 081 - Makweng Village, GROOTHOEK, 0628 - *Mojapelo*
522. Luvuyo Kenneth Maqubela – 760909 5424 082 –and your wife – Nomatamsanqa Maqubela – 770818 0400 088 - 40563 Phase 2, Scenery Park, EAST LONDON, 5247 - *Ndlazi*
523. Thamsanqa Vincent Mafuze – 670301 5235 081 – and your wife – Chrysantha Ntombezinhle Mafuze 710815 0432 080 - 1691 C Section, UMLAZI, 4046 - *Sithole*
524. Rasesing Modise – 620613 5931 084 – your wife – Ennie Modise – 710615 0600 086 – and a minor child – Mogapi Hendrik Modise – 000830 6232 086 - 25 Nissue Street, NEW TOWN, 7645 - *Sesing*
525. Mzwaka Zenzi Gwaza – 870914 1448 082 – and a minor child – Anele Gwaza – 060201 1590 083 - P O Box 508, TUGELA FERRY, 2010 - *Mpungose*
526. Bolokang Salvation Marake – 870820 5862 089 – your wife – Kebawetse Sana Marake – 861101 0840 086 – and a minor child – Mercy Omosa Marake – 141030 0090 081 - House No 791, BATLHAROS, 8476 - *Chwenyane*
527. Christina Thokozile Mohuli – 890802 0341 083 – and four minor children –Sipheshile Mohuli – 141225 6209 087 – Thandiwe Chantel Mohuli – 070611 1064 087 – Anna Masabata Tebenno Mohuli – 050706 0695 081 – Busisiwe Mohuli – 090929 1233 080 - House No 1126, Pinetown, GRASMERE, 1828 - *Nkosi*
528. Thabo Brian Teme – 800818 5545 087 – your wife – Ngenzeni Witness 'Mkhize-Teme – 861204 0675 088 – and two children – Oretlhokometse Teme 170203 0240 089 – Onalenna Sinovuyo Keamogetswe Teme – 141129 0661 089 - 47-11th Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Makhafola*
529. Sedibo George Sebola – 600217 5409 085 – and a minor child – Given Sebola – 020213 5974 089 - P O Box 389, BOCHUM, 0790 - *Ngoepe*
530. Sihle Lucas Khanyile – 720326 5659 089 – your wife Ncedisile Khanyile – 840724 0359 082 – and two minor children - Esihle Juniour Tandolwethu Khanyile – 030818 5098 081 - Thandolwethu Unathi Khanyile – 151221 0483 080 - - A7 Nkazimulo Road, Tshelimnyama, PINETOWN, 3610 - *Cele*

531. Thekwane Obed Maroga – 770707 6279 085 – and your wife – Kgalakwena Ragel Maroga – 830529 0749 089 - - Ga Maroga, DRIEKOP, Sir - *Tshehla*
532. Bonolo Jacqueline Mosesane – 850716 0507 089 – and three minor children – Pholoso Scebi Mosesane - 140807 6594 088 – Olerato Sinethemba Mosesane – 060410 0934 081 – Phemelo Siphosihle Mosesane – 130825 5315 083 - 3376 Thokomo Street, THABANE, 0299 - *Phetoe*
533. Victor Ndlovu – 790202 6614 081 – your wife – Saifa Thato Ndlovu – 860403 1088 082 – and two minor children – Victor Molebogeng Ndlovu – 160211 5204 085 – Ashley Tshepang Ndlovu – 070828 0845 080 - Stand No 86, Ratanang, CASTEEL, 1370 - *Selekane*
534. Wellington Bongani Cele – 710729 5578 088 – your wife – Ntombikhona Mary Cele – 781122 0495 082 – and four minor children – Bayanda Cele – 050129 5467 085 – Mlondi Cele – 020728 5524 089 – Ntando Cele – 080525 6194 087 – Simphiwe Knowledge Cele – 000221 5628 088 - Bhomela Location, PORT SHEPSTONE, 4240 - *Hlongwa*
535. Molatelo Peter Manyekwane – 710808 5941 080 – your wife – Nkgomeleng Dorris Manyekwane – 750618 0349 085 – and a minor child – Bokgoni Manyekwane – 100325 0701 086 - P O Box 916, BOCHUM, 0790 - *Maela*
536. Lukholo Ngamlana – 820130 5442 085 – your wife – Zandile Ngamlana – 840405 0309 083 – and two minor children – Silindokuhle Nikiliitha Ngamlana – 040126 5669 085 – Somila Ligwiba Ngamlana 110419 5299 085 - 32-519 Kwaza Street, MAKHAZA, 7784 - *Mrwetyana*
537. Sophy Dorothy Novela – 861230 1258 087 – and a minor child – Lethabo Novela – 140417 5693 087 - 3708 Soviet 1, Lethabong Location, RUSTENBURG, 0263 - *Leeu*
538. Patricia Volstruis – 680628 0603 089 – and two minor children – Anzer Thomas Volstruis 031010 5843 083 – Lance Paul Volstruis – 080605 5283 089 - 6 Broeksma Place, Buffalo Flats, EAST LONDON, 5209 - *Stemmer*

## DEPARTMENT OF HOME AFFAIRS

NO. 521

25 MAY 2018

## ALTERATION OF FORENAMES IN TERMS OF SECTION 24 OF THE BIRTHS AND DEATHS REGISTRATION ACT, 1992 (ACT NO. 51 OF 1992)

The Director-General has authorized the following persons to assume the forename printed in *italics*:

1. Nomasondo Elsie Tafita - 810318 0570 081 - 1140 Jingso Street, Rocklands, BLOEMFONTEIN, 9300 - *Sweetness Elsie Nomasondo*
2. Maruping John Papier - 830925 5683 085 - 774 Naledi, WITSIESHOEK, 9870 - *John*
3. Jobo Mohale - 890817 6154 082 - 1339 Mangaling, WITSIESHOEK, 9870 - *Michael*
4. Siphokazi Nolumela - 861018 1104 082 - Madwaleni Area, TSOLO, 5170 - *Siphokazi Anniter*
5. Mitters Refilwe Kgomo - 890629 0415 082 - 10887 Extension 26, Mqantsa, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Refilwe*
6. Gabidani Hazel Ngoako - 830522 0486 083 - 128 Villa Lucca, South Street, CENTURION, 0169 - *Gabisile Hazel*
7. Tshogofatso Pearl Miyambo - 840526 0438 083 - 868 Tshehlo Close, Heuwelsig Estate, CENTURION, 0157 - *Tshogofatso*
8. Andisiwe Beauty Tingo - 810708 0433 084 - 40 A Kyalami Downs, 26 Springwell Avenue, KYALAMI, 1684 - *Andisiwe Zenande*
9. Rudolf Mlahleni Mthembu - 711007 5553 081 - 5 A Drimani Avenue, SHERWOOD, 4091 - *Rudolf Mandla*
10. Puleng Charlie Molepo - 631011 5568 088 - 305 Unit C, Mankweng, POLOKWANE, 0727 - *Bathuel Malleke*
11. Myathaza Nyathaza - 630218 5193 087 - 36671 Galela Street, MAKHAZA, 7784 - *Mxolisi Michael*
12. Zephania Khoza - 790205 5387 088 - 285 Nemoracia Angle, Aquadeni, RICHARDS BAY, 3900 - *Zephania Sihle*
13. Sivuyile Bismarck Ndzabela - 751028 5887 080 - 1106 Weaver Loop Street, SWANIEVILLE, 1754 - *Vidor*
14. Dlayani Winter Hlungwane - 770210 5371 086 - 2171 Mofutsanyana Street, ORLANDO EAST, 1804 - *Winter*
15. Onthusitse Gaotlhophe - 990826 1225 085 - House no 25 E, MAKHUBUNG, 8460 - *Keitumetse Charity*
16. Lentikile Keneth Mooka - 860204 5807 083 - Block 7 Room 1, SESHEGO, 8447 - *Lepara Keneth*
17. Sihle Nkosi - 880310 1537 081 - B 56 Delpont, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Sphesihle Rebecca*
18. Goodness Mtolo - 860420 0428 085 - 16706 Rebecca Thlaripe Street, Extension 12, KAGISO, 1754 - *Goodness Nomthandazo*
19. Marilyn Irene Booie - 750615 0130 085 - 180 B Bonteheuwel Avenue, BONTEHEUWEL, 7764 - *Malikah*
20. Gerschwin Peter Cloete - 850116 5262 089 - 36 Alexis Preller, New Woodlands, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7785 - *Muazzam*
21. Gershwin Dane Moosajie - 871208 5163 089 - 189 Cornflower Street, Bridgetown, ATHLONE, 7764 - *Touhir*
22. Mushfiqah Ceasar - 850125 0262 085 - 6546 Mzati Street, Asla Park, MOSSELBAY, 6500 - *Mercia*
23. Irvin Lawrence - 850529 5099 089 - 5 Himalaya Crescent, Tafelsig, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7786 - *Ishma'eel*
24. Senzeni Agnes Xaba - 820113 0448 083 - 57 Bellevue Road, DURBAN, 4001 - *Delisile Agnes*
25. Pitshwane Abisae Ramarumo - 790601 5470 082 - 5408 Block M, MABOPANE, 0201 - *Phitshwane Abisae Abey*
26. Monare Robert Mankge - 750402 5492 087 - 9166 Extension 24, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Skotch Robert*
27. Patrick Sandals Xhoseni - 870812 5854 083 - Ntaboduli Location, QUMBU, 5182 - *Patrick Sandile*
28. Cathrine Thembi Siloman - 811217 0709 088 - 59 Coleus Road, Crossmoor, CHATSWORTH, 4092 - *Fathima*
29. Nompumelelo Khensani Pauline Ngwane - 990918 0082 086 - 110 Chelsea Mews, Le Roux Street, SUIDEROORD, 2091 - *Nombulelo*
30. Makatso Shabangu - 990809 1135 082 - Stand no 260, HARTEBEEKOP, 2357 - *Dimakatso Fortunate*

31. Kgaugelo Masulenyane Maseema - 911105 0707 088 - Ga-Nchabeleng, LEFALANE, 0941 - *Kgaugelo Mashienyane*
32. Siphon Dinga - 930102 6332 083 - Nikwe Location, BIZANA, 4800 - *Nkosinathi Emmanuel*
33. Tsiyamo Brigitte Ngobeni - 000130 0163 084 - 1247 Mthimunya Street, Extension 1, Refilwe, CULLINAN, 1006 - *Tshiamo Bridget*
34. Mietjie Marelda Paulsen - 851120 0176 087 - 80 Hillcrest Ashbury, Heidedal, BLOEMFONTEIN, 9303 - *Marelda*
35. Anton Aldo Bucarizza - 860118 5153 084 - 10 Sinker Street, Woodmead East, JOHANNESBURG, 2191 - *Antonio Aldo*
36. Daniël Christiaan Van Zyl - 890202 5142 083 - 12 Sultana Street, BELLVILLE, 7530 - *Riaan*
37. Jetaine Wilson - 881218 0179 087 - 2 Oryx Street, Eastridge, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7785 - *Tazneem*
38. Lee-Anne Siljeur - 870103 0122 084 - 29 Bento Street, Avondale, ATLANTIS, 7349 - *Lameez*
39. Jenene Lean Alexander - 890413 0090 082 - 13 Freylina Avenue, Devon Park, EERSTE RIVER, 7100 - *Jenene Lee-Ann*
40. Wesley Bailey - 861120 5222 082 - 51 Impala Crescent, KUILSRIVER, 7985 - *Waiz*
41. Derryl Valantino Fisher - 870214 5133 081 - 36 Clifton Road, MUIZENBERG, 7975 - *Darryl Valantino*
42. Monqui Alexis Nortjé - 870303 0221 080 - 46 Belladonna Street, GREEN HILLS, 1159 - *Monique Alexis*
43. Joy Masinamela - 860729 1183 089 - 391 Mamba Street, KANANA PARK, 1829 - *Faith*
44. Jennilee Lurène Qureshi - 850724 0071 080 - 15 Brown Street, OUDTSHOORN, 6625 - *Sadiya Saqibuddin*
45. Sumarsha Badat - 801217 0143 082 - 19 Venus Avenue, SUNDOWNER, 2188 - *Samiah*
46. Makana Frederick Manamela - 860809 5631 083 - 1566 Extension 7, Chris Hani, DAVEYTON, 1520 - *Makana Muhamad-Juma*
47. Zenzile Steven Bungane - 720907 5614 081 - Mackaysnek, LADY FRERE, 5410 - *Steven Zanomhlola*
48. Pauline Ndudula - 690218 0600 083 - 22 Amosyn Yie Road, PARKLANDS, 7441 - *Thandeka Pauline*
49. Landiwe Sylvia Ngwenya - 730906 1118 087 - 6459 Pitso Street, THOKOZA, 1426 - *Landiwe Sylvia*
50. Itireleng Manyape - 970101 1634 080 - House no 41, Zone 10, MOHLAKENG, 0700 - *Itireleng Mologadi Tebogo*
51. Ramadimetja Thabitha Mothoa - 980119 0474 082 - 04 Ga-Maraba, WASBANK, 0705 - *Rethabile*
52. Mfanafuthi Napoleon Tshabalala - 860324 6162 088 - 2288 Zikalala Street, Extension 2, ZITHOBENI, 1024 - *Mfanafuthi Fanie Napoleon*
53. Nombukelo Ribbina Dubha - 560602 0967 088 - 25900 Mgidlana Street, STRAND, 7140 - *Nombulelo Ribbina*
54. Prudence Khabonina Moloi - 660927 0527 080 - 14 Gloray Street, New Modder, BENONI, 1501 - *Prudence Khabonina*
55. Francinah Seopa - 810206 0436 082 - 131 Precast, Extension 10, LENASIA, 1827 - *Mpho Francinah*
56. Mmadibe Debora Modise - 830523 0723 087 - 10211 Botshabang Village, Seleka, LEPHALALE, 0555 - *Shalom Debora*
57. Morare Mokgalaka Matladi - 620524 5768 089 - 2399 Pongola Street, PALMRIDGE, 1431 - *Elvis Morare*
58. Ngoana Seroko Nkele Maapea - 840328 0992 080 - D/O, JANE FURSE, 1085 - *Ngoanaseroko Nkele*
59. Oupa Andries Rammutla - 691228 5835 088 - 1382 Extension 7, 1 Baloyi Street, BELA-BELA, 0480 - *Johannes Mafutha*
60. William Sehlapelo - 680326 5692 088 - 7 Johanna Van Warmelo Street, Extension 11, DANVILLE, 0183 - *William Stanley*
61. Lwazi Nkunjana - 890709 5626 089 - Gxididi Area, LIBODE, 5099 - *Gwiba Lwazi*
62. Grant Mmusi - 700614 5541 082 - 6319 Windmill Park Estate, BOKSBURG, 0201 - *More*
63. Maphoka Elizabeth Thato - 791027 0363 081 - 1621 Zone 13, SEBOKENG, 1983 - *Thabile*

64. Raphala Chuene - 990516 5230 088 - 40 Moloantoa Street, ATTERIDGEVILLE, 0008 - *Matome*
65. Solomon Thulare - 990801 5489 086 - 692 Ndlovu Street, MODIMOLLE, 0510 - *Neo Solomon*
66. Kenosi Marabeng - 990304 1148 087 - 775 Section D, EKANGALA, 1021 - *Angel*
67. Letuku Thabisho Mamogobo - 860913 6022 084 - 9179 Extension 24, TEMBISA, 1682 - *Letuku Thabiso*
68. Opensense Robert Ncengwa - 881225 6910 084 - 974 – 25th Avenue, CLERMONT, 3610 - *Open-Sense Robert*
69. Hassan Molotsane Tsiloane - 791127 6051 084 - 3 Kagalami, Unit 5, PINETOWN, 3800 - *Hassan Moloisane*
70. Sophy Sekati - 890604 0652 083 - 10867 Comely Park, MAHIKENG, 0400 - *Sophy Keolebogile*
71. Emmanuel Matonoro Rankwe - 821213 5531 088 - Ga-Masha, NGWAABE, 1058 - *Emmanuel Thoba*
72. Brigre Abious Molomo - 981127 5437 086 - 337 Sekuruwe, MAPELA, 0610 - *Bright Lesedi*
73. Nalana Gloria Mthembu - 650929 0790 082 - 12 Birkwood Manor, 774 Taljaard Street, DASPOORT, 0082 - *Nala Atleha Gloria*
74. Edith Aane Richardson - 511229 0143 088 - 24 Vergenoeg Street, Welgelegen, GEORGE, 6530 - *Edith Anne*
75. Hettie Louisa Adams - 661006 0052 081 - 05 Dias Street, MAMPE, 7347 - *Hetwight Louisa*
76. Premie Kandai - 560921 0117 084 - 57 Rainmaker Place, PHOENIX, 4060 - *Dhukwanthee*
77. Mashienyane Havy Phasha - 801015 0675 081 - 128 Umfanjani, Section 2, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Mabiletše Havy*
78. Nontombi Mjamba - 970620 1261 081 - Xhorana Area, MQANDULI, 5020 - *Usisipho Nontombi*
79. Phumeza Hlanga - 730815 0947 083 - 1845 Cele Street, POORTJIE, 1841 - *Phumeza Eunice*
80. Thipenyane Mashiya - 930601 6347 082 - 14506 Extension 8 A, ORANGE FARM, 1841 - *Thipenyane Piet Seun*
81. Edlan Temogo Madieletse - 860817 0690 087 - P O Box 6555, TOOSENS, 0755 - *Edian Mampuru*
82. Nokuthula Ikekwem - 781227 0488 084 - 16 Funtrap Court, Primrose, GERMISTON, 1400 - *Nokuthula Yolanda*
83. Oddness Nyankwave Monareng - 860305 0556 086 - 303 Makhulong Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Palesa Ordinance*
84. Martinus Jacobus Willemse - 850824 5076 082 - 13 Romeo Single, Toekomsrus, OUDTSHOORN, 6625 - *Mohammad Jakob*
85. Johan Stephanus Vorster - 850318 5286 080 - 490 PJN Flat 37, Van Der Hoff Road, PRETORIA GARDENS, 0183 - *Kim Alexa Cattlaya*
86. Vimbephi Happiness Hlophe - 761006 0822 086 - J 1361 Umthombe Road, KWA MASHU, 4359 - *Vee Happiness*
87. Michella Sophia Petersen - 810524 0078 088 - 27 Van Derleer Court, RETREAT, 7945 - *Michelle*
88. Pasquelene Monique Williamson - 810528 0150 086 - 39 Planeet Street, Sarepta, KUILSRIVER, 7580 - *Pasqualine Monique*
89. Valecia Sibongile Lukhele - 801111 0342 085 - 9647 Badirisane Street, Extension 9, IVORY PARK, 1689 - *Valencia Sibongile*
90. Elisa Louw - 900309 0664 082 - 1545 Extension 2, Blydeville, LICHTENBURG, 2740 - *Elisa Lerato*
91. Butana Joel Molalathoko - 970119 5644 087 - 10 Queens Place, Power Street, GERMISTON, 1400 - *Phindulo Joel*
92. Phethego Selelepoo - 981110 6174 080 - P O Box 650, DRIEKOP, 1129 - *Sekororo Phethego*
93. Solomon Lwaiphi Ntengu - 920619 5838 085 - 2009 Morokolo Street, Boikhutso, LICHTENBURG, 2740 - *Lwaiphi Justice*
94. Mjeqezeni Wiseman Khanyile - 820110 6049 089 - 4930 Barbulola Street, Cosmo City, RANDBURG, 2125 - *Mjeqezeni Sazi*
95. Masekege Paul Molohe - 840330 5356 089 - 45 Grandir Village, Extension 33, THE ORCHARDS, 0182 - *Boshego Paul*
96. Mojadife Alda Mashishi - 750720 0584 081 - 1246 Masoganeng, MARAPYANE, 0431 - *Refilwe Alda*
97. Goodfrey Bongani Zwane - 761007 5566 082 - 23 / 9382 Extension 12, EMBALENHLE, 2285 - *Godfrey*

98. Augustus Mthombeni - 630801 5466 080 - 5 Tassenberg Close, 62 Tassenberg, BOKSBURG, 1459 - *Augustus Sipho*
99. Louisa Matshweu Seepe - 991230 0778 088 - Shushumela, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Lebetla Happiness*
100. Thabiso Olifant - 990824 5829 085 - 281 Kgoka Street, Moteong Section, EDENVALE, 1618 - *Thato*
101. Remember Pikinini Mavundhla - 970223 5520 089 - Sebera, MOKHUSHANE, 1390 - *Vuyo Pikinini*
102. Samuel Makhobo Luruli - 540701 5883 087 - P O Box 1115, PONGOLA, 3170 - *Samuel Mathobo*
103. Kgobane Boroco - 971109 5542 083 - Dronkop, Phase one, MIDDELBURG, 1050 - *Kgobane Ntike*
104. Titus Gwayi - 790304 5957 089 - 972 Bokamoso, RUSTENBURG, 0300 - *Titus Vumile*
105. Johannes Mahlangu - 980131 5588 089 - Stand no 506, Sterkfontein, MPUDULLE, 1057 - *Sifiso Johannes*
106. John Ndimande Hlatshwayo - 670110 5438 086 - 121 Wildermakon Street, Marievale, NIGEL, 1491 - *Themba Godgracious Ndimande*
107. Johannes Matjila - 850925 5616 080 - 1216 Vuzimuzi Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Johannes Pulatsa*
108. NOmeyekela Haba Mngomezulu - 490720 5455 084 - P O Box 9001, ST LUCIA, 3936 - *Haba Abel*
109. Praxedis Sindisiwe Myeza - 870901 0435 087 - 81 Rapson Road, Morningside, DURBAN, 4001 - *Sindisiwe Praxedis*
110. Andries Ngwamba - 790401 5247 089 - 27 Barbet Street, Stonehenge, NELSPRUIT, 1200 - *Martin Andries*
111. Phelasanele Duba - 880405 6449 082 - P O Box 1777, Duba Primary School, MATATIELE, 4730 - *Philasanele*
112. Franko Vosloo - 900329 5138 080 - 32 Steven Road, BOTHASIG, 7441 - *Franco*
113. Ntombizandile Tetani - 961205 0890 089 - 47 Tappa Street, Duncan Village, EAST LONDON, 5209 - *Zandile*
114. Selinah Makola - 000206 0383 086 - Stand no 1061, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Selinah Sabi*
115. Phendile Mathabatha - 000408 0559 083 - 79 Nhlekani Street, LOTUS GARDENS, 0208 - *Phindile Dineo*
116. Ngenzeni Prudence Dlamini - 840325 1074 082 - Nyayini Location, HIGHFLATS, 3306 - *Londekile Prudence*
117. Happy-Boy Mthuthuzeli Tosele - 711225 6237 088 - Somerset East, RICHARDS BAY, 3900 - *Lucky Vuyo*
118. Dikeledi Ephesia Monyeki - 761020 0596 087 - 12 Nerina Street, Kensington B, RANDBURG, 2195 - *Deborah Nakal*
119. Tshokolo Thabitha Seshane - 891214 0078 088 - Ga-Kgoete Village, DRIEKOP, 1129 - *Tshegofatso*
120. Suzan Euginia Modise - 751028 1091 083 - 1032 More Street, Zone 1, GA-RANKUWA, 0208 - *Susan Eugenia*
121. Koena Gregory Mokgolo - 870802 5754 086 - 735 Moccusso Street, Maokeng, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Kgabo Gregory*
122. Cothoza Dlomo - 681126 5568 083 - Ward 5, Nongidi Location, HARDING, 4680 - *Cothoza Anton*
123. Siphelo Majenge - 860913 5855 088 - 67 Tamsanqa Street, Nu 2, Motherwell, PORT ELIZABETH, 6211 - *Daniel*
124. Mating Abram Matlala - 960403 5229 087 - 11963 Extension 7 B, ORANGE FARM, 1841 - *Kopano*
125. Emanuel Molokoane - 951231 5138 086 - 2375 Mothoa Street, ROODEPOORT, 1725 - *Karabo*
126. Andronicah Banki Msiza - 960805 0955 088 - 836 Hans Kekana View, TEMBA, 0407 - *Sihle Andronicah*
127. Molathegi Moseki - 921001 6038 081 - House no 10174, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Collen Bongane*
128. Simon Lekoloane - 930722 5778 083 - 8428 Extension 8, IVORY PARK, 1685 - *Simon Tumelo*
129. Nosakhele Buso-Vutula - 680724 0728 081 - 10628 Maguga Street, Kwazakhele, PORT ELIZABETH, 6001 - *Zukiswa Sylvia*
130. Motlanalo Masindi Selona - 870408 0389 082 - 928 Zone 4, SESHEGO, 0742 - *Shonisani Johanna*

131. Chuene Kgadima - 940930 0166 083 - 43 Govenor Street, IVY PARK, 0700 - *Rebecca Gabriella*
132. Matlakala Mariah Thomo - 790720 0275 088 - X 8329 Section, KANANA, 2619 - *Mpho Grace*
133. Moosa Louwrence Mabuza - 791019 5306 082 - Stand no 1108, Extension 4, Mogolego Street, RETHABISENG, 1026 - *Musa Lawrence*
134. Armstrong Pelem Nkululeko Kalimani - 761021 5406 082 - 33 Qwashu Street, Kwadwesi, PORT ELIZABETH, 6001 - *Nkululeko*
135. Lwandile Phindokuhle Adams - 890110 0726 083 - 11 Roxy Lane Complex, Bella Avenue, Gonubie, EAST LONDON, 5257 - *Phindokuhle*
136. Jimmy Lighty Mthethwa - 701215 5676 081 - 91 Gen Louise Botha Street, BRONKHORSTSPRUIT, 1020 - *Jimmy Light*
137. Hendrick Letlhogonolo Monyai - 890713 5475 083 - 9350 Japan Crescent, Extension 8, COSMO CITY, 2100 - *Letlhogonolo*
138. Terence Teraine - 750420 5188 083 - 7 Landau Street, BENONI, 1501 - *Terence Vain*
139. Olwethu Dlamini - 970405 5709 081 - 16 Lisburn Place, Cato Manor, WIGGINS, 4091 - *Olwethu Denzel*
140. Simo Khoza - 970708 5599 083 - D 948 Mkhambathi Road, KWA MASHU, 4360 - *Simosakhe*
141. Amahle Cingo - 970422 5830 080 - New Dunbar Road, MAYVILLE, 4091 - *Mandla Brian Amahle*
142. Velaphi Christinah Mokoena - 950523 0499 088 - 99 Herbert Baker, GROENKLOOF, 0180 - *Nobuhle Christinah Velaphi*
143. Velaphi Mpanza - 950724 0604 087 - 353 Demat Road, Welbedacht West, CHATSWORTH, 4092 - *Velevhi Minenhle*
144. Mihloti Dorothea Valoyi - 950104 0700 088 - Stand no 90, Wayeni, MAKHADO, 0920 - *Xikhaviso Dorothea*
145. Tshepiso Andrina Motsepe - 950523 0489 089 - 6681 Extension 36, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Tshepiso Andrinah*
146. Asiphe Sininge - 950319 0519 086 - Darabe, MQANDULI, 5080 - *Siphenathi*
147. NOKubongwa Jennet Mamba - 951110 1056 080 - Hlomenlini Township, MANDENI, 4490 - *Wendy Nokubonga*
148. Kanyane Maboshego - 950823 0485 081 - 3485 Zone B, LEBOWAKGOMO, 0737 - *Trudicia Tlhologelo*
149. Phakimpi Dlamini - 750101 5679 087 - Room D 4, Madala Hostel, THOKOZA, 1426 - *Blessing Thulani*
150. Atlareleng Mokalake - 990623 1417 089 - 10111 A Airport View, MAHIKENG, 2745 - *Atlareleng Confidence*
151. Nomathamsanqa Sibongile Mokoro - 981129 0021 089 - 4 Koestertjie Street, Fauma, BLOEMFONTEIN, 9300 - *Sibongile Bohlokoa*
152. Avuzwa Nkosemntu - 980211 0693 082 - Qombolo Area, CENTANE, 4980 - *Avuzwa Somila*
153. Bandile May - 970204 5909 084 - 387 Nobuntu Store, HOPEDALE, 5170 - *Bandile Sanele*
154. Sithandile Mngqibisa - 980118 5715 085 - 556 Nu 14, MDANTSANE, 5219 - *Usithandile*
155. Manana Chabane - 000121 0421 085 - 598 G Section, BOTSHABELO, 9781 - *Manana Katleho*
156. Matlakala Sylvia Mashigo - 711121 0519 086 - 710 Peretiam Crescent, PRETORIA WEST, 0183 - *Sylvia*
157. Mpana Wilson Koko - 710404 5796 086 - 67 Maokeng Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Cliffa Machoene*
158. Pechunia Mpho Ngetu - 740711 0407 087 - Ny 24 – 13, GUGULETHU, 7750 - *Petunia Mpho*
159. Niyaz Dilgee - 830629 5171 089 - 21 Cricket Crescent, Beacon Valley, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7789 - *Cheslyn Adrian*
160. Tebogo Elias Lebele - 860426 1306 089 - House no 119, Matlhase Village, LEHURUTSHE, 2868 - *Tebogo Sharon*
161. California Mosebi - 890925 0886 086 - 1085 Magogoe Koikoi Village, MMABATHO, 2735 - *California Bonolo*
162. Lebogang Sinna Motlathledi - 881111 0748 086 - 11083 Ramatlabama Village, MMABATHO, 2735 - *Lebogang Pearlsinna*
163. MCoseleli Raziya - 890918 6471 086 - L 426 Site B, KHAYELITSHA, 7525 - *Themba Mcoseleli*
164. Diatla Carrathers Lebopo - 851023 5624 087 - Stand no 114, GA-NCHABELENG, 0741 - *Diatla Jack Carrathers*

165. Mpumelelo Memory Makofane - 821001 1108 088 - 4487 Extension 6, MASHISHING, 1121 - *Mpumelelo Vanessa*
166. Andiswa Mshweshwe - 820715 0635 087 - Ntibaneni Area, ENGCOCO, 5050 - *Andiswa Nosiphumze*
167. Muriel Mncube - 701117 0600 084 - A 201 Joshoo Flats, Cnr Lambert & Nejd Street, ROODEPOORT, 1725 - *Muriel Nomalanga*
168. Lentheng Lefty Mashaba - 860120 5886 085 - House no 410, Taaibosch, RADITSHABA, 0718 - *Lentheng Lefty Nel*
169. Potego Maboja - 941230 5797 084 - 346 Weir Street, Pretoria Gardens, PRETORIA, 0082 - *Raserole Potego Prince*
170. Ephraim Kondwani Banda - 720515 6509 083 - 12 Tiqane Street, Extension 8, Cosmo City, RANDBURG, 2188 - *Ephraim*
171. Nona Glamorous Ndlovu - 890508 0766 084 - J 27, UMLAZI, 4066 - *Nona Nolwazi*
172. Kwena Charlotte Nkwana - 900618 1004 084 - 1 Sirkel Street, Elandsfontein, GERMISTON, 1601 - *Makoena Shirley*
173. Kamogelo Mapheto - 901011 5902 082 - P O Box 2413, MPHALALELE, 0737 - *Lesiba Kamogelo*
174. Engenas Tshogofatso Modisane - 910715 5679 081 - 2939 Extension 9, Dukathole, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Engenas Joseph*
175. Agnes Ndhlovu - 920827 0721 087 - 373 Marokolong, TEMBA, 0407 - *Agnes Lerato*
176. Katherine Naughan Blaine - 740107 0572 089 - 4 Fountain Road, Bavianskloof, HOUT BAY, 7806 - *Katherine Vaughan*
177. Piet Van Rooi - 670401 5582 084 - 23707 Nkani Street, Wallacedene, KRAAIFONTEIN, 7570 - *Shaun*
178. Juvia Wolhuter - 510223 0195 082 - 66 Naruna Road, PLUMSTEAD, 7806 - *Julia*
179. Ferosa Uren - 810527 0222 085 - 15 C Walton Road, RETREAT, 7945 - *Abigail*
180. Gaekukwe Rebecca Motshelanoka - 931230 0347 085 - 2685 B Lefaragattha Section, PELLA, 2890 - *Sarah*
181. Nomakuthweni Pitsani - 780112 0457 084 - 6236 Extension 23, Rondebult, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Zimkhitha Cassandra*
182. Loratte Ramlall - 811108 0088 088 - Clerindon Hostel, Kings Road, KING WILLIAMS TOWN, 5600 - *Brenda Loratte*
183. Levina Du Plessis - 811122 0143 082 - 1928 Buys Street, Bridgton, OUDTSHOORN, 6625 - *Levern*
184. Ziyaad Du Plessis - 820618 5041 089 - 19 Homestead Road, Northview, KIMBERLEY, 8301 - *David Frederick*
185. Dadumia Gaffoor - 780514 5166 083 - 4 Third Street, KENSINGTON, 7405 - *Ashraf*
186. Ricardo Jones - 780426 5062 081 - 28 Milan Street, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7789 - *Riedwaan*
187. Terena Cornelius Titus - 750505 5173 083 - 4 Leeubekkie Street, Mooiwater, FRANSCHOEK, 7690 - *Terence Cornelius*
188. Cikisile Johnson Tshiki - 630525 5569 086 - 42466 Makhaza, KHAYELITSHA, 7520 - *Cokisile Johnson*
189. Montle William Makobe - 610825 5183 084 - Manoge Village, MASEMOLA, 1060 - *Phaswa William*
190. Mothusi Ceorege Letebele - 660714 5816 084 - Dinokana Village, Garatsara Section, ZEERUST, 2868 - *Mothusi George*
191. Njo Mduduzi Michael Nxasana - 530403 5355 081 - 8 Katberg Drive, OAKDENE, 2190 - *Njo*
192. Mallise Raphalalani - 890124 0812 082 - C 2 Burnside Mews, Burn Street, WAVERLEY, 2090 - *Melissa*
193. Beena Roberts - 720927 0173 081 - 2 Maureen Circle, Bluewaterbay Village, PORT ELIZABETH, 6001 - *Sabeena*
194. Adam Prince Silinda - 880213 5531 086 - 895 No, KABOKWENI, 1245 - *Tebogo Prince*
195. Phumudzo Johannah Rantoka - 870917 1268 087 - Stand no 706, Muduluwi, MAKHADO, 0920 - *Kgomotso Johannah*
196. Mavis Pomgpong Molathegi - 740327 0658 080 - Stand no 79, Ga-Kopa, TAFELKOP, 0414 - *Sweetness Namile*
197. Nosango Vivian Matutu - 720514 0144 088 - Tongwana Area, BUTTERWORTH, 4960 - *Zoliswa Vivian*

198. Maureen Phumzile Mabaso - 631024 0789 088 - Stand n 7, Kirkvorsfontein, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Aretha Maureen Phumzile*
199. Caroline Moipane Phora - 780906 0610 083 - Stand no 45, Thabakubedu, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Caroline Moipone*
200. Dorris Mokganyetsi Phogolo - 831010 1310 089 - P O Box 195, MPHAALELE, 0237 - *Dorris Ramaabele*
201. Elvis Kgosiekae Molebiemang - 851211 5519 080 - 10031 Turkmenistan Street, Extension 8, RANDBURG, 2198 - *Elvis Diphoko*
202. Nobesuthu Priscilla Mabandla - 831104 0636 089 - Ny 10 No 3, Lingelihle, GUGULETHU, 7750 - *Nobesuthu*
203. Lebogang Anna Baloyi - 820606 0419 087 - JB 1167, Extension 7, SOSHANGUVE, 0152 - *Khensane*
204. Nkosiyetuu Zulu - 850811 5975 082 - P O Box 1818, MOKHELO, SOWETO, 1717 - *Nkosiyethu Patrick*
205. Harsheennia Victoria Mathobie - 851223 0275 089 - 6785 Adam Wamakola Street, KIMBERLEY, 8300 - *Victoria Kekeco*
206. Louis Ngele - 780813 5308 087 - Stand no 9, Malekutu, KABOKWENI, 1245 - *Ringo Louis*
207. Masehlo Piet Motapelo - 760210 5387 084 - Stand no 620, Ga-Maboi, POLOKWANE, 0700 - *Masehlo Peter*
208. Zolani Lawrence Gqabi - 751105 5433 089 - Unit 22 Aloe, 7326 Isazi Street, OLIEVENHOUTBOSCH, 0157 - *Zolani*
209. Sindiswa Sheron Mabaya-Otoo - 760629 0363 081 - 204 Leonie Street, CENTURION, 0157 - *Sindiswa*
210. Abie Motshidisi Khunou - 750612 1132 087 - 79 Derbylite Street, Lotus Gardens, PRETORIA WEST, 0183 - *Motshidisi*
211. Prudence Nokuphila Sindane - 870704 1050 081 - 1289 Kuan-Yin Street, Cultura Park, BRONKHORSTSPRUIT, 1020 - *Prudence Nokuphiwa*
212. Tokelo Rebone Seremane - 931022 0058 089 - 308 The Cambridge, 1 Herbert Road, Petervale, SANDTON, 2191 - *Alice Tokelo Rebone*
213. Zizipho Jara - 000121 0817 084 - Mini Farms, TSOLO, 5170 - *Electra Zizipho*
214. Serotobale Johannes Makgoga - 781011 5685 088 - Caprivi Ga-Moloi, NEBO, 1056 - *Tsogwane Johannes*
215. Zimkitha Xwazi - 991209 0672 087 - 105 Holomisa, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Phumza Zimkitha*
216. Raesetja Rosalia Mokonyama - 991120 0284 080 - 862 Zone 1, SESHEGO, 0742 - *Raesetja Rosalia Sasha*
217. Scelo Mfundo Sibiya - 970615 5469 086 - 132 Risegate Drive, SOUTHGATE, 4068 - *Bryan Armando Scelo*
218. Zizipho Sofoniya - 951010 0847 085 - Manka Location, TSOLO, 5170 - *Sisipho*
219. Ntshene Dineo Mabaya - 751102 0801 089 - 2283 Maedi Street, BETHLEHEM, 9700 - *Dineo*
220. Monica Maria Masango - 880516 0650 085 - 411 Danie Theron, PRETORIA NORTH, 0184 - *Maria Mmanoko*
221. Matshemo Gravina Masemola - 820917 1225 088 - Stand no 010, MOGENYAKA, 0459 - *Matshemo Pinky*
222. Sange Nkenke - 990717 0137 084 - 6 Hoffmeyer Avenue, CAMBRIDGE, 5247 - *Sange Bothamba*
223. Lindani Sithole - 990511 5265 085 - 2286 Zone 10, Winnie Mandela Park, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Lindani Bheki*
224. Majauta Cencynatia Mabitje - 000211 0584 089 - 11 Hospital Street, JOHANNESBURG, 2001 - *Dimpho Majauta*
225. Nawunawu Toli - 550811 5762 087 - Bawe Area, BUTTERWORTH, 4960 - *Mqondisi*
226. Samukelo Sengwayo - 990109 5494 084 - Manyandeni Area, PONGOLA, 3170 - *Samukelo Sandile*
227. Cabangile Zibula - 990806 1154 089 - Emlwandle Area, DALTON, 3236 - *Cabangile Nelisiwe*
228. Nozityhilelo Ntunzi - 990506 0538 080 - 23 Botletle, Leiden, DELFT, 7100 - *Siphiwo-Kuhle Ayabulela*
229. Kgakgamatso Virginia Nkoane - 820901 1162 087 - 1011 Tullip Street, Blydeville, LICHTENBURG, 2740 - *Loveginia Kgolagano*
230. Mazulu Ntlamba - 681212 1879 086 - 1319 - 15 Emthonyeni Section, TEMBISA, 1632 - *Beauty Mamxesibe*

231. Edward Mbuyiseni Nyembezi - 680725 5620 082 - 2902 Benga Bar, MAYVILLE, 4091 - *Edward Mbuyiselo*
232. Yoliswa Koliswa Mabhude - 721223 1296 082 - Ezimangweni, INANDA, 4310 - *Kholiswa*
233. Dereen Heunis - 000127 0022 088 - 42 Beacon Road, LADYSMITH, 3370 - *Deen*
234. Mirella Smith - 840604 0121 080 - 7 The Loop, LYNNWOOD, 0100 - *Mirella Lippi*
235. Yolanda Beverly Brenner - 761210 0243 083 - 10 Begonia Circle, Protea Park, ATLANTIS, 7349 - *Yusra*
236. Joulyn Awan - 770503 0240 086 - 145 South Road, Flat 14, Overport, DURBAN, 4001 - *Ayesha*
237. Tania Charlene Bernard - 790510 0187 080 - 18 Drostdy Street, Voorbrug, DELFT, 7100 - *Tanisha*
238. Viloshini Sewbhujan - 791219 0096 080 - 10 Namaqua Dove, Glen Eagles Estate, Monument Road, KEMPTON PARK, 1638 - *Vilosh Karen*
239. Aqeela Adams - 830529 0182 083 - 17 Saringa Street, BONTEHEUWEL, 7764 - *Amelia*
240. Janine Wendy Hoskins - 830524 0094 081 - 4 Gardenia Lane, LOTUS RIVER, 7941 - *Zayaan*
241. Candice Samantha Solomons - 840706 0142 089 - 81 Malva Street, Eastridge, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7789 - *Laaqah*
242. Nicolene Appollis - 760114 0267 087 - Klein Street Farm, TOUWSRIVER, 6850 - *Naeemah*
243. Rasajo Natasadu - 840303 5146 081 - 6 Seagull Court, Orient Hills, ISIPINGO RAIL, 4110 - *Joedach*
244. Mamathopa Mariam Malapile - 941013 0067 087 - Lucus Mangope, Suurman Village, HAMMANSKRAAL, 0010 - *Mimi Mariam*
245. Flora Abrahams - 521029 0802 081 - 40 Ruth Court, MANENBERG, 7764 - *Fierosa*
246. Khatija Bhyat Bhyat - 690624 0112 088 - 22 Seagull Street, Extension 1, LENASIA, 1828 - *Khatija Amod*
247. Joanna Tsepo Dlamini - 701105 0898 089 - 557 Endulwini Section, TEMBISA, 1652 - *Faith Tsepo*
248. Mfundo Eudorah Zulu - 950626 0897 084 - 17 Radebe Section, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Mfundo Buhlebedalo Eudorah*
249. Mochabo Prince Mafolo - 881219 5791 082 - 120 End Street, Doornfontein, JOHANNESBURG, 2000 - *Mochabo Prince Tswelopele*
250. Semakaleng Sophia Thobane - 940706 0339 080 - 191 Gary Avenue, WATERKLOOF GLEN, 0010 - *Semakaleng*
251. Martha Shilane - 890518 0665 087 - 13 Suikerbos Street, KRIEL, 2271 - *Wendy Charleein*
252. Ntombiyomlungu Yvonne Ngcobo - 860628 0326 089 - 1554 Tohenham, PHOENIX, 4068 - *Amanda Yvonne*
253. Sanele Proterson Ngcogo - 851228 5972 085 - 286 Kennedy Road, DURBAN, 4091 - *Sanele Bhekani*
254. Khumbulile Kasibe - 890705 1300 083 - 114 Field Street, DURBAN, 4001 - *Khumbuleni*
255. Rebecca Tshepo Choba - 820415 0850 089 - P O Box 30, CHUENESPOORT, 0737 - *Ragel Tshepo Molepeletji*
256. Matjuda Johannes Mohlopi - 800524 5367 082 - Stand no 626, Heuwelsig Estate, CENTURION, 0140 - *Matjutla Johannes*
257. Matome Mosima Thovhakalo - 820915 1064 085 - 62 Ikhayalami Flat, Rand Road Street, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Maureen Favour*
258. Precious Katlego Thoubatla - 820211 0369 083 - 4121 Rambuton Street, Bluevalley Golf Estate, KOSMOSDAL, 0157 - *Katlego Precious*
259. Florence Mahlabane - 971201 0675 081 - 36023 Lehong Street, MAMELODI EAST, 0182 - *Florence Nomusa*
260. Gerdi Van Staden - 950307 5061 089 - F 3 Riverside Estate, Steelpoort, HARTBESPOORT, 0232 - *Gerdi Radley*
261. Nonsikelelo Maduna - 960923 1618 082 - Sihlahleni, MAPHUMULO, 4470 - *Nonsikelelo Matshidiso*
262. Joyce Khensani Mathebula - 721219 0386 080 - House no 118, Carlswold Lifestyle Estate, MIDRAND, 1685 - *Khensani Joyce*
263. Johannes Madumetsa Legwabe - 520626 5379 089 - 21 Berlein Street, Malvern, DENVER, 2094 - *Yusuf*

264. Gladys Nomthemba Qwabe - 321118 0238 081 - 372 Emoyeni Section, KEMPTON PARK, 1620 - *Gladys Nomthemba Annie*
265. Mokgerwa Peter Diale - 790412 5796 082 - Mabitsela Street, ORLANDO WEST, 8528 - *Mmutlanyane Mokwena*
266. Euginia Ndhlovu - 821125 0621 088 - 443 Fantail Street, KAALFONTEIN, 1632 - *Eugenia Kamogelo*
267. Simangele Hlongwana - 860225 0819 088 - Unit 7, 115 / 45th Avenue, SHERWOOD PARK, 4091 - *Valerie Simangele*
268. Jean Veronica Kahn - 430320 0096 083 - 4 Hartbees Street, East Ridge, MITCHELLS PLAIN, 7786 - *Jasmine*
269. Makgotso Mahoa - 830314 0980 087 - 242 Klipspringer Avenue, Leondale, GERMISTON, 1401 - *Makgotso Dipane*
270. Thandi Eugene Mahlangu - 890520 0277 087 - 20563 Koti Street, Extension 11, TSAKANE, 1550 - *Eugen Nomthandazo*
271. Norwampholo Lionnet Mogashoa - 770617 5552 087 - Malatane, LEBOWAKGOMO, 0737 - *Magapane Lionnet*
272. Jean Martin Pretorius - 871031 5060 083 - 282 Gans-Se- Nes Street, Featherbrook Estate, KRUGERSDORP, 1735 - *Jean*
273. Natalie Natasha Vermaak - 820618 0101 086 - 10 Ponta Do Sol, Lente Road, KLOPPERPARK, 1601 - *Natasha Suzette*
274. Livuwani Baloyi - 000107 0178 080 - 84-10 Avenue, ALEXANDRA, 2090 - *Khangwelo*
275. Agreement Mokoena - 890511 5533 087 - Stand 10446, Ivory Park, MIDRAND, 1632 - *Agreement Fanani*
276. Matamela Thalutshedzo - 980728 0542 084 - Sheshe Village, MUTALE, 0974 - *Thalutshedzo*
277. Dominic Malesela Kganyago - 990326 5142 089 - No 446 Suid Street, POLOKWANE, 0699 - *Tebogo Makhudu*
278. Tumelo Motsamayi - 971129 5631 082 - Thornville Area, RICHMOND, 3780 - *Tumelo Lungelo*
279. Gxarasa Zameka - 721026 0739 089 - 3089 Tantal Road, Masiphumelele, FISH HOEK, 7975 - *Zameka*
280. Dzingaphi Phineas Nkosi - 990709 5471 089 - Stand No 204, MOTETI, 0472 - *Maribe Phineas*
281. Bassanio Mariri - 860203 5940 084 - 3082 Unomqwashe, Extension 4, Gem Valley, MAMELODI, 0122 - *Pudiyamajane Bassanio*
282. Rhina Moshiane Nkadimeng - 940501 0650 085 - Ga Oria, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Rhina Mohube*
283. Allen Khoza - 890207 5418 086 - 4150 Greenwell's Glory, Albertsdal, ALBERTON, 1448 - *Allen Khoza*
284. Ntando Mhlaba - 990428 6049 089 - P O Box 44, ESIKHAWINI, 3887 - *Ntando Fanelesibonge*
285. Funzani Innocentia Ramapulana - 980802 0126 089 - House No 52, Kock Street, MAKHADO, 0920 - *Hope*
286. Kediemetse Leier - 000220 0525 083 - 392 Mapoteng Village, KURUMAN, 8460 - *Tsholofelo Jennefer*
287. Morwangwato Mzulu Mmela - 930331 6119 089 - Makhutso, MARBLE HALL, 0450 - *Morwangwato Cedrick*
288. Phomelelo Girly Makwana - 970927 0568 089 - Dihlabaneng, SEKHUKHUNE, 1124 - *Phomelelo Mmagomakgeru*
289. Stanley S'khumbuzo Witbooi - 820521 6021 086 - H 65 Imizamo Yethu, HOUT BAY, 7806 - *Siyabonga Chris Stanley*
290. Nhlanhla Stanley Hlophe - 820209 5851 089 - 5540 Mokaba Crescent, Extension 7, Etwatwa, DAVEYTON, 1520 - *Nhlanhla*
291. Tshwarelo Marule - 960424 6134 084 - Stand No 131, Jabulani, DENNILTON, 1030 - *Tshwarelo Donald*
292. Kamogelo Afrika - 980204 0177 081 - 3 Joubert Street, Glenmarans, KEMPTON PARK, 1619 - *Kamogelo Afrika*
293. Maphuti Collins Malope - 881025 5298 089 - P O Box 1066, TJANE, 1122 - *Pule Collins*
294. Frans Tebogo Mgidi - 770421 5273 087 - 243 Ramokonopi East, KATLEHONG, 1431 - *Tebogo Nkopodi*

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 522

25 MAY 2018

## AMENDING GOVERNMENT NOTICE NO: 30 OF 2006 IN THE GOVERNMENT GAZETTE NO: 28394 DATED 20 JANUARY 2006

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11A (4) of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) as amended, that the **Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights** is amending the said Gazette Notice to reflect Portion 35 of the farm Goedgezicht 228 IR which was inadvertently excluded in the said Gazette. The claims was lodged by **Mr. Solomon Caster Mkhwebane (Identity Number 6908115295089)** on behalf of **Mkhwebane Family** on the property mentioned hereunder situated in Nkangala District as per reference **KRP 262**

CURRENT PARTICULARS OF THE PROPERTY  
GOEDGEZICHT 228 IR

Description of property	Owner of Property	Title Deed Number	Extent of Property	Bonds	Bond Holder	Other Endorsements
Portion 35	Maponya Hoffman Setshaba Agro Industries Pty Ltd (201114712907)	T10175/2013	351.4528ha (The extent of Claimed is 217.2204 ha)	B6320/2013	Land & Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	None

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner, Mpumalanga Province will investigate all the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, any party interested in the above mentioned property is hereby invited to submit within **30 (thirty days)** from the date of publication of this notice to submit any comments, or further information to:

**Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights**

Private Bag X7201

Witbank

1035

or Shop No. E 8

Saveways Crescent Centre

Cnr OR Tambo and Mandela Street

Witbank

1035

TEL NO: 013 - 655 1000

FAX NO: 013 752 3859

CHECKED BY: MISS CAROLINE FIPAZA

LEGAL OFFICER

DATE: 25/05/2018

MR. L.H. MAPHUTHA

REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER

MPUMALANGA PROVINCE

DATE: 20/05/2018

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 523

25 MAY 2018

## AMENDING GOVERNMENT NOTICE NO: 298 OF 2006 IN THE GOVERNMENT GAZETTE NO: 28519 DATED 24 FEBRUARY 2006

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11A (4) of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) as amended, that the Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights is amending the said Gazette Notice due to the fact that the properties reflected in the said gazette were inadvertently gazetted. The Commissioner is hereby amending the said gazette for the property situated in Nkangala District in Mpumalanga as follows:

Description of Property	Name of Claimant	Identity Number	KRP
KAREELKRAAL 135 JT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mr. Lucas Mgebisa Mthimunye</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7110265607085</li> </ul>	4721
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mr. Josiah Mandla Mthimunye</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6311155657085</li> </ul>	4722

CURRENT PARTICULARS OF THE PROPERTY  
KAREELKRAAL 135 JT

Description of Property	Owner of Property	Title Deed Number	Extent of Property	Bonds	Bond Holder	Other Endorsements
The Remaining Extent of Portion 46 (Now known as Dullstroom Ext 5)	CH Hentiq 1042 Proprietary limited (Registration Number 2011/104659/07)	T13288/2012	404.3520 ha	B8245/2012	Absa	None

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner, Mpumalanga Province will investigate all the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, any party interested in the above mentioned property is hereby invited to submit within **30 [thirty days]** from the date of publication of this notice to submit any comments, or further information to:

**Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights**

Private Bag X7201

Witbank

1035

Or Shop No. E 8

Save ways Crescent Centre

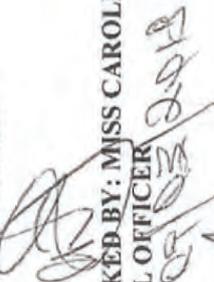
Cnr OR Tambo and Mandela Street

Witbank

1035

TEL NO: 013 655 1000

FAX NO: 013 752 3859

  
CHECKED BY: MISS CAROLINE FIPAZA  
LEGAL OFFICER  
DATE: 25/05/2018

  
MR. L.H. MAPHUTHA  
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER  
MPUMALANGA PROVINCE  
DATE: 20/05/2018

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 524

25 MAY 2018

## GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of **Section 11(1) of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) as amended**, that a land claim for **Restitution of Land Rights** has been lodged by Mr. Vimbela Enock Mokwena (Identity No: 480710 5490 084) on behalf of Mokwena Family on property mentioned hereunder situated under **Steve Tshwete Local Municipality, Nkangala District in Mpumalanga Province KRP 1673**

CURRENT PARTICULARS OF THE PROPERTIES  
BOSCHMANSFONTEIN 182 IS

Description of property	Owner of Property	Title Deed Number	Extent of Property	Bonds	Bond Holder	Other Endorsements
The Remaining extent of Portion 1	Anne Trust (2101/2004)	T2852/2014	1030,2697 ha (Extent of claimed land is 180.55 ha)	B893/2014	Absa Bank Ltd	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• K11118/1985RM in favour of Steyn Daniel Elardus</li> <li>• K1466/1961S</li> <li>• K1680/1980PC</li> <li>• K1954/1992S</li> <li>• K2811/1996RM in favour of Fontein Minerale CC</li> <li>• K4403/1998S</li> <li>• K4427/1989RM</li> <li>• K50/1966PC</li> <li>• K6/1968S</li> <li>• VA2012//1996</li> </ul>

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner, Mpumalanga Province will investigate all the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, any party interested in the above mentioned property is hereby invited to submit within **30 (thirty days)** from the date of publication of this notice to submit any comments, or further information to:

**Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights**

Private Bag X7201

Witbank

1035

or Shop No. E 8

Saveways Crescent Centre

Cnr OR Tambo and Mandela Street

Witbank

1035

TEL NO: 013 655 1000

FAX NO: 013 690 2438

  
CHECKED BY: MISS CAROLINE FIPAZA  
LEGAL OFFICER  
DATE: 25/05/2018

  
MR. L.H. MAPHUTHA  
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER  
MPUMALANGA PROVINCE  
DATE: 25/05/2018

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 525

25 MAY 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994) that a claim for the restitution of land rights on the following properties have been lodged with the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: North - West and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will further investigate the claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course:

**Property Description :** Lusthof 79 IO (Goedgedacht 79 IO), Zoetmelkswallei 55 IP, Kalkfontein 77 IO, Bethlehem 75 IO, Dudfield 1490 IO, De Paarl 54 IO, Loslapdoorns 94 IO, Valksruit 53 IO (La Reys Stryd 53 IO), Herbina 52 IO (Kliplaagte 52 IO), Trekkdrift 360 JP, Vaalkopje 111 JO, Blaauwbank 119 JO, Elandsfontein 34 IP, Elizabeth 357 JP, Uitgevoonden 355 JP, Verlies 120 JO, Vallefontein 113 JO, Grootfontein 15 JO, Grasiagaagte 37 IO ( Houthaalbornen 31 IP), Noolgedacht 101 JO (Weltevereden 101 JO), Rietkolk 99 IO, Makoeispan 97 IO, Soetmelkvallei 55 IO (Sheila 55 IO), Klippan 155 IO, R/e of farm Slurry 96 IO, Dudfield 35 IP, Brakpan 35 IO, Keerom 96 IO, Taiboschpan 134 IO and Kalspruit 111 IO.

**Magisterial District :** Ngaka Modiri Molema

**Administrative District :** North - West

**Claimant :** Kgosi I. M. MATLABA

**Date claim lodged :** 18<sup>th</sup> December 1998

**Reference number :** DD 098

Any party/parties who have an interest in the above-mentioned properties is hereby invited to submit, within **30 days** from the date of publication of this notice, any representations and/ or information which shall assist the Commissioner in proving or disproving this claim. The affected party/parties shall be *ipso facto* barred from further doing so and the Commission shall continue with the subsequent processes towards completion of the investigation.

Any comments and information should be submitted to:

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner: North - West  
Private Bag X 08  
Mmabatho 2735  
Tel: (018) 388 7000

Submissions may also be hand delivered to Cnr James Moroka and Sekame Drive, West Gallery, Mega city, Mmabatho.

**MIR. LEBJANE MAPUTHA**  
**REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER**

DATE: 20/05/2018

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 526

25 MAY 2018

## GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT 22 OF 1994)/AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) as amended, that a land claim for Restitution of Land Rights has been lodged by the following on behalf of Mnguni Family on property mentioned hereunder situated under Victor Khaye Local Municipality, Nkangala District, Mpumalanga Province

NO	CLAIMANT NAMES	IDENTITY NUMBER	KRP
1	Mr. D J Mnguni (on behalf of Mnguni Family)	661204 5473 085	1208
2	Mr. S Mnguni (on behalf of Mnguni Family)	351006 5102 084	5419
3	Mr. Z S Mnguni (on behalf of Mnguni Family)	340917 5144 088	6595

CURRENT PARTICULARS OF THE PROPERTIES  
WELGEVONDEN 272 IR

Description of property	Owner of Property	Title Deed Number	Extent of Property	Bonds	Bond Holder	Other Endorsements
The Remaining extent of Portion 2	Cowenburg Boerdery Pty Ltd (200001581207)	T59276/2005	92.9655 ha	None	None	K1030/1989 RM in favour of Knoesen Petrus Wilhelmus K2630/1981RM K3004/1984RM K808/1994RM in favour of Louw Barend Christiaan VA18094/2000 in favour of Louw Barend Christiaan

Portion 3	Cowenburgh Boerdery CC [199505155423]	T64076/2002	132.8096 ha	B2151/2017	Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K1980/1980RM in favour of Southern Sphere Holdings Ltd
					Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K3004/1984RM K341/2014S VA4571/2002 in favour of Kruger Japie
					Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K2752/1993S
The Remaining extent of Portion 4	Cowenburgh Boerdery CC [199505155423]	T64076/2002	129.3834 ha	B2151/2017	Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K2792/1980RM
					Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K3004/1984RM K4944/1998S
					Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	VA4569/2002 in favour of Kruger Japie
Portion 6	Cowenburgh Boerdery Pty Ltd [200001581207]	T64076/2002	132.8096 ha	B2151/2017	Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K2752/1993S
					Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K2752/1993S
					Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K2792/1980RM K3004/1984RM VA4569/2002 in favour of Kruger Japie

The Remaining extent of Portion 8	Lategan Hendrick Daniel [5506025019085]	T111340/2004	66.4048 ha	None	South Africa	K1045/1965S K1482/1980RM in favour of Southern Sphere Holdings Ltd K3004/1984RM K3944/1987PC K2792/1980RM K3004/1984RM VA4569/2002 in favour of Kruger Japie
Portion 14	Cowenburgh Boerdery CC [199505155423]  Cowenburgh Boerdery Pty Ltd [200001581207]	T T64076/2002	3.4261 ha	B2151/2017  B2736/2015  B360/2012	Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa  Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa  Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa	K1030/1989RM in favour of Knoesen Petrus Wilhelmus K2630/1981RM K3004/1984RM K808/1994RM in favour of Louw Berend Christiaan VA18094/2000 in
Portion 16	Cowenburgh Boerdery Pty Ltd [200001581207]	T59276/2005	64.2627 ha	None	None	K1030/1989RM in favour of Knoesen Petrus Wilhelmus K2630/1981RM K3004/1984RM K808/1994RM in favour of Louw Berend Christiaan VA18094/2000 in

Portion 17	Cowenburg Boerdery Pty Ltd [200001581207]	T59276/2005	119.5287 ha	None	None	favour of Louw Berend Christiaan
Portion 18	Cowenburg Boerdery Pty Ltd [200001581207]	T59276/2005	39.8442 ha	None	None	K1030/1989RM in favour of Knoesen Petrus Wilhelmus K2630/1981RM K3004/1984RM K808/1994RM in favour of Louw Berend Christiaan VA18094/2000 in favour of Louw Berend Christiaan K1030/1989RM in favour of Knoesen Petrus Wilhelmus K2630/1981RM K3004/1984RM K79/1962S K808/1994RM in favour of Louw Berend Christiaan VA18094/2000 in favour of Louw Berend Christiaan

Portion 21	Rappard Frans Johannes [710210 5249 087]	T7293/2011	66.4048 ha	B588/20141	Standard Bank of South Africa	K1081/1988PC K1683/1965S K4136/1987PC
<b>WEILAAGTE 271 IR (Portion 4 consolidated to Portion 16 of the farm Weilaagte 271 IR)</b>						
<b>Description of property</b>	<b>Owner of Property</b>	<b>Title Deed Number</b>	<b>Extent of Property</b>	<b>Bonds</b>	<b>Bond Holder</b>	<b>Other Endorsements</b>
Portion 16	Koos Uys & Seun Boerdery CC [199701392823]	T11090/2016	334.2598 ha	B22241/2006 B23416/2004 B3080/2013 B73240/2002	FirstRand Bank Ltd FirstRand Bank Ltd FirstRand Bank Ltd FirstRand Bank Ltd	K1873/1980 RM K3593/1987PC K5582/1992RM K5970/1999RM in favour of B H P Billiton Energy Coal South Africa Ltd

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner, Mpumalanga Province will investigate all the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, any party interested in the above mentioned property is hereby invited to submit within **30 [thirty days]** from the date of publication of this notice to submit any comments, or further information to:

**Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights**

Private Bag X7201

Witbank

1035

or Shop No. E 8

Saveways Crescent Centre

Cnr OR Tambo and Mandela Street

Witbank

1035

TEL NO: 013 655 1000

FAX NO: 013 690 2438

  
CHECKED BY: MISS CAROLINE FIPAZA  
LEGAL OFFICER  
DATE: 05/05/2018

  
MR. L.H. MAPHUTHA  
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER  
MPUMALANGA PROVINCE  
DATE: 25/5/2018

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 527

25 MAY 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : KRP11093

CLAIMANT : Sibongiseni Ngubane

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION : Portion of an unregistered and unsurveyed land in Cabazana Location Mabunzi Village in Ward 26, in Mount Ayliff, Umzimvubu Local Municipality, Alfred Ndzo District Municipality

EXTENT OF LAND : 3.8512 Hectares

TITLE DEED : N/A

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY : Alfred Nzo

DATE SUBMITTED : 17 December 1998

CURRENT OWNER : Department of Rural Development and Land Reform

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape**  
**Department of Rural Development and Land Reform**  
**PO Box 1375**  
**East London**  
**5200**  
**Tel : 043 700 6000**  
**Fax : 043 743 3687**

  
**Mr. L.H. Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 528

25 MAY 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : 6/2/3/D/51/797/7233/5  
CLAIMANT : Krishnakumar Ranchod  
PROPERTY DESCRIPTION : Erf 64 & 65, Central Port Elizabeth  
EXTENT OF LAND : 232 sqm  
DISTRICT : Sarah Baartman  
TITLE DEED : N/A  
DATE SUBMITTED : 31 December 1998  
CURRENT OWNER : Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape  
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform  
PO Box 1375  
East London  
5200  
Tel : 043 700 6000  
Fax : 043 743 3687**



**Mr. L.H. Maphutha  
Regional Land Claims Commissioner**

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM**

NO. 529

25 MAY 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : 6/2/2/D/77/0/0/1

CLAIMANT : Jamani August Tom

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION : Strenpantain (registered as Streefontein),  
Fam no. 237, in Burgersdorp in Gariiep Local  
Municipality, Joe Gqabi District Municipality

EXTENT OF LAND : 1031.4629 Hectares

TITLE DEED : No.:1920:279:17259

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY : Joe Gqabi

DATE SUBMITTED : 11/11/1998

CURRENT OWNER : Hendrik Baltazar Van Der Walt

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape**  
**Department of Rural Development and Land Reform**  
**PO Box 1375**  
**East London**  
**5200**  
**Tel : 043 700 6000**  
**Fax : 043 743 3687**



**Mr. L.H. Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 530

25 MAY 2018

**AMENDMENT OF GAZETTE 925 OF 2003 DATED 28<sup>TH</sup> MARCH 2003 AS CONTAINED IN GOVERNMENT GAZETTE NUMBER 24600 IN RESPECT OF THE FARM ULLAPOOL NO. 493 COMMONLY KNOWN AS CICIRHA FARM SITUATED IN ELLIOT, SAKHISIZWE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY UNDER CHRIS HANI DISTRICT, EASTERN CAPE PROVINCE.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11 A (4) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, No, 22 of 1994 as amended, due to a an error in the gazette notice 626 of 2009 dated the 29<sup>th</sup> of May 2009 as Contained in the Gazette Number 32253.

The above mentioned gazette notice is hereby amended to include the following correct property under claim.

**Reference No.** : **KRO – 6/2/2/D/108/0/0/9**

**Claimant** : **Mr Ferdinand Lwazi Bunyonyo**

**Property Description** : **Farm Ullapool 493 also known as Cicirha Farm situate in Elliot, Sakhisizwe Local Municipality under Chris Hani District, Eastern Cape Province.**

**Extent of Land** : **976 Morgen, 282 Square Roods**

**Current Title Deed** : **T20469/2004**

**Date Submitted** : **01 October 1998**

**Current Owner** : **Koyo Communal Property Association**

**Current Land Use** : **Agricultural Activities**

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Free State and Eastern Cape and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will further investigate the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, as amended in due course.

Any party who has an interest in the abovementioned land claim is hereby invited to submit, within 30 days from the date of the publication of this Notice, any comments / information to :

**The Regional Land Claims Commissioner**  
**Eastern Cape**  
**P .O. Box 15402**  
**Beacon Bay**  
**East London**  
**5241**

**Tel: (043) 700 6000**  
**Fax: (043) 743 3687**

  
**Mr. Lebjane Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**  
**(Free State Province)**

**Date:** 2018/04/09

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 531

25 MAY 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994  
(ACT NO. 22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994 as amended), that claim/s for restitution of land rights on:

REF NO.	CLAIMANT	PROPERTY	LOT NUMBER	DISTRICT	CURRENT OWNER	LAND	INTERESTED PARTIES
CD 002	Ms Thandie Gladys Duduzane	Lot No. 1967, 1968, 1969 and 2061 Pimville	Lot No. 1967, 1968, 1969 and 2061 Pimville	Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality	Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality	Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality	Department of Rural Development and Land Reform Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality

has/have been submitted to the office of the Regional Land Claim Commission. The Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of Rule 5 of the Rules Regarding Procedure of Commission Established in terms of section 16 of Restitution of Land Rights Act as amended. Any interested party on the claim is hereby invited to submit, representations in terms of section 11A of the Restitution of Land Rights Act No. 22 of 1994 as amended within 90 (ninety) working days from the publication date of this notice, any comments/information may be send to:



MR. L.H. MAPHUTHA  
The Regional Land Claims Commissioner  
Gauteng Province  
Private Bag X 03  
ARCADIA  
0007  
TEL: (012) 310-6500/6620  
FAX: (012) 323-2961

## GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS

## DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

## NOTICE 265 OF 2018



**National Agricultural  
Marketing Council**  
Promoting market access for South African agriculture

Block A | 4th Floor | Meintjiesplein Building | 536 Francis Baard Street | Arcadia | 0002  
Private Bag X935 | Pretoria | 0001  
Tel: 012 341 1115 | Fax: 012 341 1811/1911  
<http://www.namc.co.za>

**MACADAMIA INDUSTRY  
APPLICATION FOR THE CONTINUATION OF STATUTORY MEASURES**

**NAMC REQUESTING COMMENTS FROM INDUSTRY ROLE PLAYERS**

On 15 May 2018, Macadamia South Africa Non Profit Company (SAMAC), applied on behalf of directly affected groups in the macadamia industry, to the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, for the continuation of statutory measures (levies, registration and record & returns) on macadamia nuts, husk, kernels or in-shell, trees (both in nurseries and in the field), in terms of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act No.47 of 1996) (MAP Act). The current statutory measures will lapse on 14 November 2018.

Recently, members of the Southern African Macadamia Growers' Association changed its structure and approved the incorporation of the voluntarily association into a non-profit company. The existing voluntary association and its' Board will continue to exist until November 2018 (for legal and administrative purposes only). The new registered SAMAC Board (non-profit company) will in future manage the affairs of the macadamia industry.

SAMAC applied for the following statutory measures and it is proposed that the statutory measures be implemented for a new four year period (from 15 November 2018 to 14 November 2022):

<b>Statutory measure</b>	<b>Product</b>	<b>Directly affected groups</b>
A levy of R0.50/kg Dry-Nut-In-Shell (DNIS) (excluding VAT)	Macadamia nuts	Producers; processors; traders; and importers.
Registration with SAMAC	Macadamia nuts; and macadamia products for sales as nut in-shell	Producers; Processors; traders; importers; person who consolidate macadamia nuts; and nurseries.
Keeping of records and submitting of returns to SAMAC	Macadamia nuts (in-shell and kernel); and macadamia trees	Producers; Processors; traders; importers; person who consolidate macadamia nuts; and nurseries.

The proposed levies will finance functions such as research, transformation, quality standards, generic proportions and industry liaison (with government and other bodies both locally and internationally).

The current and proposed statutory levies (excluding VAT) are as follows:

Period	Current levy	Proposed levy			
	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
Rand/kg DNIS	R0.23	R0.50	R0.56	R0.62	R0.68

According to SAMAC, the reason for the increase is due to low income generated from the existing levy. SAMAC is of the opinion, that the increase in statutory levy will assist the macadamia industry to function and grow to its full potential.

Statutory measures relating to registration, records and returns are necessary to:

- Ensure the availability and provision of continuous, timeous and accurate information relating to macadamia nuts and macadamia nut products to all stakeholders in the industry, which is essential in ensuring informed decision making, and a stable and profitable industry;
- Ensure adherence to sound product handling, quality control systems and ethical trading; as well as transformation of the industry, and
- Administration of the proposed levy.

The continuation of these statutory measures will assist in promoting the efficiency of the marketing of macadamia nuts and its products and the viability of the macadamia nut industry should thus be enhanced. The measures will not be detrimental to food security, the number of employment opportunities or to fair labour practice within the economy.

The National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC) took cognisance that the proposed continuation of the statutory measures relating to levies, registration, the keeping of records and the rendering of returns in the macadamia nut industry as requested by SAMAC, is consistent with the objectives of the MAP Act. The request is currently being investigated by the NAMC and recommendations in this regard will be made to the Minister in the near future.

Directly affected groups in the macadamia nut industry are kindly requested to submit any comments regarding support or objections relating to the proposed statutory measures to the NAMC in writing before or on 15 June 2018, to enable the Council to finalise its recommendation to the Minister in this regard.

#### ENQUIRIES:

National Agricultural Marketing Council  
 Mr. Elekanyani Nekhavhambe  
 E-mail: enekhavambe@namc.co.za  
 Tel no.: 012 341 1115  
 Fax no.: 012 341 1911

**INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA  
NOTICE 266 OF 2018**



**PURSUANT TO SECTION 34 (2) AND 34 (5) OF THE ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS  
ACT 2005, (ACT NO. 36 OF 2005)**

**HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING THE FINAL NATIONAL RADIO  
FREQUENCY PLAN 2018.**

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), in terms of section 34 (2) and (5) of the Electronic Communications Act (Act No. 36 of 2005, as amended) hereby publishes a notice of the "**National Radio Frequency Plan 2018**".

---

**RUBBEN MOHLALOGA  
CHAIRPERSON**

**NATIONAL RADIO FREQUENCY PLAN 2018  
(NRFP-18)**

**8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz**

**INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA**

## Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ACRONYMS .....</b>	<b>1-5</b>
1.1	Terms and definitions .....	1-5
1.2	Acronyms .....	1-13
<b>2</b>	<b>PREAMBLE .....</b>	<b>2-17</b>
2.1	Legislative Framework .....	2-17
2.2	ITU-R Radio Regions .....	2-18
2.3	Structure of the Table of Frequency Allocations.....	2-19
2.3.1	Column 1 - ITU Region 1 Allocations and footnotes .....	2-19
2.3.2	Column 2 – South African allocations and footnotes .....	2-19
2.3.3	Column 3 – Typical Applications .....	2-20
2.3.4	Column 4 – Notes and comments .....	2-20
2.3.5	ITU-R Region 1 and National Footnotes .....	2-20
2.3.6	List of frequency bands used for Maritime services .....	2-20
2.3.7	Frequency and wavelength bands .....	2-20
2.5	Contact details.....	2-22
<b>3</b>	<b>Table of frequency allocations .....</b>	<b>3-23</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Radio Astronomy .....</b>	<b>4-200</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>National Footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations.....</b>	<b>5-201</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>ITU Radio Regulations Footnotes .....</b>	<b>6-208</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>List of frequency bands used for Maritime services .....</b>	<b>7-262</b>

## 1 TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ACRONYMS

### 1.1 Terms and definitions

These definitions are for the purposes of the NRFP and do not necessarily apply elsewhere.

<i>adaptive system:</i>	A radiocommunication system which varies its radio characteristics according to channel quality.
<i>administration</i>	Any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
<i>allocation (of a frequency band)</i>	Entry in the Table of Frequency Allocations of a given frequency band for the purpose of its use by one or more terrestrial or space radiocommunication services or the radio astronomy service under specified conditions. This term shall also be applied to the frequency band concerned.
<i>allotment (of a radio frequency or radio frequency channel)</i>	Entry of a designated frequency channel in an agreed plan, adopted by a competent conference, for use by one or more administrations for a terrestrial or space radiocommunication service in one or more identified countries or geographical areas and under specified conditions.
<i>assignment (of a radio frequency or radio frequency channel)</i>	Authorization given by an administration for a radio station to use a radio frequency or radio frequency channel under specified conditions.
<i>aeronautical earth station:</i>	An <i>earth station</i> in the <i>fixed-satellite service</i> , or, in some cases, in the <i>aeronautical mobile-satellite service</i> , located at a specified fixed point on land to provide a <i>feeder link</i> for the <i>aeronautical mobile-satellite service</i> .
<i>aeronautical mobile (OR)** service:</i>	An <i>aeronautical mobile service</i> intended for communications, including those relating to flight coordination, primarily outside national or international civil air routes.
<i>aeronautical mobile (R)* service:</i>	An <i>aeronautical mobile service</i> reserved for communications relating to safety and regularity of flight, primarily along national or international civil air routes.
<i>aeronautical mobile service:</i>	A <i>mobile service</i> between <i>aeronautical stations</i> and <i>aircraft stations</i> , or between <i>aircraft stations</i> , in which <i>survival craft stations</i> may participate; <i>emergency position-indicating radiobeacon stations</i> may also participate in this service on designated distress and emergency frequencies.
<i>aeronautical mobile-satellite (OR)** service:</i>	An <i>aeronautical mobile-satellite service</i> intended for communications, including those relating to flight coordination, primarily outside national and international civil air routes.
<i>aeronautical mobile-satellite (R)* service:</i>	An <i>aeronautical mobile-satellite service</i> reserved for communications relating to safety and regularity of flights, primarily along national or international civil air routes.
<i>aeronautical mobile-satellite service:</i>	A <i>mobile-satellite service</i> in which <i>mobile earth stations</i> are located on board aircraft; <i>survival craft stations</i> and <i>emergency position-indicating radiobeacon stations</i> may also participate in this service.
<i>aeronautical radionavigation service:</i>	A <i>radionavigation service</i> intended for the benefit and for the safe operation of aircraft.

\*\* (OR): off-route.

\* (R): route.

<i>aeronautical radionavigation-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radionavigation-satellite service</i> in which <i>earth stations</i> are located on board aircraft.
<i>aeronautical station:</i>	A <i>land station</i> in the <i>aeronautical mobile service</i> . In certain instances, an aeronautical station may be located, for example, on board ship or on a platform at sea.
<i>aircraft earth station:</i>	A <i>mobile earth station</i> in the <i>aeronautical mobile-satellite service</i> located on board an aircraft.
<i>aircraft station:</i>	A <i>mobile station</i> in the <i>aeronautical mobile service</i> , other than a <i>survival craft station</i> , located on board an aircraft.
<i>amateur service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> for the purpose of self-training, intercommunication and technical investigations carried out by amateurs; that is, by duly authorized persons interested in radio technique solely with a personal aim and without pecuniary interest.
<i>amateur station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>amateur service</i> .
<i>amateur-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> using <i>space stations</i> on <i>earth satellites</i> for the same purposes as those of the <i>amateur service</i> .
<i>base earth station:</i>	An <i>earth station</i> in the <i>fixed-satellite service</i> or, in some cases, in the <i>land mobile-satellite service</i> , located at a specified fixed point or within a specified area on land to provide a <i>feeder link</i> for the <i>land mobile-satellite service</i> .
<i>base station:</i>	A <i>land station</i> in the <i>land mobile service</i> .
<i>broadcasting service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> in which the transmissions are intended for direct reception by the general public. This service may include sound transmissions, <i>television</i> transmissions or other types of transmission (CS).
<i>broadcasting station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>broadcasting service</i> .
<i>broadcasting-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> in which signals transmitted or retransmitted by <i>space stations</i> are intended for direct reception by the general public. In the <i>broadcasting-satellite service</i> , the term “direct reception” shall encompass both <i>individual reception</i> and <i>community reception</i> .
<i>coast earth station:</i>	An <i>earth station</i> in the <i>fixed-satellite service</i> or, in some cases, in the <i>maritime mobile-satellite service</i> , located at a specified fixed point on land to provide a <i>feeder link</i> for the <i>maritime mobile-satellite service</i> .
<i>coast station:</i>	A <i>land station</i> in the <i>maritime mobile service</i> .
<i>Coordinated Universal Time (UTC):</i>	Time scale, based on the second (SI), as described in Resolution 655 (WRC-15). (WRC-15). For most practical purposes associated with the Radio Regulations, UTC is equivalent to mean solar time at the prime meridian (0° longitude), formerly expressed in GMT.
<i>Earth exploration-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> between <i>earth stations</i> and one or more <i>space stations</i> , which may include links between <i>space stations</i> , in which: – information relating to the characteristics of the Earth and its natural phenomena, including data relating to the state of the environment, is obtained from <i>active sensors</i> or <i>passive sensors</i> on <i>Earth satellites</i> ; – similar information is collected from airborne or Earth-based platforms; – such information may be distributed to earth stations within the system concerned; – platform interrogation may be included.  This service may also include <i>feeder links</i> necessary for its operation.

<i>earth station:</i>	A <i>station</i> located either on the Earth's surface or within the major portion of the Earth's atmosphere and intended for communication: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– with one or more <i>space stations</i>; or</li> <li>– with one or more <i>stations</i> of the same kind by means of one or more reflecting <i>satellites</i> or other objects in space.</li> </ul>
<i>emergency position-indicating radiobeacon station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>mobile service</i> the <i>emissions</i> of which are intended to facilitate search and rescue operations.
<i>experimental station:</i>	A <i>station</i> utilizing <i>radio waves</i> in experiments with a view to the development of science or technique. This definition does not include <i>amateur stations</i> .
<i>facsimile</i>	A form of telegraphy for the transmission of fixed images, with or without half-tones, with a view to their reproduction in a permanent form.
<i>feeder link:</i>	A radio link from an <i>earth station</i> at a given location to a <i>space station</i> , or vice versa, conveying information for a <i>space radiocommunication service</i> other than for the <i>fixed-satellite service</i> . The given location may be at a specified fixed point, or at any fixed point within specified areas.
<i>fixed service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> between specified fixed points.
<i>fixed station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>fixed service</i> .
<i>fixed-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> between <i>earth stations</i> at given positions, when one or more <i>satellites</i> are used; the given position may be a specified fixed point or any fixed point within specified areas; in some cases, this service includes satellite-to-satellite links, which may also be operated in the <i>inter-satellite service</i> ; the fixed-satellite service may also include <i>feeder links</i> for other <i>space radiocommunication services</i> .
<i>frequency-shift telegraphy</i>	Telegraphy by frequency modulation in which the telegraph signal shifts the frequency of the carrier between predetermined values.
<i>high altitude platform station:</i>	A station located on an object at an altitude of 20 to 50 km and at a specified, nominal, fixed point relative to the Earth.
<i>industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) applications (of radio frequency energy):</i>	Operation of equipment or appliances designed to generate and use locally radio frequency energy for industrial, scientific, medical, domestic or similar purposes, excluding applications in the field of <i>telecommunications</i> .
<i>instrument landing system (ILS):</i>	A <i>radionavigation system</i> which provides aircraft with horizontal and vertical guidance just before and during landing and, at certain fixed points, indicates the distance to the reference point of landing.
<i>instrument landing system glide path:</i>	A system of vertical guidance embodied in the <i>instrument landing system</i> which indicates the vertical deviation of the aircraft from its optimum path of descent.
<i>instrument landing system localizer:</i>	A system of horizontal guidance embodied in the <i>instrument landing system</i> which indicates the horizontal deviation of the aircraft from its optimum path of descent along the axis of the runway.
<i>inter-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> providing links between artificial <i>satellites</i> .
<i>land earth station:</i>	An <i>earth station</i> in the <i>fixed-satellite service</i> or, in some cases, in the <i>mobile-satellite service</i> , located at a specified fixed point or within a specified area on land to provide a <i>feeder link</i> for the <i>mobile-satellite service</i> .
<i>land mobile earth station:</i>	A <i>mobile earth station</i> in the <i>land mobile-satellite service</i> capable of surface movement within the geographical limits of a country or continent.

<i>land mobile service:</i>	A <i>mobile service</i> between <i>base stations</i> and <i>land mobile stations</i> , or between <i>land mobile stations</i> .
<i>land mobile station:</i>	A <i>mobile station</i> in the <i>land mobile service</i> capable of surface movement within the geographical limits of a country or continent.
<i>land mobile-satellite service:</i>	A <i>mobile-satellite service</i> in which <i>mobile earth stations</i> are located on land.
<i>land station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>mobile service</i> not intended to be used while in motion.
<i>maritime mobile service:</i>	A <i>mobile service</i> between <i>coast stations</i> and <i>ship stations</i> , or between <i>ship stations</i> , or between associated <i>on-board communication stations</i> ; <i>survival craft stations</i> and <i>emergency position-indicating radiobeacon stations</i> may also participate in this service.
<i>maritime mobile-satellite service:</i>	A <i>mobile-satellite service</i> in which <i>mobile earth stations</i> are located on board ships; <i>survival craft stations</i> and <i>emergency position-indicating radiobeacon stations</i> may also participate in this service.
<i>maritime radionavigation service:</i>	A <i>radionavigation service</i> intended for the benefit and for the safe operation of ships.
<i>maritime radionavigation-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radionavigation-satellite service</i> in which <i>earth stations</i> are located on board ships.
<i>marker beacon:</i>	A transmitter in the <i>aeronautical radionavigation service</i> which radiates vertically a distinctive pattern for providing position information to aircraft.
<i>meteorological aids service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> used for meteorological, including hydrological, observations and exploration.
<i>meteorological aids land station:</i> <i>meteorological aids mobile station:</i> <i>meteorological-satellite service:</i> <i>meteorological aids land station:</i> <i>meteorological aids mobile station:</i> <i>meteorological-satellite service:</i>	A station in the meteorological aids service not intended to be used while in motion.
<i>meteorological aids mobile station:</i>	A station in the meteorological aids service intended to be used while in motion or during halts at unspecified points.
<i>meteorological-satellite service:</i>	An <i>earth exploration-satellite service</i> for meteorological purposes.
<i>mobile earth station:</i>	An <i>earth station</i> in the <i>mobile-satellite service</i> intended to be used while in motion or during halts at unspecified points.
<i>mobile service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> between <i>mobile</i> and <i>land stations</i> , or between <i>mobile stations</i> (CV).
<i>mobile station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>mobile service</i> intended to be used while in motion or during halts at unspecified points.
<i>mobile-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– between <i>mobile earth stations</i> and one or more <i>space stations</i>, or between <i>space stations</i> used by this service; or</li> <li>– between <i>mobile earth stations</i> by means of one or more <i>space stations</i>.</li> </ul>

	This service may also include <i>feeder links</i> necessary for its operation.
<i>multi-satellite link:</i>	A radio link between a transmitting <i>earth station</i> and a receiving <i>earth station</i> through two or more <i>satellites</i> , without any intermediate <i>earth station</i> . A multi-satellite link comprises one up-link, one or more satellite-to-satellite links and one down-link.
<i>on-board communication station:</i>	A low-powered <i>mobile station</i> in the <i>maritime mobile service</i> intended for use for internal communications on board a ship, or between a ship and its lifeboats and life-rafts during lifeboat drills or operations, or for communication within a group of vessels being towed or pushed, as well as for line handling and mooring instructions.
<i>port operations service:</i>	A <i>maritime mobile service</i> in or near a port, between <i>coast stations</i> and <i>ship stations</i> , or between <i>ship stations</i> , in which messages are restricted to those relating to the operational handling, the movement and the safety of ships and, in emergency, to the safety of persons. Messages which are of a <i>public correspondence</i> nature shall be excluded from this service.
<i>port station:</i>	A <i>coast station</i> in the <i>port operations service</i> .
<i>primary radar:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination</i> system based on the comparison of reference signals with radio signals reflected from the position to be determined.
<i>public correspondence</i>	Any <i>telecommunication</i> which the offices and <i>stations</i> must, by reason of their being at the disposal of the public, accept for transmission (CS).
<i>radar beacon (racon):</i>	A transmitter-receiver associated with a fixed navigational mark which, when triggered by a <i>radar</i> , automatically returns a distinctive signal which can appear on the display of the triggering <i>radar</i> , providing range, bearing and identification information.
<i>radar:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination</i> system based on the comparison of reference signals with radio signals reflected, or retransmitted, from the position to be determined.
<i>radio</i>	A general term applied to the use of radio waves.
<i>radio altimeter:</i>	<i>Radionavigation</i> equipment, on board an aircraft or <i>spacecraft</i> , used to determine the height of the aircraft or the <i>spacecraft</i> above the Earth's surface or another surface.
<i>radio astronomy</i>	Astronomy based on the reception of <i>radio waves</i> of cosmic origin.
<i>radio astronomy service:</i>	A service involving the use of <i>radio astronomy</i> .
<i>radio astronomy station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radio astronomy service</i> .
<i>radio astronomy:</i>	Astronomy based on the reception of <i>radio waves</i> of cosmic origin.
<i>radio direction-finding station:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination station</i> using <i>radio direction-finding</i> .
<i>radio direction-finding:</i>	<i>Radiodetermination</i> using the reception of <i>radio waves</i> for the purpose of determining the direction of a <i>station</i> or object.
<i>radiobeacon station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radionavigation service</i> the <i>emissions</i> of which are intended to enable a <i>mobile station</i> to determine its bearing or direction in relation to the radiobeacon station.
<i>radiocommunication</i>	<i>Telecommunication</i> by means of <i>radio waves</i> (CS) (CV).
<i>radiocommunication service:</i>	A service as defined in this Section involving the transmission, <i>emission</i> and/or reception of <i>radio waves</i> for specific <i>telecommunication</i> purposes. In these Regulations, unless otherwise stated, any radiocommunication service relates to <i>terrestrial radiocommunication</i> .

<i>radiodetermination:</i>	The determination of the position, velocity and/or other characteristics of an object, or the obtaining of information relating to these parameters, by means of the propagation properties of <i>radio waves</i> .
<i>radiodetermination service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> for the purpose of <i>radiodetermination</i> .
<i>radiodetermination Station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radiodetermination service</i> .
<i>radiodetermination-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> for the purpose of <i>radiodetermination</i> involving the use of one or more <i>space stations</i> . This service may also include <i>feeder links</i> necessary for its own operation.
<i>radio direction-finding</i>	<i>Radiodetermination</i> using the reception of <i>radio waves</i> for the purpose of determining the direction of a <i>station</i> or object.
<i>radiolocation land station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radiolocation service</i> not intended to be used while in motion.
<i>radiolocation mobile station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radiolocation service</i> intended to be used while in motion or during halts at unspecified points.
<i>radiolocation:</i>	<i>Radiodetermination</i> used for purposes other than those of <i>radionavigation</i> .
<i>radiolocation service:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination service</i> for the purpose of <i>radiolocation</i> .
<i>radiolocation-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination-satellite service</i> used for the purpose of <i>radiolocation</i> . This service may also include the <i>feeder links</i> necessary for its operation.
<i>radionavigation</i>	<i>Radiodetermination</i> used for the purposes of navigation, including obstruction warning.
<i>radionavigation land station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radionavigation service</i> not intended to be used while in motion.
<i>radionavigation mobile station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>radionavigation service</i> intended to be used while in motion or during halts at unspecified points.
<i>radionavigation service:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination service</i> for the purpose of <i>radionavigation</i> .
<i>radionavigation:</i>	<i>Radiodetermination</i> used for the purposes of navigation, including obstruction warning.
<i>radionavigation-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination-satellite service</i> used for the purpose of <i>radionavigation</i> . This service may also include <i>feeder links</i> necessary for its operation.
<i>radiosonde:</i>	An automatic radio transmitter in the <i>meteorological aids service</i> usually carried on an aircraft, free balloon, kite or parachute, and which transmits meteorological data.
<i>radiotelegram</i>	A telegram, originating in or intended for a mobile station or a mobile earth station transmitted on all or part of its route over the radiocommunication channels of the mobile service or of the mobile-satellite service.
<i>radiotelex call</i>	A telex call, originating in or intended for a mobile station or a mobile earth station, transmitted on all or part of its route over the radiocommunication channels of the mobile service or the mobile-satellite service.
<i>radio waves or hertzian waves</i>	Electromagnetic waves of frequencies arbitrarily lower than 3 000 GHz, propagated in space without artificial guide
<i>safety service:</i>	Any <i>radiocommunication service</i> used permanently or temporarily for the safeguarding of human life and property.
<i>satellite emergency position-indicating radiobeacon:</i>	An <i>earth station</i> in the <i>mobile-satellite service</i> the <i>emissions</i> of which are intended to facilitate search and rescue operations.
<i>satellite link:</i>	A radio link between a transmitting <i>earth station</i> and a receiving <i>earth station</i> through one <i>satellite</i> .

	A satellite link comprises one up-link and one down-link.
<i>satellite network:</i>	A <i>satellite system</i> or a part of a <i>satellite system</i> , consisting of only one <i>satellite</i> and the cooperating <i>earth stations</i> .
<i>satellite system:</i>	A <i>space system</i> using one or more artificial earth <i>satellites</i> .
<i>secondary radar:</i>	A <i>radiodetermination</i> system based on the comparison of reference signals with radio signals retransmitted from the position to be determined.
<i>ship earth station:</i>	A <i>mobile earth station</i> in the <i>maritime mobile-satellite service</i> located on board ship.
<i>ship movement service:</i>	A <i>safety service</i> in the <i>maritime mobile service</i> other than a <i>port operations service</i> , between <i>coast stations</i> and <i>ship stations</i> , or between <i>ship stations</i> , in which messages are restricted to those relating to the movement of ships. Messages which are of a <i>public correspondence</i> nature shall be excluded from this service.
<i>ship station:</i>	A <i>mobile station</i> in the <i>maritime mobile service</i> located on board a vessel which is not permanently moored, other than a <i>survival craft station</i> .
<i>ship's emergency transmitter:</i>	A ship's transmitter to be used exclusively on a distress frequency for distress, urgency or safety purposes.
<i>space operation service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> concerned exclusively with the operation of <i>spacecraft</i> , in particular <i>space tracking</i> , <i>space telemetry</i> and <i>space telecommand</i> . These functions will normally be provided within the service in which the <i>space station</i> is operating.
<i>space radiocommunication</i>	Any <i>radiocommunication</i> involving the use of one or more <i>space stations</i> or the use of one or more <i>reflecting satellites</i> or other objects in space.
<i>space research service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> in which <i>spacecraft</i> or other objects in space are used for scientific or technological research purposes.
<i>space station:</i>	A <i>station</i> located on an object which is beyond, is intended to go beyond, or has been beyond, the major portion of the Earth's atmosphere.
<i>space system:</i>	Any group of cooperating <i>earth stations</i> and/or <i>space stations</i> employing <i>space radiocommunication</i> for specific purposes.
<i>special service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> , not otherwise defined in this Section, carried on exclusively for specific needs of general utility, and not open to <i>public correspondence</i> .
<i>standard frequency and time signal service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> for scientific, technical and other purposes, providing the transmission of specified frequencies, time signals, or both, of stated high precision, intended for general reception.
<i>standard frequency and time signal station:</i>	A <i>station</i> in the <i>standard frequency and time signal service</i> .
<i>standard frequency and time signal-satellite service:</i>	A <i>radiocommunication service</i> using <i>space stations</i> on earth <i>satellites</i> for the same purposes as those of the <i>standard frequency and time signal service</i> . This service may also include <i>feeder links</i> necessary for its operation.
<i>station:</i>	One or more transmitters or receivers or a combination of transmitters and receivers, including the accessory equipment, necessary at one location for carrying on a <i>radiocommunication service</i> , or the <i>radio astronomy service</i> . Each station shall be classified by the service in which it operates permanently or temporarily.
<i>survival craft station:</i>	A <i>mobile station</i> in the <i>maritime mobile service</i> or the <i>aeronautical mobile service</i> intended solely for survival purposes and located on any lifeboat, life-raft or other survival equipment.

<i>telecommunication</i>	Any transmission, emission or reception of signs, signals, writings, images and sounds or intelligence of any nature by wire, radio, optical or other electromagnetic systems (CS).
<i>telegraphy</i>	A form of telecommunication in which the transmitted information is intended to be recorded on arrival as a graphic document; the transmitted information may sometimes be presented in an alternative form or may be stored for subsequent use (CS 1016).
<i>telephony</i>	A form of telecommunication primarily intended for the exchange of information in the form of speech (CS 1017).
<i>telegram</i>	Written matter intended to be transmitted by telegraphy for delivery to the addressee. This term also includes radiotelegrams unless otherwise specified (CS). In this definition the term telegraphy has the same general meaning as defined in the Convention.
<i>terrestrial radiocommunication</i>	Any radiocommunication other than space radiocommunication or radio astronomy
<i>terrestrial station:</i>	A <i>station</i> effecting <i>terrestrial radiocommunication</i> . In these Regulations, unless otherwise stated, any <i>station</i> is a terrestrial station.

## 1.2 Acronyms

AAA	Astronomy Advantage Area
AGAA	Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act No. 21 of 2007)
ASDE	Airports Surface Detection Equipment
ATC/CGC	Auxiliary Terrestrial Component /Complimentary Ground Component
BFWA	Broadband Fixed Wireless Access
BSS	Broadcast Satellite Service
BTX	Base Transmit
C-band	Frequency range between about 4 and 6 GHz
CT2	Second generation cordless telephones operating to specification MPT1334.
dBW	Decibels relative to one Watt of power.
DECT	Digital European Cordless Telecommunication system. ERC Decision ERC/DEC/(94)03 refers.
DF	Duplex Frequency
DSC	Digital Selective Calling
DSSS	Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum
ECA	Electronic Communications Act No 36 of 2005
ENG	Electronic News Gathering
ENG/OB	Electronic News Gathering / Outside Broadcasting
EPIRB	Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon
FDDA	Field Disturbance and Doppler Apparatus
FM	Frequency Modulation
FSS	Fixed Satellite Service
FWA	Fixed Wireless Access

---

GLONASS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GMDSS	Global Maritime Distress and Safety System.
GPRS	General Packet Radio Service
GPS	Global Positioning System - a satellite radio navigation system.
GSM	Global System for Mobile communications. Originally Groupe Spécial Mobile. See ERC Decision ERC/DEC/(94)01.
GSM 900	GSM using 900 MHz frequencies
GSM-R	GSM Railways
GSO	Geostationary Orbit
HAP	High Altitude Platform
HDFS	High Density Fixed Service
HDFSS	High Density Fixed Satellite Service
HF	High Frequency (3 to 30 MHz)
HDFS	Hadoop Distributed File System
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
ILS	Instrument Landing System-aeronautical radio navigation system.
IMO	International Maritime Organisation
IMT	International Mobile Telecommunications
ISM	Industrial, Scientific and Medical. The use of radio for non-communication purposes such as microwave heating etc.
ITU	International Telecommunication Union.
Ka-band	Part of the frequency band between about 18 and 30 GHz
Ku-band	Part of the frequency band between about 12 and 18 GHz
L-band	Frequency band around 1.5 GHz

LEO	Low Earth Orbit satellite
LF	Low Frequency (30 to 300 kHz)
LMDS	Local Multipoint Distribution Services
LPVS	Low Power Video Surveillance
LTE	Long Term Evolution
MF	Medium Frequency (300 to 3000 kHz)
MMS	Maritime Mobile Service
MPT	Mobile Public Trunking
MSS	Mobile Satellite Service
NGSO	Non-geostationary Satellite Orbit
OB	Outside Broadcast.
PAMR	Public Access Mobile Radio.
PMR	Private Mobile Radio.
PPDR	Public Protection and Disaster Relief
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network
RFID	Radio Frequency Identification systems
RLAN	Radio Local Area Network
RNSS	Radio Navigation Satellite Service
RR	Radio Regulation of the International Telecommunication Union
RTT	Road Transport Telematics
SAB	Services Ancillary to Broadcasting
SABRE	South African Band Replanning Exercise
SADC	Southern African Development Community
SAP	Services Ancillary to Programme-making

---

S-DAB	Satellite Digital Audio Broadcasting
SHF	Super High Frequency (3 to 30 GHz)
SKA	Square Kilometre Array
SNG	Satellite News Gathering
SRDs	Short Range Devices, formerly referred to as Low Power Devices (LPDs).
T-DAB	Terrestrial Digital Audio Broadcasting.
TDD	Time Division Duplex
UHF	Ultra High Frequency (300 to 3000 MHz)
UAV	Unmanned Aerial Vehicle
VHF	Very High Frequency (30 to 300 MHz)
VLF	Very Low Frequency (3 to 30 kHz)
VOR	Very high frequency Omnidirectional Range (aeronautical radionavigation system).
VSAT	Very Small Aperture Terminal
WAS	Wireless Access Services
WARC	World Administrative Radio Conference. The last WARC was held in 1992. WARCs are now superseded by WRCs.
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network
WRC	World Radiocommunication Conference.

## 2 PREAMBLE

### 2.1 Legislative Framework

The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005), herein after referred to as the Act; provides for the control of the radio frequency spectrum.

In carrying out its functions under the Act and the related legislation, the Authority controls, plans, administers and manages the use and licensing of the radio frequency spectrum in terms of section 30(1) of the Act.

This National Radio Frequency Plan 2018 (NRFP-18) has been prepared under Section 34 of the Act.

The NRFP-18 allocates the Radio Frequency Spectrum to Radio Services in the Frequency Bands between 8.3 kHz and 3000 GHz. All frequency assignments must be in accordance national radio frequency plan.

This revised NRFP-18 incorporates the decisions taken by 2015 World Radiocommunication Conferences (WRC-15). The revision reflects the 2016 version of the ITU Radio Regulations edition, including the frequency allocations relevant to Region 1 and its associated footnotes. It also includes updates on the Table of Frequency Allocations extending up to 3000 GHz and South African National Footnotes. The revised NRFP-18 further reflects agreements taken at regional level including that of the African Telecommunication Union (ATU) and the Southern African Development Community (SADC)<sup>1</sup> Frequency Allocation Plan (FAP)<sup>2</sup>. These aforementioned agreements do not supersede any regulations developed by the Authority.

The Authority consulted with the government Department that is responsible for approving the frequency band plan as prescribed in the Electronic Communications Act, to incorporate the radio frequency spectrum allocated by the Minister for use by security services taking into account the Government's current and planned use of radio frequency spectrum, including but not limited to, civil aviation, and aeronautical services and scientific research. This updated version of the NRFP-18 incorporates the outcome of the public consultation as mandated by the EC Act.

A document containing relevant ITU – R Resolutions and Recommendations referred in this document can be found on the Authority's website.

The pattern of radio use is not static as it is continuously evolving to reflect the many changes that are taking place in the radio environment; particularly in the field of technology. Spectrum allocations must reflect these changes and the position set out in this plan is therefore subject to regular reviews.

In view of the above, it is the intention of the Authority to update the NRFP when necessary in order to keep the plan current with due regard given to the current and future usage of the radio frequency spectrum.

#### **The following updates and amendments amongst others have been implemented in NRFP -18:**

- National footnotes have been revised.

---

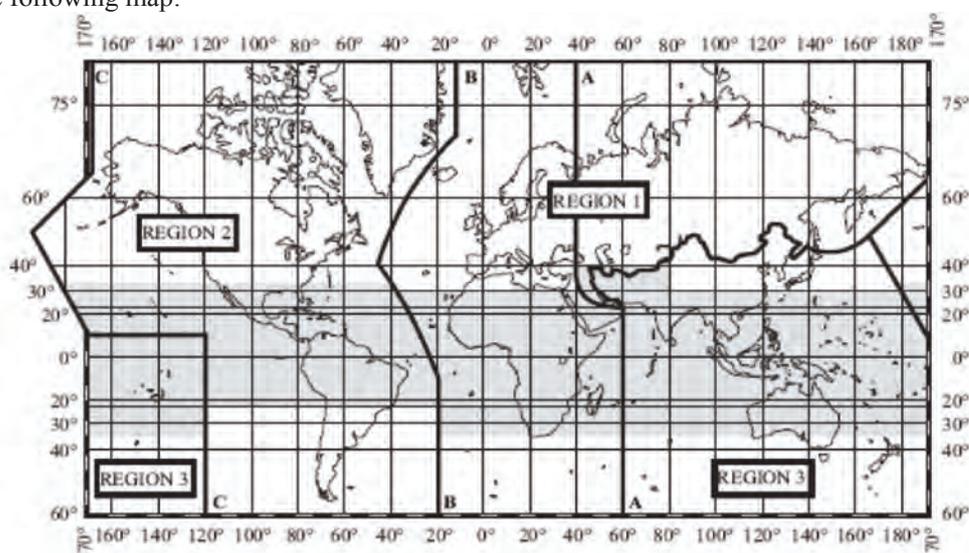
<sup>1</sup> <http://www.crasa.org/crasa-publication/cat/18/regulatory-guidelines/>

<sup>2</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/10-11-2016\\_SADC%20FREQUENCY%20ALLOCATION%20PLAN%202016.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/10-11-2016_SADC%20FREQUENCY%20ALLOCATION%20PLAN%202016.pdf)

- The resolutions and decisions taken by World Radiocommunication Conferences preceding WRC-15.
- The resolutions and decisions taken by the WRC-15, as ratified by the South Africa (Republic of), have been reflected.
- The Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act No. 21 of 2007) covered in a separate chapter in view of the award of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) to South Africa. The commencement of the Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act No. 21 of 2007) in terms of section 53 of the Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act No. 21 of 2007), the 24 April 2009 has been determined as the date on which the said Act comes into operation.
- The Regulations apply to the Karoo Central Astronomy Advantage Areas declared for the purpose of radio astronomy and related scientific endeavours in terms of sections 9(1) and 9(2) of the Act.
- Incorporated references to the SADC Frequency Allocation Plan (FAP) and SADC Harmonised Guidelines

## 2.2 ITU-R Radio Regions

For the purposes of allocating frequencies, the ITU has divided the world into three Regions as shown on the following map:



Region 1: Region 1 includes the area limited on the east by line A (lines A, B and C are defined below) and on the west by line B, excluding any of the territory of the Islamic Republic of Iran which lies between these limits. It also includes the whole of the territory of Armenia, Azerbaijan, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Turkey and Ukraine and the area to the north of Russian Federation which lies between lines A and C.

Region 2: Region 2 includes the area limited on the east by line B and on the west by line C.

Region 3: Region 3 includes the area limited on the east by line C and on the west by line A, except any of the territory of Armenia, Azerbaijan, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Turkey and Ukraine and the area to the north of Russian Federation. It also includes that part of the territory of the Islamic Republic of Iran lying outside of those limits.

The Republic of South Africa falls under ITU Region 1 and thus aligns its frequency allocations with those specified for ITU Region 1 in the ITU Radio Regulations as required by the Act.

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 258 - PART 3**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 3 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

## 2.3 Structure of the Table of Frequency Allocations

The Table of Frequency Allocations lists all the allocations in the radio-frequency spectrum in the Republic of South Africa. The structure of the Table, which is outlined below, is similar to that of the International Table of Frequency Allocations as it appears in Article 5 of the ITU Radio Regulations.

The Table of Frequency Allocations covers the frequency range 8.3 kilohertz (kHz) to 3 000 Gigahertz. The table of frequency allocations list for each frequency range the radiocommunication services that are permitted and which ones are currently in use in South Africa. Information is also given on possible future uses or changes in use of particular frequency bands.

### 2.3.1 Column 1 - ITU Region 1 Allocations and footnotes

This column shows the type of radiocommunications service allocated to the frequency band by ITU. These allocations are defined in the ITU Radio Regulations. Entries in UPPER CASE denote primary services while entries in lower case denote secondary services as defined in the ITU Radio Regulations. Footnotes (e.g., 5.149) are the footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations as detailed in Article 5 of the Radio Regulations.

Values in this column denote the radio-frequency band. Magnitude of frequency units used in the column header are: kHz indicates kilohertz, MHz indicates Megahertz and GHz indicates Gigahertz. Secondary services are on a non-interference and non-protection basis (NINP) to the primary services<sup>3</sup>. Spectrum assigned on a secondary basis means that the secondary station:

- (i) cannot cause harmful interference to stations of primary services to which frequencies are already assigned or to which frequencies may be assigned at a later date;
- (ii) cannot claim protection from harmful interference from stations of a primary service to which frequencies are already assigned or may be assigned at a later date, however;
- (iii) can claim protection from interference from stations of the secondary service(s) to which frequencies may be assigned at a later date.

The frequency band referred to in each allocation is indicated in the left hand top corner of the part of the Table concerned.

The order of listing does not indicate relative priority within each category.

The footnote references are those that appear in Article 5 of the ITU Radio Regulations and are applicable to region 1.

- The footnote references which appear in the bottom of the table reflect the allocated service or services which apply to more than one of the allocated services, or to the whole of the allocation concerned.
- The footnote references which appear to the right of the name of a service are applicable only to that particular service.

### 2.3.2 Column 2 – South African allocations and footnotes

This column indicates the allocations of radiocommunication service(s) specified for South Africa, based on Article 5 of the ITU Radio Regulations. Names of services are based on the definitions in the ITU Radio Regulations and footnotes relevant to South Africa are included. The allocations highlighted with UPPER-CASE letters correspond to primary status allocations; the allocations with secondary status are written in lower-case.

<sup>3</sup> Article 4.4 of the Radio Regulations: Administrations of the Member States shall not assign to a station any frequency in derogation of either the Table of Frequency Allocations in this Chapter or the other provisions of these Regulations, except on the express condition that such a station, when using such a frequency assignment, shall not cause harmful interference to, and shall not claim protection from harmful interference caused by, a station operating in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution, the Convention and these Regulations.

Values in this column denote the radio-frequency band. The magnitude of the frequency units used in the column header are: kilohertz(kHz), Megahertz(MHz) and GHz indicates Gigahertz.

Whilst the South African allocations are broadly aligned with the ITU Region 1 requirements, a number of variations exist. In accordance with Radio Regulations No. 4.4, such variations are subject to the condition that the associated radio installations do not cause harmful interference to the radio services or communications of other ITU Member States that operate in accordance with the provisions of the Radio Regulations, and that the possibility of harmful interference from such services and communications is accepted.

The column further makes reference to national footnotes (e.g., NF xx) that are indicated as 'NF' and appear in the table of allocation on the same basis as the ITU footnotes.

### **2.3.3 Column 3 – Typical Applications**

This column indicates the current national usage of the frequency band in South Africa and contains allowed applications. Contains the main service, systems and application(s) of this frequency band or a part of it, authorized in South Africa. If the use covers more than one frequency band or concerns only one part of the band, the frequency range is generally indicated.

### **2.3.4 Column 4 – Notes and comments**

This column gives relevant document references as well as other additional information applicable to the frequency band. This column contains information about reference documents and relevant standards as well as other guidelines applicable to the frequency band, e.g., Government Gazette Notices pertinent to specific frequency bands, future requirements in specific bands, and ITU-R Recommendations or Resolutions which require implementation.

### **2.3.5 ITU-R Region 1 and National Footnotes**

South African National Footnotes and ITU-R footnotes applicable to Region 1 are contained in sections 5 and 6 respectively.

### **2.3.6 List of frequency bands used for Maritime services**

The List of frequency bands used for Maritime services is contained in section 7.

### **2.3.7 Frequency and wavelength bands**

The radio spectrum shall be subdivided into nine frequency bands, which shall be designated by progressive whole numbers in accordance with the following table. As the unit of frequency is the hertz (Hz), frequencies shall be expressed:

- in kilohertz (kHz), up to and including 3 000 kHz;
- in megahertz (MHz), above 3 MHz, up to and including 3 000 MHz;
- in gigahertz (GHz), above 3 GHz, up to and including 3 000 GHz.

However, where adherence to these provisions would introduce serious difficulties, for example in connection with the notification and registration of frequencies, the lists of frequencies and related matters, reasonable departures may be made. (WRC-15).

**Table 1: Frequency and wavelength bands**

Band number	Symbols	Frequency Range (lower limit exclusive, upper limit inclusive)	Corresponding metric subdivision
4	VLF	3 to 30 kHz	Myriametric waves
5	LF	30 to 300 kHz	Kilometric waves
6	MF	300 to 3 000 kHz	Hectometric waves
7	HF	3 to 30 MHz	Decametric waves
8	VHF	30 to 300 MHz	Metric waves
9	UHF	300 to 3000 MHz	Decimetric waves
10	SHF	3 to 30 GHz	Centimetric waves
11	EHF	30 to 300 GHz	Millimetric waves
12		300 to 3000 GHz	Decimillimetric waves

NOTE 1: "Band N" (N = band number) extends from  $0.3 \times 10^N$  Hz to  $3 \times 10^N$  Hz.

NOTE 2: Prefix: k = kilo ( $10^3$ ), M = mega ( $10^6$ ), G = giga ( $10^9$ ).

**Table 2: Standard Frequency Band Nomenclature**

Table 2 below illustrates the standard letter-band designations.

Band	Frequency Range (GHz)	Wavelength in Free Space (centimeters)
L band	1 to 2	30.0 to 15.0
S band	2 to 4	15 to 7.5
C band	4 to 8	7.5 to 3.8
X band	8 to 12	3.8 to 2.5
Ku band	12 to 18	2.5 to 1.7
K band	18 to 27	1.7 to 1.1
Ka band	27 to 40	1.1 to 0.75
V band	40 to 75	0.75 to 0.40
W band	75 to 110	0.40 to 0.27
Millimetre band	110 to 300	0.27 to 0.10

## 2.5 Contact details

Further information on the South African Table of Frequency Allocations and its interpretation can be obtained by contacting:

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa  
Pin Mill Farm  
164 Katherine Street  
Sandton  
2146  
Phone: +27 11 566 3000  
Fax: +27 11 566 3292  
URL: <http://www.icasa.org.za>  
E-mail: [info@icasa.org.za](mailto:info@icasa.org.za)

## 3 Table of frequency allocations

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>Below 8.3 kHz</b> (Not allocated) 5.53 5.54	<b>Below 8.3 kHz</b> (Not allocated) 5.53 5.54		Frequency bands below 8.3 kHz are not allocated in South Africa
<b>8.3-9 kHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS 5.54A 5.54B 5.54C	<b>8.3-9 kHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS 5.54A 5.54B 5.54C	Thunderstorm detection stations	
<b>9-11.3 kHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS 5.54A RADIONAVIGATION	<b>9-11.3 kHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS 5.54A RADIONAVIGATION	Thunderstorm detection stations Navigational Aids Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended () (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>11.3-14 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION	<b>11.3-14 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION	Navigational Aids	
<b>14-19.95 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57 5.55 5.56	<b>14-19.95 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57 5.56	Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz) Maritime mobile communications Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896 <sup>4</sup> Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annexe B)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>19.95-20.05 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (20 kHz)</p>	<p><b>19.95-20.05 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (20 kHz)</p>	<p>range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>(GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 2153</p>
<p><b>20.05-70 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57</p>	<p><b>20.05-70 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57</p>	<p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015) SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>
<p>5.56 5.58</p> <p><b>70-72 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p>	<p>5.56</p> <p><b>70-72 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p>	<p>Maritime mobile communications</p> <p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (59.75 – 60.25 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No., 38641 March 2015) SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>
<p><b>70-72 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p>	<p><b>70-72 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p>	<p>Navigational Aids</p> <p>Inductive Loop Systems (9-135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 386410 March 2015) SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>72-84 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57 RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p> <p>5.56</p>	<p><b>72-84 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57 RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p> <p>5.56</p>	<p>Maritime mobile communications Navigational Aids</p> <p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>
<p><b>84-86 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p>	<p><b>84-86 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p>	<p>Navigational Aids</p> <p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>
<p><b>86-90 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57 RADIONAVIGATION</p>	<p><b>86-90 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.57 RADIONAVIGATION</p>	<p>Maritime mobile communications Navigational Aids</p> <p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015) SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.56 90-110 kHz RADIONAVIGATION 5.62 Fixed	5.56 90-110 kHz RADIONAVIGATION 5.62 Fixed	Navigational Aids  Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications(9 kHz-135 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annexe B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
5.64 110-112 kHz FIXED MARITIME MOBILE RADIONAVIGATION	5.64 110-112 kHz FIXED MARITIME MOBILE RADIONAVIGATION	Maritime mobile communications Navigational Aids  Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annexe B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
5.64 112-115 kHz RADIONAVIGATION 5.60	112-115 kHz RADIONAVIGATION 5.60	Navigational Aids	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>115-117.6 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60 Fixed Maritime mobile	<b>115-117.6 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60 Fixed Maritime mobile	Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)  Navigational Aids  Maritime mobile communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896
5.64 5.66  <b>117.6-126 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE RADIONAVIGATION 5.60	5.64  <b>117.6-126 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE RADIONAVIGATION 5.60	Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)  Maritime mobile communications Navigational Aids	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896
5.64  <b>126-129 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60	5.64  <b>126-129 kHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION 5.60	Maritime mobile communications Navigational Aids  Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>129-130 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p> <p>5.64</p>	<p><b>129-130 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE RADIONAVIGATION 5.60</p> <p>5.64</p>	<p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p> <p>Maritime mobile communications Navigational Aids</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>
<p><b>130-135.7 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE</p> <p>5.64 5.67</p>	<p><b>130-135.7 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE</p> <p>5.64</p>	<p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p> <p>Maritime mobile communications</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>
<p><b>135.7-137.8 kHz</b> FIXED</p>	<p><b>135.7-137.8 kHz</b> FIXED</p>	<p>Inductive Loop Systems (9 – 135 kHz) RFID (70 – 135 kHz) SRDs – inductive short-range radiocommunications (9 kHz-135 kHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). SRDs - see ITU-R Rec.SM. 1896</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MARITIME MOBILE Amateur 5.67A  5.64 5.67 5.67B  <b>137.8-148.5 kHz</b>  FIXED MARITIME MOBILE  5.64 5.67	MARITIME MOBILE Amateur 5.67A  5.64  <b>137.8-148.5 kHz</b>  FIXED MARITIME MOBILE  5.64	Maritime mobile communications Amateur          Maritime mobile communications	Amateur (135.7-137.8 kHz) services are limited to maximum radiated power of 1 W (e.i.r.p).  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>148.5-255 kHz</b>  BROADCASTING 5.68 5.69 5.70          <b>255-283.5 kHz</b>  BROADCASTING	<b>148.5-160 kHz</b>  BROADCASTING          <b>160-200 kHz</b> FIXED 5.68  <b>200-255 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.70  <b>255-283.5 kHz</b>	Broadcasting          Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG No.36321) 02 April 2013. Frequency Assignment Plan (GE75) applies.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION  5.70 5.71	AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION  5.70	Navigational Aids	
<b>283.5-315 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION (radiobeacons) 5.73  5.74	<b>283.5-315 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION (radiobeacons) 5.73  5.74	Navigational Aids	
<b>315-325 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION Maritime radionavigation (radiobeacons) 5.73  5.75	<b>315-325 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION Maritime radionavigation (radiobeacons) 5.73	Navigational Aids Coast Radio Telegraph Stations Radionavigation	
<b>325-405 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION	<b>325-405 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION	Navigational Aids	
<b>405-415 kHz</b>  RADIONAVIGATION 5.76	<b>405-415 kHz</b>  RADIONAVIGATION 5.76	Navigational Aids	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>415-435 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION	<b>415-435 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.82	Maritime mobile communications Under the MMS the use of the band 415-495 kHz is limited to radiotelegraphy	
<b>435-472 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 Aeronautical radionavigation 5.77 5.82	<b>435-472 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 Aeronautical radionavigation	Maritime mobile communications Coast Stations in the NAVTEX service on 490 kHz; Res.339 applies. Transmission of navigational and meteorological warnings and urgent info for ships (NBDP telegraphy). Articles 31 and 52 apply.	
<b>472-479 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 Amateur 5.80A Aeronautical radionavigation 5.77 5.80B 5.82	<b>472-479 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 Amateur 5.80A Aeronautical radionavigation 5.82	Navigational Aids	
<b>479-495 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 5.79A Aeronautical radionavigation 5.77 5.82	<b>479-495 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 5.79A Aeronautical radionavigation 5.82	NAVTEX service on 490 kHz Article 31 and 32	
<b>495-505 kHz</b>	<b>495-505 kHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MARITIME MOBILE <b>505-526.5 kHz</b>	MARITIME MOBILE <b>505-526.5 kHz</b>	Limited to radiotelegraphy; Articles 31 and 52 apply.	
MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 5.79A 5.84	MARITIME MOBILE 5.79 5.79A 5.84	Maritime mobile communications Maritime Radio Telegraphy NAVTEX service on 518 kHz Article 31 and 32 Coast Stations in the NAVTEX service on 518 kHz; Res.339 applies. Articles 31 and 52 apply. Under the MMS the use of the band 505-526.5 kHz is limited to radiotelegraphy.	
AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION <b>526.5-1 606.5 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION <b>526.5-1 606.5 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	Navigational Aids	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG No. 36321) 02 April 2013  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.87 5.87A		Medium Wave Sound Broadcasting (535.5 - 1606.5 kHz)  Inductive Loop Systems (740 – 8800 kHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>1 606.5-1 625 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.90 LAND MOBILE  5.92	<b>1 606.5-1 625 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.90 LAND MOBILE  5.92	Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications	
<b>1 625-1 635 kHz</b> RADIOLOCATION  5.93	<b>1 625-1 635 kHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	Navigational Aids	
<b>1 635-1 800 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.90 LAND MOBILE  5.92, 5.96	<b>1 635-1 800 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE 5.90 LAND MOBILE  5.92	Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications	
<b>1 800-1 810 kHz</b> RADIOLOCATION  5.93	<b>1 800-1 810 kHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	Navigational Aids	
<b>1 810-1 850 kHz</b> AMATEUR	<b>1 810-1 850 kHz</b> AMATEUR	Amateur communications	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.98 5.99 5.100 <b>1 850-2 000 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	<b>1 850-2 000 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile		Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.92 5.96 5.103 <b>2 000-2 025 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	5.92 5.103 <b>2 000-2 025 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Maritime mobile applications. Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications Amateur communications	1850-1950 kHz is used for Maritime Coast Stations; 1950-2045 kHz is used by ship stations SSB Radio Telephony. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.92 5.103 <b>2 025-2 045 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	5.92 5.103 <b>2 025-2 045 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications	1950-2045 kHz is used by ship stations SSB Radio Telephony
5.92 5.103 <b>2 025-2 045 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) Meteorological aids 5.104	5.92 5.103 <b>2 025-2 045 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) Meteorological aids 5.104	Maritime mobile communications Limited to Oceanographic buoy stations	1950-2045 kHz is used by ship stations SSB Radio Telephony

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.92 5.103	5.92 5.103		
<b>2 045-2 160 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE LAND MOBILE	<b>2 045-2 160 kHz</b> FIXED MARITIME MOBILE LAND MOBILE	Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications	
5.92 <b>2 160-2 170 kHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	5.92 <b>2 160-2 170 kHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	Navigational Aids	
5.93 5.107 <b>2 170-2 173.5 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE	<b>2 170-2 173.5 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE	Maritime mobile communications	
<b>2 173.5-2 190.5 kHz</b> MOBILE (distress and calling) 5.108 5.109 5.110 5.111	<b>2 173.5-2 190.5 kHz</b> MOBILE (distress and calling) 5.108 5.109 5.110 5.111	Distress & Watch keeping (2182 kHz) 2 182 kHz is an international distress and calling frequency for radiotelephony. 2 187.5 kHz – DSC for distress and calling; Article 31 applies.	Articles 31 and 52 applies

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
2 190-5-2 194 kHz MARITIME MOBILE	2 190-5-2 194 kHz MARITIME MOBILE	2 174.5 kHz – international distress frequency for NBDP telegraphy; Article 31 applies.	
2 194-2 300 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	2 194-2 300 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications	
5.92.5.103 5.112 2 300-2 498 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	5.92.5.103 2 300-2 498 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Land Mobile and Maritime applications Sound Broadcasting	Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan 2013
5.103 2 498-2 501 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (2 500 kHz)	5.103 2 498-2 501 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (2 500 kHz)		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
2 501-2 502 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space Research	2 501-2 502 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space Research		
2 502-2 625 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) 5.92 5.103 5.114	2 502-2 625 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) 5.92 5.103	Land Mobile and Maritime applications	
2 625-2 650 kHz MARITIME MOBILE MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION 5.92	2 625-2 650 kHz MARITIME MOBILE MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION 5.92	Sonobuoys Maritime mobile communications	
2 650-2 850 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) 5.92 5.103	2 650-2 850 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) 5.92 5.103	Fixed Services links Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
2 850-3 025 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	2 850-3 025 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile (R) 3 023 kHz may be used under the MMS for search and rescue operations (see Article 31)	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
5.111 5.115 3 025-3 155 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	5.111 5.115 3 025-3 155 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile (OR)	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
3 155-3 200 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	3 155-3 200 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Maritime mobile communications Land mobile communications SRD <sup>5</sup>  Low power wireless hearing aids	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).  Worldwide channel for low power hearing aids (3155 to 3195 kHz). Additional channels may be assigned in the band 3155 – 3400 kHz.
5.116 5.117 3 200-3 230 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	5.116 3 200-3 230 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Maritime mobile communications	

<sup>5</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/06-07-2015\\_SADC%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICE%20\(SRDs\)%20CRASA%20202011%20-ANNEXURE%20B%20AND%20C.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/06-07-2015_SADC%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICE%20(SRDs)%20CRASA%20202011%20-ANNEXURE%20B%20AND%20C.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
BROADCASTING 5.113  5.116 <b>3 230-3 400 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile BROADCASTING 5.113	BROADCASTING 5.113  5.116 <b>3 230-3 400 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile BROADCASTING 5.113	Land and mobile communications HF Sound Broadcasting Low power wireless hearing aids	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Worldwide channel for low power hearing aids (3155 to 3195 kHz). Additional channels may be assigned in the band 3155 – 3400 kHz.
5.116 <b>3 400-3 500 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	5.116 <b>3 400-3 500 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	HF Sound Broadcasting Low power wireless hearing aids  Aeronautical mobile (R)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Worldwide channel for low power hearing aids (3155 to 3195 kHz). Additional channels may be assigned in the band 3155 – 3400 kHz.  Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
3 500-3 800 kHz AMATEUR FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.92	3 500-3 800 kHz AMATEUR FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.92	Amateur communications Maritime communications Land mobile communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
3 800-3 900 kHz FIXED AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) LAND MOBILE	3 800-3 900 kHz FIXED AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) LAND MOBILE	Aeronautical mobile (OR)	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
3 900-3 950 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	3 900-3 950 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) BROADCASTING 5.123	Aeronautical mobile (OR)	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
3 950-4 000 kHz FIXED BROADCASTING	3 950-4 000 kHz FIXED BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013
4 000-4 063 kHz FIXED	4 000-4 063 kHz FIXED		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MARITIME MOBILE 5.127  5.126  <b>4 063-4 438 kHz</b>	MARITIME MOBILE 5.127  <b>4 063-4 438 kHz</b>	Maritime mobile communications Use of the band 4000-4063 kHz by the MMS is limited to ship stations using radiotelephony	
MARITIME MOBILE 5.79A 5.109 5.110 5.130 5.131 5.132  <b>4 063-4 438 kHz</b>	MARITIME MOBILE 5.79A 5.109 5.110 5.130 5.131 5.132  <b>4 063-4 438 kHz</b>	Maritime mobile communications 4209.5 kHz - Coast Stations in the NAVTEX service; Res.339 applies. Articles 31 and 52 apply. 4207.5 kHz – DSC for distress and calling; Article 31 applies. 4177.5 kHz – international distress frequency for NBDP telegraphy; Article 31 applies. 4125 kHz – use of this frequency prescribed in Article 31. 4209.5 kHz – exclusive for transmission by coast stations of meteorological and navigational warnings and urgent information to ships (NBDP). 4210 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App.17 applies.	See Section 7 for details ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies
5.128			

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>4 438-4 488 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) Radiolocation 5.132A  5.132B	<b>4 438-4 488 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) Radiolocation 5.132A	Maritime communications Land mobile communications	
<b>4 488-4 650 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>4 488-4 650 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Aeronautical mobile	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
<b>4 650-4 700 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	<b>4 650-4 700 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
<b>4 700-4 750 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	<b>4 700-4 750 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
<b>4 750-4 850 kHz</b> FIXED AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) LAND MOBILE	<b>4 750-4 850 kHz</b> FIXED AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) LAND MOBILE	Aeronautical mobile Land mobile	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
BROADCASTING 5.113	BROADCASTING 5.113	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013
<b>4 850-4 995 kHz</b> FIXED LAND MOBILE BROADCASTING 5.113	<b>4 850-4 995 kHz</b> FIXED LAND MOBILE BROADCASTING 5.113	Land mobile HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013
<b>4 995-5 003 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (5 000 kHz)	<b>4 995-5 003 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (5 000 kHz)		
<b>5 003-5 005 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research	<b>5 003-5 005 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research		
<b>5 005-5 060 kHz</b> FIXED BROADCASTING 5.113	<b>5 005-5 060 kHz</b> FIXED BROADCASTING 5.113	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5 060-5 250 kHz FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile  5.133	5 060-5 250 kHz FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile	SADC harmonised HF frequencies for cross-border mobile communications;	
5 250-5 275 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.132A  5.133A	5 250-5 275 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.132A	SADC <sup>6</sup> harmonised HF frequencies for cross-border mobile communications; Oceanographic Radar	Oceanographic Radars are used in accordance with ITU Resolution 612 (Rev WRC-12).
5 275-5 351.5 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	5 275- 5 351.5 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Amateur NF0	Amateur communications	
5 351.5-5 366.5 kHz	5 351.5-5 366.5 kHz		

<sup>6</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/10-03-2015\\_SADC%20FREQUENCY%20BAND%20%202013.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/10-03-2015_SADC%20FREQUENCY%20BAND%20%202013.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Amateur 5.133B	FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Amateur 5.133B NF0	Amateur communications	
5 366.5-5 450 kHz	5 366.5-5 450 kHz		
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile		
<b>5 450-5 480 kHz</b> FIXED AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) LAND MOBILE	<b>5 450-5 480 kHz</b> FIXED AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) LAND MOBILE	Aeronautical mobile	Appendix 27 Allotment plan applies
<b>5 480-5 680 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	<b>5 480-5 680 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile	Appendix 27 Allotment plan applies
5.111 5.115	5.111 5.115		
<b>5 680-5 730 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	<b>5 680-5 730 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile	Appendix 27 Allotment plan applies Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec.SM

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.111 5.115	5.111 5.115	5 680 kHz may be used under the MMS for search and rescue operations (see Article 31). 6215 kHz – use of this frequency prescribed in Article 31. SRD <sup>7</sup> applications (6 765-6 795 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5 730-5 900 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE	5 730-5 900 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE	Land and mobile communications	
5 900-5 950 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 5.136	5 900-5 950 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 Fixed 5.136 Land Mobile 5.136	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
5 950-6 200 kHz BROADCASTING	5 950-6 200 kHz BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.

<sup>7</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/06-07-2015\\_FRAME%20WORK%20FOR%20HARMONISATION%20FOR%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICES%20OF%20%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICES%20\(SRDs\)%20-%20ANNEXURE%20A.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/06-07-2015_FRAME%20WORK%20FOR%20HARMONISATION%20FOR%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICES%20OF%20%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICES%20(SRDs)%20-%20ANNEXURE%20A.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>6 200-6 525 kHz</b></p> <p>MARITIME MOBILE 5.109 5.110 5.130 5.132</p> <p>5.137</p>	<p><b>6 200-6 525 kHz</b></p> <p>MARITIME MOBILE 5.109 5.110 5.130 5.132</p> <p>5.137</p>	<p>Maritime mobile communications 6312 kHz and 6215 kHz – DSC for distress and calling; Article 31 applies</p> <p>6268 kHz – international distress frequency for NBDP telegraphy; Article 31 applies.</p> <p>6314 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App.17 applies</p>	<p>ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies</p> <p>ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies</p>
<p><b>6 525-6 685 kHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)</p>	<p><b>6 525-6 685 kHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)</p>	<p>Aeronautical mobile communications</p>	<p>Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies</p>
<p><b>6 685-6 765 kHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p>	<p><b>6 685-6 765 kHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p>	<p>Aeronautical mobile communications</p>	<p>Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies</p>
<p><b>6 765-7 000 kHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)</p> <p>5.138 5.138A 5.139</p>	<p><b>6 765-7 000 kHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)</p> <p>5.138 5.138A</p>	<p>Inductive Loop Systems (6765 – 6795 kHz)</p>	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
7 000-7 100 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	7 000-7 100 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	Amateur communications Amateur-satellite communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.140 5.141 5.141A			
7 100-7 200 kHz AMATEUR	7 100-7 200 kHz AMATEUR	Amateur communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.141A 5.141B 5.141C 5.142	5.141C 5.142		
7 200-7 300 kHz BROADCASTING	7 200-7 300 kHz BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
7 300-7 400 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134	7 300-7 400 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 Fixed 5.143 (7300-7350 kHz) Land mobile 5.143 (7300-7350 kHz)	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply. NINP basis to broadcasting NINP basis to broadcasting
5.143 5.143A 5.143B 5.143C	5.143B		
7 400-7 450 kHz	7 400-7 450 kHz		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
BROADCASTING	BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.143B 5.143C	5.143B	Inductive Loop Systems (7400 – 8800 kHz)	
<b>7 450-8 100 kHz</b>	<b>7 450-8 100 kHz</b>	Inductive Loop Systems (7400 – 8800 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	SADC harmonised HF frequencies for cross-border mobile communications;	
<b>8 100-8 195 kHz</b>	<b>8 100-8 195 kHz</b>	Maritime mobile communications	
FIXED MARITIME MOBILE	FIXED MARITIME MOBILE	Inductive Loop Systems (7400 – 8800 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>8 195-8 815 kHz</b>	<b>8 195-8 815 kHz</b>	Digital Selective Calling (GMDSS) Distress Watch keeping on 8414.5 kHz	Appendix 15 of ITU RR See Section 7 for details
MARITIME MOBILE 5.109 5.110 5.132 5.145	MARITIME MOBILE 5.109 5.110 5.132 5.145		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.111	5.111	Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notices to navigators Inductive Loop Systems (7400 – 8800 kHz) Maritime mobile communications 8414.5 kHz – DSC for distress and calling; Article 31 applies 8 376.5 kHz – international distress frequency for NBDP telegraphy; Article 31 applies. 8416.5 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App. 17 applies.	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies
8 815-8 965 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	8 815-8 965 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
8 965-9 040 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	8 965-9 040 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
9 040-9 305 kHz FIXED	9 040-9 305 kHz FIXED	Fixed	
9 305-9 355 kHz	9 305-9 355 kHz		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED Radiolocation 5.145A 5.145B	FIXED Radiolocation 5.145A	Fixed	
9 355-9 400 kHz FIXED	9 355-9 400 kHz FIXED		
9 400-9 500 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	9 400-9 500 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013
9 500-9 900 kHz BROADCASTING	9 500-9 900 kHz BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
5.147 9 900-9 995 kHz FIXED	5.147 9 900-9 995 kHz FIXED	Fixed	
9 995-10 003 kHz	9 995-10 003 kHz		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (10 000 kHz) 5.111	STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (10 000 kHz) 5.111		
<b>10 003-10 005 kHz</b>  STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research  5.111	<b>10 003-10 005 kHz</b>  STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research  5.111	Passive sensing	
<b>10 005-10 100 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)  5.111	<b>10 005-10 100 kHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)  5.111	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
<b>10 100-10 150 kHz</b>  FIXED Amateur	<b>10 100-10 150 kHz</b>  FIXED Amateur	Fixed Amateur communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>10 150-11 175 kHz</b>  FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>10 150-11 175 kHz</b>  FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	SADC harmonised HF frequencies for cross-border mobile communications;	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>11 175-11 275 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	<b>11 175-11 275 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
<b>11 275-11 400 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	<b>11 275-11 400 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
<b>11 400-11 600 kHz</b> FIXED	<b>11 400-11 600 kHz</b> FIXED	Fixed	
<b>11 600-11 650 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	<b>11 600-11 650 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	HF Sound Broadcasting	Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
<b>11 650-12 050 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.147	<b>11 650-12 050 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.147	HF Sound Broadcasting	ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
<b>12 050-12 100 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134	<b>12 050-12 100 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134	HF Sound Broadcasting	Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.146	5.146		
12 100-12 230 kHz FIXED	12 100-12 230 kHz FIXED	Fixed	
12 230-13 200 kHz MARITIME MOBILE 5.109	12 230-13 200 kHz MARITIME MOBILE 5.109	Maritime mobile communications Digital Selective Calling(GMDSS) Distress Watch keeping (12 577 kHz) Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notices to navigators 12 577 kHz – DSC for distress and calling; Article 31 applies 12 520 kHz – international distress frequency for NBDP telegraphy; Article 31 applies. 12 579 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App.17 applies.	Appendix 15 of ITU RR See Section 7 for details ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies
5.110 5.132 5.145 13 200-13 260 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	5.110 5.132 5.145 13 200-13 260 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>13 260-13 360 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	<b>13 260-13 360 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
<b>13 360-13 410 kHz</b> FIXED RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149	<b>13 360-13 410 kHz</b> FIXED RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149	Radio astronomy	
<b>13 410-13 450 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>13 410-13 450 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	Maritime and/or land mobile communications The band 13 553-13 567 kHz is designated for ISM applications (5.150). SRD <sup>8</sup> applications (13 553-13 567kHz)	Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM. 1896 Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>13 450-13 550 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R) Radiolocation 5.132A	<b>13 450-13 550 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R) Radiolocation 5.132A		

<sup>8</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/06-07-2015\\_SADC%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICES%20CRASA%202011.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/06-07-2015_SADC%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20SHORT%20RANGE%20DEVICES%20CRASA%202011.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.149A			
<b>13 550-13 570 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>13 550-13 570 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	Inductive Loop Systems (13 553 – 13 567 kHz) RFID and EAS systems (13 553 – 13 567 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
5.150	5.150		
<b>13 570-13 600 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134	<b>13 570-13 600 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134	HF Sound Broadcasting	Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
5.151	5.151		
<b>13 600-13 800 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	<b>13 600-13 800 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
<b>13 800-13 870 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134	<b>13 800-13 870 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134	HF Sound Broadcasting	Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
5.151	5.151		
<b>13 870-14 000 kHz</b>	<b>13 870-14 000 kHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	Land mobile communications Maritime communications	
14 000-14 250 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	14 000-14 250 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	Amateur communications Amateur-satellite communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
14 250-14 350 kHz AMATEUR 5.152	14 250-14 350 kHz AMATEUR	Amateur communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
14 350-14 990 kHz FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	14 350-14 990 kHz FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	SADC harmonised HF frequencies for cross-border mobile communications;	
14 990-15 005 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (15 000 kHz)	14 990-15 005 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (15 000 kHz) 5.111		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>15 005-15 010 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research	<b>15 005-15 010 kHz</b> STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research		
<b>15 010-15 100 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	<b>15 010-15 100 kHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
<b>15 100-15 600 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	<b>15 100-15 600 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013. ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
<b>15 600-15 800 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	<b>15 600-15 800 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013. Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
<b>15 800-16 100 kHz</b> FIXED	<b>15 800-16 100 kHz</b> FIXED	Fixed	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
16 100-16 200 kHz FIXED Radiolocation 5.145A 5.145B	16 100-16 200 kHz FIXED Radiolocation 5.145A		
16 200-16 360 kHz FIXED	16 200-16 360 kHz FIXED	Fixed	
16 360-17 410 kHz MARITIME MOBILE 5.109	16 360-17 410 kHz MARITIME MOBILE 5.109	Maritime mobile communications Digital Selective Calling (GMDSS) Distress Watch keeping (16 804.5 kHz) Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notices to navigators. 16 804.5kHz – DSC for distress and calling; Article 31 applies. 16 695 kHz – international distress frequency for NBDP telegraphy; Article 31 applies. 16 806.5 kHz – maritime	Appendix 15 of ITU RR See Section 7 for details ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies
5.110 5.132 5.145 17 410-17 480 kHz FIXED	5.110 5.132 5.145 17 410-17 480 kHz FIXED	Fixed	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
17 480-17 550 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	17 480-17 550 kHz BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013. Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
17 550-17 900 kHz BROADCASTING	17 550-17 900 kHz BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013. ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
17 900-17 970 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	17 900-17 970 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies
17 970-18 030 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	17 970-18 030 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 26 Allotment Plan applies
18 030-18 052 kHz FIXED	18 030-18 052 kHz FIXED	Fixed	
18 052-18 068 kHz	18 052-18 068 kHz		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED Space research	FIXED Space research	Fixed	
<b>18 068-18 168 kHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE 5.154	<b>18 068-18 168 kHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	Amateur communications Amateur-satellite communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>18 168-18 780 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile	<b>18 168-18 780 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile	Land mobile communications	
<b>18 780-18 900 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE	<b>18 780-18 900 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE	Maritime communications	ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies
<b>18 900-19 020 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	<b>18 900-19 020 kHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.134 5.146	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013. Article 12 Planning Procedures and Res.517 apply.
<b>19 020-19 680 kHz</b> FIXED	<b>19 020-19 680 kHz</b> FIXED	Fixed	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
19 680-19 800 kHz MARITIME MOBILE 5.132	19 680-19 800 kHz MARITIME MOBILE 5.132	19 680.5 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App.17 applies	The frequency 19 680.5 kHz is the international frequency for transmission of MSI.
19 800-19 990 kHz FIXED	19 800-19 990 kHz FIXED	Fixed	
19 990-19 995 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research 5.111	19 990-19 995 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research 5.111		
19 995-20 010 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (20 000 kHz) 5.111	19 995-20 010 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (20 000 kHz) 5.111		
20 010-21 000 kHz FIXED Mobile	20 010-21 000 kHz FIXED Mobile		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
21 000-21 450 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	21 000-21 450 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	Amateur communications Amateur-satellite communications	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
21 450-21 850 kHz BROADCASTING	21 450-21 850 kHz BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013. ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies
21 850-21 870 kHz FIXED 5.155A 5.155	21 850-21 870 kHz FIXED	Fixed <sup>9</sup>	
21 870-21 924 kHz FIXED 5.155B	21 870-21 924 kHz FIXED 5.155B	Fixed	This band is used by the FS for services related to aircraft flight safety (5.155B)
21 924-22 000 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	21 924-22 000 kHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	Aeronautical mobile communications	Appendix 27 Allotment Plan applies

<sup>9</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/10-03-2015\\_FREQUENCY%20CHANNELING%20ARRANGEMENTS%20FOR%20TERRESTRIAL%20FIXED%20AND%20MOBILE%202011.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/10-03-2015_FREQUENCY%20CHANNELING%20ARRANGEMENTS%20FOR%20TERRESTRIAL%20FIXED%20AND%20MOBILE%202011.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>22 000-22 855 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.132</p> <p>5.156</p>	<p><b>22 000-22 855 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.132</p>	<p>22 376 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App.17 applies</p>	<p>ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies. ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies. The frequency 22 376 kHz is the international frequency for transmission of MSI. See Section 7 for details</p>
<p><b>22 855-23 000 kHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>5.156</p>	<p><b>22 855-23 000 kHz</b> FIXED</p>	<p>Fixed</p>	
<p><b>23 000-23 200 kHz</b></p> <p>FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)</p> <p>5.156</p>	<p><b>23 000-23 200 kHz</b> FIXED Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)</p>		
<p><b>23 200-23 350 kHz</b></p> <p>FIXED 5.156A AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p>	<p><b>23 200-23 350 kHz</b> FIXED 5.156A AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p>	<p>Aeronautical mobile communications</p>	<p>The use of this band by the FS is limited to the provision of services related to aircraft flight safety (5.156A)</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
23 350-24 000 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.157	23 350-24 000 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.157		The use of this band by the MMS is limited to inter-ship radiotelegraphy (5.157).
24 000-24 450 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE	24 000-24 450 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE		
24 450-24 600 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE Radiolocation 5.132A	24 450-24 600 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE Radiolocation 5.132A		
5.158			
24 600-24 890 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE	24 600-24 890 kHz FIXED LAND MOBILE		
24 890-24 990 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	24 890-24 990 kHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE		Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
24 990-25 005 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (25 000 kHz)	24 990-25 005 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL (25 000 kHz)		
25 005-25 010 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research	25 005-25 010 kHz STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL Space research		
25 010-25 070 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	25 010-25 070 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile		
25 070-25 210 kHz MARITIME MOBILE	25 070-25 210 kHz MARITIME MOBILE	Maritime mobile communications	ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies
25 210-25 550 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	25 210-25 550 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile		
25 550-25 670 kHz RADIO ASTRONOMY	25 550-25 670 kHz RADIO ASTRONOMY	Radio astronomy	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.149 <b>25 670-26 100 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	5.149 <b>25 670-26 100 kHz</b> BROADCASTING	HF Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 ITU RR Article 12 Planning Procedures applies.
<b>26 100-26 175 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.132	<b>26 100-26 175 kHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE 5.132	26 100.5 kHz – maritime safety information (MSI); App.17 applies	ITU RR Appendix 17 Channelling Plan applies. ITU RR Appendix 25 Allotment Plan applies. The frequency 26 100.5 kHz is the international frequency for transmission of MSI.
<b>26 175-26 200 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	<b>26 175-26 200 kHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	Single Frequency Mobile Mobile systems (single frequency) CB Radio (26.96-27.410 MHz) ISM applications (26.975-27.283 MHz) SRD applications (26 957-27 283 kHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM. 1896

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
26 200-26 350 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.132A 5.133A	26 200-26 350 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.132A	Single Frequency Mobile	
26 350-27 500 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.150	26 350-27 500 kHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.150	Single Frequency Mobile Inductive Loop Systems, Non-specific SRD's (26.957 – 27.283 MHz) Surface Model Control (26.995 MHz, 27.045 MHz, 27.095 MHz, 27.145 MHz and 27.195 MHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).
27.5-28 MHz METEOROLOGICAL AIDS FIXED MOBILE	27.5-28 MHz METEOROLOGICAL AIDS FIXED MOBILE	Radiosondes	
28-29.7 MHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	28-29.7 MHz AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	Amateur communications Amateur-satellite communications	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>29.7-30.005 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p><b>29.7-30.005 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE Amateur NF1</p>		<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>30.005-30.01 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (satellite identification) FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH</p>	<p><b>30.005-30.01 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (satellite identification) FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH</p>	<p>Single frequency mobile (29.7-29.99 MHz) Government Services</p> <p>Government Services</p>	<p>Amateur – disaster and emergencies</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>30.01-37.5 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p><b>30.01-37.5 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE</p>	<p>Single Frequency Mobile (32 – 32.325 MHz) Government Services Mobile 1 MTX (32.325 – 33.675 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (33.675 – 34.175 MHz) Mobile 2 MTX (34.175 – 35 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 41.65 – 43 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 40.625 – 41.25 MHz Exclusive use by Model Aircraft Control</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>37.5-38.25 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE Radio astronomy</p> <p>5.149</p>	<p><b>37.5-38.25 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE Radio astronomy</p> <p>5.149</p>	<p>Model Aircraft Control (35 – 35.5 MHz)</p> <p>Wireless microphone (36.65 – 36.75 MHz)</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile (33.25 – 33.5 MHz)</p> <p>Mobile 3 BTX 35.5 – 36.825 MHz</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile 36.825 – 38.5 MHz PMR<sup>10</sup></p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p> <p>Paired with 38.5 – 39.825 MHz</p>
<p><b>38.25-39 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p><b>38.25-39 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE</p>	<p>Single Frequency Mobile (36.825 – 38.5 MHz) Government Services</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile (36.825 – 38.5 MHz) Government Services</p>	<p>Paired with 35.5 – 36.825 MHz</p>

<sup>10</sup>[http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/10-03-2015\\_GUIDELINES%20%20ON%20PMR%202014.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/10-03-2015_GUIDELINES%20%20ON%20PMR%202014.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
39-39.5 MHz FIXED MOBILE Radiolocation 5.132A 5.159	39-39.5 MHz MOBILE Radiolocation 5.132A	Mobile 3 MTX (38.5 – 39.825 MHz) Mobile 3 MTX (38.5 – 39.825 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (39.825 – 40.625 MHz)	Paired with 35.5 – 36.825 MHz
39.5-39.986 MHz FIXED MOBILE	39.5-39.986 MHz MOBILE	Mobile 3 MTX (38.5 – 39.825 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (39.825 – 40.625 MHz) PMR	Paired with 35.5 – 36.825 MHz
39.986-40.02 MHz FIXED MOBILE Space research	39.986-40.02 MHz MOBILE Space research	Single Frequency Mobile (39.825 – 40.625 MHz) PMR	
40.02-40.98 MHz FIXED MOBILE	40.02-40.98 MHz MOBILE	Single Frequency Mobile (39.825 – 40.625 MHz) Mobile 2 BTX (40.625 – 41.45 MHz)	Paired with 34.175 – 35 MHz

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.150	5.150	Wireless microphones (40.65 – 40.7 MHz) Non-specific SRD's (40.66 – 40.7 MHz) Surface Model Control (40.665 MHz, 40.675 MHz, 40.685 MHz, 40.695 MHz) ISM applications (40.66 – 40.7 MHz) PMR	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).  Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM.1896
40.98-41.015 MHz  FIXED MOBILE Space research  5.160	40.98-41.015 MHz  MOBILE Space research	Mobile 2 BTX (40.625 – 41.45 MHz) PMR	Paired with 34.175 – 35 MHz)
41.015-42 MHz  FIXED MOBILE  5.160	41.015-42 MHz  MOBILE	Mobile 2 BTX (40.625 – 41.45 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (41.45 – 41.65 MHz) Mobile 1 BTX (41.65 – 43 MHz) Government Services PMR	Paired with 34.175 – 35 MHz  Paired with 32.325 – 33.675 MHz

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
42-42.5 MHz FIXED MOBILE Radiolocation 5.132A 5.160 5.161B	42-42.5 MHz MOBILE Radiolocation 5.132A	Mobile 1 BTX (41.65 – 43 MHz) Government Services Oceanographic radars	Paired with 32.325 – 33.675 MHz
42.5-44 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.160	42.5-44 MHz MOBILE	Mobile 1 BTX (41.65 – 43 MHz) Government Services	Paired with 32.325 – 33.675 MHz
44-47 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.162 5.162A	44-47 MHz FIXED MOBILE 47-50 MHz BROADCASTING	Meteor Burst (45.3 – 46.9 MHz) CT0 Cordless Telephones BTX (46.61 – 46.97 MHz) Government Services PMR Meteor Burst (45.3-46.9 MHz) CT0 Cordless Telephony BTx (46.61-46.97 MHz)	Paired with 47.5 – 49.1 MHz 10 frequency pairs assigned to CT0; paired with 49.67 – 49.97 MHz; Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). Paired with 47.5-49.1 MHz)
47-68 MHz BROADCASTING	47-50 MHz BROADCASTING		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
	LAND MOBILE 5.164	CT0 Cordless Telephones MTX (49.67 – 49.97 MHz) PMR Meteor Burst (47.5-49.1 MHz) CT0 Cordless Telephony MTx (49.67-49.97 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013  Paired with 45.3-46.9 MHz Paired with 46.61 – 46.97 MHz  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).  Paired with 45.3-46.9 MHz
	<b>50-54 MHz</b>  AMATEUR 5.169	Wireless microphones (53 – 54 MHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
	<b>54-68 MHz</b>  BROADCASTING FIXED 5.171 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.171	Government Services Model control (54.45 – 54.55 MHz) PMR Single Frequency Mobile (54 – 54.325 MHz)  Mobile 1 BTX (54.325 – 54.45 MHz) Mobile 2 BTX (55.45 – 56.85 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013          Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.162A 5.163 5.164 5.165 5.169 5.171 <b>68-74.8 MHz</b>		Single Frequency Mobile (56.85 – 58.5 MHz) Mobile 2 MTX (58.5 – 59.9 MHz) Mobile 1 MTX (59.9 – 60.025 MHz) Spare 60.025-60.215 MHz Sport Stadium Communications (62.8 – 62.85 MHz) National Emergency Alarm Radio (NEAR) (66 – 68 MHz)	Paired with 59.9 – 60.025 MHz Paired with 58.5 – 59.9 MHz  Paired with 55.45 – 56.85 MHz Paired with 54.325 – 54.45 MHz
<b>68-74.8 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile  5.149 5.175 5.177 5.179	<b>68-74.8 MHz</b>  MOBILE except aeronautical mobile  Amateur (70 – 70.3 MHz) NF2  Radio Astronomy (73 – 74.6 MHz) 5.149	Single Frequency Mobile (68 – 69.25 MHz) Mobile 1 BTX (69.25 – 70 MHz) Mobile 2 BTX (70 – 70.975 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (70.975 – 71.475 MHz) Mobile 3 BTX (71.475 – 72.525 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (72.525 – 73.425 MHz) Mobile 4 BTX (73.425 – 74.8 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR	Paired with 76.175 – 76.925 MHz Paired with 75.2 – 76.175 MHz Current assignments for fire fighting Paired with 76.925 – 77.975 MHz  Paired with 78.625 – 80 MHz  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>74.8-75.2 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION  5.180 5.181</p>	<p><b>74.8-75.2 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION  5.180</p>	<p>Instrument Landing System Markers 74.80 – 75.20 Marker beacons (75 MHz)</p>	
<p><b>75.2-87.5 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile  5.175 5.179 5.187</p>	<p><b>75.2-87.5 MHz</b> MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p>Mobile 2 MTX (75.2 – 76.175 MHz) Mobile 1 MTX (76.175 – 76.925 MHz) Mobile 3 MTX (76.925 – 77.975 MHz) Mobile 4 MTX (78.625 – 80 MHz) Mobile 5 BTX (77.975 – 78.625 MHz) Mobile 6 BTX (80 – 80.5 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (80.5 – 81 MHz) Mobile 7 BTX (81 – 81.625 MHz) Mobile 8 BTX (81.625 – 82.975 MHz) Mobile 5 MTX (82.975 – 83.625 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (83.625 – 85.025 MHz) Mobile 8 MTX (85.025 – 86.375 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 70 – 70.975 MHz Paired with 69.25 – 70 MHz Paired with 71.475 – 72.525 MHz Paired with 73.425 – 74.8 MHz Paired with 82.975 – 83.625 MHz Paired with 87 – 87.5 MHz  Paired with 86.375 – 87 MHz Paired with 85.025 – 86.375 MHz Paired with 77.975 – 78.625 MHz  Paired with 81.625 – 82.975 MHz Paired with 81 – 81.625 MHz Paired with 80 – 80.5 MHz</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>87.5-100 MHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.190	<b>87.5-100 MHz</b> BROADCASTING	Mobile 7 MTX (86.375 – 87 MHz) Mobile 6 MTX (87 – 87.5 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR	
<b>100-108 MHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.194	<b>100-108 MHz</b> BROADCASTING	FM Sound Broadcasting (87.5-108 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Geneva agreement GE84
<b>108-117.975 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.197 5.197A	<b>108-117.975 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.197A	ILS localiser (108 – 112 MHz) VOR (VHF Omni-directional Range) (112 – 117.975 MHz) Aeronautical mobile communications (108-117.975 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 Geneva agreement GE84
<b>117.975-137 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	<b>117.975-137 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R)	117.975-121.450 MHz Aeronautical mobile communications	Safety and regularity of flights

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.111 5.200 5.201 5.202	5.111 5.200	121.450-121.550 MHz International Distress Frequency (121.5 MHz)	EPIRBs at 121.5 MHz ITU RR Article 31 applies
<b>137-137.025 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209 SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>137-137.025 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209 SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	121.550-137.000 MHz Aeronautical mobile communications  MET SAT	123.1 MHz - auxiliary emergency frequency
5.204 5.205 5.206 5.208 <b>137.025-137.175 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)	5.208 <b>137.025-137.175 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)		
SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)	SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)		
Fixed Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209	Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209		
Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)		
5.204 5.205 5.206 5.208	5.208		
<b>137.175-137.825 MHz</b>	<b>137.175-137.825 MHz</b>		
SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)	SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)		
METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	NOAA meteorological satellite (137.5 – 137.62 MHz)	
MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209	MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209		
SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)	SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)		
Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.204 5.205 5.206 5.208	5.208		
<b>137.825-138 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) Fixed Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209 Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>137.825-138 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209 Mobile except aeronautical mobile (R)		
5.204 5.205 5.206 5.208	5.208		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>138-143.6 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p>	<p><b>138-143.6 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p>Single Frequency Alarms (140.5 – 141 MHz)</p> <p>Mobile 1 MTX (138 – 140.5 MHz)</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile (141 – 141.5 MHz)</p> <p>Mobile 1 BTX (141.5 – 144 MHz)</p> <p>Remote control industrial apparatus (141 – 142 MHz)</p> <p>PMR and / or PAMR</p>	<p>Paired with 141.5 - 144 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 138 – 140.5 MHz</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p>5.210 5.211 5.212 5.214</p> <p><b>143.6-143.65 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p>5.212</p> <p><b>143.6-143.65 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p>Mobile 1 BTX (141.5 – 144 MHz)</p> <p>PMR and / or PAMR</p>	<p>Paired with 138 – 140.5 MHz</p> <p>Allocation includes BTX assignments at 142.8 – 143.275 MHz and 143.325 - 143.975 MHz</p>
<p>5.211 5.212 5.214</p> <p><b>143.65-144 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR)</p>	<p>5.212</p> <p><b>143.65-144 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p>Mobile 1 BTX (141.5 – 144 MHz)</p> <p>PMR and / or PAMR</p>	<p>Paired with 138 – 140.5 MHz</p> <p>Allocation includes BTX assignments at 142.8 – 143.275 MHz and 143.325 - 143.975 MHz</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>144-146 MHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	<b>144-146 MHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE		
<b>146-148 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	<b>146-148 MHz</b> MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	Mobile 2 MTX (146 – 148.95 MHz) PMR and / or PAMR	Paired with 153.05 – 156 MHz
<b>148-149.9 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.209	<b>148-149.9 MHz</b> MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R) MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.209 NF3	Mobile 2 MTX (146 – 148.95 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (148.950 – 151 MHz) Wildlife telemetry Tracking (148 – 152 MHz) Low Earth Orbit systems	Paired with 153.05 – 156 MHz Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015). Systems are paired with either 137 – 138 MHz or 400.15 – 401 MHz For some small LEO systems this band is supplemented by the band 149.9-150.05 MHz
5.218 5.219 5.221	5.218 5.219 5.221		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>149.9-150.05 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Arth-to-space) 5.209 5.220</p>	<p><b>149.9-150.05 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.209 5.220 NF3</p>	<p>Low Earth Orbit systems</p> <p>Mobile-satellite communications</p> <p>Wildlife telemetry Tracking (148 – 152 MHz)</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile (148.950 – 151 MHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>150.05-153 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p> <p>RADIO ASTRONOMY</p> <p>5.149</p>	<p><b>150.05-153 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p> <p>RADIO ASTRONOMY</p> <p>5.149</p>	<p>Single frequency alarms (152.05 – 152.55 MHz)</p> <p>Alarms, Single Frequency Mobile and Load Shedding (148.950 – 151 MHz)</p> <p>PMR and PAMR Paging</p> <p>Government Services</p> <p>Wildlife Telemetry Tracking (148 – 152 MHz)</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile (152.55 – 153.05 MHz)</p>	<p>Channels 150.550 MHz and 150.5625 MHz are used for load shedding. Channels 150.625 MHz and 150.675 MHz are reserved for in-house paging</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>153-154 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p>	<p><b>153-154 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)</p>	<p>Single Frequency Mobile (152.55 – 153.05)</p>	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)  Meteorological aids  <b>154-156.4875 MHz</b>	Meteorological aids  <b>154-156.4875 MHz</b>	MHz) Mobile 2 BTX (153.05 – 156 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR	Paired with 146 – 148.95 MHz
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)	154-156 MHz PMR and/or PAMR Maritime Mobile Mobile 2 BTX (153.05 – 156 MHz) Mobile 3 MTX (156 – 156.7625 MHz)  Single Frequency Mobile (156.375 – 156.7625 MHz)  156.00-156.4875 MHz Maritime mobile communications (Ship stations) Land mobile in areas remote from coast	See Section 7 for details Paired with 146 – 148.95 MHz Paired with 160.6 – 160.975 MHz (156 – 156.375 MHz allocated to land mobile MTX in inland areas) Limited to inland areas  Paired with 160.625-160.950 MHz, single frequency 156.3 MHz and in the band 156.375-156.475 MHz ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply.
5.225A 5.226	5.226		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>156.4875-156.5625 MHz</b></p> <p>MARITIME MOBILE (distress and calling via DSC)</p> <p>5.111 5.226 5.227</p>	<p><b>156.4875-156.5625 MHz</b></p> <p>MARITIME MOBILE (distress and calling via DSC)</p> <p>FIXED 5.227</p> <p>LAND MOBILE 5.227</p>	<p>Maritime mobile distress, safety and calling frequency 156.525 MHz for maritime mobile VHF radiotelephone service using DSC.</p> <p>The bands 156.4875-156.5125 MHz and 156.5375-156.5625 MHz may also be used for land mobile services while protecting the maritime mobile service.</p> <p>Single Frequency Mobile (156.375 – 156.7625 MHz)</p>	<p>The use of this band by the maritime services shall be in accordance with ITU Appendix 18. ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply.</p> <p>NINP basis to Maritime Mobile Service; Limited to inland areas</p>
<p><b>156.5625-156.7625 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)</p> <p>5.226</p>	<p><b>156.5625-156.7625 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile (R)</p>	<p>156.5625-156.7625 MHz</p> <p>Maritime mobile communications.</p> <p>Land mobile in areas remote from coast.</p>	<p>Single frequency applications, ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply.</p>
<p><b>156.7625-156.7875 MHz</b></p> <p>MARITIME MOBILE</p> <p>Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)</p>	<p><b>156.7625-156.7875 MHz</b></p> <p>MARITIME MOBILE</p> <p>Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)</p>	<p>International distress, safety and calling frequency at 156.8 MHz for the maritime mobile VHF radiotelephone service.</p>	<p>ITU RR Article 31 and Appendix 18 apply to the use of the frequency 156.8 MHz and this band.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.111 5.226 5.228	5.111 5.226 5.228	Distress safety and calling (156.76250 – 156.8375)	
<b>156.7875-156.8125 MHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE (distress and calling) 5.111 5.226	<b>156.7875-156.8125 MHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE (distress and calling) 5.111 5.226	Distress safety and calling (156.76250 – 156.8375, <b>channel 16</b> )	See Section 7 for details
<b>156.8125-156.8375 MHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.111 5.226 5.228	<b>156.8125-156.8375 MHz</b> MARITIME MOBILE Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.111 5.226 5.228	Distress safety and calling (156.76250 – 156.8375)	
<b>156.8375-161.9375 MHz</b> <b>FIXED</b> MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile	<b>156.8375-161.9375 MHz</b> <b>FIXED</b> MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile	Government Services 156.8375-157.45 MHz Maritime mobile communications (ship stations). Land mobile in areas remote from coast. 157.450-160.6 MHz PMR and/or PAMR 160.600-160.975 MHz Maritime mobile communications (Coast stations).	Paired with 161.5-162.0 MHz and single frequency applications; ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply.  Paired with 156.025-156.350 MHz; ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.226 <b>161.9375 -161.9625 MHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA	5.226 <b>161.9375 -161.9625 MHz</b>  MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA	Land mobile in areas remote from coast. 160.975-161.475 MHz PMR and/or PAMR 161.475-162.050 MHz Maritime mobile communications (Coast stations) Land mobile in areas remote from coast Automatic Identification System (AIS) at 161.975 MHz and 162.025 MHz 162.050-174 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	Single frequency applications.  Paired with 156.9-157.4 MHz; ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply.
5.226 <b>161.9375 -161.9625 MHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA	5.226 <b>161.9375 -161.9625 MHz</b>  MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA	Sonobuoy (161.875 – 173.875)  Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notice to navigators Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz)	See Section 7 for details  Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz)  Inland areas only

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.226 <b>161.9625-161.9875 MHz</b>	5.226 <b>161.9625-161.9875 MHz</b>	Single Frequency Mobile (160.45 – 161.475 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (156.8375 – 156.875 MHz) Private Maritime MTX (157.45 – 157.95 MHz)	Paired with 162.05 – 162.55 MHz
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B	Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz)	Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz)
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA 5.226 5.229	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA 5.226	Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notice to navigators Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz)	See Section 7 for details Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz)
<b>162.0125-162.0375 MHz</b> FIXED	<b>162.0125-162.0375 MHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B 5.229	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B	Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz)	Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz)
<b>162.0375-174 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	<b>162.0375-174 MHz</b> MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4	Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz) Mobile 2 MTX-DF (165.05 – 165.5375 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (168.95 – 170.05 MHz) Mobile 3 MTX-DF (165.55 – 167.4875 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (172 – 172.0375 MHz) Mobile 4 MTX-DF (167.5 – 168.9375 MHz) Meter Reading (169.4 – 169.475 MHz) Non-specific SRD's – Telecommand only (173.2125 – 173.2375 MHz)	Paired with Mobile 2 BTX-DF (170.05 – 170.5375 MHz) Paired with Mobile 3 BTX-DF (172.05 – 173.9875 MHz) Paired with Mobile 4 BTX (170.55 – 171.9875 MHz) Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.226 5.229 <b>174-223 MHz</b> BROADCASTING	5.226 NF5 <b>174-223 MHz</b> BROADCASTING	Non-specific SRDs (173.2375 – 173.2875 MHz) Wireless microphones and assistive listening devices (173.7 – 175.1 MHz)	
5.235 5.237 5.243 <b>223-230 MHz</b> BROADCASTING Fixed Mobile	NF5 <b>223-230 MHz</b> BROADCASTING	Television Broadcasting (174 – 214 MHz) T-DAB (214 – 230 MHz) Sound-Broadcasting  Wireless microphones (173.7 – 175.1 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 TV Band III Migration from analogue to digital is harmonised in SADC. Digital sound broadcasting is being planned in this band.
		T-DAB (214 – 230 MHz) Sound Broadcasting	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013 TV Band III Migration from analogue to digital is harmonised in SADC. Digital sound broadcasting is being planned in this band.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.243 5.246 5.247 <b>230-235 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE	<b>230-238 MHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.252 5.254	Television broadcasting (230 – 238 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013
5.247 5.251 5.252 <b>235-267 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE	<b>238-246 MHz</b> MOBILE 5.111 5.252 5.254 5.256	238-242.95 MHz PMR and/or PAMR International Distress Frequency at 243 MHz (242.95 – 243.05 MHz) 243.05-246.00 MHz Low-power devices	Future consideration for Broadcasting in 238 – 240 MHz Band available for distress and safety purposes. Low-power devices ancillary to the broadcasting service.
	<b>246-254 MHz</b> BROADCASTING 5.252	Television broadcasting (246-254 MHz)	The Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG no.36321) 02 April 2013

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p>5.111 5.252 5.254 5.256 5.256A</p> <p><b>267-272 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p> <p>Space operation (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.254 5.257</p> <p><b>272-273 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p><b>254-267 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE</p> <p>5.254</p>	<p>Trunking BTX (254 – 259.4 MHz)</p> <p>Trunking MTX (262 – 267.4 MHz)</p> <p>Government Services 267.4-272 MHz</p>	<p>Paired with 262 – 267.4 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 254 – 259.4 MHz</p>
<p><b>267-272 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE</p> <p>Space operation (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.254 5.257</p> <p><b>272-273 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) FIXED MOBILE</p>	<p><b>267-272 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE</p> <p>Space operation (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.254 5.257</p> <p><b>272-273 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE</p>	<p>Government Services</p> <p>Trunking MTX (262 – 267.4 MHz)</p> <p>Government Services</p>	<p>Paired with 254 – 259.4 MHz</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.254	5.254		
<b>273-312 MHz</b>	<b>273-312 MHz</b>		
FIXED MOBILE	MOBILE	Single Frequency Mobile (278 – 286 MHz) Government Services	
5.254	5.254		
<b>312-315 MHz</b>	<b>312-315 MHz</b>		
FIXED MOBILE	MOBILE	Government Services	
Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)	Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)		
5.254 5.255	5.254 5.255		
<b>315-322 MHz</b>	<b>315-322 MHz</b>		
FIXED MOBILE	MOBILE	Government Services	
5.254	5.254		
<b>322-328.6 MHz</b>	<b>322-328.6 MHz</b>		
FIXED MOBILE	MOBILE	Government Services	
RADIO ASTRONOMY	RADIO ASTRONOMY		
5.149	5.149		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>328.6-335.4 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.258  5.259	<b>328.6-335.4 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.258	ILS Glide Path	
<b>335.4-387 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE	<b>335.4-387 MHz</b> FIXED NF6 MOBILE NF7	FWA (336 – 346 MHz) FWA (356 – 366 MHz) 366-380 MHz (Govt.) Digital Trunking (Emergency) (380 – 387 MHz) (PPDR <sup>11</sup> ) 335.4-336 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	Paired with 356 – 366 MHz Paired with 336 – 346 MHz  Paired with 390 – 397 MHz
		336-346 MHz Fixed Wireless Access  336-346 Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV)	PTP/PTMP system; Paired with 356-366 MHz  Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) 336-346 paired with 356-366 MHz. (Coordination is required with PTP/PTMP in the implement of UAV)  PTP/PTMP system; Paired with 336-346 MHz
		356.0-366.0 MHz Fixed Wireless Access	PTP/PTMP system; Paired with 336-346 MHz

<sup>11</sup> [http://www.crasa.org/common\\_up/crasa-setup/12-03-2015\\_GUIDELINES%20ON%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20PPDR%202014.pdf](http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/12-03-2015_GUIDELINES%20ON%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20PPDR%202014.pdf)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.254	5.254	366.0-380.0 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	
<b>387-390 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth)	5.254 <b>387-390 MHz</b> MOBILE NF7 Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth)	Digital Trunking (387 – 390 MHz) (Govt.) 387.0-390.0 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	Paired with 397 – 399.9 MHz Paired with 397.0-399.9 MHz (To be used mainly for digital systems.)
5.208A 5.208B 5.254 5.255 <b>390-399.9 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE	5.208A 5.208B 5.254 5.255 <b>390-399.9 MHz</b> MOBILE NF7	Emergency) (390 – 397 MHz) (PPDR)	Paired with 380 – 387 MHz
5.254 <b>399.9-400.05 MHz</b> MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.209 5.220	5.254 <b>399.9-400.05 MHz</b> MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.209 5.220	Government Services PMR and/or PAMR (397 – 399.9 MHz) (Govt.)	Paired with 387 – 390 MHz In accordance with Resolution 646 and Recommendation ITU-R M.2015.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>400.05-400.15 MHz</b>  STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL-SATELLITE (400.1 MHz)  5.261 5.262	<b>400.05-400.15 MHz</b>  STANDARD FREQUENCY AND TIME SIGNAL-SATELLITE (400.1 MHz)  5.261		
<b>400.15-401 MHz</b>  METEOROLOGICAL AIDS  METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)  MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209  SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) 5.263  Space operation (space-to-Earth)  5.262 5.264	<b>400.15-401 MHz</b>  METEOROLOGICAL AIDS  METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)  MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.209  SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) 5.263  Space operation (space-to-Earth)	Radiosondes	
<b>401-402 MHz</b>  METEOROLOGICAL AIDS  SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)	<b>401-402 MHz</b>  METEOROLOGICAL AIDS  SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)	Radiosonde Data uplink to Geostationary Satellite orbit	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile			
<b>402-403 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile	<b>402-403 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS Mobile except aeronautical mobile	Radiosonde  Medical implants (402 – 405 MHz) Various SRD's (402 – 406 MHz) SRDs – ultra low power active medical implants	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).  SRDs – see ITU-R Rec. SM.1896 and Rec. RS.1346
<b>403-406 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile	<b>403-406 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS Mobile except aeronautical mobile  5.265	Radiosonde  Medical implants (402 – 405 MHz) Various SRD's (402 – 406 MHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
406-406.1 MHz MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)	406-406.1 MHz MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)	COSPAS – SARSAT: Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacon (EPIRB) Low power satellite EPIRBs (distress and safety purposes)	Public Locator Beacon ITU RR Articles 32 and 34 and Appendix 15 applies
5.265 5.266 5.267 406.1-410 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.265	5.265 5.266 5.267 406.1-410 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.265	Mobile MTX (407.625 – 410 MHz) Government use for public safety Fixed Links (406.1 – 407.625 MHz) Fixed Links (407.625 – 410 MHz) Mobile MTX (406.1 – 407.625 MHz) Mobile MTX (407.625 – 410 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR PPDR	Paired with 416.1 – 417.625 MHz Paired with 417.625 – 420 MHz Paired with 416.1 – 417.625 MHz Paired with 417.625 – 420 MHz (Government use for public safety) The use of this band for PPDR to be studied.
410-420 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	410-420 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	Mobile MTX (410 – 413 MHz) Government Services Mobile MTX (410 – 413 MHz) Mobile MTX Digital Trunking (410 – 413 MHz)	Paired with 420 – 423 MHz (Government Services) Paired with 420 – 423 MHz Paired with 423-423.7625 MHz Paired with 423.7625 – 426.1 MHz

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-space) 5.268	SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-space) 5.268	Mobile Data MTX (413-413.7625 MHz) Digital Trunking MTX (413.7625 - 416.1 MHz) Mobile BTX (416.1 - 417.625 MHz) PMR and/or PAMIR PPDR	Paired with 406.1 - 407.625 MHz The use of this band for PPDR to be studied.
420-430 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.269 5.270 5.271	420-430 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation	Single Frequency Links (426.1 - 430 MHz) Digital Trunked Mobile BTX (420 - 423 MHz) Mobile Data BTX (423 - 423.7625 MHz) Digital Trunking BTX (423.7625 - 426.1 MHz) PMR and/or PAMIR PPDR	Frequencies will only be assigned for SF links where migration above 1 GHz would be impractical Paired with 410 - 413 MHz (Government use) Paired with 413 - 413.7625 MHz Paired with 413.7626 - 416.1 MHz The use of this band for PPDR to be studied.
430-432 MHz AMATEUR RADIOLOCATION 5.271 5.274 5.275 5.276 5.277	430-432 MHz AMATEUR NF8 RADIOLOCATION	Amateur	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>432-438 MHz</b></p> <p>AMATEUR</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (active)</p> <p>5.279A</p> <p>5.138 5.271 5.276 5.277 5.280</p> <p>5.281 5.282</p>	<p><b>432-438 MHz</b></p> <p>AMATEUR NF8</p> <p>Amateur satellite (435 – 438 MHz)</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (active)</p> <p>5.279A</p> <p>5.138 5.282</p>	<p>Non Specific SRD including RFID (433.05 – 434.79 MHz)</p> <p>Non-Specific SRD's (433.05 – 434.79 MHz)</p> <p>ISM applications</p> <p>Amateur (432-438 MHz)</p> <p>Amateur-satellite (435-438 MHz)</p> <p>ISM (433.0-434.79 MHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p> <p>Conditions for amateur satellite service is given in 5.282</p>
<p><b>438-440 MHz</b></p> <p>AMATEUR</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>5.271 5.274 5.275 5.276 5.277</p> <p>5.283</p>	<p><b>438-440 MHz</b></p> <p>AMATEUR NF8</p>	<p>Amateur</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>440-450 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p>	<p><b>440-450 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p>	<p>Telemetry / Data BTX (440 – 441 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 445 – 446 MHz (MTX) Channels 440.0125, 440.3625, 445.0125 and 445.3625 MHz are used for Agricultural Telemetry. Paired with 440 – 441 MHz (BTX)</p>



ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.209 5.271 5.286 5.286A 5.286B 5.286C 5.286D 5.286E	5.209 5.286 5.286A	IMT (450-470 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR	
<b>455-456 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA	<b>455-456 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA NF9	Trunked mobile BTX (454.425 – 460 MHz) IMT450 (450 – 470 MHz) Government Services	Paired with 464.425 – 470 MHz Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
5.209 5.271 5.286A 5.286B 5.286C 5.286E	5.209 5.286A		
<b>456-459 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA	<b>456-459 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA NF9	Trunked mobile BTX (454.425 – 460 MHz) IMT450 (450 – 470 MHz) Government Services	Paired with 464.425 – 470 MHz Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
5.271 5.287 5.288	5.287		
<b>459-460 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA	<b>459-460 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA NF9	Trunked Mobile BTX 454.425 – 460 MHz IMT450 (450 – 470 MHz) Government Services	Paired with 464.425 – 470 MHz Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015 Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
5.209 5.271 5.286A 5.286B 5.286C 5.286E	5.209 5.271 5.286A		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
460-470 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA	460-470 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.286AA NF9	Fixed Links (460 – 463 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (463.025 – 463.975 MHz) Low Power Mobile Radio (463.975 MHz, 464.125 MHz, 464.175 MHz, 464.325 MHz, 464.375 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (464.375 – 464.425 MHz) Trunked Mobile MTX (464.425 – 470 MHz) IMT450 (450 – 470 MHz) Security Systems (464.5375 MHz) Non-specific SRDs (464.5 – 464.5875 MHz) Government Services	Paired with 450 – 453 MHz  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Recommendation ITU-R M.1036  Paired with 454.425 – 460 MHz  International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
5.287 5.288 5.289 5.290 470-694 MHz BROADCASTING	5.287 5.289 470-694 MHz BROADCASTING  RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.304	DTT Broadcasting (470-694 MHz)  Radio Astronomy (606 – 614 MHz)	Broadcasting Allotments in accordance with GE89 and GE06. Broadcast assignments in accordance with the latest version of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG No.36321) 02 April 2013. Band IV/V Analogue television is to be migrated to digital television and

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p>5.149 5.291A 5.294 5.296 5.300 5.304 5.306 5.311A 5.312</p> <p><b>694-790 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.312A 5.317A</p> <p>BROADCASTING 5.300 5.311A 5.312</p>	<p>5.149 5.311A</p> <p><b>694-790 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.312A 5.317A NF9</p> <p>BROADCASTING 5.300 5.311A 5.312 NF8A</p>	<p>SAP/SAB Applications</p>	<p>ensure harmonisation with SADC. The use of 'White Spaces' in this band is under consideration (subject to Non Interference Non Protection basis to users under a primary allocation). 470 - 606 MHz, max. 50 mW ERP</p> <p>606 - 614 MHz, max. 50 mW ERP</p>
<p><b>694-790 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.312A 5.317A</p> <p>BROADCASTING 5.300 5.311A 5.312</p>	<p><b>694-790 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.312A 5.317A NF9</p> <p>BROADCASTING 5.300 5.311A 5.312 NF8A</p>	<p>IMT700 (694 – 790 MHz)</p>	<p>International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. IMT in accordance with ITU-R Recommendation M.2090 and Resolution <b>760 (WRC-15)</b> applies Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 Consideration of the future spectrum needs of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) in the range 694-790 MHz as described in the most</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.300 5.311A 5.312	5.311A		recent ITU-R M.2015, while taking into account studies called for by Resolution 646 (WRC15) for technical and operational measures.
<b>790-862 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.316B 5.317A BROADCASTING 5.312 5.319	<b>790-862 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.316B 5.317A NF9 BROADCASTING 5.312 5.319 NF8A	Fixed Links (856 – 864.1 MHz) IMT800 BTX (791 – 821 MHz) Wireless Access (827.775 – 832.695 MHz) IMT800 MTX (832 – 862 MHz) Television Broadcasting (470 – 854 MHz)	International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 The fixed links have to be migrated along with the broadcasting service in line with Radio Frequency Migration Plan. Band IV/V analogue television is to be migrated to digital television and ensure harmonisation with SADC. WRC-07, WRC-12 and WRC-15 allocated this band to Mobile service except aeronautical mobile and identified it for IMT.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>862-890 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A</p>	<p><b>862-890 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A NF10</p>		<p>Fixed links operating in this band will have to be migrated in order to accommodate IMT.</p> <p>Consideration of the future spectrum needs of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) in the range 790-862 MHz as described in the most recent ITU-R M.2015, while taking into account studies called for by Resolution 646 (WRC15) for technical and operational measures.</p>
<p><b>862-890 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A</p>	<p><b>862-890 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A NF10</p>	<p>Fixed Links (856 – 864.1 MHz)</p> <p>Wireless Access (872.775 – 877.695 MHz)</p> <p>GSM-R (MTX) (877.695 – 880 MHz) NF10</p> <p>IMT900 MTX (880 – 915 MHz)</p> <p>Wireless Audio systems and Wireless microphones (863 – 865 MHz)</p> <p>CT2 cordless phones (864.1 – 868.1 MHz)</p> <p>FWA (864.1 – 868.1 MHz)</p> <p>RFID (865 – 868 MHz)</p> <p>Non-specific SRD and RFID (869.4 – 869.65 MHz)</p> <p>Non Specific SRDs (868 – 868.6 MHz, 868.7 – 869.2 MHz,</p>	<p>Paired with 868.1 – 876 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 827.775 – 832.695 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 921 – 925 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 925 – 960 MHz</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p> <p>Recommendation ITU-R M.1036</p>



ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>890-942 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A</p> <p>BROADCASTING 5.322</p> <p>Radiolocation</p> <p>5.323</p>	<p><b>890-942 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A NF9 NF10 NF11</p>	<p>GSM-R (BTX) (921 - 925 MHz)</p> <p>IMT900 MTX (880 – 915 MHz)</p> <p>IMT900 BTX (925 – 960 MHz)</p> <p>RFID (including, passive tags and vehicle location (915.1 – 921 MHz)</p> <p>915-921 MHz</p> <hr/> <p>921-925 MHz</p> <p>GSM-R</p> <hr/> <p>925-960 MHz</p> <p>IMT</p>	<p>Paired with 877.695 – 880 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 925 – 960 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 880 – 915 MHz</p> <p>International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014.</p> <p>Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015.</p> <p>Paired with 876-880 MHz</p> <p>Paired with 880-915 MHz</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
942-960 MHz	942-960 MHz		
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A BROADCASTING 5.322 5.323	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.317A NF9	IMT900 BTX (925 – 960 MHz)	Paired with 880 – 915 MHz Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
960-1 164 MHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R) 5.327A AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.328 5.328 5.328AA	960-1 164 MHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R) 5.327A AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.328 5.328 5.328AA	Distance measuring equipment / Secondary surveillance radar	
1 164-1 215 MHz AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.328 RADIONAVIGATION- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B	1 164-1 215 MHz AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.328 RADIONAVIGATION- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B	Galileo (1164 – 1214 MHz) GLONASS (1190.3 – 1213.8 MHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.328A	5.328A		
<p><b>1 215-1 240 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B 5.329 5.329A</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p>	<p><b>1 215-1 240 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B 5.329 5.329A</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p>	<p>Radar/navigation systems (1215 – 1300 MHz)</p> <p>GPS (1215 – 1260 MHz)</p> <p>GLONASS (1237.8-1253.8 MHz)</p>	
5.330 5.331 5.332	5.331 5.332		
<p><b>1 240-1 300 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B 5.329 5.329A</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p> <p>Amateur</p>	<p><b>1 240-1 300 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B 5.329 5.329A</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p> <p>Amateur</p>	<p>Air Traffic Control Radar (1 240 – 1 350 MHz)</p> <p>Radar/navigation systems (1215 – 1300 MHz)</p> <p>GPS (1215 – 1260 MHz)</p> <p>GLONASS (1237.8 – 1253.8 MHz)</p> <p>Galileo (1260 – 1300 MHz)</p> <p>Amateur (1 240 – 1 300 MHz)</p>	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.282 5.330 5.331 5.332 5.335 5.335A	5.282 5.331 5.332 5.335A		
<b>1 300-1 350 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.337 RADIOLOCATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.149 5.337A	<b>1 300-1 350 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.337 RADIOLOCATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) Radio Astronomy 5.149 5.337A	Air Traffic Control Radar (1 240 – 1 350 MHz)	
<b>1 350-1 400 MHz</b> FIXED	<b>1 350-1 400 MHz</b> FIXED NF 14	1 350-1 375 MHz Fixed links (duplex) 1 375-1 400 MHz Fixed links (duplex)	Paired with 1492-1517 MHz; ITU-R F.1242 refers. Paired with 1427-1452 MHz;

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE RADIOLOCATION 5.149 5.338 5.338A 5.339	MOBILE RADIOLOCATION Radio Astronomy 5.149 5.338A 5.339		ITU-R F.1242 refers.
<b>1 400-1 427 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341	<b>1 400-1 427 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341	Passive sensing	
<b>1 427-1 429 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5,341A 5.338A 5.341	<b>1 427-1 429 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) FIXED NF14 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5,341A 5.338A 5.341	1 427-1 452 MHz Fixed links (duplex)	Paired with 1 375 – 1 400 MHz. In accordance with Recommendation ITU-R F.1242  ITU Res. 223 (Rev.WRC-15)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>1 429-1 452 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.341A</p> <p>5.338A 5.341 5.342</p>	<p><b>1 429-1 452 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.341A</p> <p>5.338A 5.341</p>	<p>1 427-1 452 MHz</p> <p>Fixed links (duplex)</p>	<p>Paired with 1 375 – 1 400 MHz) In accordance with Recommendation ITU-R F.1242</p>
<p><b>1 452-1 492 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.346</p> <p>BROADCASTING</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.208B</p> <p>5.341 5.342 5.345</p>	<p><b>1 452-1 492 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.346</p> <p>BROADCASTING</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.208B</p> <p>5.341 5.345 NF12</p>	<p>)</p>	<p>studies called for Resolution <b>761 (WRC-15)</b> on the “Compatibility of International Mobile Telecommunications and broadcasting-satellite service and take appropriate regulatory and technical studies, with a view to ensuring the compatibility of IMT and BSS (sound) are undertaken within the ITU-R ITU-R Res. 223 (Rev. WRC-15)</p> <p>ITU-R Res. 223 (Rev. WRC-15)</p>
<p><b>1 492-1 518 MHz</b></p>	<p><b>1 492-1 518 MHz</b></p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.341A</p> <p>5.341 5.342</p>	<p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.341A</p> <p>5.341</p>	<p>Fixed Links (1 492 – 1 517 MHz)</p> <p>Single Frequency Links (1 517 – 1 525 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 1 350 – 1 375 MHz In accordance with Recommendation ITU-R F.1242</p> <p>ITU-R Res. 223 (Rev.WRC-15) (Sharing and Compatibility Studies called for by Resolution 223 (Rev. WRC-15) are underway within the ITU-R)</p>
<p><b>1 518-1 525 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.348 5.348A 5.348B 5.351A</p> <p>5.341 5.342</p>	<p><b>1 518-1 525 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.348 5.348A 5.351A</p> <p>5.341</p>	<p>IMT Satellite component</p>	<p>The band 1518-1559 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>1 525-1 530 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208B 5.351A</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite</p> <p>Mobile except aeronautical mobile 5.349</p> <p>5.341 5.342 5.350 5.351 5.352A 5.354</p>	<p><b>1 525-1 530 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208B 5.351A</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite</p> <p>Mobile except aeronautical mobile</p> <p>5.341 5.351 5.354</p>	<p>GMDSS Maritime satellite (1 525 – 1 544 MHz)</p> <p>Mobile satellite (1544 – 1545 MHz)</p> <p>Aeronautical Mobile satellite (1545 – 1555 MHz)</p> <p>Land Mobile satellite (1555 – 1559 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 1 626.5 – 1 660.5 MHz</p> <p>The band 1518-1559 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p>
<p><b>1 530-1 535 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208B 5.351A 5.353A</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite</p> <p>Fixed</p>	<p><b>1 530-1 535 MHz</b></p> <p>SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208B 5.351A 5.353A</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite</p> <p>Fixed</p>	<p>GMDSS Maritime satellite (1 525 – 1 544 MHz)</p> <p>Mobile satellite (1544 – 1545 MHz)</p> <p>Aeronautical Mobile satellite (1545 – 1555 MHz)</p> <p>Land Mobile satellite (1555 – 1559 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 1 626.5 – 1 660.5 MHz</p> <p>The band 1518-1559 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p> <p>In the band 1530-1544 MHz priority for maritime mobile distress, urgency and safety communications (GMDSS); Res.222 applies.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
Mobile except aeronautical mobile 5.341 5.342 5.351 5.354	Mobile except aeronautical mobile 5.341 5.351 5.354		
<b>1 535-1 559 MHz</b> MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208B 5.351A 5.341 5.351 5.353A 5.354 5.355 5.356 5.357 5.357A 5.359	<b>1 535-1 559 MHz</b> MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.208B 5.351A 5.341 5.351 5.353A 5.354 5.356 5.357 5.357A	GMDSS Maritime satellite (1 525 – 1 544 MHz) Mobile satellite (1544 – 1545 MHz) Aeronautical Mobile satellite (1545 – 1555 MHz) Land Mobile satellite (1555 – 1559 MHz)	Paired with 1 626.5 – 1 660.5 MHz The band 1518-1559 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies. In the band 1530-1544 MHz priority for maritime mobile distress, urgency and safety communications (GMDSS); Res.222 applies.
<b>1 559-1 610 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.208B 5.328B 5.329A 5.341	<b>1 559-1 610 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.208B 5.328B 5.329A 5.341	Global Positioning System (1 563.42 – 1 587.42 MHz) GALILEO (1559.42 – 1591.42 MHz), GLONAS (1592.9 – 1610.5 MHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>1 610-1 610.6 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A</p> <p>AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>5.341 5.355 5.359 5.364 5.366 5.367 5.368 5.369 5.371 5.372</p>	<p><b>1 610-1 610.6 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A</p> <p>AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>5.341 5.364 5.366 5.367 5.368 5.371 5.372</p>	<p>MSS (1 610 – 1 626.5 MHz)</p> <p>GLONASS (1 592.9 – 1610.5 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 2 483.5 – 2 500 MHz for some systems</p> <p>The band 1610-1645.5 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p> <p>This band is designated world-wide for the MSS. Paired with 2483.5-2484.1 MHz for some systems.</p>
<p><b>1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A</p> <p>RADIO ASTRONOMY AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>5.149 5.341 5.355 5.359 5.364 5.366 5.367 5.368 5.369 5.371 5.372</p>	<p><b>1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A</p> <p>RADIO ASTRONOMY AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>5.149 5.341 5.364 5.366 5.367 5.368 5.371 5.372</p>	<p>MSS (1 610 – 1 626.5 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 2 483.5 – 2 500 MHz for some systems</p> <p>The band 1610-1645.5 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p> <p>This band is designated world-wide for the MSS. Paired with 2484.1-2487.3 MHz for some systems.</p>
<p><b>1 613.8-1 626.5 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A</p> <p>AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p>	<p><b>1 613.8-1 626.5 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A</p> <p>AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p>	<p>MSS (1 610 – 1 626.5 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 2 483.5 – 2 500 MHz for some systems</p> <p>The band 1610-1645.5 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208B  5.341 5.355 5.359 5.364 5.365 5.366 5.367 5.368 5.369 5.371 5.372  <b>1 626.5-1 660 MHz</b>  MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A	Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208B  5.341 5.364 5.365 5.366 5.367 5.368 5.371 5.372  <b>1 626.5-1 660 MHz</b>  MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A		Paired with 1593-1594 MHz for aeronautical public correspondence
<b>1 660-1 660.5 MHz</b>  MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A  5.341 5.351 5.353A 5.354 5.355 5.357A 5.359 5.374 5.375 5.376	<b>1 660-1 660.5 MHz</b>  MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A  5.341 5.351 5.353A 5.354 5.357A 5.374 5.375 5.376	GMDSS Maritime satellite (1 525 – 1 544 MHz) Mobile satellite (1544 – 1545 MHz) Aeronautical Mobile satellite (1545 – 1555 MHz) Land Mobile satellite (1555 – 1559 MHz)	Paired with 1 626.5 – 1 660.5 MHz The bands 1610-1645.5 MHz and 1646.5-1660.5 MHz are identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies. In the band 1626.5-1645.5 MHz priority is given to maritime mobile distress, urgency and safety communications (GMDSS) ; Res.222 applies.
<b>1 660-1 660.5 MHz</b>  MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A  RADIO ASTRONOMY	<b>1 660-1 660.5 MHz</b>  MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A  RADIO ASTRONOMY	GMDSS Maritime satellite (1 525 – 1 544 MHz) Mobile satellite (1544 – 1545 MHz) Aeronautical Mobile satellite (1545 – 1555 MHz)	Paired with 1 626.5 – 1 660.5 MHz The band 1610-1645.5 MHz and 1646.5-1660.5 MHz are identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.149 5.341 5.351 5.354 5.376A <b>1 660.5-1 668 MHz</b>	5.149 5.341 5.351 5.354 5.376A <b>1 660.5-1 668 MHz</b>	Land Mobile satellite (1555 – 1559 MHz)	
RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile 5.149 5.341 5.379 5.379A	RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.149 5.341 5.379A		
<b>1 668-1 668.4 MHz</b> MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.379B 5.379C RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile 5.149 5.341 5.379 5.379A	<b>1 668-1 668.4 MHz</b> MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.379B 5.379C RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.149 5.341 5.379A	IMT satellite component (1 668 – 1 675 MHz)	The band 1668-1675 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.
<b>1 668.4-1 670 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	<b>1 668.4-1 670 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	Radiosonde (1 668 – 1 700 MHz)	The band 1668-1675 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.379B 5.379C RADIO ASTRONOMY  5.149 5.341 5.379D 5.379E	MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.379B 5.379C RADIO ASTRONOMY  5.149 5.341 5.379D 5.379E	IMT satellite component (1 668 – 1 675 MHz)	
<b>1 670-1 675 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS FIXED METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.379B  5.341 5.379D 5.379E 5.380A	<b>1 670-1 675 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.379B  5.341 5.379D 5.379E 5.380A	Radiosonde (1 668 – 1 700 MHz)  IMT satellite component (1 668 – 1 675 MHz)	The band 1668-1675 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.
<b>1 675-1 690 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS FIXED METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)  MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	<b>1 675-1 690 MHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)  MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	Radiosonde (1 668 – 1 700 MHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.341	5.341		
<b>1 690-1 700 MHz</b>	<b>1 690-1 700 MHz</b>		
METEOROLOGICAL AIDS	METEOROLOGICAL AIDS	Radiosonde (1 668 – 1 700 MHz)	Channels 1695.6938 MHz; 1695.7250 MHz; 1695.7562 MHz; 1695.7874 MHz; 1691 MHz and 1694.5 MHz
METEOROLOGICAL- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) Fixed	METEOROLOGICAL- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)		
Mobile except aeronautical mobile			
5.289 5.341 5.382	5.289 5.341		
<b>1 700-1 710 MHz</b>	<b>1 700-1 710 MHz</b>		
FIXED	METEOROLOGICAL- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	Fixed links (single frequency)	
METEOROLOGICAL- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	METEOROLOGICAL- SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)		
MOBILE except aeronautical mobile			
5.289 5.341	5.289 5.341		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
1 710-1 930 MHz FIXED	1 710-1 930 MHz FIXED	FWA (1880 – 1900 MHz) FWA TDD (1900 – 1920 MHz) Fixed Broadband data applications (1 785 – 1 805 MHz)	Paired with BTX 1805 – 1880 MHz Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
MOBILE 5.384A 5.388A 5.388B	MOBILE 5.384A 5.388A NF9	IMT1800 MTX (1710 – 1785 MHz) Cordless telephones (1880 – 1900 MHz) IMT1900 TDD (1900 – 1920 MHz) IMT2100 MTX (1920 – 1980 MHz)	
5.149 5.341 5.385 5.387 5.388	5.149 5.341 5.385 5.388	1 805-1 880 MHz IMT 1 920-1 980 MHz IMT (terrestrial)	Paired with 1710-1785 MHz IMT TDD applications Paired with BTX 2110 – 2170 MHz  Paired with 2110-2170 MHz

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>1 930-1 970 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A 5.388B 5.388	<b>1 930-1 970 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A NF9 5.388	IMT2100 MTX (1920 – 1980 MHz)	Paired with 2110 – 2170 MHz
<b>1 970-1 980 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A 5.388B 5.388	<b>1 970-1 980 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A NF9 5.388	IMT2100 MTX (1920 – 1980 MHz)	Paired with 2110 – 2170 MHz
<b>1 980-2 010 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.388 5.389A 5.389B 5.389F	<b>1 980-2 010 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.351A 5.388 5.389A NF13	Fixed links (1980 – 2010 MHz) CGC/ATC fixed systems (1980 – 2010 MHz) IMT-satellite IMT (satellite) (1980-2010 MHz)	Paired with 2170 – 2200 MHz ) The development of satellites for IMT services to be monitored.
<b>2 010-2 025 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A 5.388B 5.388	<b>2 010-2 025 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A NF9 5.388	IMT TDD (2010 – 2025 MHz)	IMT TDD applications Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
<b>2 025-2 110 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) (space-to-space)	<b>2 025-2 110 MHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) (space-to-space) FIXED MOBILE 5.391 SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) (space-to-space)	FIXED NF14  5.392	Fixed Links (2025 – 2110 MHz)	Paired with 2200 – 2285 MHz Radio Frequency channel arrangement according to ITU-R F.1098.
<b>2 110-2 120 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A 5.388B SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (Earth-to-space)	<b>2 110-2 120 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A NF9	IMT2100 BTX (2110 – 2170 MHz)	Paired with 1920 – 1980 MHz Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
5.388 <b>2 120-2 160 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A 5.388B	5.388 <b>2 120-2 160 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A NF9	IMT-2100 BTX (2110 – 2170 MHz)	Paired with 1920 – 1980 MHz Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
5.388 <b>2 160-2 170 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A 5.388B	5.388 <b>2 160-2 170 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE 5.388A NF9	IMT2100 BTX (2110 – 2170 MHz)	Paired with 1920 – 1980 MHz Recommendation ITU-R M.1036

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.388 <b>2 170-2 200 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.351A  5.388 5.389A 5.389F	5.388 <b>2 170-2 200 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.351A  5.388 5.389A 5.389F NF13 <b>2 200-2 290 MHz</b>	Fixed Links (2170 – 2200 MHz) CGC/ATC fixed systems (1980 – 2010 MHz)  IMT (satellite) (2170-2200 MHz)	Paired with 1980 – 2010 MHz
5.392 <b>2 200-2 290 MHz</b> SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) FIXED  MOBILE 5.391 SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space)	SPACE OPERATION (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space)  FIXED NF14  MOBILE 5.391  5.392	TT&C received from space  Fixed Links (2025 – 2110 MHz paired with 2200 – 2285) Fixed Links (2200 – 2285 MHz) BFWA (2 285-2 300 MHz)	Radio Frequency Channel arrangements in accordance with ITU-R F.1098 Paired with 2025 – 2110 MHz ITU-R Rec. F.1098 refers.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>2 290-2 300 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p><b>2 290-2 300 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p>Fixed Links, BFWA (2 285-2 300 MHz)</p> <p>(Coordination is expected prior to the implementation of these services)</p>	
<p><b>2 300-2 450 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE 5.384A</p> <p>Amateur Radiolocation 5.150 5.282 5.395</p>	<p><b>2 300-2 450 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE 5.384A NF9</p> <p>Amateur 5.150 5.282</p>	<p>FWA (PTP/PTMP) (2307-2387 MHz)</p> <p>FWA (PTP/PTMP) (2401 – 2481 MHz)</p> <p>IMT2300 TDD (2300 – 2400 MHz)</p> <p>WLAN, FDDA and model ctrl. (2400 – 2483.5 MHz)</p> <p>Non-Specific SRDs and low power video surveillance (2400 – 2483.5 MHz)</p> <p>RFID (2 400 – 2 483.5 MHz)</p> <p>ISM applications (2400 – 2483.5 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 2401 – 2481 MHz 28 MHz channels OB links. Frequency co-ordination with other systems operating in the band is mandatory on a case-by-case basis. Primary basis: 2377 MHz and 2471 MHz Secondary basis: 2321 MHz, 2349 MHz, 2415 MHz and 2443 MHz Paired with 2307-2387 MHz</p> <p>International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Recommendation ITU-R M.1036</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>2 450-2 483.5 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p> <p>Radiolocation</p> <p>5.150</p>	<p><b>2 450-2 483.5 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p> <p>Radiolocation</p> <p>5.150</p>	<p>FWA (PTP/PTMP) (2401 – 2481 MHz)</p> <p>WLAN and RFID (2400 – 2483.5 MHz)</p> <p>Non-Specific SRDs and low power video surveillance (2400 – 2483.5 MHz)</p> <p>ISM applications (2400 – 2483.5 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 2307-2387 MHz</p> <p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>2 483.5-2 500 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.351A</p> <p>RADIODETERMINATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.398</p> <p>Radiolocation 5.398A</p>	<p><b>2 483.5-2 500 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.351A</p> <p>RADIODETERMINATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.398</p>	<p>Aeronautical Mobile Video surveillance</p> <p>MSS (2483.5 – 2500 MHz) 2400-2500 MHz</p> <p>Fixed links PTP/PTMP</p> <p>The band 2 400-2 500 MHz is designated for ISM applications (5.150).</p> <p>SRD applications (2 400-2 483.5 MHz)</p>	<p>Unmanned aerial vehicles only</p> <p>Some systems are paired with 1610 – 1626.5 MHz</p> <p>FS paired with 2300-2400 MHz</p> <p>The band 2483.5-2500 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res.225 applies.</p> <p>Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM.1896</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.150 5.399 5.401 5.402 <b>2 500-2 520 MHz</b>	5.150 5.399 5.402 <b>2 500-2 520 MHz</b>		
FIXED 5.410 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A NF9	IMT2600 MTX (2500 – 2570 MHz)	Paired with 2620 – 2690 MHz International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. Recommendation ITU-R M.1036
5.412 <b>2 520-2 655 MHz</b>	<b>2 520-2 655 MHz</b>		
FIXED 5.410 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A  BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.413 5.416	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A NF9	IMT2600 MTX (2500 – 2570 MHz) IMT2600 TDD (2570 – 2620 MHz) IMT2600 BTX (2620 – 2690 MHz) IMT (2500-2690 MHz)	Paired with 2620 – 2690 MHz Paired with 2500 – 2570 MHz International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 The band 2 500-2 690 MHz is also used for BFWA in some SADC countries
5.339 5.412 5.418B 5.418C	5.339		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>2 655-2 670 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED 5.410 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.208B 5.413 5.416 Earth exploration-satellite (passive) Radio astronomy Space research (passive)</p> <p>5.149 5.412</p>	<p><b>2 655-2 670 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A NF9</p> <p>Radio astronomy</p> <p>5.149</p>	<p>IMT2600 BTX (2620 – 2690 MHz); IMT (2500-2690 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with MTX 2500 – 2570 MHz International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. Recommendation ITU-R M.1036</p>
<p><b>2 670-2 690 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED 5.410 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A Earth exploration-satellite (passive) Radio astronomy Space research (passive)</p> <p>5.149 5.412</p>	<p><b>2 670-2 690 MHz</b></p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.384A</p> <p>Radio astronomy</p> <p>5.149</p>	<p>IMT2600 MTX (2620 – 2690 MHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 2500 – 2570 MHz International Mobile Telecommunication Roadmap (GG No.38213) 14 November 2014. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan (GG N. 38640) as amended 30 March 2015. Recommendation ITU-R M.1036</p>
<p><b>2 690-2 700 MHz</b></p>	<p><b>2 690-2 700 MHz</b></p> <p>RADIO ASTRONOMY</p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.422	SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	Passive sensing	
<b>2 700-2 900 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.337 Radiolocation 5.423	<b>2 700-2 900 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.337 Radiolocation 5.423	Government Services	
<b>2 900-3 100 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.424A RADIONAVIGATION 5.426 5.425 5.427	<b>2 900-3 100 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.424A RADIONAVIGATION 5.426 5.425 5.427		
<b>3 100-3 300 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Earth exploration-satellite (active) Space research (active) 5.149 5.428	<b>3 100-3 300 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Earth exploration-satellite (active) Space research (active) 5.149		
<b>3 300-3 400 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	<b>3 300-3 400 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	Government Services	



ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
Mobile	NF14	C-band downlink (VSAT/SNG/PTP links)	frequency sharing with FS PTP and/or FSS is feasible. The channelling arrangement for PTP links in this band is based on ITU-R Recommendation F.635 Annex 1. The sub-band 3 600-4 200 MHz is used for medium and high capacity PTP links and FSS. In the band 3 600-3 800 MHz, FS PTP and FSS applications will have to operate on coordinated basis.
<b>4 200-4 400 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R) 5.436 AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.438  5.437 5.439 5.440	<b>4 200-4 400 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R) 5.436 AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.438  5.437 5.440	Radio altimeters onboard aircraft Radars	
<b>4 400-4 500 MHz</b> FIXED  MOBILE	<b>4 400-4 500 MHz</b> FIXED NF14  MOBILE	Fixed links (4.8 GHz) (4400 – 5000 MHz) Government services Outside Broadcast links Electronic News Gathering	
<b>4 500-4 800 MHz</b> FIXED	<b>4 500-4 800 MHz</b> FIXED NF14		Appendix 30B Plan

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.441 MOBILE 5.440A	FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.441 MOBILE NF15	Fixed links (4.8 GHz) (4400 – 5000 MHz) Government services Outside Broadcast links Electronic News Gathering	The band 4 500–4 800 MHz is part of the APP30B Plan (FSS space-to-Earth). Refer to Annex B.
<b>4 800-4 990 MHz</b>	<b>4 800-4 990 MHz</b>		
FIXED	FIXED NF14	Fixed links (4.8 GHz) (4400 – 5000 MHz) Government services	
MOBILE 5.440A 5.442 Radio astronomy	MOBILE 5.442 Radio astronomy	Outside Broadcast Links Electronic News Gathering Radio astronomy on 4825 – 4835 MHz and 4950 – 4990 MHz	
5.149 5.339 5.443	5.149 5.339 NF15		
<b>4 990-5 000 MHz</b>	<b>4 990-5 000 MHz</b>		
FIXED	FIXED NF14	Fixed links (4.8 GHz) (4400 – 5000 MHz) Government services Outside Broadcast links Electronic News Gathering	
MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY Space research (passive)	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY		
5.149	5.149 NF15		
<b>5 000-5 010 MHz</b>	<b>5 000-5 010 MHz</b>		
AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443AA AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION	AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443AA AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)	RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)		
<p><b>5 010-5 030 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443AA AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B 5.443B</p>	<p><b>5 010-5 030 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443AA AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (space-to-space) 5.328B 5.443B</p>		
<p><b>5 030-5 091 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R) 5.443C AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443D AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>5.444</p>	<p><b>5 030-5 091 MHz</b></p> <p>AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (R) 5.443C AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443D AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>5.444</p>	Microwave Landing System	
<p><b>5 091-5 150 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.444A</p>	<p><b>5 091-5 150 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.444A</p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
AERONAUTICAL MOBILE 5.444B AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) 5.443AA AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION  5.444	AERONAUTICAL MOBILE 5.444B AERONAUTICAL MOBILE-SATELLITE (R) AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)  5.444	NGSO MSS feeder links (5091 – 5150 MHz)	
<b>5 150-5 250 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.447A MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.446B  5.446 5.446C 5.447 5.447B 5.447C	<b>5 150-5 250 MHz</b> AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.447A MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.446B  5.446 5.446C 5.447B 5.447C	NGSO MSS feeder links (5091 – 5150 MHz) WAS / RLAN (5150 – 5350 MHz) (indoor use only)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>5 250-5 255 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH 5.447D MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.447F	<b>5 250-5 255 MHz</b> SPACE RESEARCH 5.447D MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.447F	WAS / RLAN (5150 – 5350 MHz) (indoor use only)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.447E 5.448 5.448A	5.448A		
<b>5 255-5 350 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.447F	<b>5 255-5 350 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.447F	WAS / RLAN (5150 – 5350 MHz) (indoor use only)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
5.447E 5.448 5.448A <b>5 350-5 460 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.448B SPACE RESEARCH (active) 5.448C AERONAUTICAL RADIO NAVIGATION 5.449 RADIOLOCATION 5.448D	5.448A <b>5 350-5 460 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.448B SPACE RESEARCH (active) 5.448C AERONAUTICAL RADIO NAVIGATION 5.449 RADIOLOCATION 5.448D		
<b>5 460-5 470 MHz</b> RADIO NAVIGATION 5.449 EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) SPACE RESEARCH (active) RADIOLOCATION 5.448D	<b>5 460-5 470 MHz</b> RADIO NAVIGATION 5.449 EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) SPACE RESEARCH (active) RADIOLOCATION 5.448D		
5.448B <b>5 470-5 570 MHz</b>	5.448B <b>5 470-5 570 MHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.450A EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (active) SPACE RESEARCH (active) RADIOLOCATION 5.450B 5.448B 5.450 5.451	MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.450A EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (active) SPACE RESEARCH (active) RADIOLOCATION 5.450B 5.448B	WAS / RLAN (5470 – 5725 MHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>5 570-5 650 MHz</b> MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.450A RADIOLOCATION 5.450B 5.450 5.451 5.452	<b>5 570-5 650 MHz</b> MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.450A RADIOLOCATION 5.450B 5.452	Location Radar Ground based meteorological radars (5600 – 5650 MHz) WAS / RLAN (5470 – 5725 MHz) Weather Radars (5600 – 5650 MHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>5 650-5 725 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.450A Amateur Space research (deep space) 5.282 5.451 5.453 5.454 5.455	<b>5 650-5 725 MHz</b> RADIOLOCATION MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.446A 5.450A Amateur Space research (deep space) 5.282	WAS / RLAN (5470 – 5725 MHz) (indoor use only)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>5 725-5 830 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIOLOCATION Amateur</p> <p>5.150 5.451 5.453 5.455</p>	<p><b>5 725-5 830 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIOLOCATION Amateur Fixed NF16</p>	<p>Fixed links (5725 – 5850 MHz) RTT data (5795 – 5815 MHz) ISM applications (5725 – 5875 MHz) BFWA (5725-5850 MHz) ISM (5725-5875 MHz) RTTT (Road Transport and Traffic Telematics) (5795-5815 MHz) SRD applications (5 725-5 875 MHz) SRD - Transport and information control systems (5 805-5 815 MHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p> <p>BFWA in some SADC countries is limited to below 5850 MHz in order to protect FSS in the band 5850-6425 MHz</p> <p>Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM.1896</p> <p>Transport information and control systems Recommendation ITU-R M.1453</p>
<p><b>5 830-5 850 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p><b>5 830-5 850 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p>Fixed links BFWA (5725 – 5850 MHz) ISM applications (5725 – 5875 MHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 3417238641, 3130 March 2015).</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.150 5.451 5.453 5.455 <b>5 850-5 925 MHz</b>	Fixed NF16  5.150 <b>5 850-5 925 MHz</b>		BFWA in some SADC countries is limited to below 5850 MHz in order to protect FSS in the band 5850-6425 MHz
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE	FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE	C-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/PTP links)  ISM applications (5725 – 5875 MHz) Fixed-satellite uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (5850-6425 MHz) FIXED links (5850-5925 MHz) ISM (5725-5875 MHz)	FS could be used for temporary OB links.
5.150 <b>5 925-6 700 MHz</b>  FIXED 5.457 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B MOBILE 5.457C	5.150 <b>5 925-6 700 MHz</b>  FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B	Fixed links - Lower 6 GHz (5925-6425 MHz) and Upper 6 GHz (6425-7110 MHz), BFWA  Fixed-satellite uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (5850-6425 MHz) ESVs (5925 – 6425 MHz)	Channelling plan for L6 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.383.  Channelling plan for U6 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.384. Earth Station onboard vessels (ESV) also allowed under FSS.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.149 5.440 5.458 <b>6 700-7 075 MHz</b>	5.149 5.440 5.458 <b>6 700-7 075 MHz</b>		
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) (space-to-Earth) 5.441 MOBILE	FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) (space-to-Earth) 5.441	Fixed Links (U6) (6425 – 7110 MHz) S-DAB feeder links (uplinks) Fixed links - Upper 6 GHz (6425-7110 MHz)	Channelling plan for U6 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.384. The band 6 725-7 025 MHz is part of the APP30B Plan (FSS Earth-to-space); refer to Annex B.
5.458 5.458A 5.458B <b>7 075-7 145 MHz</b> FIXED MOBILE	5.458 5.458A 5.458B <b>7 075-7 145 MHz</b> FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (U6) (6425 – 7110 MHz) Fixed Links (L7) (7110 – 7425 MHz) Fixed links - Upper 6 GHz (6425-7110 MHz) and Lower 7 GHz (7110-7425 MHz)	Channelling plan for U6 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.384. Channelling plan for L7 band is in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.
5.458 5.459 <b>7 145-7 190 MHz</b>	5.458 7 145-7 190 MHz		
FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (Earth-to-space)	FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (Earth-to-space)	Fixed links - Lower 7 GHz (7110-7425 MHz)	Channelling plan for L7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.
5.458 5.459 <b>7 190-7 235 MHz</b>	5.458 5.459 <b>7 190-7 235 MHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.460A 5.460B FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) 5.460  5.458 5.459 <b>7 235-7 250 MHz</b>	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.460A 5.460B FIXED NF14 SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) 5.460  5.458 <b>7 235-7 250 MHz</b> FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (L7) (7110 – 7425 MHz)	
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.460A FIXED MOBILE  5.458 <b>7 250-7 300 MHz</b>	5.458 <b>7 250-7 300 MHz</b> FIXED NF14	Fixed links - Lower 7 GHz (7110-7425 MHz)	Channelling plan for L7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE  5.461 <b>7 300-7 375 MHz</b>	5.461 <b>7 300-7 375 MHz</b>	Fixed links - Lower 7 GHz (7110-7425 MHz)	Channelling plan for L7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p> <p><b>5.461</b></p>	<p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p> <p><b>5.461</b></p>	<p>Fixed links - Lower 7 GHz (7110-7425 MHz) and Upper 7 GHz (7425-7750 MHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for L7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3. Channelling plan for U7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.</p>
<p><b>7 375-7 450 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile MARITIME MOBILE SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.461AA 5.461AB</p>	<p><b>7 375-7 450 MHz</b>FIXED NF14</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile MARITIME MOBILE SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.461AA 5.461AB</p>	<p>Fixed links - Lower 7 GHz (7110-7425 MHz) and Upper 7 GHz (7425-7750 MHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for L7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3. Channelling plan for U7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.</p>
<p><b>7 450-7 550 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p><b>7 450-7 550 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14 METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MARITIME MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.461AA 5.461AB</p>	<p>Fixed links - Upper 7 GHz (7425-7750 MHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for U7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MARITIME MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.461AA 5.461AB 5.461A	5.461A		
<b>7 550-7 750 MHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE except aeronautical mobile MARITIME MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.461AA 5.461AB	<b>7 550-7 750 MHz</b> FIXED NF14 MARITIME MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.461AA 5.461AB	Fixed links - Upper 7 GHz (7425-7750 MHz)	Channelling plan for U7 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.385 Annex 3.
<b>7 750-7 900 MHz</b> FIXED METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.461B MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	<b>7 750-7 900 MHz</b> FIXED NF14 METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.461B	Fixed Links (L8) (7725 – 8275 MHz) Fixed links - Lower 8 GHz (7725-8275 MHz)	Channelling plan for L8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.
<b>7 900-8 025 MHz</b>	<b>7 900-8 025 MHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE  5.461	FIXED NF14  5.461	Fixed Links (L8) (7725 – 8275 MHz) Fixed links - Lower 8 GHz (7725-8275 MHz)	Channelling plan for L8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.
<b>8 025-8 175 MHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE 5.463  5.462A	<b>8 025-8 175 MHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) FIXED NF14  5.462A	Fixed Links (L8) (7725 – 8275 MHz) Fixed links - Lower 8 GHz (7725-8275 MHz)	Channelling plan for L8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.
<b>8 175-8 215 MHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE 5.463  5.462A	<b>8 175-8 215 MHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) FIXED NF14  METEOROLOGICAL-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)  5.462A	Fixed Links (L8) (7725 – 8275 MHz) Fixed links - Lower 8 GHz (7725-8275 MHz)	Channelling plan for L8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 386 - PART 4**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 4 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>8 215-8 400 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) FIXED</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>MOBILE 5.463</p> <p>5.462A</p>	<p><b>8 215-8 400 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) FIXED NF14</p> <p>5.462A</p>	<p>Fixed Links (L8) (7725 – 8275 MHz)</p> <p>Fixed Links (U8) (8275 – 8500 MHz)</p> <p>Fixed links - Lower 8 GHz (7725-8275 MHz) and Upper 8 GHz (8275-8500 MHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for L8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.</p> <p>Channelling plan for U8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.</p>
<p><b>8 400-8 500 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) 5.465</p>	<p><b>8 400-8 500 MHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) 5.465</p>	<p>Fixed Links (U8) (8275 – 8500 MHz)</p> <p>Fixed links - Upper 8 GHz (8275-8500 MHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for U8 band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.386 Annex 1.</p>
<p><b>8 500-8 550 MHz</b></p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>5.468 5.469</p>	<p><b>8 500-8 550 MHz</b></p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p>	<p>RADARS, aeronautical radio navigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars.</p>	
<p><b>8 550-8 650 MHz</b></p>	<p><b>8 550-8 650 MHz</b></p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active)	ARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active)	RADARS, aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	
5.468 5.469 5.469A	5.469A		
<b>8 650-8 750 MHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION	<b>8 650-8 750 MHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION	RADARS, aeronautical radio navigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	
5.468 5.469			
<b>8 750-8 850 MHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.470	<b>8 750-8 850 MHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.470	RADARS, aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	
5.471			
<b>8 850-9 000 MHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION 5.472	<b>8 850-9 000 MHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION 5.472	RADARS, aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	
5.473			
<b>9 000-9 200 MHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.337	<b>9 000-9 200 MHz</b>  AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.337	Approach radars	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIOLOCATION 5.471 5.473A	RADIOLOCATION 5.473A	RADARS. aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	
<b>9 200-9 300 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.474A 5.474B 5.474C RADIOLOCATION MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION 5.472	<b>9 200-9 300 MHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.474A 5.474B 5.474C RADIOLOCATION MARITIME RADIONAVIGATION 5.472	Field Disturbance and Doppler Apparatus (9200 – 9975 MHz) Harbour radars RADARS. aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
5.473 5.474 5.474D <b>9 300-9 500 MHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) SPACE RESEARCH (active) RADIOLOCATION 5.427 5.474 5.475 5.475A 5.475B 5.476A	5.474 5.474D <b>9 300-9 500 MHz</b> RADIONAVIGATION EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) SPACE RESEARCH (active) RADIOLOCATION 5.427 5.474 5.475 5.475A 5.475B 5.476A	Shore based radars (9380 – 9440 MHz) Field Disturbance and Doppler Apparatus (9200 – 9975 MHz) RADARS. aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>9 500-9 800 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active)</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p> <p>5.476A</p>	<p><b>9 500-9 800 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active)</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>RADIONAVIGATION</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p> <p>5.476A</p>	<p>Field Disturbance and Doppler Apparatus (9200 – 9975 MHz)</p> <p>RADARS: aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>9 800-9 900 MHz</b></p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (active)</p> <p>Space research (active)</p> <p>Fixed</p> <p>5.477 5.478 5.478A 5.478B</p>	<p><b>9 800-9 900 MHz</b></p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (active)</p> <p>Space research (active)</p> <p>5.478A 5.478B</p>	<p>Field Disturbance and Doppler Apparatus (9200 – 9975 MHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p>
<p><b>9 900-10 000 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active)</p> <p>5.474A 5.474B 5.474C</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p> <p>Fixed</p>	<p><b>9 900-10 000 MHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active)</p> <p>5.474A 5.474B 5.474C</p> <p>RADIOLOCATION</p>	<p>Field Disturbance and Doppler Apparatus (9200 – 9975 MHz)</p> <p>RADARS: aeronautical radionavigation e.g. precision airfield approach radars</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.474D 5.477 5.478 5.479 <b>10-10.4 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.474A 5.474B 5.474C FIXED MOBILE RADIOLOCATION Amateur 5.474D 5.479	5.474D 5.479 <b>10-10.4 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.474A 5.474B 5.474C FIXED NF14 MOBILE RADIOLOCATION Amateur 5.474D 5.479		
<b>10.4-10.45 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIOLOCATION Amateur	<b>10.4-10.45 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 RADIOLOCATION	Low power video links (10.0 – 10.15 GHz) BFWA (10.15 – 10.3 GHz) Motion sensors BFWA – 10.5 GHz (10.15-10.30 GHz)	Paired with 10.50-10.65 GHz Channelling plan for 10.5 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1568 Annex 1.
<b>10.45-10.5 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite 5.481	<b>10.45-10.5 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	Radars Motion Sensors	
<b>10.5-10.55 GHz</b>	<b>10.5-10.55 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p>FIXED MOBILE Radiolocation</p>	<p>FIXED NF14 MOBILE Radiolocation</p>	<p>BFWA (10.5 – 10.65 GHz) SAP/SAB Applications (Video connections) (10.5 – 10.68 GHz) FDDA (10.5 – 10.6 GHz)</p>	<p>Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Paired with 10.15-10.30 GHz Channelling plan for 10.5 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1568 Annex 1.</p>
<p><b>10.55-10.6 GHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation</p>	<p><b>10.55-10.6 GHz</b>  FIXED NF14 Radiolocation</p>	<p>BFWA (10.5 – 10.65 GHz) SAP/SAB Applications (video connections) (10.5 – 10.68 GHz) FDDA (10.5 – 10.6 GHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 10.15 – 10.3 GHz  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Paired with 10.15-10.30 GHz Channelling plan for 10.5 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1568 Annex 1</p>
<p><b>10.6-10.68 GHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p><b>10.6-10.68 GHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED NF14 RADIO ASTRONOMY</p>	<p>BFWA (10.5 – 10.65 GHz) SAP/SAB Applications (video connections) (10.5 – 10.68 GHz)</p>	<p>Paired with 10.15 – 10.3 GHz Paired with 10.15-10.30 GHz</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) Radiolocation  5.149 5.482 5.482A <b>10.68-10.7 GHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	SPACE RESEARCH (passive) Radiolocation  5.149 5.482 5.482A <b>10.68-10.7 GHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	Motion sensors	Channelling plan for 10.5 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1568 Annex 1. For sharing between EESS (passive) and the fixed and mobile service Res.751 applies.
5.340 5.483 <b>10.7-10.95 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.441 (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	5.340 <b>10.7-10.95 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.441 (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile		This band is used for Fixed links (11 GHz) (10.7-11.7 GHz). The channelling plan for FS Links are in accordance with ITU-R Rec.F387.  The band is also available for FSS Planned services (see Appendix 30B).  The band can also be used for BSS feeder links (see 5.484).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>10.95-11.2 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p><b>10.95-11.2 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>		<p>This band is used for Fixed links (11 GHz) (10.7-11.7 GHz). The channeling plan for FS Links are in accordance with ITU-R Rec.F387.</p> <p>This band is also used for FSS (downlink) (VSAT/SNG/BSS feeder links). The band can also be used for BSS feeder links (see 5.484).</p>
<p><b>11.2-11.45 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.441 (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p><b>11.2-11.45 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.441 (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>		<p>This band is used for Fixed links (11 GHz) (10.7-11.7 GHz). The channeling plan for FS Links are in accordance with ITU-R Rec.F387.</p> <p>The band is also available for FSS Planned services (see Appendix 30B). The band can also be used for BSS feeder links (see 5.484).</p>
<p><b>11.45-11.7 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p><b>11.45-11.7 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B (Earth-to-space) 5.484 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile</p>	<p>Fixed Links (11 GHz) (10.7 – 11.7 GHz) Ku-band downlink (VSAT/SNG/BSS feeder links Fixed links - 11 GHz (10.7-11.7 GHz)</p>	<p>This band is used for Fixed links (11 GHz) (10.7-11.7 GHz). The channeling plan for FS Links are in accordance with ITU-R Rec.F387.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>11.7-12.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile BROADCASTING BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.492</p> <p>5.487 5.487A</p> <p><b>12.5-12.75 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>5.494 5.495 5.496</p> <p><b>12.75-13.25 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.441 MOBILE Space research (deep space) (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p><b>11.7-12.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile BROADCASTING BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.492</p> <p>5.487 5.487A</p> <p><b>12.5-12.75 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>5.495</p> <p><b>12.75-13.25 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.441</p>	<p>Fixed-satellite downlinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG),</p> <p>OB links ENG BSS feeder links</p> <p>Fixed Links (13 GHz) (12.75 – 13.25 GHz)</p>	<p>This band is also used for FSS (downlink) (VSAT/SNG/BSS feeder links). The band can also be used for BSS feeder links (see 5.484).</p> <p>Appendix 30 Plan This band is available for BSS in accordance with Appendix 30 of ITU RR. Refer to Annex B.</p> <p>Appendix 30B Plan Channelling plan for 13 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.497.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>13.25-13.4 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.497 SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p> <p>5.498A 5.499</p>	<p><b>13.25-13.4 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION 5.497 SPACE RESEARCH (active)</p> <p>5.498A</p>	<p>Airborne Doppler Radar</p>	<p>The band 12.75-13.25 GHz is part of the APP30B Plan (FSS Earth-to-space); refer to Annex B.</p>
<p><b>13.4-13.65 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) FIXED SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.499A 5.499B RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH 5.499C 5.499D Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>5.499 5.499E 5.500 5.501 5.501B</p> <p><b>13.65-13.75 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active)</p>	<p><b>13.4-13.65 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) FIXED SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.499A 5.499B RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH 5.499C 5.499D Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>5.499 5.499E 5.500 5.501 5.501B</p> <p><b>13.65-13.75 GHz</b></p>		
<p><b>13.65-13.75 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active)</p>	<p><b>13.65-13.75 GHz</b></p>	<p>FDDA (13.4 – 14 GHz)</p>	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH 5.501A Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (Earth-to-space)	RADIOLOCATION  5.501B	RADIOLOCATION	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
<b>13.75-14 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A RADIOLOCATION Earth exploration-satellite Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (Earth-to-space) Space research	<b>13.75-14 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A  RADIOLOCATION	Ku-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/FSS feeder links) FDDA (13.4 – 14 GHz) FSS uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (13.75-14.5 GHz) RADIOLOCATION	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
5.499 5.500 5.501 5.502 5.503	5.502 5.503		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>14-14.25 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B RADIONAVIGATION 5.504 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.504C 5.506A Space research 5.504A 5.505	<b>14-14.25 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B NF17 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.504C 5.506A 5.504A	Ku-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/FSS feeder links) FSS uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (13.75-14.5 GHz) ESVs (14 -14.5 GHz)	Earth Station onboard vessels (ESV) also allowed under FSS; Res. 902 applies. The band 14.0-14.5 GHz may also be used for AES (aircraft-to-space station).
<b>14.25-14.3 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B RADIONAVIGATION 5.504 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.508A Space research 5.504A 5.505 5.508	<b>14.25-14.3 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B NF17 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.504A	Ku-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/FSS feeder links) FSS uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (13.75-14.5 GHz) ESVs (14 -14.5 GHz)	Earth Station onboard vessels (ESV) also allowed under FSS; Res. 902 applies. The band 14.0-14.5 GHz may also be used for AES (aircraft-to-space station).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>14.3-14.4 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.509A Radionavigation-satellite</p> <p>5.504A</p>	<p><b>14.3-14.4 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B NF17 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.508A</p> <p>5.504A</p>	<p>Ku-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/FSS feeder links) FSS uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (13.75-14.5 GHz) ESVs (14 -14.5 GHz)</p>	<p>Earth Station on board vessels (ESV) also allowed under FSS; Res. 902 applies. The band 14.0-14.5 GHz may also be used for AES (aircraft-to-space station).</p>
<p><b>14.4-14.47 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.509A Space research (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.504A</p>	<p><b>14.4-14.47 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.484B 5.506 5.506B NF17 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.508A</p> <p>5.504A</p>	<p>Ku-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/FSS feeder links) FSS uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (13.75-14.5 GHz) ESVs (14 -14.5 GHz)</p>	<p>Earth Station onboard vessels (ESV) also allowed under FSS; Res. 902 applies. The band 14.0-14.5 GHz may also be used for AES (aircraft-to-space station).</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>14.47-14.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.506 5.506B MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.509A Radio astronomy</p> <p>5.149 5.504A</p>	<p><b>14.47-14.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.457A 5.457B 5.484A 5.506 5.506B NF17</p> <p>Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.504B 5.506A 5.508A Radio astronomy</p> <p>5.149 5.504A</p>	<p>Ku-band uplink (VSAT/SNG/FSS feeder links)</p> <p>FSS uplinks (PTP/VSAT/SNG) (13.75-14.5 GHz)</p> <p>ESVs (14 -14.5 GHz)</p>	<p>Earth Station onboard vessels (ESV) also allowed under FSS; Res. 902 applies.</p> <p>The band 14.0-14.5 GHz may also be used for AES (aircraft-to-space station).</p>
<p><b>14.5-14.75 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.509B 5.509C 5.509D 5.509E 5.509F 5.510 MOBILE Space research 5.509G</p>	<p><b>14.5-14.75 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.510 MOBILE Space research 5.509G</p>	<p>Fixed links - 15 GHz (14.5-15.35 GHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for 15 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.636.</p> <p>The band 14.5-14.8 GHz is part of the APP30A Plan (Feeder Links for BSS) for some SADC countries. Refer to Annex B.</p>
<p><b>14.75-14.8 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.510 MOBILE Space research 5.509G</p>	<p><b>14.5-14.8 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.510</p>	<p>Fixed Links (15 GHz) (14.5 – 15.35 GHz) BSS feeder links Fixed links - 15 GHz (14.5-15.35 GHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for 15 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.636.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>14.8-15.35 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE Space research  5.339	<b>14.8-15.35 GHz</b> FIXED NF14  5.339	Fixed Links (15 GHz) (14.5 – 15.35 GHz)	The band 14.5-14.8 GHz is part of the APP30A Plan (Feeder Links for BSS) for some SADC countries. Refer to Annex B.
<b>15.35-15.4 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)  5.340 5.511	<b>15.35-15.4 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive)  5.340	Very long base interferometry Observations Passive sensing	Channelling plan for 15 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.636.
<b>15.4-15.43 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.511E 5.511F AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION	<b>15.4-15.43 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.511E 5.511F AERONAUTICAL RADIONAVIGATION	Radio Altimeters Radars	ICAO: ASDE Annex 10
<b>15.43-15.63 GHz</b>	<b>15.43-15.63 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.511A RADIOLOCATION 5.511E 5.511F AERONAUTICAL RADIOLOCATION 5.511C	RADIOLOCATION 5.511E 5.511F AERONAUTICAL RADIOLOCATION 5.511C	Radio Altimeters Radars	ICAO: ASDE Annex 10
<b>15.63-15.7 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.511E 5.511F AERONAUTICAL RADIOLOCATION <b>15.7-16.6 GHz</b>	<b>15.63-15.7 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.511E 5.511F AERONAUTICAL RADIOLOCATION <b>15.7-16.6 GHz</b>	Radio Altimeters Radars	ICAO: ASDE Annex 10
<b>15.7-16.6 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION 5.512 5.513	<b>15.7-16.6 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION	Government Services	Altimeters / Distance measuring equipment
<b>16.6-17.1 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Space research (deep space) (Earth-to-space)	<b>16.6-17.1 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Space research (deep space) (Earth-to-space)		
5.512 5.513 <b>17.1-17.2 GHz</b>	<b>17.1-17.2 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIOLOCATION 5.512 5.513 <b>17.2-17.3 GHz</b>	RADIOLOCATION <b>17.2-17.3 GHz</b>	WAS / RLAN	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) 5.512 5.513 5.513A <b>17.3-17.7 GHz</b>	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) 5.513A <b>17.3-17.7 GHz</b>	WAS / RLAN	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.516 (space-to-Earth) 5.516A 5.516B Radiolocation 5.514 <b>17.7-18.1 GHz</b>	FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.516 (space-to-Earth) 5.516A 5.516B Radiolocation <b>17.7-18.1 GHz</b>		The band 17.3-17.7 GHz is part of the APP30A Plan (Feeder Links for BSS) for many SADC countries; refer to Annex B. The band 17.3-17.7 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A (Earth-to-space) 5.516 <b>17.7-18.1 GHz</b>	FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A (Earth-to-space) 5.516 <b>17.7-18.1 GHz</b>	Fixed Links (18 GHz) (17.7 – 19.7 GHz) BSS Feeder Links	Channelling plan for 18 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.595 Annex 1.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE			
<b>18.1-18.4 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.516B (Earth-to-space) 5.520 MOBILE 5.519 5.521	<b>18.1-18.4 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.516B (Earth-to-space) 5.520 5.519	Fixed Links (18 GHz) (17.7 – 19.7 GHz) BSS Feeder Links	Channelling plan for 18 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.595 Annex 1.
<b>18.4-18.6 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.516B MOBILE	<b>18.4-18.6 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.516B	Fixed Links (18 GHz) (17.7 – 19.7 GHz)	Channelling plan for 18 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.595 Annex 1.
<b>18.6-18.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.522B	<b>18.6-18.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.522B	Fixed Links (18 GHz) (17.7 – 19.7 GHz)	Channelling plan for 18 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.595 Annex 1

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Space research (passive) 5.522A 5.522C	Space research (passive) 5.522A	Passive Sensing	
<b>18.8-19.3 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.523A MOBILE	<b>18.8-19.3 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.523A	Fixed Links (18 GHz) (17.7 – 19.7 GHz)	
<b>19.3-19.7 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (Earth-to-space) 5.523B 5.523C 5.523D 5.523E MOBILE	<b>19.3-19.7 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) (Earth-to-space) 5.523B 5.523C 5.523D 5.523E	Fixed Links (18 GHz) (17.7 – 19.7 GHz) BSS Feeder Links	Channelling plan for 18 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.595 Annex 1.
<b>19.7-20.1 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.524	<b>19.7-20.1 GHz</b> FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A	GSO/FSS	The band 19.7-20.2 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>20.1-20.2 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.524 5.525 5.526 5.527 5.528</p>	<p><b>20.1-20.2 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A</p> <p>5.525 5.526 5.527 5.528</p>		<p>The band 19.7-20.2 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.</p>
<p><b>20.2-21.2 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.524</p>	<p><b>20.2-21.2 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p>		
<p><b>21.2-21.4 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive)</p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>MOBILE</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (passive)</p>	<p><b>21.2-21.4 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive)</p> <p>FIXED NF14</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (passive)</p>	<p>Passive Sensing</p> <p>Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz)</p> <p>Fixed links - 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3.</p>
<p><b>21.4-22 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p>	<p><b>21.4-22 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14</p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.208B	MOBILE BROADCASTING-SATELLITE 5.208B	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz)	Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3. The use of BSS in this band is subject to the provisions of WRC - 15 Resolutions .552, 553 and 555.
5.530A 5.530B 5.530D <b>22-22.21 GHz</b>	5.530A 5.530B 5.530D <b>22-22.21 GHz</b>	Fixed links - 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz)	
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.149	FIXED NF14 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.149	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz) Fixed links - 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz)	Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3.
<b>22.21-22.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.149 5.532	<b>22.21-22.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) FIXED NF14 RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.149 5.532	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz) Fixed links - 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz) Passive Sensing	Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3.
<b>22.5-22.55 GHz</b>	<b>22.5-22.55 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED MOBILE	FIXED NF14 MOBILE	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz) Fixed links - 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz)	Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3.
<b>22.55-23.15 GHz</b>  FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.338A MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) 5.532A 5.149	<b>22.55-23.15 GHz</b>  FIXED NF14 SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) 5.532A 5.149	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz) Fixed links – 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz)	Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3.
<b>23.15-23.55 GHz</b>  FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.338A MOBILE	<b>23.15-23.55 GHz</b>  FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz)	
<b>23.55-23.6 GHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE	<b>23.55-23.6 GHz</b>  FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (23 GHz) (21.2 – 23.6 GHz) Fixed links - 23 GHz (21.2-23.6 GHz or 22.0-23.6 GHz)	Channelling plan for 23 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.637 Annex 1 or Annex 3.
<b>23.6-24 GHz</b>	<b>23.6-24 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 <b>24-24.05 GHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 <b>24-24.05 GHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE	Passive Sensing	
5.150 <b>24.05-24.25 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur Earth exploration-satellite (active)	5.150 <b>24.05-24.25 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur Earth exploration-satellite (active)	FDDA (24.05 – 24.25 GHz) Non-specific SRDs (24-24.25 GHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM.1896
5.150 <b>24.05-24.25 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur Earth exploration-satellite (active)	5.150 <b>24.05-24.25 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur Earth exploration-satellite (active)	Non-specific SRDs (24-24.25 GHz) AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE ISM (24.0-24.25 GHz) SRD applications (24-24.25 GHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.150	5.150		The band 24.0-24.25 GHz is designated for ISM applications (5.150).
24.25-24.45 GHz FIXED	24.25-24.45 GHz FIXED		Temporary fixed links for ENG/OB
24.45-24.65 GHz FIXED INTER-SATELLITE	24.45-24.65 GHz FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (26 GHz) (24.5 – 26.5 GHz) Fixed links - 26 GHz (24.5-26.5 GHz) BFWA (24.5-26.5 GHz)	Channelling plan for 26 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 1.
24.65-24.75 GHz FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.532B INTER-SATELLITE	24.65-24.75 GHz FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (26 GHz) (24.5 – 26.5 GHz) Fixed links - 26 GHz (24.5-26.5 GHz) BFWA (24.5-26.5 GHz)	Channelling plan for 26 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 1.
24.75-25.25 GHz FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.532B	24.75-25.25 GHz FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.532B	Fixed Links (26 GHz) (24.5 – 26.5 GHz) Fixed links - 26 GHz (24.5-26.5 GHz) BFWA (24.5-26.5 GHz)	Channelling plan for 26 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 1.
25.25-25.5 GHz	25.25-25.5 GHz		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.536 MOBILE Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (Earth-to-space)	FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (26 GHz) (24.5 – 26.5 GHz) BFWA (24.5-26.5 GHz)	Channelling plan for 26 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 1.
<b>25.5-27 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (space-to Earth) 5.536B FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.536 MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (space-to- Earth) 5.536C Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.536A	<b>25.5-27 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (space-to Earth) 5.536B FIXED NF14 5.536A	National Polar-Orbiting Operational Environment Satellite System (NPOESS) Fixed Links (26 GHz) (24.5 – 26.5 GHz) BFWA (24.5-26.5 GHz)	Channelling plan for 26 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 1.
<b>27-27.5 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.536 MOBILE	<b>27-27.5 GHz</b> FIXED		
<b>27.5-28.5 GHz</b> FIXED 5.537A FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to- space) 5.484A 5.516B 5.539	<b>27.5-28.5 GHz</b> FIXED 5.537A NF14 NF18 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to- space) 5.484A 5.516B 5.539	Fixed Links (28 GHz) (27.5 – 29.5 GHz), LMDS (27.5 – 28.35) Base to Subscriber	LMDS (31.000 – 31.300 MHz) Subscriber to Base

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE 5.538 5.540	5.538 5.540		Channelling plan for 28 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 2. The band 27.5-27.82 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies. The band 27.5-30 GHz may be used by the FSS for BSS feeder links.
<b>28.5-29.1 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A 5.516B 5.523A 5.539 MOBILE Earth exploration-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.541 5.540	<b>28.5-29.1 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A 5.516B 5.523A 5.539	Fixed Links (28 GHz) (27.5 – 29.5 GHz)	Channelling plan for 28 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.748 Annex 2. The band 28.45-28.94 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies. The band 27.5-30 GHz may be used by the FSS for BSS feeder links.
<b>29.1-29.5 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.516B 5.523C 5.523E 5.535A 5.539 5.541A MOBILE Earth exploration-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.541 5.540	<b>29.1-29.5 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 NF18 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.516B 5.523C 5.523E 5.535A 5.539 5.541A	Fixed Links (28 GHz) (27.5 – 29.5 GHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>29.5-29.9 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A 5.539</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.541</p> <p>Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>5.540 5.542</p>	<p><b>29.5-29.9 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A 5.539</p> <p>5.540</p>		<p>The band 29.46-30.0 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.</p>
<p><b>29.9-30 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A 5.539</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.541 5.543</p> <p>5.525 5.526 5.527 5.538 5.540 5.542</p>	<p><b>29.9-30 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.484A 5.484B 5.516B 5.527A 5.539</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.541 5.543</p> <p>5.525 5.526 5.527 5.538 5.540</p>		
<p><b>30-31 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.338A</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.542</p>	<p><b>30-31 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.338A</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space)</p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>31-31.3 GHz</b> FIXED 5.338A 5.543A MOBILE Standard frequency and time signal-satellite (space-to-Earth) Space research 5.544 5.545 5.149	<b>31-31.3 GHz</b> FIXED 5.338A NF18 5.149	31.000 – 31.300 GHz (local multipoint distribution services (LMDS) –subscriber to Base station)	Paired with 27.5 – 28.35 GHz (base station to subscriber)
<b>31.3-31.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>31.3-31.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.340		
<b>31.5-31.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) Fixed Mobile except aeronautical mobile 5.149 5.546	<b>31.5-31.8 GHz</b> RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) FIXED 5.546 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.546 5.149	Passive Sensing	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>31.8-32 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A RADIONAVIGATION SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (space-to-Earth)	<b>31.8-32 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A NF14 RADIONAVIGATION	HDFS (31.8 – 33.4 GHz)	Channelling plan for 32 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1520 Annex 1. The band 31.8-33.4 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
5.547 5.548 <b>32-32.3 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A RADIONAVIGATION SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (space-to-Earth)	5.547 5.548 <b>32-32.3 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A NF14 RADIONAVIGATION SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (space-to-Earth)	HDFS (31.8 – 33.4 GHz)	Channelling plan for 32 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1520 Annex 1. The band 31.8-33.4 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
5.547 5.548 <b>32.3-33 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A INTER-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION	5.547 5.548 <b>32.3-33 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A NF14 INTER-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION	HDFS (31.8 – 33.4 GHz)	Channelling plan for 32 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1520 Annex 1. The band 31.8-33.4 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
5.547 5.548 <b>33-33.4 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A	5.547 5.548 <b>33-33.4 GHz</b> FIXED 5.547A NF14	HDFS (31.8 – 33.4 GHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIO NAVIGATION  5.547	RADIO NAVIGATION  5.547		Channelling plan for 32 GHz band in accordance with ITU-R Rec. F.1520 Annex 1. The band 31.8-33.4 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
<b>33.4-34.2 GHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION  5.549	<b>33.4-34.2 GHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION	Government Services	
<b>34.2-34.7 GHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (Earth-to-space)  5.549	<b>34.2-34.7 GHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (deep space) (Earth-to-space)	Government Services	
<b>34.7-35.2 GHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION Space research 5.550  5.549	<b>34.7-35.2 GHz</b>  RADIOLOCATION Space research 5.550	Government Services	
<b>35.2-35.5 GHz</b>  METEOROLOGICAL AIDS RADIOLOCATION	<b>35.2-35.5 GHz</b>  METEOROLOGICAL AIDS RADIOLOCATION	Government Services	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.549			
<b>35.5-36 GHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) 5.549 5.549A	<b>35.5-36 GHz</b> METEOROLOGICAL AIDS EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) 5.549A	Government Services	
<b>36-37 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.149 5.550A	<b>36-37 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.149 5.550A	Government Services  Passive Sensing	
<b>37-37.5 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH (space-to- Earth) 5.547	<b>37-37.5 GHz</b> FIXED NF14  SPACE RESEARCH (space-to- Earth) 5.547	Fixed Links (38 GHz) (37.0 – 39.5 GHz)	
<b>37.5-38 GHz</b> FIXED	<b>37.5-38 GHz</b> FIXED NF14	Fixed Links (38 GHz) (37.0 – 39.5 GHz)	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      MOBILE except aeronautical mobile                      SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)                      Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.547</p>	<p>SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth)                      Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.547</p>		<p>The band 37-40 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.75 applies.                      Channelling plan for 38 GHz band in accordance with ITU Rec. F.749 Annex 1.</p>
<p><b>38-39.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED                      FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      MOBILE                      Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.547</p>	<p><b>38-39.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14                      Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.547</p>	<p>Fixed Links (38 GHz) (37.0 – 39.5 GHz)</p>	<p>Channelling plan for 38 GHz band in accordance with ITU Rec. F.749 Annex 1.                      The band 37-40 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.75 applies.</p>
<p><b>39.5-40 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED                      FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.516B                      MOBILE                      MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.547</p>	<p><b>39.5-40 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED                      FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.516B                      Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>5.547</p>		<p>The band 37-40 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.75 applies.                      The band 39.5-40 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>40-40.5 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) FIXED</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.516B</p> <p>MOBILE</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p><b>40-40.5 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) FIXED</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.516B</p> <p>MOBILE</p> <p>MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space)</p> <p>Earth exploration-satellite (space-to-Earth)</p>	<p>Government Services</p>	<p>The band 40-40.5 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.</p>
<p><b>40.5-41 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>BROADCASTING</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE</p> <p>Mobile</p> <p>5.547</p>	<p><b>40.5-41 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>BROADCASTING</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE</p> <p>Mobile</p> <p>5.547</p>		<p>BFWA or MWS (40.5-43.5 GHz). The band 40.5-43.5 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.75 applies.</p>
<p><b>41-42.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>BROADCASTING</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE</p>	<p><b>41-42.5 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED NF14</p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)</p> <p>BROADCASTING</p> <p>BROADCASTING-SATELLITE</p>		<p>BFWA or MWS (40.5-43.5 GHz).</p>

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
Mobile 5.547 5.551F 5.551H 5.551I <b>42.5-43.5 GHz</b>	5.547 5.551F 5.551H 5.551I <b>42.5-43.5 GHz</b>		The band 40.5-43.5 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.547 5.551H <b>43.5-47 GHz</b>	FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE except aeronautical mobile RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.547 5.551H <b>43.5-47 GHz</b>	Government Services (43.5-45.5 GHz)	BFWA or MWS (40.5-43.5 GHz). The band 40.5-43.5 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
MOBILE 5.553 MOBILE-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE 5.554 <b>47-47.2 GHz</b>	MOBILE 5.553 MOBILE-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE 5.554 <b>47-47.2 GHz</b>		
AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE <b>47.2-47.5 GHz</b> FIXED	AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE <b>47.2-47.5 GHz</b> FIXED	Amateur Amateur satellite	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE 5.552A	FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE 5.552A		
<b>47.5-47.9 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 (space-to-Earth) 5.516B 5.554A MOBILE	<b>47.5-47.9 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 (space-to-Earth) 5.516B 5.554A MOBILE	The band 47.5-47.9 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.	
<b>47.9-48.2 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE 5.552A	<b>47.9-48.2 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE 5.552A		
<b>48.2-48.54 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 (space-to-Earth) 5.516B 5.554A 5.555B MOBILE	<b>48.2-48.54 GHz</b>  FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 (space-to-Earth) 5.516B 5.554A 5.555B MOBILE		The band 48.2-48.54 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.
<b>48.54-49.44 GHz</b>	<b>48.54-49.44 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE 5.149 5.340 5.555 <b>49.44-50.2 GHz</b>	FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.552 MOBILE 5.149 5.340 5.555 <b>49.44-50.2 GHz</b>		
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.338A 5.552 (space-to-Earth) 5.516B 5.554A 5.555B MOBILE	FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.338A 5.552 (space-to-Earth) 5.516B 5.554A 5.555B MOBILE		The band 49.44-50.2 GHz is identified for HDFSS; Res.143 applies.
<b>50.2-50.4 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>50.2-50.4 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340		
<b>50.4-51.4 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.338A MOBILE Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)	<b>50.4-51.4 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.338A MOBILE Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space)		
<b>51.4-52.6 GHz</b>	<b>51.4-52.6 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED 5.338A MOBILE 5.547 5.556	FIXED 5.338A MOBILE 5.547 5.556		The band 51.4-52.6 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
<b>52.6-54.25 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.556	<b>52.6-54.25 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.556	Passive Sensing (53.6 – 59.3 GHz)	
<b>54.25-55.78 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	<b>54.25-55.78 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	Passive Sensing (53.6 – 59.3 GHz)	
<b>55.78-56.9 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED 5.557A INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A MOBILE 5.558 SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547	<b>55.78-56.9 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED 5.557A NF14 INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A MOBILE 5.558 SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547	Passive Sensing (53.6 – 59.3 GHz)	The band 55.78-59 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.
<b>56.9-57 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED	<b>56.9-57 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED NF14		The band 55.78-59 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
INTER-SATELLITE 5.558A MOBILE 5.558 SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547	INTER-SATELLITE 5.558A MOBILE 5.558 SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547	Passive Sensing (53.6 – 59.3 GHz)	
<b>57-58.2 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A MOBILE 5.558 SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547	<b>57-58.2 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED NF14 INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A MOBILE 5.558 SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547	Passive Sensing (53.6 – 59.3 GHz)	The band 55.78-59 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments, (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016).
<b>58.2-59 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547 5.556	<b>58.2-59 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED NF14 MOBILE SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.547 5.556		The band 55.78-59 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments, (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016).
<b>59-59.3 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A MOBILE 5.558	<b>59-59.3 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED INTER-SATELLITE 5.556A MOBILE 5.558		Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments, (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIOLOCATION 5.559 SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	RADIOLOCATION 5.559 SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	Passive Sensing (53.6 – 59.3 GHz)	
<b>59.3-64 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 RADIOLOCATION 5.559	<b>59.3-64 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 RADIOLOCATION 5.559	Government Services	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016) The band 61-61.5 GHz is designated for ISM applications (5.138). The band 59 - 61 GHz reserved for government use. Common international SRD band; see ITU-R RecSM. 1896
5.138 <b>64-65 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	5.138 <b>64-65 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE except aeronautical mobile		The band 64-66 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016.
5.547 5.556 <b>65-66 GHz</b>	5.547 5.556 <b>65-66 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH 5.547	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH 5.547		The band 64-66 GHz is identified for HDFS; Res.75 applies. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016)
<b>66-71 GHz</b> INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.553 5.558 MOBILE-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE 5.554	<b>66-71 GHz</b> INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.553 5.558 MOBILE-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE 5.554		
<b>71-74 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	<b>71-74 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	Fixed Links (80 GHz) (71 – 76 GHz) Government use Fixed links (71-76 GHz)	Paired with 81 – 86 GHz. Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016)
<b>74-76 GHz</b> FIXED	<b>74-76 GHz</b> FIXED NF14		Paired with 81 – 86 GHz.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE BROADCASTING BROADCASTING-SATELLITE Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.561	FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE BROADCASTING BROADCASTING-SATELLITE Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.561	Fixed Links (80 GHz) (71 – 76 GHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016)
<b>76-77.5 GHz</b> RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149	<b>76-77.5 GHz</b> RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149	RTTT (76 – 77 GHz) SRD – Road Transport and Traffic Telematics Radar (76 – 77 GHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations as amended (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Common international SRD band; see ITU-R Rec. SM.1896 and Rec. M.1452
<b>77.5-78 GHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE RADIOLOCATION 5.559B Radio astronomy Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149	<b>77.5-78 GHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE RADIOLOCATION 5.559B Radio astronomy Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149		
<b>78-79 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur	<b>78-79 GHz</b> RADIOLOCATION Amateur		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
Amateur-satellite Radio astronomy Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149 5.560	Amateur-satellite Radio astronomy Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149 5.560		
<b>79-81 GHz</b>  RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149	<b>79-81 GHz</b>  RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149		
<b>81-84 GHz</b>  FIXED 5.338A FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIO ASTRONOMY Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149 5.561A	<b>81-84 GHz</b>  FIXED 5.338A NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIO ASTRONOMY Space research (space-to-Earth) 5.149 5.561A	Fixed Links (80 GHz) (81 –86 GHz)	Paired with 71 – 76 GHz.  Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016)
<b>84-86 GHz</b>  FIXED 5.338A FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.561B MOBILE	<b>84-86 GHz</b>  FIXED 5.338A NF14 FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) 5.561B MOBILE	Fixed Links (80 GHz) (81 –86 GHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations Amendments (Government Gazette Number 40436, 22 November 2016)

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149	RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149		
<b>86-92 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>86-92 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340		
<b>92-94 GHz</b> FIXED 5.338A MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION 5.149	<b>92-94 GHz</b> FIXED 5.338A NF14 MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION 5.149		
<b>94-94.1 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) Radio astronomy 5.562 5.562A	<b>94-94.1 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) RADIOLOCATION SPACE RESEARCH (active) Radio astronomy 5.562 5.562A	Short Range Radar. Cloud profile radar.	
<b>94.1-95 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE	<b>94.1-95 GHz</b> FIXED NF14 MOBILE		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION  5.149	RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION  5.149	Short Range Radar	
<b>95-100 GHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION- SATELLITE  5.149 5.554	<b>95-100 GHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION- SATELLITE  5.149 5.554		
<b>100-102 GHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)  5.340 5.341	<b>100-102 GHz</b>  EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)  5.340 5.341	Passive sensing	
<b>102-105 GHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY  5.149 5.341	<b>102-105 GHz</b>  FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY  5.149 5.341		
<b>105-109.5 GHz</b>	<b>105-109.5 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.341	FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.341		
<b>109.5-111.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341	<b>109.5-111.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341	Passive Sensing	
<b>111.8-114.25 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.341	<b>111.8-114.25 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.341		
<b>114.25-116 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341	<b>114.25-116 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<p><b>116-119,98 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive)                      INTER-SATELLITE 5.562C                      SPACE RESEARCH (passive)</p> <p>5.341</p>	<p><b>116-119,98 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive)                      INTER-SATELLITE 5.562C                      SPACE RESEARCH (passive)</p> <p>5.341</p>	<p>Passive Sensing</p>	
<p><b>119.98-122.25 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive)                      INTER-SATELLITE 5.562C                      SPACE RESEARCH (passive)</p> <p>5.138 5.341</p>	<p><b>119.98-122.25 GHz</b></p> <p>EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive)                      INTER-SATELLITE 5.562C                      SPACE RESEARCH (passive)</p> <p>5.138 5.341</p>	<p>Passive Sensing (114.25 – 122.25 GHz)</p>	
<p><b>122.25-123 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED                      INTER-SATELLITE                      MOBILE 5.558                      Amateur</p> <p>5.138</p>	<p><b>122.25-123 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED                      INTER-SATELLITE                      MOBILE 5.558                      Amateur</p> <p>5.138</p>		
<p><b>123-130 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      RADIONAVIGATION</p>	<p><b>123-130 GHz</b></p> <p>FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)                      RADIONAVIGATION</p>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE Radio astronomy 5.562D 5.149 5.554 <b>130-134 GHz</b>	RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE Radio astronomy 5.562D 5.149 5.554 <b>130-134 GHz</b>		
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.562E FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.562A <b>134-136 GHz</b>	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (active) 5.562E FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.562A <b>134-136 GHz</b>		
AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE Radio astronomy <b>136-141 GHz</b>	AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE Radio astronomy <b>136-141 GHz</b>		
RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite 5.149 <b>141-148.5 GHz</b> FIXED	RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite 5.149 <b>141-148.5 GHz</b> FIXED		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION 5.149	MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION 5.149		
<b>148.5-151.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>148.5-151.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	Passive Sensing	
<b>151.5-155.5 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION 5.149	<b>151.5-155.5 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION 5.149		
<b>155.5-158.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.562F 5.562G	<b>155.5-158.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION- SATELLITE (passive) FIXED MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.562F 5.562G	Passive Sensing	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>158.5-164 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)	<b>158.5-164 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth)		
<b>164-167 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>164-167 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	Passive Sensing	
<b>167-174.5 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 5.149 5.562D	<b>167-174.5 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 5.149 5.562D		
<b>174.5-174.8 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558	<b>174.5-174.8 GHz</b> FIXED INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>174.8-182 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) INTER-SATELLITE 5.562H SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	<b>174.8-182 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) INTER-SATELLITE 5.562H SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	Passive sensing (174.8 – 191.8 GHz)	
<b>182-185 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>182-185 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	Passive sensing (174.8 – 191.8 GHz)	
<b>185-190 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) INTER-SATELLITE 5.562H SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	<b>185-190 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) INTER-SATELLITE 5.562H SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	Passive sensing (174.8 – 191.8 GHz)	
<b>190-191.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>190-191.8 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	Passive sensing (174.8 – 191.8 GHz)	
<b>191.8-200 GHz</b> FIXED	<b>191.8-200 GHz</b> FIXED		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 MOBILE-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE 5.149 5.341 5.554 <b>200-209 GHz</b>	INTER-SATELLITE MOBILE 5.558 MOBILE-SATELLITE RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE 5.149 5.341 5.554 <b>200-209GHz</b>		
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341 5.563A <b>209-217 GHz</b>	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340 5.341 5.563A <b>209-217 GHz</b>	Passive sensing.	
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.341 <b>217-226 GHz</b>	FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.341 <b>217-226 GHz</b>		
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY	FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.341	SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.562B 5.149 5.341		
<b>226-231.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	<b>226-231.5 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive) 5.340	Passive Sensing (226 – 232 GHz)	
<b>231.5-232 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE Radiolocation	<b>231.5-232 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE Radiolocation		
<b>232-235 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE Radiolocation	<b>232-235 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE Radiolocation		
<b>235-238 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	<b>235-238 GHz</b> EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) SPACE RESEARCH (passive)	Passive Sensing	

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.563A 5.563B <b>238-240 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE RADIOLOCATION RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE	5.563A 5.563B <b>238-240 GHz</b> FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) MOBILE RADIOLOCATION RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE		
<b>240-241 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIOLOCATION	<b>240-241 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE RADIOLOCATION		
<b>241-248 GHz</b> RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite 5.138 5.149 <b>248-250 GHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE Radio astronomy	<b>241-248 GHz</b> RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIOLOCATION Amateur Amateur-satellite 5.138 5.149 <b>248-250 GHz</b> AMATEUR AMATEUR-SATELLITE Radio astronomy		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
5.149 <b>250-252 GHz</b>	5.149 <b>250-252 GHz</b>		
EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)  5.340 5.563A <b>252-265 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE  5.149 5.554 <b>265-275 GHz</b>	EARTH EXPLORATION-SATELLITE (passive) RADIO ASTRONOMY SPACE RESEARCH (passive)  5.340 5.563A <b>252-265 GHz</b> FIXED MOBILE MOBILE-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) RADIO ASTRONOMY RADIONAVIGATION RADIONAVIGATION-SATELLITE  5.149 5.554 <b>265-275 GHz</b>	Passive Sensing	
FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY  5.149 5.563A <b>275-3 000 GHz</b>	FIXED FIXED-SATELLITE (Earth-to-space) MOBILE RADIO ASTRONOMY  5.149 5.563A <b>275-1 000 GHz</b>		

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
(Not allocated) 5.565	(Not allocated) 5.565	Radio astronomy service Earth exploration-satellite service (passive) Space research (passive)	
	<b>1 000-3 000 GHz</b> (Not allocated) 5.565		Assignments may be considered for Amateur services on a secondary basis above 1000 GHz

#### **4 Radio Astronomy**

The Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act No. 21 of 2007) (AGAA) provides for the Minister responsible for Science and Technology to declare any area or part of an area in the Province of the Northern Cape (except Sol Plaatjie Municipal area) as an astronomy advantage area (AAA). AAA's must be protected, amongst others, from harmful radio frequency interference, which may be caused by radio communication services. The Square Kilometre Array (SKA) will be built in the Northern Cape Province. The SKA location, frequencies bands to be protected, protection levels, coordination procedures, etc. are prescribed through regulations. The band 100 MHz to 25.5 GHz are earmarked for the SKA.

Radiocommunications with transmitters located within the AAA's, which operate within the radio frequency range/s identified for radio astronomy purposes will be subjected to the provisions of the AGAA. All transmitters located, or to be located, within the AAA's will be subject to authorisation according to the prescribed processes. Where authorisation has been granted in accordance with the prescribed procedures, a prospective licensee is still required to submit a spectrum application form for consideration by ICASA.

Where a licensee is required to move its electronic communications facility or migrate to an alternative radio frequency band, ICASA will consult and agree with the licensee regarding the reasonable period within which the licensee must cease to operate its electronic communications facility and migrate to an alternative band.

## 5 National Footnotes to the Table of Frequency Allocations

### NF0 (5350 - 5450 KHz)

The band 5350 – 5450KHz and the channel 5290KHz is allocated on secondary basis to radio amateurs under the Article 4.4 of the ITU Radio Regulations.

### NF1 (29.7 - 30 MHz)

This portion of the spectrum is allocated to the amateur service on a secondary basis for use during disaster exercises and emergency situations. This is in addition to the existing exclusive amateur band 28 - 29.7 MHz, which retains its primary status. The additional spectrum is used for single frequency mobile applications.

### NF2 (70 - 70.3 MHz)

This sub-band is allocated to the amateur service on a secondary basis in order to undertake experimental work on propagation. The channels 70.025 – 70.150 MHz are used for civil defence purposes.

### NF3 (148 - 150.05 MHz)

This frequency band was allocated internationally at WARC-92 for the mobile satellite service (MSS) in the Earth-to-space direction. The space-to-Earth link is provided at either 137 – 138 MHz or 400.15 - 401 MHz, depending on the satellite system.

### NF4 (161.875 - 173.875 MHz)

The frequency band is used for sonobouy in the maritime service. Assignments were previously not allowed within a distance of 200 km from the coast. It is generally agreed that there is scope for increased sharing even near the coast. Proper care will be taken in making assignments near the coast in this frequency band and frequency coordination is to be performed with existing services on case by case basis.

### NF5 (173.7 – 175.1 MHz)

This frequency band may be used for wireless microphones for services ancillary to Broadcasting (SAB) and services ancillary to programme (SAP) making. Use of wireless microphones must be co-ordinated and licensed.

### NF6 (336 - 366 MHz)

The frequency band 336 – 346 MHz, paired with the frequency band 356 – 366 MHz, is allocated to fixed services on a primary basis and is applicable for use by Fixed Wireless Access (FWA) systems. Within this frequency band, the sub-band 337 – 344 MHz paired with 357 – 364 MHz is to be used for WAS whereas the sub-band 344 – 346 MHz paired with 364 – 366 MHz is to be used for alarm monitoring and tracking services using DSSS. The band is also considered for use by the Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) including Remotely Piloted Aircraft System (RPAS) within the sub band 336-346 paired with 356-366 MHz. This spectrum is potentially very useful for providing electronic communications services, in particular in rural areas considering its excellent propagation conditions.

### NF7 (380 – 399.9 MHz)

The frequency band 380 – 399.9 MHz is allocated through ITU Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15) to Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) applications in line with ITU-R M.2015.

**NF8 (430 - 440 MHz)**

This frequency band is allocated to the amateur service in South Africa in line with ITU Region 1. The sub-band 433.05 - 434.79 MHz, however, is also designated as an ISM band in Region 1, subject to the special authorisation of the administration concerned (see RR 5.138). Furthermore, the sub-band 433.05 - 434.79 MHz can be used for non-specific short range devices on an unlicensed basis in accordance with the prescribed Regulations. The consequence of this is that the amateur service may not claim protection from (in-band) emissions from ISM equipment operating in the band, nor can ISM equipment and low power devices claim protection from amateur users operating in the band.

**NF8A (694 – 862 MHz)****Transitional Arrangements**

The Authority resolved the following transitional arrangements for the right of use of spectrum in the frequency range 694 to 862 MHz:

- (i) That Broadcasting Spectrum Assignments for the frequency band above 694 MHz, in the affected areas as stipulated in the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan (Notice No. 298 of 2013 in Government Gazette No. 36321 and Notice No. 801 of 2014 in Government Gazette 38005 or the latest version), are to be used subject to meeting the conformance requirements in line with the GE06 Plan and are to be phased out during the performance period.
- (ii) That broadcast transmissions and services ancillary to broadcasting for the frequency range 694 to 862 MHz are to be systematically switched off.
- (iii) That matters related to spectrum management geared at minimising and or preventing harmful interference during the transitional arrangement period, is to be managed by the Authority to achieve systematic implementation and seamless transition.
- (iv) That sharing and co-existence in the frequency range 694 to 862 MHz is to be implemented systematically through a Geographic separation of IMT Systems and Broadcasting Services in affected areas in accordance with the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan 2013, Government Gazette 36321, read with the First Update to the Terrestrial Broadcasting Plan 2013 Government Gazette 38005<sup>12</sup> until the end of the migration from Analogue to Digital Terrestrial Television process.

**NF9 (IMT Frequency Bands - Terrestrial)**

The table below list all possible IMT frequency bands identified by the ITU, relevant ITU Radio Regulation footnote as well as the applicable ITU-R channel plan.

Band	Frequency band		RR FN	Channel Plan	WRC Resolution/s
450 MHz	450 – 470 MHz		5.286A A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036	224 (Rev. WRC-15)

<sup>12</sup> The Multiplexes in the latest updated version of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Plan 2013 has been coordinated in terms of the GE06 Agreement and meets the conformance requirements of the Plan. The frequencies on this version have been successfully notified to the ITU-R Bureau and have been included in the Master International Frequency Register

700 MHz	694 – 790 MHz		5.312A and 5.317A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036	224 (Rev.WRC-15) and 760 (WRC-15)
800 MHz	790 — 862 MHz		5.316B and 5.317A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (A3)	224 (Rev. WRC-15) and 749 (Rev. WRC-15)
900 MHz	880 – 915 MHz // 925 – 960 MHz		5.317A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (A2)	224 (Rev. WRC-15) and 749 (Rev. WRC-15)
1500 MHz	1 427-1 518 MHz		5.341A, 5.346, and 5.346A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 <sup>13</sup>	223 (Rev. WRC-15), 750 (Rev. WRC-15), and 761 (WRC-15)
1800 MHz	1710 – 1785 MHz // 1805 – 1880 MHz		5.384A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (B2)	223 (Rev. WRC-15)
1900 MHz	1900 – 1920MHz		5.388	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (B4)	Resolution <b>212 (Rev.WRC-15)</b>
2100 MHz	1920 – 1980 MHz // 2110 – 2170 MHz		5.388	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (B1)	212 (Rev. WRC-07) and 223 (Rev. WRC-12)
2100 MHz (TDD)	1900 – 1920 MHz, 2010 – 2025 MHz		5.388	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (B1)	212 (Rev. WRC-07) and 223 (Rev. WRC-12)
2300 MHz	2300 – 2400 MHz		5.384A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (E1)	223 (Rev. WRC-12)
2600 MHz	2500 – 2690 MHz		5.384A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (C1)	223 (Rev. WRC-12)
3500 MHz	3300 – 3400 MHz		5.429B	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 <sup>14</sup>	223 (Rev. WRC-15),
3.5 GHz	3400 – 3600 MHz		5.430A	Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 (F1)	NA

<sup>13</sup> Channelling arrangement for 1 427-1 518 MHz is under study at the ITU-R Working Party 5D

<sup>14</sup> Channelling arrangement for 3300 – 3400 MHz is under study at the ITU-R Working Party 5D

**NF10 (876 - 880 // 921 - 925 MHz)**

This frequency band is used by GSM-R systems.

**NF11 (915 - 921 MHz) – Suppressed****NF12 (1452 - 1492 MHz) – Suppressed****NF13 (1980 – 2010 MHz paired with 2170 – 2200 MHz)**

These frequency bands are allocated, amongst others, to both the mobile and mobile-satellite services and are also earmarked for the satellite component of IMT. Further, the implementation of IMT in the bands 1885-2025 MHz and 2110-2200 MHz is under study within ITU-R in accordance with Resolution **212 (Rev. WRC-15)**,

**NF14 (Channel arrangements for Fixed Services Systems)**

The table below list the main fixed services frequency bands and the applicable ITU-R Recommendation specifying the applicable frequency channel arrangement. Different channel spacing for each frequency band will allowed in accordance with the relevant ITU-R Recommendation. Sub-division of channels will also be allowed to cater for smaller bandwidth systems. Hop distances will be determined, amongst others, by propagation conditions. Sharing with services other than fixed services is indicated in the comments column.

Band	Band limits	Channel Plan	Comments
1-2GHz	1350 - 1375 MHz // 1492 – 1517 MHz 1375 – 1400 MHz // 1427 – 1452 MHz	ITU-R F.1242	
2 GHz	2025-2110 MHz // 2200-2285 MHz	ITU-R F.1098	
4 GHz	3600 – 4200 MHz	ITU-R F.635, Annex 1	Shared with FSS (downlink) (Note 1)
4.8 GHz	4400 – 5000 MHz	ITU-R F.1099, Annex 1	Government Services
Lower 6 GHz	5925 – 6425 MHz	ITU-R F.383	Shared with FSS (uplink) (Note 2)
Upper 6 GHz	6425 – 7110 MHz	ITU-R F.384	Shared with FSS (Note 3)
7 GHz (L7 + U7)	7110 – 7750 MHz	ITU-R F385, Annex 3	

Lower 8 GHz	7725 – 8275 MHz	ITU-R F.386, Annex 6	
Upper 8 GHz	8275 – 8500 MHz	ITU-R F.386, Annex 1	
10.5 GHz	10.15-10.3 GHz// 10.5-10.65 GHz	ITU-R F.1568, Annex 1	
11 GHz	10.7 – 11.7 GHz	ITU-R F.387	Shared with FSS (Note 4)
13 GHz	12.75 – 13.25 GHz	ITU-R F.497	
15 GHz	14.5 – 15.35 GHz	ITU-R F.636	
18 GHz	17.7 – 19.7 GHz	ITU-R F.595, Annex 1	
23 GHz	21.2-23.6 GHz or	ITU-R F.637, Annex 1	Shared with BSS (Note 5)
26 GHz	24.5 – 26.5 GHz	ITU-R F.748, Annex 1	Shared with EESS (Note 6)
28 GHz	27.5 – 29.5 GHz	ITU-R F.748-4, Annex 2	
32 GHz	31.8 – 33.4 GHz	ITU-R F.1520, Annex 1	
38 GHz	37.0 – 39.5 GHz	ITU-R F.749 Annex 1	
42 GHz	40.5 – 43.5 GHz	ITU-R F. 2005	
57 GHz	55.78 – 59 GHz	ITU-R F 1497	
80 GHz	71 – 76 GHz // 81 – 86 GHz	ITU-R F.2006	(Note 7)
94 GHz	92 – 94 GHz 94.1 – 95 GHz	ITU –R F. 2004	

**Note 1:** The band 3600 – 4200 MHz is used on a national basis for high capacity, core network telecommunication services under the fixed service using (for fixed services links generally over long hop lengths. The band 3625 – 4200 MHz, part of the C-band, is used extensively for FSS (space-to-Earth) applications. This band is shared between FS and FSS.

**Note 2:** In addition to deployment of fixed services links under the fixed services, the band 5850 – 6425 MHz, part of the C-band, is also used for FSS (Earth-to-space) applications on a shared basis with FS. The C-band is also used for satellite news gathering (SNG) operations, which will require frequency co-ordination with fixed links on a case-by-case basis. Users are encouraged to, as far as possible, use the Ku-band for SNG operations in South Africa in order to avoid the need for frequency coordination and the interference problems associated with C-band SNG operations. The band 5850 – 5926 MHz may also be used for temporary deployment for ENG and OB links under the mobile and fixed services respectively on a strictly coordinated basis.

**Note 3:** This band is used on a national basis for fixed services links under the fixed service. Fixed links are shared with NGSO MSS (space-to-Earth) feeder links and geo-stationary satellite orbit (GSO) FSS (Earth-to-space) systems on a strictly controlled and co-ordinated basis.

**Note 4:** This band is used on a national basis for fixed services links under the fixed service. The bands 10.95 – 11.2 GHz and 11.45 – 11.7 GHz are also shared with FSS (space-to-Earth) systems (typically VSAT/SNG and PTP links). The sub-bands 10.95 – 11.2 GHz and 11.45 – 11.7 GHz is also used DTH satellite broadcasting services on a secondary basis to the FS and FSS services.

**Note 5:** In addition to the fixed services, the band 21.2 – 23 GHz is also allocated to the BSS on a co-primary basis. In accordance with 5.530A, all fixed links must comply to the prescribed pfd limits at national borders, unless otherwise agreed with the administration concerned. In line with 5.530B, the band 21.2 – 23 GHz will not be used for mobile services in South Africa and fixed service deployments will be restricted to for fixed services links.

**Note 6:** An unmanned receive only earth station, forming part of the National Polar-Orbiting Operational Environmental Satellite System (NPOESS) is located in South Africa, and this system operates within the frequency band 25.5 to 27 GHz in the Earth Exploration Satellite (space-to-earth) service.

**Note 7:** The frequency bands 71 – 76 GHz paired with 81 – 86 GHz are allocated to the fixed services and is earmarked for very high capacity Broadband Fixed Wireless Systems over very short hop lengths. Radio frequency channel arrangements for fixed service systems operating in the bands 71-76 GHz and 81-86 GHz are according to the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

**NF15 (4400 – 5000 MHz)**

The frequency band 4400 – 5000 MHz is allocated to electronic news gathering (ENG) and outside broadcasting (OB) services under the mobile and fixed services respectively, and is shared with Government Services.

**NF16 (5725 – 5850 MHz)**

The band 5725 – 5875 MHz is designated as an ISM band through ITU-R footnote 5.150. In addition to ISM applications, the band 5725 – 5850 MHz is also available for fixed links on a license-exempt basis, provided adherence to the provisions indicated below. Type Approval of these systems is mandatory. See also Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No.38641, 30 March 2015).

(for additional requirements in using this band.

Frequency Range	Maximum Power	Modulation	Restrictions
5.725 – 5.850 GHz	1 watt peak e.i.r.p	Any modulation	No other restriction other than those related to the maximum power and the modulation scheme.
5.725 – 5.850 GHz	4 watt peak e.i.r.p	Frequency hopping or digital modulation only	No other restriction other than those related to the maximum power and the modulation scheme.
5.725 – 5.850 GHz	200 watt peak e.i.r.p with a max 1 watt peak transmitter power	Digital modulation only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Fixed Radio Link devices only</li> <li>- Peak power spectral density must not exceed 17dBm /MHz</li> </ul>

The Authority reserves the right to require users to change the frequency, reduce the power, or cease operations, where harmful interference is caused.

**NF17 (14.0 – 14.5 GHz)**

The frequency band 14.0 – 14.5 GHz, part of the Ku-band is used extensively for FSS (Earth-to-space) applications (VSAT/SNG/PTP links).

**NF18 (27.5 – 28.35 GHz)**

The frequency bands 27.5 – 28.35 GHz (base station to subscriber) and 31.000 – 31.300 MHz (subscriber to base station) are allocated to broadband service - local multipoint distribution services (LMDS) under the fixed service using a PTMP topology.

## 6 ITU Radio Regulations Footnotes

The ITU Radio Regulations footnote listed are those that are applicable to Region 1.

**5.53** Administrations authorizing the use of frequencies below 8.3 kHz shall ensure that no harmful interference is caused to services to which the bands above 8.3 kHz are allocated. (WRC-12)

**5.54** Administrations conducting scientific research using frequencies below 8.3 kHz are urged to advise other administrations that may be concerned in order that such research may be afforded all practicable protection from harmful interference. (WRC-12)

**5.54A** Use of the 8.3-11.3 kHz frequency band by stations in the meteorological aids service is limited to passive use only. In the band 9-11.3 kHz, meteorological aids stations shall not claim protection from stations of the radionavigation service submitted for notification to the Bureau prior to 1 January 2013. For sharing between stations of the meteorological aids service and stations in the radionavigation service submitted for notification after this date, the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R RS.1881 should be applied. (WRC-12)

**5.54B** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, the Russian Federation, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Sudan and Tunisia, the frequency band 8.3-9 kHz is also allocated to the radionavigation, fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.54C** *Additional allocation:* in China, the frequency band 8.3-9 kHz is also allocated to the maritime radionavigation and maritime mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.55** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the frequency band 14-17 kHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.56** The stations of services to which the bands 14-19.95 kHz and 20.05-70 kHz and in Region 1 also the bands 72-84 kHz and 86-90 kHz are allocated may transmit standard frequency and time signals. Such stations shall be afforded protection from harmful interference. In Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the frequencies 25 kHz and 50 kHz will be used for this purpose under the same conditions. (WRC-12)

**5.57** The use of the bands 14-19.95 kHz, 20.05-70 kHz and 70-90 kHz (72-84 kHz and 86-90 kHz in Region 1) by the maritime mobile service is limited to coast radiotelegraph stations (A1A and F1B only). Exceptionally, the use of class J2B or J7B emissions is authorized subject to the necessary bandwidth not exceeding that normally used for class A1A or F1B emissions in the band concerned.

**5.58** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the band 67-70 kHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-2000)

**5.60** In the bands 70-90 kHz (70-86 kHz in Region 1) and 110-130 kHz (112-130 kHz in Region 1), pulsed radionavigation systems may be used on condition that they do not cause harmful interference to other services to which these bands are allocated.

**5.62** Administrations which operate stations in the radionavigation service in the band 90-110 kHz are urged to coordinate technical and operating characteristics in such a way as to avoid harmful interference to the services provided by these stations.

**5.64** Only classes A1A or F1B, A2C, A3C, F1C or F3C emissions are authorized for stations of the fixed service in the bands allocated to this service between 90 kHz and 160 kHz (148.5 kHz in Region 1) and for stations of the maritime mobile service in the bands allocated to this service between 110 kHz and 160 kHz (148.5 kHz in Region 1). Exceptionally, class J2B or J7B emissions are also authorized in the bands between 110 kHz and 160 kHz (148.5 kHz in Region 1) for stations of the maritime mobile service.

**5.66** *Different category of service:* in Germany, the allocation of the band 115-117.6 kHz to the fixed and maritime mobile services is on a primary basis (see No. 5.33) and to the radionavigation service on a secondary basis (see No. 5.32).

**5.67** *Additional allocation:* in Mongolia, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the band 130-148.5 kHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a secondary basis. Within and between these countries this service shall have an equal right to operate. (WRC-07)

**5.67A** Stations in the amateur service using frequencies in the band 135.7-137.8 kHz shall not exceed a maximum radiated power of 1 W (e.i.r.p.) and shall not cause harmful interference to stations of the radionavigation service operating in countries listed in No. 5.67. (WRC-07)

**5.67B** The use of the band 135.7-137.8 kHz in Algeria, Egypt, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Lebanon, Syrian Arab Republic, Sudan, South Sudan and Tunisia is limited to the fixed and maritime mobile services. The amateur service shall not be used in the above-mentioned countries in the band 135.7-137.8 kHz, and this should be taken into account by the countries authorizing such use. (WRC-12)

**5.68** *Alternative allocation:* in Congo (Rep. of the), the Dem. Rep. of the Congo and South Africa, the frequency band 160-200 kHz is allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.69** *Additional allocation:* in Somalia, the band 200-255 kHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis.

**5.70** *Alternative allocation:* in Angola, Botswana, Burundi, the Central African Rep., Congo (Rep. of the), Ethiopia, Kenya, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, Nigeria, Oman, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the band 200-283.5 kHz is allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.71** *Alternative allocation:* in Tunisia, the band 255-283.5 kHz is allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis.

**5.73** The band 285-325 kHz (283.5-325 kHz in Region 1) in the maritime radionavigation service may be used to transmit supplementary navigational information using narrow-band techniques, on condition that no harmful interference is caused to radiobeacon stations operating in the radionavigation service. (WRC-97)

**5.74** *Additional Allocation:* in Region 1, the frequency band 285.3-285.7 kHz is also allocated to the maritime radionavigation service (other than radiobeacons) on a primary basis.

**5.75** *Different category of service:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Moldova, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine and the Black Sea areas of Romania, the allocation of the band 315-325 kHz to the maritime radionavigation service is on a primary basis under the condition that in the Baltic Sea area, the assignment of frequencies in this band to new stations in the maritime or aeronautical radionavigation services shall be subject to prior consultation between the administrations concerned. (WRC-07)

**5.76** The frequency 410 kHz is designated for radio direction-finding in the maritime radionavigation service. The other radionavigation services to which the band 405-415 kHz is allocated shall not cause harmful interference to radio direction-finding in the band 406.5-413.5 kHz.

**5.77** *Different category of service:* in Australia, China, the French overseas communities of Region 3, Korea (Rep. of), India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Japan, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea and Sri Lanka, the allocation of the frequency band 415-495 kHz to the aeronautical radionavigation service is on a primary basis. In Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Kazakhstan, Latvia,

Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the allocation of the frequency band 435-495 kHz to the aeronautical radionavigation service is on a primary basis. Administrations in all the aforementioned countries shall take all practical steps necessary to ensure that aeronautical radionavigation stations in the frequency band 435-495 kHz do not cause interference to reception by coast stations of transmissions from ship stations on frequencies designated for ship stations on a worldwide basis. (WRC-12)

**5.79** The use of the bands 415-495 kHz and 505-526.5 kHz (505-510 kHz in Region 2) by the maritime mobile service is limited to radiotelegraphy.

**5.79A** When establishing coast stations in the NAVTEX service on the frequencies 490 kHz, 518 kHz and 4 209.5 kHz, administrations are strongly recommended to coordinate the operating characteristics in accordance with the procedures of the International Maritime Organization (IMO) (see Resolution **339 (Rev.WRC-07)**). (WRC-07)

**5.80A** The maximum equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) of stations in the amateur service using frequencies in the band 472-479 kHz shall not exceed 1 W. Administrations may increase this limit of e.i.r.p. to 5 W in portions of their territory which are at a distance of over 800 km from the borders of Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Belarus, China, Comoros, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, the Russian Federation, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Morocco, Mauritania, Oman, Uzbekistan, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Somalia, Sudan, Tunisia, Ukraine and Yemen. In this frequency band, stations in the amateur service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service. (WRC-12)

**5.80B** The use of the frequency band 472-479 kHz in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Belarus, China, Comoros, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, the Russian Federation, Iraq, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Mauritania, Oman, Uzbekistan, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Somalia, Sudan, Tunisia and Yemen is limited to the maritime mobile and aeronautical radionavigation services. The amateur service shall not be used in the above-mentioned countries in this frequency band, and this should be taken into account by the countries authorizing such use. (WRC-12)

**5.82** In the maritime mobile service, the frequency 490 kHz is to be used exclusively for the transmission by coast stations of navigational and meteorological warnings and urgent information to ships, by means of narrow-band direct-printing telegraphy. The conditions for use of the frequency 490 kHz are prescribed in Articles 31 and 52. In using the frequency band 415-495 kHz for the aeronautical radionavigation service, administrations are requested to ensure that no harmful interference is caused to the frequency 490 kHz. In using the frequency band 472-479 kHz for the amateur service, administrations shall ensure that no harmful interference is caused to the frequency 490 kHz. (WRC-12)

**5.84** The conditions for the use of the frequency 518 kHz by the maritime mobile service are prescribed in Articles **31** and **52**. (WRC-07)

**5.87** *Additional allocation:* in Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, Niger and Swaziland, the band 526.5-535 kHz is also allocated to the mobile service on a secondary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.90** In the band 1 605-1 705 kHz, in cases where a broadcasting station of Region 2 is concerned, the service area of the maritime mobile stations in Region 1 shall be limited to that provided by ground-wave propagation.

**5.92** Some countries of Region 1 use radiodetermination systems in the bands 1 606.5-1 625 kHz, 1 635-1 800 kHz, 1 850-2 160 kHz, 2 194-2 300 kHz, 2 502-2 850 kHz and 3 500-3 800 kHz, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. The radiated mean power of these stations shall not exceed 50 W.

**5.93** *Additional allocation* : in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Kazakhstan, Latvia, Lithuania, Mongolia, Nigeria, Uzbekistan, Poland, Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia, Tajikistan, Chad, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the frequency bands 1 625-1 635 kHz, 1 800-1 810 kHz and 2 160-2 170 kHz are also allocated to the fixed and land mobile services on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. (WRC-15)

**5.96** In Germany, Armenia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Croatia, Denmark, Estonia, the Russian Federation, Finland, Georgia, Hungary, Ireland, Iceland, Israel, Kazakhstan, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Malta, Moldova, Norway, Uzbekistan, Poland, Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia, the Czech Rep., the United Kingdom, Sweden, Switzerland, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, administrations may allocate up to 200 kHz to their amateur service in the frequency bands 1 715-1 800 kHz and 1 850-2 000 kHz. However, when allocating the frequency bands within this range to their amateur service, administrations shall, after prior consultation with administrations of neighbouring countries, take such steps as may be necessary to prevent harmful interference from their amateur service to the fixed and mobile services of other countries. The mean power of any amateur station shall not exceed 10 W. (WRC-15)

**5.98** *Alternative allocation*: in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Belgium, Cameroon, Congo (Rep. of the), Denmark, Egypt, Eritrea, Spain, Ethiopia, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Greece, Italy, Kazakhstan, Lebanon, Lithuania, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Somalia, Tajikistan, Tunisia, Turkmenistan and Turkey, the frequency band 1 810-1 830 kHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.99** *Additional allocation*: in Saudi Arabia, Austria, Iraq, Libya, Uzbekistan, Slovakia, Romania, Slovenia, Chad, and Togo, the band 1 810-1 830 kHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.100** In Region 1, the authorization to use the band 1 810-1 830 kHz by the amateur service in countries situated totally or partially north of 40° N shall be given only after consultation with the countries mentioned in Nos. **5.98** and **5.99** to define the necessary steps to be taken to prevent harmful interference between amateur stations and stations of other services operating in accordance with Nos. **5.98** and **5.99**.

**5.103** In Region 1, in making assignments to stations in the fixed and mobile services in the bands 1 850-2 045 kHz, 2 194-2 498 kHz, 2 502-2 625 kHz and 2 650-2 850 kHz, administrations should bear in mind the special requirements of the maritime mobile service.

**5.104** In Region 1, the use of the band 2 025-2 045 kHz by the meteorological aids service is limited to oceanographic buoy stations.

**5.107** *Additional allocation*: in Saudi Arabia, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Iraq, Libya, Somalia and Swaziland, the band 2 160-2 170 kHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile (R), services on a primary basis. The mean power of stations in these services shall not exceed 50 W. (WRC-12)

**5.108** The carrier frequency 2 182 kHz is an international distress and calling frequency for radiotelephony. The conditions for the use of the band 2 173.5-2 190.5 kHz are prescribed in Articles **31** and **52**. (WRC-07)

**5.109** The frequencies 2 187.5 kHz, 4 207.5 kHz, 6 312 kHz, 8 414.5 kHz, 12 577 kHz and 16 804.5 kHz are international distress frequencies for digital selective calling. The conditions for the use of these frequencies are prescribed in Article **31**.

**5.110** The frequencies 2 174.5 kHz, 4 177.5 kHz, 6 268 kHz, 8 376.5 kHz, 12 520 kHz and 16 695 kHz are international distress frequencies for narrow-band direct-printing telegraphy. The conditions for the use of these frequencies are prescribed in Article **31**.

**5.111** The carrier frequencies 2 182 kHz, 3 023 kHz, 5 680 kHz, 8 364 kHz and the frequencies 121.5 MHz, 156.525 MHz, 156.8 MHz and 243 MHz may also be used, in accordance with the

procedures in force for terrestrial radiocommunication services, for search and rescue operations concerning manned space vehicles. The conditions for the use of the frequencies are prescribed in Article 31. The same applies to the frequencies 10 003 kHz, 14 993 kHz and 19 993 kHz, but in each of these cases emissions must be confined in a band of  $\pm 3$  kHz about the frequency. (WRC-07)

**5.112** *Alternative allocation:* in Denmark and Sri Lanka, the band 2 194-2 300 kHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.113** For the conditions for the use of the bands 2 300-2 495 kHz (2 498 kHz in Region 1), 3 200-3 400 kHz, 4 750-4 995 kHz and 5 005-5 060 kHz by the broadcasting service, see Nos. 5.16 to 5.20, 5.21 and 23.3 to 23.10.

**5.114** *Alternative allocation:* in Denmark and Iraq, the band 2 502-2 625 kHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.115** The carrier (reference) frequencies 3 023 kHz and 5 680 kHz may also be used, in accordance with Article 31, by stations of the maritime mobile service engaged in coordinated search and rescue operations. (WRC-07)

**5.116** Administrations are urged to authorize the use of the band 3 155-3 195 kHz to provide a common worldwide channel for low power wireless hearing aids. Additional channels for these devices may be assigned by administrations in the bands between 3 155 kHz and 3 400 kHz to suit local needs.

It should be noted that frequencies in the range 3 000 kHz to 4 000 kHz are suitable for hearing aid devices which are designed to operate over short distances within the induction field.

**5.117** *Alternative allocation:* in Côte d'Ivoire, Denmark, Egypt, Liberia, Sri Lanka and Togo, the band 3 155-3 200 kHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.123** *Additional allocation:* in Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the band 3 900-3 950 kHz is also allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21.

**5.127** The use of the band 4 000-4 063 kHz by the maritime mobile service is limited to ship stations using radiotelephony (see No. 52.220 and Appendix 17).

**5.128** Frequencies in the bands 4 063-4 123 kHz and 4 130-4 438 kHz may be used exceptionally by stations in the fixed service, communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, with a mean power not exceeding 50 W, on condition that harmful interference is not caused to the maritime mobile service. In addition, in Afghanistan, Argentina, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Botswana, Burkina Faso, the Central African Rep., China, the Russian Federation, Georgia, India, Kazakhstan, Mali, Niger, Pakistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Chad, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, in the bands 4 063-4 123 kHz, 4 130-4 133 kHz and 4 408-4 438 kHz, stations in the fixed service, with a mean power not exceeding 1 kW, can be operated on condition that they are situated at least 600 km from the coast and that harmful interference is not caused to the maritime mobile service. (WRC-12)

**5.130** The conditions for the use of the carrier frequencies 4 125 kHz and 6 215 kHz are prescribed in Articles 31 and 52. (WRC-07)

**5.131** The frequency 4 209.5 kHz is used exclusively for the transmission by coast stations of meteorological and navigational warnings and urgent information to ships by means of narrow-band direct-printing techniques. (WRC-97)

**5.132** The frequencies 4 210 kHz, 6 314 kHz, 8 416.5 kHz, 12 579 kHz, 16 806.5 kHz, 19 680.5 kHz, 22 376 kHz and 26 100.5 kHz are the international frequencies for the transmission of maritime safety information (MSI) (see Appendix 17).

**5.132A** Stations in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations operating in the fixed or mobile services. Applications of the radiolocation

service are limited to oceanographic radars operating in accordance with Resolution 612 (Rev.WRC-12). (WRC-12)

**5.132B** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, Moldova, Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the frequency band 4 438-4 488 kHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile (R), services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.133** *Different category of service:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Latvia, Lithuania, Niger, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the allocation of the band 5 130-5 250 kHz to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service is on a primary basis (see No. 5.33). (WRC-12)

**5.133A** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, Moldova, Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the frequency bands 5 250-5 275 kHz and 26 200-26 350 kHz are allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.133B** Stations in the amateur service using the frequency band 5 351.5-5 366.5 kHz shall not exceed a maximum radiated power of 15 W (e.i.r.p.). However, in Region 2 in Mexico, stations in the amateur service using the frequency band 5 351.5-5 366.5 kHz shall not exceed a maximum radiated power of 20 W (e.i.r.p.). In the following Region 2 countries: Antigua and Barbuda, Argentina, Bahamas, Barbados, Belize, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Cuba, Dominican Republic, Dominica, El Salvador, Ecuador, Grenada, Guatemala, Guyana, Haiti, Honduras, Jamaica, Nicaragua, Panama, Paraguay, Peru, Saint Lucia, Saint Kitts and Nevis, Saint Vincent and the Grenadines, Suriname, Trinidad and Tobago, Uruguay, Venezuela, as well as the overseas territories of the Netherlands in Region 2, stations in the amateur service using the frequency band 5 351.5-5 366.5 kHz shall not exceed a maximum radiated power of 25 W (e.i.r.p.). (WRC-15)

**5.134** The use of the bands 5 900-5 950 kHz, 7 300-7 350 kHz, 9 400-9 500 kHz, 11 600-11 650 kHz, 12 050-12 100 kHz, 13 570-13 600 kHz, 13 800-13 870 kHz, 15 600-15 800 kHz, 17 480-17 550 kHz and 18 900-19 020 kHz by the broadcasting service is subject to the application of the procedure of Article 12. Administrations are encouraged to use these bands to facilitate the introduction of digitally modulated emissions in accordance with the provisions of Resolution 517 (Rev.WRC-07)\*. (WRC-07)

**5.136** *Additional allocation:* frequencies in the band 5 900-5 950 kHz may be used by stations in the following services, communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located: fixed service (in all three Regions), land mobile service (in Region 1), mobile except aeronautical mobile (R) service (in Regions 2 and 3), on condition that harmful interference is not caused to the broadcasting service. When using frequencies for these services, administrations are urged to use the minimum power required and to take account of the seasonal use of frequencies by the broadcasting service published in accordance with the Radio Regulations. (WRC-07)

**5.137** On condition that harmful interference is not caused to the maritime mobile service, the bands 6 200-6 213.5 kHz and 6 220.5-6 525 kHz may be used exceptionally by stations in the fixed service, communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, with a mean power not exceeding 50 W. At the time of notification of these frequencies, the attention of the Bureau will be drawn to the above conditions.

**5.138** The following bands:

6 765-6 795 kHz	(centre frequency 6 780 kHz),
433.05-434.79 MHz	(centre frequency 433.92 MHz) in Region 1 except in the countries mentioned in No. 5.280,
61-61.5 GHz	(centre frequency 61.25 GHz),
122-123 GHz	(centre frequency 122.5 GHz), and
244-246 GHz	(centre frequency 245 GHz)

are designated for industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) applications. The use of these frequency bands for ISM applications shall be subject to special authorization by the administration concerned, in agreement with other administrations whose radiocommunication services might be affected. In applying this provision, administrations shall have due regard to the latest relevant ITU-R Recommendations.

**5.140** *Additional allocation:* in Angola, Iraq, Somalia and Togo, the frequency band 7 000-7 050 kHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.141** *Alternative allocation:* in Egypt, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Guinea, Libya, Madagascar and Niger, the band 7 000-7 050 kHz is allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.141A** *Additional allocation:* in Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the bands 7 000-7 100 kHz and 7 100-7 200 kHz are also allocated to the fixed and land mobile services on a secondary basis. (WRC-03)

**5.141B** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Australia, Bahrain, Botswana, Brunei Darussalam, China, Comoros, Korea (Rep. of), Diego Garcia, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Guinea, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Libya, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Niger, New Zealand, Oman, Papua New Guinea, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Singapore, Sudan, South Sudan, Tunisia, Viet Nam and Yemen, the frequency band 7 100-7 200 kHz is also allocated to the fixed and the mobile, except aeronautical mobile (R), services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.142** The use of the band 7 200-7 300 kHz in Region 2 by the amateur service shall not impose constraints on the broadcasting service intended for use within Region 1 and Region 3. (WRC-12)

**5.143** *Additional allocation:* frequencies in the band 7 300-7 350 kHz may be used by stations in the fixed service and in the land mobile service, communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, on condition that harmful interference is not caused to the broadcasting service. When using frequencies for these services, administrations are urged to use the minimum power required and to take account of the seasonal use of frequencies by the broadcasting service published in accordance with the Radio Regulations. (WRC-07)

**5.143B** In Region 1, the band 7 350-7 450 kHz is allocated, until 29 March 2009, to the fixed service on a primary basis and to the land mobile service on a secondary basis. After 29 March 2009, on condition that harmful interference is not caused to the broadcasting service, frequencies in the band 7 350-7 450 kHz may be used by stations in the fixed and land mobile services communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, each station using a total radiated power that shall not exceed 24 dBW. (WRC-03)

**5.143C** *Additional allocation:* after 29 March 2009 in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Comoros, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Jordan, Kuwait, Libya, Morocco, Mauritania, Niger, Oman, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Sudan, South Sudan, Tunisia and Yemen, the bands 7 350-7 400 kHz and 7 400-7 450 kHz are also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.143E** Until 29 March 2009, the band 7 450-8 100 kHz is allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis and to the land mobile service on a secondary basis. (WRC-03)

**5.145** The conditions for the use of the carrier frequencies 8 291 kHz, 12 290 kHz and 16 420 kHz are prescribed in Articles 31 and 52. (WRC-07)

**5.145A** Stations in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations operating in the fixed service. Applications of the radiolocation service are limited to oceanographic radars operating in accordance with Resolution 612 (Rev.WRC-12). (WRC-12)

**5.145B** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, Moldova, Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the frequency bands 9 305-9 355 kHz and 16 100-16 200 kHz are allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.146** *Additional allocation:* frequencies in the bands 9 400-9 500 kHz, 11 600-11 650 kHz, 12 050-12 100 kHz, 15 600-15 800 kHz, 17 480-17 550 kHz and 18 900-19 020 kHz may be used by stations in the fixed service, communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, on condition that harmful interference is not caused to the broadcasting service. When using frequencies in the fixed service, administrations are urged to use the minimum power required and to take account of the seasonal use of frequencies by the broadcasting service published in accordance with the Radio Regulations. (WRC-07)

**5.147** On condition that harmful interference is not caused to the broadcasting service, frequencies in the bands 9 775-9 900 kHz, 11 650-11 700 kHz and 11 975-12 050 kHz may be used by stations in the fixed service communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, each station using a total radiated power not exceeding 24 dBW.

**5.149** In making assignments to stations of other services to which the bands:

13 360-13 410 kHz,	4 950-4 990 MHz,	102-109.5 GHz,
25 550-25 670 kHz,	4 990-5 000 MHz,	111.8-114.25 GHz,
37.5-38.25 MHz,	6 650-6 675.2 MHz,	128.33-128.59 GHz,
73-74.6 MHz in Regions 1 and 3,	10.6-10.68 GHz,	129.23-129.49 GHz,
150.05-153 MHz in Region 1,	14.47-14.5 GHz,	130-134 GHz,
322-328.6 MHz,	22.01-22.21 GHz,	136-148.5 GHz,
406.1-410 MHz,	22.21-22.5 GHz,	151.5-158.5 GHz,
608-614 MHz in Regions 1 and 3,	22.81-22.86 GHz,	168.59-168.93 GHz,
1 330-1 400 MHz,	23.07-23.12 GHz,	171.11-171.45 GHz,
1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz,	31.2-31.3 GHz,	172.31-172.65 GHz,
1 660-1 670 MHz,	31.5-31.8 GHz in Regions 1 and 3,	173.52-173.85 GHz,
1 718.8-1 722.2 MHz,	36.43-36.5 GHz,	195.75-196.15 GHz,
2 655-2 690 MHz,	42.5-43.5 GHz,	209-226 GHz,
3 260-3 267 MHz,	48.94-49.04 GHz,	241-250 GHz,
3 332-3 339 MHz,	76-86 GHz,	252-275 GHz
3 345.8-3 352.5 MHz,	92-94 GHz,	
4 825-4 835 MHz,	94.1-100 GHz,	

are allocated, administrations are urged to take all practicable steps to protect the radio astronomy service from harmful interference. Emissions from spaceborne or airborne stations can be particularly serious sources of interference to the radio astronomy service (see Nos. 4.5 and 4.6 and Article 29). (WRC-07)

**5.149A** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, Moldova, Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the frequency band 13 450-13 550 kHz is allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis and to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile (R), service on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.150** The following bands:

13 553-13 567 kHz	(centre frequency 13 560 kHz),
26 957-27 283 kHz	(centre frequency 27 120 kHz),
40.66-40.70 MHz	(centre frequency 40.68 MHz),
902-928 MHz	in Region 2 (centre frequency 915 MHz),
2 400-2 500 MHz	(centre frequency 2 450 MHz),
5 725-5 875 MHz	(centre frequency 5 800 MHz), and
24-24.25 GHz	(centre frequency 24.125 GHz)

are also designated for industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) applications. Radiocommunication services operating within these bands must accept harmful interference which may be caused by these applications. ISM equipment operating in these bands is subject to the provisions of No. 15.13.

**5.151** *Additional allocation:* frequencies in the bands 13 570-13 600 kHz and 13 800-13 870 kHz may be used by stations in the fixed service and in the mobile except aeronautical mobile (R) service, communicating only within the boundary of the country in which they are located, on the condition that harmful interference is not caused to the broadcasting service. When using frequencies in these services, administrations are urged to use the minimum power required and to take account of the seasonal use of frequencies by the broadcasting service published in accordance with the Radio Regulations. (WRC-07)

**5.152** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, China, Côte d'Ivoire, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 14 250-14 350 kHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. Stations of the fixed service shall not use a radiated power exceeding 24 dBW. (WRC-03)

**5.154** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 18 068-18 168 kHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis for use within their boundaries, with a peak envelope power not exceeding 1 kW. (WRC-03)

**5.155** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Moldova, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 21 850-21 870 kHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile (R) service on a primary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.155A** In Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Moldova, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the use of the band 21 850-21 870 kHz by the fixed service is limited to provision of services related to aircraft flight safety. (WRC-07)

**5.155B** The band 21 870-21 924 kHz is used by the fixed service for provision of services related to aircraft flight safety.

**5.156** *Additional allocation:* in Nigeria, the band 22 720-23 200 kHz is also allocated to the meteorological aids service (radiosondes) on a primary basis.

**5.156A** The use of the band 23 200-23 350 kHz by the fixed service is limited to provision of services related to aircraft flight safety.

**5.157** The use of the band 23 350-24 000 kHz by the maritime mobile service is limited to inter-ship radiotelegraphy.

**5.158** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, Moldova, Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the frequency band 24 450-24 600 kHz is allocated to the fixed and land mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.159** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, Moldova, Uzbekistan and Kyrgyzstan, the frequency band 39-39.5 MHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.160** *Additional allocation:* in Botswana, Burundi, Dem. Rep. of the Congo and Rwanda, the band 41-44 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.161** *Additional allocation:* in Iran (Islamic Republic of) and Japan, the band 41-44 MHz is also allocated to the radiolocation service on a secondary basis.

**5.161B** *Alternative allocation:* in Albania, Germany, Armenia, Austria, Belarus, Belgium, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Cyprus, Vatican, Croatia, Denmark, Spain, Estonia, Finland, France, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Iceland, Italy, Latvia, The Former Yugoslav Rep. of Macedonia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Moldova, Monaco, Montenegro, Norway, Uzbekistan, Netherlands, Portugal, Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia, Czech Rep., Romania, United Kingdom, San Marino, Slovenia, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey and Ukraine, the frequency band 42-42.5 MHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.162A** *Additional allocation:* in Germany, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia and Herzegovina, China, Vatican, Denmark, Spain, Estonia, the Russian Federation, Finland, France, Ireland, Iceland, Italy, Latvia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Monaco, Montenegro, Norway, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, the Czech Rep., the United Kingdom, Serbia, Slovenia, Sweden and Switzerland the band 46-68 MHz is also allocated to the radiolocation service on a secondary basis. This use is limited to the operation of wind profiler radars in accordance with Resolution **217 (WRC-97)**. (WRC-12)

**5.163** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Kazakhstan, Latvia, Moldova, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the bands 47-48.5 MHz and 56.5-58 MHz are also allocated to the fixed and land mobile services on a secondary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.164** *Additional allocation:* in Albania, Algeria, Germany, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Botswana, Bulgaria, Côte d'Ivoire, Croatia, Denmark, Spain, Estonia, Finland, France, Gabon, Greece, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Lebanon, Libya, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Madagascar, Mali, Malta, Morocco, Mauritania, Monaco, Montenegro, Nigeria, Norway, the Netherlands, Poland, Syrian Arab Republic, Slovakia, Czech Rep., Romania, the United Kingdom, Serbia, Slovenia, Sweden, Switzerland, Swaziland, Chad, Togo, Tunisia and Turkey, the frequency band 47-68 MHz, in South Africa the frequency band 47-50 MHz, and in Latvia the frequency band 48.5-56.5 MHz, are also allocated to the land mobile service on a primary basis. However, stations of the land mobile service in the countries mentioned in connection with each frequency band referred to in this footnote shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, existing or planned broadcasting stations of countries other than those mentioned in connection with the frequency band. (WRC-15)

**5.167** *Alternative allocation:* in Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Pakistan and Singapore, the frequency band 50-54 MHz is allocated to the fixed, mobile and broadcasting services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.169** *Alternative allocation:* in Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Namibia, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Rwanda, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the band 50-54 MHz is allocated to the amateur service on a primary basis. In Senegal, the band 50-51 MHz is allocated to the amateur service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.171** *Additional allocation:* in Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mali, Namibia, Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Rwanda, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the band 54-68 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.175** *Alternative allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Moldova, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the bands 68-73 MHz and 76-87.5 MHz are allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis. In Latvia and Lithuania, the bands 68-73 MHz and 76-87.5 MHz are allocated to the broadcasting and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. The services to which these bands are allocated in other countries and the broadcasting service in the countries listed above are subject to agreements with the neighbouring countries concerned. (WRC-07)

**5.177** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 73-74 MHz is

also allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. (WRC-07)

**5.179** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, China, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Lithuania, Mongolia, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the bands 74.6-74.8 MHz and 75.2-75.4 MHz are also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service, on a primary basis, for ground-based transmitters only. (WRC-12)

**5.180** The frequency 75 MHz is assigned to marker beacons. Administrations shall refrain from assigning frequencies close to the limits of the guardband to stations of other services which, because of their power or geographical position, might cause harmful interference or otherwise place a constraint on marker beacons.

Every effort should be made to improve further the characteristics of airborne receivers and to limit the power of transmitting stations close to the limits 74.8 MHz and 75.2 MHz

**5.181** *Additional allocation:* in Egypt, Israel and the Syrian Arab Republic, the band 74.8-75.2 MHz is also allocated to the mobile service on a secondary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. In order to ensure that harmful interference is not caused to stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service, stations of the mobile service shall not be introduced in the band until it is no longer required for the aeronautical radionavigation service by any administration which may be identified in the application of the procedure invoked under No. 9.21. (WRC-03)

**5.187** *Alternative allocation:* in Albania, the band 81-87.5 MHz is allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis and used in accordance with the decisions contained in the Final Acts of the Special Regional Conference (Geneva, 1960).

**5.190** *Additional allocation:* in Monaco, the band 87.5-88 MHz is also allocated to the land mobile service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. (WRC-97)

**5.194** *Additional allocation:* in Azerbaijan, Kyrgyzstan, Somalia and Turkmenistan, the band 104-108 MHz is also allocated to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile (R), service on a secondary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.197** *Additional allocation:* in the Syrian Arab Republic, the band 108-111.975 MHz is also allocated to the mobile service on a secondary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. In order to ensure that harmful interference is not caused to stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service, stations of the mobile service shall not be introduced in the band until it is no longer required for the aeronautical radionavigation service by any administration which may be identified in the application of the procedures invoked under No. 9.21. (WRC-12)

**5.197A** *Additional allocation:* the band 108-117.975 MHz is also allocated on a primary basis to the aeronautical mobile (R) service, limited to systems operating in accordance with recognized international aeronautical standards. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution 413 (Rev.WRC-07). The use of the band 108-112 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service shall be limited to systems composed of ground-based transmitters and associated receivers that provide navigational information in support of air navigation functions in accordance with recognized international aeronautical standards. (WRC-07)

**5.200** In the band 117.975-137 MHz, the frequency 121.5 MHz is the aeronautical emergency frequency and, where required, the frequency 123.1 MHz is the aeronautical frequency auxiliary to 121.5 MHz. Mobile stations of the maritime mobile service may communicate on these frequencies under the conditions laid down in Article 31 for distress and safety purposes with stations of the aeronautical mobile service. (WRC-07)

**5.201** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Bulgaria, Estonia, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq (Republic of), Japan, Kazakhstan, Moldova, Mongolia, Mozambique, Uzbekistan, Papua New Guinea, Poland, Kyrgyzstan, Romania, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the frequency band 132-136 MHz is also allocated to the

aeronautical mobile (OR) service on a primary basis. In assigning frequencies to stations of the aeronautical mobile (OR) service, the administration shall take account of the frequencies assigned to stations in the aeronautical mobile (R) service. (WRC-15)

**5.202** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Bulgaria, the United Arab Emirates, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Jordan, Oman, Uzbekistan, Poland, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Romania, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the frequency band 136-137 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile (OR) service on a primary basis. In assigning frequencies to stations of the aeronautical mobile (OR) service, the administration shall take account of the frequencies assigned to stations in the aeronautical mobile (R) service. (WRC-15)

**5.204** *Different category of service:* in Afghanistan, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, China, Cuba, the United Arab Emirates, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Kuwait, Montenegro, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, Serbia, Singapore, Thailand and Yemen, the band 137-138 MHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile (R), services on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-07)

**5.205** *Different category of service:* in Israel and Jordan, the allocation of the band 137-138 MHz to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**).

**5.206** *Different category of service:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Bulgaria, Egypt, the Russian Federation, Finland, France, Georgia, Greece, Kazakhstan, Lebanon, Moldova, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Poland, Kyrgyzstan, the Syrian Arab Republic, Slovakia, the Czech Rep., Romania, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the allocation of the band 137-138 MHz to the aeronautical mobile (OR) service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-2000)

**5.208** The use of the band 137-138 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. (WRC-97)

**5.208A** In making assignments to space stations in the mobile-satellite service in the bands 137-138 MHz, 387-390 MHz and 400.15-401 MHz, administrations shall take all practicable steps to protect the radio astronomy service in the bands 150.05-153 MHz, 322-328.6 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz and 608-614 MHz from harmful interference from unwanted emissions. The threshold levels of interference detrimental to the radio astronomy service are shown in the relevant ITU-R Recommendation. (WRC-07)

**5.208B\***

In the frequency bands:

137-138 MHz,

387-390 MHz,

400.15-401 MHz,

1 452-1 492 MHz,

1 525-1 610 MHz,

1 613.8-1 626.5 MHz,

2 655-2 690 MHz,

21.4-22 GHz,

---

\* This provision was previously numbered as No. **5.347A**. It was renumbered to preserve the sequential order.

Resolution **739 (Rev.WRC-15)** applies. (WRC-15)

**5.209** The use of the bands 137-138 MHz, 148-150.05 MHz, 399.9-400.05 MHz, 400.15-401 MHz, 454-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is limited to non-geostationary-satellite systems. (WRC-97)

**5.210** *Additional allocation:* in Italy, the Czech Rep. and the United Kingdom, the bands 138-143.6 MHz and 143.65-144 MHz are also allocated to the space research service (space-to-Earth) on a secondary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.211** *Additional allocation:* in Germany, Saudi Arabia, Austria, Bahrain, Belgium, Denmark, the United Arab Emirates, Spain, Finland, Greece, Guinea, Ireland, Israel, Kenya, Kuwait, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Lebanon, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Mali, Malta, Montenegro, Norway, the Netherlands, Qatar, Slovakia, the United Kingdom, Serbia, Slovenia, Somalia, Sweden, Switzerland, Tanzania, Tunisia and Turkey, the frequency band 138-144 MHz is also allocated to the maritime mobile and land mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.212** *Alternative allocation:* in Angola, Botswana, Cameroon, the Central African Rep., Congo (Rep. of the), Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Iraq, Jordan, Lesotho, Liberia, Libya, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, Niger, Oman, Uganda, Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Rwanda, Sierra Leone, South Africa, Swaziland, Chad, Togo, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the band 138-144 MHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.214** *Additional allocation:* in Eritrea, Ethiopia, Kenya, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan and Tanzania, the band 138-144 MHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.218** *Additional allocation:* the band 148-149.9 MHz is also allocated to the space operation service (Earth-to-space) on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. The bandwidth of any individual transmission shall not exceed  $\pm 25$  kHz.

**5.219** The use of the band 148-149.9 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. The mobile-satellite service shall not constrain the development and use of the fixed, mobile and space operation services in the band 148-149.9 MHz

**5.220** The use of the frequency bands 149.9-150.05 MHz and 399.9-400.05 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. (WRC-15)

**5.221** Stations of the mobile-satellite service in the frequency band 148-149.9 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations of the fixed or mobile services operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations in the following countries: Albania, Algeria, Germany, Saudi Arabia, Australia, Austria, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Barbados, Belarus, Belgium, Benin, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Botswana, Brunei Darussalam, Bulgaria, Cameroon, China, Cyprus, Congo (Rep. of the), Korea (Rep. of), Côte d'Ivoire, Croatia, Cuba, Denmark, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Spain, Estonia, Ethiopia, the Russian Federation, Finland, France, Gabon, Georgia, Ghana, Greece, Guinea, Guinea Bissau, Hungary, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Ireland, Iceland, Israel, Italy, Jamaica, Japan, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kenya, Kuwait, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Lesotho, Latvia, Lebanon, Libya, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malaysia, Mali, Malta, Mauritania, Moldova, Mongolia, Montenegro, Mozambique, Namibia, Norway, New Zealand, Oman, Uganda, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, Panama, Papua New Guinea, Paraguay, the Netherlands, the Philippines, Poland, Portugal, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Slovakia, Romania, the United Kingdom, Senegal, Serbia, Sierra Leone, Singapore, Slovenia, Sudan, Sri Lanka, South Africa, Sweden, Switzerland, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Togo, Tonga, Trinidad and Tobago, Tunisia, Turkey, Ukraine, Viet Nam, Yemen, Zambia and Zimbabwe. (WRC-15)

**5.225A** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, China, the Russian Federation, France, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan,

Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine and Viet Nam, the frequency band 154-156 MHz is also allocated to the radiolocation service on a primary basis. The usage of the frequency band 154-156 MHz by the radiolocation service shall be limited to space-object detection systems operating from terrestrial locations. The operation of stations in the radiolocation service in the frequency band 154-156 MHz shall be subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. For the identification of potentially affected administrations in Region 1, the instantaneous field-strength value of 12 dB(V/m) for 10% of the time produced at 10 m above ground level in the 25 kHz reference frequency band at the border of the territory of any other administration shall be used. For the identification of potentially affected administrations in Region 3, the interference-to-noise ratio ( $I/N$ ) value of 6 dB ( $N = 161$  dBW/4 kHz), or 10 dB for applications with greater protection requirements, such as public protection and disaster relief (PPDR ( $N = 161$  dBW/4 kHz)), for 1% of the time produced at 60 m above ground level at the border of the territory of any other administration shall be used. In the frequency bands 156.7625-156.8375 MHz, 156.5125-156.5375 MHz, 161.9625-161.9875 MHz, 162.0125-162.0375 MHz, out-of-band e.i.r.p. of space surveillance radars shall not exceed 16 dBW. Frequency assignments to the radiolocation service under this allocation in Ukraine shall not be used without the agreement of Moldova. (WRC-12)

**5.226** The frequency 156.525 MHz is the international distress, safety and calling frequency for the maritime mobile VHF radiotelephone service using digital selective calling (DSC). The conditions for the use of this frequency and the band 156.4875-156.5625 MHz are contained in Articles 31 and 52, and in Appendix 18.

The frequency 156.8 MHz is the international distress, safety and calling frequency for the maritime mobile VHF radiotelephone service. The conditions for the use of this frequency and the band 156.7625-156.8375 MHz are contained in Article 31 and Appendix 18.

In the bands 156-156.4875 MHz, 156.5625-156.7625 MHz, 156.8375-157.45 MHz, 160.6-160.975 MHz and 161.475-162.05 MHz, each administration shall give priority to the maritime mobile service on only such frequencies as are assigned to stations of the maritime mobile service by the administration (see Articles 31 and 52, and Appendix 18).

Any use of frequencies in these bands by stations of other services to which they are allocated should be avoided in areas where such use might cause harmful interference to the maritime mobile VHF radiocommunication service.

However, the frequencies 156.8 MHz and 156.525 MHz and the frequency bands in which priority is given to the maritime mobile service may be used for radiocommunications on inland waterways subject to agreement between interested and affected administrations and taking into account current frequency usage and existing agreements. (WRC-07)

**5.227** *Additional allocation:* the bands 156.4875-156.5125 MHz and 156.5375-156.5625 MHz are also allocated to the fixed and land mobile services on a primary basis. The use of these bands by the fixed and land mobile services shall not cause harmful interference to nor claim protection from the maritime mobile VHF radiocommunication service. (WRC-07)

**5.228** The use of the frequency bands 156.7625-156.7875 MHz and 156.8125-156.8375 MHz by the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to the reception of automatic identification system (AIS) emissions of long range AIS broadcast messages (Message 27, see the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R M.1371). With the exception of AIS emissions, emissions in these frequency bands by systems operating in the maritime mobile service for communications shall not exceed 1 W. (WRC-12)

**5.228A** The frequency bands 161.9625-161.9875 MHz and 162.0125-162.0375 MHz may be used by aircraft stations for the purpose of search and rescue operations and other safety-related communications. (WRC-12)

**5.228AA** The use of the frequency bands 161.9375-161.9625 MHz and 161.9875-162.0125 MHz by the maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) service is limited to the systems which operate in accordance with Appendix 18. (WRC-15)

**5.228B** The use of the frequency bands 161.9625-161.9875 MHz and 162.0125-162.0375 MHz by the fixed and land mobile services shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, the maritime mobile service. (WRC-12)

**5.228C** The use of the frequency bands 161.9625-161.9875 MHz and 162.0125-162.0375 MHz by the maritime mobile service and the mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) service is limited to the automatic identification system (AIS). The use of these frequency bands by the aeronautical mobile (OR) service is limited to AIS emissions from search and rescue aircraft operations. The AIS operations in these frequency bands shall not constrain the development and use of the fixed and mobile services operating in the adjacent frequency bands. (WRC-12)

**5.228D** The frequency bands 161.9625-161.9875 MHz (AIS 1) and 162.0125-162.0375 MHz (AIS 2) may continue to be used by the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis until 1 January 2025, at which time this allocation shall no longer be valid. Administrations are encouraged to make all practicable efforts to discontinue the use of these bands by the fixed and mobile services prior to the transition date. During this transition period, the maritime mobile service in these frequency bands has priority over the fixed, land mobile and aeronautical mobile services. (WRC-12)

**5.228E** The use of the automatic identification system in the frequency bands 161.9625-161.9875 MHz and 162.0125-162.0375 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (OR) service is limited to aircraft stations for the purpose of search and rescue operations and other safety-related communications. (WRC-12)

**5.228F** The use of the frequency bands 161.9625-161.9875 MHz and 162.0125-162.0375 MHz by the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to the reception of automatic identification system emissions from stations operating in the maritime mobile service. (WRC-12)

**5.229** *Alternative allocation:* in Morocco, the band 162-174 MHz is allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis. The use of this band shall be subject to agreement with administrations having services, operating or planned, in accordance with the Table which are likely to be affected. Stations in existence on 1 January 1981, with their technical characteristics as of that date, are not affected by such agreement.

**5.235** *Additional allocation:* in Germany, Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Spain, Finland, France, Israel, Italy, Liechtenstein, Malta, Monaco, Norway, the Netherlands, the United Kingdom, Sweden and Switzerland, the band 174-223 MHz is also allocated to the land mobile service on a primary basis. However, the stations of the land mobile service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, broadcasting stations, existing or planned, in countries other than those listed in this footnote.

**5.236** Not used.

**5.237** *Additional allocation:* in Congo (Rep. of the), Egypt, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Gambia, Guinea, Libya, Mali, Sierra Leone, Somalia and Chad, the band 174-223 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a secondary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.243** *Additional allocation:* in Somalia, the band 216-225 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis, subject to not causing harmful interference to existing or planned broadcasting services in other countries.

**5.246** *Alternative allocation:* in Spain, France, Israel and Monaco, the band 223-230 MHz is allocated to the broadcasting and land mobile services on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**) on the basis that, in the preparation of frequency plans, the broadcasting service shall have prior choice of frequencies; and allocated to the fixed and mobile, except land mobile, services on a secondary basis. However, the stations of the land mobile service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, existing or planned broadcasting stations in Morocco and Algeria.

**5.247** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, the United Arab Emirates, Jordan, Oman, Qatar and Syrian Arab Republic, the band 223-235 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis.

**5.251** *Additional allocation:* in Nigeria, the band 230-235 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.252** *Alternative allocation:* in Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the bands 230-238 MHz and 246-254 MHz are allocated to the broadcasting service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.254** The bands 235-322 MHz and 335.4-399.9 MHz may be used by the mobile-satellite service, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, on condition that stations in this service do not cause harmful interference to those of other services operating or planned to be operated in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations except for the additional allocation made in footnote No. **5.256A**. (WRC-03)

**5.255** The bands 312-315 MHz (Earth-to-space) and 387-390 MHz (space-to-Earth) in the mobile-satellite service may also be used by non-geostationary-satellite systems. Such use is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**.

**5.256** The frequency 243 MHz is the frequency in this band for use by survival craft stations and equipment used for survival purposes. (WRC-07)

**5.256A** *Additional allocation:* in China, the Russian Federation and Kazakhstan, the frequency band 258-261 MHz is also allocated to the space research service (Earth-to-space) and space operation service (Earth-to-space) on a primary basis. Stations in the space research service (Earth-to-space) and space operation service (Earth-to-space) shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, or constrain the use and development of, the mobile service systems and mobile-satellite service systems operating in the frequency band. Stations in space research service (Earth-to-space) and space operation service (Earth-to-space) shall not constrain the future development of fixed service systems of other countries. (WRC-15)

**5.257** The band 267-272 MHz may be used by administrations for space telemetry in their countries on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.258** The use of the band 328.6-335.4 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is limited to Instrument Landing Systems (glide path).

**5.259** *Additional allocation:* in Egypt and the Syrian Arab Republic, the band 328.6-335.4 MHz is also allocated to the mobile service on a secondary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. In order to ensure that harmful interference is not caused to stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service, stations of the mobile service shall not be introduced in the band until it is no longer required for the aeronautical radionavigation service by any administration which may be identified in the application of the procedure invoked under No. **9.21**. (WRC-12)

**5.261** Emissions shall be confined in a band of  $\pm$  25 kHz about the standard frequency 400.1 MHz.

**5.262** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Belarus, Botswana, Colombia, Cuba, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Ecuador, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Liberia, Malaysia, Moldova, Oman, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Singapore, Somalia, Tajikistan, Chad, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 400.05-401 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.263** The band 400.15-401 MHz is also allocated to the space research service in the space-to-space direction for communications with manned space vehicles. In this application, the space research service will not be regarded as a safety service.

**5.264** The use of the band 400.15-401 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. The power flux-density limit indicated in Annex 1 of Appendix **5** shall apply until such time as a competent world radiocommunication conference revises it.

5.265 In the frequency band 403-410 MHz, Resolution **205 (Rev.WRC-15)** applies. (WRC-15)

**5.266** The use of the band 406-406.1 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is limited to low power satellite emergency position-indicating radiobeacons (see also Article **31**). (WRC-07)

**5.267** Any emission capable of causing harmful interference to the authorized uses of the band 406-406.1 MHz is prohibited.

**5.268** Use of the frequency band 410-420 MHz by the space research service is limited to space-to-space communication links with an orbiting, manned space vehicle. The power flux-density at the surface of the Earth produced by emissions from transmitting stations of the space research service (space-to-space) in the frequency band 410-420 MHz shall not exceed  $-153$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) for  $0^\circ \leq \delta \leq 5^\circ$ ,  $-153 + 0.077(\delta - 5)$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) for  $5^\circ \leq \delta \leq 70^\circ$  and  $-148$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) for  $70^\circ \leq \delta \leq 90^\circ$ , where  $\delta$  is the angle of arrival of the radio-frequency wave and the reference bandwidth is 4 kHz. In this frequency band, stations of the space research service (space-to-space) shall not claim protection from, nor constrain the use and development of, stations of the fixed and mobile services. No. **4.10**<sup>15</sup> does not apply. (WRC-15)

**5.269** *Different category of service:* in Australia, the United States, India, Japan and the United Kingdom, the allocation of the bands 420-430 MHz and 440-450 MHz to the radiolocation service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**).

**5.271** *Additional allocation:* in Belarus, China, India, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the band 420-460 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service (radio altimeters) on a secondary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.274** *Alternative allocation:* in Denmark, Norway, Sweden and Chad, the bands 430-432 MHz and 438-440 MHz are allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.275** *Additional allocation:* in Croatia, Estonia, Finland, Libya, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Montenegro and Serbia, the frequency bands 430-432 MHz and 438-440 MHz are also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.276** *Additional allocation:* in Afghanistan, Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, Burkina Faso, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Ecuador, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Greece, Guinea, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Libya, Malaysia, Niger, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, Switzerland, Thailand, Togo, Turkey and Yemen, the frequency band 430-440 MHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis and the frequency bands 430-435 MHz and 438-440 MHz are also allocated, except in Ecuador, to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.277** *Additional allocation:* in Angola, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Cameroon, Congo (Rep. of the), Djibouti, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Israel, Kazakhstan, Mali, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Poland, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia, Romania, Rwanda, Tajikistan, Chad, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 430-440 MHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

---

<sup>15</sup> It terms of the ITU Radio Regulations, Article: **4.10** Member States recognize that the safety aspects of radionavigation and other safety services require special measures to ensure their freedom from harmful interference; it is necessary therefore to take this factor into account in the assignment and use of frequencies.

**5.279A** The use of the frequency band 432-438 MHz by sensors in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) shall be in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R RS.1260-1. Additionally, the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) in the frequency band 432-438 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to the aeronautical radionavigation service in China. The provisions of this footnote in no way diminish the obligation of the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) to operate as a secondary service in accordance with Nos. **5.29** and **5.30**. (WRC-15)

**5.280** In Germany, Austria, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Croatia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Liechtenstein, Montenegro, Portugal, Serbia, Slovenia and Switzerland, the band 433.05-434.79 MHz (centre frequency 433.92 MHz) is designated for industrial, scientific and medical (ISM) applications. Radiocommunication services of these countries operating within this band must accept harmful interference which may be caused by these applications. ISM equipment operating in this band is subject to the provisions of No. **15.13**. (WRC-07)

**5.281** *Additional allocation:* in the French overseas departments and communities in Region 2 and India, the band 433.75-434.25 MHz is also allocated to the space operation service (Earth-to-space) on a primary basis. In France and in Brazil, the band is allocated to the same service on a secondary basis.

**5.282** In the bands 435-438 MHz, 1 260-1 270 MHz, 2 400-2 450 MHz, 3 400-3 410 MHz (in Regions 2 and 3 only) and 5 650-5 670 MHz, the amateur-satellite service may operate subject to not causing harmful interference to other services operating in accordance with the Table (see No. **5.43**). Administrations authorizing such use shall ensure that any harmful interference caused by emissions from a station in the amateur-satellite service is immediately eliminated in accordance with the provisions of No. **25.11**. The use of the bands 1 260-1 270 MHz and 5 650-5 670 MHz by the amateur-satellite service is limited to the Earth-to-space direction.

**5.283** *Additional allocation:* in Austria, the band 438-440 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis.

**5.286** The band 449.75-450.25 MHz may be used for the space operation service (Earth-to-space) and the space research service (Earth-to-space), subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.286A** The use of the bands 454-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. (WRC-97)

**5.286AA** The frequency band 450-470 MHz is identified for use by administrations wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT). See Resolution **224 (Rev. WRC-15)**. This identification does not preclude the use of this frequency band by any application of the services to which it is allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. (WRC-15)

**5.286B** The use of the band 454-455 MHz in the countries listed in No. **5.286D**, 455-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz in Region 2, and 454-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz in the countries listed in No. **5.286E**, by stations in the mobile-satellite service, shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations of the fixed or mobile services operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations. (WRC-97)

**5.286C** The use of the band 454-455 MHz in the countries listed in No. **5.286D**, 455-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz in Region 2, and 454-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz in the countries listed in No. **5.286E**, by stations in the mobile-satellite service, shall not constrain the development and use of the fixed and mobile services operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations. (WRC-97)

**5.286E** *Additional allocation:* in Cape Verde, Nepal and Nigeria, the bands 454-456 MHz and 459-460 MHz are also allocated to the mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) service on a primary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.287** Use of the frequency bands 457.5125-457.5875 MHz and 467.5125-467.5875 MHz by the maritime mobile service is limited to on-board communication stations. The characteristics of the equipment and the channelling arrangement shall be in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R

M.1174-3. The use of these frequency bands in territorial waters is subject to the national regulations of the administration concerned. (WRC-15)

**5.289** Earth exploration-satellite service applications, other than the meteorological-satellite service, may also be used in the bands 460-470 MHz and 1 690-1 710 MHz for space-to-Earth transmissions subject to not causing harmful interference to stations operating in accordance with the Table.

**5.290** *Different category of service:* in Afghanistan, Azerbaijan, Belarus, China, the Russian Federation, Japan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the allocation of the band 460-470 MHz to the meteorological-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**), subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. (WRC-12)

**5.291A** *Additional allocation:* in Germany, Austria, Denmark, Estonia, Liechtenstein, the Czech Rep., Serbia and Switzerland, the frequency band 470-494 MHz is also allocated to the radiolocation service on a secondary basis. This use is limited to the operation of wind profiler radars in accordance with Resolution **217 (WRC-97)**. (WRC-15)

**5.294** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Cameroon, Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, Ethiopia, Israel, Libya, the Syrian Arab Republic, Chad and Yemen, the frequency band 470-582 MHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.296** *Additional allocation :* in Albania, Germany, Angola, Saudi Arabia, Austria, Bahrain, Belgium, Benin, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Botswana, Bulgaria, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Cameroon, Vatican, Congo (Rep. of the), Côte d'Ivoire, Croatia, Denmark, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Spain, Estonia, Finland, France, Gabon, Georgia, Ghana, Hungary, Iraq, Ireland, Iceland, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lesotho, Latvia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Lebanon, Libya, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malawi, Mali, Malta, Morocco, Mauritius, Mauritania, Moldova, Monaco, Mozambique, Namibia, Niger, Nigeria, Norway, Oman, Uganda, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Slovakia, the Czech Republic, the United Kingdom, Rwanda, San Marino, Serbia, Sudan, South Africa, Sweden, Switzerland, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Togo, Tunisia, Turkey, Ukraine, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the frequency band 470-694 MHz is also allocated on a secondary basis to the land mobile service, intended for applications ancillary to broadcasting and programme-making. Stations of the land mobile service in the countries listed in this footnote shall not cause harmful interference to existing or planned stations operating in accordance with the Table in countries other than those listed in this footnote. (WRC-15)

**5.300** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Cameroon, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Israel, Jordan, Libya, Oman, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic and Sudan, the frequency band 582-790 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.304** *Additional allocation:* in the African Broadcasting Area (see Nos. **5.10** to **5.13**), the band 606-614 MHz is also allocated to the radio astronomy service on a primary basis.

**5.306** *Additional allocation:* in Region 1, except in the African Broadcasting Area (see Nos. **5.10** to **5.13**), and in Region 3, the band 608-614 MHz is also allocated to the radio astronomy service on a secondary basis.

**5.311A** For the frequency band 620-790 MHz, see also Resolution **549 (WRC-07)**. (WRC-07)

**5.312** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the frequency band 645-862 MHz, in Bulgaria the frequency bands 646-686 MHz, 726-758 MHz, 766-814 MHz and 822-862 MHz, and in Poland the frequency band 860-862 MHz until 31 December 2017, are also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.312A** In Region 1, the use of the frequency band 694-790 MHz by the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service is subject to the provisions of Resolution **760 (WRC-15)**. See also Resolution **224 (Rev.WRC-15)**. (WRC-15)

**5.316B** In Region 1, the allocation to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service in the frequency band 790-862 MHz is subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** with respect to the aeronautical radionavigation service in countries mentioned in No. **5.312**. For countries party to the GE06 Agreement, the use of stations of the mobile service is also subject to the successful application of the procedures of that Agreement. Resolutions **224 (Rev.WRC-15)** and **749 (Rev.WRC-15)** shall apply, as appropriate. (WRC-15)

**5.317A** The parts of the frequency band 698-960 MHz in Region 2 and the frequency bands 694-790 MHz in Region 1 and 790-960 MHz in Regions 1 and 3 which are allocated to the mobile service on a primary basis are identified for use by administrations wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) – see Resolutions **224 (Rev.WRC-15)**, **760 (WRC-15)** and **749 (Rev.WRC-15)**, where applicable. This identification does not preclude the use of these frequency bands by any application of the services to which they are allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. (WRC-15)

**5.319** *Additional allocation:* in Belarus, the Russian Federation and Ukraine, the bands 806-840 MHz (Earth-to-space) and 856-890 MHz (space-to-Earth) are also allocated to the mobile-satellite, except aeronautical mobile-satellite (R), service. The use of these bands by this service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, services in other countries operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations and is subject to special agreements between the administrations concerned.

**5.322** In Region 1, in the band 862-960 MHz, stations of the broadcasting service shall be operated only in the African Broadcasting Area (see Nos. **5.10** to **5.13**) excluding Algeria, Burundi, Egypt, Spain, Lesotho, Libya, Morocco, Malawi, Namibia, Nigeria, South Africa, Tanzania, Zimbabwe and Zambia, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. (WRC-12)

**5.323** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 862-960 MHz, in Bulgaria the bands 862-890.2 MHz and 900-935.2 MHz, in Poland the band 862-876 MHz until 31 December 2017, and in Romania the bands 862-880 MHz and 915-925 MHz, are also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis. Such use is subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** with administrations concerned and limited to ground-based radiobeacons in operation on 27 October 1997 until the end of their lifetime. (WRC-12)

**5.327A** The use of the frequency band 960-1 164 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service is limited to systems that operate in accordance with recognized international aeronautical standards. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution **417 (Rev.WRC-15)**. (WRC-15)

**5.328** The use of the band 960-1 215 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is reserved on a worldwide basis for the operation and development of airborne electronic aids to air navigation and any directly associated ground-based facilities. (WRC-2000)

**5.328A** Stations in the radionavigation-satellite service in the band 1 164-1 215 MHz shall operate in accordance with the provisions of Resolution **609 (Rev.WRC-07)** and shall not claim protection from stations in the aeronautical radionavigation service in the band 960-1 215 MHz. No. **5.43A** does not apply. The provisions of No. **21.18** shall apply. (WRC-07)

**5.328AA** The frequency band 1 087.7-1 092.3 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service (Earth-to-space) on a primary basis, limited to the space station reception of Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast (ADS-B) emissions from aircraft transmitters that operate in accordance with recognized international aeronautical standards. Stations operating in the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service shall not claim protection from stations operating in the aeronautical radionavigation service. Resolution **425 (WRC-15)** shall apply. (WRC-15)

**5.328B** The use of the bands 1 164-1 300 MHz, 1 559-1 610 MHz and 5 010-5 030 MHz by systems and networks in the radionavigation-satellite service for which complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, is received by the Radiocommunication Bureau after 1 January 2005 is subject to the application of the provisions of Nos. **9.12**, **9.12A** and **9.13**. Resolution **610 (WRC-03)** shall also apply; however, in the case of radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-space) networks and systems, Resolution **610 (WRC-03)** shall only apply to transmitting space stations. In accordance with No. **5.329A**, for systems and networks in the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-space) in the bands 1 215-1 300 MHz and 1 559-1 610 MHz, the provisions of Nos. **9.7**, **9.12**, **9.12A** and **9.13** shall only apply with respect to other systems and networks in the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-space). (WRC-07)

**5.329** Use of the radionavigation-satellite service in the band 1 215-1 300 MHz shall be subject to the condition that no harmful interference is caused to, and no protection is claimed from, the radionavigation service authorized under No. **5.331**. Furthermore, the use of the radionavigation-satellite service in the band 1 215-1 300 MHz shall be subject to the condition that no harmful interference is caused to the radiolocation service. No. **5.43** shall not apply in respect of the radiolocation service. Resolution **608 (WRC-03)** shall apply. (WRC-03)

**5.329A** Use of systems in the radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-space) operating in the bands 1 215-1 300 MHz and 1 559-1 610 MHz is not intended to provide safety service applications, and shall not impose any additional constraints on radionavigation-satellite service (space-to-Earth) systems or on other services operating in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations. (WRC-07)

**5.330** *Additional allocation:* in Angola, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Cameroon, China, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Guyana, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Nepal, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Chad, Togo and Yemen, the band 1 215-1 300 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.331** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Germany, Saudi Arabia, Australia, Austria, Bahrain, Belarus, Belgium, Benin, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Cameroon, China, Korea (Rep. of), Croatia, Denmark, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Estonia, the Russian Federation, Finland, France, Ghana, Greece, Guinea, Equatorial Guinea, Hungary, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Ireland, Israel, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Lesotho, Latvia, Lebanon, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Madagascar, Mali, Mauritania, Montenegro, Nigeria, Norway, Oman, Pakistan, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Slovakia, the United Kingdom, Serbia, Slovenia, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Sri Lanka, South Africa, Sweden, Switzerland, Thailand, Togo, Turkey, Venezuela and Viet Nam, the band 1 215-1 300 MHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. In Canada and the United States, the band 1 240-1 300 MHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service, and use of the radionavigation service shall be limited to the aeronautical radionavigation service. (WRC-12)

**5.332** In the band 1 215-1 260 MHz, active spaceborne sensors in the Earth exploration-satellite and space research services shall not cause harmful interference to, claim protection from, or otherwise impose constraints on operation or development of the radiolocation service, the radionavigation-satellite service and other services allocated on a primary basis. (WRC-2000)

**5.335A** In the band 1 260-1 300 MHz, active spaceborne sensors in the Earth exploration-satellite and space research services shall not cause harmful interference to, claim protection from, or otherwise impose constraints on operation or development of the radiolocation service and other services allocated by footnotes on a primary basis. (WRC-2000)

**5.337** The use of the bands 1 300-1 350 MHz, 2 700-2 900 MHz and 9 000-9 200 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is restricted to ground-based radars and to associated airborne

transponders which transmit only on frequencies in these bands and only when actuated by radars operating in the same band.

**5.337A** The use of the band 1 300-1 350 MHz by earth stations in the radionavigation-satellite service and by stations in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, nor constrain the operation and development of, the aeronautical-radionavigation service. (WRC-2000)

**5.338** In Kyrgyzstan, Slovakia and Turkmenistan, existing installations of the radionavigation service may continue to operate in the band 1 350-1 400 MHz. (WRC-12)

**5.338A** In the frequency bands 1 350-1 400 MHz, 1 427-1 452 MHz, 22.55-23.55 GHz, 30-31.3 GHz, 49.7-50.2 GHz, 50.4-50.9 GHz, 51.4-52.6 GHz, 81-86 GHz and 92-94 GHz, Resolution **750 (Rev.WRC-15)** applies. (WRC-15)

**5.339** The bands 1 370-1 400 MHz, 2 640-2 655 MHz, 4 950-4 990 MHz and 15.20-15.35 GHz are also allocated to the space research (passive) and Earth exploration-satellite (passive) services on a secondary basis.

**5.340** All emissions are prohibited in the following bands:

1 400-1 427 MHz,  
 2 690-2 700 MHz, except those provided for by No. **5.422**,  
 10.68-10.7 GHz, except those provided for by No. **5.483**,  
 15.35-15.4 GHz, except those provided for by No. **5.511**,  
 23.6-24 GHz,  
 31.3-31.5 GHz,  
 31.5-31.8 GHz, in Region 2,  
 48.94-49.04 GHz, from airborne stations  
 50.2-50.4 GHz<sup>2</sup>,  
 52.6-54.25 GHz,  
 86-92 GHz,  
 100-102 GHz,  
 109.5-111.8 GHz,  
 114.25-116 GHz,  
 148.5-151.5 GHz,  
 164-167 GHz,  
 182-185 GHz,  
 190-191.8 GHz,  
 200-209 GHz,  
 226-231.5 GHz,  
 250-252 GHz. (WRC-03)

**5.341** In the bands 1 400-1 727 MHz, 101-120 GHz and 197-220 GHz, passive research is being conducted by some countries in a programme for the search for intentional emissions of extraterrestrial origin.

5.341A In Region 1, the frequency bands 1 427-1 452 MHz and 1 492-1 518 MHz are identified for use by administrations wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) in

<sup>2</sup> **5.340.1** The allocation to the Earth exploration-satellite service (passive) and the space research service (passive) in the band 50.2-50.4 GHz should not impose undue constraints on the use of the adjacent bands by the primary allocated services in those bands. (WRC-97)

accordance with Resolution **223 (Rev.WRC-15)**. This identification does not preclude the use of these frequency bands by any other application of the services to which it is allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. The use of IMT stations is subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** with respect to the aeronautical mobile service used for aeronautical telemetry in accordance with No. **5.342**. (WRC-15)

**5.342** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan and Ukraine, the frequency band 1 429-1 535 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile service on a primary basis, exclusively for the purposes of aeronautical telemetry within the national territory. As of 1 April 2007, the use of the frequency band 1 452-1 492 MHz is subject to agreement between the administrations concerned. (WRC 15)

**5.345** Use of the band 1 452-1 492 MHz by the broadcasting-satellite service, and by the broadcasting service, is limited to digital audio broadcasting and is subject to the provisions of Resolution **528 (WARC-92)\***.

**5.346** In Algeria, Angola, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Benin, Botswana, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Congo (Rep. of the), Côte d'Ivoire, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Gabon, Gambia, Ghana Guinea, Iraq, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lesotho, Lebanon, Liberia, Madagascar, Malawi, Mali, Morocco, Mauritius, Mauritania, Mozambique, Namibia, Niger, Nigeria, Oman, Uganda, Palestine\*, Qatar, Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Rwanda, Senegal, Seychelles, Sudan, South Sudan, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Togo, Tunisia, Zambia, and Zimbabwe, the frequency band 1 452-1 492 MHz is identified for use by administrations listed above wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) in accordance with Resolution **223 (Rev.WRC-15)**. This identification does not preclude the use of this frequency band by any other application of the services to which it is allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. The use of this frequency band for the implementation of IMT is subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** with respect to the aeronautical mobile service used for aeronautical telemetry in accordance with No. **5.342**. See also Resolution **761 (WRC-15)**. (WRC-15)

**5.348** The use of the band 1 518-1 525 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. In the band 1 518-1 525 MHz stations in the mobile-satellite service shall not claim protection from the stations in the fixed service. No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-03)

**5.348A** In the band 1 518-1 525 MHz, the coordination threshold in terms of the power flux-density levels at the surface of the Earth in application of No. **9.11A** for space stations in the mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) service, with respect to the land mobile service use for specialized mobile radios or used in conjunction with public switched telecommunication networks (PSTN) operating within the territory of Japan, shall be  $-150$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 4 kHz band for all angles of arrival, instead of those given in Table 5-2 of Appendix 5. In the band 1 518-1 525 MHz stations in the mobile-satellite service shall not claim protection from stations in the mobile service in the territory of Japan. No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-03)

**5.348B** In the band 1 518-1 525 MHz, stations in the mobile-satellite service shall not claim protection from aeronautical mobile telemetry stations in the mobile service in the territory of the United States (see Nos. **5.343** and **5.344**) and in the countries listed in No. **5.342**. No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-03)

**5.349** *Different category of service:* in Saudi Arabia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Cameroon, Egypt, France, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Lebanon, Morocco, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Turkmenistan and Yemen,

\* Note by the Secretariat: This Resolution was revised by WRC-03.

the allocation of the band 1 525-1 530 MHz to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-07)

**5.350** *Additional allocation:* in Azerbaijan, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the band 1 525-1 530 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile service on a primary basis. (WRC-2000)

**5.351** The bands 1 525-1 544 MHz, 1 545-1 559 MHz, 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz and 1 646.5-1 660.5 MHz shall not be used for feeder links of any service. In exceptional circumstances, however, an earth station at a specified fixed point in any of the mobile-satellite services may be authorized by an administration to communicate via space stations using these bands.

**5.351A** For the use of the bands 1 518-1 544 MHz, 1 545-1 559 MHz, 1 610-1 645.5 MHz, 1 646.5-1 660.5 MHz, 1 668-1 675 MHz, 1 980-2 010 MHz, 2 170-2 200 MHz, 2 483.5-2 520 MHz and 2 670-2 690 MHz by the mobile-satellite service, see Resolutions **212 (Rev.WRC-07)** and **225 (Rev.WRC-07)**. (WRC-07)

**5.352A** In the frequency band 1 525-1 530 MHz, stations in the mobile-satellite service, except stations in the maritime mobile-satellite service, shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations of the fixed service in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Egypt, France and French overseas communities of Region 3, Guinea, India, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Kuwait, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Viet Nam and Yemen notified prior to 1 April 1998. (WRC-15)

**5.353A** In applying the procedures of Section II of Article **9** to the mobile-satellite service in the bands 1 530-1 544 MHz and 1 626.5-1 645.5 MHz, priority shall be given to accommodating the spectrum requirements for distress, urgency and safety communications of the Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS). Maritime mobile-satellite distress, urgency and safety communications shall have priority access and immediate availability over all other mobile satellite communications operating within a network. Mobile-satellite systems shall not cause unacceptable interference to, or claim protection from, distress, urgency and safety communications of the GMDSS. Account shall be taken of the priority of safety-related communications in the other mobile-satellite services. (The provisions of Resolution **222 (WRC-2000)\*** shall apply.) (WRC-2000)

**5.354** The use of the bands 1 525-1 559 MHz and 1 626.5-1 660.5 MHz by the mobile-satellite services is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**.

**5.355** *Additional allocation:* in Bahrain, Bangladesh, Congo (Rep. of the), Djibouti, Egypt, Eritrea, Iraq, Israel, Kuwait, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Chad, Togo and Yemen, the bands 1 540-1 559 MHz, 1 610-1 645.5 MHz and 1 646.5-1 660 MHz are also allocated to the fixed service on a secondary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.356** The use of the band 1 544-1 545 MHz by the mobile-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is limited to distress and safety communications (see Article **31**).

**5.357** Transmissions in the band 1 545-1 555 MHz from terrestrial aeronautical stations directly to aircraft stations, or between aircraft stations, in the aeronautical mobile (R) service are also authorized when such transmissions are used to extend or supplement the satellite-to-aircraft links.

**5.357A** In applying the procedures of Section II of Article **9** to the mobile-satellite service in the frequency bands 1 545-1 555 MHz and 1 646.5-1 656.5 MHz, priority shall be given to accommodating the spectrum requirements of the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service providing transmission of messages with priority 1 to 6 in Article **44**. Aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service communications with priority 1 to 6 in Article **44** shall have priority access and immediate availability, by pre-emption if necessary, over all other mobile-satellite communications operating within a network. Mobile-satellite systems shall not cause unacceptable interference to, or claim protection from, aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service communications with priority 1 to 6 in Article **44**. Account shall be taken

---

\* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

of the priority of safety-related communications in the other mobile-satellite services. (The provisions of Resolution **222 (WRC-12)** shall apply.) (WRC-12)

**5.359** *Additional allocation:* in Germany, Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Benin, Cameroon, the Russian Federation, France, Georgia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Lithuania, Mauritania, Uganda, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, Poland, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Romania, Tajikistan, Tunisia, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the frequency bands 1 550-1 559 MHz, 1 610-1 645.5 MHz and 1 646.5-1 660 MHz are also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. Administrations are urged to make all practicable efforts to avoid the implementation of new fixed-service stations in these frequency bands. (WRC-15)

**5.364** The use of the band 1 610-1 626.5 MHz by the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and by the radiodetermination-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. A mobile earth station operating in either of the services in this band shall not produce a peak e.i.r.p. density in excess of -15 dB (W/4 kHz) in the part of the band used by systems operating in accordance with the provisions of No. **5.366** (to which No. **4.10** applies), unless otherwise agreed by the affected administrations. In the part of the band where such systems are not operating, the mean e.i.r.p. density of a mobile earth station shall not exceed -3 dB(W/4 kHz). Stations of the mobile-satellite service shall not claim protection from stations in the aeronautical radionavigation service, stations operating in accordance with the provisions of No. **5.366** and stations in the fixed service operating in accordance with the provisions of No. **5.359**. Administrations responsible for the coordination of mobile-satellite networks shall make all practicable efforts to ensure protection of stations operating in accordance with the provisions of No. **5.366**.

**5.365** The use of the band 1 613.8-1 626.5 MHz by the mobile-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**.

**5.366** The band 1 610-1 626.5 MHz is reserved on a worldwide basis for the use and development of airborne electronic aids to air navigation and any directly associated ground-based or satellite-borne facilities. Such satellite use is subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.367** *Additional allocation:* The frequency band 1 610-1 626.5 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. (WRC-12)

**5.368** With respect to the radiodetermination-satellite and mobile-satellite services the provisions of No. **4.10** do not apply in the band 1 610-1 626.5 MHz, with the exception of the aeronautical radionavigation-satellite service.

**5.369** *Different category of service:* in Angola, Australia, China, Eritrea, Ethiopia, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Israel, Lebanon, Liberia, Madagascar, Mali, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea, Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Sudan, South Sudan, Togo and Zambia, the allocation of the band 1 610-1 626.5 MHz to the radiodetermination-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**), subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** from countries not listed in this provision. (WRC-12)

**5.371** *Additional allocation:* in Region 1, the band 1 610-1 626.5 MHz (Earth-to-space) is also allocated to the radiodetermination-satellite service on a secondary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. (WRC-12)

**5.372** Harmful interference shall not be caused to stations of the radio astronomy service using the band 1 610.6-1 613.8 MHz by stations of the radiodetermination-satellite and mobile-satellite services (No. **29.13** applies).

**5.374** Mobile earth stations in the mobile-satellite service operating in the bands 1 631.5-1 634.5 MHz and 1 656.5-1 660 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to stations in the fixed service operating in the countries listed in No. **5.359**. (WRC-97)

**5.375** The use of the band 1 645.5-1 646.5 MHz by the mobile-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and for inter-satellite links is limited to distress and safety communications (see Article 31).

**5.376** Transmissions in the band 1 646.5-1 656.5 MHz from aircraft stations in the aeronautical mobile (R) service directly to terrestrial aeronautical stations, or between aircraft stations, are also authorized when such transmissions are used to extend or supplement the aircraft-to-satellite links.

**5.376A** Mobile earth stations operating in the band 1 660-1 660.5 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to stations in the radio astronomy service. (WRC-97)

**5.379** *Additional allocation:* in Bangladesh, India, Indonesia, Nigeria and Pakistan, the band 1 660.5-1 668.4 MHz is also allocated to the meteorological aids service on a secondary basis.

**5.379A** Administrations are urged to give all practicable protection in the band 1 660.5-1 668.4 MHz for future research in radio astronomy, particularly by eliminating air-to-ground transmissions in the meteorological aids service in the band 1 664.4-1 668.4 MHz as soon as practicable.

**5.379B** The use of the band 1 668-1 675 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. 9.11A. In the band 1 668-1 668.4 MHz, Resolution 904 (WRC-07) shall apply. (WRC-07)

**5.379C** In order to protect the radio astronomy service in the band 1 668-1 670 MHz, the aggregate power flux-density values produced by mobile earth stations in a network of the mobile-satellite service operating in this band shall not exceed  $-181$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in 10 MHz and  $-194$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 20 kHz at any radio astronomy station recorded in the Master International Frequency Register, for more than 2% of integration periods of 2 000 s. (WRC-03)

**5.379D** For sharing of the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz between the mobile-satellite service and the fixed and mobile services, Resolution 744 (Rev.WRC-07) shall apply. (WRC-07)

**5.379E** In the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz, stations in the mobile-satellite service shall not cause harmful interference to stations in the meteorological aids service in China, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Japan and Uzbekistan. In the band 1 668.4-1 675 MHz, administrations are urged not to implement new systems in the meteorological aids service and are encouraged to migrate existing meteorological aids service operations to other bands as soon as practicable. (WRC-03)

**5.380A** In the band 1 670-1 675 MHz, stations in the mobile-satellite service shall not cause harmful interference to, nor constrain the development of, existing earth stations in the meteorological-satellite service notified before 1 January 2004. Any new assignment to these earth stations in this band shall also be protected from harmful interference from stations in the mobile-satellite service. (WRC-07)

**5.382** *Different category of service:* in Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Belarus, Congo (Rep. of the), Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, the Russian Federation, Guinea, Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, Lebanon, Mauritania, Moldova, Mongolia, Oman, Uzbekistan, Poland, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Somalia, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine and Yemen, the allocation of the frequency band 1 690-1 700 MHz to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services is on a primary basis (see No. 5.33), and in the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, the allocation of the frequency band 1 690-1 700 MHz to the fixed service is on a primary basis (see No. 5.33) and to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.384A** The frequency bands 1 710-1 885 MHz, 2 300-2 400 MHz and 2 500-2 690 MHz, or portions thereof, are identified for use by administrations wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) in accordance with Resolution 223 (Rev.WRC-15). This identification does not preclude the use of these frequency bands by any application of the services to which they are allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. (WRC-15)

**5.385** *Additional allocation:* the band 1 718.8-1 722.2 MHz is also allocated to the radio astronomy service on a secondary basis for spectral line observations. (WRC-2000)

**5.387** *Additional allocation:* in Belarus, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Romania, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the band 1 770-1 790 MHz is also allocated to the meteorological-satellite service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. (WRC-12)

**5.388** The frequency bands 1 885-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 200 MHz are intended for use, on a worldwide basis by administrations wishing to implement International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT). Such use does not preclude the use of these frequency bands by other services to which they are allocated. The frequency bands should be made available for IMT in accordance with Resolution **212 (Rev.WRC-15)** (see also Resolution **223 (Rev.WRC-15)**). (WRC-15)

### **5.388**

**5.388A** In Regions 1 and 3, the bands 1 885-1 980 MHz, 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 110-2 170 MHz and, in Region 2, the bands 1 885-1 980 MHz and 2 110-2 160 MHz may be used by high altitude platform stations as base stations to provide International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT), in accordance with Resolution **221 (Rev.WRC-07)**. Their use by IMT applications using high altitude platform stations as base stations does not preclude the use of these bands by any station in the services to which they are allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. (WRC-12)

**5.388B** In Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Benin, Burkina Faso, Cameroon, Comoros, Côte d'Ivoire, China, Cuba, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Gabon, Ghana, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Israel, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Libya, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Nigeria, Oman, Uganda, Pakistan, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Senegal, Singapore, Sudan, South Sudan, Tanzania, Chad, Togo, Tunisia, Yemen, Zambia and Zimbabwe, for the purpose of protecting fixed and mobile services, including IMT-2000 mobile stations, in their territories from co-channel interference, a high altitude platform station (HAPS) operating as an IMT-2000 base station in neighbouring countries, in the bands referred to in No. **5.388A**, shall not exceed a co-channel power flux-density of 127 dB(W/(m<sup>2</sup> · MHz)) at the Earth's surface outside a country's borders unless explicit agreement of the affected administration is provided at the time of the notification of HAPS. (WRC-12)

**5.389** Not used.

**5.389A** The use of the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A** and to the provisions of Resolution **716 (Rev.WRC-2000)**. (WRC-07)

**5.389E** The use of the bands 2 010-2 025 MHz and 2 160-2 170 MHz by the mobile-satellite service in Region 2 shall not cause harmful interference to or constrain the development of the fixed and mobile services in Regions 1 and 3.

**5.389F** In Algeria, Benin, Cape Verde, Egypt, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Mali, Syrian Arab Republic and Tunisia, the use of the bands 1 980-2 010 MHz and 2 170-2 200 MHz by the mobile-satellite service shall neither cause harmful interference to the fixed and mobile services, nor hamper the development of those services prior to 1 January 2005, nor shall the former service request protection from the latter services. (WRC-2000)

**5.391** In making assignments to the mobile service in the frequency bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz, administrations shall not introduce high-density mobile systems, as described in Recommendation ITU-R SA.1154-0, and shall take that Recommendation into account for the introduction of any other type of mobile system. (WRC-15)

**5.392** Administrations are urged to take all practicable measures to ensure that space-to-space transmissions between two or more non-geostationary satellites, in the space research, space operations and Earth exploration-satellite services in the bands 2 025-2 110 MHz and 2 200-2 290 MHz, shall not impose any constraints on Earth-to-space, space-to-Earth and other space-to-space transmissions of those services and in those bands between geostationary and non-geostationary satellites.

**5.395** In France and Turkey, the use of the band 2 310-2 360 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service for telemetry has priority over other uses by the mobile service. (WRC-03)

**5.396** Space stations of the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 2 310-2 360 MHz operating in accordance with No. **5.393** that may affect the services to which this band is allocated in other countries shall be coordinated and notified in accordance with Resolution **33 (Rev.WRC-97)\***. Complementary terrestrial broadcasting stations shall be subject to bilateral coordination with neighbouring countries prior to their bringing into use.

**5.398** In respect of the radiodetermination-satellite service in the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz, the provisions of No. **4.10** do not apply.

**5.398A** *Different category of service:* In Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Ukraine, the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz is allocated on a primary basis to the radiolocation service. The radiolocation stations in these countries shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations of the fixed, mobile and mobile-satellite services operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations in the frequency band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz (WRC-12)

**5.399** Except for cases referred to in No. **5.401**, stations of the radiodetermination-satellite service operating in the frequency band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz for which notification information is received by the Bureau after 17 February 2012, and the service area of which includes Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Ukraine, shall not cause harmful interference to, and shall not claim protection from stations of the radiolocation service operating in these countries in accordance with No. **5.398A**. (WRC-12)

**5.401** In Angola, Australia, Bangladesh, China, Eritrea, Ethiopia, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Lebanon, Liberia, Libya, Madagascar, Mali, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea, Syrian Arab Republic, Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Sudan, Swaziland, Togo and Zambia, the frequency band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz was already allocated on a primary basis to the radiodetermination-satellite service before WRC-12, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21** from countries not listed in this provision. Systems in the radiodetermination-satellite service for which complete coordination information has been received by the Radiocommunication Bureau before 18 February 2012 will retain their regulatory status, as of the date of receipt of the coordination request information. (WRC-15)

**5.402** The use of the band 2 483.5-2 500 MHz by the mobile-satellite and the radiodetermination-satellite services is subject to the coordination under No. **9.11A**. Administrations are urged to take all practicable steps to prevent harmful interference to the radio astronomy service from emissions in the 2 483.5-2 500 MHz band, especially those caused by second-harmonic radiation that would fall into the 4 990-5 000 MHz band allocated to the radio astronomy service worldwide.

**5.403** Subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, the band 2 520-2 535 MHz may also be used for the mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth), except aeronautical mobile-satellite, service for operation limited to within national boundaries. The provisions of No. **9.11A** apply. (WRC-07)

**5.407** In the band 2 500-2 520 MHz, the power flux-density at the surface of the Earth from space stations operating in the mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) service shall not exceed  $-152$  dB(W/(m<sup>2</sup> · 4 kHz)) in Argentina, unless otherwise agreed by the administrations concerned.

---

\* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-03.

**5.410** The band 2 500-2 690 MHz may be used for tropospheric scatter systems in Region 1, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. No. **9.21** does not apply to tropospheric scatter links situated entirely outside Region 1. Administrations shall make all practicable efforts to avoid developing new tropospheric scatter systems in this band. When planning new tropospheric scatter radio-relay links in this band, all possible measures shall be taken to avoid directing the antennas of these links towards the geostationary-satellite orbit. (WRC-12)

**5.412** *Alternative allocation:* in Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the band 2 500-2 690 MHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.413** In the design of systems in the broadcasting-satellite service in the bands between 2 500 MHz and 2 690 MHz, administrations are urged to take all necessary steps to protect the radio astronomy service in the band 2 690-2 700 MHz.

**5.414** The allocation of the frequency band 2 500-2 520 MHz to the mobile-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. (WRC-07)

**5.415** The use of the bands 2 500-2 690 MHz in Region 2 and 2 500-2 535 MHz and 2 655-2 690 MHz in Region 3 by the fixed-satellite service is limited to national and regional systems, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**, giving particular attention to the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 1. (WRC-07)

**5.416** The use of the band 2 520-2 670 MHz by the broadcasting-satellite service is limited to national and regional systems for community reception, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. The provisions of No. **9.19** shall be applied by administrations in this band in their bilateral and multilateral negotiations. (WRC-07)

**5.418B** Use of the band 2 630-2 655 MHz by non-geostationary-satellite systems in the broadcasting-satellite service (sound), pursuant to No. **5.418**, for which complete Appendix 4 coordination information, or notification information, has been received after 2 June 2000, is subject to the application of the provisions of No. **9.12**. (WRC-03)

**5.418C** Use of the band 2 630-2 655 MHz by geostationary-satellite networks for which complete Appendix 4 coordination information, or notification information, has been received after 2 June 2000 is subject to the application of the provisions of No. **9.13** with respect to non-geostationary-satellite systems in the broadcasting-satellite service (sound), pursuant to No. **5.418** and No. **22.2** does not apply. (WRC-03)

**5.419** When introducing systems of the mobile-satellite service in the band 2 670-2 690 MHz, administrations shall take all necessary steps to protect the satellite systems operating in this band prior to 3 March 1992. The coordination of mobile-satellite systems in the band shall be in accordance with No. **9.11A**. (WRC-07)

**5.420** The band 2 655-2 670 MHz may also be used for the mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space), except aeronautical mobile-satellite, service for operation limited to within national boundaries, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. The coordination under No. **9.11A** applies. (WRC-07)

**5.422** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Belarus, Brunei Darussalam, Congo (Rep. of the), Côte d'Ivoire, Cuba, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Gabon, Georgia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Mauritania, Mongolia, Montenegro, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Romania, Somalia, Tajikistan, Tunisia, Turkmenistan, Ukraine and Yemen, the band 2 690-2 700 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. Such use is limited to equipment in operation by 1 January 1985. (WRC-12)

**5.423** In the band 2 700-2 900 MHz, ground-based radars used for meteorological purposes are authorized to operate on a basis of equality with stations of the aeronautical radionavigation service.

**5.424A** In the band 2 900-3 100 MHz, stations in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, radar systems in the radionavigation service. (WRC-03)

**5.425** In the band 2 900-3 100 MHz, the use of the shipborne interrogator-transponder (SIT) system shall be confined to the sub-band 2 930 -2 950 MHz.

**5.426** The use of the band 2 900-3 100 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is limited to ground-based radars.

**5.427** In the bands 2 900-3 100 MHz and 9 300-9 500 MHz, the response from radar transponders shall not be capable of being confused with the response from radar beacons (racons) and shall not cause interference to ship or aeronautical radars in the radionavigation service, having regard, however, to No. 4.9.

**5.428** *Additional allocation: in Azerbaijan, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the frequency band 3 100-3 300 MHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis.* (WRC-15)

**5.429** Additional allocation: in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Benin, Brunei Darussalam, Cambodia, Cameroon, China, Congo (Rep. of the), Korea (Rep. of), Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Japan, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Malaysia, Oman, Uganda, Pakistan, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Sudan and Yemen, the frequency band 3 300-3 400 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. The countries bordering the Mediterranean shall not claim protection for their fixed and mobile services from the radiolocation service. (WRC-15)

**5.429A** *Additional allocation: in Angola, Benin, Botswana, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Lesotho, Liberia, Malawi, Mauritania, Mozambique, Namibia, Niger, Nigeria, Rwanda, Sudan, South Sudan, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Togo, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the frequency band 3 300-3 400 MHz is allocated to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service on a primary basis. Stations in the mobile service operating in the frequency band 3 300-3 400 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations operating in the radiolocation service.* (WRC-15)

**5.429B** In the following countries of Region 1 south of 30° parallel north: Angola, Benin, Botswana, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Cameroon, Congo (Rep. of the), Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Kenya, Lesotho, Liberia, Malawi, Mauritania, Mozambique, Namibia, Niger, Nigeria, Uganda, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Rwanda, Sudan, South Sudan, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Togo, Zambia and Zimbabwe, the frequency band 3 300-3 400 MHz is identified for the implementation of International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT). The use of this frequency band shall be in accordance with Resolution 223 (Rev.WRC-15). The use of the frequency band 3 300-3 400 MHz by IMT stations in the mobile service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, systems in the radiolocation service, and administrations wishing to implement IMT shall obtain the agreement of neighbouring countries to protect operations within the radiolocation service. This identification does not preclude the use of this frequency band by any application of the services to which it is allocated and does not establish priority in the Radio Regulations. (WRC-15)

**5.430** Additional allocation: in Azerbaijan, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the frequency band 3 300-3 400 MHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.430A** The allocation of the frequency band 3 400-3 600 MHz to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service is subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21. This frequency band is identified for International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT). This identification does not preclude the use of this frequency band by any application of the services to which it is allocated and does not establish priority

in the Radio Regulations. The provisions of Nos. **9.17** and **9.18** shall also apply in the coordination phase. Before an administration brings into use a (base or mobile) station of the mobile service in this frequency band, it shall ensure that the power flux-density (pfd) produced at 3 m above ground does not exceed  $-154.5 \text{ dB(W/(m}^2 \cdot 4 \text{ kHz))}$  for more than 20% of time at the border of the territory of any other administration. This limit may be exceeded on the territory of any country whose administration has so agreed. In order to ensure that the pfd limit at the border of the territory of any other administration is met, the calculations and verification shall be made, taking into account all relevant information, with the mutual agreement of both administrations (the administration responsible for the terrestrial station and the administration responsible for the earth station) and with the assistance of the Bureau if so requested. In case of disagreement, calculation and verification of the pfd shall be made by the Bureau, taking into account the information referred to above. Stations of the mobile service in the frequency band 3 400-3 600 MHz shall not claim more protection from space stations than that provided in Table **21-4** of the Radio Regulations (Edition of 2004). (WRC-15)

**5.431** *Additional allocation:* in Germany and Israel, the frequency band 3 400-3 475 MHz is also allocated to the amateur service on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.436** Use of the frequency band 4 200-4 400 MHz by stations in the aeronautical mobile (R) service is reserved exclusively for wireless avionics intra-communication systems that operate in accordance with recognized international aeronautical standards. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution **424 (WRC-15)**. (WRC-15)

**5.437** Passive sensing in the Earth exploration-satellite and space research services may be authorized in the frequency band 4 200-4 400 MHz on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.438** Use of the frequency band 4 200-4 400 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is reserved exclusively for radio altimeters installed on board aircraft and for the associated transponders on the ground. (WRC-15)

**5.440** The standard frequency and time signal-satellite service may be authorized to use the frequency 4 202 MHz for space-to-Earth transmissions and the frequency 6 427 MHz for Earth-to-space transmissions. Such transmissions shall be confined within the limits of  $\pm 2$  MHz of these frequencies, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.441** The use of the bands 4 500-4 800 MHz (space-to-Earth), 6 725-7 025 MHz (Earth-to-space) by the fixed-satellite service shall be in accordance with the provisions of Appendix **30B**. The use of the bands 10.7-10.95 GHz (space-to-Earth), 11.2-11.45 GHz (space-to-Earth) and 12.75-13.25 GHz (Earth-to-space) by geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service shall be in accordance with the provisions of Appendix **30B**. The use of the bands 10.7-10.95 GHz (space-to-Earth), 11.2-11.45 GHz (space-to-Earth) and 12.75-13.25 GHz (Earth-to-space) by a non-geostationary-satellite system in the fixed-satellite service is subject to application of the provisions of No. **9.12** for coordination with other non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service shall not claim protection from geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations, irrespective of the dates of receipt by the Bureau of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service and of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the geostationary-satellite networks, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service in the above bands shall be operated in such a way that any unacceptable interference that may occur during their operation shall be rapidly eliminated. (WRC-2000)

**5.442** In the frequency bands 4 825-4 835 MHz and 4 950-4 990 MHz, the allocation to the mobile service is restricted to the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service. In Region 2 (except Brazil, Cuba,

Guatemala, Mexico, Paraguay, Uruguay and Venezuela), and in Australia, the frequency band 4 825-4 835 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile service, limited to aeronautical mobile telemetry for flight testing by aircraft stations. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution **416 (WRC-07)** and shall not cause harmful interference to the fixed service. (WRC-15)

**5.443AA** In the frequency bands 5 000-5 030 MHz and 5 091-5 150 MHz, the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service is subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. The use of these bands by the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service is limited to internationally standardized aeronautical systems. (WRC-12)

**5.443B** In order not to cause harmful interference to the microwave landing system operating above 5 030 MHz, the aggregate power flux-density produced at the Earth's surface in the frequency band 5 030-5 150 MHz by all the space stations within any radionavigation-satellite service system (space-to-Earth) operating in the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz shall not exceed  $-124.5$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in a 150 kHz band. In order not to cause harmful interference to the radio astronomy service in the frequency band 4 990-5 000 MHz, radionavigation-satellite service systems operating in the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz shall comply with the limits in the frequency band 4 990-5 000 MHz defined in Resolution **741 (Rev.WRC-15)**. (WRC-15)

**5.443C** The use of the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz by the aeronautical mobile (R) service is limited to internationally standardized aeronautical systems. Unwanted emissions from the aeronautical mobile (R) service in the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz shall be limited to protect RNSS system downlinks in the adjacent 5 010-5 030 MHz band. Until such time that an appropriate value is established in a relevant ITU-R Recommendation, the e.i.r.p. density limit of 75 dBW/MHz in the frequency band 5 010-5 030 MHz for any AM(R)S station unwanted emission should be used. (WRC-12)

**5.443D** In the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz, the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. The use of this frequency band by the aeronautical mobile-satellite (R) service is limited to internationally standardized aeronautical systems. (WRC-12)

**5.444** The frequency band 5 030-5 150 MHz is to be used for the operation of the international standard system (microwave landing system) for precision approach and landing. In the frequency band 5 030-5 091 MHz, the requirements of this system shall have priority over other uses of this frequency band. For the use of the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz, No. **5.444A** and Resolution **114 (Rev.WRC-15)** apply. (WRC-15)

**5.444A** The use of the allocation to the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) in the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service and is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. The use of the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz by feeder links of non-geostationary satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service shall be subject to application of Resolution **114 (Rev.WRC-15)**. Moreover, to ensure that the aeronautical radionavigation service is protected from harmful interference, coordination is required for feeder-link earth stations of the non-geostationary satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service which are separated by less than 450 km from the territory of an administration operating ground stations in the aeronautical radionavigation service. (WRC-15)

**5.444B** The use of the frequency band 5 091-5 150 MHz by the aeronautical mobile service is limited to:

– systems operating in the aeronautical mobile (R) service and in accordance with international aeronautical standards, limited to surface applications at airports. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution **748 (Rev.WRC-15)**;

– aeronautical telemetry transmissions from aircraft stations (see No. **1.83**) in accordance with Resolution **418 (Rev.WRC-15)**. (WRC-15)

**5.446** *Additional allocation:* in the countries listed in No. **5.369**, the frequency band 5 150-5 216 MHz is also allocated to the radiodetermination-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. In Region 2 (except in Mexico), the frequency band is also allocated to the radiodetermination-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis. In Regions 1 and 3, except those countries listed in No. **5.369** and Bangladesh, the frequency band is also allocated to the radiodetermination-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a secondary basis. The use by the radiodetermination-satellite service is limited to feeder links in conjunction with the radiodetermination-satellite service operating in the frequency bands 1 610-1 626.5 MHz and/or 2 483.5-2 500 MHz. The total power fluxdensity at the Earth's surface shall in no case exceed  $-159$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 4 kHz band for all angles of arrival. (WRC-15)

**5.446A** The use of the bands 5 150-5 350 MHz and 5 470-5 725 MHz by the stations in the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service shall be in accordance with Resolution **229 (Rev.WRC-12)**. (WRC-12)

**5.446B** In the band 5 150-5 250 MHz, stations in the mobile service shall not claim protection from earth stations in the fixed-satellite service. No. **5.43A** does not apply to the mobile service with respect to fixed-satellite service earth stations. (WRC-03)

**5.446C** *Additional allocation:* in Region 1 (except in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Sudan, South Sudan and Tunisia) and in Brazil, the band 5 150-5 250 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical mobile service on a primary basis, limited to aeronautical telemetry transmissions from aircraft stations (see No. **1.83**), in accordance with Resolution **418 (WRC-07)**. These stations shall not claim protection from other stations operating in accordance with Article 5. No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-12)

**5.447** *Additional allocation:* in Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, Israel, Lebanon, the Syrian Arab Republic and Tunisia, the band 5 150-5 250 MHz is also allocated to the mobile service, on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. In this case, the provisions of Resolution **229 (Rev.WRC-12)** do not apply. (WRC-12)

**5.447A** The allocation to the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service and is subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**.

**5.447B** *Additional allocation:* the band 5 150-5 216 MHz is also allocated to the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis. This allocation is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service and is subject to provisions of No. **9.11A**. The power flux-density at the Earth's surface produced by space stations of the fixed-satellite service operating in the space-to-Earth direction in the band 5 150-5 216 MHz shall in no case exceed  $-164$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 4 kHz band for all angles of arrival.

**5.447C** Administrations responsible for fixed-satellite service networks in the band 5 150-5 250 MHz operated under Nos. **5.447A** and **5.447B** shall coordinate on an equal basis in accordance with No. **9.11A** with administrations responsible for non-geostationary-satellite networks operated under No. **5.446** and brought into use prior to 17 November 1995. Satellite networks operated under No. **5.446** brought into use after 17 November 1995 shall not claim protection from, and shall not cause harmful interference to, stations of the fixed-satellite service operated under Nos. **5.447A** and **5.447B**.

**5.447D** The allocation of the band 5 250-5 255 MHz to the space research service on a primary basis is limited to active spaceborne sensors. Other uses of the band by the space research service are on a secondary basis. (WRC-97)

**5.447F** In the frequency band 5 250-5 350 MHz, stations in the mobile service shall not claim protection from the radiolocation service, the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and the space research service (active). These services shall not impose on the mobile service more stringent protection criteria, based on system characteristics and interference criteria, than those stated in Recommendations ITU-R M.1638-0 and ITU-R RS.1632-0. (WRC-15)

**5.448** *Additional allocation:* in Azerbaijan, Kyrgyzstan, Romania and Turkmenistan, the band 5 250-5 350 MHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.448A** The Earth exploration-satellite (active) and space research (active) services in the frequency band 5 250-5 350 MHz shall not claim protection from the radiolocation service. No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-03)

**5.448B** The Earth exploration-satellite service (active) operating in the band 5 350-5 570 MHz and space research service (active) operating in the band 5 460-5 570 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to the aeronautical radionavigation service in the band 5 350-5 460 MHz, the radionavigation service in the band 5 460-5 470 MHz and the maritime radionavigation service in the band 5 470-5 570 MHz. (WRC-03)

**5.448C** The space research service (active) operating in the band 5 350-5 460 MHz shall not cause harmful interference to nor claim protection from other services to which this band is allocated. (WRC-03)

**5.448D** In the frequency band 5 350-5 470 MHz, stations in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, radar systems in the aeronautical radionavigation service operating in accordance with No. **5.449**. (WRC-03)

**5.449** The use of the band 5 350-5 470 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is limited to airborne radars and associated airborne beacons.

**5.450** *Additional allocation:* in Austria, Azerbaijan, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Kyrgyzstan, Romania, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 5 470-5 650 MHz is also allocated to the aeronautical radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.450A** In the frequency band 5 470-5 725 MHz, stations in the mobile service shall not claim protection from radiodetermination services. Radiodetermination services shall not impose on the mobile service more stringent protection criteria, based on system characteristics and interference criteria, than those stated in Recommendation ITU-R M.1638-0. (WRC-15)

**5.450B** In the frequency band 5 470-5 650 MHz, stations in the radiolocation service, except ground-based radars used for meteorological purposes in the band 5 600-5 650 MHz, shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, radar systems in the maritime radionavigation service. (WRC-03)

**5.451** *Additional allocation:* in the United Kingdom, the band 5 470-5 850 MHz is also allocated to the land mobile service on a secondary basis. The power limits specified in Nos. **21.2**, **21.3**, **21.4** and **21.5** shall apply in the band 5 725-5 850 MHz.

**5.452** Between 5 600 MHz and 5 650 MHz, ground-based radars used for meteorological purposes are authorized to operate on a basis of equality with stations of the maritime radionavigation service.

**5.453** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, China, Congo (Rep. of the), Korea (Rep. of), Côte d'Ivoire, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Gabon, Guinea, Equatorial Guinea, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Japan, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Madagascar, Malaysia, Niger, Nigeria, Oman, Uganda, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Singapore, Sri Lanka, Swaziland, Tanzania, Chad, Thailand, Togo, Viet Nam and Yemen, the band 5 650-5 850 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. In this case, the provisions of Resolution **229 (Rev.WRC-12)** do not apply. (WRC-12)

**5.454** *Different category of service:* in Azerbaijan, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the allocation of the band 5 670-5 725 MHz to the space research service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-12)

**5.455** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Cuba, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Kazakhstan, Moldova, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 5 670-5 850 MHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.457** In Australia, Burkina Faso, Cote d'Ivoire, Mali and Nigeria, the allocation to the fixed service in the bands 6 440-6 520 MHz (HAPS-to-ground direction) and 6 560-6 640 MHz (ground-to-HAPS direction) may also be used by gateway links for high-altitude platform stations (HAPS) within the territory of these countries. Such use is limited to operation in HAPS gateway links and shall not cause harmful interference to, and shall not claim protection from, existing services, and shall be in compliance with Resolution **150 (WRC-12)**. Existing services shall not be constrained in future development by HAPS gateway links. The use of HAPS gateway links in these bands requires explicit agreement with other administrations whose territories are located within 1 000 kilometres from the border of an administration intending to use the HAPS gateway links. (WRC-12)

**5.457A** In the frequency bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz, earth stations located on board vessels may communicate with space stations of the fixed-satellite service. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution **902 (WRC-03)**. In the frequency band 5 925-6 425 MHz, earth stations located on board vessels and communicating with space stations of the fixed-satellite service may employ transmit antennas with minimum diameter of 1.2 m and operate without prior agreement of any administration if located at least 330 km away from the low-water mark as officially recognized by the coastal State. All other provisions of Resolution **902 (WRC-03)** shall apply. (WRC-15)

**5.457B** In the frequency bands 5 925-6 425 MHz and 14-14.5 GHz, earth stations located on board vessels may operate with the characteristics and under the conditions contained in Resolution **902 (WRC-03)** in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Comoros, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Jordan, Kuwait, Libya, Morocco, Mauritania, Oman, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Sudan, Tunisia and Yemen, in the maritime mobile-satellite service on a secondary basis. Such use shall be in accordance with Resolution **902 (WRC-03)**. (WRC-15)

**5.458** In the band 6 425-7 075 MHz, passive microwave sensor measurements are carried out over the oceans. In the band 7 075-7 250 MHz, passive microwave sensor measurements are carried out. Administrations should bear in mind the needs of the Earth exploration-satellite (passive) and space research (passive) services in their future planning of the bands 6 425-7 025 MHz and 7 075-7 250 MHz.

**5.458A** In making assignments in the band 6 700-7 075 MHz to space stations of the fixed-satellite service, administrations are urged to take all practicable steps to protect spectral line observations of the radio astronomy service in the band 6 650-6 675.2 MHz from harmful interference from unwanted emissions.

**5.458B** The space-to-Earth allocation to the fixed-satellite service in the band 6 700-7 075 MHz is limited to feeder links for non-geostationary satellite systems of the mobile-satellite service and is

subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. The use of the band 6 700-7 075 MHz (space-to-Earth) by feeder links for non-geostationary satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service is not subject to No. **22.2**.

**5.459** *Additional allocation:* in the Russian Federation, the frequency bands 7 100-7 155 MHz and 7 190-7 235 MHz are also allocated to the space operation service (Earth-to-space) on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. In the frequency band 7 190-7 235 MHz, with respect to the Earth exploration satellite service (Earth-to-space), No. **9.21** does not apply. (WRC-15)

**5.460** No emissions from space research service (Earth-to-space) systems intended for deep space shall be effected in the frequency band 7 190-7 235 MHz. Geostationary satellites in the space research service operating in the frequency band 7 190-7 235 MHz shall not claim protection from existing and future stations of the fixed and mobile services and No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-15)

**5.460A** The use of the frequency band 7 190-7 250 MHz (Earth-to-space) by the Earth exploration-satellite service shall be limited to tracking, telemetry and command for the operation of spacecraft. Space stations operating in the Earth exploration-satellite service (Earth-to-space) in the frequency band 7 190-7 250 MHz shall not claim protection from existing and future stations in the fixed and mobile services, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. No. **9.17** applies. Additionally, to ensure protection of the existing and future deployment of fixed and mobile services, the location of earth stations supporting spacecraft in the Earth exploration-satellite service in non-geostationary orbits or geostationary orbit shall maintain a separation distance of at least 10 km and 50 km, respectively, from the respective border(s) of neighbouring countries, unless a shorter distance is otherwise agreed between the corresponding administrations. (WRC-15)

**5.460B** Space stations on the geostationary orbit operating in the Earth exploration-satellite service (Earth-to-space) in the frequency band 7 190-7 235 MHz shall not claim protection from existing and future stations of the space research service, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-15)

**5.461** *Additional allocation:* the bands 7 250-7 375 MHz (space-to-Earth) and 7 900-8 025 MHz (Earth-to-space) are also allocated to the mobile-satellite service on a primary basis, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**.

**5.461A** The use of the band 7 450-7 550 MHz by the meteorological-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is limited to geostationary-satellite systems. Non-geostationary meteorological-satellite systems in this band notified before 30 November 1997 may continue to operate on a primary basis until the end of their lifetime. (WRC-97)

**5.461AA** The use of the frequency band 7 375-7 750 MHz by the maritime mobile-satellite service is limited to geostationary-satellite networks. (WRC-15)

**5.461AB** In the frequency band 7 375-7 750 MHz, earth stations in the maritime mobile-satellite service shall not claim protection from, nor constrain the use and development of, stations in the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services. No. **5.43A** does not apply. (WRC-15)

**5.461B** The use of the band 7 750-7 900 MHz by the meteorological-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is limited to non-geostationary satellite systems. (WRC-12)

**5.462A** In Regions 1 and 3 (except for Japan), in the band 8 025-8 400 MHz, the Earth exploration-satellite service using geostationary satellites shall not produce a power flux-density in excess of the following values for angles of arrival ( $\theta$ ), without the consent of the affected administration:

-135 dB (W/m <sup>2</sup> ) in a 1 MHz band	for	0° ≤ θ < 5°
-135 + 0.5 (θ - 5) dB (W/ m <sup>2</sup> ) in a 1 MHz band	for	5° ≤ θ < 5°
-125 dB (W/ m <sup>2</sup> ) in a 1 MHz band	for	25° ≤ θ ≤ 90° (WRC-12)

**5.463** Aircraft stations are not permitted to transmit in the band 8 025-8 400 MHz. (WRC-97)

**5.465** In the space research service, the use of the band 8 400-8 450 MHz is limited to deep space.

**5.468** Additional allocation: in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, Burundi, Cameroon, China, Congo (Rep. of the), Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Gabon, Guyana, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Jamaica, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Nepal, Nigeria, Oman, Uganda, Pakistan, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Senegal, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, Swaziland, Chad, Togo, Tunisia and Yemen, the frequency band 8 500-8 750 MHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.469** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Lithuania, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Poland, Kyrgyzstan, the Czech Rep., Romania, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 8 500-8 750 MHz is also allocated to the land mobile and radionavigation services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.469A** In the band 8 550-8 650 MHz, stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and space research service (active) shall not cause harmful interference to, or constrain the use and development of, stations of the radiolocation service. (WRC-97)

**5.470** The use of the band 8 750-8 850 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is limited to airborne Doppler navigation aids on a centre frequency of 8 800 MHz.

**5.471** Additional allocation: in Algeria, Germany, Bahrain, Belgium, China, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, France, Greece, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Libya, the Netherlands, Qatar and Sudan, the frequency bands 8 825-8 850 MHz and 9 000-9 200 MHz are also allocated to the maritime radionavigation service, on a primary basis, for use by shore-based radars only. (WRC-15)

**5.472** In the bands 8 850-9 000 MHz and 9 200-9 225 MHz, the maritime radionavigation service is limited to shore-based radars.

**5.473** *Additional allocation:* in Armenia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Cuba, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Mongolia, Uzbekistan, Poland, Kyrgyzstan, Romania, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the bands 8 850-9 000 MHz and 9 200-9 300 MHz are also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.473A** In the band 9 000-9 200 MHz, stations operating in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, systems identified in No. **5.337** operating in the aeronautical radionavigation service, or radar systems in the maritime radionavigation service operating in this band on a primary basis in the countries listed in No. **5.471**. (WRC-07)

**5.474** In the band 9 200-9 500 MHz, search and rescue transponders (SART) may be used, having due regard to the appropriate ITU-R Recommendation (see also Article **31**).

**5.474A** The use of the frequency bands 9 200-9 300 MHz and 9 900-10 400 MHz by the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) is limited to systems requiring necessary bandwidth greater than 600 MHz that cannot be fully accommodated within the frequency band 9 300-9 900 MHz. Such use is subject to agreement to be obtained under No. **9.21** from Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Egypt, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Lebanon and Tunisia. An administration that has not replied under No. **9.52** is considered as not having agreed to the coordination request. In this case, the notifying administration of the satellite system operating in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) may request the assistance of the Bureau under Sub-Section IID of Article **9**. (WRC-15)

**5.474B** Stations operating in the Earth exploration-satellite (active) service shall comply with Recommendation ITU-R RS.2066-0. (WRC-15)

**5.474C** Stations operating in the Earth exploration-satellite (active) service shall comply with Recommendation ITU-R RS.2065-0. (WRC-15)

**5.474D** Stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations of the maritime radionavigation and radiolocation services in the frequency band 9 200-9 300 MHz, the radionavigation and radiolocation services in the frequency band 9 900-10 000 MHz and the radiolocation service in the frequency band 10.0-10.4 GHz. (WRC-15)

**5.475** The use of the band 9 300-9 500 MHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is limited to airborne weather radars and ground-based radars. In addition, ground-based radar beacons in the aeronautical radionavigation service are permitted in the band 9 300-9 320 MHz on condition that harmful interference is not caused to the maritime radionavigation service. (WRC-07)

**5.475A** The use of the band 9 300-9 500 MHz by the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and the space research service (active) is limited to systems requiring necessary bandwidth greater than 300 MHz that cannot be fully accommodated within the 9 500-9 800 MHz band. (WRC-07)

**5.475B** In the band 9 300-9 500 MHz, stations operating in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, radars operating in the radionavigation service in conformity with the Radio Regulations. Ground-based radars used for meteorological purposes have priority over other radiolocation uses. (WRC-07)

**5.476A** In the band 9 300-9 800 MHz, stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and space research service (active) shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, stations of the radionavigation and radiolocation services. (WRC-07)

**5.477** *Different category of service:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Guyana, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Jamaica, Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Liberia, Malaysia, Nigeria, Oman, Uganda, Pakistan, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Trinidad and Tobago, and Yemen, the allocation of the frequency band 9 800-10 000 MHz to the fixed service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-15)

**5.478** *Additional allocation:* in Azerbaijan, Mongolia, Kyrgyzstan, Romania, Turkmenistan and Ukraine, the band 9 800-10 000 MHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.478A** The use of the band 9 800-9 900 MHz by the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and the space research service (active) is limited to systems requiring necessary bandwidth greater than 500 MHz that cannot be fully accommodated within the 9 300-9 800 MHz band. (WRC-07)

**5.478B** In the band 9 800-9 900 MHz, stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and space research service (active) shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from stations of the fixed service to which this band is allocated on a secondary basis. (WRC-07)

**5.479** The band 9 975-10 025 MHz is also allocated to the meteorological-satellite service on a secondary basis for use by weather radars.

**5.481** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Germany, Angola, Brazil, China, Côte d'Ivoire, El Salvador, Ecuador, Spain, Guatemala, Hungary, Japan, Kenya, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, Paraguay, Peru, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Romania and Uruguay, the frequency band 10.45-

10.5 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. In Costa Rica, the frequency band 10.45-10.5 GHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.482** In the band 10.6-10.68 GHz, the power delivered to the antenna of stations of the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services shall not exceed  $-3$  dBW. This limit may be exceeded, subject to agreement obtained under No. **9.21**. However, in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Belarus, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Georgia, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Jordan, Libyan Arab Jamahiriya, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Mauritania, Moldova, Nigeria, Oman, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, Philippines, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Singapore, Tajikistan, Tunisia, Turkmenistan and Viet Nam, this restriction on the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service is not applicable. (WRC-07)

**5.482A** For sharing of the band 10.6-10.68 GHz between the Earth exploration-satellite (passive) service and the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services, Resolution **751 (WRC-07)** applies. (WRC-07)

**5.483** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Belarus, China, Colombia, Korea (Rep. of), Costa Rica, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Georgia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Mongolia, Qatar, Kyrgyzstan, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Yemen, the band 10.68-10.7 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. Such use is limited to equipment in operation by 1 January 1985. (WRC-12)

**5.484** In Region 1, the use of the band 10.7-11.7 GHz by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service.

**5.484A** The use of the bands 10.95-11.2 GHz (space-to-Earth), 11.45-11.7 GHz (space-to-Earth), 11.7-12.2 GHz (space-to-Earth) in Region 2, 12.2-12.75 GHz (space-to-Earth) in Region 3, 12.5-12.75 GHz (space-to-Earth) in Region 1, 13.75-14.5 GHz (Earth-to-space), 17.8-18.6 GHz (space-to-Earth), 19.7-20.2 GHz (space-to-Earth), 27.5-28.6 GHz (Earth-to-space), 29.5-30 GHz (Earth-to-space) by a non-geostationary-satellite system in the fixed-satellite service is subject to application of the provisions of No. **9.12** for coordination with other non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service shall not claim protection from geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations, irrespective of the dates of receipt by the Bureau of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service and of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the geostationary-satellite networks, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service in the above bands shall be operated in such a way that any unacceptable interference that may occur during their operation shall be rapidly eliminated. (WRC-2000)

**5.484B** Resolution **155 (WRC-15)** shall apply. (WRC-15)

**5.487** In the band 11.7-12.5 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, the fixed, fixed-satellite, mobile, except aeronautical mobile, and broadcasting services, in accordance with their respective allocations, shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, broadcasting-satellite stations operating in accordance with the Regions 1 and 3 Plan in Appendix **30**. (WRC-03)

**5.487A** *Additional allocation:* in Region 1, the band 11.7-12.5 GHz, in Region 2, the band 12.2-12.7 GHz and, in Region 3, the band 11.7-12.2 GHz, are also allocated to the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis, limited to non-geostationary systems and subject to application of the provisions of No. **9.12** for coordination with other non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service shall not claim protection from geostationary-satellite networks in the broadcasting-satellite service operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations, irrespective of the dates of receipt by the Bureau of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service and of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the geostationary-satellite networks, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. Non-geostationary-

satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service in the above bands shall be operated in such a way that any unacceptable interference that may occur during their operation shall be rapidly eliminated. (WRC-03)

**5.492** Assignments to stations of the broadcasting-satellite service which are in conformity with the appropriate regional Plan or included in the Regions 1 and 3 List in Appendix 30 may also be used for transmissions in the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth), provided that such transmissions do not cause more interference, or require more protection from interference, than the broadcasting-satellite service transmissions operating in conformity with the Plan or the List, as appropriate. (WRC-2000)

**5.494** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Cameroon, the Central African Rep., Congo (Rep. of the), Côte d'Ivoire, Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Gabon, Ghana, Guinea, Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Madagascar, Mali, Morocco, Mongolia, Nigeria, Oman, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Chad, Togo and Yemen, the frequency band 12.5-12.75 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.495** *Additional allocation:* in France, Greece, Monaco, Montenegro, Uganda, Romania and Tunisia, the frequency band 12.5-12.75 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.496** *Additional allocation:* in Austria, Azerbaijan, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan, the band 12.5-12.75 GHz is also allocated to the fixed service and the mobile, except aeronautical mobile, service on a primary basis. However, stations in these services shall not cause harmful interference to fixed-satellite service earth stations of countries in Region 1 other than those listed in this footnote. Coordination of these earth stations is not required with stations of the fixed and mobile services of the countries listed in this footnote. The power flux-density limit at the Earth's surface given in Table 21-4 of Article 21, for the fixed-satellite service shall apply on the territory of the countries listed in this footnote. (WRC-2000)

**5.497** The use of the band 13.25-13.4 GHz by the aeronautical radionavigation service is limited to Doppler navigation aids.

**5.498A** The Earth exploration-satellite (active) and space research (active) services operating in the band 13.25-13.4 GHz shall not cause harmful interference to, or constrain the use and development of, the aeronautical radionavigation service. (WRC-97)

**5.499A** The use of the frequency band 13.4-13.65 GHz by the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is limited to geostationary-satellite systems and is subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21 with respect to satellite systems operating in the space research service (space-to-space) to relay data from space stations in the geostationary-satellite orbit to associated space stations in non-geostationary satellite orbits for which advance publication information has been received by the Bureau by 27 November 2015. (WRC-15)

**5.499B** Administrations shall not preclude the deployment and operation of transmitting earth stations in the standard frequency and time signal-satellite service (Earth-to-space) allocated on a secondary basis in the frequency band 13.4-13.65 GHz due to the primary allocation to FSS (space-to-Earth). (WRC-15)

**5.499C** The allocation of the frequency band 13.4-13.65 GHz to the space research service on a primary basis is limited to:

- satellite systems operating in the space research service (space-to-space) to relay data from space stations in the geostationary-satellite orbit to associated space stations in non-geostationary satellite orbits for which advance publication information has been received by the Bureau by 27 November 2015,

- active space borne sensors,
- satellite systems operating in the space research service (space-to-Earth) to relay data from space stations in the geostationary-satellite orbit to associated earth stations.

Other uses of the frequency band by the space research service are on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.499D** In the frequency band 13.4-13.65 GHz, satellite systems in the space research service (space-to-Earth) and/or the space research service (space-to-space) shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from stations in the fixed, mobile, radiolocation and Earth exploration-satellite (active) services. (WRC-15)

**5.499E** In the frequency band 13.4-13.65 GHz, geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) shall not claim protection from space stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) operating in accordance with these Regulations, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. The provisions of No. **22.2** do not apply to the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) with respect to the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) in this frequency band. (WRC-15)

**5.500** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Gabon, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Madagascar, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Niger, Nigeria, Oman, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Singapore, Sudan, South Sudan, Chad and Tunisia, the frequency band 13.4-14 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. In Pakistan, the frequency band 13.4-13.75 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.501** *Additional allocation:* in Azerbaijan, Hungary, Japan, Kyrgyzstan, Romania and Turkmenistan, the band 13.4-14 GHz is also allocated to the radionavigation service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.501A** The allocation of the frequency band 13.65-13.75 GHz to the space research service on a primary basis is limited to active spaceborne sensors. Other uses of the frequency band by the space research service are on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.501B** In the band 13.4-13.75 GHz, the Earth exploration-satellite (active) and space research (active) services shall not cause harmful interference to, or constrain the use and development of, the radiolocation service. (WRC-97)

**5.502** In the band 13.75-14 GHz, an earth station of a geostationary fixed-satellite service network shall have a minimum antenna diameter of 1.2 m and an earth station of a non-geostationary fixed-satellite service system shall have a minimum antenna diameter of 4.5 m. In addition, the e.i.r.p., averaged over one second, radiated by a station in the radiolocation or radionavigation services shall not exceed 59 dBW for elevation angles above 2° and 65 dBW at lower angles. Before an administration brings into use an earth station in a geostationary-satellite network in the fixed-satellite service in this band with an antenna diameter smaller than 4.5 m, it shall ensure that the power flux-density produced by this earth station does not exceed:

- –115 dB(W/(m<sup>2</sup> · 10 MHz)) for more than 1% of the time produced at 36 m above sea level at the low water mark, as officially recognized by the coastal State;
- –115 dB(W/(m<sup>2</sup> · 10 MHz)) for more than 1% of the time produced 3 m above ground at the border of the territory of an administration deploying or planning to deploy land mobile radars in this band, unless prior agreement has been obtained.

For earth stations within the fixed-satellite service having an antenna diameter greater than or equal to 4.5 m, the e.i.r.p. of any emission should be at least 68 dBW and should not exceed 85 dBW. (WRC-03)

**5.503** In the band 13.75-14 GHz, geostationary space stations in the space research service for which information for advance publication has been received by the Bureau prior to 31 January 1992 shall operate on an equal basis with stations in the fixed-satellite service; after that date, new geostationary space stations in the space research service will operate on a secondary basis. Until those geostationary space stations in the space research service for which information for advance publication has been received by the Bureau prior to 31 January 1992 cease to operate in this band:

- in the band 13.77-13.78 GHz, the e.i.r.p. density of emissions from any earth station in the fixed-satellite service operating with a space station in geostationary-satellite orbit shall not exceed:
  - i)  $4.7D \square 28$  dB(W/40 kHz), where  $D$  is the fixed-satellite service earth station antenna diameter (m) for antenna diameters equal to or greater than 1.2 m and less than 4.5 m;
  - ii)  $49.2 \square 20 \log(D/4.5)$  dB(W/40 kHz), where  $D$  is the fixed-satellite service earth station antenna diameter (m) for antenna diameters equal to or greater than 4.5 m and less than 31.9 m;
  - iii) 66.2 dB(W/40 kHz) for any fixed-satellite service earth station for antenna diameters (m) equal to or greater than 31.9 m;
  - iv) 56.2 dB(W/4 kHz) for narrow-band (less than 40 kHz of necessary bandwidth) fixed-satellite service earth station emissions from any fixed-satellite service earth station having an antenna diameter of 4.5 m or greater;
- the e.i.r.p. density of emissions from any earth station in the fixed-satellite service operating with a space station in non-geostationary-satellite orbit shall not exceed 51 dBW in the 6 MHz band from 13.772 to 13.778 GHz.

Automatic power control may be used to increase the e.i.r.p. density in these frequency ranges to compensate for rain attenuation, to the extent that the power flux-density at the fixed-satellite service space station does not exceed the value resulting from use by an earth station of an e.i.r.p. meeting the above limits in clear-sky conditions. (WRC-03)

**5.504** The use of the band 14-14.3 GHz by the radionavigation service shall be such as to provide sufficient protection to space stations of the fixed-satellite service.

**5.504A** In the band 14-14.5 GHz, aircraft earth stations in the secondary aeronautical mobile-satellite service may also communicate with space stations in the fixed-satellite service. The provisions of Nos. **5.29**, **5.30** and **5.31** apply. (WRC-03)

**5.504B** Aircraft earth stations operating in the aeronautical mobile-satellite service in the frequency band 14-14.5 GHz shall comply with the provisions of Annex 1, Part C of Recommendation ITU-R M.1643-0, with respect to any radio astronomy station performing observations in the 14.47-14.5 GHz frequency band located on the territory of Spain, France, India, Italy, the United Kingdom and South Africa. (WRC-15)

**5.504C** In the frequency band 14-14.25 GHz, the power flux-density produced on the territory of the countries of Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Botswana, Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, Guinea, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Kuwait, Nigeria, Oman, the Syrian Arab Republic and Tunisia by any aircraft earth station in the aeronautical mobile-satellite service shall not exceed the limits given in Annex 1, Part B of Recommendation ITU-R M.1643-0, unless otherwise specifically agreed by the affected administration(s). The provisions of this footnote in no way derogate the obligations of the aeronautical mobile-satellite service to operate as a secondary service in accordance with No. **5.29**. (WRC-15)

**5.505** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Botswana, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, China, Congo (Rep. of the), Korea (Rep. of), Djibouti, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates,

Gabon, Guinea, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Oman, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Swaziland, Chad, Viet Nam and Yemen, the frequency band 14-14.3 GHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.506** The band 14-14.5 GHz may be used, within the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space), for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service, subject to coordination with other networks in the fixed-satellite service. Such use of feeder links is reserved for countries outside Europe.

**5.506A** In the band 14-14.5 GHz, ship earth stations with an e.i.r.p. greater than 21 dBW shall operate under the same conditions as earth stations located on board vessels, as provided in Resolution **902 (WRC-03)**. This footnote shall not apply to ship earth stations for which the complete Appendix 4 information has been received by the Bureau prior to 5 July 2003. (WRC-03)

**5.506B** Earth stations located on board vessels communicating with space stations in the fixed-satellite service may operate in the frequency band 14-14.5 GHz without the need for prior agreement from Cyprus and Malta, within the minimum distance given in Resolution **902 (WRC-03)** from these countries. (WRC-15)

**5.508** *Additional allocation:* in Germany, France, Italy, Libya, The Former Yugoslav Rep. of Macedonia and the United Kingdom, the band 14.25-14.3 GHz is also allocated to the fixed service on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.508A** In the frequency band 14.25-14.3 GHz, the power flux-density produced on the territory of the countries of Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Botswana, China, Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, France, Guinea, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Italy, Kuwait, Nigeria, Oman, the Syrian Arab Republic, the United Kingdom and Tunisia by any aircraft earth station in the aeronautical mobile-satellite service shall not exceed the limits given in Annex 1, Part B of Recommendation ITU-R M.1643-0, unless otherwise specifically agreed by the affected administration(s). The provisions of this footnote in no way derogate the obligations of the aeronautical mobile-satellite service to operate as a secondary service in accordance with No. **5.29**. (WRC-15)

**5.509A** In the frequency band 14.3-14.5 GHz, the power flux-density produced on the territory of the countries of Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Botswana, Cameroon, China, Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, France, Gabon, Guinea, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Italy, Kuwait, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, the Syrian Arab Republic, the United Kingdom, Sri Lanka, Tunisia and Viet Nam by any aircraft earth station in the aeronautical mobile-satellite service shall not exceed the limits given in Annex 1, Part B of Recommendation ITU-R M.1643-0, unless otherwise specifically agreed by the affected administration(s). The provisions of this footnote in no way derogate the obligations of the aeronautical mobile-satellite service to operate as a secondary service in accordance with No. **5.29**. (WRC-15)

**5.509B** The use of the frequency bands 14.5-14.75 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **163 (WRC-15)** and 14.5-14.8 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **164 (WRC-15)** by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) not for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service is limited to geostationary-satellites. (WRC-15)

**5.509C** For the use of the frequency bands 14.5-14.75 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **163 (WRC-15)** and 14.5-14.8 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **164 (WRC-15)** by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) not for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service, the fixed-satellite service earth stations shall have a minimum antenna diameter of 6 m and a maximum power spectral density of -44.5 dBW/Hz at the input of the antenna. The earth stations shall be notified at known locations on land. (WRC-15)

**5.509D** Before an administration brings into use an earth station in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) not for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service in the frequency bands 14.5-14.75 GHz (in countries listed in Resolution **163 (WRC-15)**) and 14.5-14.8 GHz (in countries listed in Resolution **164 (WRC-15)**), it shall ensure that the power flux-density produced by this earth station does not exceed  $-151.5 \text{ dB(W/(m}^2 \cdot 4 \text{ kHz))}$  produced at all altitudes from 0 m to 19 000 m above sea level at 22 km seaward from all coasts, defined as the low-water mark, as officially recognized by each coastal State. (WRC-15)

**5.509E** In the frequency bands 14.50-14.75 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **163 (WRC-15)** and 14.50-14.8 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **164 (WRC-15)**, the location of earth stations in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) not for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service shall maintain a separation distance of at least 500 km from the border(s) of other countries unless shorter distances are explicitly agreed by those administrations. No. **9.17** does not apply. When applying this provision, administrations should consider the relevant parts of these Regulations and the latest relevant ITU-R Recommendations. (WRC-15)

**5.509F** In the frequency bands 14.50-14.75 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **163 (WRC-15)** and 14.50-14.8 GHz in countries listed in Resolution **164 (WRC-15)**, earth stations in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) not for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service shall not constrain the future deployment of the fixed and mobile services. (WRC-15)

**5.509G** The frequency band 14.5-14.8 GHz is also allocated to the space research service on a primary basis.

However, such use is limited to the satellite systems operating in the space research service (Earth-to-space) to relay data to space stations in the geostationary-satellite orbit from associated earth stations. Stations in the space research service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations in the fixed and mobile services and in the fixed satellite service limited to feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service and associated space operations functions using the guardbands under Appendix **30A** and feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service in Region 2. Other uses of this frequency band by the space research service are on a secondary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.510** Except for use in accordance with Resolution **163 (WRC-15)** and Resolution **164 (WRC-15)**, the use of the frequency band 14.5-14.8 GHz by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service. This use is reserved for countries outside Europe. Uses other than feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service are not authorized in Regions 1 and 2 in the frequency band 14.75-14.8 GHz. (WRC-15)

**5.511** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Cameroon, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Guinea, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Kuwait, Lebanon, Oman, Pakistan, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic and Somalia, the band 15.35-15.4 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a secondary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.511A** Use of the frequency band 15.43-15.63 GHz by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links of non-geostationary systems in the mobile-satellite service, subject to coordination under No. **9.11A**. (WRC-15)

**5.511C** Stations operating in the aeronautical radionavigation service shall limit the effective e.i.r.p. in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R S.1340-0. The minimum coordination distance required to protect the aeronautical radionavigation stations (No. **4.10** applies) from harmful interference from feeder-link earth stations and the maximum e.i.r.p. transmitted towards the local horizontal plane by a feeder-link earth station shall be in accordance with Recommendation ITU-R S.1340-0. (WRC-15)

**5.511E** In the frequency band 15.4-15.7 GHz, stations operating in the radiolocation service shall not cause harmful interference to, or claim protection from, stations operating in the aeronautical radionavigation service. (WRC-12)

**5.511F** In order to protect the radio astronomy service in the frequency band 15.35-15.4 GHz, radiolocation stations operating in the frequency band 15.4-15.7 GHz shall not exceed the power flux-density level of 156 dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in a 50 MHz bandwidth in the frequency band 15.35-15.4 GHz, at any radio astronomy observatory site for more than 2 per cent of the time. (WRC-12)

**5.512** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Austria, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, Congo (Rep. of the), Egypt, El Salvador, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Finland, Guatemala, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Montenegro, Nepal, Nicaragua, Niger, Oman, Pakistan, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Chad, Togo and Yemen, the frequency band 15.7-17.3 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-15)

**5.513** *Additional allocation:* in Israel, the band 15.7-17.3 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. These services shall not claim protection from or cause harmful interference to services operating in accordance with the Table in countries other than those included in No. **5.512**.

**5.513A** Spaceborne active sensors operating in the band 17.2-17.3 GHz shall not cause harmful interference to, or constrain the development of, the radiolocation and other services allocated on a primary basis. (WRC-97)

**5.514** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Cameroon, El Salvador, the United Arab Emirates, Guatemala, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Italy, Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Libya, Lithuania, Nepal, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Oman, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, Qatar, Kyrgyzstan, Sudan and South Sudan, the frequency band 17.3-17.7 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a secondary basis. The power limits given in Nos. **21.3** and **21.5** shall apply. (WRC-15)

**5.515** In the band 17.3-17.8 GHz, sharing between the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) and the broadcasting-satellite service shall also be in accordance with the provisions of § 1 of Annex 4 of Appendix **30A**.

**5.516** The use of the band 17.3-18.1 GHz by geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service. The use of the band 17.3-17.8 GHz in Region 2 by systems in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to geostationary satellites. For the use of the band 17.3-17.8 GHz in Region 2 by feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service in the band 12.2-12.7 GHz, see Article **11**. The use of the bands 17.3-18.1 GHz (Earth-to-space) in Regions 1 and 3 and 17.8-18.1 GHz (Earth-to-space) in Region 2 by non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service is subject to application of the provisions of No. **9.12** for coordination with other non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service shall not claim protection from geostationary-satellite networks in the fixed-satellite service operating in accordance with the Radio Regulations, irrespective of the dates of receipt by the Bureau of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service and of the complete coordination or notification information, as appropriate, for the geostationary-satellite networks, and No. **5.43A** does not apply. Non-geostationary-satellite systems in the fixed-satellite service in the above bands shall be operated in such a way that any unacceptable interference that may occur during their operation shall be rapidly eliminated. (WRC-2000)

**5.516A** In the band 17.3-17.7 GHz, earth stations of the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) in Region 1 shall not claim protection from the broadcasting-satellite service feeder-link earth stations

operating under Appendix **30A**, nor put any limitations or restrictions on the locations of the broadcasting-satellite service feeder-link earth stations anywhere within the service area of the feeder link. (WRC-03)

**5.516B** The following bands are identified for use by high-density applications in the fixed-satellite service:

17.3-17.7 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 1,
18.3-19.3 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 2,
19.7-20.2 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in all Regions,
39.5-40 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 1,
40-40.5 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in all Regions,
40.5-42 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 2,
47.5-47.9 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 1,
48.2-48.54 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 1,
49.44-50.2 GHz	(space-to-Earth) in Region 1,
and	
27.5-27.82 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in Region 1,
28.35-28.45 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in Region 2,
28.45-28.94 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in all Regions,
28.94-29.1 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in Region 2 and 3,
29.25-29.46 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in Region 2,
29.46-30 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in all Regions,
48.2-50.2 GHz	(Earth-to-space) in Region 2.

This identification does not preclude the use of these bands by other fixed-satellite service applications or by other services to which these bands are allocated on a co-primary basis and does not establish priority in these Radio Regulations among users of the bands. Administrations should take this into account when considering regulatory provisions in relation to these bands. See Resolution **143 (WRC-03)\***. (WRC-03)

**5.517** In Region 2, use of the fixed-satellite (space-to-Earth) service in the band 17.7-17.8 GHz shall not cause harmful interference to nor claim protection from assignments in the broadcasting-satellite service operating in conformity with the Radio Regulations. (WRC-07)

**5.519** *Additional allocation:* the bands 18-18.3 GHz in Region 2 and 18.1-18.4 GHz in Regions 1 and 3 are also allocated to the meteorological-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis. Their use is limited to geostationary satellites. (WRC-07)

**5.520** The use of the band 18.1-18.4 GHz by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to feeder links of geostationary-satellite systems in the broadcasting-satellite service. (WRC-2000)

**5.521** *Alternative allocation:* in the United Arab Emirates and Greece, the frequency band 18.1-18.4 GHz is allocated to the fixed, fixed-satellite (space-to-Earth) and mobile services on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). The provisions of No. **5.519** also apply. (WRC-15)

**5.522A** The emissions of the fixed service and the fixed-satellite service in the band 18.6-18.8 GHz are limited to the values given in Nos. **21.5A** and **21.16.2**, respectively. (WRC-2000)

\* *Note by the Secretariat:* This Resolution was revised by WRC-07.

**5.522B** The use of the band 18.6-18.8 GHz by the fixed-satellite service is limited to geostationary systems and systems with an orbit of apogee greater than 20 000 km. (WRC-2000)

**5.522C** In the band 18.6-18.8 GHz, in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, the Libyan Arab Jamahiriya, Jordan, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, Tunisia and Yemen, fixed-service systems in operation at the date of entry into force of the Final Acts of WRC-2000 are not subject to the limits of No. **21.5A**. (WRC-2000)

**5.523A** The use of the bands 18.8-19.3 GHz (space-to-Earth) and 28.6-29.1 GHz (Earth-to-space) by geostationary and non-geostationary fixed-satellite service networks is subject to the application of the provisions of No. **9.11A** and No. **22.2** does not apply. Administrations having geostationary-satellite networks under coordination prior to 18 November 1995 shall cooperate to the maximum extent possible to coordinate pursuant to No. **9.11A** with non-geostationary-satellite networks for which notification information has been received by the Bureau prior to that date, with a view to reaching results acceptable to all the parties concerned. Non-geostationary-satellite networks shall not cause unacceptable interference to geostationary fixed-satellite service networks for which complete Appendix 4 notification information is considered as having been received by the Bureau prior to 18 November 1995. (WRC-97)

**5.523B** The use of the band 19.3-19.6 GHz (Earth-to-space) by the fixed-satellite service is limited to feeder links for non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service. Such use is subject to the application of the provisions of No. **9.11A**, and No. **22.2** does not apply.

**5.523C** No. **22.2** shall continue to apply in the bands 19.3-19.6 GHz and 29.1-29.4 GHz, between feeder links of non-geostationary mobile-satellite service networks and those fixed-satellite service networks for which complete Appendix 4 coordination information, or notification information, is considered as having been received by the Bureau prior to 18 November 1995. (WRC-97)

**5.523D** The use of the band 19.3-19.7 GHz (space-to-Earth) by geostationary fixed-satellite service systems and by feeder links for non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service is subject to the application of the provisions of No. **9.11A**, but not subject to the provisions of No. **22.2**. The use of this band for other non-geostationary fixed-satellite service systems, or for the cases indicated in Nos. **5.523C** and **5.523E**, is not subject to the provisions of No. **9.11A** and shall continue to be subject to Articles 9 (except No. **9.11A**) and 11 procedures, and to the provisions of No. **22.2**. (WRC-97)

**5.523E** No. **22.2** shall continue to apply in the bands 19.6-19.7 GHz and 29.4-29.5 GHz, between feeder links of non-geostationary mobile-satellite service networks and those fixed-satellite service networks for which complete Appendix 4 coordination information, or notification information, is considered as having been received by the Bureau by 21 November 1997. (WRC-97)

**5.524 Additional allocation:** in Afghanistan, Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, China, Congo (Rep. of the), Costa Rica, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Gabon, Guatemala, Guinea, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Nepal, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Chad, Togo and Tunisia, the frequency band 19.7-21.2 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. This additional use shall not impose any limitation on the power flux density of space stations in the fixed-satellite service in the frequency band 19.7-21.2 GHz and of space stations in the mobile-satellite service in the frequency band 19.7-20.2 GHz where the allocation to the mobile-satellite service is on a primary basis in the latter frequency band. (WRC-15)

**5.525** In order to facilitate interregional coordination between networks in the mobile-satellite and fixed-satellite services, carriers in the mobile-satellite service that are most susceptible to

interference shall, to the extent practicable, be located in the higher parts of the bands 19.7-20.2 GHz and 29.5-30 GHz.

**5.526** In the bands 19.7-20.2 GHz and 29.5-30 GHz in Region 2, and in the bands 20.1-20.2 GHz and 29.9-30 GHz in Regions 1 and 3, networks which are both in the fixed-satellite service and in the mobile-satellite service may include links between earth stations at specified or unspecified points or while in motion, through one or more satellites for point-to-point and point-to-multipoint communications.

**5.527** In the bands 19.7-20.2 GHz and 29.5-30 GHz, the provisions of No. **4.10** do not apply with respect to the mobile-satellite service.

**5.527A** The operation of earth stations in motion communicating with the FSS is subject to Resolution 156 (WRC-15).

**5.528** The allocation to the mobile-satellite service is intended for use by networks which use narrow spot-beam antennas and other advanced technology at the space stations. Administrations operating systems in the mobile-satellite service in the band 19.7-20.1 GHz in Region 2 and in the band 20.1-20.2 GHz shall take all practicable steps to ensure the continued availability of these bands for administrations operating fixed and mobile systems in accordance with the provisions of No. **5.524**.

**5.530A** Unless otherwise agreed between the administrations concerned, any station in the fixed or mobile services of an administration shall not produce a power flux-density in excess of  $-120.4$  dB ( $W/(m^2 \cdot MHz)$ ) at 3 m above the ground of any point of the territory of any other administration in Regions 1 and 3 for more than 20% of the time. In conducting the calculations, administrations should use the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R P.452 (see also the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R BO.1898). (WRC-15)

**5.530B** In the band 21.4-22 GHz, in order to facilitate the development of the broadcasting-satellite service, administrations in Regions 1 and 3 are encouraged not to deploy stations in the mobile service and are encouraged to limit the deployment of stations in the fixed service to point-to-point links. (WRC-12)

**5.530D** See Resolution **555 (WRC-12)**. (WRC-12)

**5.532** The use of the band 22.21-22.5 GHz by the Earth exploration-satellite (passive) and space research (passive) services shall not impose constraints upon the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services.

**5.532A** The location of earth stations in the space research service shall maintain a separation distance of at least 54 km from the respective border(s) of neighbouring countries to protect the existing and future deployment of fixed and mobile services unless a shorter distance is otherwise agreed between the corresponding administrations. Nos. **9.17** and **9.18** do not apply. (WRC-12)

**5.532B** Use of the band 24.65-25.25 GHz in Region 1 and the band 24.65-24.75 GHz in Region 3 by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) is limited to earth stations using a minimum antenna diameter of 4.5 m. (WRC-12)

**5.533** The inter-satellite service shall not claim protection from harmful interference from airport surface detection equipment stations of the radionavigation service.

**5.535** In the band 24.75-25.25 GHz, feeder links to stations of the broadcasting-satellite service shall have priority over other uses in the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space). Such other uses shall protect and shall not claim protection from existing and future operating feeder-link networks to such broadcasting satellite stations.

**5.535A** The use of the band 29.1-29.5 GHz (Earth-to-space) by the fixed-satellite service is limited to geostationary-satellite systems and feeder links to non-geostationary-satellite systems in the mobile-satellite service. Such use is subject to the application of the provisions of No. **9.11A**, but not subject to the provisions of No. **22.2**, except as indicated in Nos. **5.523C** and **5.523E** where such use is not subject to the provisions of No. **9.11A** and shall continue to be subject to Articles **9** (except No. **9.11A**) and **11** procedures, and to the provisions of No. **22.2**. (WRC-97)

**5.536** Use of the 25.25-27.5 GHz band by the inter-satellite service is limited to space research and Earth exploration-satellite applications, and also transmissions of data originating from industrial and medical activities in space.

**5.536A** Administrations operating earth stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service or the space research service shall not claim protection from stations in the fixed and mobile services operated by other administrations. In addition, earth stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service or in the space research service should be operated taking into account the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R SA.1862. (WRC-12)

**5.536B** In Saudi Arabia, Austria, Bahrain, Belgium, Brazil, China, Korea (Rep. of), Denmark, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Estonia, Finland, Hungary, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Ireland, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Lithuania, Moldova, Norway, Oman, Uganda, Pakistan, the Philippines, Poland, Portugal, the Syrian Arab Republic, Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Slovakia, the Czech Rep., Romania, the United Kingdom, Singapore, Sweden, Tanzania, Turkey, Viet Nam and Zimbabwe, earth stations operating in the Earth exploration-satellite service in the frequency band 25.5-27 GHz shall not claim protection from, or constrain the use and deployment of, stations of the fixed and mobile services. (WRC-15)

**5.536C** In Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Botswana, Brazil, Cameroon, Comoros, Cuba, Djibouti, Egypt, United Arab Emirates, Estonia, Finland, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Israel, Jordan, Kenya, Kuwait, Lithuania, Malaysia, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, Qatar, Syrian Arab Republic, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Tanzania, Tunisia, Uruguay, Zambia and Zimbabwe, earth stations operating in the space research service in the band 25.5-27 GHz shall not claim protection from, or constrain the use and deployment of, stations of the fixed and mobile services. (WRC-12)

**5.537** Space services using non-geostationary satellites operating in the inter-satellite service in the band 27-27.5 GHz are exempt from the provisions of No. **22.2**.

**5.537A** In Bhutan, Cameroon, Korea (Rep. of), the Russian Federation, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Japan, Kazakhstan, Malaysia, Maldives, Mongolia, Myanmar, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, the Philippines, Kyrgyzstan, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Sudan, Sri Lanka, Thailand and Viet Nam, the allocation to the fixed service in the band 27.9-28.2 GHz may also be used by high altitude platform stations (HAPS) within the territory of these countries. Such use of 300 MHz of the fixed-service allocation by HAPS in the above countries is further limited to operation in the HAPS-to-ground direction and shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, other types of fixed-service systems or other co-primary services. Furthermore, the development of these other services shall not be constrained by HAPS. See Resolution **145 (Rev.WRC-12)**. (WRC-12)

**5.538** *Additional allocation:* the bands 27.500-27.501 GHz and 29.999-30.000 GHz are also allocated to the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a primary basis for the beacon transmissions intended for up-link power control. Such space-to-Earth transmissions shall not exceed an equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) of +10 dBW in the direction of adjacent satellites on the geostationary-satellite orbit. (WRC-07)

**5.539** The band 27.5-30 GHz may be used by the fixed-satellite service (Earth-to-space) for the provision of feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service.

**5.540** *Additional allocation:* the band 27.501-29.999 GHz is also allocated to the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) on a secondary basis for beacon transmissions intended for up-link power control.

**5.541** In the band 28.5-30 GHz, the earth exploration-satellite service is limited to the transfer of data between stations and not to the primary collection of information by means of active or passive sensors.

**5.541A** Feeder links of non-geostationary networks in the mobile-satellite service and geostationary networks in the fixed-satellite service operating in the band 29.1-29.5 GHz (Earth-to-space) shall employ uplink adaptive power control or other methods of fade compensation, such that the earth station transmissions shall be conducted at the power level required to meet the desired link performance while reducing the level of mutual interference between both networks. These methods shall apply to networks for which Appendix 4 coordination information is considered as having been received by the Bureau after 17 May 1996 and until they are changed by a future competent world radiocommunication conference. Administrations submitting Appendix 4 information for coordination before this date are encouraged to utilize these techniques to the extent practicable. (WRC-2000)

**5.542** *Additional allocation:* in Algeria, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Brunei Darussalam, Cameroon, China, Congo (Rep. of the), Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Guinea, India, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Japan, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Nepal, Oman, Pakistan, Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Sri Lanka and Chad, the band 29.5-31 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a secondary basis. The power limits specified in Nos. **21.3** and **21.5** shall apply. (WRC-12)

**5.543** The band 29.95-30 GHz may be used for space-to-space links in the Earth exploration-satellite service for telemetry, tracking, and control purposes, on a secondary basis.

**5.543A** In Bhutan, Cameroon, Korea (Rep. of), the Russian Federation, India, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Japan, Kazakhstan, Malaysia, Maldives, Mongolia, Myanmar, Uzbekistan, Pakistan, the Philippines, Kyrgyzstan, the Dem. People's Rep. of Korea, Sudan, Sri Lanka, Thailand and Viet Nam, the allocation to the fixed service in the frequency band 31-31.3 GHz may also be used by systems using high altitude platform stations (HAPS) in the ground-to-HAPS direction. The use of the frequency band 31-31.3 GHz by systems using HAPS is limited to the territory of the countries listed above and shall not cause harmful interference to, nor claim protection from, other types of fixed-service systems, systems in the mobile service and systems operated under No. **5.545**. Furthermore, the development of these services shall not be constrained by HAPS. Systems using HAPS in the frequency band 31-31.3 GHz shall not cause harmful interference to the radio astronomy service having a primary allocation in the frequency band 31.3-31.8 GHz, taking into account the protection criterion as given in the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R RA.769. In order to ensure the protection of satellite passive services, the level of unwanted power density into a HAPS ground station antenna in the frequency band 31.3-31.8 GHz shall be limited to  $-106$  dB(W/MHz) under clear-sky conditions, and may be increased up to  $-100$  dB(W/MHz) under rainy conditions to mitigate fading due to rain, provided the effective impact on the passive satellite does not exceed the impact under clear-sky conditions. See Resolution **145 (Rev.WRC-12)**. (WRC-15)

**5.544** In the band 31-31.3 GHz the power flux-density limits specified in Article **21**, Table **21-4** shall apply to the space research service.

**5.545** *Different category of service:* in Armenia, Georgia, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the allocation of the band 31-31.3 GHz to the space research service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-12)

**5.546** *Different category of service:* in Saudi Arabia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Spain, Estonia, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Hungary, Iran (Islamic

Republic of), Israel, Jordan, Lebanon, Moldova, Mongolia, Oman, Uzbekistan, Poland, the Syrian Arab Republic, Kyrgyzstan, Romania, the United Kingdom, South Africa, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Turkey, the allocation of the band 31.5-31.8 GHz to the fixed and mobile, except aeronautical mobile, services is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-12)

**5.547** The bands 31.8-33.4 GHz, 37-40 GHz, 40.5-43.5 GHz, 51.4-52.6 GHz, 55.78-59 GHz and 64-66 GHz are available for high-density applications in the fixed service (see Resolution **75 (WRC-2000)**). Administrations should take this into account when considering regulatory provisions in relation to these bands. Because of the potential deployment of high-density applications in the fixed-satellite service in the bands 39.5-40 GHz and 40.5-42 GHz (see No. **5.516B**), administrations should further take into account potential constraints to high-density applications in the fixed service, as appropriate. (WRC-07)

**5.547A** Administrations should take practical measures to minimize the potential interference between stations in the fixed service and airborne stations in the radionavigation service in the 31.8-33.4 GHz band, taking into account the operational needs of the airborne radar systems. (WRC-2000)

**5.548** In designing systems for the inter-satellite service in the band 32.3-33 GHz, for the radionavigation service in the band 32-33 GHz, and for the space research service (deep space) in the band 31.8-32.3 GHz, administrations shall take all necessary measures to prevent harmful interference between these services, bearing in mind the safety aspects of the radionavigation service (see Recommendation **707**). (WRC-03)

**5.549** *Additional allocation:* in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Egypt, the United Arab Emirates, Gabon, Indonesia, Iran (Islamic Republic of), Iraq, Israel, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Malaysia, Mali, Morocco, Mauritania, Nepal, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, the Philippines, Qatar, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Dem. Rep. of the Congo, Singapore, Somalia, Sudan, South Sudan, Sri Lanka, Togo, Tunisia and Yemen, the band 33.4-36 GHz is also allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis. (WRC-12)

**5.549A** In the band 35.5-36.0 GHz, the mean power flux-density at the Earth's surface, generated by any spaceborne sensor in the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) or space research service (active), for any angle greater than  $0.8^\circ$  from the beam centre shall not exceed  $-73.3$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in this band. (WRC-03)

**5.550** *Different category of service:* in Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, the Russian Federation, Georgia, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Turkmenistan, the allocation of the band 34.7-35.2 GHz to the space research service is on a primary basis (see No. **5.33**). (WRC-12)

**5.550A** For sharing of the band 36-37 GHz between the Earth exploration-satellite (passive) service and the fixed and mobile services, Resolution **752 (WRC-07)** shall apply. (WRC-07)

**5.551H** The equivalent power flux-density (epfd) produced in the frequency band 42.5-43.5 GHz by all space stations in any non-geostationary-satellite system in the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth), or in the broadcasting satellite service operating in the frequency band 42-42.5 GHz, shall not exceed the following values at the site of any radio astronomy station for more than 2% of the time:  $-230$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in 1 GHz and  $-246$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 500 kHz of the frequency band 42.5-43.5 GHz at the site of any radio astronomy station registered as a single-dish telescope; and  $-209$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 500 kHz of the frequency band 42.5-43.5 GHz at the site of any radio astronomy station registered as a very long baseline interferometry station.

These epfd values shall be evaluated using the methodology given in Recommendation ITU-R S.1586-1 and the reference antenna pattern and the maximum gain of an antenna in the radio astronomy service given in Recommendation ITU-R RA.1631-0 and shall apply over the whole sky and for elevation angles higher than the minimum operating angle  $\theta_{min}$  of the radiotelescope (for which a default value of  $5^\circ$  should be adopted in the absence of notified information).

These values shall apply at any radio astronomy station that either:

– was in operation prior to 5 July 2003 and has been notified to the Bureau before 4 January 2004;

Or

– was notified before the date of receipt of the complete Appendix 4 information for coordination or notification, as appropriate, for the space station to which the limits apply.

Other radio astronomy stations notified after these dates may seek an agreement with administrations that have authorized the space stations. In Region 2, Resolution 743 (WRC-03) shall apply. The limits in this footnote may be exceeded at the site of a radio astronomy station of any country whose administration so agreed. (WRC-15)

**5.551I** The power flux-density in the band 42.5-43.5 GHz produced by any geostationary space station in the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth), or the broadcasting-satellite service operating in the 42-42.5 GHz band, shall not exceed the following values at the site of any radio astronomy station:

–137 dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in 1 GHz and –153 dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 500 kHz of the 42.5-43.5 GHz band at the site of any radio astronomy station registered as a single-dish telescope; and

–116 dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 500 kHz of the 42.5-43.5 GHz band at the site of any radio astronomy station registered as a very long baseline interferometry station.

These values shall apply at the site of any radio astronomy station that either:

– was in operation prior to 5 July 2003 and has been notified to the Bureau before 4 January 2004; or

– was notified before the date of receipt of the complete Appendix 4 information for coordination or notification, as appropriate, for the space station to which the limits apply.

Other radio astronomy stations notified after these dates may seek an agreement with administrations that have authorized the space stations. In Region 2, Resolution 743 (WRC-03) shall apply. The limits in this footnote may be exceeded at the site of a radio astronomy station of any country whose administration so agreed. (WRC-03)

**5.552** The allocation of the spectrum for the fixed-satellite service in the bands 42.5-43.5 GHz and 47.2-50.2 GHz for Earth-to-space transmission is greater than that in the band 37.5-39.5 GHz for space-to-Earth transmission in order to accommodate feeder links to broadcasting satellites. Administrations are urged to take all practicable steps to reserve the band 47.2-49.2 GHz for feeder links for the broadcasting-satellite service operating in the band 40.5-42.5 GHz.

**5.552A** The allocation to the fixed service in the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz is designated for use by high altitude platform stations. The use of the bands 47.2-47.5 GHz and 47.9-48.2 GHz is subject to the provisions of Resolution 122 (Rev.WRC-07). (WRC-07)

**5.553** In the bands 43.5-47 GHz and 66-71 GHz, stations in the land mobile service may be operated subject to not causing harmful interference to the space radiocommunication services to which these bands are allocated (see No. 5.43). (WRC-2000)

**5.554** In the bands 43.5-47 GHz, 66-71 GHz, 95-100 GHz, 123-130 GHz, 191.8-200 GHz and 252-265 GHz, satellite links connecting land stations at specified fixed points are also authorized when used in conjunction with the mobile-satellite service or the radionavigation-satellite service. (WRC-2000)

**5.554A** The use of the bands 47.5-47.9 GHz, 48.2-48.54 GHz and 49.44-50.2 GHz by the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) is limited to geostationary satellites. (WRC-03)

**5.555** *Additional allocation:* the band 48.94-49.04 GHz is also allocated to the radio astronomy service on a primary basis. (WRC-2000)

**5.555B** The power flux-density in the band 48.94-49.04 GHz produced by any geostationary space station in the fixed-satellite service (space-to-Earth) operating in the bands 48.2-48.54 GHz and 49.44-50.2 GHz shall not exceed  $-151.8$  dB(W/m<sup>2</sup>) in any 500 kHz band at the site of any radio astronomy station. (WRC-03)

**5.556** In the bands 51.4-54.25 GHz, 58.2-59 GHz and 64-65 GHz, radio astronomy observations may be carried out under national arrangements. (WRC-2000)

**5.556A** Use of the bands 54.25-56.9 GHz, 57-58.2 GHz and 59-59.3 GHz by the inter-satellite service is limited to satellites in the geostationary-satellite orbit. The single-entry power flux-density at all altitudes from 0 km to 1 000 km above the Earth's surface produced by a station in the inter-satellite service, for all conditions and for all methods of modulation, shall not exceed  $-147$  dB(W/(m<sup>2</sup> . 100 MHz)) for all angles of arrival. (WRC-97)

**5.557A** In the band 55.78-56.26 GHz, in order to protect stations in the Earth exploration-satellite service (passive), the maximum power density delivered by a transmitter to the antenna of a fixed service station is limited to  $-26$  dB(W/MHz). (WRC-2000)

**5.558** In the bands 55.78-58.2 GHz, 59-64 GHz, 66-71 GHz, 122.25-123 GHz, 130-134 GHz, 167-174.8 GHz and 191.8-200 GHz, stations in the aeronautical mobile service may be operated subject to not causing harmful interference to the inter-satellite service (see No. **5.43**). (WRC-2000)

**5.558A** Use of the band 56.9-57 GHz by inter-satellite systems is limited to links between satellites in geostationary-satellite orbit and to transmissions from non-geostationary satellites in high-Earth orbit to those in low-Earth orbit. For links between satellites in the geostationary-satellite orbit, the single entry power flux-density at all altitudes from 0 km to 1 000 km above the Earth's surface, for all conditions and for all methods of modulation, shall not exceed  $-147$  dB(W/(m<sup>2</sup> . 100 MHz)) for all angles of arrival. (WRC-97)

**5.559** In the band 59-64 GHz, airborne radars in the radiolocation service may be operated subject to not causing harmful interference to the inter-satellite service (see No. **5.43**). (WRC-2000)

**5.559B** The use of the frequency band 77.5-78 GHz by the radiolocation service shall be limited to short-range radar for ground-based applications, including automotive radars. The technical characteristics of these radars are provided in the most recent version of Recommendation ITU-R M.2057. The provisions of No. **4.10** do not apply. (WRC-15)

**5.560** In the band 78-79 GHz radars located on space stations may be operated on a primary basis in the Earth exploration-satellite service and in the space research service.

**5.561** In the band 74-76 GHz, stations in the fixed, mobile and broadcasting services shall not cause harmful interference to stations of the fixed-satellite service or stations of the broadcasting-satellite service operating in accordance with the decisions of the appropriate frequency assignment planning conference for the broadcasting-satellite service. (WRC-2000)

**5.561A** The 81-81.5 GHz band is also allocated to the amateur and amateur-satellite services on a secondary basis. (WRC-2000)

**5.562** The use of the band 94-94.1 GHz by the Earth exploration-satellite (active) and space research (active) services is limited to spaceborne cloud radars. (WRC-97)

**5.562A** In the bands 94-94.1 GHz and 130-134 GHz, transmissions from space stations of the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) that are directed into the main beam of a radio astronomy antenna have the potential to damage some radio astronomy receivers. Space agencies operating the transmitters

and the radio astronomy stations concerned should mutually plan their operations so as to avoid such occurrences to the maximum extent possible. (WRC-2000)

**5.562B** In the bands 105-109.5 GHz, 111.8-114.25 GHz, 155.5-158.5 GHz and 217-226 GHz, the use of this allocation is limited to space-based radio astronomy only. (WRC-2000)

**5.562C** Use of the band 116-122.25 GHz by the inter-satellite service is limited to satellites in the geostationary-satellite orbit. The single-entry power flux-density produced by a station in the inter-satellite service, for all conditions and for all methods of modulation, at all altitudes from 0 km to 1 000 km above the Earth's surface and in the vicinity of all geostationary orbital positions occupied by passive sensors, shall not exceed  $-148 \text{ dB(W/(m}^2 \cdot \text{MHz))}$  for all angles of arrival. (WRC-2000)

**5.562E** The allocation to the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) is limited to the band 133.5-134 GHz. (WRC-2000)

**5.562F** In the band 155.5-158.5 GHz, the allocation to the Earth exploration-satellite (passive) and space research (passive) services shall terminate on 1 January 2018. (WRC-2000)

**5.562G** The date of entry into force of the allocation to the fixed and mobile services in the band 155.5-158.5 GHz shall be 1 January 2018. (WRC-2000)

**5.562H** Use of the bands 174.8-182 GHz and 185-190 GHz by the inter-satellite service is limited to satellites in the geostationary-satellite orbit. The single-entry power flux-density produced by a station in the inter-satellite service, for all conditions and for all methods of modulation, at all altitudes from 0 to 1 000 km above the Earth's surface and in the vicinity of all geostationary orbital positions occupied by passive sensors, shall not exceed  $-144 \text{ dB(W/(m}^2 \cdot \text{MHz))}$  for all angles of arrival. (WRC-2000)

**5.563A** In the bands 200-209 GHz, 235-238 GHz, 250-252 GHz and 265-275 GHz, ground-based passive atmospheric sensing is carried out to monitor atmospheric constituents. (WRC-2000)

**5.563B** The band 237.9-238 GHz is also allocated to the Earth exploration-satellite service (active) and the space research service (active) for spaceborne cloud radars only. (WRC-2000)

**5.565** The following frequency bands in the range 275-1 000 GHz are identified for use by administrations for passive service applications:

- radio astronomy service: 275-323 GHz, 327-371 GHz, 388-424 GHz, 426-442 GHz, 453-510 GHz, 623-711 GHz, 795-909 GHz and 926-945 GHz;
- Earth exploration-satellite service (passive) and space research service (passive): 275-286 GHz, 296-306 GHz, 313-356 GHz, 361-365 GHz, 369-392 GHz, 397-399 GHz, 409-411 GHz, 416-434 GHz, 439-467 GHz, 477-502 GHz, 523-527 GHz, 538-581 GHz, 611-630 GHz, 634-654 GHz, 657-692 GHz, 713-718 GHz, 729-733 GHz, 750-754 GHz, 771-776 GHz, 823-846 GHz, 850-854 GHz, 857-862 GHz, 866-882 GHz, 905-928 GHz, 951-956 GHz, 968-973 GHz and 985-990 GHz.

The use of the range 275-1 000 GHz by the passive services does not preclude use of this range by active services. Administrations wishing to make frequencies in the 275-1 000 GHz range available for active service applications are urged to take all practicable steps to protect these passive services from harmful interference until the date when the Table of Frequency Allocations is established in the above-mentioned 275-1 000 GHz frequency range.

All frequencies in the range 1 000-3 000 GHz may be used by both active and passive services. (WRC-12)

**7 List of frequency bands used for Maritime services**

Frequency Band	Frequency Used	Services
505-526.5 kHz	518 kHz	[Transmission of Maritime Safety Information (Appendix 15 of ITU RR) <sup>16</sup> (Meteorological, navigational and other urgent information)
2 173.5-2 190.5 kHz	2 182 kHz	Distress, Urgency and Safety communications (traffic) by radio telephony (voice) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	2 187, kHz	DSC Watchkeeping (Article 31) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
4 063-4 438 kHz		(Appendix 17) <sup>17</sup>
		(Appendix 17)
	4 125 kHz	Distress, Urgency and Safety communications (traffic) by radio telephony (voice) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	4 207.5 kHz	DSC watchkeeping (Article 31) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	4 369 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	4 375 kHz	Transmission of meteorological bulletins; notices to navigators; (Appendix 17)
	4 417 kHz	Coast Station duplex transmission of Channel 421.
6 200-6 525 kHz	6 203 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	6 215 kHz	Distress, Urgency and Safety communications (traffic) by radio telephony (voice) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	6 312 kHz	DSC watchkeeping (Article 31) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	6 504 kHz	(Appendix 17)
8 195-8 815 kHz	8 207 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	8 216 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	8 255 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	8 291 kHz	Distress, Urgency and Safety communications (traffic) by radio telephony (voice) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	8 731 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	8 740 kHz	Transmission of meteorological bulletins; notices to navigators; (Appendix 17)
	8 779 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	8 414.5 kHz	DSC watchkeeping (Article 31)
12 230-13 200 kHz	12 254 kHz	(Appendix 17)

<sup>16</sup> Only distress and safety communications are provided, with MSI and Medical Assistance at sea. All MF/HF public correspondence ceased as it was no longer commercially viable and sustainable. Other technologies accommodate this type of communications. (Satellite, GSM, Trunked radio networks, etc.).

<sup>17</sup> Public Correspondence facilities with effect from 1 September 2014 has been discontinued.

Frequency Band	Frequency Used	Services
	12 290 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	12 299 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	12 359 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	12 577 kHz	DSC watchkeeping (Article 31) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	13 101 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	13 146 kHz	Transmission of meteorological bulletins; notices to navigators; (Appendix 17)
16 360-17 410 kHz	16 381 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	16 420 kHz	Distress, Urgency and Safety communications (traffic) by radio telephony (voice) (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	16 456 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	16 537 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	16 804.5 kHz	DSC watchkeeping (Appendix 15 of ITU RR)
	17 263 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	17 338 kHz	(Appendix 17)

Frequency Band as per draft NRFP	Frequency Used	Services
22 000-22 855 kHz	22 009 kHz	ITU Appendix 17
	22 015 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	22 060 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	22 705 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	22 711 kHz	(Appendix 17)
	22 756 kHz	(Appendix 17)
154-156.4875 MHz	Several channels used within this range in accordance with Appendix 18 of the ITU RR  <b>Channel 2006 – 160.900 MHz</b>	APPENDIX 18 Channel 2006 allocated for Man Overboard Devices used for search and rescue operations. New AIS technologies.
156.7875-156.8125 MHz	Channel 16 in accordance with Appendix 18 of the ITU RR  <b>156.7750</b> <b>156.8250</b>	<b>Appendix 18.</b> <b>Mobile Satellite Earth to Space for long range AIS broadcasts (ship stations)</b>
156.8375-162.0250 MHz	Several channels used within this range in accordance with Appendix 18 of the ITU RR	

	Channel 28 in accordance with Appendix 18 of the ITU RR	<p><b>APPENDIX 18</b> services allocated: Coast Station Analogue Maritime Safety Information (MSI) transmissions using Simplex configurations - 01 to 05; and 60 to 65. Priority to digital transmissions as per Footnote w) from 1 January 2017. Protection of Channel 70 for DSC and Channel 16 distress communications, AIS1 (161.975MHz) and AIS2 (162.025) for navigational safety</p>
--	---	---

### Short Title

This document shall be called the “*National Radio Frequency Plan 2018*”

### Repeals

1. South African Re-Planning Exercise (SABRE 1) carried out in 1997 covering the revision of South African Bands (Band Plans) and Migration Strategies published in Notice 759 of 1997, covering the frequency ranges 20 MHz and 3.6 GHz, is hereby repealed.
2. South African Bands Re-Planning Exercises (SABRE II) carried out in 2001 addressing radio frequency spectrum above 3 GHz with the exception of those bands already addressed in SABRE I, published in notice number 1920 of 2001, is hereby repealed
3. The South African Table of Frequency Allocations 2004 which consolidated SABRE 1 and SABRE 2 in one plan covering the range 20MHz to 70 GHz, published in notice 1442 of 2004, is hereby repealed.
4. The National Radio Frequency Plan, published in notice 727 of 2010, is hereby repealed.
5. The National Radio Frequency Plan 2013 which updated National Radio Frequency Plan of 2010, published in Government Gazette number 36336 (notice 354 of 2013), is hereby repealed.

**NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATION****NOTICE 267 OF 2018**

**NEJAHMOGUL TECHNOLOGIES AND AGRIC SERVICES  
DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES  
AGRICULTURAL PRODUCT STANDARDS ACT, 1990 (ACT NO. 119 OF 1990)  
INSPECTION FEES**

In terms of section 3(1A)(a)(ii) of the Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act No. 119 of 1990), Nejahmogul Technologies and Agric Services, designated as an Assignee in terms of section 2 (3) of the said Act, hereby imposes the following inspection fees in respect of specified categories of products, which may be sold in the Republic of South Africa:

**1. Fees for Large Processing Facility (equal or more than 1 million units per annum)**

- Cost per Inspection visit = R5,052-00
- Travel @ R4-00/Km
- Cost of Laboratory testing:

	Fat	Moisture	Protein	pH value	Max Freeze point	Salt
Cost per test	R452	R168	R284	R126	R50	R340

**2. Fees for Importers**

- Cost per Inspection visit = R2,190-00
- Travel @ R4-00/Km
- Cost of Laboratory testing:

	Fat	Moisture	Protein	pH value	Max Freeze point	Salt
Cost per test	R452	R168	R284	R126	R50	R340

**3. Fees for Small Processing Facility (less than 1 million units per annum)**

- Cost per Unit Volume = R0-02 (all inclusive).

**4. Note:**

- All fees are exclusive of Vat
- Any service request outside normal working hours will be charged Normal Fee plus 20% (Normal hours are 07h00 to 16h00, Mondays to Fridays excluding Public Holidays)

**5. EFFECTIVE STARTING DATE FOR INSPECTIONS: 28/MAY/2018**

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 268 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT 1994, (ACT No. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended. These claims for the restitution of land rights have been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Western Cape. The particulars regarding this claim are as follows:

**Project Name** : Marney Family  
**Number of Claims** : 01  
**Area** : Simon's Town, City of Cape Town, Western Cape  
**Type of Claim** : Tenancy  
**Property** : As listed below

Ref. number	Claimant	Lodgement date	Property description	Current owner(s)
M1212	NG Marney	31/12/1998	Remainder Erf 988, Simon's Town	Pacific Paramount Prop PTY LTD

The Regional Land Claims Commission will investigate this claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course. Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 60 days from the publication of this notice, any comments/ information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commission: Western Cape  
 Private Bag X9163  
 Cape Town  
 8000

Tel: (021) 409-0300

Fax: (021) 424-5148

CHECKED.....

DATE.....19/3/2018

APPROVED.....

DATE.....2018/04/19

Mr. L.H Maphutha  
 Regional Land Claims Commissioner

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM****NOTICE 269 OF 2018****GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT No. 22 OF 1994)**

NOTICE IS HEREBY GIVEN IN TERMS OF SECTION 11(1) OF THE LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994), AS AMENDED. THIS CLAIM FOR THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS HAS BEEN SUBMITTED TO THE REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER FOR THE WESTERN CAPE. THE PARTICULARS REGARDING THIS CLAIM ARE AS FOLLOWS:

**REFERENCE NO:** KRK 6/2/3/A/17/89/0/23 (D756)

**DISPOSSESSED PARTIES:** VARIOUS TENANTS

**PROPERTY DESCRIPTION:** VARIOUS PRIVATE PROPERTIES IN THE TOWN OF CALEDON AND ERF 4031 CALEDON

**CAPACITY:** TENANCY

**CURRENT OWNERS:** VARIOUS PRIVATE OWNERS AND TSOGO SUN CALEDON PTY LTD

**DATE OF LODGEMENT:** 23 DECEMBER 1998

THE COMMISSION ON RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS WILL INVESTIGATE THIS CLAIM IN TERMS OF PROVISIONS OF THE ACT IN DUE COURSE. ANY PARTY WHO HAS AN INTEREST IN THE ABOVE-MENTIONED LAND IS HEREBY INVITED TO SUBMIT, WITHIN 60 DAYS FROM THE PUBLICATION OF THIS NOTICE, ANY COMMENTS / INFORMATION TO:

OFFICE OF THE REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER: WESTERN CAPE  
PRIVATE BAG X9163  
CAPE TOWN  
8000

TEL: 021- 409 0300  
FAX: 021 424 5146

MR. L.H. Maphutha  
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER

APPROVED:  .....

DATE: 2018/03/14 .....

CHECKED BY:  .....

DATE: 20/12/2017 .....

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 270 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT 1994, (ACT No. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended. This claim for the restitution of land rights has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Western Cape. The particulars regarding this claim are as follow:

**Project Name** : Hoosain Family Claim  
**Number of Claims** : 1  
**Areas** : Cape Town.  
**Properties** : As listed below  
**Date Submitted** : 23 September 1995.

REF NO	CLAIMANT INITIALS & SURNAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROPERTY EXTENTS
KRK6/2/3/A/13/3/2700/10 (H 1)	M.S Hoosain	Erf 8604 Zonnebloem, Cape Town.	707m <sup>2</sup>

The Regional Land Claims Commission will investigate this claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course. Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 60 days from the publication of this notice, any comments / information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commission: Western Cape  
 Private Bag X9163  
 Cape Town  
 8000

Tel: (021)409-0300  
 Fax: (021)424-5146

CHECKED.....

  
**MR B. MARS**  
**CHIEF RESTITUTION ADVISOR: LEGAL**  
 DATE 20/12/2017

APPROVED.....  


**MR L.H MAPHUTHA**  
**REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER**  
 DATE: 2018/02/20

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 271 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT 1994, (ACT No. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended. These claims for the restitution of land rights have been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Western Cape. The particulars regarding this claim are as follows:

**Project Name** : Lotters Family  
**Number of Claims** : 01  
**Area** : Simon's Town, City of Cape Town, Western Cape  
**Type of Claim** : Tenancy  
**Property** : As listed below

Ref. number	Claimant	Lodgement date	Property description	Current owner(s)
L560	EI Lotters	31/12/1998	Erf 528, Simon's Town	Municipality of Simon's Town

The Regional Land Claims Commission will investigate this claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course. Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 60 days from the publication of this notice, any comments/ information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commission: Western Cape  
 Private Bag X9163  
 Cape Town  
 8000

Tel: (021) 409-0300  
 Fax: (021) 424-5146

CHECKED.....

DATE..... 16/03/18

APPROVED.....

DATE..... 2018/04/19

Mr. L.H Maphutha  
 Regional Land Claims Commissioner

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 272 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT 1994, (ACT No. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended. These claims for the restitution of land rights have been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Western Cape. The particulars regarding this claim are as follows:

**Project Name** : Jaffa Family  
**Number of Claims** : 01  
**Area** : Simon's Town, City of Cape Town, Western Cape  
**Type of Claim** : Tenancy  
**Property** : As listed below

Ref. number	Claimant	Lodgement date	Property description	Current owner(s)
J484	E Jaffa	29/12/1998	Erf 1096, Simon's Town	National Government of the Republic of South Africa

The Regional Land Claims Commission will investigate this claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course. Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 60 days from the publication of this notice, any comments/ information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commission: Western Cape  
 Private Bag X9163  
 Cape Town  
 8000

Tel: (021) 409-0300  
 Fax: (021) 424-5146

CHECKED.....

DATE..... 16/03/2018

APPROVED.....

DATE ..... 2018/04/19

Mr. L. H. Maphutha  
 Regional Land Claims Commissioner

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 514 - PART 5**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 5 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 273 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT 1994, (ACT No. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended. These claims for the restitution of land rights have been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Western Cape. The particulars regarding this claim are as follows:

**Project Name** : Lotters Family  
**Number of Claims** : 01  
**Area** : Simon's Town, City of Cape Town, Western Cape  
**Type of Claim** : Tenancy  
**Property** : As listed below

Ref. number	Claimant	Lodgement date	Property description	Current owner(s)
L518	RT Lotters	31/12/1998	Erf 531, Simon's Town	Municipality of Simon's Town

The Regional Land Claims Commission will investigate this claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course. Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 60 days from the publication of this notice, any comments/ information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commission: Western Cape  
 Private Bag X9163  
 Cape Town  
 8000

Tel: (021) 409-0300  
 Fax: (021) 424-5146

CHECKED.....

DATE.....12/02/2018

APPROVED.....

DATE.....2018/04/19  
 Mr. L.H Maphutha  
 Regional Land Claims Commissioner

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 274 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT 1994, (ACT No. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED.**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended. These claims for the restitution of land rights have been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner for the Western Cape. The particulars regarding this claim are as follows:

**Project Name** : Smith Family  
**Number of Claims** : 01  
**Area** : Claremont, City of Cape Town, Western Cape  
**Type of Claim** : Tenancy  
**Property** : As listed below

Ref. number	Claimant	Lodgement date	Property description	Current owner(s)
S772	E Smith	23/11/1998	Erf 57957, Cape Town at Claremont	K2012150042 SOUTH AFRICA PTY LTD

The Regional Land Claims Commission will investigate this claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course. Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 60 days from the publication of this notice, any comments/ information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commission: Western Cape  
 Private Bag X9163  
 Cape Town  
 8000

Tel: (021) 409-0300  
 Fax: (021) 424-5146

CHECKED.....

APPROVED.....

DATE 2018/04/19

Mr. L.H Maphutha  
 Regional Land Claims Commissioner

DATE 08/03/2018

**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK  
NOTICE 275 OF 2018**

**Notice and Order of Forfeiture**

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Exchange Control Regulation 22B made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

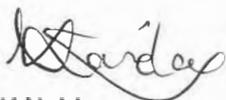
**Mr Reshard Pachkowie (Id number 7810175190086)(hereinafter referred to as the Respondent)**

of:

59 Lupin Avenue  
Ladysmith  
3370

**Be pleased to take notice that:**

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to the Governor or Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in me, in my capacity as a Deputy Governor of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeit to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 The Rand equivalent of USD70 000, being capital standing to the credit of the FirstRand Bank Limited special customer foreign currency account, which is linked to account number 62695834822, held in the name of the Respondent with the said Authorised Dealer, together with any interest thereon and/or accrual to such capital.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice and Order of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by depositing it into the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Exchange Control Regulation 22B, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 3 day of May 2018.



**K Naidoo  
Deputy Governor  
South African Reserve Bank**

**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK**  
**NOTICE 276 OF 2018**  
**Notice and Order of Forfeiture**

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Regulation 22B of the Regulations ("the Exchange Control Regulations") made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

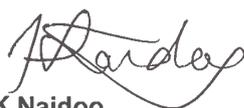
**Mr Christopher Letlotlo, identity number 8908125913083 (the "Respondent")**

of:

3655 Izindlebe Street  
Palm Ridge Ext 8  
Alberton  
1458

**Be pleased to take notice that:**

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to, *inter alia*, the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeited to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 Capital amount of R997 856-00, which stood to the credit of the Respondent in account number 1119 191 572, with Nedbank Limited, together with any interest thereon or any other accrual thereto.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by deposit of the proceeds thereof to the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Regulation 22B of the Exchange Control Regulations, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 14 day of May 2018.



**K Naidoo**  
**Deputy Governor**  
**South African Reserve Bank**

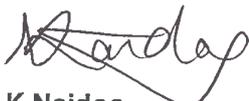
## Notice and Order of Forfeiture

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Regulation 22B of the Regulations ("the Exchange Control Regulations") made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

of: **Mr Tlhokomelo Shadrack Khumalo, identity number 9401125533084 (the "Respondent")**  
46 Mandiwane Street  
Tshiawelo  
1818

### Be pleased to take notice that:

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to, *inter alia*, the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeited to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 Capital amount of R997 781-86, which stood to the credit of the Respondent in account number 109 241 6765, with Nedbank Limited, together with any interest thereon or any other accrual thereto.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by deposit of the proceeds thereof to the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Regulation 22B of the Exchange Control Regulations, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 14 day of May 2018.



**K Naidoo**  
Deputy Governor  
South African Reserve Bank

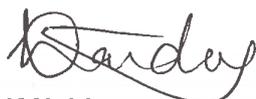
## Notice and Order of Forfeiture

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Regulation 22B of the Regulations ("the Exchange Control Regulations") made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

of: **Miss Refiloe Kolobe Makwela, identity number 9605060733083 (the "Respondent")**  
3127 Far East Bank  
Alexandra  
2090

### Be pleased to take notice that:

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to, *inter alia*, the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeited to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 Capital amount of R996 456-00, which stood to the credit of the Respondent in account number 1108 715 265, with Nedbank Limited, together with any interest thereon or any other accrual thereto.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by deposit of the proceeds thereof to the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Regulation 22B of the Exchange Control Regulations, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 14 day of May 2018.



**K Naidoo**  
Deputy Governor  
South African Reserve Bank

## Notice and Order of Forfeiture

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Regulation 22B of the Regulations ("the Exchange Control Regulations") made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

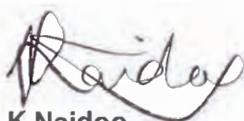
**Mr Tshidiso Mokotla, identity number 8404116140084 (the "Respondent")**

of:

290 D  
Vincent Road  
Meadowlands  
1852

### Be pleased to take notice that:

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to, *inter alia*, the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeited to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 Capital amount of R997 913-50, which stood to the credit of the Respondent in account number 1119701597, with Nedbank Limited, together with any interest thereon or any other accrual thereto.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by deposit of the proceeds thereof to the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Regulation 22B of the Exchange Control Regulations, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 14 day of May 2018.



**K Naidoo**  
Deputy Governor  
South African Reserve Bank

**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK****NOTICE 277 OF 2018****Notice and Order of Forfeiture**

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Regulation 22B of the Regulations ("the Exchange Control Regulations") made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

**Leadmore Trading Enterprise (Pty) Limited, registration number 2015/042631/07 (the "Respondent")**

of:

Shop C15  
Crown City  
Crown Mines  
2025

**Be pleased to take notice that:**

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to, *inter alia*, the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeited to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 Capital amount of R3 846 663-99, which stood to the credit of the Respondent in account number 56472, with SASFIN Bank Limited, together with any interest thereon or any other accrual thereto.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by deposit of the proceeds thereof to the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Regulation 22B of the Exchange Control Regulations, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 14 day of May 2018.



**K Naidoo**  
Deputy Governor  
South African Reserve Bank

**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK****NOTICE 278 OF 2018****Notice and Order of Forfeiture**

Notice of Forfeiture to the State of money in terms of the provisions of Regulation 22B of the Regulations ("the Exchange Control Regulations") made under Section 9 of the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 (Act No. 9 of 1933), as amended, as promulgated by Government Notice No. R.1111 of 1961-12-01 in respect of the money of:

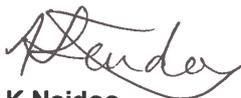
**Adam Commodities Distributers (Pty) Limited, registration number 2013/097731/07 (the "Respondent")**

of:

Building 1  
Prism Office Park  
Fourways  
2055

**Be pleased to take notice that:**

1. The Minister of Finance has, by virtue of the provisions of Regulation 22E of the Exchange Control Regulations delegated all the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by the provisions of the Exchange Control Regulations [with the exception of the functions and/or powers conferred upon the Treasury by Regulations 3(5) and (8), 20 and 22, but which exception does not include the functions and/or powers under Exchange Control Regulations 22A, 22B, 22C and 22D], and assigned the duties imposed thereunder on the Treasury, to, *inter alia*, the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank.
2. By virtue of the functions, powers and/or duties vested in the Deputy Governors of the South African Reserve Bank, in terms of the delegation and assignment of the functions, powers and/or duties referred to in 1 above, I hereby give notice of a decision to forfeit to the State the following money and I hereby declare and order forfeited to the State the following money, namely:
  - 2.1 Capital amount of R1 954 223-72, which stood to the credit of the Respondent in account number 42986, with Sasfin Bank Limited, together with any interest thereon or any other accrual thereto.
3. The date upon which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State is the date upon which this Notice of Forfeiture is published in this Gazette.
4. The money specified in 2 above shall be disposed of by deposit of the proceeds thereof to the National Revenue Fund.
5. This Notice also constitutes a written order, as contemplated in Regulation 22B of the Exchange Control Regulations, in terms of which the money specified in 2 above is hereby forfeited to the State.
6. Signed at Pretoria on this 14 day of MAY 2018.



**K Naidoo**  
**Deputy Governor**  
**South African Reserve Bank**

**DEPARTMENT OF TOURISM  
NOTICE 279 OF 2018**

TOURISM ACT, 2014 (ACT NO.3 OF 2014)

**PUBLICATION FOR COMMENTS: THE NATIONAL TOURISM GRADING  
SYSTEM FOR TOURISM**

I, Derek Hanekom, Minister of Tourism, acting in terms of section 28(1) of the Tourism Act, 2014, hereby publish the Draft National Grading System for tourism for public comments. The National Grading System for tourism is intended to maintain or enhance the standards and quality of tourism services, facilities and products.

Interested parties and organisations are invited to submit within thirty (30) days of publication of the notice in the gazette, written representations on the draft National Grading System for tourism to the following addresses:

By post: The Director-General  
Department of Tourism  
Private Bag X424  
Pretoria  
0001

Attention: Ms MM Setwaba

By hand: Ground Floor (Reception), Tourism House, 17 Trevenna Street,  
Sunnyside.

By email: [msetwaba@tourism.gov.za](mailto:msetwaba@tourism.gov.za)

By fax: 012- 444 7107

Any inquiries in connection with the draft National Grading System for tourism may be directed to Ms MM Setwaba at 012 444 6312.

Comments received after the closing date may not be considered.



**DEREK HANEKOM, MP MINISTER: TOURISM**



EFFECTIVE DATE	03 April 2017	TGCSA Grading Operations Processes	
REVISED DATE	02 March 2017	DOCUMENT REF	SAT6Q-PRO-04
NEXT REVIEW DATE	01 November 2017	BUSINESS UNIT	TGCSA
REVISION	21	REVIEWED BY	Thabile Mabizela
APPROVAL: Process Owner	Name: Darryl Erasmus	Signature:	Date:
PRE-APPROVAL : EXCO	1. Exco Member	2. Exco Member	3. Exco Member
Name	Darryl Erasmus	Tom Bouwer	Sthembiso Dlamini
Signature			
Date			

#### INDEX

1.	INTRODUCTION .....	4
1.1.	OBJECTIVES .....	4
1.2.	SCOPE .....	4
2.	ROLES .....	6
3.	GLOSSARY OF TERMS .....	7
3.1.	DEFINITIONS .....	7
3.2.	ABBREVIATIONS .....	8
4.	PROCESS DETAILS.....	9
4.1.	HIGH LEVEL GRADING PROCESS FLOW DIAGRAM.....	9
4.2.	NEW APPLICATION FOR GRADING .....	10
4.2.1.	NEW APPLICATION FOR GRADING - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	11
4.3.	PROCESS NEW APPLICATION INVOICE PAYMENTS.....	14
4.3.1.	PROCESS NEW APPLICATION INVOICE PAYMENTS - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	15
4.3.2.	NEW INVOICE DISCOUNTS AND FUNDING .....	16
4.3.3.	PAYMENT PROCESSING CONSIDERATIONS .....	17
4.4.	APPLICATION FOR RENEWAL OF GRADING .....	19
4.4.1.	APPLICATION FOR RENEWAL OF GRADING - PROCESS TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION.....	20
4.4.2.	INVOICE DISCOUNTS AND FUNDING .....	21
4.5.	PHYSICAL ASSESSMENT OF ESTABLISHMENT.....	22

4.5.1.	PHYSICAL ASSESSMENT OF ESTABLISHMENT - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION.....	23
4.6.	PRE-SCREENING OF MOTIVATION FROM ASSESSOR .....	27
4.6.1.	PRE- SCREENING OF MOTIVATION FROM ASSESSOR - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	28
4.7.	MONTHLY PROPERTY APPROVALS EXCO MEETING .....	31
4.7.1.	MONTHLY PROPERTY APPROVALS EXCO MEETING - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	32
4.8.	AWARDING CERTIFICATES AND PLAQUES.....	37
4.8.1.	AWARDING CERTIFICATES AND PLAQUES - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION.....	38
4.9.	PAYMENT OF ASSESSORS .....	40
4.9.1.	PAYMENT OF ASSESSORS - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION.....	41
4.10.	ESTABLISHMENT ASSESSMENT IMPACT MEASUREMENT .....	43
4.10.1.	ESTABLISHMENT ASSESSMENT IMPACT MEASUREMENT - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION.....	44
4.11.	MANAGE GRADING STANDARDS .....	45
4.11.1.	MANAGE GRADING STANDARDS - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	46
4.12.	CHANGE GRADING CATEGORY.....	48
4.12.1.	CHANGE GRADING CATEGORY - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	49
4.13.	ADHOC UPDATE OF ESTABLISHMENT DETAILS.....	50
4.13.1.	ADHOC UPDATE OF ESTABLISHMENT DETAILS - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	51
4.14.	CANCELLATION OF MEMBERSHIP .....	52
4.14.1.	CANCELLATION OF MEMBERSHIP - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	52
4.15.	RECALLING PLAQUES OF CANCELLED MEMBERSHIPS.....	54
4.15.1.	RECALLING PLAQUES OF CANCELLED MEMBERSHIPS - PROCESS TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	54
4.16.	REPLACE ISSUED PLAQUES.....	57
4.16.1.	REPLACE ISSUED PLAQUES - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	57
4.16.2.	INTERNAL CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT OF RETURNED PLAQUES.....	58
4.17.	CONDUCT ASSURANCE OF PLAQUE AND CERTIFICATE DELIVERY .....	59
4.17.1.	CONDUCT ASSURANCE OF PLAQUE AND CERTIFICATE DELIVERY - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	60
4.18.	QUERY EVALUATION STAGE .....	61
4.18.1.	QUERY EVALUATION STAGE - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	62
4.19.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 1 .....	64
4.19.1.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 1 - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	65
4.20.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 2 .....	66
4.20.1.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 2 - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	67
4.21.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 3 .....	68
4.21.1.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 3 - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	69
4.22.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 4 .....	70
4.22.1.	QUALITY PROTECTION ASSURANCE - STAGE 4 - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	71
4.23.	REFUND PROCESS.....	72
4.23.1.	REFUND PROCESS - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION.....	73
4.24.	DISCOUNT PROCESS .....	74
4.24.1.	DISCOUNT PROCESS - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	74
4.25.	FUNDING - PROCESS.....	75

4.25.1. FUNDING - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	75
4.26. CUSTOMER FEEDBACK .....	76
4.26.1. CUSTOMER FEEDBACK - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	77
4.27. ASSESSOR MOVEMENT .....	78
4.27.1. ASSESSOR MOVEMENT - TEXTUAL DESCRIPTION .....	79
5. PROCESS EXCEPTIONS AND DEVIATIONS .....	80
6. CONTROLS AND MEASURES .....	80
7. REFERENCES .....	82
7.1. APPLICABLE DOCUMENTS .....	82
7.2. APPLICABLE FORMS .....	82
8. APPENDICES.....	82

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA) was established in 2000 and has been mandated in accordance with South African legislation as the body that grades all categories of accommodation in South Africa. The aim of the TGCSA is to establish and maintain a recognisable and credible globally benchmarked system of quality assurance for accommodation and MESE (Meetings, Exhibitions and Special Events) experiences in South Africa. This document contains the definitions of the standard operating procedures for TGCSA operations.

### 1.1. Objectives

The objective this document is to:

- Clearly document the activities that make up the TGCSA Operations processes.
- Ensure that all the roles and teams involved in the TGCSA Operations processes are clearly defined.
- Ensure that there is a single reference of all the activities involved in the grading process.
- Define and illustrate process integration and system integration points.
- Clearly outline process logic and the related timelines which drive delivery expectations in line with the TGCSA and SA TOURISM mandates and deliverables.
- Provide a reference for process review, optimization and related system development for process automation.

### 1.2. Scope

This document includes processes that are standard operating processes for the TGCSA.

- In scope:
  - New Application for Grading
  - Application for Renewal of Grading
  - Process Invoice Payments
  - Physical Assessment of Establishment
  - Pre-Screening of Motivation from Assessor
  - Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting
  - Payment Assessors
  - Award Certificates and Plaques
  - Recall Issued Plaques
  - Replace Plaques
  - Establishment Assessment Impact Measurement
  - Manage Grading Standards
  - Ad hoc Update of Establishment Details
  - Change Grading Category
  - Cancellation Membership
  - Quality Protection Assurance
  - Refund process
  - Discount and funding process
  - Customer feedback processes

- Assessor Movement
- Out of Scope:
  - Grading Council (formerly Awards Committee) Process.

### 1.3. Business Rule

For properties to achieve an accolade for recognition, all listed requirements must be met. Achieving an accolade allows the establishment to carry the TGCSA approved icon for the accolade on marketing collateral. Properties that have been awarded accolades will form an integral part of TGCSA website and search criteria.

The recommended accolades for implementation are as follows:

- Pet friendly;
- Hunting;
- Cycling friendly;
- Golfing;
- Wine tourism;
- Family friendly;
- Wedding venue;
- Birding;
- Medical care;
- Resort;
- Holistic wellness;
- Off road activities;
- Conference facilities;
- Hiking;
- Equestrian;
- Water sports;
- Responsible tourism;
- Spa and beauty.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

**2. ROLES**

Provide Descriptions of key roles

Role	Definition
Accolades	Accolades is a recognition given to star graded properties that have distinguished features that appeal to particular markets.
Assessor	Individuals that are certified to conduct grading assessments at Establishments.
Quality Assurance Sub Committee	The Quality Assurance Sub Committee is the body of industry experts that oversee the work done by the Tourism Grading Council of South Africa, and provide insight and guidance where required.
Chief Quality Assurance Officer	Managing executive to TGCSA, oversees the entire TGCSA portfolio.
Provincial Master Assessor	This role oversees and manages Assessors contracted to TGCSA.
Quality Protection Officer	The person responsible for designing and co-ordinating systems to address illegal and false advertising of stars as it becomes known.
SA Tourism Finance Team	The Team responsible for the handling of all financial transactions of the TGCSA.  The Finance team includes the following roles: <b>Finance Manager, Accountant, Accounts Receivable Clerks, and Accounts Payable Clerk.</b>
TGCSA Marketing Team	This team is responsible for the management of all marketing and communications activities, such as brand communication, corporate communication including PR, TGCSA events, management of marketing of external agencies. This team is also responsible for the overall production and distribution of marketing collateral including plaques and certificates issued to graded Establishments and accredited grading assessor toolkits.  The team further manages the customer feedback line: <a href="mailto:feedback@tourismgrading.co.za">feedback@tourismgrading.co.za</a> , through the Client Liaison Officer (CLO) whose role is to monitor and respond to emails or phone calls, management of feedback received on graded establishments, assist travelling public with inquires in relation to graded establishments and provide monthly reporting.  The team consists of the following roles:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

	<b>Marketing and communications Manager, Marketing assistant and Client Liaison Officer.</b>
<b>TGCSA Operations Team</b>	<p>This is the team responsible for the main activities of the TGCSA including the processing of grading applications, the management of data exceptions at super user access level, the management of the TGCSA reported Establishment numbers, the management of the Assessor portfolio numbers, and the management of Assessors contracted to TGCSA.</p> <p>The team consists of the following roles:</p> <p><b>Operations Manager, Assistant Operations Manager and the Provincial Master Assessors</b></p>

### 3. GLOSSARY OF TERMS

#### 3.1. Definitions

Definition of terms used in the document.

Term	Definition
<b>Dispensation</b>	<p>Dispensation gives permission to a property not to have a certain minimum requirement due to relevant reasons agreed to by the Grading Council.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primarily only Establishments that are new to the should be requesting dispensations.</li> <li>Existing Establishments that have memberships which are up for review can request dispensations if the Assessor assigned to the Establishment has changed.</li> </ul>
<b>Grace Period</b>	<p>A Grace period is time given to the property (new application or application for renewal) in order to assist them in implementing the required requirement to completely meet the quality standard being applied for.</p> <p>Any grace period will not have an impact or change expiry date of properties. Regardless of grace period granted, invoices will still continue to generate in terms of the business rules (Renewal invoices - in the month of 90 days before expiry date; New invoices - on the first day of integration after the approval of the new application once Grace Period has been closed)</p>
<b>Grading</b>	<p>The quality rating assigned to an Establishment by a TGCSA Accredited Assessor. Graded Properties are awarded the official TGCSA stars ranging from 1 star to 5 stars in the category in which the grading was applied for.</p>

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

**3.2. Abbreviations**

Provide Descriptions Acronyms used in the document

Abbreviation	Meaning
Board	SA TOURISM Board Of Directors
Board-Sub Committee	TGCSA Quality Assurance Sub Committee Members
BU	Business Unit
BUA	Business Unit Manager
C6	The following designations apply: CEO, COO, CFO, CMO, CQAO, CCBO
CCBO	Chief Convention Bureau Officer
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
CFO	Chief Financial Officer
CLO	Client Liaison Officer
COO	Chief Operating Officer
Cx	Cancellation
CQAO	Chief Quality Assurance Officer
DOA	Delegation Of Authority
IA	Illegal Advertising
MCM	TGCSA Marketing and Communications Manager
MER	Minimum Entry Requirements
OM	TGCSA Operations Manager
PMA	Provincial Master Assessor
Grading System	Quality in Tourism
Grading System-IA	Quality in Tourism - Illegal Advertising Module
QPA	Quality Protection Assurance
RFO	Return For Order

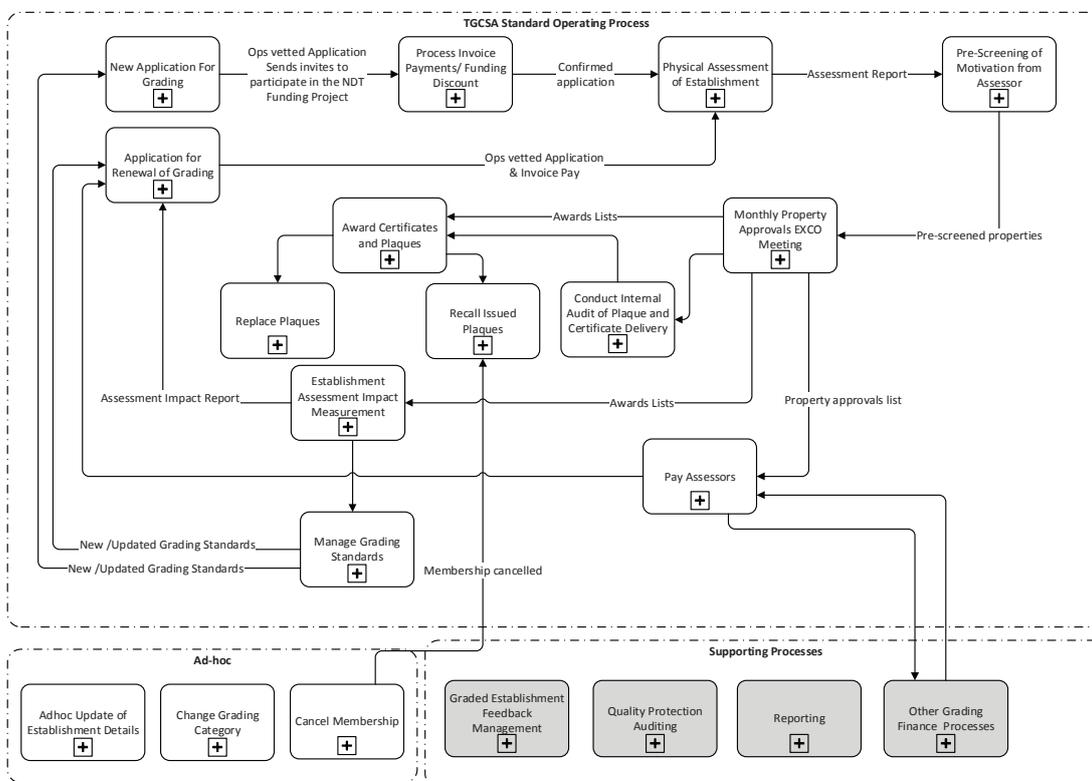
Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

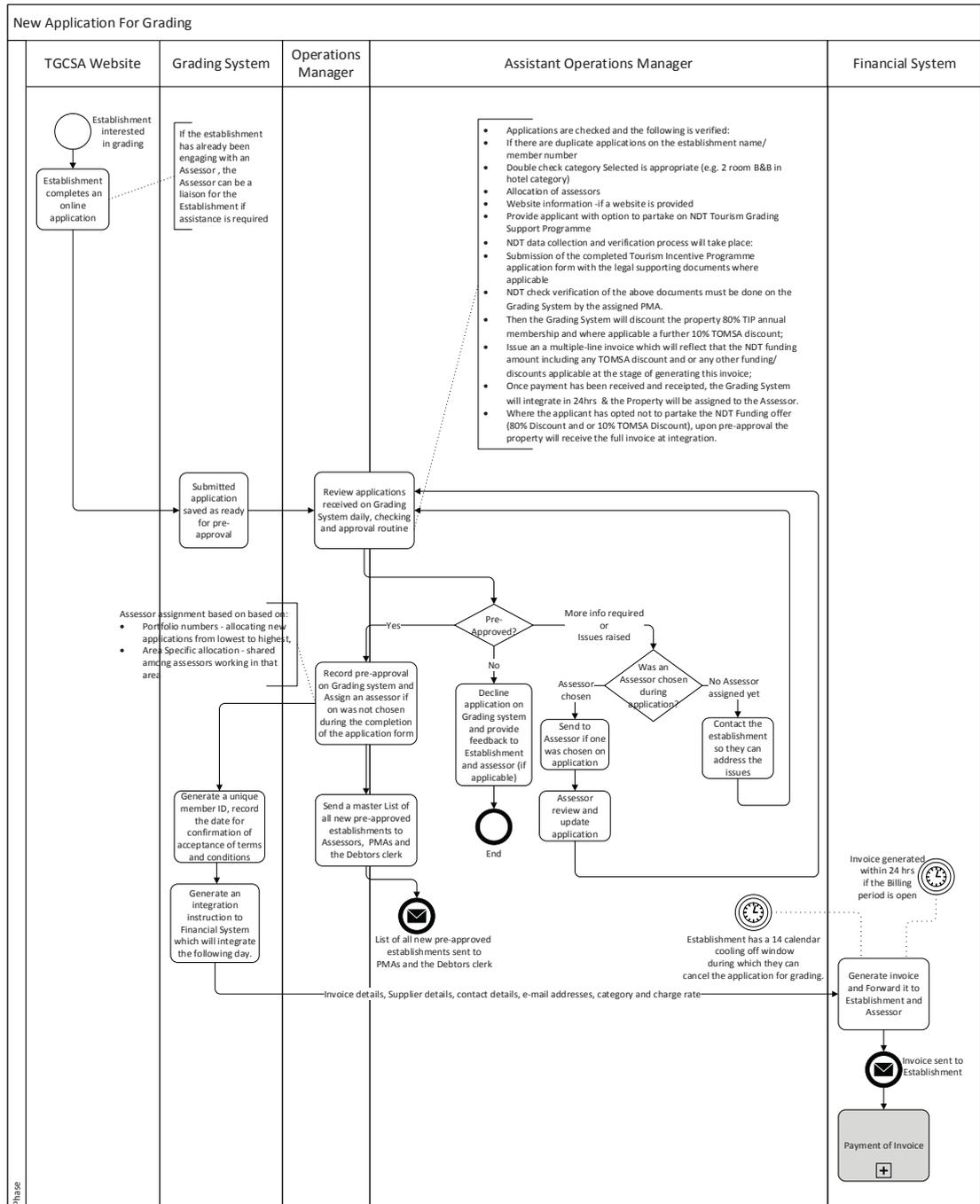
Abbreviation	Meaning
SA TOURISM	South African Tourism
TOMSA	Tourism Marketing South Africa
UA	Universal Accessibility

4. PROCESS DETAILS

4.1. High Level Grading Process Flow Diagram



4.2. New Application for Grading



#### 4.2.1. New Application for Grading - Textual Description

- Establishment applies for the annual star grading membership by submitting an online application through the TGCSA website: <http://www.tourismgrading.co.za>
- Once the application is completed, the establishment then submits it for Pre-approval;
- The Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager reviews applications received on Grading System daily. The pre-approval process entails the following:
  - The Operation Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager:
    - Firstly, verifies that the application is not a duplicate of an existing graded member by using the Establishments name and member number as criteria;
    - Contacts the establishment to verify the following:
      - If all contact information has been provided;
      - Double checks that the category selected is appropriate and verify the number of rooms & room rate (e.g. 2 room B&B in hotel category);
      - Allocation of Assessors;
      - Verify that a website exists and check the website information, if applicable (a website is not a mandatory prerequisite for grading);
      - At application stage, the applicant is provided the option to partake on NDT Tourism Grading Support Programme or opt out;
        - Where the applicant has opted to partake the NDT Funding offer (80% Discount and or 10% TOMSA Discount), upon pre-approval of the application the link invite is sent immediately after pre-approval;
        - The NDT data collection and verification process will take place;
          - Submission of the completed Tourism Incentive Programme application form with the legal supporting documents where applicable (Valid Tax Clearance, Identity doc/ number/ Business Registration forms, certified copied of B-BBEE certificate, valid liability insurance documents). **30 day NDT retry window** (Should this not be done in 30 day, invoice will generate at full value)
          - NDT check verification of the above documents must be done on the Grading System by the assigned PMA. 10 day PMA window (Should this not be done in 30 day, invoice will generate at full value)
          - Once all the information has been checked & verified accordingly, the Grading System will discount the property 80% TIP annual membership and where applicable a further 10% TOMSA discount;
          - The Grading System will issue an a multiple-line invoice which will reflect that the NDT funding amount including any TOMSA discount and or any other funding/ discounts applicable at the stage of generating this invoice;
          - Once payment has been received and receipted, the Grading System will integrate in 24hours and the Property will be assigned to the Assessor.
        - Where the applicant has opted not to partake the NDT Funding offer (80% Discount and or 10% TOMSA Discount), upon pre-approval the property will receive the full invoice at integration.

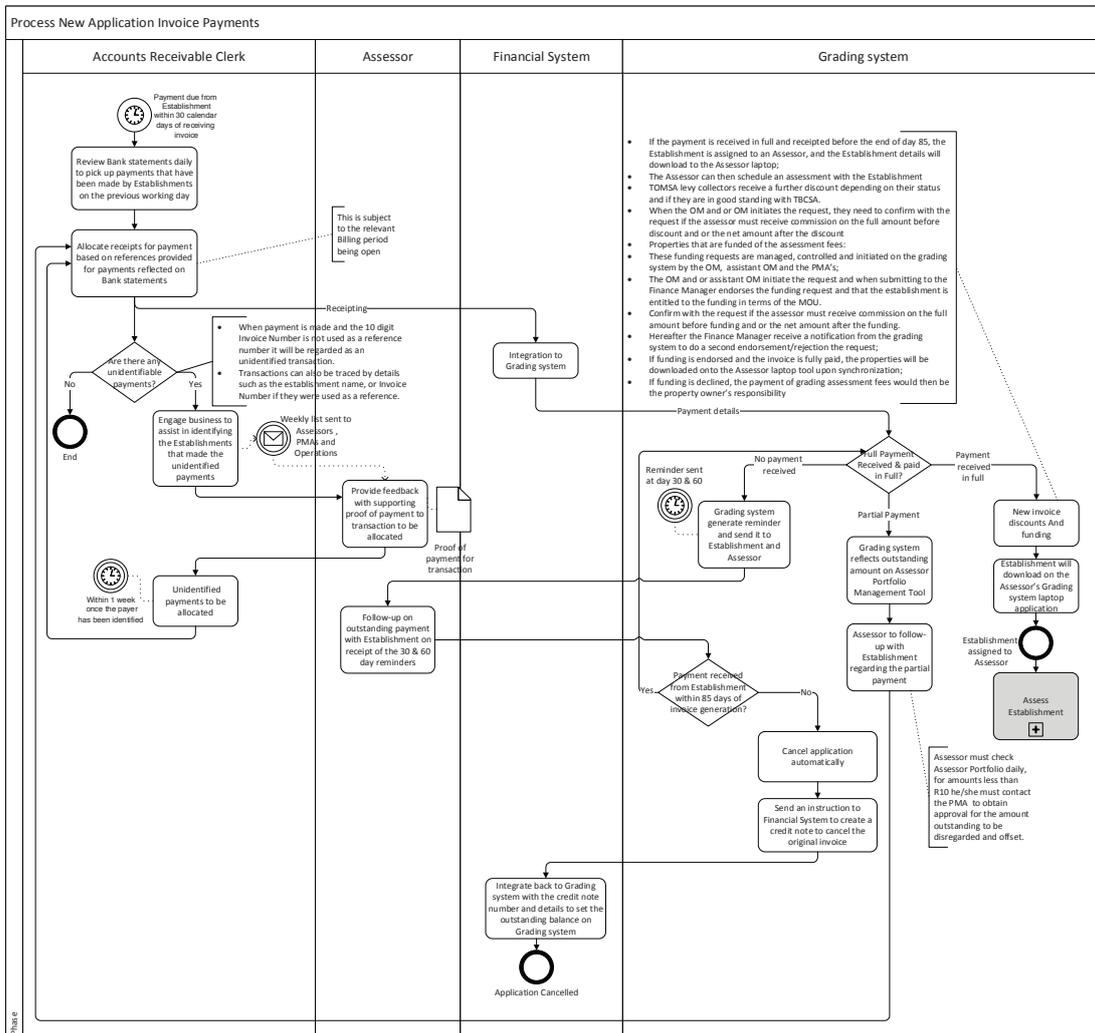
- If the application cannot be pre-approved the Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager will decline application on Grading System, and feedback will be given to the Assessor and to the Establishment:
  - Declined applications remain in the system and can be used for leads in the future (provided the Establishment has given their consent)
- If more information is required or issues need to be addressed before an application can be preapproved, then the Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager can request more information regarding the application from the applicant/ an Assessor:
  - If an Assessor was chosen during application, then the Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager can send the query to Assessor;
    - The Assessor will review and update application and it will be rechecked by Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager again to determine if it can be pre-approved.
  - If an Assessor was not chosen at application, then the Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager must allocate an Assessor to the Establishment.
- If the application is pre-approved by the Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager the pre-approval is recorded on Grading System and the Establishment will be assigned unique member ID, and the system will log the date for confirmation of acceptance of terms and conditions. The following will also happen:
  - If the Establishment chose an Assessor on the application form, that Assessor is automatically assigned to the Establishment;
  - If the Establishment did not choose an Assessor, the Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager assigns an Assessor based on internal criteria, which is:
    - Portfolio numbers - evaluations of existing portfolio numbers; allocating new applications from lowest to highest;
    - Area Specific allocation - allocating the new applications among Assessors working in that area.
  - Once all the information has been received from the Grading System, the Grading System automatically raises an invoice instruction to the Finance system for properties that have declined the NDT Funding offer as well as those properties that did not submit the required information to receive the discount (The information the invoice derives from is being fed by the Grading system and the Finance System Invoices according to the feed/information received from the Grading system. The fee table is sitting on the grading system and the grading system calculates the value and the distribution accounts of the invoices based on the room rate and amount of rooms and fee tables in the grading system which are fed to the Finance system via integration tables);
  - The Finance System will generate an invoice based on the above and forward it to the Establishment and the assigned Assessor within 24 hrs, however if the billing period is closed the invoice will only generate once the new period is opened and will only integrate on the first integration run one day after the new period has opened. see section 4.3.3 Payment Processing Considerations;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Finance System integrates back to the Grading System confirming that the invoice has generated and states the invoice number. All invoices will go into a queue and will then be distributed automatically by workflow e-mailer during the course of the day and evening;
- After pre-approval has been done and the new application invoice has been raised, the Establishment has a 14 calendar days cooling off window period during which they can cancel their application for grading. Should the Establishment not settle the new invoice within the 85 days from the approval of the new application, the grading system will automatically cancel the application and fed via integration a credit note (with value and distribution accounts) to the Finance System.
- The next step in the process is Payment of the Invoice.
- The Operations Manager or the Assistant Operations Manager sends the Grading System Master List of pre-approved new applications to all Assessors, PMA's and Debtors Clerk.

4.3. Process New Application Invoice Payments



**4.3.1. Process New Application Invoice Payments - Textual Description**

- Payment for an invoice for a new membership is due from the Establishment within 30 calendar days of the invoice date;
- The Accounts Receivable Clerks review TGCSA Bank statements daily to pick up payments that have been made by Establishments;
- The Accounts Receivable Clerks allocate receipts for payment, based on the following:
  - Invoice number reflected on the Bank Statement;
  - If invoice number does appear on the Bank Statement, the correct Proof of Payment must be supplied as well as a detail breakdown of the payment details should the payment be for more than one property directly from the establishment;
  - This is subject to the relevant Billing period being open (see Payment Processing Considerations 4.3.3 below)
  - If there are any unidentifiable payments the Accounts Receivable Clerk must engage business (Assessors, PMA's, TGCSA OM, TGCSA AM, TGCSA Marketing Communications Manager) to assist in identifying the Establishments that made the unidentified payments;
    - When payment is made and the 10-digit Invoice Number is not used as a reference number it will be regarded as an unidentified transaction:
      - Transactions can only be traced by the correct Invoice Number that was used as a reference.
    - The Accounts Receivable Clerks will send a list of unidentifiable payments to (Assessors, PMA's, TGCSA OM, TGCSA Assistant OM, TGCSA Marketing Communications Manager) weekly;
    - Valid Proof of Payment must be sent to Finance: [debtors@southafrica.net](mailto:debtors@southafrica.net) from the Establishments or Assessors to verify the unidentifiable payments that were made by the Establishments.:
      - A "valid proof of payment "must show the following:
        - Transaction date;
        - Name of beneficiary;
        - Reference Number that reflects on TGCSA bank statement;
        - In addition to the proof of payment details, the establishment must confirm in writing to which the correct invoice number to which payment needs to be allocated.
      - Unidentified payments must be allocated within five working days once the payer has been identified.
- Once payments are receipted in Finance System there is integration to Grading System to reflect the payments received
- The Establishment will download onto the Assessor laptop the next day when they do their daily synchronization of the laptop Grading System application;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- o Once the Establishment is assigned to an Assessor, the Assessor can then make arrangements to go out and assess the Establishment;
- If a partial payment is received from the Establishment within 30 calendar days of receiving invoice the following happens:
  - o GRADING SYSTEM reflects outstanding amount on Assessor Portfolio Management Tool;
  - o The Assessor to follow-up with the Establishment regarding the partial payment:
    - The Assessor must check Assessor Portfolio daily, for amounts less than R10 he/she must contact the PMA to obtain approval for the amount outstanding to be disregarded and offset.
  - o The Establishment will not download onto the Assessor's laptop until the invoice is settled in full.
- If the payment is not received from the Establishment within 30 calendar days of receiving invoice the following will happen:
  - o Grading System will generate reminders on day 30 and day 60 about the invoices and send the reminders to the Establishment and Assessor;
  - o The Assessor must follow-up on the outstanding payment with the Establishment;
  - o If the payment still has not been received from the Establishment within 85 days of the invoice date not being generated, Grading System will automatically cancel the application:
    - The Establishment record is kept in Grading System and can be used as a future lead (provided the Establishment has given their consent);
    - Grading System will send an instruction via the integration tables to Finance System to create a credit note to cancel the original invoice if not paid in full within 85 days from the invoice date;
    - Finance System integrates back to Grading System with the credit note number and details to set the outstanding balance on Grading System;
  - o If the payment is received in full and receipted before the end of day 85, the Establishment is assigned to an Assessor, and the Establishment details will download to the Assessor laptop;
  - o The Assessor can then schedule an assessment with the Establishment.

#### 4.3.2. New Invoice Discounts and Funding

- TOMSA levy collectors receive a further discount depending on their status (valid contract) and if they are in good standing with TBCSA. These discounts are managed, controlled and initiated on the grading system by the TGCSA OM and TGCSA assistant OM (*Where TOMSA discount has not been automatically effected*);
- When the TGCSA OM or TGCSA assistant OM initiates and endorses the request, they need to confirm with the request / endorsement if the assessor must receive commission on the full amount before discount or the net amount after the discount;
- Properties that are funded for their assessment fees:
  - o These funding requests are managed, controlled and initiated on the grading system by the TGCSA OM, TGCSA assistant OM and the PMA's;

- The TGCSA OM or TGCSA Assistant OM can initiate adding of pre funding at pre approval stage for new applications.
- If funding is endorsed and the invoice is fully paid, the properties will be downloaded onto the Assessor laptop tool upon synchronization;
- If funding is declined, the payment of grading assessment fees would then be the property owner's responsibility.

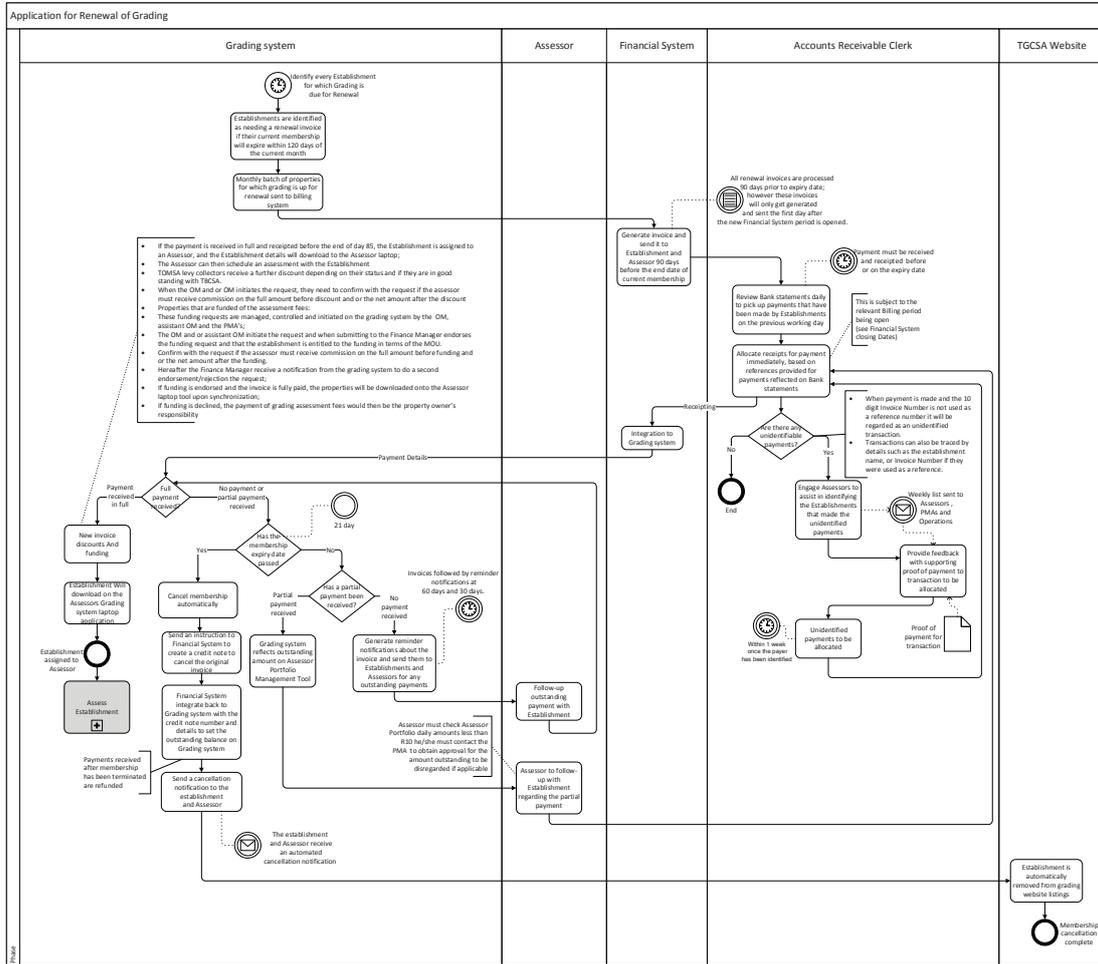
#### 4.3.3. Payment Processing Considerations

- All payments made to TGCSA are receipted on a daily basis excluding public holidays, SA TOURISM closure dates and weekends;
  - The TGCSA Bank Account Statement is checked daily to identify the payments that are on the previous working day's statement;
  - A payment that reaches the TGCSA bank account today may take up to 48 hours to be identified and receipted and or on the next working day if payment was done over the weekend except during SA TOURISM closure dates, SA TOURISM closing period in December/January of every year, any other days as per the SA TOURISM calendar where the AR clerk will not be available or South African Public holiday) which then will require up to six working days;
- Finance must close billing every month, and the closure dates are communicated by Finance annually at the start of each Fiscal year;
- Payments reflecting on TGCSA bank statement during the billing closure period can only be receipted after the first day when the new period is opened; however, these receipts will be captured in the first three working days after month end closing date. Therefore, these transactions will integrate to Grading System only once the same has been receipted in the new period.
- The integration to Grading System will happen the next day after the receipt was done on Finance System. When the next Finance billing period is opened. E.g. for March month end, the March period will only be closed on the 11th of April 2016 (and as per the Finance calendar closure dates for the following years). Therefore, receipting for money received in the TGCSA bank account for the period of the last few days of the month (depending on how the month end falls over a weekend) and from 1 April to 11th April 2016 will only be receipted on the 12th April 2016 (which will integrate on 13th April 2016), 13th April 2016 (Which will integrate on the 14th April 2016), 14th April 2016 (Which will integrate on the 15th April 2016);
- Therefore, as per the above example, the receipting for receipts during the closing of month ends will happen during the first three working days after the month end closure;
- Other receipting during the month will be done within two working days; however, receipting can only be done where the establishment has used the correct invoice reference number;
- For any deposits where the invoice reference number was not used, the Assessor must submit the POP from the establishment as well as a confirmation from the establishment for which invoice number the payment was made for (NB: Assessor cannot confirm on behalf of establishments);
- All payments which cannot be identified, will be placed on the unidentified list which will be sent out to all Assessors & PMAs on weekly basis except for SA TOURISM closure dates, SA TOURISM closing

period in December/January of every year, any other days as per the SA TOURISM calendar where the AR clerk will not be available or South African Public holiday);

- o NB: When an Assessor does identify any unidentified transactions, he/she needs to obtain the bank POP & the confirmation on which invoice was paid by the establishment and submit this information promptly to the SA TOURISM debtor's department (No receipting will be done on assumptions or detail from assessors - the only information that will be accepted will be the POP & the confirmation from the establishment); Example, Where an establishment has used an incorrect reference number, the establishment needs to provide the POP & confirmation of the invoice number they are settling to the assessor. The assessor then forwards the same to SA TOURISM debtors. It is important to note that the assessor cannot confirm the invoice number on his/her own or on behalf of the establishment.
- All Cheque deposits take Ten working days to clear and only receipted on the first working day after the Ten working days;
- Short payments should be followed up by assessors immediately and on a daily basis. The assessors must use the APM tool to manage all outstanding invoices. The PMAs to manage and follow up with assessors on the outstanding amounts and where assessors are not managing the outstanding amounts as per the APM Tool, the PMA's must note the same when conducting annual assessor's performance reviews;
- The PMAs to follow up on shortfalls i.e. short payment of R10 & less - PMAs must ensure that motivation is done for these amounts to be discounted and that the discount request reach the Finance Manager at least eight working days before the cancellation date of the property (Where applicable).

4.4. Application for Renewal of Grading



#### 4.4.1. Application for Renewal of Grading - Process Textual Description

- For the detailed renewal process, refer to the CR162
- Grading System will identify every Establishment for which Grading is due for Renewal;
- An email is sent out to the Establishment between 180 and 120 days to get them to accept the terms and conditions before and invoice will be sent out. If the T's & C's are accepted, the invoice will be issued as per below. If not, they are set to expiring and will cancel when they reach their expiry date. Members who fail to log in are sent an invoice regardless and acceptance to the Terms is considered at point of payment.
- Establishments are identified as needing a renewal invoice if their current membership will expire within 90 days of the expiry date of the establishment;
- Grading System will send a batch of properties with invoice details via integration tables for which grading is up for renewal to the Finance System (billing system) monthly;
- In Finance System the invoices are generated and sent from Tourism Grading Council E-mail to the Establishment and Assessor within the month of 90 days before the end date of current membership (expiry date), with reminders sent every 30 days thereafter:
  - All renewal invoices are processed within the month of 90 days prior to expiry date; therefore, these invoices will only get generated and sent the first day after the new Finance System period is opened.
- The Accounts Receivable Clerk must review TGCSA Bank statements daily to pick up payments that have been made by the Establishments.:
  - The Accounts Receivable Clerk must allocate receipts for payment, based on step 4.3.1:
    - This is subject to the relevant Billing period being open (see Payment Processing Considerations 4.3.3 above)
- Payment is due by the end date of existing membership; payment must be received and receipted before or on the expiry date;
- If no payments have been made, Grading System will generate reminders about the invoice on, day 60 and day 30 preceding the membership expiry date and send the reminders to the Establishment and Assessor;
- If the payment is not received and receipted in full (less the discounts where applicable) by the expiry date plus Ten working days, the Establishment's current membership's expires as follows:
  - The Establishment's membership is cancelled automatically by Grading System 21 days after the expiry date of the membership, but the Establishment record is kept on Grading System;
  - Grading System will send an instruction to Finance System to create a credit note to cancel the original invoice which happens the first day after integration;
  - Finance System integrates back to GRADING SYSTEM with the credit note number and details to set the outstanding balance on Grading System; An automated Membership cancellation notification is sent to the Establishment;
  - The Establishment is also automatically removed from grading website listings on the next Wednesday evening when the Finance System, Grading System and Website databases are synchronized.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

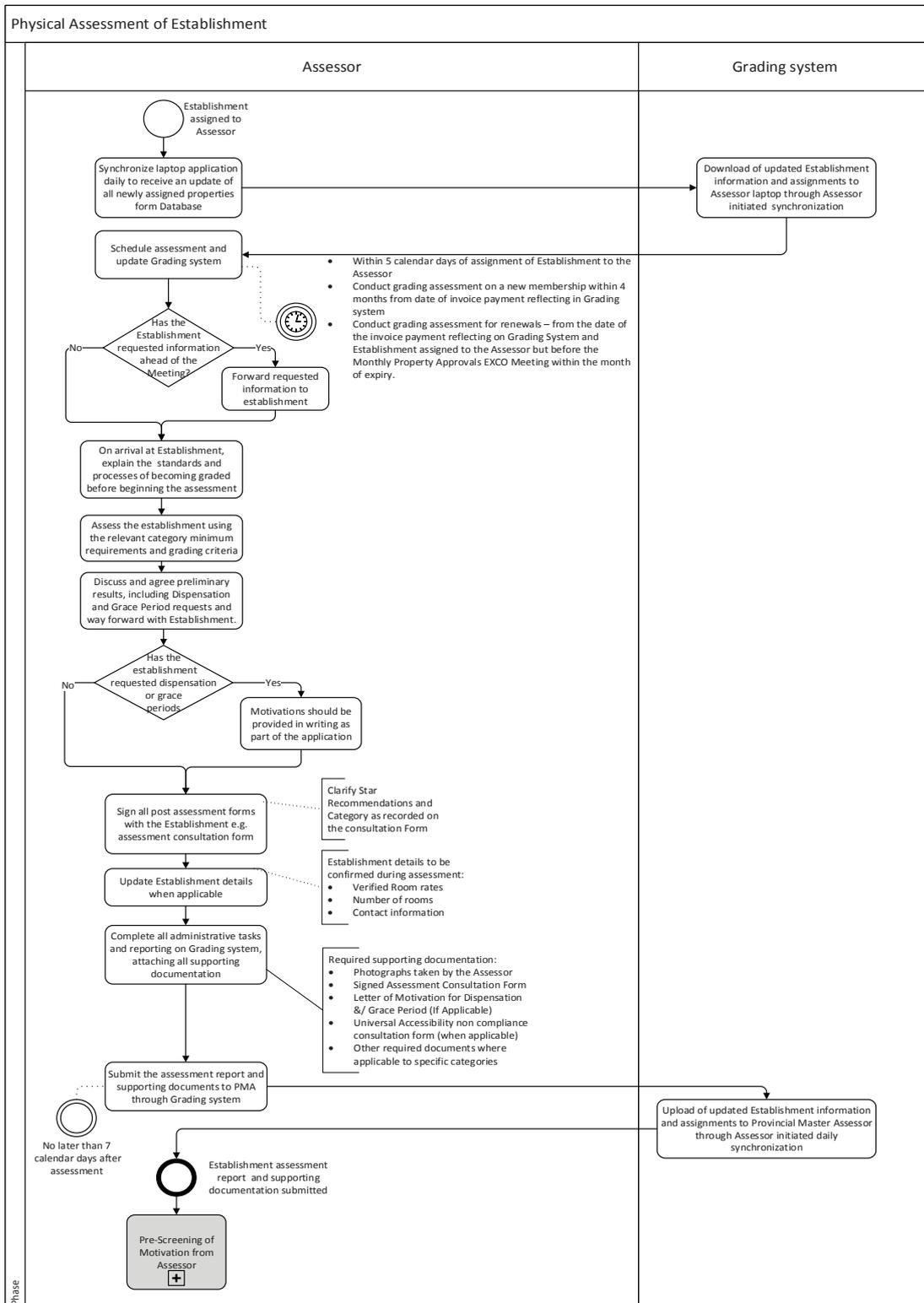
Company Confidential

- If the payment is received after membership has been terminated the following will happen:
  - The funds will be recognised as sundry revenue if the establishment does not reapply;
  - TGCSA marketing Business will need to obtain an CQAO and CFO approval to allocate to the new invoice once the establishment has reapplied;
  - Establishment is automatically removed from grading website listings.

#### 4.4.2. Invoice Discounts and Funding

- For invoice Discounts and funding, Refer to 4.3.2 above

4.5. Physical Assessment of Establishment



**4.5.1. Physical Assessment of Establishment - Textual Description**

- The Establishment Assessment can only be done once an Establishment is assigned to an Assessor;
- The Assessor is required to synchronize the Grading System laptop application daily to receive an update of all newly assigned properties from the Grading System database;
- The Grading System laptop application will download updated Establishment information and assignments to the Assessor's laptop through the Assessor initiated synchronization;
- The Assessor must then schedule assessment appointment and update Grading System:
  - The Assessment must be scheduled **within 5 calendar days** of assignment of Establishments to the Assessor;
  - The Assessor will then load the scheduled date on their Grading System Laptop tool, so that they can keep track and be reminded of the date for assessment;
  - The Assessor must conduct the grading assessment within the prescribed time frames:
    - For new applications - 4 calendar months from the date of the invoice payment reflecting on Grading System;
    - For renewals - from the date of the invoice payment reflecting on Grading System and Establishment assigned to the Assessor but before the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting within the month of expiry;
    - If Assessors do not adhere to the stipulated times, the properties will be retrieved from their toolkit and reallocated to other Assessors to ensure that business processes are followed.
  - If the Establishment has requested information ahead of the assessment appointment the Assessor must forward requested information to the Establishment.
- On arrival at the Establishment, the Assessor must explain the standards and processes of becoming graded before beginning the assessment;
- The Assessor must assess the Establishment using the relevant category minimum requirements and grading criteria;
- The Assessor must discuss and agree preliminary results, including Dispensation and Grace Period requests and way forward with the Establishment:
  - If the property does not meet a MER but are willing to implement and are able to implement the requirement, then a Grace Period Request letter is drafted by the property;
  - If the property does not meet an MER and cannot implement the requirement for a relevant reason, then a Dispensation Request letter is drafted by the property;
  - If the Establishment requested dispensation or grace periods, the motivations should be provided in writing as part of the application.
- The Assessor must sign all post assessment forms with the Establishment e.g. assessment consultation form:
  - The Assessor must clarify star recommendations and category as recorded on the consultation Form.
- The Assessor must update the Establishment details when applicable:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- o Establishment details that must be confirmed during assessment:
  - Verified Room rates;
  - Number of rooms;
  - Contact information.
- The Assessor must complete all administrative tasks and reporting on Grading System, attaching all supporting documentation:
  - o Required supporting documentation will include:
    - Photographs taken by the Assessor;
    - Signed Assessment Consultation Form;
    - Letter of Motivation for Dispensation &/ Grace Period (If Applicable);
    - Universal Accessibility non-compliance consultation form (when applicable);
    - Other required documents where applicable to specific categories.
- The Assessor must submit the assessment report and supporting documents to the PMA through Grading System no later than 7 calendar days after assessment;
- Grading System uploads updated Establishment information and assignments to Provincial Master Assessor through Assessor initiated daily synchronization;
- Once the Establishment assessment report and supporting documentation is submitted, the Provincial Master Assessors will commence the Pre-Screening process.

#### Procedure for Onsite Visit by Assessors

1. Before and on the date of assessment the Assessor should call the client and confirm the appointment.
2. The Assessor will then conduct the assessment as follows:

New Property	Renewal Property
<b>Fill in the MER checklist-</b> This will determine whether the property qualifies for the specified star grading and criteria being applied for.	<b>Fill in the MER checklist (minimum requirements)-</b> This will determine whether the property qualifies for the specified star grading and criteria being applied for.
<b>Fill in the Quality checklist-</b> This will determine the points that the property will accumulate and this will state what star grading the property qualifies for.	<b>Fill in the Quality checklist-</b> This will determine the points that the property will accumulate and this will state what star grading the property qualifies for.
<b>Fill in the UA Checklist-</b> For new properties the entire form needs to be completed in order to establish if the property does or does not qualify for a UA grading. Also to note if there is potential for the property to implement UA grading.	<b>Fill in the UA Checklist (universal accessibility)-</b> This form is to be completed if the property now qualifies for a UA grading. If the property previously did not qualify and still does not qualify the checklist can be marked as non-applicable.
<b>Fill in the UA Exclusion form-</b> If the property does not qualify for a UA grading they will fill in and sign this form to acknowledge that fact.	<b>Fill in the UA Exclusion form-</b> (Universal Accessibility). This form is completed and signed in the absence of the UA checklist if the property still does not qualify for a UA grading on their renewal assessment.
<b>Fill in the Visit report-</b> This report encompasses summarised details of the property. Areas of improvement and areas of	<b>Fill in the Visit report-</b> This report encompasses summarised details of the property. Areas of improvement and areas of

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

strength and also the score summary for the property of the overall impression. The score determines the star grading outcome.	strength and also the score summary for the property of the overall impression. The score determines the star grading outcome.
<b><u>Fill in and sign the Consultation form-</u></b> This form has to be signed by the Assessor and the property owner in agreement to the grading assessment outcome that has taken place and the recommended star grading for the property. This form notifies the client on what to expect after their grading is approved.	<b><u>Fill in and sign the Consultation form-</u></b> This form has to be signed by the Assessor and the property owner in agreement to the grading assessment outcome that has taken place and the recommended star grading for the property. This form notifies the client on what to expect after their grading is approved.
<b><u>Complete the assessment picture template-</u></b> Pictures that correlate to the assessment that has taken place are captured on this template. This helps in the pre-approval of a property as the PMA can then see what was assessed. Picture templates for UA are also required to show if a property qualifies or does not qualify for Universal Accessibility (Current pictures should be used, if any pictures from the previous years are used the Assessor should state this and provide a reason)	<b><u>Complete the assessment picture template-</u></b> Pictures that correlate to the assessment that has taken place are captured on this template. This helps in the pre-approval of a property as the PMA can then see what was assessed. Picture templates for UA are also required to show if a property qualifies or does not qualify for Universal Accessibility. (Current pictures should be used, if any pictures from the previous years are used the Assessor should state this and provide a reason)
<b><u>Failed Assessment-</u></b> Properties that do not meet the minimum requirements of grading at the particular star rating, have to be submitted with the failed grading. A written motivation and a picture template are required to substantiate the failed submission.	<b><u>Failed Assessment-</u></b> Properties that do not meet the minimum requirements of grading at the particular star rating, have to be submitted with the failed grading. A written motivation and a picture template are required to substantiate the failed submission.
	<b><u>For upgrades-</u></b> In cases where properties have done improvements to their facilities which will enhance their star grading, a written motivation and a picture template are required to reflect the necessary changes.
	<b><u>For downgrades-</u></b> For properties that have downgraded from the current star grading, a written motivation and a picture template should be provided to reflect the condition of the facilities which will meet the recommended star grading.

**Grace Period Requests**

- A Grace period is time given to the property in order to assist them in implementing the required requirement to completely meet the quality standard being applied for;
- A grace period time frame is three months but a maximum of six calendar months is permissible;
- The property needs to understand that they will not receive their grading plaque until the grace period requested is completed accordingly. Written confirmation and pictures are required as proof that a grace period has been completed;
- The grace period letter needs to have the properties logo template and be signed by the property owner or manager responsible;
- The Assessor will then submit the grace period letter along with their assessment documents for PMA review;
- The expiry date of the establishment cannot be changed with granting grace period;

---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

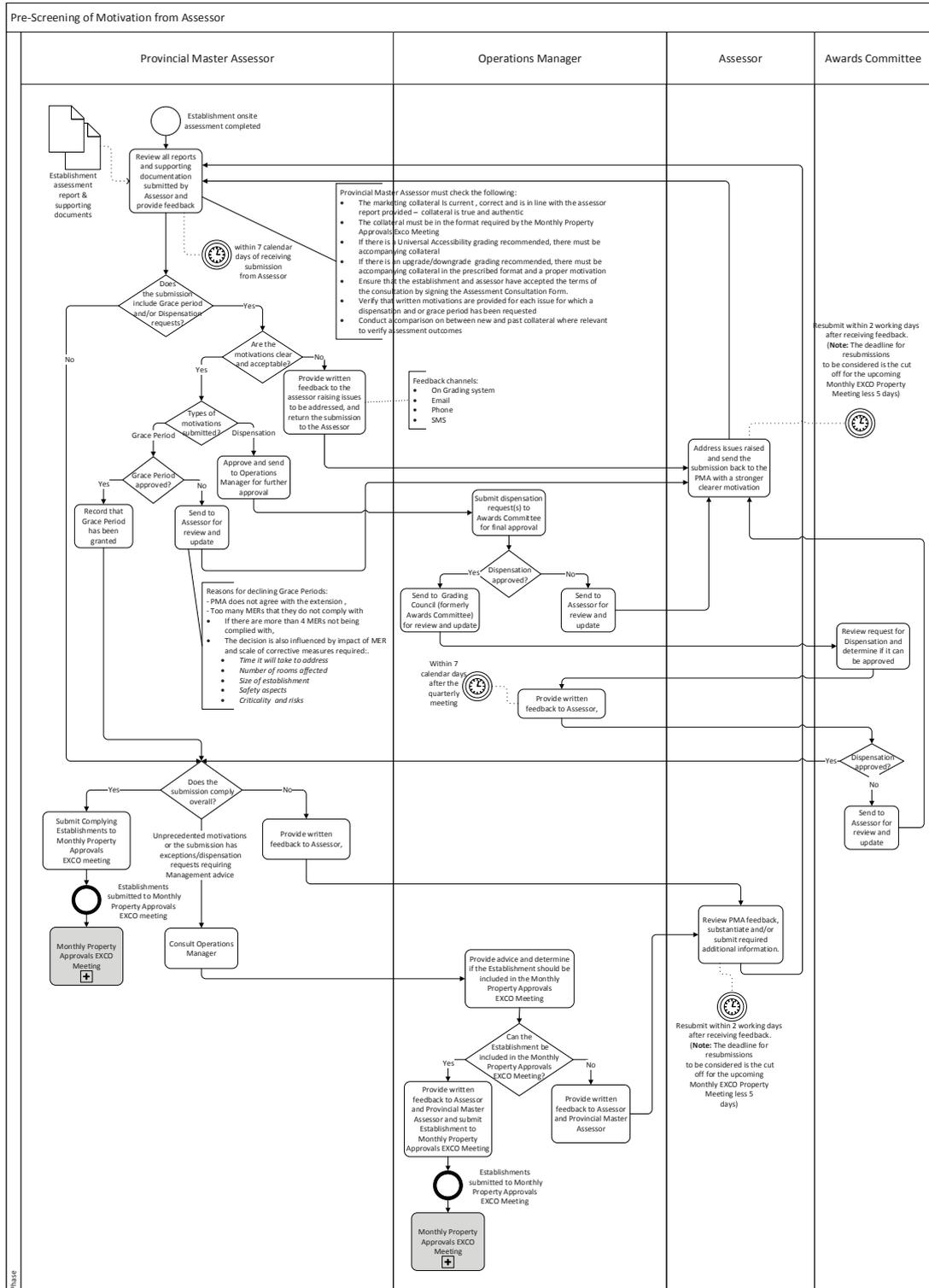
Company Confidential

- Renewal invoices to generate in a month of within the month of 90days before the expiry day regardless of the grace period;
- If the grace period is rejected, then communication will be sent to the Assessor in this regard within 7 calendar days of the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting;
- The Assessor will then review this feedback from the PMA and submit the required additional information. (2 working days for resubmission is applicable for any property submitted by Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting deadline-less 1 day);
- The PMA will then review the additional feedback and if satisfied will submit the property to the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO meeting.

#### **Dispensation Requests**

- A Dispensation gives permission to a property not to have a certain minimum requirement due to relevant reasons agreed to by the Grading Council;
- A dispensation request will be reviewed by the Provincial Master Assessor (PMA) at PMA (pre-screening) review and if the PMA agrees with the reasoning for the dispensation they will then send the request to Manager Review;
- The Operations Manager will review the dispensation request and if he/she agrees the request or the reasoning thereof, it will be forwarded to the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting.
- The dispensation will be reviewed in the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting and if all are in agreement it is then submitted to the Quality Assurance Sub Committee, through round robin submission, for final approval. The Quality Assurance Sub Committee will express their approval/rejection of the dispensation request within two (2) working days.
- If the dispensation is approved by the Quality Assurance Sub Committee, the property will be submitted to the next Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting for approval of their grading;
- If the dispensation is rejected by the Quality Assurance Sub Committee, then the decision will be forwarded to the Assessor with the feedback on a way forward;
- The Assessor will then have to liaise with the property on a way forward before submitting again for approval at the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting.

4.6. Pre-Screening of Motivation from Assessor



**4.6.1. Pre- Screening of Motivation from Assessor - Textual Description**

- Once the Establishment assessment report and supporting documents are submitted, the Provincial Master Assessors (PMA) can Pre-Screen submissions received from Assessors;
- The PMA must review all reports and supporting documentation submitted by Assessor:
  - Input is the Establishment assessment report, and all applicable supporting documents completed during the assessment;
  - The PMA must review the submission and provide written feedback within 7 calendar days of receiving it from Assessor:
    - The feedback is stored on Grading System, and should be downloaded with daily synchronizing;
    - However, the feedback on Grading System can be followed up by supplementary communication, primarily via email; SMS and phone calls only apply only for emergencies, e.g. looming deadlines.
- The PMA must check the following:
  - The marketing collateral is current, correct and is in line with the assessment report provided - collateral is true and authentic;
  - The collateral must be in the format required by the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting;
  - If there is a Universal Accessibility grading recommended, there must be accompanying collateral;
  - If there is an upgrade/downgrade grading recommended, there must be accompanying collateral in the prescribed format and a proper motivation;
  - If there is a failed grading recommended, there must be accompanying collateral in the prescribed format and a proper motivation;
  - Ensure that the Establishment and Assessor have accepted the terms of the consultation by signing the Assessment Consultation Form;
  - Verify that written motivations are provided for each issue for which a dispensation and or grace period has been requested;
  - Conduct a comparison between new and past collateral where relevant to verify assessment outcomes.
- If the submission includes Grace Period and/or Dispensation requests the PMA must check if the motivations are clear and acceptable:
  - If the motivations are not clear and acceptable the PMA must:
    - Provide written feedback to the Assessor raising issues to be addressed, and return the submission to the Assessor;
    - The Assessor must address issues raised and send the submission back to the PMA with a stronger clearer motivation;
  - If they are clear and acceptable the relevant approvals must be given:
    - For Dispensations:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- The PMA must approve the Dispensation and send to Operations Manager for further approval, the Dispensation will then be presented to the Monthly Property Approval Exco Meeting;
- The Monthly Property Approval Exco Meeting will approve and then submit dispensation request(s) to the Quality Assurance Sub Committee meeting for final approval;
- The Quality Assurance Sub Committee will review the request for Dispensation and determine if it can be approved;
- The Assessor must provide feedback to the Assessor within 7 calendar days after the Quarterly Quality Assurance Sub Committee meeting;
- If the dispensation is not approved by any of the required approvers, it will be returned to the Assessor for a review:
  - The Assessor must address issues raised and send the submission back to the PMA with a stronger clearer motivation.
- If the dispensation is approved, it must be noted on Grading System.
- For Grace Periods:
  - If the Grace Period is not approved by any of the required approvers, it will be returned to the Assessor for a review:
    - The Assessor must address issues raised and send the submission back to the PMA with a stronger clearer motivation.
  - Reasons for declining Grace Periods: -
    - PMA does not agree with the extension;
    - Too many MERs that they do not comply with:
      - If there are more than 4 MERs not being complied with;
      - The decision is also influenced by impact of MERs and scale of corrective measures required:
        - Time it will take to address;
        - Number of rooms affected;
        - Size of Establishment;
        - Safety aspects;
        - Criticality and risks.
  - If the Grace Period is granted it must be recorded in Grading System.
- The Assessor must determine if each of the submissions complies with overall grading requirements (taking into consideration dispensations and Grace periods requested, where applicable):
  - If the submissions comply overall all the PMA will submit the complying Establishments to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting;
  - For any submission that does not comply overall, provide written feedback to Assessor:
    - Assessor must review the PMA feedback and substantiate and/or submit required additional information within 48 hours of receiving feedback;
    - The deadline for resubmissions to be considered is the cut off for the upcoming Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting less 5 days.

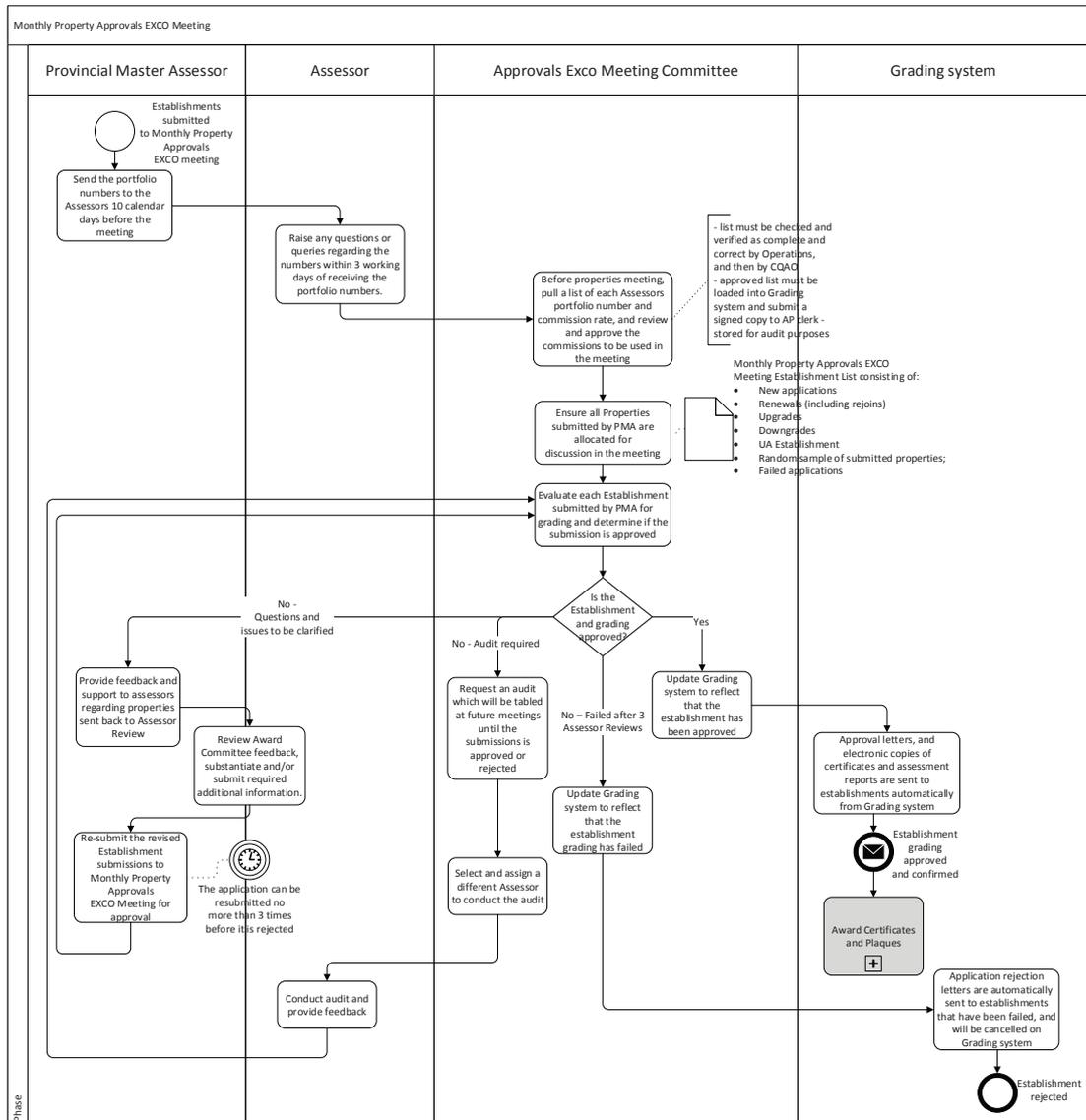
---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- For any submission that contains unprecedented motivations or the submission has exceptions/dispensation requests requiring Management advice, then the PMA must consult the Operations Manager:
  - The Operations Manager must provide advice and determine if the Establishment should be included in the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting:
    - The Operations Manager will communicate the feedback in writing to the Assessor and the Provincial Master Assessor stating whether they can submit the Establishment to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting.
- All qualifying Establishments that are submitted to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting can then be reviewed during the meeting.

4.7. Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting



#### 4.7.1. Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting - Textual Description

The Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting is usually held mid-month between the 12th and 15th of the month. The meeting is attended by at least one SA Tourism Exco Committee Member, the Operations Team (Operations Manager & Assistant Manager, the PMA's) and the Marketing Manager.

The Meeting is usually chaired by the CQAO. The meeting is broken down into 2 sections, discussion of points pertaining to grading and the review of properties and their approval.

- In order to be graded, Establishments must be pre-screened and submitted to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting;
- Before the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting, the operations team that participate in the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting Committee (namely Operations Manager & Assistant Operations Manager, the PMA's) must pull a list of each Assessors portfolio number and commission rate, and review and approve the commissions to be used in the meeting:
  - The portfolio numbers must be sent to Assessors by the PMAs 10 calendar days before the meeting;
    - NB: the portfolio numbers are fixed as at end of previous month, so changes should preferably be done before the months' end.
  - The Assessors must raise any questions or queries that they have regarding the numbers within 3 working days of receiving the portfolio numbers;
  - The list must be checked and verified as complete and correct by Operations, and then by CQAO and signed off up to 1 working day before the meeting;
  - The approved list must be loaded into Grading System and a signed copy must be submitted to the Accounts Payable Clerk and TGCSA Finance Manager One day after the Property Approval Meeting - stored for audit purposes;
- The Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting Committee will check each submission and ensure all Properties submitted by PMA are allocated for discussion in the meeting:
  - The meeting is centred around the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting Establishment List consisting of:
    - New applications;
    - Renewal (including re-joins);
    - Upgrades;
    - Downgrades;
    - Universal Accessibility Establishments;
    - Random sample of submitted properties;
    - Failed applications.
  - The Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting Committee will evaluate each Establishment submitted by PMA for grading and determine if the submission can be approved:
    - When reviewing the property, the meeting looks at:

- the pictures submitted by the Assessor (Current vs Last Year);
- the Visit Reports;
- UA facilities;
- Required documentation specific to category application e.g. Captivity permit for Game Lodges)
- The quality checklist (if there are concerns) and the website, if applicable.
- If the Establishment and the grading that has been applied for is approved the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting Committee must update Grading System to reflect that the Establishment has been approved:
  - Approval letters and electronic copies of certificates and assessment reports are sent to Establishments automatically from Grading System as soon as approval of the meeting is recorded in Grading System;
  - Within 24hrs after the meeting, Assessor Purchase Orders (PO's) are generated in accordance with the number of properties they have submitted for that specific meeting.
- If the Establishment and the grading that has been applied for are not approved, then one of 3 possible scenarios will apply:
  - Questions and issues will be raised:
    - The PMA must provide feedback and support to Assessors regarding properties sent back to Assessor Review;
    - The PMA and Assessor must review Committee feedback and substantiate and/or submit required additional information;
    - The Assessor will have to verify and answer the questions that the meeting has posed. The Assessor through answering the questions will either motivate the reason for their previous decision of grading, or they will have to supply sufficient motivation as to why they feel the property should receive the requested grading. The pre-screening PMA will also assist the Assessor and motivate on their behalf, if they agree with the Assessor's recommendation;
    - With the assistance of the pre-screening PMA the Assessor can resubmit the revised Establishment submissions to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting for approval:
      - The application can be resubmitted no more than 3 times before it is rejected.
  - An Audit will be required:
    - The Committee will request an audit which will be tabled at future meetings until the submissions is approved or rejected;
    - The Committee must select and assign a different Assessor (not the Assessor who originally assessed the Establishment) to conduct the audit;
    - *NB: TGCSA Business needs to urgently do a System CR so that The Grading System automatically generates a PO email notification and system generated PO for audit assessor payments, as this is currently being done manually*
    - The Assessor will then conduct an audit and provide feedback. The feedback will be evaluated at a future Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- A grading application will be rejected after failing to meet requirements, even after 3 Assessor Reviews:
  - The Committee will update Grading System to reflect that the Establishment grading has failed;
  - Rejection letters are automatically sent to Establishments that have failed the grading, and the memberships will be cancelled on Grading System.
- Establishments for which grading was approved and confirmed will be considered for Awarding Certificates and Plaques.

### Grading Awards

Approval of star grading memberships

When the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting (MPAEM) approves the Establishments, they are awarded the official TGCSA stars ranging from 1 Star to 5 Star from the following grading categories

1. Game / Nature Lodge;
2. Formal Service Accommodation:
  - a. Hotel;
  - b. Or Lodge.
3. Guest Accommodation:
  - a. Bed & Breakfast/
  - b. Country House/
  - c. Guest House
4. Self-Catering:
  - a. Exclusive;
  - b. Shared Vacation)
5. Backpackers and Hostelling;
6. Caravan and Camping Accommodation;
7. Meetings, Exhibitions and Special Events (MESE) Venues

### UA Grading

When the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting (MPAEM) approves the Establishments for UA assessments, they are awarded the UA grading status ranging from level 1 to 3 from the following categories of UA:

1. Mobility;
2. Communication;
3. Visual.

### Post Awards Activities:

Approval of the meeting is an automated process and all correspondence (i.e. approval letters and Visitor Reports) get automatically sent to clients from Grading System, usually within 24 hours of the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting.

The Assistant Operations Manager will manually export the approved list from Grading System and will indicate on the list which properties should receive plaques and certificates (This includes: Category

changes, upgrades & downgrades, UA and completed grace period for issuing of plaques). The list is then sent to Marketing for dispatching of plaques and certificates. **NB: This process must be automated for accuracy during production and to avoid human error.**

Certificates and Plaques are distributed by the TGCSA Marketing team, while Purchase Orders and Payments are handled by the Finance Team.

The Post Awards high level Activities entails the following:

- Operations team approves the meeting;
- Notification are sent to all Establishments from the meeting comprising of the following:
  - Assessment report;
  - Corporate Identity guidelines;
  - Stars images depended on level achieved (1 -5 stars);
  - Electronic grading certificate;
  - An opportunity exists here to provide access to establish dashboard.
- **Funded projects and TOMSA Levy properties:**
  - The Establishments that qualify for funding and TOMSA levies must pay their invoices less the discount as shown on the invoices;
  - A list of funded properties that were approved at the current meeting gets generated and forwarded to G4S to request the relevant discounts/credits to be applied;
  - A separate list of properties that qualify for the TOMSA Levy also gets sent to G4S for the same purpose.
- **Grace Period, Dispensation and Plaque Requests:**
  - The PMA's submit their lists of Grace Period, Dispensation and Plaque requests for that specific four days before the meeting to the Assistant Operations Manager for recording.
- **Integration between Grading System and Finance System:**
  - The PO's get sent to the Assessors who in return must submit invoices against the specific PO's within 3 days;
  - Finance Department processes the payments and sends such to the CQAO for final approval;
  - Electronic Transfers then take place on or before the last working day of each month.
- **Visit Reports, Post Awards Lists and Electronic Certificates:**
  - Visit Reports and Electronic Certificates get generated and sent to clients from Grading System via email:
  - An email is electronically generated and sent to the client to inform them of the outcome of the meeting. The relevant pre-screening PMA is copied in on the email. (See example below).

---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential



Dear Me X

Following your recent assessment visit we can confirm that the report for XX is available to view.

Your grading certificate, jpeg image of the TGCSA logo as well as your stars to be used on your Marketing Collateral are also available for download.

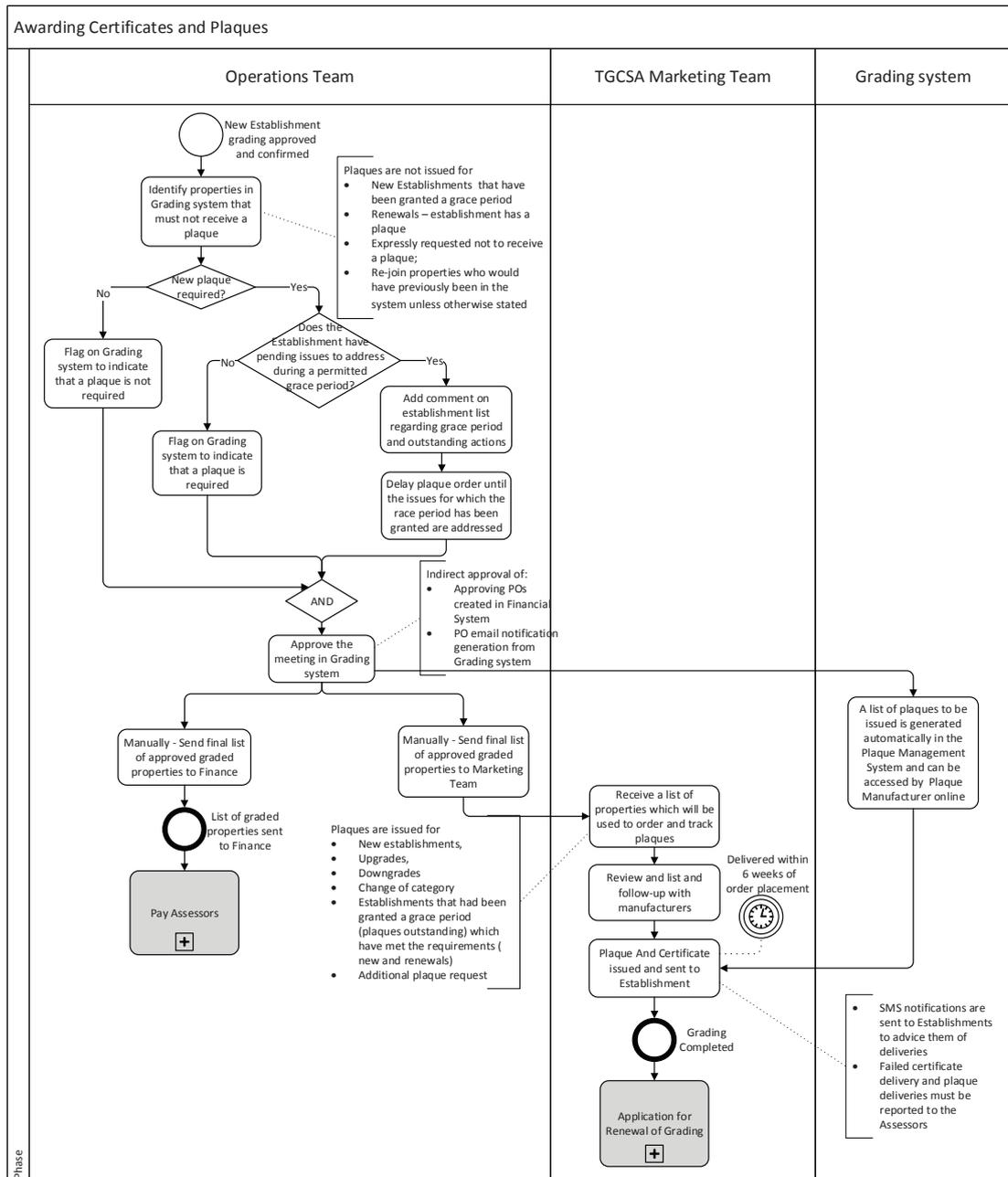
Please use the following link and logon credentials to access your report:

Link: <http://application.tourismgrading.co.za/asp/elecreport/elecreportlogin.asp>

Assessment Id: X  
Viewing Code: X

With kind regards  
The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA)

4.8. Awarding Certificates and Plaques



#### 4.8.1. Awarding Certificates and Plaques - Textual Description

- Generally, plaques are not issued for:
  - New Establishments that have been granted a grace period;
  - Renewals - Establishment has a plaque for a correct category;
  - Expressly requested not to receive a plaque;
  - Re-join properties who would have previously been in the system unless otherwise stated e.g. re-joined with upgrade or downgrade as well as change of category;
- The Operations Team will flag an Establishment on Grading System to indicate that a plaque is not required;
- If a new plaque is required checks must still be done to verify if it can be ordered, and the decision must be recorded on Grading System:
  - The Operations must check if the Establishment has pending issues to address during a permitted grace period:
    - If there is a grace period, that has been applied for and granted:
      - The Operations team will add comment on the Establishment list regarding grace period and outstanding actions;
  - Should there be any issues related to grace completion, there will be a delay of ordering of the plaque until such issues are addressed by Assessor and PMA
  - Once the checks are completed and the Operations team must send a final list of approved graded properties including the plaque distribution comments to the Finance Team, and the Marketing Team;
  - Grading System send notification to the Plaque Manufacturer who can then access the plaque orders from within Grading System;
    - Due to current manual interventions on the Post Awards list, the Plaque Manufacturer receives a comprehensive list from the Marketing Assistance which he uses for production.
  - The list of graded properties sent to Finance will be used to support the process of Paying Assessors;
  - The same list of Establishments is used by the Marketing Team and Plaque Manufacturer for plaque orders:
    - The marketing team receives the list of properties which will be used to order plaques and track plaque orders;
    - The marketing team will review the list and follow-up with distributors;
    - Plaques are issued for:
      - New Establishments;
      - Upgrades;
      - Downgrades;
      - Change of category;
      - Establishments that had been granted a grace period (plaques outstanding) which have met the requirements (applies to new applications and renewals);
      - Additional plaque request.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

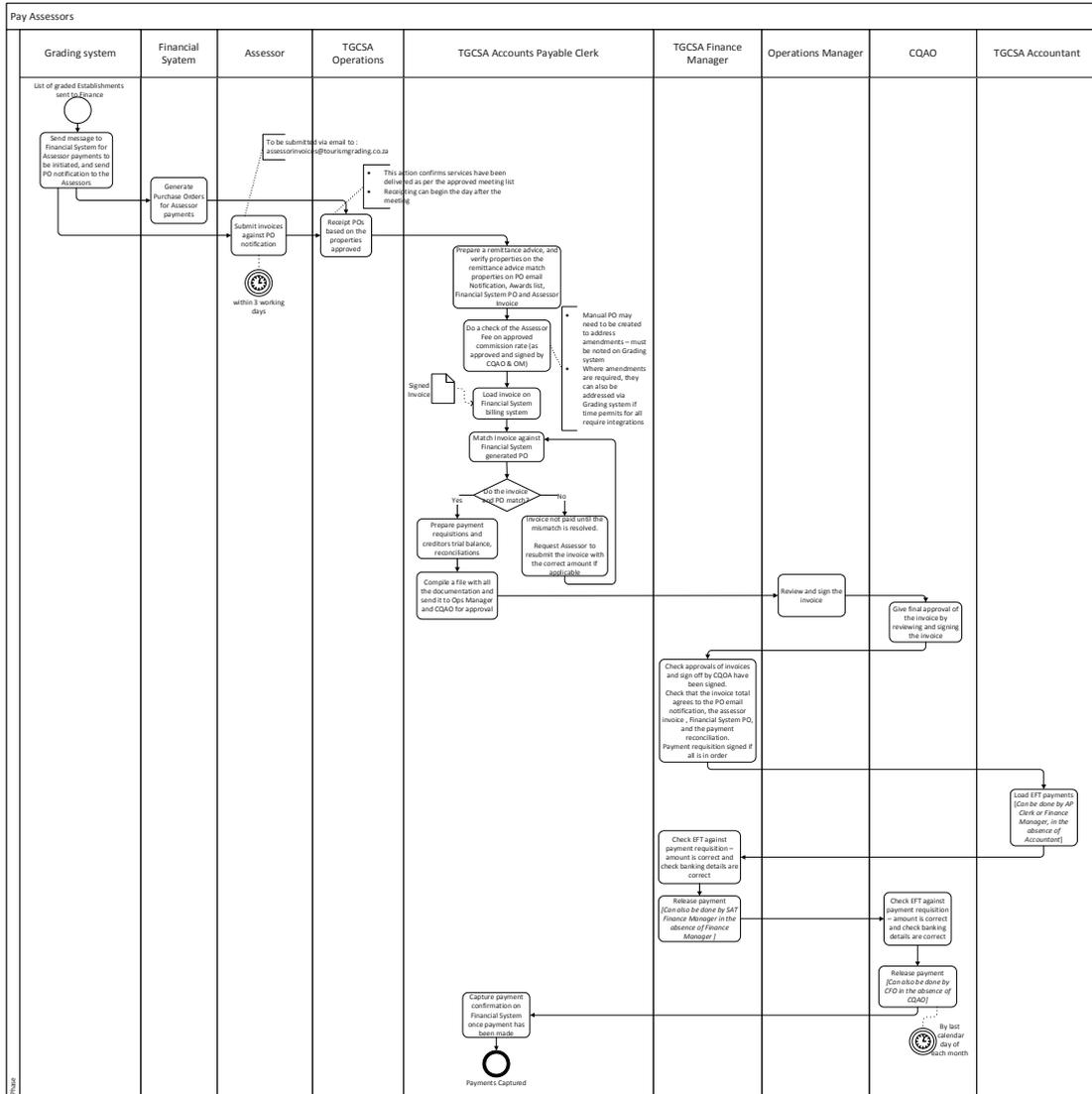
Company Confidential

- Plaques and Certificates are issued and sent to the Establishments, within 8 weeks of the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting:
  - The Establishment receives an SMS notification advising them of the date and time when the courier delivery will take place.
- Once the Grading is completed, the next anticipated process involving the Establishment will be application for Renewal of Grading in 1 years' time;
- If any plaques or certificates are not delivered or returned by Post Office, the relevant Assessors are to be notified.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

4.9. Payment of Assessors



#### 4.9.1. Payment of Assessors - Textual Description

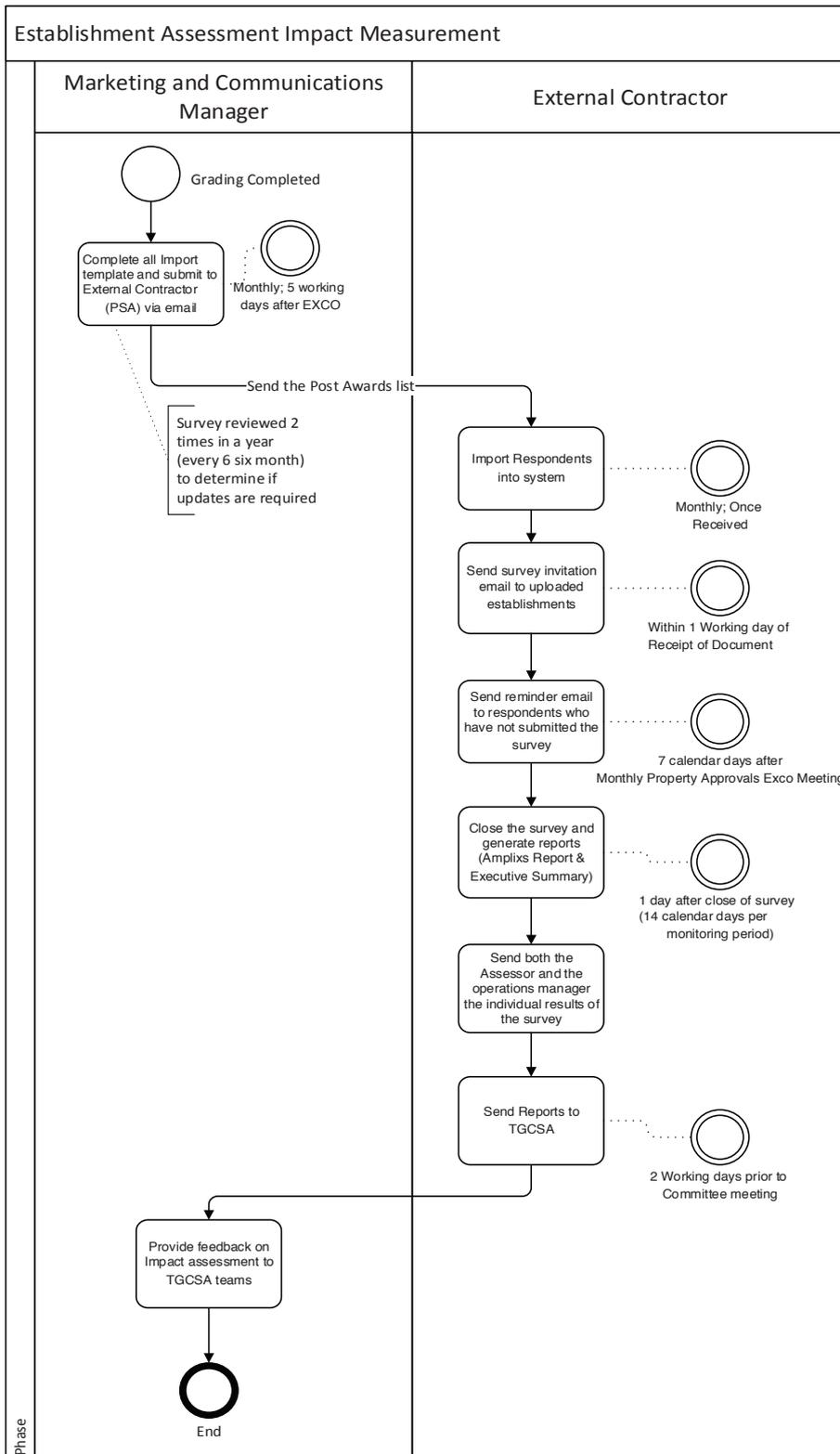
- After the property approvals meeting has been approved and integration message is sent to Finance System by Grading System in order for Assessor payments to be initiated through the raising of Purchase Orders. Grading System sends PO notification emails to the Assessors;
- *NB: FOR AUDIT REQUESTS (TGCSA Business needs to urgently do a System CR so that The Grading System automatically generates a PO email notification and system generated PO for audit assessor payments, as this is currently being done manually)*
- Finance System then generates Purchase Orders for Assessor payments;
- The Assessors must then submit invoices against PO notification within business calendar requirements.
- The Operations team must receipt the Purchase Orders:
  - This action confirms services have been delivered as per the approved meeting list;
  - Receipting can begin the day after the meeting and must be completed.
- The Accounts Payable Clerk will prepare a remittance advice, and verify properties on the remittance advice match properties on PO email Notification, Awards list, Finance System PO and Assessor Invoice;
- The Accounts Payable Clerk will do a check of the Assessor Fee based on the approved commission rate as received from business and as checked and approved and signed by Operations Manager and CQAO;
- Financial System generated PO's may need to be created to address amendments - TGCSA business must advise the Administrators of the grading system to make a note on Grading System for PO's which were generated in the Finance System which did not go through the integration process;
- The Accounts Payable Clerk must load all the assessor invoices on Finance System;
- The Accounts Payable Clerk must match Invoices against Finance System generated PO:
  - If the invoice and PO do not match the Accounts Payable Clerk must not pay the invoice until the mismatch is resolved, however if the PO is less than the invoice payment can be made as per the PO amount:
    - The clerk may request the TGCSA Operations to request from the assessor to resubmit the invoice with the correct amount (if applicable).
  - If the invoice and PO match the Accounts Payable Clerk must do the following:
    - Prepare payment requisitions and creditors trial balance, reconciliations and compile a file for payment;
    - TGCSA Accountant will review and check if above preparations are done correctly;
    - Compiled file with all the documentation is then submitted to Ops Manager and CQAO for approval;
    - The Operations manager must review and sign the invoice which confirms that the following checks were done:
      - The commission rate according to the Assessor portfolio size, is the rate at which the assessor has charged SA Tourism;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- That all the properties reflecting on the assessor invoice reflects on the approved awards committee list;
- That the assessor portfolio account is accurate and correct for each assessor as reflected on the signed list submitted to Finance (signed by CQAO and TGCSA OM) reflecting the figures at the end of each month which is used for determining the assessor's commission rate;
- That signed submitted list is accurate and correct and that this list is agreeing to the numbers reflected in the grading system;
- That the assessor portfolio numbers in the grading system are correct, accurate as at end of each month end and agrees to the business provided definition of what is making up each assessor portfolio numbers.
  - CQOA gives final approval of the invoice by reviewing and signing the invoice;
- The TGCSA Accountant must then Load EFT payments:
  - This can be done by AP Clerk in the absence of TGCSA Accountant.
- The TGCSA Finance Manager must then check the payment documentation as follows:
  - Check that the invoice total agrees to the PO email notification, the Assessor invoice, Finance System PO, and the payment reconciliation.
    - If all the above is done the TGCSA Finance Manager must sign the payment requisition.
- The TGCSA Finance Manager must then check EFT against payment requisition - specifically amount is correct and check banking details are the same as on the assessor invoice:
  - If the above point is in order the TGCSA Finance Manager can release the payments as the first release (in absence of TGCSA Finance Manager, the SAT Manager Finance can do the first release) and then the second release is done by CFO and in the absence of the CFO by the CQAO.
- The CFO (CQAO) must also check the EFT against the payment requisition to ensure the amount is correct and check banking details are correct, before releasing the payment.
  - If everything is in order the CFO (CQAO) must provide the second approval to release the payments;
  - This must be done by the last day of each calendar month.
- The Accounts Payable Clerk must capture the payment confirmation on Finance System once payment has been made and POP has been printed and attached to the payment requisition.

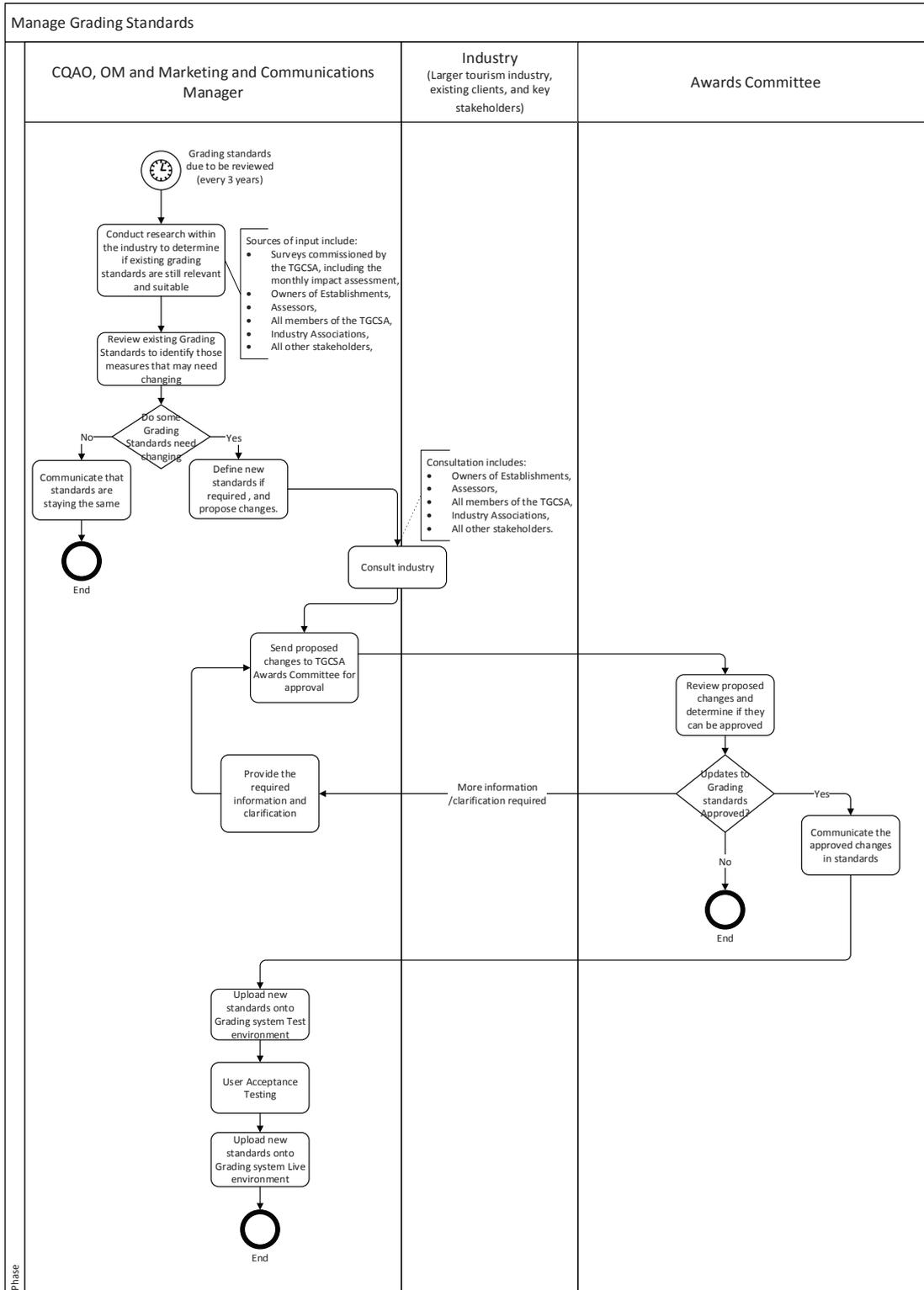
4.10. Establishment Assessment Impact Measurement



#### 4.10.1. Establishment Assessment Impact Measurement - Textual Description

- Establishment Assessment Impact Measurement is conducted each month after grading has been completed:
  - The content and structure of the survey must be revised every 6 months and subsequently updated if required.
- The operation team has to send the Post Awards list to the External Contractor to commence with the survey;
- The External Contractor will import respondents into their system;
- The External Contractor will send survey invitation emails to the Establishments from the imported list within 1 working day of receiving the import template;
- The External Contractor will send reminder emails to respondents who have not submitted the survey 7 calendar days after the survey invitation emails were sent;
- The External Contractor will close the survey and generate reports (Report & Executive Summary) 1 working day after the close of survey (14 calendar days after the previous Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting);
- The External Contractor will send both the Assessor and the operations manager the individual results of the survey;
- The External Contractor will send reports to TGCSA 2 working days prior to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting;
- The Marketing and Communications Manager will provide feedback on Impact assessment to TGCSA teams.

4.11. Manage Grading Standards



#### 4.11.1. Manage Grading Standards - Textual Description

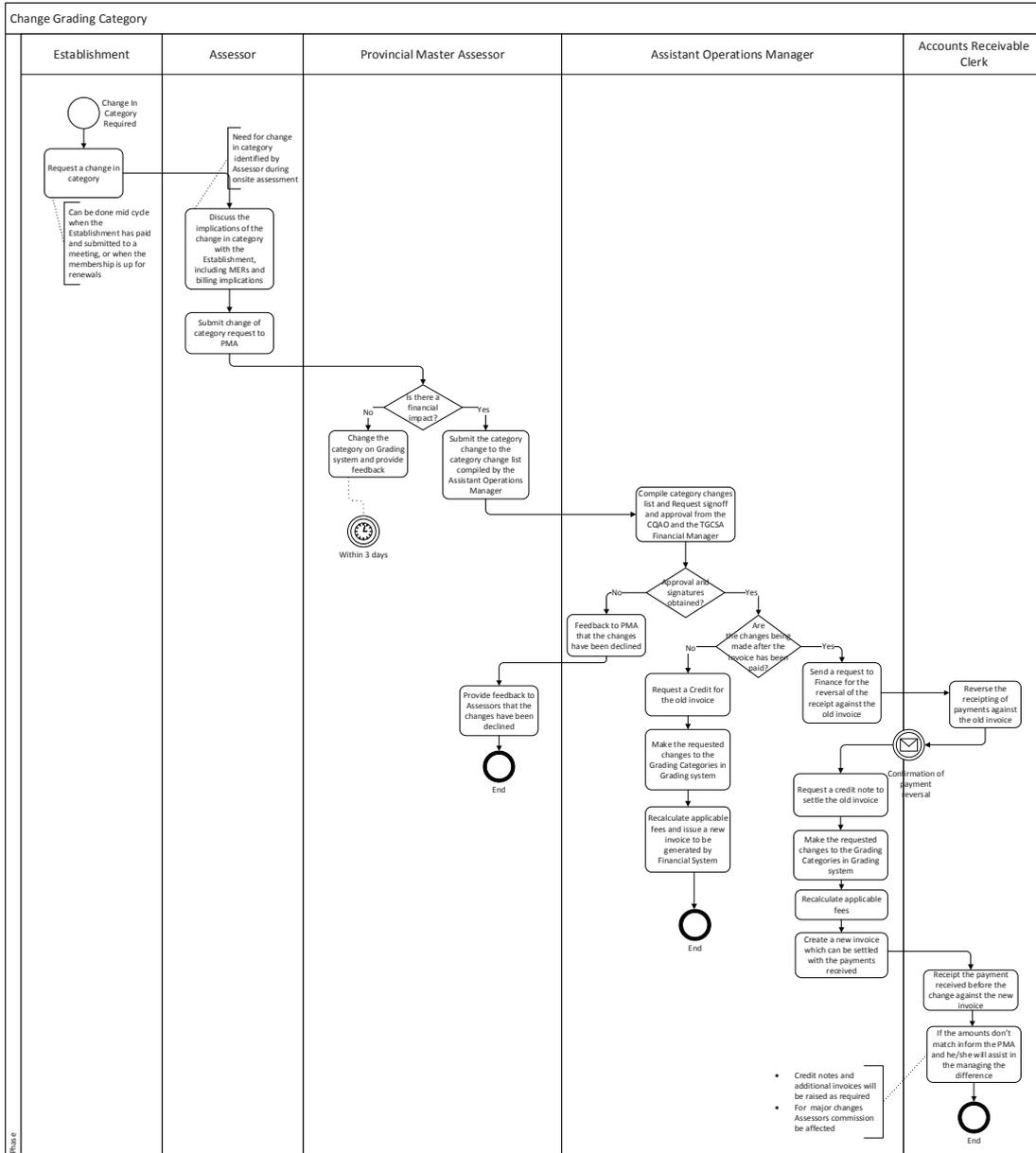
- Grading standards are reviewed every 3 years;
- The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications Manager will begin the process by conducting research within the industry to determine if existing grading standards are still relevant and suitable. Sources include:
  - Surveys commissioned by the TGCSA, including the monthly impact assessment;
  - Owners of Establishments;
  - Assessors;
  - All members of the TGCSA;
  - Industry Associations;
  - All other stakeholders.
- The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications Manager and TGCSA team will review the existing Grading Standards to identify those measures that may need changing;
- If none of the standards need changing, they will communicate to stakeholders and industry that standards are staying the same;
- If some of the standards need changing, they will define new standards if required and propose changes to the existing standards;
- The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications will consult the industry and will consider industry inputs:
  - Owners of Establishments;
  - Assessors;
  - All members of the TGCSA;
  - Industry Associations;
  - All other stakeholders.
- The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications will then send the proposed changes to the Quality Assurance Sub Committee for approval;
- The Quality Assurance Sub Committee review the proposed changes and determine if they can be approved:
  - If the Quality Assurance Sub Committee requires more information or clarification on the updates:
    - The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications Manager will provide the required information and clarification, and re-send proposed changes to Quality Assurance Sub Committee for approval.
  - If the Quality Assurance Sub Committee does not approve the changes then the standards will remain unchanged:
    - The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications Manager Communicate to stakeholders and industry that standards are staying the same.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- o If the updates are approved by the Quality Assurance Sub Committee, the CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications Manager communicate the approved changes in standards to the industry:
  - The CQAO, Operations Manager and Marketing and Communications Manager will oversee the following activities:
    - TGCSA will upload new standards onto the Grading System Test environment;
    - TGCSA will conduct User Acceptance Testing on the Grading System Test environment;
    - TGCSA will upload new standards onto the Grading System Live environment.

4.12. Change Grading Category

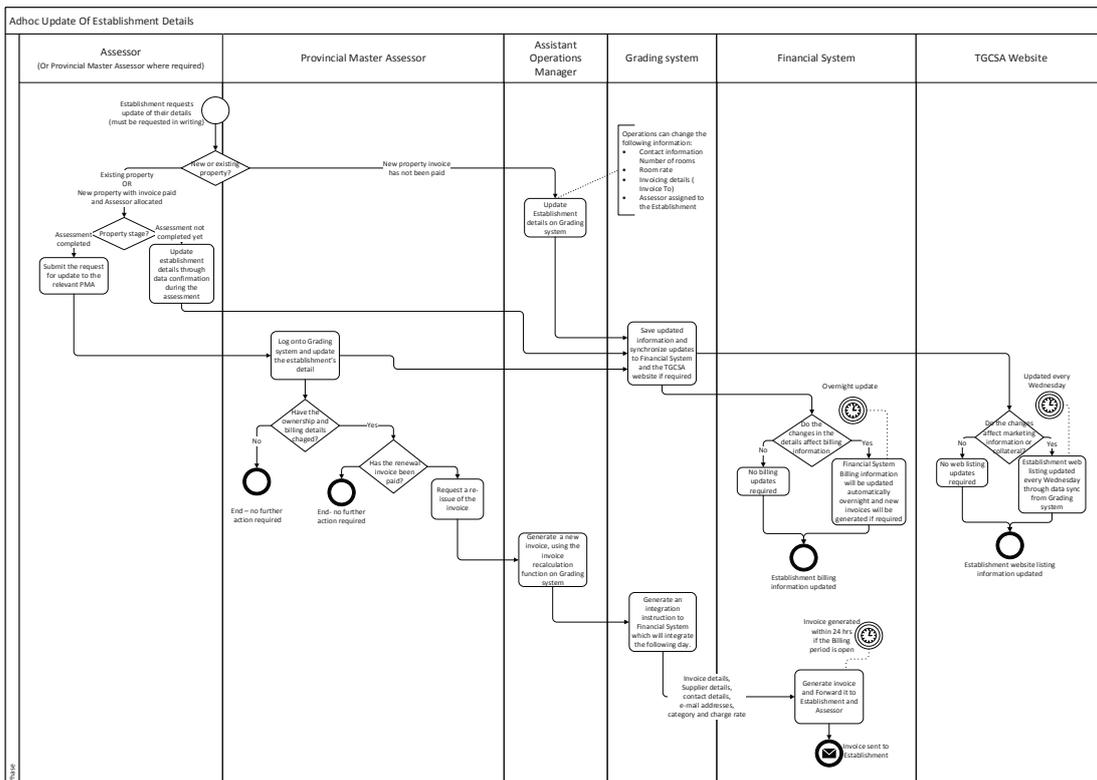


#### 4.12.1. Change Grading Category - Textual Description

- Establishments are graded for a particular category and the category changes can only be done via recalculation of the invoice while the invoice is still outstanding. The recalculation is done by the TGCSA OM and TGCSA OM;
- Change category can be applied when membership is up for renewal, however these changes should be done by the Ops team before the renewal invoice generates in the month of within the month of 90 days before the expiry date;
- Where payment has been receipted and change of category is requested thereafter such properties are seen as mid cycle, to be able to effect these changes a motivation requesting change of category must be submitted by Operations Team to CQAO and CFO for approval as the revenue stream will be affected by the changes. This process currently is manually applied, G4S and Operations Team are currently busy to automate the full change of category process;
  - Also in case where a property has been submitted to a monthly property EXCO approval Meeting, the same process must be followed i.e. a motivation requesting change of category must be submitted for approval as the revenue stream will be affected by these changes
- The Assessor will discuss the implications of the change in category with the Establishment including MERs and billing implications:
  - The need for change in category is usually identified during onsite assessment;
  - The Assessor should propose a change in category when they realize that there is a need for a change in category.
- The Assessor will notify their **PMA** of the required change and will submit the request for a change of category in writing to the **PMA**;
- If there is no financial implication, the PMA will change the category and provide feedback within 3 calendar days of receiving the request after obtaining CQAO and CFO approval;
- If there is a financial implication the requested change in category will be logged to a category changes list compiled by the Assistant Operations Manager or Operations Manager and the changes must be approved by the CQAO and CFO before it can be implemented;
- If the required approvals and signatures not obtained the Assistant Operations Manager provide feedback to PMA that the changes have been declined:
  - The PMAs will in turn provide feedback to Assessors that the changes have been declined.
- If the required approvals and signatures are obtained, then the changes can be applied as follow:
  - If the changes are being made before the invoice has been paid (approval not required):
    - The Assistant Operations Manager will change category as requested and will recalculate on the assessment screen/finance screen on Grading System, thereafter the credit note to settle the old invoice will be automatically issued upon integration of Grading System & Finance System over night;
  - If the changes are being made after the invoice has been paid (approval is required as the above):
    - The Operations Team must obtain an approval through an Executive approval;

- Where approval is obtained for category changes where there are no financial implications, only revenue account is incorrect (the revenue would have been allocated to the incorrect Revenue account). NB: This process is currently under review.

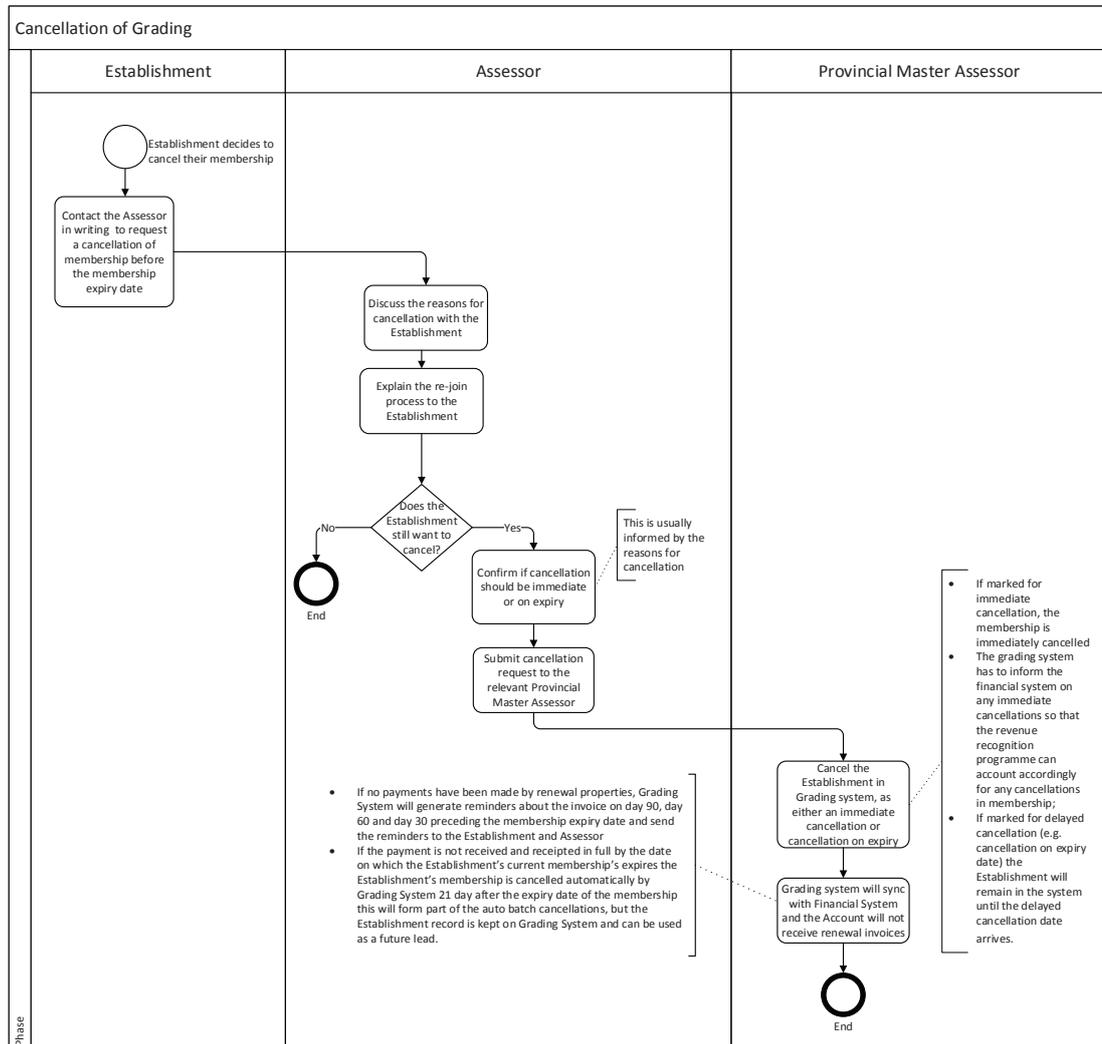
4.13. Adhoc Update of Establishment Details



#### 4.13.1. Adhoc Update of Establishment Details - Textual Description

- An Establishment may request an update of their details at any time:
  - It must be a written request.
- If the Establishment is an existing property or a new property for which the invoice has been paid and an Assessor has been allocated, the changes can be made by the Assessor who manages the Establishment through data confirmation during the assessment (the PMA can also make the changes if required):
  - The Assessor (or PMA) must log onto Grading System and update the Establishment's details;
  - At all other times (before and after assessment), the PMA can make the changes on Grading System;
  - If the changes related to change of ownership, and the renewal invoice has not yet been paid, then the PMA must request a re-issue of the renewal invoice from Assistant Operations Manager to the new contact details of the new owners/management of the establishment:
    - Assistant Operations Manager or Operations Manager will generate a new invoice, using the invoice recalculation function on Grading System;
    - Grading System will generate an integration instruction to Finance System which will integrate the following day;
    - Finance System will generate a new renewal invoice and forward it to Establishment and Assessor.
  - If the changes related to change of ownership, and the renewal invoice has already been paid, then there is no need to re-issue the invoice. The current membership must run its course; at renewal the new invoices will be raised with the new contact details of the new owners/management of the establishment.
  - If the changes are for a new property and the invoice has not been paid, the Assistant Operations or Operation Manager will be able to update the following Establishment details:
    - Contact information;
    - Number of rooms;
    - Room rate;
    - Invoicing details (Invoice To);
    - The Assessor that is assigned to an Establishment e.g. at Assessor resignation.
  - The Operations Manager and or Assistant Operations Manager will then request a new invoice, which will be generated from Finance System.
- Once changes are made Grading System will save updated information and update Finance System and the Website during database synchronization if required:
  - If the changes in the details affect billing information Finance System billing information will be updated automatically overnight integrated invoice number;
  - If the changes affect marketing information or collateral the Establishment web listing updated every Wednesday through data sync from Grading System.

4.14. Cancellation of Membership

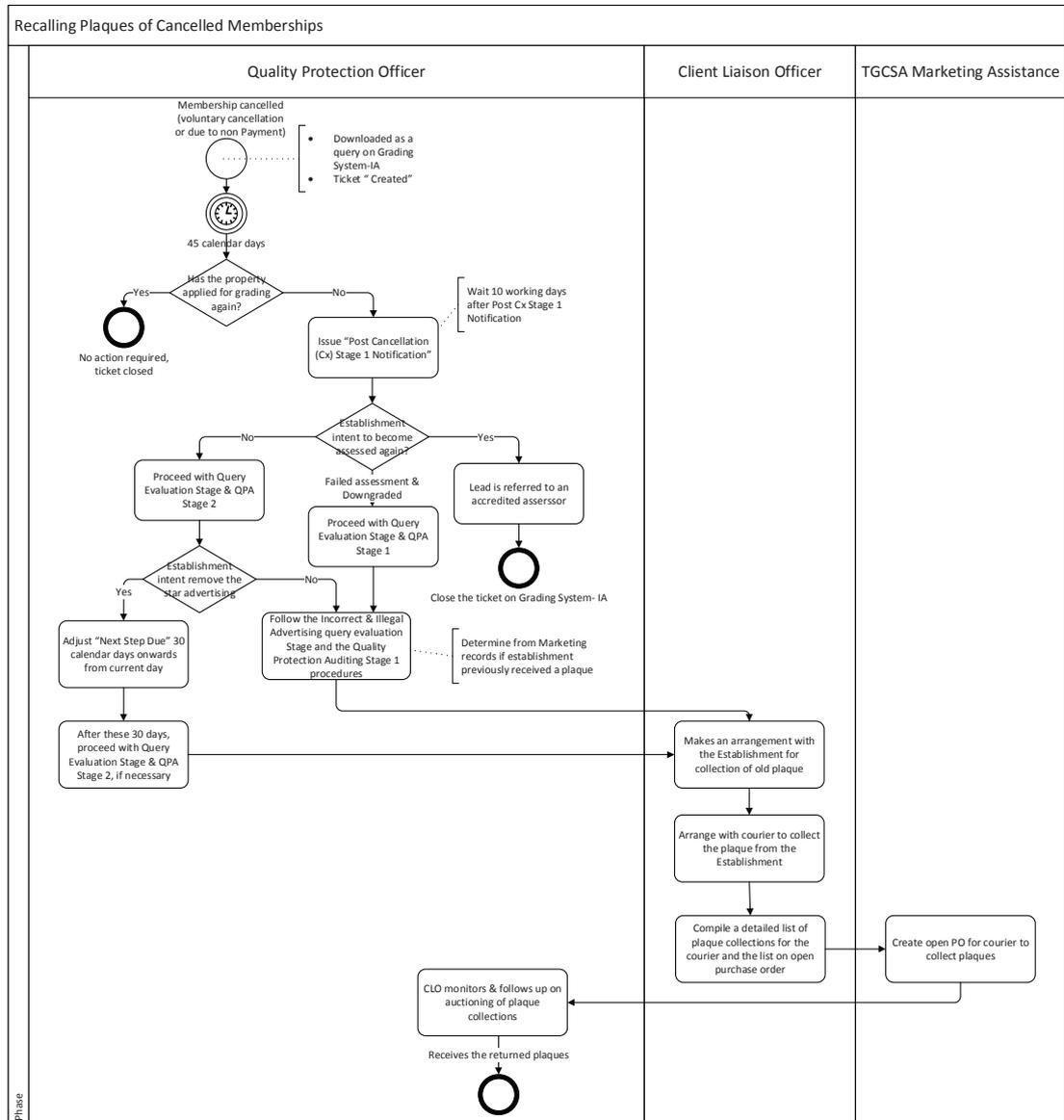


4.14.1. Cancellation of Membership - Textual Description

- If the Establishment decides to cancel their membership, they must contact the Assessor to request a cancellation of membership in writing before the expiry of the current membership;
- The Assessor must discuss the reasons for cancellation with the Establishment;
- The Assessor must also explain the re-join process to the Establishment;
- If the Establishment still wants to cancel the membership, the Assessor must confirm if cancellation should be immediate or on expiry:
  - This is usually informed by the reasons for cancellation.
- The PMA will submit their list of cancellation to the □ Operations Manager and or Assistance Operations Manager who will present it at the Monthly Property EXCO meeting with stipulated reasons for cancellations:

- Once submissions have been manually signed off by Operations Manager & CQAO for cancellation on the last day of the monthly property EXCO meeting, the list can be sent to G4S for cancellation at the back end;
- The PMA will cancel the Establishment in Grading System, as either an immediate cancellation or cancellation on expiry:
  - If marked for immediate cancellation, the membership is immediately cancelled;
  - The grading system has to inform the financial system on any immediate cancellations so that the revenue recognition programme can account accordingly for any cancellations in membership;
  - If marked for delayed cancellation (e.g. cancellation on expiry date) the Establishment will remain in the system until the delayed cancellation date arrives.
- Grading System will synchronise with Finance System and the Establishment will not receive renewal invoices;
- If no payments have been made by renewal properties, Grading System will generate reminders about the invoice on day 60 and day 30 preceding the membership expiry date and send the reminders to the Establishment and Assessor;
- If the payment is not received and receipted in full (less the discounts where applicable) by the date on which the Establishment's current membership's expires the following will happen:
  - The Establishment's membership is cancelled automatically by Grading System 21 day after the expiry date of the membership this will form part of the auto batch cancellations, but the Establishment record is kept on Grading System and can be used as a future lead.

4.15. Recalling Plaques of Cancelled Memberships



4.15.1. Recalling Plaques of Cancelled Memberships - Process Textual Description

- When a membership is cancelled on Grading System it is downloaded on the Grading System-IA “To Do List” as a “created” IA query/ticket;
- At this stage the ticket is on Stage 0 on the Grading System-IA;
- After 45 calendar days from the date of the cancellation on Grading System the QPO checks if the Establishment has completed an online application to become graded again:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- If there has been an online application completed (membership status “Live”) after the cancellation took place, there will be no further action required and the QPO closes the ticket on Grading System-IA;
- If there has not been an online application completed after the cancellation took place, the QPO will issue the Post Cancellation (Cx) Stage 1 Notification Email to the Establishment:
  - If the Establishment replies to the QPO with intent to become assessed again, the grading lead is referred to an accredited assessor, based on recommendation from the TGCSA Assistant Operation Manager or any of the Provincial Master Assessors and the QPO closes the ticket;
  - If the Establishment replies to the QPO with intent to remove all the star advertising the QPO engages with the Establishment accordingly and adjusts “Next Step Due” on Grading System-IA to 30 calendar days from current date;
    - After the above-mentioned 30 calendar days the QPO will proceed with the Query Evaluation Stage and QPA Stage 2, if any illegal display(s) of stars can be accurately detected/proven.
  - If the Establishment does not reply at all within ten working days after Post Cancellation Stage 1 Notification E-mail the QPO will continue with these procedures:
    - Incorrect and Illegal Advertising Query Evaluation Stage as in paragraph 4.18;
    - Quality Protection Auditing Stage 2 as in paragraph 4.19.
  - If a plaque was not issued or it cannot be determined with certainty that a plaque was previously received by the establishment, then no further action is required and the ticket is closed.
- For a cancellation due to “Failed” assessment (Source Type “Awards List: Fail”), as well as for downgrades, the QPO will follow the full procedure to issue a formal letter to the Establishment, by starting with these procedures:
  - Incorrect and Illegal Advertising Query Evaluation Stage as in paragraph 4.17;
  - Quality Protection Auditing Stage 1 as in paragraph 4.18.
    - At this point the QPO or CLO must determine from TGCSA Marketing records whether the establishment actually did previously receive a plaque, before the CLO can contact the establishment further to arrange return of the plaque;
    - If it cannot be determined with certainty that the establishment did receive a grading plaque previously, the CLO cannot contact them to make further arrangements for returning a plaque.
- If a plaque was definitely previously issued and the establishment is not re-applying for an assessment, then the CLO in the Marketing Team must contact the Establishment, to make arrangements for collection of the old plaque:
  - The CLO will then arrange for a SA TOURISM appointed courier to collect the plaque from the Establishment:
    - A detailed list of plaque Collections is sent to the courier and billed to an open Purchase Order that is created by the TGCSA Marketing Assistant.

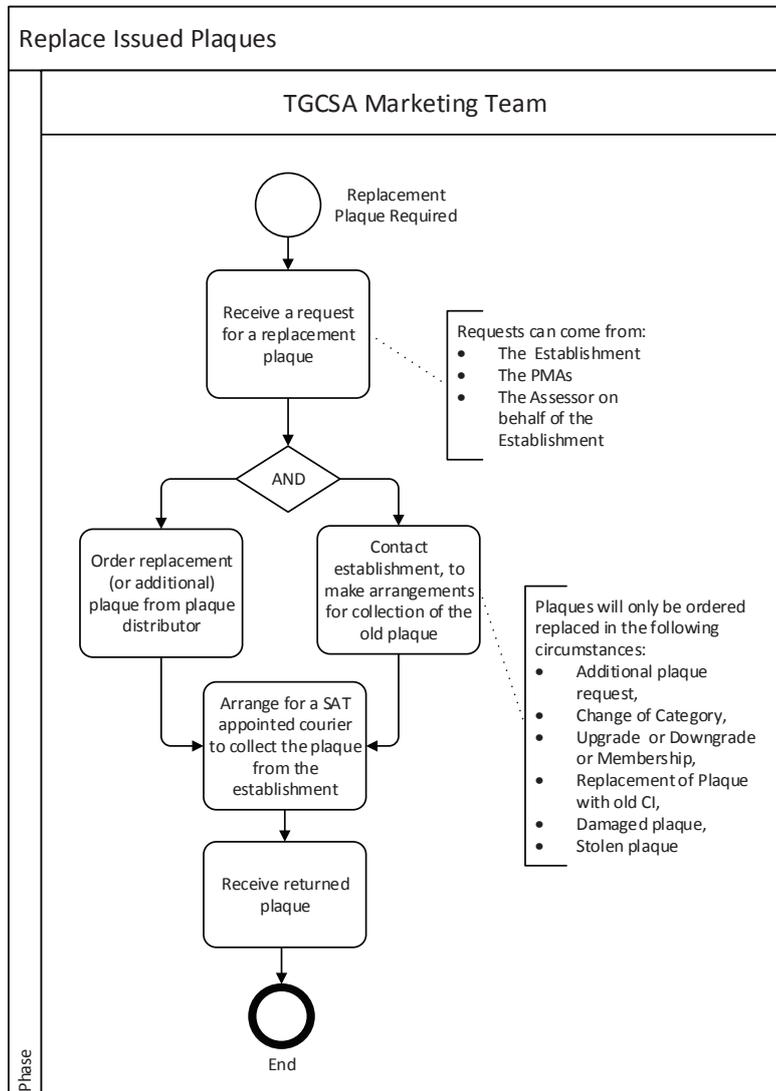
---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- The CLO follows up and monitors plaque collections as per detailed List of Plaque Collections to be actioned.
- The process ends when the CLO or QPO receives the returned plaque. The received plaque is then locked in a cupboard and the key to the cupboard is kept by the QPO.
- BUT if the online Plaque and Certificate Management System is in full use the “Case” for “Plaque Recovery” will be raised on the Grading System, automatically logging the “Case” on the online Plaque and Certificate Management System for the plaque service provider to action:

## 4.16. Replace Issued Plaques



## 4.16.1. Replace Issued Plaques - Textual Description

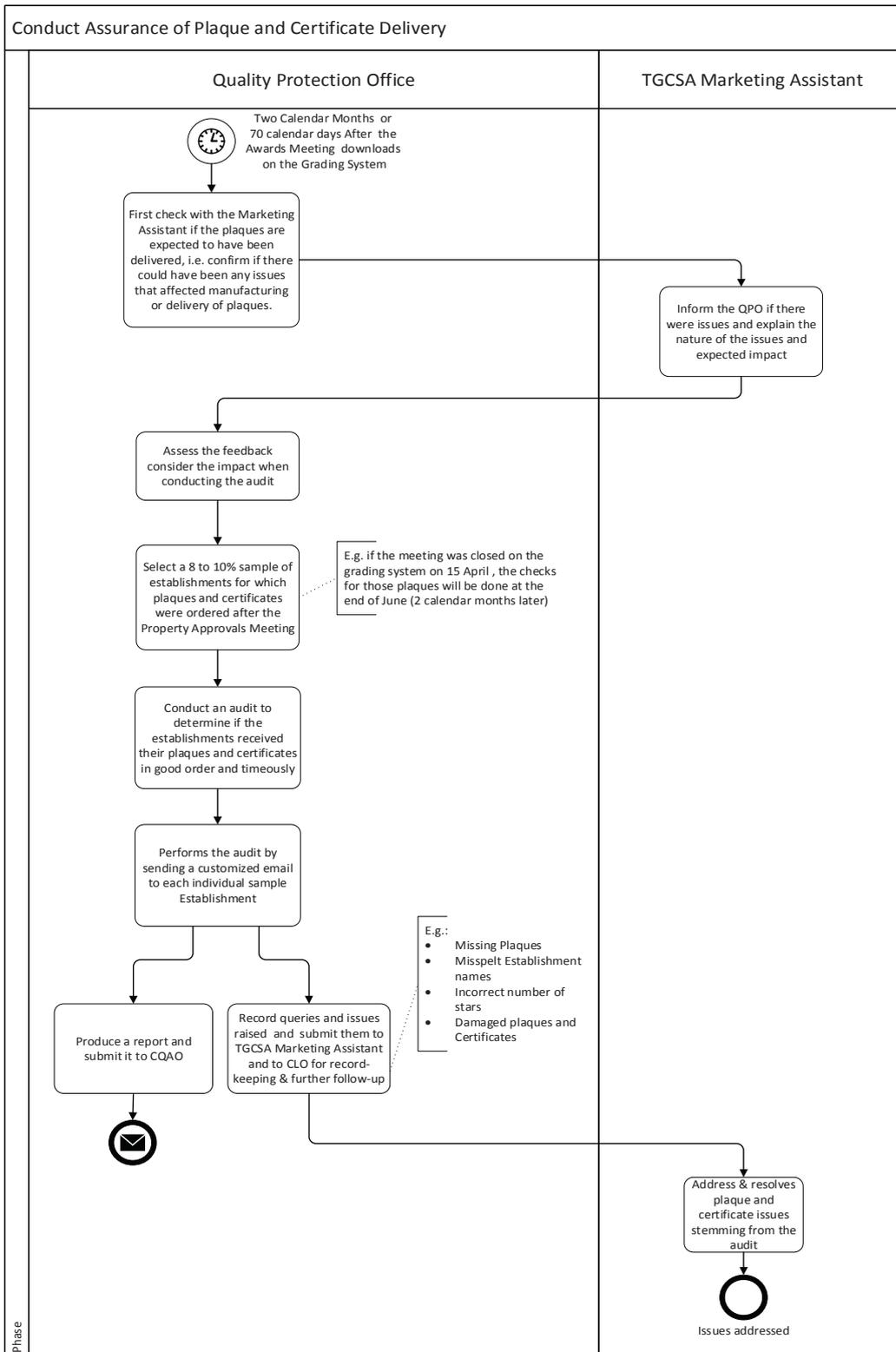
- The TGCSA Marketing Team will receive a request for a replacement plaque:
  - o The requests can come from:
    - The Establishment;
    - The PMAs;
    - The Assessor on behalf of the Establishment.
- The TGCSA Marketing Team will contact the Establishment, to make arrangements for collection of the old plaque (unless it was stolen):
  - o Plaques will only be ordered or replaced in the following circumstances:
    - The Establishment has requested an additional plaque if they have more than one entrance;
    - Change of Category;

- Upgrade or Downgrade of membership;
- Stolen plaque;
- Damaged plaque;
- Replacement of plaque with old CI.
- The TGCSA Marketing Team will arrange for a TGCSA appointed courier to collect the plaque from the Establishment.
- At the same time the TGCSA Marketing Team will order replacement (or additional) plaque from plaque distributor;
- The TGCSA Marketing Team will receive the returned plaque.

#### 4.16.2. Internal control and management of returned plaques

- The MA, CLO and QPO can all receive plaques that are returned for various reasons pertaining to each of these positions' duties;
- Plaques are only returned to the TGCSA from accommodation properties as a last option within SOP, due to the shortage of storage space within the South African Tourism infrastructure;
- Plaques that must be returned for any reason would mainly be handled and recycled by the plaque manufacturer that is appointed by the TGCSA;
- For plaques that are received at the South African Tourism premises, there is a centralised plaque register, which is saved under the "MARKETING" folder on the TGCSA's G-drive, where the serial number and/or property name pertaining to the returned plaque is recorded;
- The returned plaque is then stored in the South African Tourism basement storeroom or in a locked cupboard in the TGCSA office, depending on where there is space available.
  - This storage area (basement storeroom or TGCSA office cupboard) is also recorded on the centralised plaque register, mentioned above.
- The Manager: Administration of South African Tourism keeps the keys of the basement storeroom;
- The QPO keeps the keys of the returned plaques cupboard in the TGCSA office.
- Plaques that have been stored for two years or longer will from July 2016 and onwards be recycled, with the permission and sign-off of the CQAO.

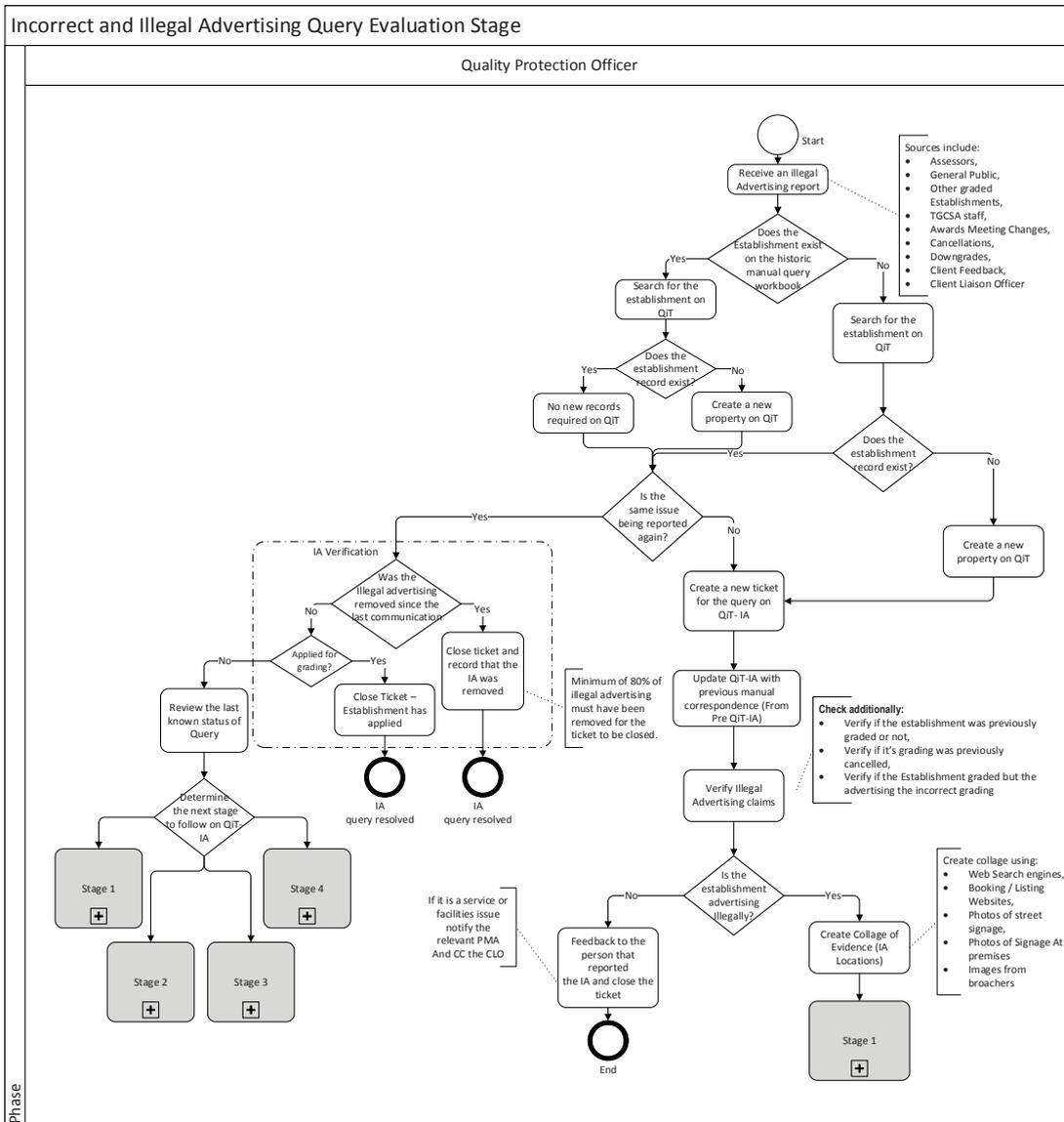
4.17. Conduct Assurance of Plaque and Certificate Delivery



**4.17.1. Conduct Assurance of Plaque and Certificate Delivery - Textual Description**

- The QPO must conduct an audit of the delivery of Plaques and certificates, two calendar months or 70 calendar days after the Property Approvals Meeting downloads into Grading System;
- The QPO must first check with the TGCSA Marketing Assistant if the plaques are expected to have been delivered, i.e. confirm if there could have been any issues that affected manufacturing or delivery of plaques;
- The TGCSA Marketing Assistant will inform the QPO if there were issues and explain the nature of the issues and expected impact;
- The QPO will assess the feedback and consider the impact when conducting the audit;
- The QPO will then select an 8 to 10% sample of establishments for which plaques and certificates were ordered after the Property Approvals Meeting download:
  - E.g. if the meeting was on 15 April, the checks for those plaques will be done at the end of June.
- The QPO will conduct the 8 to 10% audit to determine if the establishments received their plaques and certificates in good order and timeously;
- The QPO performs the audit by sending a customised email to every individual Establishment in the sample;
- The QPO will produce a report and submit it to CQAO on a monthly basis;
- The QPO will record queries and issues raised by sample Establishments and submit them to TGCSA Marketing Assistant and Client Liaison Officer (CLO) to resolve:
  - E.g.:
    - Plaques and/or original certificates not yet received
    - Missing Plaques;
    - Misspelt Establishment names;
    - Incorrect number of stars;
    - Damaged plaques or certificates.
- The TGCSA Marketing Assistant will address and resolve plaque and certificate issues stemming from the audit;
- The CLO will keep record and follow-up with TGCSA Marketing Assistant on the resolving of these queries.

4.18. Query Evaluation Stage



**4.18.1. Query Evaluation Stage - Textual Description**

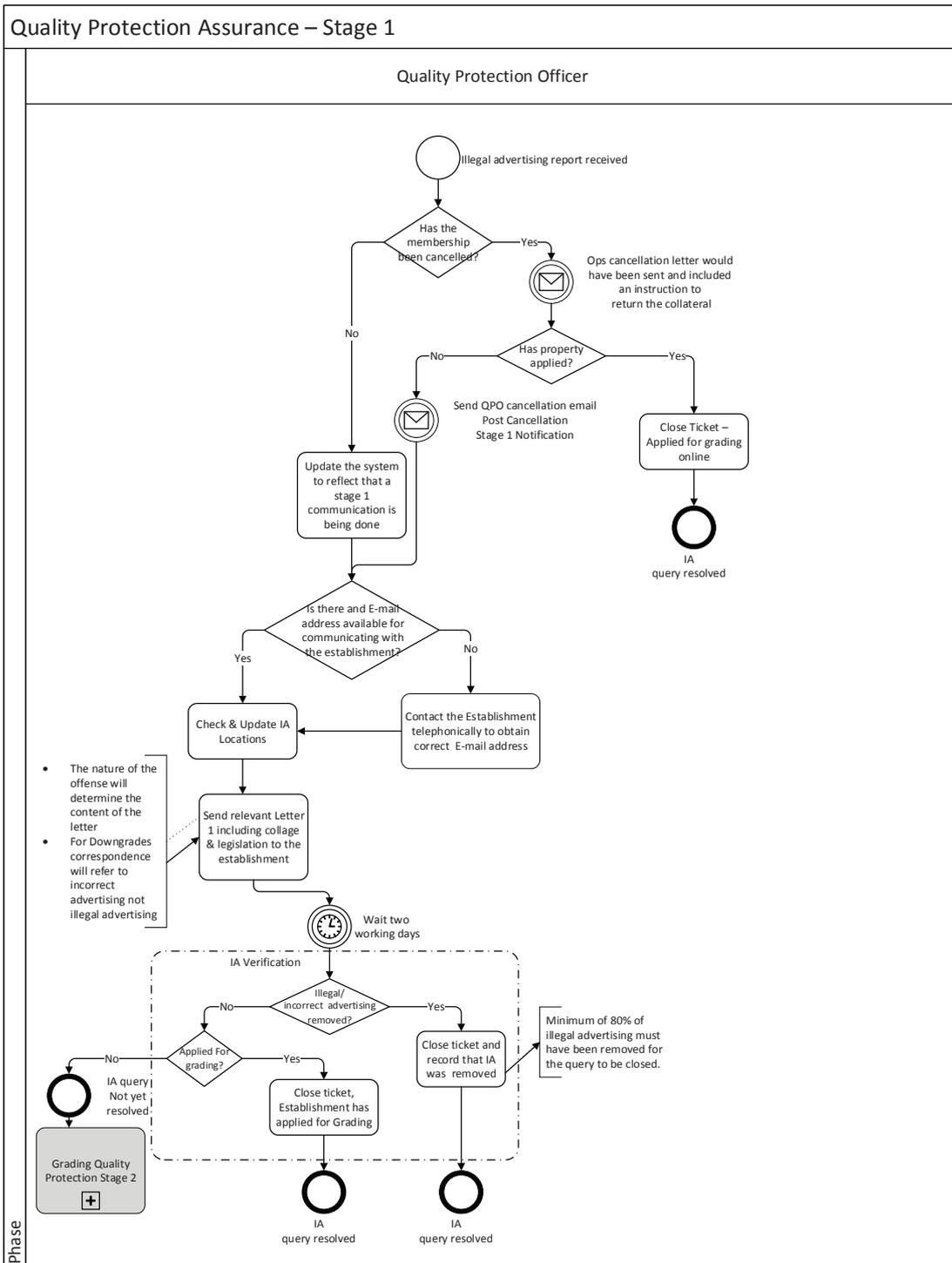
- The QPO receives an Illegal Advertising query from the following sources:
  - Assessors;
  - General Public;
  - Other graded Establishments;
  - TGCSA staff;
  - Awards Meeting Changes;
  - Cancellations;
  - Downgrades;
  - Client Feedback;
  - Client Liaison Officer (CLO).
- Check if the Establishment exist on the historic manual query workbook (previous MS Excel records);
- Search for the establishment on Grading System;
- Determine if the Establishment record exist on Grading System:
  - If it does not exist, create a new property on the main Grading System;
  - If it does exist, check if the query has been worked on before on either Grading System-IA or the previous manual MS Excel workbook process.
    - If it has been worked on before on Grading System-IA, proceed to IA verification steps (repeat of query evaluation stage and then following the next correspondence stage);
    - If it has been worked on before on the previous manual MS Excel process only but the establishment exists on the Grading System:
      - Create a new ticket for the query on Grading System-IA
      - Update Grading System-IA with previous manual correspondence (From Pre - Grading System-IA)
    - If it is a new query, create a new ticket for the query on Grading System-IA and proceed to IA verification steps.
- Illegal Advertising (IA) verification steps:
  - If the query has been worked on before, check if the Establishment has since applied for grading:
    - If there is a live application on Grading System for the Establishment, the IA query is resolved and QPO closes ticket;
    - If there is no live application on Grading System for the Establishment:
      - Review the last known status and correspondence of the query;
      - Check if 80% or more of IA locations have been rectified:
      - If 80% or more of IA locations have been rectified, the IA query is resolved and QPO closes ticket;
      - If less than 80% of IA have been rectified, QPO determines the next stage to follow on Grading System-IA, which may include adding IA locations to the collage.
  - If it is a new query
    - Verify if the establishment was previously graded or not;
    - Verify if it's grading was previously cancelled;
    - Verify if the Establishment graded but is advertising the incorrect number of stars;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Determine if the establishment is advertising Illegally:
  - If no, provide feedback to the person that reported the IA and close the ticket:
    - If it is a service or facility issue, notify the CLO after closing ticket.
  - If yes, create Collage of Evidence (IA Locations) using the following:
    - Web Search engines;
    - Booking / Listing Websites;
    - Photos of street signage;
    - Photos of Signage at premises;
    - Images from brochures.
- Proceed to the applicable Stage on Grading System-IA.
  - This results in an e-mail being sent to the establishment (automatically copying the CLO) with the following attachments:
    - An appropriate formal letter;
    - A collage of examples of illegal advertising;
    - A document with applicable sections of legislation.

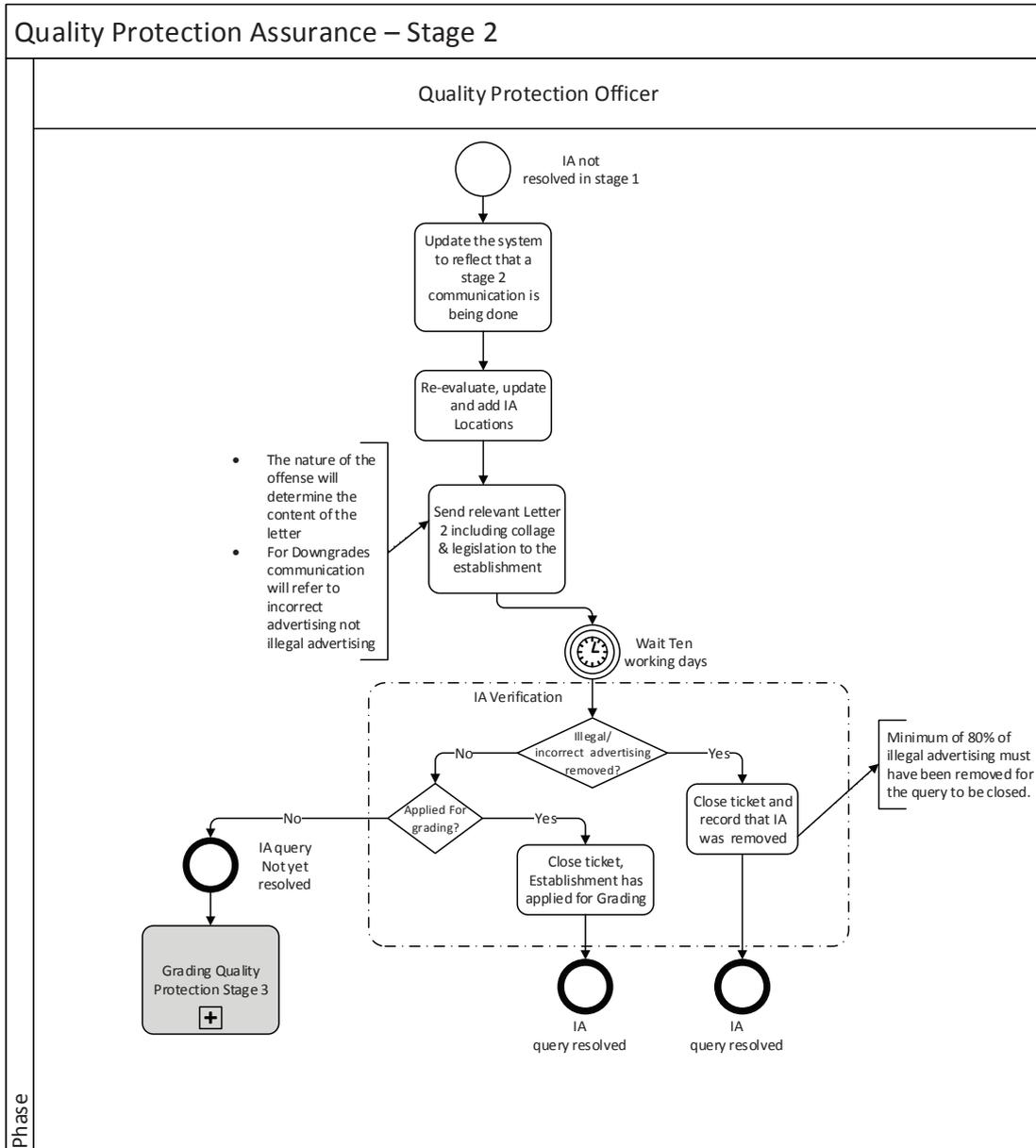
4.19. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 1



**4.19.1. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 1 - Textual Description**

- Determine whether the Establishment previously had a membership that was cancelled:
  - If yes, an Operations Cancellation E-mail would have been sent to the Establishment, including an instruction to remove and return star collateral:
    - If the property has subsequently applied for grading:
      - IA query is resolved and QPO closes the ticket.
    - If there is no online application on Grading System:
      - The QPO sends customised Post Cancellation Stage 1 Notification E-mail to the Establishment.
  - If no, QPO updates Grading System-IA system to reflect that a Stage 1 is been done.
- The QPO determines if there is a valid E-mail address available on the system
  - If no, contact the Establishment telephonically to obtain valid E-mail address
    - The QPO captures the correct E-mail address on Grading System-IA (In the “Alt Email” field)
- The QPO investigates and captures IA locations;
- The QPO sends relevant Letter 1 with collage and legislation document:
  - The nature of the offense will determine the content of the Letter;
  - For Downgrades the correspondence will refer to incorrect advertising not illegal advertising.
- After two working days, the QPO follows the Illegal Advertising (IA) Verification Steps again as stipulated in the Query Evaluation Stage paragraph;
- If the IA query has not been resolved at this point, the Grading System-IA system will indicate that the next stage is expected to be performed according to the SLA of the Grading System-IA;
- The QPO can skip a Grading System-IA Stage if:
  - That IA has been previously dealt with manually by the QPO or any other stakeholder;
  - The merits, profile and gravity of the specific case warrants it.
- In such a situation, the QPO will capture notes on Grading System-IA relating to previous manual correspondence or regarding the profile of the case.

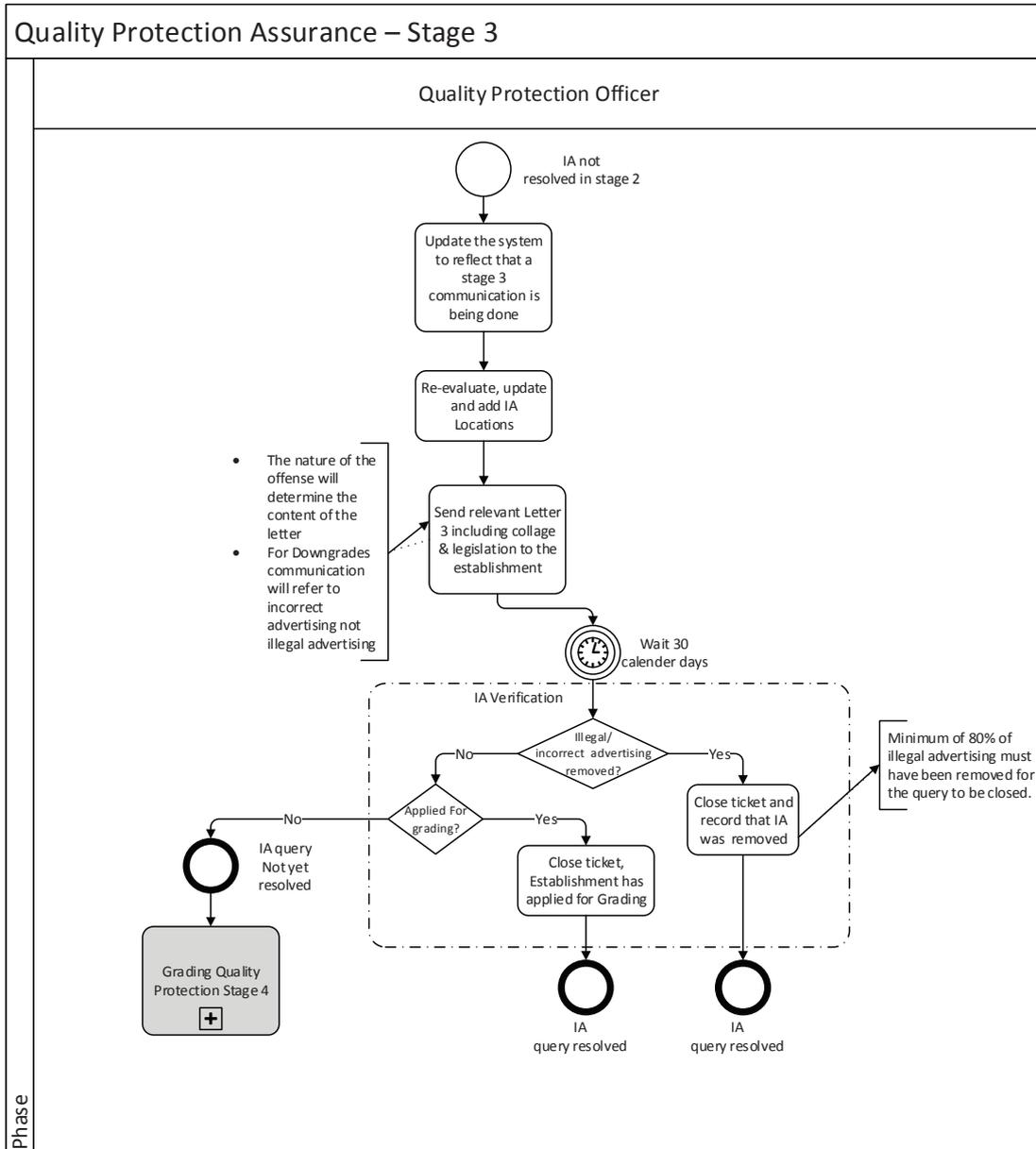
4.20. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 2



**4.20.1. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 2 - Textual Description**

- The QPO updates the Grading System-IA system to reflect that a Stage 2 is being done;
- The QPO re-evaluates, updates and adds IA Locations where applicable;
- The QPO sends relevant Letter 2 including collage & legislation document to the establishment;
  - The nature of the offense will determine the content of the Letter;
  - For Downgrades the correspondence will refer to incorrect advertising not illegal advertising.
- After ten working days, the QPO follows the Illegal Advertising (IA) Verification Steps as stipulated in the Query Evaluation Stage paragraph;
- If the IA query has not been resolved at this point, the Grading System-IA system will indicate that the next stage is expected to be performed according to the SLA of the Grading System-IA;
- The QPO can skip a Grading System-IA Stage if:
  - That IA has been previously dealt with manually by the QPO or any other stakeholder;
  - The merits, profile and gravity of the specific case warrants it.
- In such a situation, the QPO will capture notes on Grading System-IA relating to previous manual correspondence or regarding the profile of the case.

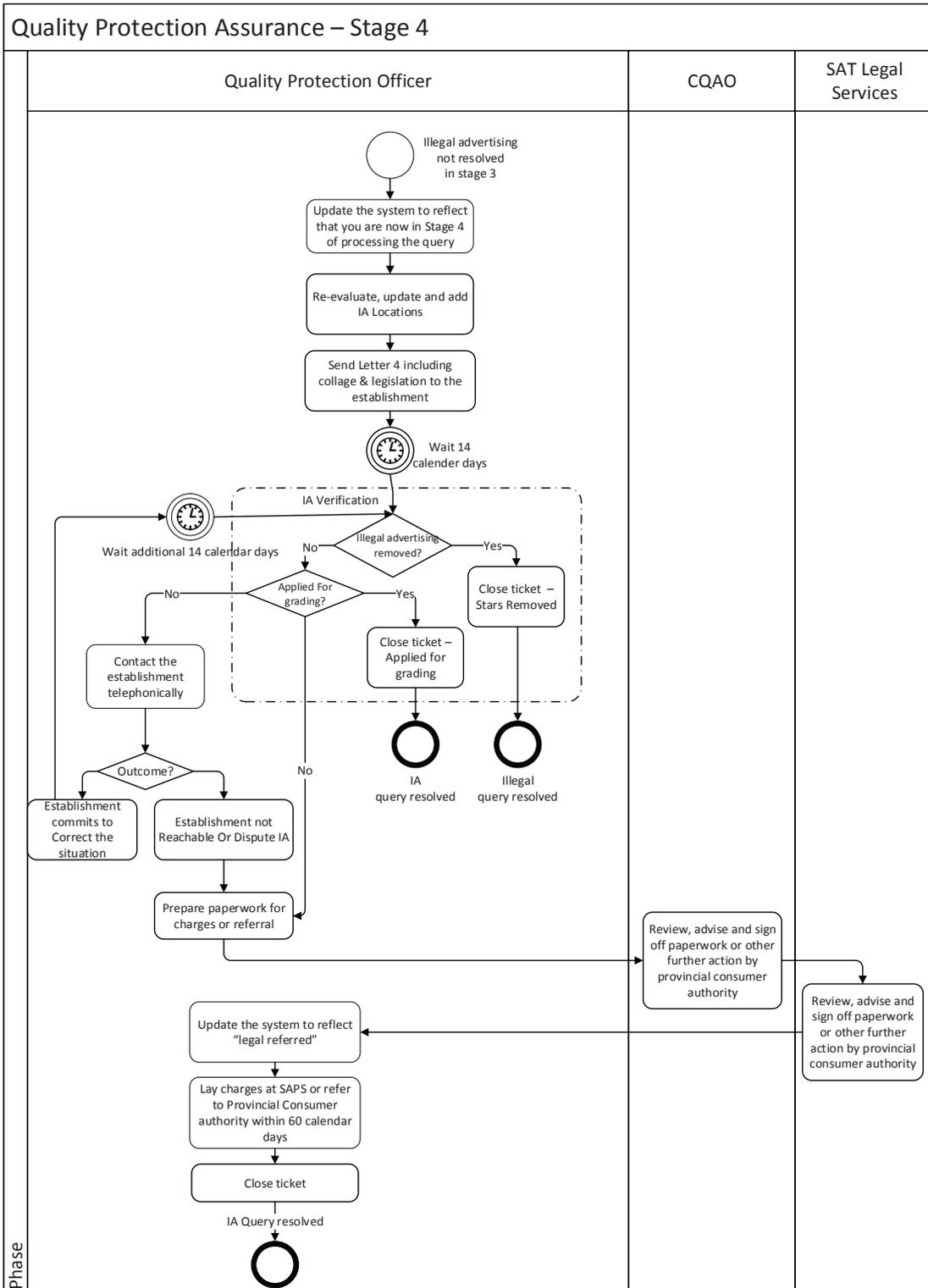
4.21. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 3



**4.21.1. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 3 - Textual Description**

- The QPO updates the Grading System-IA system to reflect that a Stage 3 is being done;
- The QPO re-evaluates, updates and adds IA Locations where applicable;
- The QPO sends relevant Letter 3 including collage & legislation document to the establishment;
  - The nature of the offense will determine the content of the Letter;
  - For Downgrades the correspondence will refer to incorrect advertising not illegal advertising.
- After 30 calendar days, the QPO follows the Illegal Advertising (IA) Verification Steps as stipulated in the Query Evaluation Stage paragraph;
- If the IA query has not been resolved at this point, the Grading System-IA system will indicate that the next stage is expected to be performed according to the SLA of the Grading System-IA;
- The QPO can skip a Grading System-IA Stage if:
  - That IA has been previously dealt with manually by the QPO or any other stakeholder;
  - The merits, profile and gravity of the specific case warrants it.
- In such a situation, the QPO will capture notes on Grading System-IA relating to previous manual correspondence or regarding the profile of the case.

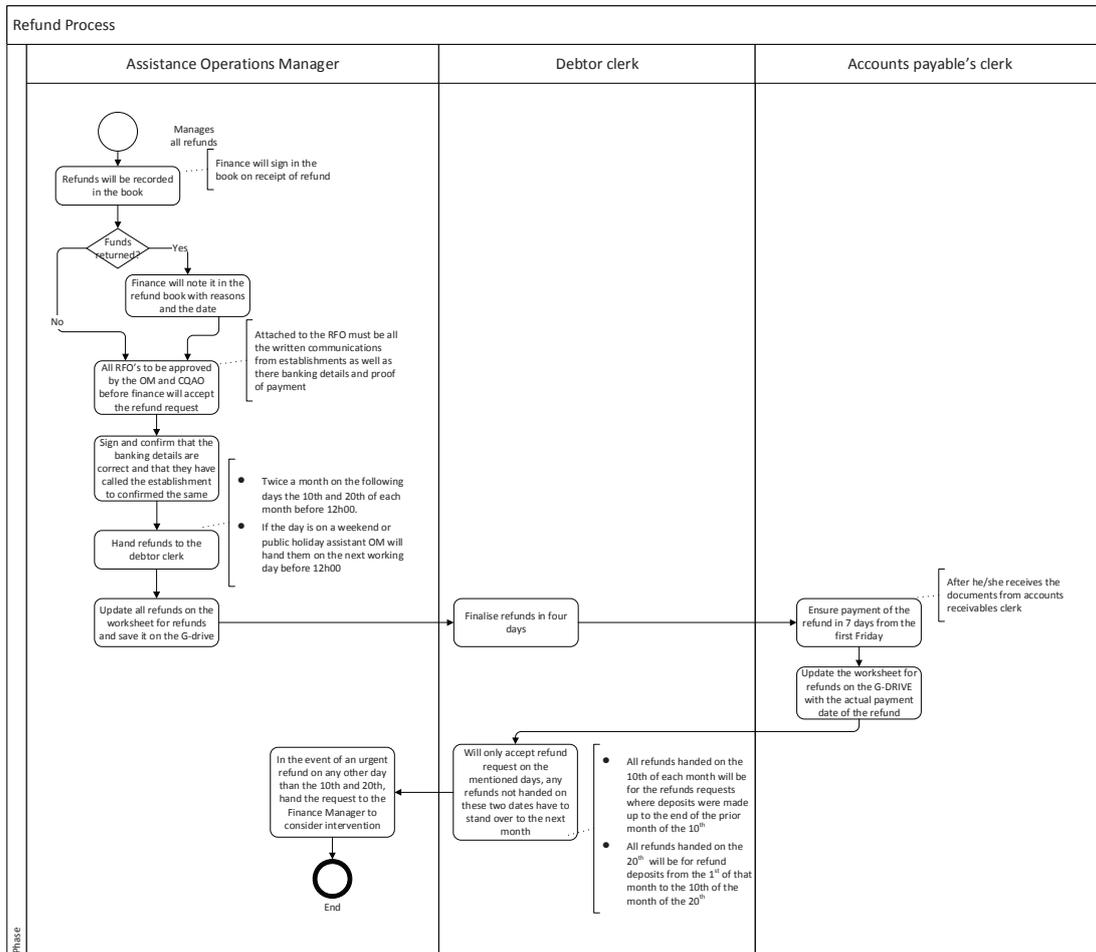
4.22. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 4



**4.22.1. Quality Protection Assurance - Stage 4 - Textual Description**

- The QPO updates the Grading System-IA system to reflect that a Stage 4 is being done;
- The QPO re-evaluates, updates and adds IA Locations where applicable;
- The QPO sends Letter 4 including collage & legislation document to the establishment;
- After 14 calendar days, check if the Establishment has since applied for grading:
  - If there is a live application on Grading System for the Establishment, the IA query is resolved and QPO closes ticket;
  - If there is no live application on Grading System for the Establishment;
    - Review the last known status and correspondence of the query;
    - Check if 80% or more of IA have been rectified:
      - If 80% or more of IA have been rectified, the IA query is resolved and QPO closes ticket;
      - If less than 80% of IA have been rectified, QPO contacts Establishment telephonically to prevent further legal steps:
        - If the Establishment commits to correct the situation, the QPO allows an additional 14 calendar days before repeating the Illegal Advertising (IA) Verification Steps as stipulated in the Query Evaluation Stage paragraph:
          - If these Illegal Advertising (IA) Verification Steps result in a satisfactory outcome: the query is then resolved and the QPO closes the ticket.
          - If these IA Verification Steps result in an unsatisfactory outcome, the QPO prepares paperwork for criminal charges or for referral to the Provincial Consumer Affairs Office/Authority;
        - If the Establishment is not reachable telephonically or still disputes the IA:
          - The QPO prepares paperwork for criminal charges or for referral to the Provincial Consumer Affairs Office/Authority;
- The CQAO reviews, advises on and signs off this paperwork;
- The QPO update the Grading System-IA system to reflect status “legal referred”
- SA TOURISM Legal Services review, advise on and sign off the above mentioned paperwork;
- The QPO has 60 calendar days after sign off by Legal Services to lay charges at SAPS or to refer the matter to the Provincial Consumer Affairs Office for further investigation
- The QPO closes the ticket on Grading System-IA.

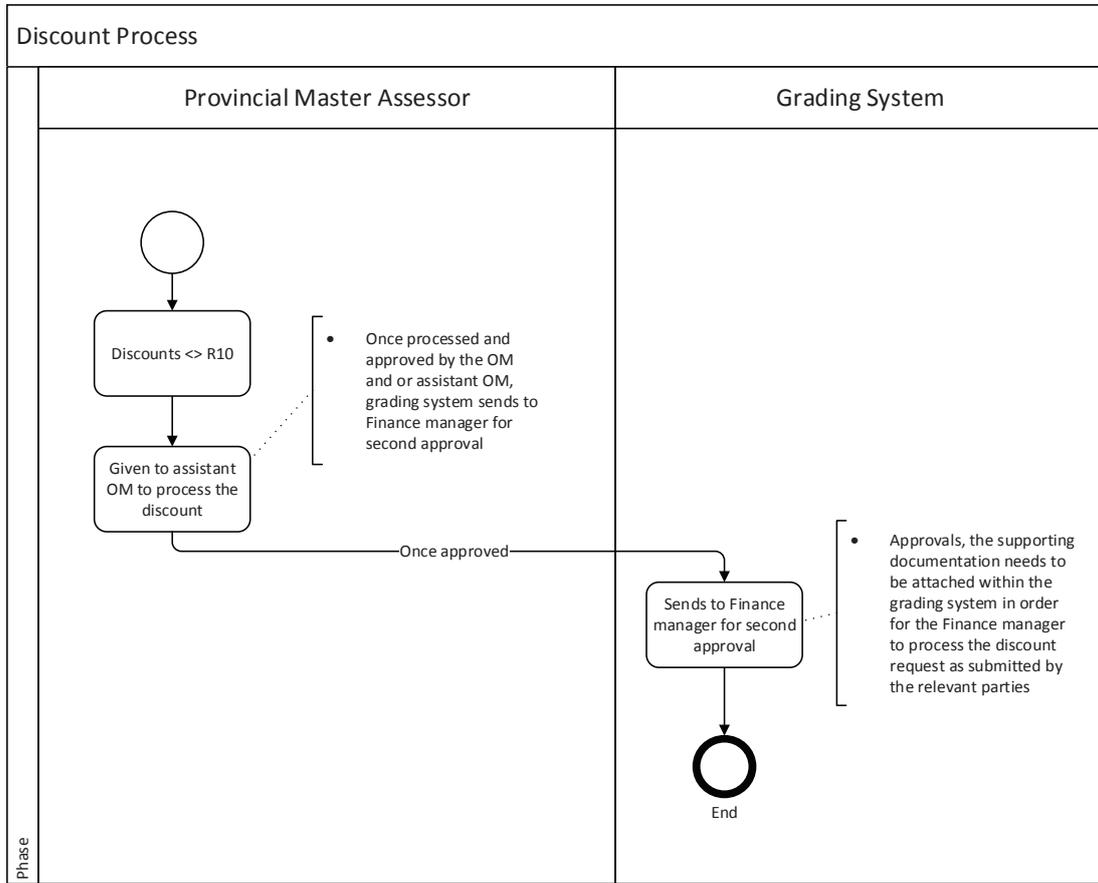
4.23. Refund Process



#### 4.23.1. Refund Process - Textual Description

- Assistant OM manages all refunds.
  - All refunds will be recorded in the book and finance will sign in the book on receipt of the refund.
  - If the refund is returned to Assistant OM, finance will note it in the refund book with reasons and the date.
- All Return for Order (RFO's) to be approved by the Operations Manager and CQAO before finance will accept the refund request;
- Attached to the RFO must be all the written communications from establishments as well as their banking details from their bankers and proof of payment;
- The operations team must also sign and confirm that the banking details are correct and that they have called the establishment to confirm the same;
- The assistant OM will hand refunds to the debtor clerk twice a month on the following days, the 10<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> of each month before 12h00. If the day is on a weekend or public holiday assistant OM will hand them on the next working day before 12h00;
- The assistant OM will also update all refunds on the worksheet for refunds and save it on the G-drive;
- Debtor clerk will have four working days to finalize and to hand to Accounts payable's clerk.
- The accounts payable's clerk will ensure payment of the refund in 7 days from the first Friday after he/she receives the documents from accounts receivables clerk;
- The accounts payable's clerk will update the worksheet for refunds on the G-DRIVE with the actual payment date of the refund;
- All refunds handed to receivables clerk on the 10<sup>th</sup> of each month will be for the refunds requests where deposits were made up to the end of the prior month of the 10<sup>th</sup>;
- All refunds handed to receivables clerk on the 20<sup>th</sup> will be for refund deposits from the 1<sup>st</sup> of that month to the 10<sup>th</sup> of the month of the 20<sup>th</sup>;
- The account receivables clerk will only accept refund request on the above mentioned days, any refunds not handed on these two dates have to stand over to the next month;
- In the event of an urgent refund on any other day than the 10<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup>, the assistant operations manager will then discuss the request with the Finance Manager to consider intervention.

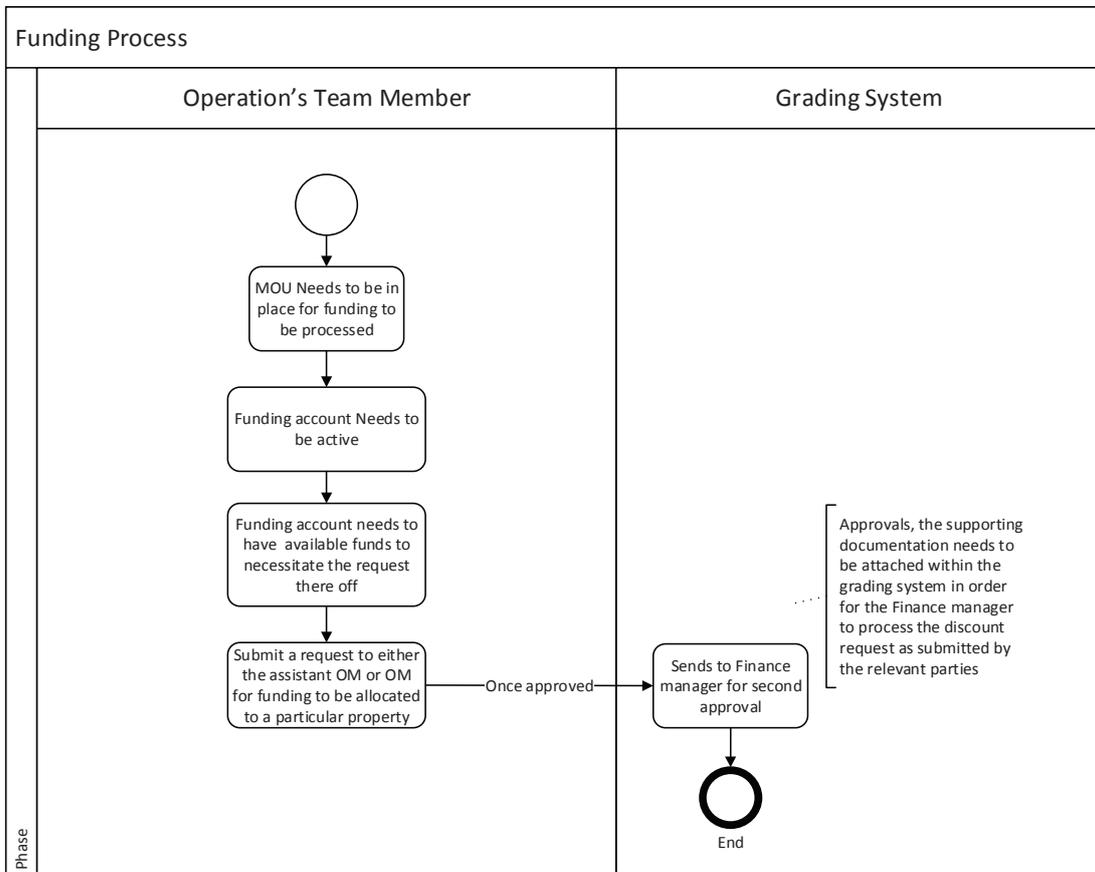
4.24. Discount Process



4.24.1. Discount Process - Textual Description

- Discounts less than R10
  - PMA can obtain approval from the CQAO and given to assistant OM to process the discount;
  - Once processed and approved by the OM and or assistant OM, grading system sends to Finance manager for second approval;
- Discounts over than R10
  - PMA can obtain approval from the CQAO and given to assistant OM to process the discount;
  - Once processed and approved by the OM and or assistant OM, grading system sends to Finance manager for second approval if applicable;
- For both above approvals, the supporting documentation needs to be attached within the grading system in order for the Finance manager to process the discount request as submitted by the relevant parties.

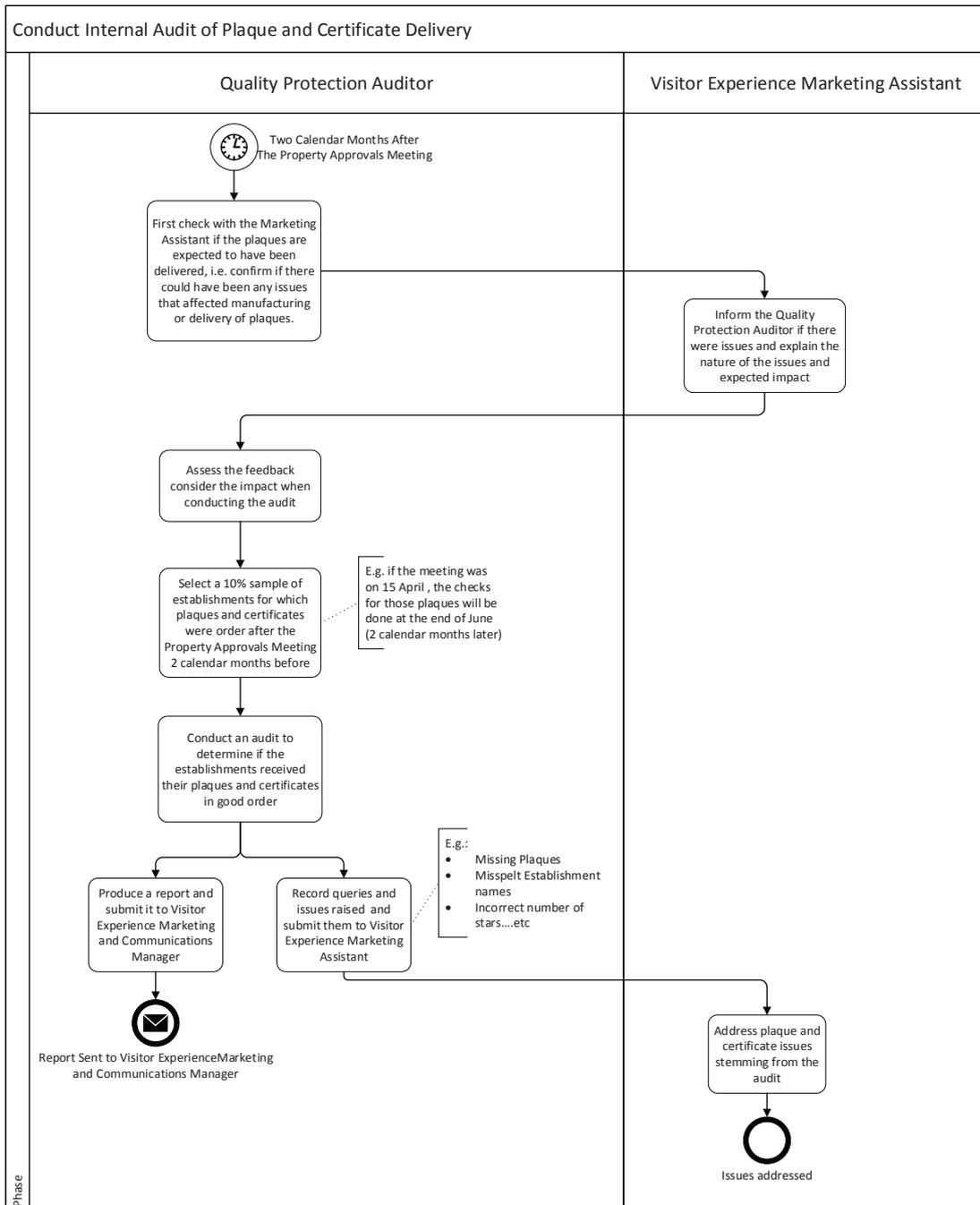
4.25. Funding - Process



4.25.1. Funding - Textual Description

- For funding to be processed, it is vital that an MOU is in place and that a funding account is active and has available funds to necessitate the request thereof. The following needs to happen:
  - The Operation's team member responsible for that funding project will submit a request to either the assistant OM or OM for funding to be allocated to a particular property.
  - The operations team must keep records of all supporting documentation for all funding requests (for safe keeping on request of the AG, internal audit, finance, etc.)
- Once processed and approved by the OM and or assistant OM, grading system the funding will generated automatically provided there are funds in the funding account;
- The operations team must keep records of all supporting documentation for all funding requests (for safe keeping on request of the AG, internal audit, finance, etc.)

4.26. Customer Feedback

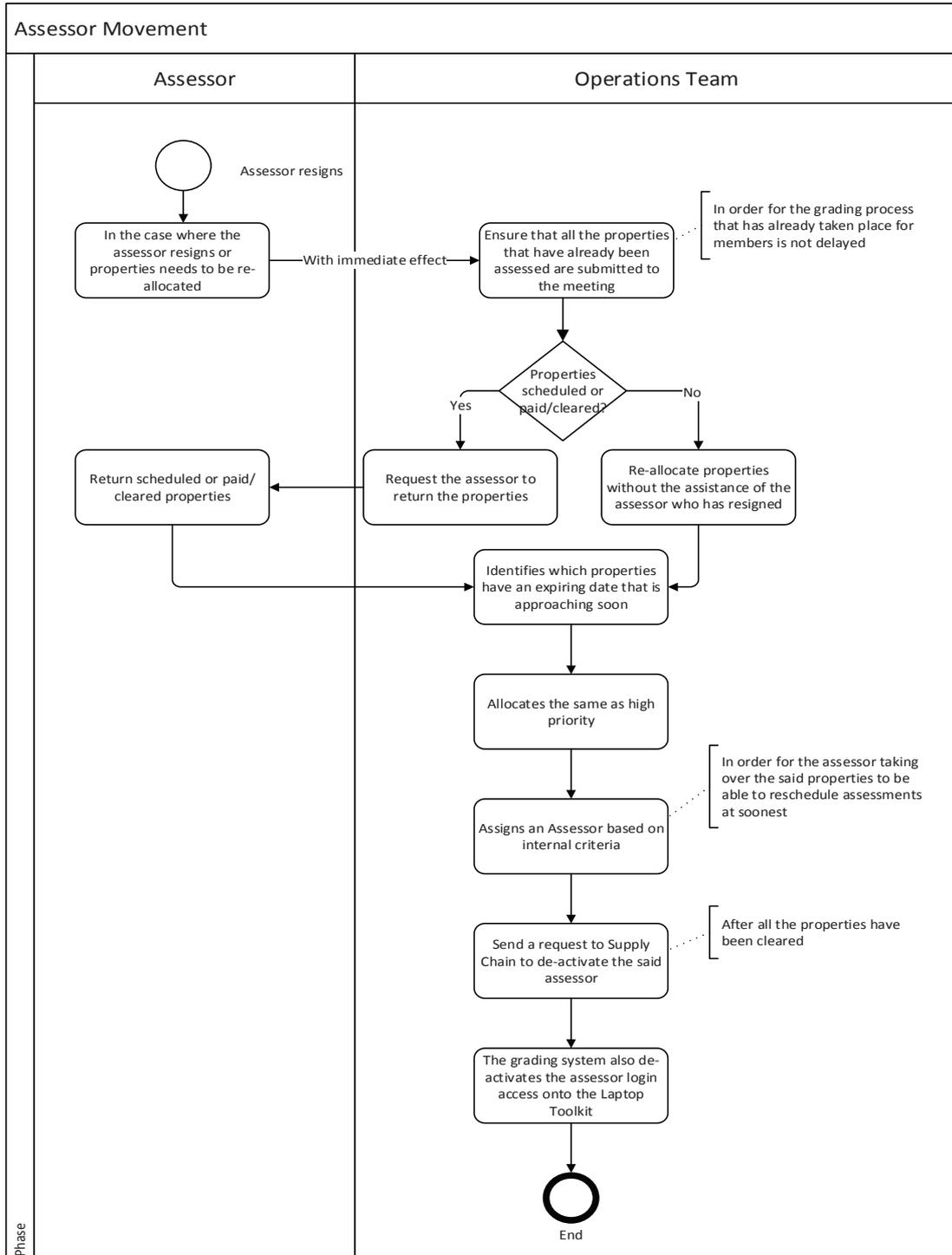


#### 4.26.1. Customer Feedback - Textual Description

- Client liaison officer's role is to manage feedback received from internal and external stakeholders including graded /ungraded Establishments, Assessor, industry stakeholders and the travelling public.
  - Internal (Establishments, Assessors, SA TOURISM staff, NTD, Portfolio committee, etc.)
  - External (Hospitality Industries e.g. associations, APEX bodies & the travelling public, etc.)
- Feedback is submitted through the following channels:
  - Website:
    - The customer logs onto: [www.tourismgrading.co.za](http://www.tourismgrading.co.za);
      - Select about the TGCSA;
      - Select get in touch;
      - Send feedback.
  - Email:
    - The customer sends an e-mail to: [feedback@tourismgrading.co.za](mailto:feedback@tourismgrading.co.za)
  - Telephone:
    - The customer calls: 011 895 3013
- CLO receives Feedback from Establishments pertaining to the following:
  - Grading Membership Queries (Invoices, grading certificates plaques, Grading status, etc.)
  - How to get graded;
  - Grading fees and grading criteria enquires.
- CLO receives Feedback from Assessors pertaining to the following:
  - Receipting of payments;
  - Invoice requests;
  - Request for Establishments marketing collateral (grading certificates / plaques, website listing, etc.)
  - Assistance with basket of benefits;
  - Assistance with assessment related queries.
- CLO receives Feedback from external customers pertaining to the following:
  - General public and or industry stakeholders:
    - Experience at graded and ungraded Establishments (Positive & Negative);
    - Confirmation / verification of grading status;
- Steps when query is logged via E-mail / website:
  - An automated acknowledgement email is sent to the Client confirming receipt and informing client of the TGCSA working hours turn-around time.
  - CLO reviews feedback, depending on complexity:
    - Resolves, respond to the Client and close the query or;
    - Sends query to relevant person / department (CLO must be copied in all communications).
      - If no respond is received within the 48 hours, sends the reminder;
      - If no respond is received after the 48 hours, escalates to the relevant line manager;
      - Only upon receipt of confirmation from responsible persons / departments that query has been resolved does the CLO close the query.
- Steps when query is logged via telephone:
  - CLO request the client to submit query via email:
    - CLO follows e-mail / website process above.

- Generate internal and external monthly reports and submit to Marketing and Communications Manager every first Thursday of the month.

4.27. Assessor Movement



**4.27.1. Assessor Movement - Textual Description**

- In the case where the assessor resigns, the following happens to the properties that were already allocated;
- With immediate effect, Ops team ensure that all the properties that have already been assessed are submitted to the meeting.
  - In order for the grading process that has already taken place for members is not delayed.
- For properties that have been scheduled or paid/cleared, the assessor is requested to return those properties;
- For properties that have not been scheduled or paid, the Ops team re-allocate those properties without the assistance of the assessor who has resigned;
- The Ops team then identifies which properties have an expiring date that is approaching soon;
- The Ops team allocates the same as high priority;
- The Ops team assigns an Assessor based on internal criteria;
  - In order for the assessor taking over the said properties to be able to reschedule assessments at soonest.
- Re-allocating of properties, Ops team following the criteria as per Standard Operating Procedure.
- After all the properties have been cleared; Supply Chain is sent a request to de-activate the said assessor and consequently the grading system also de-activates their login access onto the Laptop Toolkit.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

**5. PROCESS EXCEPTIONS AND DEVIATIONS**

Requests that fall outside of the process defined above must be submitted to the Operations Team for consideration and tabling at Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting.

The Meeting can address most requests through data updates, which inform changes in the system process.

**6. CONTROLS AND MEASURES**

Include controls and measures applicable to the process/procedure.

Measure	Target	Accountable Person
Pre-approve new applications	Daily	Operations Management
Allocate Receipts for Payments Received (New applications and Renewals)	Daily	Accounts Receivable Clerk
Allocate unidentified Payments	Within 1 week (within 7 calendar days) once the payer has been identified	Accounts Receivable Clerk
Set up appointment for onsite assessment of Establishment	Within 3 working days of the Establishment being allocated to the Assessor	Assessor
Conduct onsite Grading assessment of New Membership	Within 4 calendar months of invoice payment	Assessor
Conduct Grading assessment for a renewal of Membership	Before the expiry: i.e. between the date of receipting and assigning to the Assessor to before the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting within the month of expiry	Assessor
Submit Assessment Report & supporting documents	Within 7 calendar days of assessment	Assessor
Review Assessment Reports	Within 7 calendar days of submission	PMA
Deadline to submit Establishments for the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting	1 working day before the Meeting	PMA

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

Measure	Target	Accountable Person
Feedback on an Assessor Review	2 working days	Assessor
Number of reviews permitted on a submission	3	Assessor
Submit invoices against PO Notification	3 working days	Assessor
Pay Assessors	Last day of Month	CQAO
Review Grading Standards	Every 3 years	CQAO & Marketing and Communications Manager
Sign off Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting	Within 24 hours of Meeting	CQAO
Conduct Internal Audit of Plaque and Certificate delivery	2 calendar months after the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting	QPA

**7. REFERENCES****7.1. Applicable Documents**

Document Type	Document Number	Document Name
Contract	N/A	Service Partner Agreement
Contract	N/A	Grading Terms And Conditions

**7.2. Applicable Forms**

Document Type	Document Number	Document Name
Form	N/A	Online Grading Application Form
Form	N/A	Consultation form
Form	N/A	MER checklist
Form	N/A	Quality checklist
Form	N/A	UA Checklist
Form	N/A	UA Exclusion form
Form	N/A	Visit report
Template	N/A	Assessment picture template

**8. APPENDICES**

None.

Level 1

Final  
03 March 2017

Responsible Tourism Requirements

## Responsible Tourism Requirements Level 1 (Core)

A: Sustainable Operations and Management		Core	Not Applicable
1	<b>The organisation shall comply with all relevant national, provincial and local legislation, regulations, licences and permits, as may be required</b> Business is registered with SARS for VAT, PAYE and income tax and payments are up-to-date (tax clearance certificate)	✓	
	Business is registered with CIPRO and/or has a licence to trade	✓	
	Business is registered for and pays applicable rates and taxes	✓	
	Business has applicable liquor licence	✓	
	Business pays applicable skills development levy	✓	
	All employees are registered for UIF and payments are up-to-date	✓	
	Business pays applicable Occupational Health and Safety levy	✓	
	Compliance with Promotion of Access to Information Act	✓	
	Business pays applicable SAMRO and SAMPO fees	✓	
2	<b>The organisation shall establish a responsible tourism policy that is suitable to its reality and scale, and that considers environmental, socio-cultural, economical, quality, health and safety issues</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	Suitable and applicable responsible tourism policy	✓	
3	<b>The organisation shall facilitate staff awareness of and training in its responsible tourism policy</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	Staff have received training on the organisation's responsible tourism policy	✓	
	Staff are aware of the organisation's responsible tourism policy	✓	
	Staff understand and apply the organisation's responsible tourism policy	✓	
4	<b>Promotional materials shall be accurate and complete, shall not promise more than can be delivered by the organisation and shall not make misleading claims regarding sustainability</b> All promotional material about the business/organisation (printed, electronic, on social media, etc) are accurate and complete and do not promise more than can be delivered and do not make misleading claims regarding sustainability	Core	Not Applicable
		✓	

1 of 4

Level 1

Responsible Tourism Requirements

B: Social and Cultural Criteria		Core	Not Applicable
5	<b>The organisation shall contribute to the protection of sites that are of local historical, archaeological, cultural and spiritual importance and that are located on its properties</b>	Core	
	Sites that are of local historical, archaeological, cultural and/or spiritual importance have been identified and located on the property	✓	
	There is a policy in place for the protection of the identified sites	✓	
	The identified sites are appropriately protected	✓	
6	<b>The activities of the tourism organisation shall not jeopardise the provision of basic services, such as water, energy and sanitation, to neighbouring communities</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	The activities of the organisation to not jeopardise the provision of water to neighbouring communities	✓	
	The activities of the organisation to not jeopardise the provision of energy to neighbouring communities	✓	
	The activities of the organisation to not jeopardise the provision of sanitation to neighbouring communities	✓	
	The activities of the organisation to not jeopardise the provision of any other basic services to neighbouring communities	✓	
7	<b>The organisation shall provide opportunities for visitors to purchase local products and services</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	Local products and services are sold in the organisation's curio or similar shop	✓	✓
	And/or visitors are provided with an opportunity to purchase local products and services directly from the seller (either on or off-site)	✓	
8	<b>Historical and archaeological artefacts may not be sold, traded or displayed, unless permitted by law</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	No evidence of historical and archaeological artefacts are sold, traded or displayed	✓	
9	<b>The organisation shall provide information to staff about HIV/Aids and general well-being</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	The organisation has an appropriate HIV/Aids and dread disease policy	✓	
	Employees are aware of and understand the organisation's HIV/Aids and dread disease policy	✓	
	Employees have received training on the organisation's HIV/Aids and dread diseases policy	✓	
	The organisation makes available applicable information on HIV/Aids and dread disease	✓	
	The organisation provides appropriate support for the prevention of HIV/Aids and other dread diseases	✓	

2 of 4

Level 1

## Responsible Tourism Requirements

C: Economic Criteria		Core	Not Applicable
10	<b>The organisation shall use fair and equitable processes for recruitment and advancement, in relation to race, gender and disability</b> The organisation has a policy for the fair and equitable recruitment and advancement of employees irrespective of race, gender and disability	✓	
	The organisation demonstrates fair and equitable processes in the recruitment of employees	✓	
	The organisation demonstrates fair and equitable processes in the advancement of employees	✓	
11	<b>The organisation shall provide training opportunities for staff relevant to the organisation context</b> The organisation has a policy for the training and development of staff	Core ✓	Not Applicable
	The organisation provides appropriate and regular training and development opportunities for all staff	✓	
	Staff skills and knowledge are effectively and appropriately developed such that they are able to deliver excellent service which enhances the customer experience	✓	
12	<b>The organisation shall purchase local and fair trade services and goods, where available, and set targets for improvement</b> The property supports local community initiatives	Core ✓	Not Applicable
	The property supports local producers and buys in bulk where possible	✓	
13	<b>The organisation shall demonstrate support to small enterprises</b> Evidence of procurement is sourced from small or micro enterprises	Core ✓	Not Applicable
	Evidence of procurement sourced from small or micro enterprises for an on-site shop	✓	✓
14	<b>The organisation shall pay employees a living wage that is equal to or above the legal minimum wage</b> Management confirm that all employees are paid a wage that is equal to or above the legal minimum wage for the hospitality sector	Core ✓	Not Applicable
15	<b>The organisation shall prohibit child labour, forced labour and sexual exploitation</b> The organisation has a policy on the protection of child labour, including child performers	Core ✓	Not Applicable
	The organisation has a policy on the prevention of forced labour	✓	
	The organisation has a policy on the prevention of sexual exploitation	✓	
	Staff have been trained on, and are aware of, the organisation's policies on child labour, forced labour and sexual exploitation	✓	
	The organisation does not have any employees (permanent, temporary or part-time) who are younger than 15-years of age	✓	
	There is no evidence of forced labour in the organisation	✓	
	Child performers are protected	✓	
	There is no evidence of sexual exploitation in the organisation	✓	

3 of 4

Level 1

## Responsible Tourism Requirements

D: Environmental Criteria		Core	Not Applicable
16	<b>The organisation shall measure energy consumption, indicating all energy sources as a percentage of the overall consumption, and shall adopt quantitative goals and measures to decrease overall consumption</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	TVs, stereos, DVD players and other electrical equipment shall be switched off (not on stand-by mode) between guest visits	✓	
	Energy saving light bulbs are used for lighting fixtures	✓	
	Solar power/ heating initiatives in place	✓	
17	<b>The organisation shall measure water consumption, indicating all sources as a percentage of the overall consumption, and shall adopt quantitative goals and measures to decrease overall consumption and improve the reuse of waste water</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	Water efficient appliances installed	✓	
	Water savings fittings in place	✓	
	No towel and linen change options for guests. Guests need to be informed on how to opt for this service	✓	
	Garden watering done either early morning or later afternoon to minimise evaporation	✓	
	Garden landscaping designed to reduce water requirements	✓	
	Reduced flush or twin flush cisterns in all or most toilets	✓	
18	<b>The organisation shall implement a waste management plan, addressing both solid and liquid wastes, with quantitative goals to minimise waste produced</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	The property has a recycling programme e.g. plastic, paper, glass, cans, printer cartridges, batteries, etc are separated and recycled	✓	
	Evidence of preference for the use of recycled paper products (e.g. forms, menus, serviettes, letterheads, photo-copy paper, etc)	✓	
19	<b>The organisation shall adhere to any national or international requirements that govern the trade in listed, endangered or threatened (or any combination of these) species and shall alert visitors to these requirements</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	No evidence of trade in listed, endangered or threatened species	✓	
	Proof of adhere to any national or international requirements if there is evidence of trade in listed, endangered or threatened (or any combination of these) species. In which case visitors are alerted to these requirements (evidence provided)	✓	
20	<b>The organisation shall not hold captive any wildlife without the required permits and appropriate enclosures</b>	Core	Not Applicable
	No evidence of wildlife being held captive without the required permits and appropriate enclosures	✓	
	Appropriate and valid permits and appropriate enclosures for any captive wildlife	✓	
	No interaction (touching) between visitors and wildlife	✓	

4 of 4

## Core Requirements

## Hotel Accommodation

**Core Requirements**  
**Hotel Accommodation**

**Final**  
**03 March 2017**

		Applicability per Sub-Category									
		Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
1 Building Exterior											
2 Grounds and Gardens											
3 Parking / Driveway / Signage											
4 Safety and Security											

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

B: Bedrooms (note: assessment will apply to the room with the lowest rating)	Applicability per Sub-Category								
	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
5 Bedroom Entrance, Safety & Security	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Information on how to call for assistance and evacuation procedures in the event of an emergency to be displayed in each guestroom	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Emergency lighting (alternative to grid electricity) available for each guestroom (e.g. backup generator, torch, solar lights, etc.)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All bedroom doors must be lockable/secure (from the inside and outside of the bedroom)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Secondary guest controlled internal door lock (without staff override)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Secondary security device to be provided where bedrooms have direct external access (e.g. into a garden, road, etc.)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Peephole facility in bedroom doors	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Safety deposit facility available on request.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
In-room safe (appropriate to the market)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
6 Beds, Bases & Mattresses	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Sofa beds and foam mattresses are not acceptable as permanent bed spaces.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Bed provided for each advertised sleeping position	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
There should be access to both sides of beds for double occupancy.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
An acceptable form of headboard firmly secured	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All single sleeper beds are a standard size or bigger. Minimum dimensions for a standard single bed: L188cm x W92cm.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All single sleeper beds are a 3/4 size or bigger and extra length. Minimum dimensions for a 3/4 single bed: L200cm x W107cm.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All 2 sleeper beds are a standard double size or bigger. Minimum dimensions for a double bed: L188cm x W137cm	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All 2 sleeper beds are extra length Queen or standard King-sized beds or bigger. Minimum dimensions: Queen bed L200cm x W152cm, King bed L188cm x W190cm or 2 single beds of L188cm x W92cm	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
If using a divan bed set the sprung base must be upholstered or have a valance on the base.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
7 Bedding & Linen	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Mattress protectors and pillow protectors are required to be fitted to all mattresses and pillows.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All bedding well-fitted and appropriately sized (flat sheets minimum of 6 to 8cm overhang past the mattress depth)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All bedding must be free of stains, holes and fraying	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Fitted/flat undersheet and duvet with duvet cover OR fitted or flat undersheet, topsheet, blanket and a bedspread per bed	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Fitted or flat undersheet, a flat top sheet and duvet with duvet cover OR fitted or flat undersheet, flat topsheet, blanket, flat topsheet above blanket and an optional bedspread per bed	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Additional bedding available on request.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Additional blanket available in the bedroom - depending on location and time of year	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Additional blanket, hygienically sealed in a linen/ plastic bag, available in the bedroom	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Hotel Accommodation

	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
One pillow per sleeping position with pillow case	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Two pillows per sleeping position with pillow case	✓	✓	✓						*
Additional (spare) pillow, hygienically sealed in a linen/ plastic bag, available in the bedroom	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Additional pillows available on request.	✓	✓	✓						*
Special requirement pillows available on request	✓	✓	✓						*
<b>8 Furniture</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
A bedside table or shelf, located beside all permanent sleeping positions. One bedside table between twin beds is acceptable	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
One bedside table between twin beds is acceptable	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
At least one chair to be provided in each room.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
At least two chairs to be provided in each room	✓	✓	✓				*		
At least 1 comfortable chair/ seating position (in addition to desk/ dressing table chair)	✓	✓	✓					*	
One comfortable chair/ seating position per permanent sleeping position (in addition to desk/ dressing table chair)	✓	✓	✓						*
Desk and/or dressing table with an appropriate chair and mirror above the desk/ table	✓	✓	✓					*	
Desk and/or dressing table with an appropriate chair and mirror above the desk/ table. The desk space should be large enough to be used as both a desk and dressing table simultaneously - alternatively a separate desk and dressing table should be provided.	✓	✓	✓						*
<b>9 Wardrobes, Shelves &amp; Luggage Storage</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Provision of a fit-for-purpose clothes hanging space/ wardrobe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Provision of adequate hanging space to accommodate full length clothing	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
Wardrobe large enough to accommodate additional pillows, blankets, etc.	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
A minimum of 1 drawer or shelves appropriate and fit for purpose, per room.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
A minimum of 1 drawer or shelf per sleeping position	✓	✓	✓				*		
Minimum 2 drawers or enclosed shelves per sleeping position for the first 2 sleeping positions and minimum 1 drawer/ enclosed shelf for each sleeping position above 2	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
Minimum 5 hangers per sleeping position	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Provision of specialised hangers	✓	✓	✓					*	*
Appropriate wardrobe lighting	✓	✓	✓						*
Fit for purpose luggage rack/ stand provided in each room	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
<b>10 Curtains &amp; Window Coverings</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Window dressings must be large enough to draw easily and completely across the width and height of the window	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All ground floor bedrooms must provide additional privacy without restricting the natural light.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
11	Window coverings must provide full block out.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	<b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
12	<b>Temperature Control &amp; Ventilation</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star
	Adequate ventilation in the room.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Heating and cooling system appropriate to the level of star grading being applied for, that can be individually controlled by the guest to their comfort levels based on the geographical location of the establishment.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
13	<b>Lighting, Power &amp; Switches</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star
	Light switch to be located by the entrance door.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	One bedside light per sleeping position. In a twin room, one light between two beds is acceptable.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	One bedside light per sleeping position with switches conveniently placed within reach of the guests' sleeping position.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Two bedside lights in a twin bedded room.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Provision of direct lighting at dressing table/desk (study light)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Spare and convenient power points in each room	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	An international multi-power point/plug is available on request.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Integrated multi-power plug with USB port and international plug points - located on or near the desk/ bedside table and should be easily accessible	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
14	<b>Electronic Appliances</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star
	Hair-dryer available on request	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Hair-dryer (minimum 1.600W) to be provided in each room	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Hair-dryer/ hair-dryer plug point located close to a mirror	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Television in each guest room, with working remote control	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Flat panel, high definition television in all rooms, with working remote control and minimum size of 32 inches	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Televisions to be conveniently located and large enough for the screen to be visible from the bed	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Note: when upgrading television owners/ operators are encouraged to purchase smart televisions which offer on-demand/ on-line viewing and which are of an appropriate size for comfortable viewing.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Free to air channels available only	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Multi-channels (minimum 9 channels) available in each room. Channel choice should be appropriate to the market served	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Multi-channels (minimum 12 channels) available in each room. Channel choice should be appropriate to the market served	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Multi-channels (>12 channels) including radio programmes available in each room. Channel choice should be appropriate to the market served	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Wi-Fi to be available throughout the establishment (public areas and guest rooms). Exemption allowed if there is no signal/ service	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

15	Telephone in each bedroom (or similar for internal, 2-way communication). Note: owners/ operators are encouraged to consider new technology for internal communication.	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
15	<b>Mirror &amp; Mirror Lighting</b> Reasonably sized mirror with adequate lighting Full length mirror in guestroom or bathroom A well lit mirror at dressing table area in close proximity to a plug point	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
16	<b>Accessories and Hospitality Stations</b> Adequate, fit for purpose and appropriate protection against insects available on request e.g. insect repellent, mosquito net, insect pesticide, etc. applicable to location and time of year. Iron and ironing board to be made available on request. Iron and ironing board in guest room or ironing/ pressing service to be made available. Tea and coffee available in a common area. Tea and coffee making facilities provided in all rooms. A kettle and adequate crockery and cutlery should be provided for each guest in the room. Complimentary sachets of tea, coffee and sugar (at least two sachets per guest per day) are required. Adequate preparation space located near the crockery, cutlery and near a dedicated power point in the bedroom are required. Filtered water or mineral water provided Drinking glass/ cup provided per sleeping position (in addition to glasses in bathroom) Local Tourism Information and Entertainment Guide to be made available. Information on surrounding restaurants and take-away menus to be made available (if no lunch/ dinner dining facilities offered) Instructions on how to use the television and heating /cooling system (if applicable) Mini bar fridge available on request Mini bar fridge in each guest room (stocked on request)	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
		17	<b>Spaciousness &amp; Overall Impression</b> Unrestricted access to all storage facilities within the room. All bedrooms with sufficient space to allow guests freedom of movement around all furniture and fittings including sofa beds. There should be no restriction of free movement. Doors and drawers must be able to open and close easily without having to move furniture. Good amount of space allowing for ease of movement and relaxation. Well-planned layout - quite spacious, allowing ease of movement, comfort and relaxation. Well-planned layout - very spacious, allowing generous ease of movement, comfort, dining and relaxation.	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star
✓	✓			✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓			✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓			✓	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*

C: Bathrooms										
Applicability per Sub-Category										
18	Type of Bathroom	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
19	If an establishment incorporates an open plan bathroom within the room, showers, baths and hand basins may be open plan but the toilet must be separate with an adequate door to ensure guest privacy.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	All bathrooms must have a door from the bedroom if not open-plan	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Bathroom facilities must be en-suite.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
20	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	An impervious surface to be provided on walls, floors and ceilings.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	<b>Lighting and Ventilation</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Individually controlled lighting	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Sufficient lighting to light the bathroom	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
21	<b>Fixtures and Fittings</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Direct frontal light source provided at washbasin and mirror	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Sufficient and appropriate ventilation for the bathroom	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	All basins, baths and showers supplied with sufficient hot and cold water supply	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Basins, Baths and showers providing a strong and easily adjustable flow of water.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
22	Towel rails/racks/shelf to be sufficient for the number of guests in the room.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	A mirror must be situated above or adjacent to the hand basin.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Sufficient vanity space for the maximum number of guests.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Spacious vanity space to accommodate guest amenities according to the sleeping capacity of the guestroom.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Window treatment to ensure privacy.	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	
	Bathrooms to include WC (toilet) with seat and lid	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Bathrooms to include at least one hand basin	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	All bathrooms to include a bath or a shower (shower over bath is also acceptable)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	All bathrooms to have a separate shower	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	All bathrooms to have a separate shower and a bath.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	Shower curtains are acceptable. Must be free of stains, tears, holes and mould.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
	The shower must have a screen (shower curtains not acceptable)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
A hook for clothes.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*		
A minimum of two hooks	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*		
<b>Towelling</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
Bath mat should be provided.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*		
Towelling bath mat	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*		



Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Microwave oven			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Oven or convection microwave			✓				*	*	*
2-Plate hob			✓		*	*	*		
3- or 4-plate hob			✓					*	*
4-plate hob			✓						
Extractor fan			✓	✓					*
Mini-bar refrigerator with a freezer compartment			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Refrigerator with freezer compartment			✓					*	*
Dishwasher or daily cleaning service (plus additional cleaning service available on request)			✓	✓					*
Covered waste disposal bin, inclusive of bin liner			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Kettle			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Toaster			✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Blender			✓	✓					*
Coffee machine			✓	✓					*
<b>30 Cutlery, Crockery and Utensils</b>			Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Cutlery (knife, fork, dessert spoon and teaspoon) sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Cutlery box or drawer divider			✓				*	*	*
Drinking glasses - sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Crockery (dinner plate, side plate, bowl and coffee/tea mug or teacup and saucer) sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit			✓		*	*	*	*	*
2 pots/ saucepans of varying sizes			✓		*	*	*	*	*
3 or more pots/ saucepans of varying sizes (small, medium and large)			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Frying pan			✓		*	*	*	*	*
2 or more frying pans of different sizes			✓					*	*
Teapot			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Sugar bowl			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Condiment set			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Oven gloves or similar			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Table cloth or placemats (sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit)			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Chopping board (made of hygienic, impervious material)			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Salad bowl			✓		*	*	*	*	*
Salad servers			✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

Roasting tray								*	*	*	*	*	*
Wooden spoon or equivalent								*	*	*	*	*	*
Whisk													
Bread knife								*	*	*	*	*	*
Paring knife								*	*	*	*	*	*
Meat knife (or similar)								*	*	*	*	*	*
Serving spoon								*	*	*	*	*	*
Egg lifter/ spatula								*	*	*	*	*	*
Braai tongs (if braai facilities provided)								*	*	*	*	*	*
Grater								*	*	*	*	*	*
Vegetable peeler								*	*	*	*	*	*
Mixing bowl								*	*	*	*	*	*
More than 1 mixing bowl													
Colander								*	*	*	*	*	*
Slotted spoon													
Ladle								*	*	*	*	*	*
Jug								*	*	*	*	*	*
Storage containers (more than 1)								*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>3.1 Cleaning Equipment</b>													
Tea towel								*	*	*	*	*	*
Washing up brush or sponge								*	*	*	*	*	*
Dish cloth								*	*	*	*	*	*
Basic cleaning agents (including dishwashing agents if dishwasher provided)								*	*	*	*	*	*
Dustpan and brush								*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>3.2 In Room Dining Table/ Area</b>													
Seating provided at a dining table/ eating area - sufficient to accommodate maximum sleeping positions in the unit								*	*	*	*	*	*

E: Public Areas	Applicability per Sub-Category				
	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	Apartment Hotel
<b>3.3 Decoration</b>					
Some use of objects of interest and artwork.	✓	✓	✓		
Interesting architectural features, objects of interest, artwork and objects of art.	✓	✓	✓		

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
34	Furnishing and Fittings								
35	Bar, Lounge & Sitting Areas	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	All bar, lounge and seating areas to be furnished with sufficient occasional tables, chairs and functional surfaces.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	All seating areas to be of an acceptable size to provide a reasonable amount of space for guests to easily move around.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Bar area not required, but common area must be available where beverages can be consumed	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	A beverage service to be offered	✓	✓	✓					
	A beverage service to be offered throughout the day and reasonable evening hours	✓	✓	✓					
36	Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting & Cornices	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
37	Lighting, Heating/Cooling & Ventilation	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Acceptable levels of lighting appropriately positioned for safety and comfort in all public areas, including sufficient light on stairways and landings	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Acceptable temperature control and ventilation.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
38	Other Public Areas including Passages & Staircases	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Passages and stairs free from obstruction. Well lit 24 hours a day, although energy initiatives are to be respected.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Clear, directional signage to bedrooms and reception (where needed).	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
39	Toilet Areas	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	All toilets regularly cleaned, checked and adequately ventilated.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Minimum facilities provided: washbasin with soap, hand drying facility, toilet with seat and lid, covered light (no exposed light bulbs or wires), mirror, hook on door, dustbin, sanitary facilities for ladies.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Spacious, luxurious and numerous toilet facilities with refinements such as individual hand towels, high-quality toiletries and accessories.	✓	✓	✓					
40	Elevators/ Lifts	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A lift is required when there is a guest bedroom that is more than two floors higher or lower than the entrance level floor i.e. on the third floor.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

F: Food & Beverage Facilities									
Applicability per Sub-Category									
	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
41	Meal provision	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Dining facility provided	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Breakfast provided.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Dinner available	✓	✓	✓			*		
	Dinner provided in a dining area	✓	✓	✓				*	*
	Lunch provided	✓	✓	✓					*
	Meal times as advertised	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Hotel Accommodation

		Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
42	<b>Furnishings</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Sufficient tables and chairs to accommodate guests irrespective of the weather.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
43	<b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
44	<b>Lighting</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Acceptable levels of lighting, appropriately positioned for safety and comfort.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
45	<b>Menu Presentation</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Professional and appropriate presentation of the menu to the market being served (excluding buffet service)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
46	<b>Table Appointments</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Table appointments appropriate to the meal being served i.e. breakfast or dinner.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
47	<b>Dinner/ Lunch Quality and Presentation (if provided)</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	All foods well-presented and served at the correct temperature	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Provision made for a variety of dietary requirements	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Three courses available for dinner.	✓	✓	✓						*
	A broad range of dishes of outstanding quality and presentation meeting high international standards.	✓	✓	✓						*
48	<b>Breakfast Quality and Presentation</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Continental breakfast provided with an acceptable range of cereals, bread and condiments.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	A good range of hot and cold items offered for breakfast (e.g. Hot breakfast should include a minimum of 5 items; Cold breakfast could include cereals, breads, cold meats, fruit and cheese) with a choice of accompaniments	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
	A comprehensive range of outstanding quality hot and cold dishes available for breakfast and presented in an outstanding way.	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
	Guests are offered a wide choice of how their eggs are cooked, including fried, poached, boiled and scrambled.	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
	All foods well-presented and served at the correct temperature	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Provision made for a variety of dietary requirements	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>G: General Services and Service</b>										
49	<b>Welcome, Friendliness and Attitude</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Professional, skilful and competent service and attention to detail is expected	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
50	<b>Appearance of Staff</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Service staff to wear name badges at all times	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Staff appearance to be professional and neat at all times.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
51	<b>Reception / Lobby</b>	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A clearly designated reception area should be provided.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*



## Core Requirements

## Hotel Accommodation

	Hotel	Small Hotel	Apartment Hotel	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
57	<b>Communications &amp; Business Facilities</b>									
	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Computer, printer and internet facilities available for guest use									
<b>H: Housekeeping</b>										
58	<b>Housekeeping Provision</b>									
	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Housekeeping Services available during working hours.									
	✓	✓	✓					*		
	Housekeeping Services available 18 hours per day (limited services available afterhours)									
	✓	✓	✓						*	
	Housekeeping Services available 24 hours per day (limited services available afterhours)									
59	<b>Bedrooms and Bathrooms</b>									
	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	All bedrooms and bathrooms cleaned daily.									
	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	All beds made daily.									
	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	All linen including duvet covers changed for each new guest, on request or for long-stay guests at least every 5-days. "No change" option available									
	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	
	All linen, including duvet covers changed at least every 3 days or on request and for each new guest. "No change" option available.									
	✓	✓	✓						*	
	All linen, including duvet covers changed at least every 2 days or on request and for each new guest. "No change" option available.									
	✓	✓	✓					*	*	
	Comprehensive bedroom / bathroom turn-down service to be provided daily									

Guest Accommodation  
**Minimum Entry Requirements  
Guest Accommodation**

A: Exterior		Applicability per Sub-Category									
		Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
1	Building Exterior										
2	Grounds and Gardens	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
3	Parking, Driveways and Parking Signage Provision of fit for purpose on-site and/ or designated parking areas (ideally 1 parking space per room. Location and market to be considered during assessment)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Directional signage - acceptable condition, clearly visible, fit for purpose.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Well lit parking area	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
4	Safety and Security	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Appropriate, fit for purpose safety and security measures throughout the establishment at all times.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Management Representative / the most senior representative on-site responsible for safety and security on call 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Emergency information (including relevant telephone numbers) & evacuation signage and procedures clearly displayed and explanation/ tour available on request	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	An area of refuge or holding area has been provided for use by guests in case of emergency evacuation and egress	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Guests to have secure access into facility / establishment.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	High regard for security and safety of guests, which is unobtrusive (e.g. on-site security, private security, armed-response, night watchman, panic buttons, internal radio communication, radio contact with local police, suitable perimeter security, secure entrance gate and intercom, part of a Community Policing Forum, video surveillance (CCTV) cameras, medical support on call, etc.)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Guests provided with unrestricted and secure access to shared/ public areas	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Telephone available at reception (cellular or landline)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

B: Bedrooms (note: assessment will apply to the room with the lowest rating)	Applicability per Sub-Category						Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option						
5 <b>Bedroom Entrance, Safety &amp; Security</b> Information on how to call for assistance (including telephone numbers) and evacuation procedures in the event of an emergency to be displayed in every bedroom Emergency lighting (alternative to grid electricity) available for each guestroom e.g. torch, solar lights, backup generator, etc. All bedroom doors must be lockable/secure (from the inside and outside of the bedroom) Secondary security device to be provided where bedrooms have external access (outside of the property) On-site safe or safety deposit facility available on request. In-room safe (appropriate to the market)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*
6 <b>Beds, Bases &amp; Mattresses</b> Sofa beds are not acceptable as permanent bed spaces Permanent sleeping positions (beds) fitted with foam mattresses permissible Bed provided for each advertised sleeping position There should be access to both sides of beds for double occupancy. An acceptable form of headboard firmly secured – could be a continental pillow An acceptable form of headboard firmly secured All single sleeper beds are a standard size or bigger. Minimum dimensions for a standard single bed: L188cm x W92cm. All single sleeper beds are a 3/4 size or bigger. Minimum dimensions for a 3/4 single bed: L188cm x W107cm. All 2 sleeper beds are a standard double size or bigger. Minimum dimensions for a double bed: L188cm x W137cm. All 2 sleeper beds are Queen-sized or bigger. Minimum dimensions for a Queen bed: L188cm x W152cm, King bed: L188cm x W180cm or 2 single beds: L188cm x W92cm All 2 sleeper beds are Extra Length Queen or standard King-sized beds or bigger. Minimum dimensions: Queen bed L200cm x W152cm, King bed L188cm x W180cm or 2 single beds of L188cm x W92cm If using a divan bed set the sprung base must be upholstered or have a valance on the base.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*
7 <b>Bedding &amp; Linen</b> Mattress protectors and pillow protectors are required to be fitted to all mattresses and pillows. All bedding well-fitted and appropriately sized (flat sheets minimum of 6 to 8cm overhang past the mattress depth) All bedding must be free of stains, holes and fraying Fitted/ flat undersheet and duvet with duvet cover OR fitted or flat undersheet, topsheet, blanket and a bedspread per bed	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*



## Core Requirements

## Guest Accommodation

	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>10 Curtains &amp; Window Coverings</b>	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Window dressings must be large enough to draw easily and completely across the width and height of the window	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All ground floor bedrooms must provide additional privacy without restricting natural light	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Window coverings must provide full block out.	✓	✓	✓						
<b>11 Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b>	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>12 Temperature Control &amp; Ventilation</b>	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Adequate ventilation in the room.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Heating and cooling system appropriate to the level of star grading being applied for, that can be individually controlled by the guest to their comfort levels based on the geographical location of the establishments and for all seasons.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>13 Lighting, Power &amp; Switches</b>	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Light switch to be located by the entrance door.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
One bedside light per sleeping position. In a twin room, one light between two beds is acceptable.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
One bedside light per sleeping position with switches conveniently placed within reach of the guests' sleeping position.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Two bedside lights in a twin bedded room.	✓	✓	✓						
Provision of direct lighting at dressing table/desk (study lamp)	✓	✓	✓						
An international multi-power point/plug is available on request.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Integrated multi-power plug with USB port and international plug points - located on or near the desk/ bedside table and should be easily accessible	✓	✓	✓						
<b>14 Electronic Appliances</b>	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Hair-dryer available on request	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Hair-dryer (minimum 1 600W) to be provided in each room	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
Hair-dryer/ hair-dryer plug point located close to a mirror	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Television available in resident's lounge	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Television in each guest room, with working remote control	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Flat panel television in each guest room, with working remote control	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
Flat panel, high definition television in all rooms, with working remote control and minimum size of 32 inches	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*





Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation

Bathrooms to include at least one hand basin	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
All bathrooms to include a bath or a shower (shower over bath is also acceptable)	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
All bathrooms to have a shower or shower over bath	✓	✓	✓						*	*
All bathrooms to have a shower and a bath.	✓	✓	✓							*
Shower curtains are acceptable. Must be good quality and free of stains, tears, holes and mould.	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
The shower must have a screen (shower curtains not acceptable)	✓	✓	✓							*
A hook for clothes.	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
A minimum of two hooks	✓	✓	✓							*
<b>22</b>	<b>Guest House</b>	<b>Country House</b>	<b>Bed &amp; Breakfast</b>	<b>Not Applicable</b>	<b>1-Star</b>	<b>2-Star</b>	<b>3-Star</b>	<b>4-Star</b>	<b>5-Star</b>	
Towelling	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Bath mat provided.	✓	✓	✓							
Towelling bath mat	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Clean, absorbent hand and bath towel provided per sleeping position	✓	✓	✓							
Clean, absorbent hand towel and a large bath towel provided per sleeping position	✓	✓	✓							
Clean, absorbent hand towel, 2 bath sheets (or a bath towel and a bath sheet) and bath robe provided per person (robe to be changed for each new guest)	✓	✓	✓							*
<b>23</b>	<b>Guest House</b>	<b>Country House</b>	<b>Bed &amp; Breakfast</b>	<b>Not Applicable</b>	<b>1-Star</b>	<b>2-Star</b>	<b>3-Star</b>	<b>4-Star</b>	<b>5-Star</b>	
Accessories	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Toilet seat cover and mat sets are not acceptable	✓	✓	✓							
Sealed, individually wrapped soap and/or liquid soap provided	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Shampoo provided.	✓	✓	✓							
Tissues provided	✓	✓	✓							
Bathroom equipped with a lidded bin.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Bathroom equipped with double ply toilet paper and holder plus a minimum of 1 spare toilet roll.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Bathroom equipped with toilet brush.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Drinking glass/ cup provided for each sleeping position	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Comprehensive personal amenities including shower cap, conditioner, shower gel, body lotion, vanity kit, etc.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Magnifying mirror provided in bathroom or bedroom	✓	✓	✓							*

D: Kitchens (for all self-catering rooms/ units in guest accommodation)

24 Type of Kitchen	Applicability per Sub-Category			✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast							









## Core Requirements

## Guest Accommodation

	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
43 <b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b> A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
44 <b>Lighting</b> Acceptable levels of lighting, appropriately positioned for safety and comfort.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
45 <b>Menu Presentation</b>	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
46 <b>Table Appointments</b> Table appointments appropriate to the meal being served i.e. breakfast or dinner.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

## G: General Services and Service

	Guest House	Country House	Bed & Breakfast	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
47 <b>Welcome, Friendliness and Attitude</b> Personalised service and attention to detail is expected.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
48 <b>Appearance of Staff</b> Staff appearance to be professional and neat at all times.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
49 <b>Reception / Meet &amp; Greet</b> Guest to be met on arrival by authorised establishment representative A designated meet and greet area. An afterhours key service may be provided. Functional meet and greet area available for guest check-in Spacious and impressive entrance foyer or lobby Clear communication regarding what the establishment has to offer should be made available whether by advertisement, brochure, website, word of mouth or other means to all guests upon request.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
50 <b>Reservation, Check In, Check Out &amp; General Efficiency</b> Prompt thorough reservation and check-in system, including capture of guest records and responding to guest requests. All information accurately provided to guests including layout of property, available facilities, meal times, emergency and evacuation procedures etc. Bill/Invoice to be correct with all details and clearly presented and explained.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
51 <b>Laundry Services</b> A limited laundry or dry cleaning service for a minimum of 3 days a week Laundry or dry cleaning services provided for a minimum of 5 days a week Laundry bags and laundry price list are to be provided to guests at reception, with an indication of the days the service is available.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*



Core Requirements

**Final**  
**03 March 2017**

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

## Core Requirements Backpackers and Hostels

Exterior	Applicable						
	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
1 Building Exterior	Backpacker/ Hostel						
2 Grounds and Gardens	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
3 Parking / Driveway / Signage	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Provision of fit for purpose on-site and/ or designated guest parking areas and/ or alternative guest parking arrangements.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Directional signage - acceptable condition, clearly visible, fit for purpose.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Well lit parking area	✓		*	*	*	*	*
4 Safety and Security	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Appropriate, fit for purpose safety and security measures throughout the establishment at all times (high regard for security and safety of guests, which is unobtrusive)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Management Representative / the most senior representative on-site responsible for safety and security on call 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Emergency information (including relevant telephone numbers) & evacuation signage and procedures clearly displayed	✓		*	*	*	*	*
An area of refuge or holding area has been provided for use by guests in case of emergency evacuation and egress	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Guests provided with familiarisation tours on all emergency exits and key emergency information on arrival	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Guests to have secure access into facility / establishment.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Guests provided with unrestricted and secure access to communal/ public areas	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Telephone available for guest use (cellular or landline)	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

5	Power Supply and Wi-Fi	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Appropriate electricity should be provided (not necessarily mains supply). Where electricity is not available, this must be clearly stated. Where electricity is available, sufficient conveniently located, power points (with USB port and international plug points as applicable) for the safe use of electrical equipment, should be provided.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Wi-Fi to be available throughout the establishment or in a specified, designated area/s. Exemption allowed if there is no signal/ service in which case this should be clearly stated	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

Private and Shared Bedrooms (note: assessment will apply to the room with the lowest rating)

6	Bedroom/ Dormitory Size	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	All bedrooms and dormitories should have sufficient space to allow freedom of movement for guests and access to all furniture in the room. It should be possible to open all drawers and doors fully.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Allow approximately 5m <sup>2</sup> floor space per bed/bunk bed.	✓				*	*	
	More spacious rooms/ dormitories. Allow approximately 7m <sup>2</sup> floor space per bed/bunk bed.	✓						*
7	Bedroom Entrance, Safety & Security	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Information on how to call for assistance (including telephone numbers) and evacuation procedures in the event of an emergency to be displayed in each bedroom/ dormitory	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Emergency lighting (alternative to grid electricity but not an open flame) available for each bedroom/ dormitory and relevant shared and public areas	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Doors into private bedrooms must be lockable/ secure (from the inside and outside of the bedroom)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	On-site safe or safety deposit facility available	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	In-room safe in private rooms	✓						*

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>8 Beds, Bases &amp; Mattresses</b>							
Sofa beds are not acceptable as permanent bed spaces.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All beds to be of sound condition	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All mattresses made of foam or sprung interior (or similar)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
There should be access to both sides of beds for double occupancy.	✓				*	*	*
An acceptable form of headboard - could be a continental pillow	✓		*	*			
An acceptable form of headboard firmly secured	✓				*	*	*
Minimum dimensions for a standard single bed: L188cm x W91cm.	✓				*	*	*
Minimum dimensions for a standard double bed: L188cm x W137cm.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Bunk beds maximum of 2 sleeping positions high	✓				*	*	*
A ladder or equivalent should be provided for guests to climb to the top bunk	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>9 Bedding &amp; Linen</b>							
All bedding provided should be clean for each new guest	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All bedding well-fitted and appropriately sized	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All bedding must be free of stains, holes and fraying	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All occupied beds to be fitted with a bottom sheet, pillow and pillowcase and a duvet with duvet cover. A top sheet and blanket can be provided as an alternative to a duvet	✓		*	*	*	*	*
2 pillows per sleeping position in private rooms	✓						*
Mattresses covered with mattress protectors (in private and dormitory rooms)	✓						*

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

		Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
10	<b>Furniture</b>							
	At least one bedside table in each single and double room (could be a dressing table which doubles as a bedside table)	✓				*	*	
	Each sleeping position should have an individual bedside table or shelf, including dormitory beds	✓						*
	Private rooms to have at least one comfortable seating position/ chair	✓						*
	Private rooms to have a dressing table with a chair or stool	✓						*
11	<b>Wardrobes, Shelves &amp; Luggage Storage</b>	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Dormitories should have sufficient lockers, lockable cupboards or lockable drawers - sufficient for each sleeping position	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Private rooms should have facilities to hang clothes (wardrobe or hooks or similar)	✓		*	*	*		
	Dormitories should have provision to hang clothes e.g. wall plaque with hooks or individual bunk hooks	✓		*	*	*		
	Wardrobes or open cupboards with hanging space or a rail to be provided in private rooms and dormitories	✓					*	*
12	<b>Curtains &amp; Window Coverings</b>	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Curtains, blinds or shutters should be provided on all windows including glass panels and doors where required to afford privacy and/or the exclusion of light.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
13	<b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b>	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Flooring may vary considerably and any fit-for-purpose flooring, in good condition may be appropriate (ease of cleaning and hygiene should be considered)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
14	<b>Temperature Control &amp; Ventilation</b>	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Adequate ventilation in each dormitory or private room. There should be at least one window to allow natural light and adequate ventilation. If the window can't be opened or is small an alternative ventilation system must be provided.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Wall panel heater (or similar) and ceiling/ free standing fan in each room depending on the climatic conditions.	✓						*

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 642 - PART 6**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 6 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>15 Lighting</b>							
All light bulbs should have a shade or cover unless they are of a decorative nature.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Minimum of one bedside or bedhead light in each single or double room. A double bed may have one shared bedhead or bedside light.	✓				*		
Bedside lights are not necessary in dormitories.	✓						
Minimum of one bedside or bedhead light in each single or double room for each sleeping position.	✓					*	*
Each dormitory bed should have a central or main room light.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Each dormitory bed should have an individual light.	✓						*
Light switches in convenient locations (next to door and next to beds)	✓						*
<b>16 Accessories</b>							
Waste bin in each dormitory and private bedroom	✓		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Mirror in each dormitory	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Mirror in each private room (if not provided in ensuite bathroom)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Television provided in each private room	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Hairdryer provided in private bedrooms	✓						*
Hairdryer available on request and a hair drying station/area provided in a communal area	✓						*
Smoking not permitted in dormitories and non-smoking private rooms to be provided	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

Bathrooms		Applicable					Not Applicable						
		Backpacker/ Hostel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	Backpacker/ Hostel	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
17	<p><b>Communal bathrooms</b></p> <p>Where appropriate, in communal bathrooms there should be privacy between the sexes for washing, showering and toilet facilities and, as far as possible, between members of the same sex. Unisex bathroom facilities must have private cubicles for each shower and toilet/ unit.</p> <p>Minimum of one bath or shower for every 12 guests in shared accommodation</p> <p>Minimum one toilet for every 10 guests in shared accommodation</p> <p>Minimum one washbasin for every 10 guests in shared accommodation</p> <p>Minimum of one bath or shower for every 8 guests in shared accommodation</p> <p>Minimum of one toilet for every 8 guests in shared accommodation</p> <p>Minimum of one washbasin for every 8 guests in shared accommodation</p> <p>All basins, baths and showers supplied with sufficient hot and cold water at all reasonable time</p>	✓	*	*	*	*	*	✓	*	*	*	*	*
18	<p><b>Fixtures and Fittings: Communal bathrooms</b></p> <p>All toilets, sinks, showers and other plumbing should be in good working order and free from trapping surfaces such as porcelain cracks and chips, and damaged toilet seats</p> <p>All communal bathrooms should be equipped with hand soap and hand drying facilities.</p> <p>Each shower or bath unit should provide privacy for the user and should have: bath or shower, clean, running water (available at reasonable times), at least two clothes hooks.</p> <p>No shower curtains should be used - all showers should be enclosed and if applicable have solid or glass doors (exemption allowed for building design/build that cannot accommodate doors, in which case excellent quality shower curtains or similar are expected)</p> <p>Each toilet unit should have: Toilet with seat and lid, toilet roll holder and toilet paper, covered waste bin, adequate ventilation via an extractor fan or externally opening window, toilet brush in holder.</p> <p>A mirror must be situated above or adjacent to hand basins.</p> <p>Sufficient open vanity space for toiletries</p>	✓	*	*	*	*	✓	*	*	*	*	*	

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

		Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
19	<b>En-suite bathrooms</b>							
	Each private room must have an en-suite bathroom.	✓						*
	All basins, baths and showers supplied with sufficient hot and cold water at all reasonable time	✓				*	*	*
20	<b>Fixtures and Fittings: En-suite bathrooms</b>		Not Applicable option					
	All toilets, sinks, showers and other plumbing should be in good working order and free from trapping surfaces such as porcelain cracks and chips, and damaged toilet seats	✓		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Towel rails/racks/shelf to be sufficient for the number of guests in the room.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	A mirror must be situated above or adjacent to the hand basin.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Sufficient vanity space for the maximum number of guests.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Each toilet should have: Toilet with seat and lid, toilet roll holder and toilet paper, covered waste bin, adequate ventilation via an extractor fan or externally opening window.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Bathrooms to include at least one hand basin	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All bathrooms to include a bath or a shower (shower over bath is also acceptable)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Shower curtains are acceptable. Must be free of stains, tears, holes and mould.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	No shower curtains should be used - all showers should be enclosed and if applicable have solid or glass doors (exemption allowed for building design/build that cannot accommodate doors, in which case excellent quality shower curtains or similar are expected)	✓					*	*
	A hook for clothes.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
21	<b>Bathroom Size</b>		Not Applicable option					
	All bathrooms should have sufficient space to allow for comfortable freedom of movement for guests and access to all fittings	✓		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
22	<b>Towelling: En-Suite bathrooms</b>		Not Applicable option					
	All guests in private and en-suite rooms provided with individual towel and soap upon arrival	✓		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
23	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>		Not Applicable option					
	An impervious surface to be provided on walls, floors and ceilings.	✓		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

24	Lighting and Ventilation	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Light switch near the entrance to the bathroom.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Sufficient lighting to light the bathroom	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All bathroom windows should be tinted, opaque or similar to ensure guest privacy. Alternatively, windows could be covered with an opaque curtain, blind or shutter.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Sufficient and appropriate ventilation for the bathroom	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Public Areas								
25	Living and Dining Areas	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A guest dining area is available.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Dining area large enough to accommodate most of the guests at the establishment (approximately 25% of total guest capacity can be accommodated at one time)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Minimum of one lounge or relaxing area (dining area may suffice as a lounge or relaxing area)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	If only outdoor dining and/or relaxing areas are provided then the area must be covered to protect guests from inclement weather (rain, sunshine, etc)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Television provided in communal area (if fit for purpose)	✓	✓					*
26	Lighting, Heating/Cooling & Ventilation	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Acceptable levels of lighting appropriately positioned for safety and comfort in all public areas, including sufficient light on stairways and landings	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Acceptable temperature control and ventilation (ventilation system needs to be provided if a room/ area does not have an opening window)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
27	Other Public Areas Including Passages & Staircases	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Passages and stairs free from obstruction. Well lit 24 hours a day, although energy initiatives are to be respected.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Clear, directional signage to bedrooms and reception (where needed).	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All emergency information and signage to be clearly displayed in public areas.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
28	Toilet Areas	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	All toilets regularly cleaned, checked and adequately ventilated.	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<p><b>Food and Beverage Facilities</b></p>											
29	<p><b>Meal provision</b>                      If a food and/or beverage service is provided, staff should demonstrate adequate levels of product knowledge and provide efficient service.</p>	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<p>All food must be hygienically stored, prepared and presented.</p>											
30	<p><b>Communal Kitchen</b>                      A self-catering communal kitchen should be provided.                      All fixtures, furniture, furnishings, crockery, cutlery and glassware must be in an acceptable condition and functional                      Adequate number of crockery, cutlery and glassware to provide for at least 25% of the maximum number of occupants at any one time                      Sufficient storage or shelving space for crockery, cutlery, kitchen and cleaning equipment.                      Sufficient hot plates on which to cook meals                      An oven, microwave or braai facilities provided                      Refrigerator in each kitchen                      Sink equipped with a draining board and running water supply in each kitchen                      Facility available for boiling water (kettle, geyser, etc.) in each kitchen                      Minimum of one hygienic working surface in each kitchen                      Sufficient storage space for guest's food (including dry goods) in each kitchen                      An open window or an appropriate ventilation system in each kitchen                      Covered waste disposal bin in each kitchen                      Fire extinguisher and fire blanket readily available in each kitchen                      Freezer or large freezer section in fridge                      Toaster                      Microwave oven</p>	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<p><b>Applicable</b></p>											
<p><b>Backpacker/ Hostel</b></p>											
<p><b>Not Applicable option</b></p>											
<p><b>1-Star</b></p>											
<p><b>2-Star</b></p>											
<p><b>3-Star</b></p>											
<p><b>4-Star</b></p>											
<p><b>5-Star</b></p>											

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

Oven and/or convection microwave oven	✓	✓							*	*
Hand soap and dishwashing liquid provided	✓								*	*
Range of herbs and spices.	✓								*	*

**Other Facilities**

	Applicable											
	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
31 <b>Clothes Washing, Hanging and Drying Facilities</b>												
Facilities for drying and hanging wet clothes should be provided or laundry service should be available	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Dedicated clothes washing sink with running water should be provided or laundry service should be available.	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
An iron and ironing board should be provided in the communal kitchen, the laundry or drying area.	✓											*
Washing machines (these may be coin operated) should be available for guest use	✓											*
Tumble drying machines (these may be coin operated) should be available for guest use	✓											*

**General Facilities, Services and Service**

	Applicable											
	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
32 <b>Courtesy</b>												
Staff should be helpful and attentive and show courtesy to all guests at all times.	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Staff should be clean, neatly and appropriately dressed, helpful and attentive to guests	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
There should be reasonable levels of tourist information available, particularly with regard to local places of interest and activities available.	✓		*	*	*	*	*					

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
33 <b>Reception / Meet &amp; Greet</b>							
Guest to be met on arrival by authorised establishment representative	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Clear communication regarding what the establishment has to offer should be made available whether by advertisement, brochure, word of mouth or other means to all guests upon request.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
34 <b>Additional Facilities/ Services</b>	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Swimming pool for guest use	✓						
Braai area for guest use	✓						
Luggage storage for early arrivals/ late departures	✓						
Shuttle service or equivalent provided for guests	✓						
Tour booking service available	✓						

**Housekeeping**

	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
35 <b>Cleanliness</b>							
A high standard of general cleanliness should be maintained throughout the establishment at all times.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
36 <b>Bedrooms and Bathrooms</b>	Backpacker/ Hostel	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
All bedrooms and bathrooms cleaned daily.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All bed linen including duvet covers changed for each new guest, on request, when soiled or for long-stay guests at least every 7-days. "No Change" option available	✓		*	*	*	*	*
All towelling and bathroom linen changed for each new guest, on request, when soiled or for long-stay guests at least every 7-days. "No Change" option available	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements  
Venues

A: Exterior	Applicability per Sub-Category											
	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
1 Building Exterior												
Clearly identifiable reception area/ building entrance		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Doorway & entrance clearly illuminated	Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Lighting in all public areas, including stairways		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
2 Grounds and Gardens	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
3 Parking / Driveway / Signage	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Provision of on-site and/ or pre-arranged parking areas - sufficient for the likely number of attendees. If necessary a shuttle service to be provided between arranged parking and the venue.		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Clearly visible driveway and parking signage	Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Clear walkway or path between designated parking and the venue		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
A porte-cochere or similar stopping area for VIPs, coaches and buses		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
4 Bus & Coach Pick-Up / Drop-Off Points	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Specified area for coaches and buses to allow delegates/ guests to embark and disembark safely	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*
5 Loading area/ bays	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Back loading entrance acceptable for most types of functions held at the venue.	✓	✓	✓	✓								
B: Venues/ Rooms and Event Support Areas	Applicability per Sub-Category											
6 Venues	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Lockable and/or secure venues/ rooms	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Dedicated cleaning staff available during all functions and events	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						

## Core Requirements

## Venues

		In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
7	<b>Furniture</b> Sufficient inventory of furniture in order to be able to set up a minimum of 60% of all meeting/event space simultaneously. Access to sufficient inventory of appropriate furniture in order to set up all meeting/ event space simultaneously	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
8	<b>Venue Lighting</b> Appropriate lighting in each room/ venue Each room / venue with independently operated and appropriate lighting (also applicable to each subdivision) Lighting with dimming facilities in each room/ venue	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
9	<b>Venue Ventilation</b> Appropriate ventilation in each room/ venue Each room/ venue with independently controlled and appropriate temperature control system (air-conditioning) (not necessarily applicable to subdivisions)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
10	<b>Venue Power</b> Appropriate in-room power in each venue/ room Each room/ venue with independently controlled power (preferably 3-phase) Ducted electrical cables for electricity into the venue Availability of electrical extension cords and multiplugs and/or plug points available throughout the venue	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
11	<b>Venue Connectivity and Audio-Visual equipment</b> Access to basic staging and audio-visual equipment i.e. raised platform, dance floor, flipchart, screen, digital projector, microphone Access to more than basic staging and audio-visual equipment (applicable to the range and extent of events which can be hosted) Access to any staging and audio-visual equipment (applicable to the range and extent of events that can be hosted) Access to technologically advanced staging and audio-visual equipment in the venue (applicable to the range and extent of events that can be hosted) Each room/ venue with in-room telephone connectivity (could be VOIP technology) Each room/ venue with in-room internet and/or wireless internet connectivity (Wi-Fi) (NA if no signal) Each room/ venue with in-room LAN internet connectivity or high speed Wi-Fi (can be outsourced) (NA if no signal) Technical support on site during event (in-house or outsourced) Highly qualified technical staff (in-house or outsourced) to set-up and maintain equipment and to advise clients as required. Based on-site during the event.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star

Core Requirements

Venues

	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>1.2 Blinds, Curtaining and Black-out Materials</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Window coverings must be large enough to draw easily and completely cover the window opening	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
Window coverings must provide a partially darkened room	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
Window coverings must provide full block out for the venue	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
<b>1.3 Flooring and Floor Loading</b>	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the event	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Floor loading capacities (in each venue) must be communicated to users and suppliers in advance of the venue space being used.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
<b>1.4 Walls, Partitions and Operable Walls</b>	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Permanent walls in venues are attractively decorated (as appropriate) e.g. wallpaper, visual effects, etc. and are appropriately soundproofed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
Sub-divisible venues should have suitable partitions and/or operable walls.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Access to a stand-building provider for constructible partitions.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
Partitions that divide the venue effectively - ceiling to floor, solid partitions need not be light and soundproof	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*		
Partially sound dampened and fully lightproof partitions that are easy to operate and that blend with the decor of the venue. Must be lockable/ secure	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	
Sound dampened and lightproof partitions, that are easy to operate and that blend with the decor of the venue. Must be lockable/ secure	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					*
<b>1.5 Meeting supplies</b>	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Pen per delegate	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
Paper provided for each delegate	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
Water station provided in the venue	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Filtered water provided at tables	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					
Cordials/ flavoured water/ cooldrinks provided	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*
Refreshments provided i.e. mints, fruit, etc.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
Drinking cups provided	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Drinking glass per delegate	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*
Coaster per delegate	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*

## Core Requirements

## Venues

16	Service and Utility Pit / Grid (connectivity to power, water, drainage)	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
17	Boardroom/s (applicable to permanent boardrooms)	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Table large enough to accommodate number of delegates advertised	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Sufficient boardroom chairs to accommodate number of delegates advertised	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	High-back, swivel boardroom chairs	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Appropriate, screen/TV in each boardroom	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Digital projector in/available for each boardroom	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Easily accessible and sufficient network and power points	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Position for permanent tea/ coffee station and refreshments	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Coffee/ Cappuccino machine	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Fridge	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Interesting architectural features, objects of interest, artwork and object d'art.	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
18	Hospitality/ VIP suite/s	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A meeting room/ venue that can be utilised as a private holding room.	✓	✓	✓	✓						*	*	*
	A private, purpose-built, temperature controlled suite (holding room)			✓	✓								*
	En-suite private toilet and/or bathroom			✓	✓								*
19	Media Centre	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Venue or room adapted to meet media specific requirements.	✓	✓	✓	✓						*	*	*
	Dedicated, purpose-built centre to meet specific media requirements.				✓			✓					*
	Accessibility to electricity, telecommunications, internet and Wi-Fi within media centre				✓			✓					*
20	Storage Space	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Storage space that can safely store event materials and equipment overnight	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*
	Exclusive, lockable storage area available for each event hosted at the venue	✓	✓	✓	✓							*	*
21	Ticket Office / Ticketing Kiosk	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Booth, room, space or area adapted to meet specific event ticket sales requirements			✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Venues

C: Public Areas (areas inside a venue that are accessible to delegates/ guests. Includes corridors, lounges, reception areas, registration areas, pre-assembly areas, etc.)	Applicability per Sub-Category											
	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
22 Signage Directional (orientation) and informational signage to guide visitors to reception, car park, exits, entrances, toilets, medical facilities and function or meeting venues. Signage should be clearly visible, seen from a distance and preferably lit in the dark.	In-Hotel conference centre Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
23 Decoration Some use of objects of interest and artwork. Interesting architectural features, objects of interest, artwork and object d'art.	In-Hotel conference centre Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
24 Lounge/ Sitting Areas All lounge and seating areas to be furnished with sufficient occasional tables, chairs and functional surfaces. All seating areas to be of an acceptable layout to provide a reasonable amount of space for guests/ delegates to easily move around.	In-Hotel conference centre Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
25 Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting & Cornices A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	In-Hotel conference centre Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
26 Lighting, Heating/Cooling & Ventilation Acceptable levels of lighting appropriately positioned for safety and comfort in all public areas, including sufficient light on stairways and landings Acceptable temperature control and ventilation.	In-Hotel conference centre Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
27 Connectivity and Power Access to power in public areas Access to Wi-Fi in public areas (NA if no signal)	In-Hotel conference centre Hotel grading	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Venues

28	Business Centre/ Services	#REF!	#REF!	#REF!	#REF!	#REF!	#REF!	#REF!	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Office equipment for basic business services easily accessible i.e. photocopy, print, internet (connectivity)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
	Colour photocopying and printing available	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					*	*
29	Reception area/ desk	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Reception desk/ area available for the venue	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable				*	*	*
30	Information points/ desks	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	General Tourism information available	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable		*	*	*	*	*
	A designated information desk/ point available within the venue (this could be at the reception desk/ area) for tourism, venue and other information	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						*	*
	Staffed information desk - operational during reasonable venue operating hours (venue and tourism information provided)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓							*
31	Lifts – Passenger and Freight	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A lift is required where there are venues that are 3 floors or more higher or lower than the entrance level floor.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	A lift is required where there are venues that are 2 or more floors higher or lower than the entrance level floor.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					*
	Separate passenger and freight lifts	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					*
32	Escalators and Stairwells	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Escalators are installed where lifts would be impractical to move large volumes of pedestrian traffic up and down within a building.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	✓			*	*	*
	Stairwells and landings well lit	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	Handrails installed in stairwells	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
33	Toilets and Restrooms	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/ Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable		1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Well ventilated toilets in private cubicles	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	✓			*	*	*
	Washbasin with soap	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	Liquid soap	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	Hot air dryers and/or single-use, paper/ towelling hand towels	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	Toilet seat with lid	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	Covered light	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*
	Mirror	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*



Core Requirements

Venues

Table Appointments	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
39	Table appointments appropriate to the meal being served	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
40	<b>Meal Quality and Presentation</b> All foods well-presented and served at the correct temperature Provision made for a variety of dietary requirements Selection or variety of food options for clients to choose from A reasonable variety of food options for clients to choose from A substantial choice of hot and cold dishes for clients to choose from A broad range of dishes or outstanding quality and presentation meeting high international standards, for clients to choose from.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star

E: Services

41	In-Hotel conference centre	Conference/Exhibition centre	Convention centre	Events venue	Historical venue	Function venue	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>Welcome, Friendliness &amp; Attitude</b> Professional, skilful and competent service and attention to detail is expected	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
42	<b>Appearance of Staff</b> Service staff to be identifiable by a uniform or similar Service staff to wear name badges	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
43	<b>Sales / Event Co-ordination / Management</b> Event support provided to clients Prompt and thorough dealing with enquiries, bookings, correspondence and complaints. All details of booking process, payment process and cancellation information are made clear to the client. The amenities, facilities and services provided by the venue are described fairly and truthfully to clients	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
44	<b>Safety and Security</b> Management Representative responsible for safety and security on call 24 hours a day, 7 days a week Management representative on site during an event Emergency information & procedures clearly displayed in English and in pictograms where possible. No obstruction of emergency exit doorways or stairwells Appropriate safety and security measures throughout the establishment	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star

Venues	Core Requirements													
Emergency equipment to be installed, maintained and available in accordance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*
All equipment to be regularly inspected serviced and well maintained. Service certificates should be made available on request.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*
Safety briefing before commencement of each event	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*
Staff are trained on emergency evacuation procedures	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements  
**Final Draft**  
03 March 2017

Caravan and Camping  
**Core Requirements**  
**Caravan and Camping Sites and Parks**

		Applicability per Sub-Category								
		Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
1	Building Exterior									
2	Grounds and Gardens	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
3	Parking, Driveways and Parking Signage	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Provision of fit for purpose on-site and/or designated parking areas (ideally 1 parking space/ area per site)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Directional signage on and off the property - acceptable condition, clearly visible, fit for purpose.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Directional signage to guide guests around the property and to amenities	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Traffic calming measures adequately sign posted and marked	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Weatherproof, well constructed service roads, allowing free access to all sites.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
4	Exterior Lighting	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable option	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Adequately lit pathways (appropriate to the environment and limiting light pollution)	✓			*	*	*	*	*	*
	Entrances to facilities (ablutions, communal areas, etc) appropriately lit	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Internal roads are appropriately lit	✓								*
5	Safety and Security	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Appropriate, fit for purpose safety and security measures throughout the establishment at all times.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Management Representative / the most senior representative on-site responsible for safety and security on call 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Emergency information (including relevant telephone numbers) & evacuation signage and procedures clearly displayed and explanation/ tour available on request	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	An area of refuge or holding area has been provided for use by guests in case of emergency evacuation and egress	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Guests to have secure access into facility / establishment.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	High regard for security and safety of guests, which is unobtrusive (e.g. on-site security, private security, armed-response, night watchman, panic buttons, internal radio communication, radio contact with local police, suitable perimeter security, secure entrance gate and intercom, part of a Community Policing Forum, video surveillance (CCTV) cameras, medical support on call, etc.)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Guests provided with unrestricted and secure access to shared/ public areas	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

Telephone available at reception (cellular or landline)		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>B: Bathrooms and Ablutions</b>												
<b>Applicability per Sub-Category</b>												
<b>6</b>	<b>Type of Bathroom</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	Separate bathrooms provided for male and female guests unless private or family facilities are offered	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Bathroom/s to include toilet, hand basin and bath or shower cubicles	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Where appropriate, privacy provided between individual washing, shower, bath and toilet facilities	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	At least 1 male and 1 female shower or bath, toilet and washbasin for every 8 six-person sites in the park.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	All toilets, showers, baths and other plumbing must be a good working condition and free from trapping surfaces such as chips cracks and broken seat toilet.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Communal bathrooms have both shower and bath cubicles	✓	✓									
	Private or family bathrooms may be open plan i.e. separate cubicles not necessary for toilet, shower, etc.	✓	✓	✓								
<b>7</b>	<b>Fixtures and Fittings</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	All basins, baths and showers supplied with sufficient hot and cold water supply (unless advertised otherwise)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Basins, baths and showers provide a strong and easily adjustable flow of water.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Sufficient towel rails or clothes hooks for the number of guests using the facility (should at minimum be within shower/ bath cubicle)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	A mirror must be situated above or adjacent to the hand basin.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Bathroom has vanity space at hand wash basins	✓	✓									
	Bathroom has ample vanity space at hand wash basin.	✓	✓									
	Internal locks or bolts on cubicle (toilet, shower, bath) doors (where applicable)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	A stool / sitting area in each bathroom	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	At least one full length mirror must be provided in each female ablution block	✓	✓									
<b>8</b>	<b>Shower and Bath Cubicles and Dressing areas</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	Privacy provided between individual bath and shower cubicles	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	All communal bath/shower have access to adjacent dry area in which to hang clothes, get dressed, etc.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	A stool / sitting area in each shower/bath cubicle	✓	✓									
	At least one clothes hook located in shower cubicle (dry area but in easy reach of shower/ bath)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	More than one clothes hook located in shower cubicle (dry area but in easy reach of shower/ bath)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Fixed soap dish/stand to be provided in each bath/shower cubicle.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			
	Shower or bath caddy fitted in each shower as well as within easy reach from bathtubs	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*			



Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

12	Flooring and Ceiling	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	An impervious surface to be provided on walls, floors and ceilings. Flooring to have a non-slip coated surface. Ceiling fitted. In thatched roof these ceiling criteria may be excluded	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
13	<b>Walls: Tiling and Paintwork</b> Walls painted or tiled	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Walls tiled, tiles covering at least 50% of the wall height from the floor up (preferably tiled to ceiling in 5-star)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
14	<b>Lighting and Ventilation</b> Adequate ventilation and extraction via opening window or extractor fan provided in all bathrooms Adequate and sufficient lighting to light the bathroom Light switches located at the entrance door to the bathroom facility No uncovered /exposed globes, cracked or damaged fittings or lights that are not working Direct frontal lighting provided at all washbasins	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
15	<b>Windows, Doors and Frames</b> For guest privacy all windows should be either tinted, frosted, opaque or covered with a curtain, shutter, blind or similar	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

C: Sculleries and Camp Kitchens									
Applicability per Sub-Category									
16	Type of sculleries and camp kitchen	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Scullery for dishwashing purposes and/or camp kitchen provided for guest use	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Permanent structure with a roof and preferably providing protection from the elements	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Easily adjustable flow of running water available at all times	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Sufficient space to allow for freedom of movement for guests to access fittings	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All sinks and work surfaces and plumbing must be in good working condition and free from trapping surfaces such as cracks, chips and broken tiles.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	May not be situated within ablutions or bathrooms.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Caravan and Camping

17	Fixtures and Fittings	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Covered waste disposal bin with liner must be provided	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	A stove with at least 2 hot plates provided in a camp kitchen	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Washing up sink, with hot and cold running water, a plug and a draining board for typical amount of guests	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Double washing up sink, with hot and cold running water, a plug and a draining board for typical amount of guests	✓	✓					*	*
	Hygienic and clean dish drying rack.	✓	✓				*	*	*
	Suitable refrigeration and freezer facilities made available to guests travelling without this facility (in all camp kitchens)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	A table with sufficient seating provided in all camp kitchens	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Hot water urn provided for tea or coffee making in camp kitchens	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	An appropriate fire extinguisher designated as suitable for kitchen fires located at or near the entrance of the facility.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	If the kitchen is situated in an enclosed indoor area, there should be an externally opening window.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Functional and hygienic working surface/s available	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Durable kitchen surfaces, of high quality, showing no signs of wear and tear or visible marking	✓	✓					*	*
	Broom, mop, dustpan and brush provided in each scullery or camp kitchen	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Plumbing below washbasins must be suitably screened and water pipes are not visible either above or below sinks and counters.	✓	✓					*	*
18	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	An impervious surface to be provided on walls, floors and ceilings. Flooring to have a non-slip coated surface.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ceiling fitted. In thatched roof these ceiling criteria may be excluded	✓	✓				*	*	*
19	<b>Walls: Tiling and Paintwork</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Walls painted or tiled	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Walls tiled, tiles covering at least 50% of the wall height from the floor up (preferably tiled to ceiling in 5-star)	✓	✓					*	*
20	<b>Ventilation and Lighting</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Direct lighting onto all work areas.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Light switches located at the entrance door to the scullery or camp kitchen.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Adequate ventilation and extraction via opening window or extractor fan must be provided in all sculleries and/or camp kitchens. Alternatively suitable ventilation system to be provided	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

D: Laundry and Drying Areas		Applicability per Sub-Category											
		✓					Not Applicable						
		Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
2.1	<b>Type of Laundries and Drying Areas</b> If appropriate to the market and not readily available in the surrounding area, a laundry facility should be provided for guest use Laundries must have sufficient space to allow for movement of all guests and access to all fittings Laundry may not be located within ablutions or bathrooms. Laundry area is hidden from general view and enclosed.	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
2.2	<b>Fixtures and Fittings</b> The laundry should be equipped and fitted with at least a washing machine (coin or disk operated equipment is acceptable) and/or deep hand-washing troughs. Clear operating instructions for all equipment with usage tariffs and acceptable means of payment must be clearly displayed. Appropriate fire extinguisher designated and suitable for kitchen fires should be located at or near the entrance to the facility. Clean running cold and hot water available at all times, unless otherwise advertised. Clothes drying/hanging area must be provided for guest use. Drying/ hanging area to be screen from general view Broom, mop dustpan and brush should be provided in each laundry (if separate to the scullery/ camp kitchen) At least 1 work surface suitable for clothes sorting and folding should be provided Electrical power available in the laundry area Ironing boards must be provided in the laundry area All plumbing below wash troughs should be suitably screened and water pipes are not visible.	✓		*	*	*	*	*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2.3	<b>Ventilation and lighting</b> Adequate lighting in all the areas Light switches located at the entrance door of the facility If situated in an enclosed indoor area, there should be an externally opening window. Alternatively, adequate ventilation for the facility must be provided	✓		*	*	*	*	*	Not Applicable				
2.4	<b>Walls: tiling and paintwork</b> All walls to be painted or tiled	✓		*	*	*	*	*	Not Applicable				
2.5	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b> An impervious surface to be provided on walls and ceilings. Flooring to have a non-slip coated surface. Ceiling fitted. In thatched roof these ceiling criteria may be excluded	✓		*	*	*	*	*	Not Applicable				

## Core Requirements

## Caravan and Camping

E: Caravan/ Camping Sites	Applicability per Sub-Category									
	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>26 Size and Demarcation of Sites</b>										
Caravan and camping sites provided for guest use	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
All caravan and camping sites should be positioned for relatively easy access to communal facilities	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Caravans or tents on adjacent sites should be a reasonable and safe distance	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Minimum recommended site size for a stand is approximately 8m x 10m. Sites should be large enough to accommodate a caravan/motor home/tent and towing vehicle and there should be sufficient space to erect a side tent if necessary within the boundaries of the site.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Sites for caravans at least 10m x 12m	✓	✓	✓							
All sites should be markedly generous in size, with greater ease of access and comfort	✓	✓								
All sites clearly numbered for easy identification	✓	✓								
Demarcated sites e.g. with stones, plants, painted lines, hedges, wooden barriers, etc.	✓	✓								
All sites are level	✓	✓								
Sites must have shade - either trees or other means	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
A reasonable number of private or secluded sites available	✓	✓								
<b>27 Access and Overhead Clearance</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Caravan and camping sites must be accessible to and from a service road	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Access to site should be easy with motor vehicle and caravan/ trailer still hitched	✓	✓								
Acceptable clearance for most types of caravans and tents	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
There must be no overhead branches from trees or shrubs that are able to touch or brush against the caravan or tent	✓	✓								
Clearance above ground must be at least 2.7m	✓	✓								
<b>28 Surfaces and drainage</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	4-Star	5-Star
All caravan and camping sites must have even-surface and well-drained	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Trenches dug by campers prior to vacating the site must be filled and evened out as soon as possible.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
The camping surface may be fully or partially grassed, well maintained gravel surface, brick paved or a combination of these surfaces (concrete is not recommended)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Allowance must be made for campers to insert pegs between paving bricks or blocks.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Brick paved camping surface should be an area of at least 3m x 5m	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

29	Electrical Power points	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	If electricity is not offered to one or more sites, this must be clearly specified	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Sites that accommodate caravans must be supplied with electricity, unless otherwise advertised.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	There must be at least one power outlet per site	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	There should be a maximum of 4 electrical outlets per power box. The distance from the site to the closest power point should be a maximum of 25m to prevent long lead cords being used. There should be no lead cords across roads, walkways or other campsites.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	All electrical power points on caravan and camping sites should meet SABS 10142 standards, be certified and conform to legal standards (e.g. each electrical box must be waterproof, fitted with earth leakage circuit breakers and all wiring must be suitably enclosed inside the power box to prevent any accidental contact with exposed wiring).	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	All power boxes must be securely mounted on a suitable post at a height and location that is clearly visible to guests.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Power outlets should be at least 1.8m away from any water outlets.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Each site should have its own electrical point of not less than 10A with a separate circuit breaker for each point.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
30	<b>Water points and Drainage</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Easily accessible taps with running water and adequate pressure available for guest use	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All taps are securely mounted, clearly visible and positioned at a comfortable height	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	At least 1 tap for every 3-4 sites	✓	✓						
	At least 1 tap for every 2 sites	✓	✓						
	Drainage system is installed at each tap to allow for wastewater run-off	✓	✓						
31	<b>Refuse Bins</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Sites are provided with suitable refuse disposal facilities	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All bins emptied and cleaned at least daily	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Refuse bins are lined and have a lid	✓	✓						
	At least 1 bin for every 3 - 4 sites	✓	✓						
	At least 1 bin for every 2 sites	✓	✓						

## Core Requirements

## Caravan and Camping

32 Braai Facilities	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
If provided, all braais, whether fixed or portable, should be cleaned daily	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
All guest braais should be cleaned daily	✓	✓					*	*
Sufficient "Ash only" refuse bins should be provided and these should be emptied regularly and kept clean	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Each site should have a braai (fixed or portable)	✓	✓					*	*
All braais should have a suitable braai grid	✓	✓					*	*
<b>33 Site keeping and appearance</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
All sites should be kept clean and litter free	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Areas around sites and caravans/ campers to be well maintained and kept clean	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Grass to be well kept (taking into account recent weather conditions and location)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

## F: Reception and Public Areas

Applicability per Sub-Category								
	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
<b>34 Fixtures and Fittings</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Adequate and clearly identifiable reception area or office	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Corridors and stairs well lit	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Clear signage notifying guests as to the office, reception and hall opening and closing hours must be clearly displayed.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Seating layout in halls, reception and other public areas should provide reasonable space for guests to move about easily	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>35 Ventilation and lighting</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Adequate ventilation via opening windows/ doors or suitable ventilation system	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Light switches located at the entrance door to the facility	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Adequate lighting in all areas	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>36 Walls, Tiling and Paintwork</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
All walls to be painted or tiled	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>37 Flooring and Ceilings</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Flooring to be fit for purpose	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

38 Public Area Toilet/s	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Public toilets may be unisex	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Hand basin with running water and soap to be provided	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Mirror above hand basin	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Toilet sit and lid	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Hand drying facility (clean towel, paper towel or hot air dryer)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Covered light	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Hook on cubicle door	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Lidded disposal bin and/or sanitary bags	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Toilet paper and holder plus spare toilet rolls	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Toilet brush with holder	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

G: Housekeeping								
39 Bathrooms/ Ablutions	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site						
All ablution facilities to be thoroughly cleaned, at least daily.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ablution attendant on duty to facilitate continuous cleaning, particularly during busy periods	✓	✓						
40 Sculleries and Camp Kitchens	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site							
All sculleries and camp kitchens to be thoroughly cleaned, at least daily.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Kitchen attendant on duty to facilitate additional cleaning, particularly during busy periods	✓	✓						
41 Laundries and Drying Areas	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site							
Laundries thoroughly cleaned thoroughly at least daily	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
42 Public Areas	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site							
All public areas and halls should be thoroughly cleaned at least once a day with all surfaces, counters, furniture and floors showing good housekeeping and maintenance	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*



Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

	Adequate ventilation and extraction via opening windows, extractor fans or air-condition must be provided	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Adequate lighting in all areas	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Light switches located at the entrance door to the facility.	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*	*
48	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	Flooring must be fit for purpose	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
	Ceiling, if fitted, must be well painted, free from mildew or damage.	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
	No sagging panels should be visible	✓										*
49	<b>Windows, Doors and Frames</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	No cracked windows panes evident	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
	All doors and windows are able to open, close and latch easily	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
50	<b>Other Recreational Facilities (e.g. swimming pool, children's play area, trampoline, etc. _</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	If provided, facilities should be in a good condition	✓		✓	*	*	*	*	*			*
	Added facilities for guest comfort e.g. loungers at the swimming pool, umbrellas, landscaped garden areas, etc.	✓		✓								*
J.	<b>Shops, bars bottle stores and/or take aways</b>	Applicability per Sub-Category		✓								
51	<b>Fixtures, fittings and equipment</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	Adequately stocked and clearly identifiable shop, bar bottle store and/or take away	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
	Acceptable range of basic products available, although not fully comprehensive supply of goods	✓										
	Reasonable selection of products available	✓										
	Reasonable range of take-away food available	✓										
	Product range and variety is high and well suited to the market	✓										*
	A good range of take-away foods available	✓										*
	Varied selection of quality fresh produce and/or home-made meals available. Shopping experience with a local feel/ flavour	✓										*
	Excellent range of take-away foods available	✓										*
	Well organised shelves and stock all clearly priced	✓										*
52	<b>Ventilation and Lighting</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			
	All shops, take-aways, bottle stores, etc. must be adequately ventilated with adequate windows opening directly into open air or suitable ventilation system must be provided	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
	Adequate lighting in all areas	✓			*	*	*	*	*			*
53	<b>Walls: Tiling and paintwork</b>	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star			

## Core Requirements

## Caravan and Camping

	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	*	*	*	*	*	*
All walls to be painted and/or tiled	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
54 Flooring and ceiling	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
Flooring to be fit for purpose	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
<b>K. Services Offered</b>										
<b>Applicability per Sub-Category</b>										
55 Arrival and Check-in	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
Park layout plans, indicating location of sites and facilities, be on display or available	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
Staff assistance for caravan placement and tent erection should be offered and available	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
56 Appearance of Staff	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
Staff to be neatly dressed	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
57 Tourist Information	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*
Tourist information available (at reception or similar) - on local attractions and areas of interest (if appropriate to the market and location)	✓	Caravan & Camp Site	Camp Site	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	*

Self-Catering Accommodation  
**Core Requirements**  
**Self-Catering Accommodation**

A: Exterior	Applicability per Sub-Category	Star Rating												
		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
1 Building Exterior		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Reception and/or unit entrances clearly identifiable and well lit at night.														
2 Grounds and Gardens		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star					
3 Parking, Driveways and Parking Signage		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star					
Provision of fit for purpose on-site and/ or designated parking		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Directional signage - acceptable condition, clearly visible, fit for purpose.		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Tidy, well maintained parking area		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Well lit parking area		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Sufficient covered/ weatherproof guest parking facilities available		✓	✓											
h Safety and Security		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star					
Appropriate, fit for purpose safety and security measures throughout the establishment/ unit at all times.		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Management Representative / the most senior representative on-site responsible for safety and security on call 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Emergency information (including relevant telephone numbers) & evacuation signage and procedures clearly displayed and explanation/ tour available on request		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Means of communication with staff 24 hours a day in the event of an emergency must be provided and advertised in the unit.		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
An area of refuge or holding area has been provided for use by guests in cases of emergency evacuation and egress		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Guests to have secure access into facility / establishment.		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
High regard for security and safety of guests, which is unobtrusive (e.g. on-site security, private security, armed-response, night watchman, panic buttons, internal radio communication, radio contact with local police, suitable perimeter security, part of a Community Policing Forum, video surveillance (CCTV) cameras, medical support on call, etc.)		✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Guests provided with unrestricted and secure access to shared/ public areas			✓		*	*	*	*	*					
Telephone available at reception (cellular or landline)			✓		*	*	*	*	*					





## Core Requirements

## Self-Catering Accommodation

		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
10	<b>Curtains &amp; Window Coverings (applicable to each bedroom in each unit)</b>								
	Window dressings must be large enough to draw easily and completely across the width and height of the window	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	All ground floor bedrooms must provide additional privacy without restricting natural light	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Window coverings must provide full block out.	✓	✓						
11	<b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices (applicable to each bedroom in each unit)</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
12	<b>Temperature Control &amp; Ventilation (applicable to each bedroom in each unit)</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Adequate ventilation in each room.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Heating and cooling system appropriate to the level of star grading being applied for, that can be individually controlled per unit to the comfort levels of the guest, based on the geographical location of the establishments and for all seasons.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
13	<b>Lighting, Power &amp; Switches (applicable to each bedroom in each unit)</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Light switch to be located by the entrance door of each bedroom	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	One bedside light per sleeping position. In a twin room, one light between two beds is acceptable.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Two bedside lights in a twin bedded room.	✓	✓						
	One bedside light per sleeping position with switches conveniently placed within reach of the guests sleeping position.	✓	✓				*	*	*
	Provision of direct lighting at dressing table/desk (study lamp)	✓	✓					*	*
	Spare and convenient power points in each room	✓	✓				*	*	*
14	<b>Electronic Appliances (applicable to each unit)</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable option	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Hair-dryer available on request	✓	✓		*	*			
	Hair-dryer (minimum 1 600W) to be provided in each unit	✓	✓				*	*	*
	Hair-dryer located close to a mirror	✓	✓				*	*	*
	If a television is provided in the unit, then a separate television is required in at least one bedroom	✓	✓	✓					*
15	<b>Mirror &amp; Mirror Lighting</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Reasonably sized mirror with adequate lighting in at least one bedroom	✓	✓		*	*			
	Full length mirror with direct lighting in at least one bedroom/ bathroom	✓	✓				*	*	*
	A well lit mirror at dressing table area in close proximity to a plug point in at least one bedroom	✓	✓				*	*	*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
16	<b>Accessories (applicable to each unit)</b> Adequate, fit for purpose and appropriate protection against insects available on request e.g. insect repellent, mosquito net, insect pesticide, etc. applicable to location and time of year. Local Tourism Information and Entertainment Guide to be made available. Information on surrounding restaurants and take-away menus to be made available Instructions on how to use the television and heating /cooling system (if applicable)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
17	<b>Spaciousness &amp; Overall Impression</b> Unrestricted access to all storage facilities within the room. All bedrooms with sufficient space to allow guests freedom of movement around all furniture and fittings including sofa beds. There should be no restriction of free movement. Doors and drawers must be able to open and close easily without having to move furniture. Good amount of space allowing for ease of movement and relaxation. Each bedroom has a well-planned layout and is quite spacious. Each bedroom has a well-planned layout - very spacious, allowing generous ease of movement, comfort and relaxation.	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star

**C: Bathrooms**

	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Exclusive	Shared							
18	<b>Type of Bathroom</b> Bathroom can be internal or external to unit depending on the location of unit. e.g. bush location vs city location. If bathrooms are located external to unit, one bathroom per every 6 guests is acceptable At least one self-contained bathroom in the unit In multiple bedroom units there must be at least 2 bathrooms of which 1 bathroom must be private and en suite. In multiple bedroom units there must be at least 1 en-suite bathroom and for the remaining bedrooms, a maximum of 1,5 bedrooms per bathroom.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
19	<b>Flooring and Ceiling (applicable to each bathroom in each unit)</b> An impervious surface to be provided on walls, floors and ceilings.	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
20	<b>Lighting and Ventilation (applicable to each bathroom in each unit)</b> Individually controlled lighting Sufficient lighting to light the bathroom Direct frontal light source provided at washbasin and mirror Sufficient and appropriate ventilation for the bathroom	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
21	<b>Fixtures and Fittings (applicable to each bathroom in each unit)</b> All basins, baths and showers supplied with sufficient hot and cold water supply	✓	✓	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star



Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

Tissues provided	✓	✓					*	*	*	*
Bathroom equipped with a lidded bin.	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*
Bathroom equipped with double ply toilet paper and holder plus a minimum of 1 spare toilet roll.	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*
Bathroom equipped with toilet brush	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*
Comprehensive personal amenities including shower cap, conditioner, shower gel, body lotion and vanity kit.	✓	✓							*	*
Magnifying mirror provided in bathroom or bedroom	✓	✓								*
Slippers (sealed and clean/ new) provided per sleeping position	✓	✓								*

D: Kitchens (for all self-catering rooms/ units)

24 Type of kitchen	Applicability per Sub-Category									
	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
A facility/ area designed for the preparation of food and appropriate to the nature and style of the establishment	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
25 Safety and Security	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
Fire safety equipment to be provided (e.g. fire blanket, extinguisher, etc.)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
26 Flooring, Walling and Ceiling	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
An impervious surface to be provided on walls, floors and ceilings.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
27 Lighting	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
Direct lighting onto all work areas	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
28 Furnishings and Fixings	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
Opening window or effective air extraction	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
At least one hygienic and durable work surface	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Washing up sink, with hot and cold running water, a plug and a draining board	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Sufficient storage space for crockery, cutlery, kitchen equipment, cleaning equipment and guest supplies	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
29 Electrical Equipment	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
Microwave oven	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*		
Oven or convection microwave	✓	✓	✓				*	*		
2-Plate hob	✓	✓		*	*	*				
3- or 4-plate hob	✓	✓					*	*		
4-plate hob	✓	✓						*		
Extractor fan	✓	✓	✓					*		

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
Mini-bar refrigerator without a freezer compartment	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Refrigerator with freezer compartment	✓	✓						*
Dishwasher	✓	✓	✓					*
Covered waste disposal bin, inclusive of bin liner	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Kettle (need not be electrical)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Toaster	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Blender	✓	✓	✓					*
Coffee machine	✓	✓	✓					*
<b>Cutlery, Crockery and Utensils</b>	<b>Exclusive</b>	<b>Shared</b>	<b>Not Applicable</b>	<b>1-Star</b>	<b>2-Star</b>	<b>3-Star</b>	<b>4-Star</b>	<b>5-Star</b>
Cutlery (knife, fork, dessert spoon and teaspoon) sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Cutlery box or drawer divider	✓	✓						*
Drinking glasses - sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Crockery (dinner plate, side plate, bowl and coffee/tea mug or teacup and saucer) sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
2 pots/ saucepans of varying sizes	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
3 or more pots/ saucepans of varying sizes (small, medium and large)	✓	✓						*
Frying pan	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
2 or more frying pans of different sizes	✓	✓						*
Teapot	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Sugar bowl	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Condiment set	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Oven gloves or similar	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Table cloth or placemats (sufficient for the maximum number of occupants in the unit)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Chopping board (made of hygienic, impervious material)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Salad bowl	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Salad servers	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Roasting tray	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Wooden spoon or equivalent	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Whisk	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Bread knife	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Paring knife	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

30



Self-Catering Accommodation	Core Requirements								
Window treatment to ensure privacy	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*



## Core Requirements

## Self-Catering Accommodation

		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
39	<b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b>								
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
40	<b>Lighting, Heating/Cooling &amp; Ventilation</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Acceptable levels of lighting appropriately positioned for safety and comfort in all public areas, including sufficient light on stairways and landings		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Acceptable temperature control and ventilation.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
41	<b>Other Public Areas Including Passages &amp; Staircases</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Passages and stairs free from obstruction. Well lit 24 hours a day, although energy initiatives are to be respected.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Clear, directional signage to recreational areas, units and reception (where needed).		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
42	<b>Toilet Areas</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	All toilets regularly cleaned, checked and adequately ventilated.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Minimum facilities provided: washbasin with soap, hand drying facility, toilet with seat and lid, covered light (no exposed light bulbs or wires), mirror, hook on door, waste bin, hidden sanitary bin (ladles).		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Spacious, luxurious and numerous toilet facilities with refinements such as individual hand towels, high-quality toiletries and accessories.		✓	✓					*
43	<b>Elevators/ Lifts</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	A lift is required when there is a guest unit that is more than two floors higher or lower than the entrance level floor i.e. on the third floor.	✓	✓	✓				*	*

**G: Food & Beverage Facilities (if applicable)**

		Applicability per Sub-Category								
		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
44	<b>Furnishings</b>									
	Sufficient tables and chairs to accommodate maximum number of guests as advertised (may be indoor or outdoor)		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
45	<b>Flooring, Ceiling, Skirting &amp; Cornices</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	A reasonable effort is made to minimise noise levels taking into consideration size and location of establishment as well as the profile of the guest.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
46	<b>Lighting</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Acceptable levels of lighting, appropriately positioned for safety and comfort in all dining areas.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
47	<b>Menu Presentation</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Professional and appropriate presentation of the menu to the market being served (excluding buffet service)		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
48	<b>Table Appointments</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Table appointments appropriate to the meal being served i.e. breakfast or dinner.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
49	<b>Meal Quality and Presentation</b>								
	All foods well-presented and served at the correct temperature		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Provision made for a variety of dietary requirements		✓	✓			*	*	*
	A broad range of dishes of outstanding quality and presentation meeting high international standards.		✓	✓					*
50	<b>Breakfast Quality and Presentation</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Continental breakfast provided with an acceptable range of cereals, bread and condiments.		✓	✓	*	*			
	A good range of hot and cold items offered for breakfast (e.g. Hot breakfast should include a minimum of 5 items: Cold breakfast could include cereals, breads, cold meats, fruit and cheese) with a choice of accompaniments		✓	✓			*	*	
	A comprehensive range of outstanding quality hot and cold dishes available for breakfast and presented in an outstanding way.		✓	✓					*
	Guests are offered a wide choice of how their eggs are cooked, including fried, poached, boiled and scrambled.		✓	✓			*	*	*
	All foods well-presented and served at the correct temperature		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Provision made for a variety of dietary requirements		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

		Applicability per Sub-Category								
		Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
H: General Services and Service										
51	<b>Welcome, Friendliness and Attitude</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Personalised service and attention to detail is expected.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
52	<b>Appearance of Staff</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Service staff appearance to be professional and neat at all times.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Service staff to wear name badges at all times		✓		*	*	*	*	*	
53	<b>Reception / Meet &amp; Greet</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Guest to be met on arrival by authorised establishment representative	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Meet and greet provided in unit or administration/ reception area. An afterhours key service may be provided.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
54	<b>Reservation, Check In, Check Out &amp; General Efficiency</b>	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
	Prompt thorough reservation and check-in system, including capture of guest records and responding to guest requests.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	All information accurately provided to guests including layout of property, available facilities, emergency and evacuation procedures etc.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Bill/invoice to be correct with all details and clearly presented and explained.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	

## Core Requirements

## Self-Catering Accommodation

55 Laundry Services	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	✓	✓	✓			*		*
	✓	✓	✓				*	*

I: Housekeeping								
56 Bedrooms and Bathrooms	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Exclusive	Shared						
Guests to be informed on/prior to arrival of cleaning service routine	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Daily unit cleaning service available	✓	✓					*	*

J: Communal Laundry and Drying Areas (if applicable)								
57 Type of Laundries and Drying Areas	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Exclusive	Shared						
Laundries must have sufficient space to allow for movement of all guests and access to all fittings		✓		*	*	*	*	*
Laundry area is hidden from general view and enclosed.		✓		*	*	*	*	*

58 Fixtures and Fittings	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Exclusive	Shared						
The laundry should be equipped and fitted with at least a washing machine (coin or disk operated equipment is acceptable) and/or deep hand-washing troughs.		✓		*	*	*	*	*
Clear operating instructions for all equipment with usage tariffs and acceptable means of payment must be clearly displayed.		✓		*	*	*	*	*
Appropriate fire extinguisher designated and suitable for kitchen fires should be located at or near the entrance to the facility.		✓		*	*	*	*	*
At least 1 work surface suitable for clothes sorting and folding should be provided		✓		*	*	*	*	*
Electrical power available in the laundry area		✓				*	*	*
Ironing boards provided in the laundry area		✓				*	*	*
All plumbing below wash troughs should be suitably screened and water pipes are not visible.		✓				*	*	*

59 Ventilation and lighting	Applicability per Sub-Category		Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
	Exclusive	Shared						
Adequate lighting in all the areas		✓		*	*	*	*	*
Light switches located at the entrance door of the facility If situated in an enclosed indoor area, there should be an externally opening window. Alternatively, adequate ventilation for the facility must be provided		✓		*	*	*	*	*
Walls: tiling and paintwork All walls to be painted or tiled		✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
60 <b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>				*	*	*	*	*
An impervious surface to be provided on walls and ceilings. Flooring to have a non-slip coated surface.		✓	✓					
Ceiling fitted. In thatched roof these ceiling criteria may be excluded		✓	✓					

	Applicability per Sub-Category								
	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
<b>K: Communal Braai Areas and Bomas (if applicable)</b>									
61 <b>Fixture and fittings</b>				*	*	*	*	*	
Braai area and Boma should be clearly identifiable and have appropriate covering over braai area		✓	✓						
Braai facility is cleaned daily		✓	✓						
Braai grids are provided		✓	✓						
Braai accessories provided (such as tongs, forks, coal rakes, etc.)		✓	✓						
Seating provided (sufficient for the size of the braai area/ boma)		✓	✓						
Table/ work surface provided (sufficient for the size of the braai area/ boma)		✓	✓						
<b>62 Ventilation and lighting</b>				*	*	*	*	*	
Design of boma and braai area should allow for adequate ventilation and extraction of braai smoke in particular		✓	✓						
Adequate lighting in all areas		✓	✓						
Light switch/s located at the entrance to the facility		✓	✓						
<b>63 Flooring</b>				*	*	*	*	*	
Flooring to be fit f or purpose		✓	✓						

	Applicability per Sub-Category								
	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star	
<b>L: Recreational facilities (e.g. Games room, TV Room, etc. including equipment) (if applicable)</b>									
64 <b>Fixtures, Fittings and Equipment</b>				*	*	*	*	*	
If recreational facilities are present, they should be adequately equipped		✓	✓						
Facilities should be conveniently located and in good condition		✓	✓						
Functional colour TV with remote control		✓	✓						
Television appropriately sized for the room/ seating area		✓	✓						
Access to available free-to-air channels		✓	✓						
Multi-channels (minimum 9 channels) available at each TV. Channel choice should be appropriate to the market served		✓	✓			*	*	*	
Multi-channels (minimum 12 channels) available at each TV. Channel choice should be appropriate to the market served		✓	✓				*	*	
Multi-channels (>12 channels) available at each TV. Channel choice should be appropriate to the market served		✓	✓					*	
Wi-Fi available. Exemption allowed if there is no signal/ service		✓	✓				*	*	

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

65	Appropriate, functional seating provided	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Plastic furniture is acceptable	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	<b>Ventilation and Lighting</b>	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
	Adequate ventilation and extraction via opening windows, extractor fans or air-condition must be provided	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Adequate lighting in all areas	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Light switches located at the entrance door to the facility.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
66	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
	Flooring must be fit for purpose	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Ceiling, if fitted, must be well painted, free from mildew or damage.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
67	<b>Windows, Doors and Frames</b>	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
	No cracked windows panes evident	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	All doors and windows are able to open, close and latch easily	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
68	<b>Other Recreational Facilities (e.g. swimming pool, children's play area, trampoline, etc.)</b>	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
	If provided, facilities should be in a good condition	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Added facilities for guest comfort e.g. loungers at the swimming pool, umbrellas, landscaped garden areas, etc.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

M. Shops, bars bottle stores and/or take always (if applicable)										
Applicability per Sub-Category										
	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
69	<b>Fixtures, fittings and equipment</b>	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star		
	Adequately stocked and clearly identifiable shop, bar bottle store and/or take away	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Acceptable range of basic products available, although not fully comprehensive supply of goods	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Reasonable selection of products available	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Reasonable range of take-away food available	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Product range and variety is high and well suited to the market	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	A good range of take-away foods available	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Varied selection of quality fresh produce and/or home-made meals available. Shopping experience with a local feel/ flavour	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Excellent range of take-away foods available	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Well organised shelves and stock all clearly priced	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
70 <b>Ventilation and Lighting</b> All shops, take-aways, bottle stores, etc. must be adequately ventilated with adequate windows opening directly into open air or suitable ventilation system must be provided		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Adequate lighting in all areas		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
71 <b>Walls: Tiling and paintwork</b> All walls to be painted and/or tiled	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
72 <b>Flooring and ceiling</b> Flooring to be fit for purpose	Exclusive	Shared	Not Applicable	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star
		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

---

**ISAZISO SIKAHULUMENI**

---

**UMNYANGO WEZOKUVAKASHA**

ISAZISO

UNHLABA 2018

UMTHETHO WEZOKUVAKASHA, KA-2014  
(UMTHETHO NO.3 KA-2014)**UKUSHICILELWA NGENHLOSO YEMIBONO: UHLELO LUKAZWELONKE LOKUGREDWA  
KWEZOKUVASHA**

Mina, Derek Hanekom, uNgqongqoshe Wezokuvakasha, ngenza ngokwemigomo yesigaba sama-28(1) soMthetho Wezokuvakasha, ka-2014, lapha ngishicilela Uhlaka Lohlelo LukaZwelonke Lokugreda Lwezokuvakasha ukuze umphakathi ubeke imibono. Uhlelo LukaZwelonke Lokugreda lezokuvakasha luhlose ukugcina noma ukwenza ngcono amazinga kanye nekhwalithi yamasevisi ezokuvakasha, izakhiwo kanye nemikhiqizo.

Amaqembu kanye nezinhlangano bayamenywa ukuthi bahambise imibono ebhaliwe, Ohlelweni LukaZwelonke Lokugreda kwezokuvakasha, ezinsukwini ezingamashumi amathathu (30) zokushicilelwa kwesaziso kusomqulu kulama kheli alandelayo:

Ngeposi: The Director-General  
Department of Tourism  
Private Bag X424  
Pretoria  
0001

Kuya ku: Ms MM Setwaba

Ngesandla: Ground Floor (Reception), Tourism House, 17 Trevenna Street, Sunnyside.

Ngemeyili: [msetwaba@tourism.gov.za](mailto:msetwaba@tourism.gov.za)

Ngefeksi: 012- 444 7107

Yonke imibuzo maqondana nohlaka Lohlelo LukaZwelonke Lokugreda lwezokuvakasha ingayiswa ku-Nksz. MM Setwaba ku-012 444 6312.

Imibono etholwe emuva kosuku lokuvala ingangathathwa.



**DEREK HANEKOM, MP**  
**UNGQONGQOSHE:**  
**EZOKUVAKASHA**

Ukugredwa Kwezinhlelo Zokusebenza ze-TGCSA

Ubumfihlo Benkampani



USUKU LOKUQALISA	03 kuMbas ka-2017	Ukugredwa Kwezinhlelo Zokusebenza ze-TGCSA	
USUKU LOKUBUYEKEZWA	02 kuNdasa ka-2017	IREF KASOMQULU	SAT6Q-PRO-04
USUKU OLULANDELAYO LOKUHLOLWA	01 kuLwezi ka-2017	IGATSHA LEBHIZINISI	TGCSA
UKUBUYEKEZWA	21	LIHLOLWE	Thabile Mabizela
UKUVUMELA: Umnikazi Wohlelo	IGAMA: Darryl Erasmus	Ukusayina:	Usuku:
NGAPHAMBI KOKUVUMELA : EXCO	1. Ilunga Exco	2. Ilunga Exco	3. Ilunga Exco
Igama	Darryl Erasmus	Tom Bouwer	Sthembiso Dlamini
Ukusayina			
Usuku			

**INKOMBA**

1.	ISINGENISO .....	4
1.1.	IZINHLOSO .....	4
1.2.	OKUQUKETHWE .....	4
1.3.	UMTHETHO WEBHIZINISI .....	5
2.	IMISEBENZI .....	6
3.	UHLU LWEZINCAZELO ZAMAGAMA .....	7
3.1.	IZINCAZELO .....	7
3.2.	IZIFINYEZO .....	8
4.	IMINININGWANE YOHELELO .....	9
4.1.	UMDWEBO WOKUHAMBA KOKUGREDWA OKUSEZINGENI ELIPHEZULU.....	9
4.2.	ISICELO ESISHA SOKUGREDA.....	10
4.2.1.	ISICELO ESISHA SOKUGREDA - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA.....	11
4.3.	UKUDLULISWA KOKUKHOKHWA KWE-INVYISI YESICELO ESISHA SOKUGREDA.....	14
4.3.1.	UKUDLULISWA KOKUKHOKHWA KWE-INVYISI YESICELO ESISHA SOKUGREDA - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA .....	15
4.3.2.	UKUKHOKHELWA KANYE NOKWAPHULELWA KWE-INVYISI.....	16
4.3.3.	OKUBHEKWAYO UMA KUDLULISWA IZIMALI EZIKHOKHWAYO .....	17
4.4.	APPLICATION FOR RENEWAL OF GRADING ISICELO SOKUVUSELELWA KOKUGREDWA .....	19
4.4.1.	ISICELO SOKUVUSELELWA KOKUGREDWA - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA KOHELELO .....	20

4.4.2.	UKUKHOKHELWA KANYE NOKWAPHULELWA I-INVYOISI.....	21
4.5.	UKUHLOLWA KWESAKHIWO .....	22
4.5.1.	UKUHLOLWA KWESAKHIWO - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA .....	24
4.6.	INCAZELO ESUKA KUMHLOLI YOKUHLOLWA NGAPHAMBILINI .....	28
4.7.	INGAPHAMBI KOKUHLOLWA KWEMBANGELA OKUSUKA KUMHLOLI- INCAZELO YAMAGAMA .....	29
4.8.	UMHLANGANO WANYANGA ZONKE WOKUVUNYELWA KWEMPAHLA .....	32
4.8.1.	UMHLANGANO WANYANGA ZONKE WOKUVUNYELWA KWEMPAHLA WE-EXCO - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA .....	33
4.9.	UKUNIKEZELA NGEZITIFIKETI KANYE NAMAPLAKHU .....	38
4.9.1.	UKUNIKEZELA NGEZITIFIKETI KANYE NAMAPLAKHU .....	39
4.10.	UKUKHOKHELWA KWABAHLOLI.....	41
4.10.1.	UKUKHOKHELWA KWABAHLOLI - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA.....	42
4.11.	UKUKALWA KOMTHELELA WOKUHLOLWA KWESAKHIWO .....	45
4.11.1.	UKUKALWA KOMTHELELA WOKUHLOLWA KWESAKHIWO - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA .....	46
4.12.	UKUPHATHA AMAZINGA OKUGREDA .....	47
4.12.1.	UKUPHATHA AMAZINGA OKUGREDA - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA .....	48
4.13.	UKUSHINTSWA KOHLOBO LOKUGREDA.....	50
4.13.1.	UKUSHINTSWA KOHLOBO LOKUGREDA - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA.....	51
4.14.	UKUBUYEKEZWA KWE-ADHOC YEMINININGWANE YESAKHIWO.....	52
4.14.1.	UKUBUYEKEZWA KWE-ADHOC YEMINININGWANE YESAKHIWO - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA.....	53
4.15.	UKUKHANSELWA KOBULUNGA .....	54
4.15.1.	UKUKHANSELWA KOBULUNGA -UKUCHAZWA KOBULUNGA.....	54
4.16.	UKUBUYEKEZWA KWAMAPLAKHU KANYE NOBULUNGA OBUKHANSELIWE.....	56
4.16.1.	UKUBUYEKEZWA KWAMAPLAKHU KANYE NOBULUNGA OBUKHANSELIWE - INCAZELO NGAMAGAMA .....	56
4.17.	UKUSHINTSWA KWAMAPLAKHU AKHISHIWE.....	59
4.17.1.	UKUSHINTSWA KWAMAPLAKHASI AKHISHIWE - UKUCHAZWA NGOKWAMAGAMA.....	59
4.17.2.	UKULAWULWA KWANGAPHAKATHI KANYE NOKUPHATHWA KWAMAPLAKHU ABUYISIWE.....	60
4.18.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUPHATHWA KANYE NOKUDILIVIWA KWEZITIFIKETI.....	61
4.18.1.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUPHATHWA KANYE NOKUDILIVIWA KWEZITIFIKETI - UKUCHAZWA NGOKUBHALA .....	62
4.19.	ISIGABA SOKUBHEKA IMIBUZO.....	63
4.19.1.	ISIGABA SOKUBHEKA IMIBUZO - INCAZELO NGOKUBHA.....	64
4.20.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SOKU-1.....	66
4.20.1.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SOKU-1 - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA .....	67
4.21.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SESI-2 .....	68
4.21.1.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SESI-2 - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA 70	
4.22.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SESI-2 .....	71
4.22.1.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SESI-3 - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA 72	
4.23.	UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SESI-4 .....	73

4.23.1. UKUQINISEKISWA KOKUVIKELWA KWEKHWALITHI - ISIGABA SESI-2 - UKUCHAZWA NGAMAGAMA 74	
4.24. UHLELO LOKUBUYISWA KWEMALI .....	76
4.24.1. UHLELO LOKUBUYISA IMALI -INCAZELO NGAMAGAMA .....	77
4.25. UHLELO LOKUBUYISA IMALI .....	78
4.25.1. UHLELO LOKUBUYISA IMALI -INCAZELO NGAMAGAMA .....	78
4.26. IMALI - UHLELO.....	79
4.26.1. IMALI - UKUCHAZWA NGOKWAMAGAMA.....	79
4.27. IMPENDULO YAMAKHASIMENDE .....	80
4.27.1. IMPENDULO YAMAKHASIMENDE -INCAZELO NGAMAGAMA.....	81
4.28. UKUHAMBA KOMHLOLI.....	83
4.28.1. UKUHAMBA KOMHLOLI - UKUCHAZWA NGOKWAMAGAMA.....	84
5. UKUKHULULWA KNAY NOKUPHUMA ECELENI NOHLELO .....	85
6. UKULAWULA KANYE NEZINDLELA .....	85
7. IZINKOMBA .....	88
7.1. IMIQULU EFANELE .....	88
7.2. AMAFOMU AFANELE .....	88
8. IZINENEZELO .....	88

## 1. ISINGENISO

Umkhandlu Wokugredwa Kwezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika (TGCSA) wasungulwa ngonyaka ka-2000 futhi wagunyazwa ngokuhambisana nomthetho waseNingizimu Afrika njengegatsha eligreda zonke izinhlobo zezindawo zokuhlala eNingizimu Afrika. Inhloso ye-TGCSA ukusungula kanye nokugcina uhlelo olaziwayo futhi oluthembekile olusezingeni lomhlaba wonke ngokuqinisekisa ikhwalithi yezindawo zokuhlala kanye ne-MESE (Imihlangano, Imibukiso kanye Nemicimbi Ethile) eNingizimu Afrika. Lo mqulu uqukethe Izincazelo yomfutho weZinga lokusebenza le-TGCSA.

### 1.1. Izinhloso

Inhloso yalo mqulu:

- Ukubhala izinto ezenza izinhlelo zokusebenza ze-TGCSA.
- Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi imisebenzi kanye namaqembu okubandakanyekayo Ezinghlweni ze-TGCSA kuchazwe ngokucacile.
- Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi kunenkomba eyodwa yemisebenzi yonke ebandakanya uhlelo lokugreda.
- Ukuchaza kanye nokuveza uhlelo lokuhlanganisa nanye nohlelo lokuhlanganisa amaphoyinti.
- Ukuveza ngokucacile umqondo kanye nesikhathi lapho ukufezwa kwezinto ezilindelekile azihambisana namagunya kanye nezinto ezihanjiswayo kwe-TGCSA kanye NEZOKUVAKASHA EZINGIZIMU AFRIKA.
- Ukuhlinzeka inkomba yohlelo lokubuyekizwa, ukwenza kahle kanye nokuthi uhlelo luzenzekele.

### 1.2. Okuqukethwe

Umqulu uqukethe izinhlelo ukusebenza kwezinhlelo okwejwayelekile kwe-TGCSA.

- Kokuqukethwe
  - Isicelo esisha sokuGredwa
  - Isicelo sokuvuselelwa kokuGredwa
  - Uhlelo Lokukhokhwa kwma-Invoyisi
  - Ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo
  - Ukuhlolwa kwangaphambilini Kwenhloso Okusuka Kumhloli
  - Umhlangano Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla njalo Ngenyanga
  - Abahloli Bokukhokha
  - Ukukhipha Izitifiketi kanye Namaplahu
  - Ukubuyiswa Kwamaplahu Akhishiwe
  - Ukushintsha Amaplahu
  - Ukusungulwa Ukukala Ukuhlola Okunomthelela
  - Ukuphatha Amazinga Okugreda
  - Imininingwane ebuyekeziwe yeSakhiwo ye-Ad hoc
  - Ushintsho Lohlobo Lokugreda
  - Ukwesulwa Kobulunga
  - Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhalithi
  - Uhlelo Lokubuyiselwa Imali

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Uhlelo Lokwaphulelwa kanye Nelokubuyiselwa Imali
- Izinhlelo zezimpendulo zamakhasimende
- Ukunyakaza Komhloli
- Okungekho kokuqokethwe
  - Uhlelo Lomkhandlu Wokugreda (Ikomidi Lrmiklomelo)

### 1.3. Umthetho Webhizinisi

Ukuze impahla izuze ukwaziwa, zonke izimfuneko ezisohlwini kumele kuhanjiswa nazo. Ukwaziwa kuvumela isakhiwo ukuthi siphathe izithombe esivunyelwe i-TGCSA ezimakethe. Impahla ezihlonyeliswe ngokwaziwa zizoba yingxenywe yewebhusayithi ye-TGCSA kanye nohlobo lokubheka.

Impahla enconyawo ukuthi yaziwe ukuthi isebenze ikanje:

- Ivumela izilwane zasekhaya;
- Kuyazingelwa;
- Kuhamba amabhayisikili
- Kudlalwa igalofu
- Kukhona iwayini yezivakashi
- Ilungele imindeni
- Indawo yokushada
- Inezinyoni
- Ukunakekelwa ngokokwelashwa;
- Indawo yokuvakasha efana nehhotela;
- Ukwelashwa kwawo wonke umzimba;
- Izinto ezenziwa ngaphandle komgwaqo;
- Izakhiwo zezingqungquthela;
- Ukuhayika;
- Ukugibela amahashi;
- Ezemidlalo zamanzi;
- Ezokuvakasha ezifanele;
- Ispa kanye Nobuhle.

## 2. IMISEBENZI

Ukuhlinzeka Ngezincazelo zemisebenzi esemqoka

Umsebenzi	Incazelo
Ukwaziswa	Ukwaziswa yilapho kwaziwa khona izakhiwo ezigredwe ngezinkanyezi ezihlukaniswe ngezinto eziheha izimakethe ezithile.
Umhloli	Abantu abanegunya lokuhlola ukugredwa Ezakhiweni.
Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi	Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi yigatsha lemboni lochwepheshe abengamela umsebenzi owenziwe uMkhandlu Wokugreda Wezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika, kanye nokuhlinzeka ukuqonda kwalo kanye nokuqondisa uma kudingeka.
Isikhulu Esiphezulu Esiqinisekisa Ikhwalithi	Ophethe esiphethe i-TGCSA, obheka yonke iphothifoliyo ye-TGCSA.
Umhloli Ophezulu Wabahloli Wesifundazwe	Umsebenzi wakhe ukubheka kanye nokuphatha Abahloli benkontileka jye-TGCSA.
Isikhulu Esivikela Ikhwalithi	Umntu obhekene nokwenza izinhlelo ukubhekana nokukhangisa kwezinkanyezi okungekho emthethweni kanye nokungelona iqiniso njengokuba kwaziwa.
Ithimba Zezokuvakasha Afrika Lezezimali eNingizimu Afrika	Ithimba elibhekene nokuphathwa kwakho kokhe ukungena kanye nokuphuma kwezimali ze-TGCSA.  Ithimba lezezimali lihlanganisa imisebenzi elandelayo: <b>Ukuphathwa Kwezimali, Ubungoti Bokuphathwa Nokuhlolwa Kwamabhuku, Amakleghi Akwazi Ukuthola Ama-akhawunti, kanye Nekleghi Elikhokhela Ama-akhawunti.</b>
Ithimba le-TGCSA Lokumaketha	Leli thimba libhekene nokuphatha yonke imisebenzi yokumaketha kanye nokuxhumana, njengokuxhumana komkhiqizo, ukuxhumana kwezinkampani okuhlanganisa i-PR, imicimbi ye-TGCSA, ukuphathwa kokumakethwa kwama-ejensi angaphandle. Leli thimba liphinde libhekane nokukhiqizwa kanye nokusabalaliswa kokwaziswa kokumaketha okuhlanganisa amaplakhu kanye nezitifiketi Ezakhiweni ezigrediwe kanye nethuluzi elivunyelwe lokugreda.  Ithimba liphinde liphathe ulayini wezimpendulo zamakhasimende: <a href="mailto:feedback@tourismgrading.co.za">feedback@tourismgrading.co.za</a> , Ngesikhulu Esibhekele Amakhasimende (CLO) umsebenzi waso ukubheka kanye nokuphendula kuma-imeyili kanye ncingo, ukuphatha kwempendulo etholakale ezakhiweni

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

	<p>ezigrediwe, ukusiza ngokuhamba ngezinto zomphakathi maqondana nesakhiwo kanye nokuhlinzeka imibiko yazinyanga zonke.</p> <p>Ithimba lakhiwe yimisebenzi elandelayo:</p> <p><b>Umpathi Wezoku,aketha kanye Nokuxhumana, Umsizi Wezokumaketha kanye Nesikhulu Esibhekele Amakhasimende.</b></p>
<b>Ithimba Lokusebenza kwe-TGCSA</b>	<p>Leli qembu libhekene nemisebenzi esemqoka ye-TGCSA okuhlanganisa ukudluliswa kwezicelo zokugredwa, ukuphathwa kokungatholwa kolwazi ezingeni lokutholakala, ukuphathwa kwezinombolo Zesakhiwo ezibikiwe ze-TGCSA, ukuphathwa kwezinombolo zephothifoliyo zoMhloli, kanye nokuphathwa Kwabahloli benkontileka be-TGCSA.</p> <p>Ithimba lakhiwe yile misebenzi elandelayo:</p> <p><b>Umpathi Wokusebenzisa, Umsizi Womphathi Wokusebenzisa kanye Nesikhulu Esiphezulu Sabahloli</b></p>

**3. UHLU LWEZINCAZELO ZAMAGAMA**

**3.1. IZINCAZELO**

Incazelo yamagama asetshenziswe emqulwini.

<b>Igama</b>	<b>Incazelo</b>
<b>Ukukhishwa</b>	<p>Ukukhishwa kunika imvume uMkhandlu wokuGreda ukuthi impahla ingabe nemfuneko ethile ngenxa yezizathu ezifanele.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izakhiwo ezintsha yizona ezicela ukukhishwa.</li> <li>• Izakhiwo ezikhona ezinobulunga ezibuyekezwayo zingacela ukukhishwa uma Umhloli osebenzela Esakhiweni eshintshile.</li> </ul>
<b>Isikhathi Somusa</b>	<p>Isikhathi Somusa sinikwa impahla (isicelo esisha noma isicelo sokuvuselela) ukuze kusizwe bona ekuqaliseni imfuneko yokuhlangabezana ikhwalithi yezinga efakelwe isicelo.</p> <p>Noma yisiphi isikhathi somusa ngeke sibe nomthelela noma sishintshe usuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi lwempahla. Noma ngabe isikhathi somusa sinikiwe, ama-invoyisi azoqhubeka asebenze ngokwemithetho yebhizini (Ima-invoyisi Avuselelwe - enyangeni yezinsuku eziyi-90 ngaphambi kokuphelelwa yisikhathi; ama-invoyisi Amasha - ngosuku lokuqala lokuhlanganisa emuva kokuvunyelwa kwesicelo esisha uma Isikhathi Somusa sesivaliwe)</p>

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

<b>Ukugreda</b>	Ikhwalithi yokukalwa enikezwe Isakhiwo nguMhloli Onegunya we-TGCSA. Impahla Egrediwe inikwa izinkanyezi ze-TGCSA eziphakathi kwenkanyezi e-1 kuya kwezi-5 ohlobeni ukugredwa okufakwe isicelo kulo.
-----------------	---

### 3.2. Izifinyezo

Ukuhlinzekwa Kwenzazelo Yezifinyezo esemqulwini

Isifinyezo	Incazelo
Ibhodi	Ibhodi labaQondisi Kwezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika
Ikomidana leBhodi	Amalunga eKomidana Lokuqinisekisa Ikhwalithi ku-TGCSA
BU	Igatsha Lebhizinisi
BUMA	Umphathi Wegatsha Lebhizinisi
C6	Lokhu okulandelayo kuyasebenza: CEO, COO, CFO, CMO, CQAO, CCBO
CCBO	Isikhulu Esiphezulu Sehhovisi Lesikhungo
CEO	Isikhulu Esiphezulu
CFO	Isikhulu Esiphezulu Sezezimali
CLO	Isikhulu Esibhekele Abathengi
COO	Isikhulu Esiphezulu Sokusebenza
Cx	Ukukhansela
CQAO	Isikhulu Esiphezulu Esiqinisekisa Ikhwalithi
DOA	Ukuthunyelwa Kwamandla
IA	Ukukhangisa Okungekho Emthethweni
MCM	Umphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nokuxhumana we-TGCSA
MER	Izimfuneko Zokungena
OM	Umphathi Wezokusebenza kwe-TGCSA
PMA	Umhloli Ophezulu Wesifundazwe

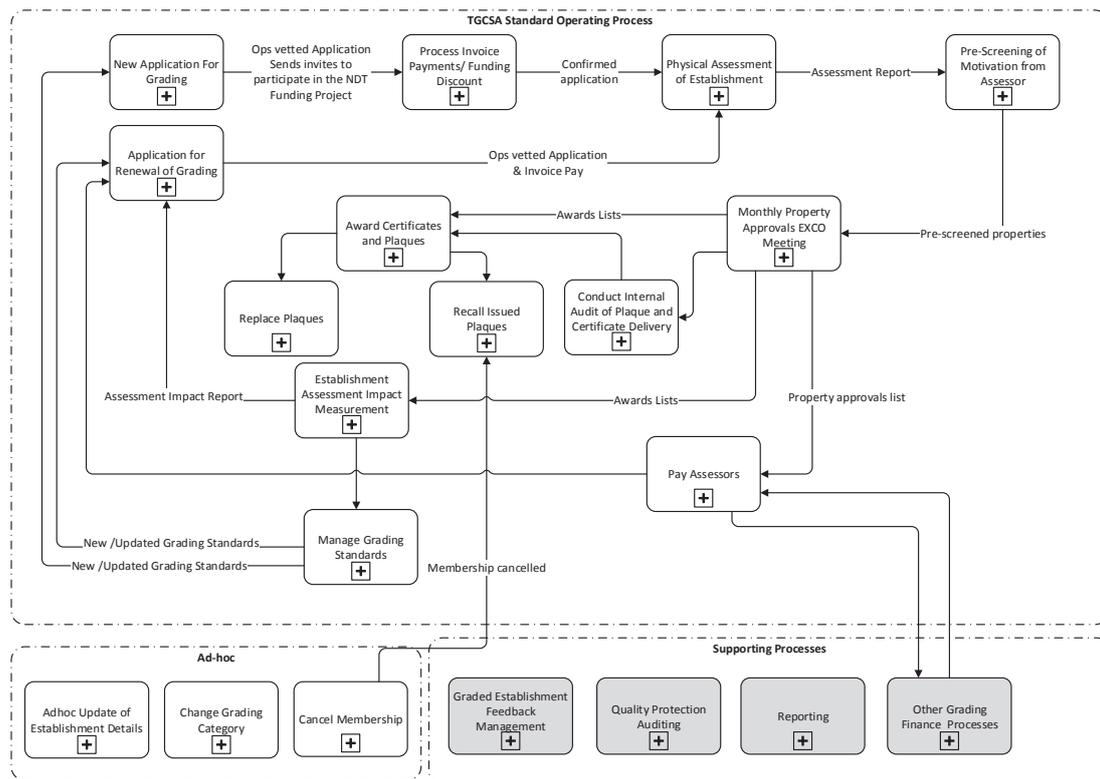
Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

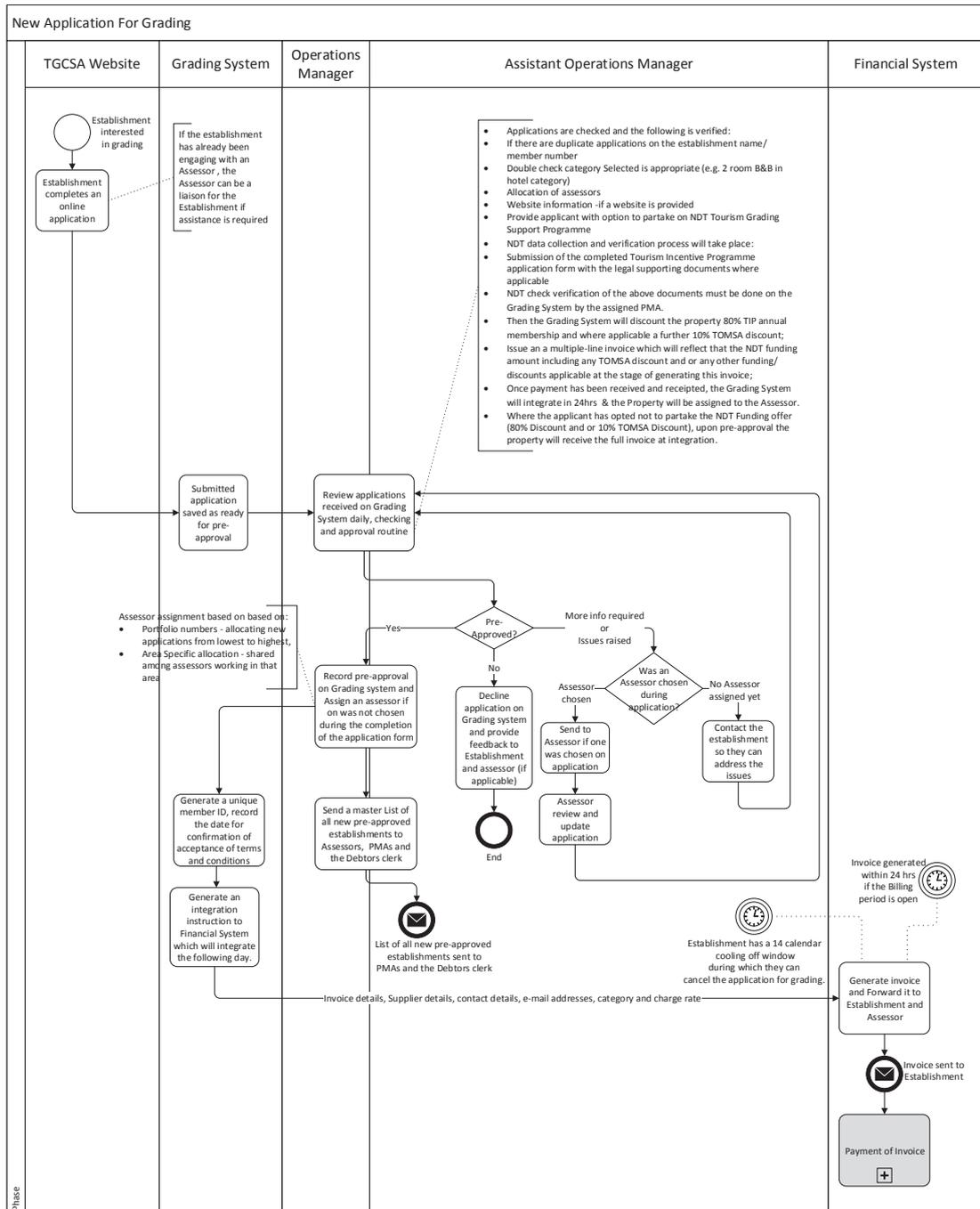
Isifinyezo	Incazelo
Uhlelo Lokugreda	Ikhwalithi Kwezokuvakasha
Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA	Ikwalithi Yezokuvakasha - Imojuli Yokukhangisa Ngokungemthetho
QPA	Quality Protection Assurance Ukuqinisekisa Ukuvikelwa Kwekhwalithi
RFO	Ukubuyela i-Oda
SA TOURISM	Ezokuvakasha ZaseNingizimu Afrika
TOMSA	Ukumakethwa Kwezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika
UA	Ukutholakala Kuzwe Lonke

4. IMININGWANE YOHLELO

4.1. Umdwebo wokuhamba kokugredwa okusezingeni eliphezulu



4.2. Isicelo Elisha Sokugreda



#### 4.2.1. Isicelo Esisha Sokugreda - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama

- Isakhiwo sisebenzela ubulunga bokugredelwa inkanyezi konyaka ngokuhambisa isicelo kuwebhusayithi ye-TGCSA: <http://www.tourismgrading.co.za>
- Uma isicelo siqediwe, isakhiwo sisihambisa ukuthi sivunyelwe;
- Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Mphathi Wokusebenza ubuyekeza isicelo ezitholwe Ngohlelo Lokugreda njalo: Uhlelo lokuvunyelwa ngaphambilini lonalokhu okulandelayo:
  - Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza:
    - Okokuqala, wenza isiqiniseko sokuthi isicelo asiphindi ilunga elikhona eligredowe ngokusebenzisa igama Lesakhiwo kanye nenombolo yelunga njengohlobo;
    - Okokuxhumana kwezakhiwo ukuqinisekisa okulandelayo:
      - Uma yonke imininingwane yokuxhumana isihlinzekiwe;
      - Ukubhekisa uhlobo olukhethiwe ukuthi lufanele kanye nokuqinisekisa ukuthi inani lamagumbi & isilinganiso segumbi (isb. Amagumbi ama-2 ku B&B ohlotsheni lwehhotela);
      - Ukwabiwa Kwabahloli;
      - Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi lwebhusayithi ikhona kanye nokubheka ulwazi kuwebhusayithi, uma kufanele (lwebhusayithi ayibalulekile ukuze kugredwe);
      - Ezingeni lokufaka isicelo, umfaki wesicelo uhlinzekwe ngethuba lokubamba iqhaza Ohlelweni Loxhasa Ukugredwa kwe-NDT Yezokuvakasha noma ankethe ukungabi yingxenywe;
        - Lapho umfaki wesicelo ekhethe ukungabi yingxenywe yokukhokhelwa (Ukwaphulelwa okungama-80% noma Ukwaphulelwa okungama-10% kwe-TOMSA), ekuvunyelweni kwangaphambilini kwesicelo isixhumanisi sesimemo siyathunyelwa ngokushesha emuva kokuvumela ngaphambili;
        - ; Ukuqoqwa kolwazi lwe-NDT kanye nohlelo lokuqinisekisa kuzokwenzakala;
          - Ukuhanjiswa kwefomu eligcwalisiwe Lohlelo Lokukhuthaza Ezokuvakasha, elihambisana nemiqulu esekelayo yomthetho lapho kudingeka (Imvume Yentela Efanele, Umazisi/ inombolo/ Amafomu Okubhalisela Ibhizini, amakhophi afungelwe esitifiketi se B-BBEE, imiqulu yomshwayilense wezikweletu). **Isikhathi esiyizinsuku eziyi-30 zokuphinda ufaka isicelo** (Uma lokhu kungenziwanga ezinsukwini eziyi-30, i-invoyisi izokhipha imali egcwele)
          - Ukubhekwa ukuqinisekiswa kwemiqulu engenhla kwe-NDT KUMELE KWENZIWE Uhlelo Lokugredwa okwenziwa yi-PMA enikwe umsebenzi. Izinsuku eziyi-10 ze-PMA (Uma lokhu kungenziwanga ezinsukwini eziyi-30, i-invoyisi izokhipha imali egcwele)
          - Uma ulwazi selubhekiwe & lwaqinisekiswa ngokufanele; Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokwaphula ubulunga bonyaka bempahla ye-TIP ngama-80% futhi lapho kufanele kuzobe khona ukwaphulelwa ngama-10% kwe-TOMSA;
          - Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhipha i-invoyisi yolayini abanengi eveza izimali ze-NDT okuhlanganisa nanoma yikuphi ukwaphulelwa kwe-TOMSA kanye nanoma imali/nokwaphulelwa okufanele ezingeni lokukhishwa kwe-invoyisi;

- Uma ukukhokha sekutholakele futhi kwamukelwa, Uhlelo Lokugreda lizohlangana emahoreni angama-24 futhi Impahla izonikwa Umhloli.
    - Lapho umfaki wesicelo ekhethe ukungabi yingxeny ehlanyanya ekunikeleni Kokukhokha kwe-NDT (Ukwaphulelwa kwama-80% kanye noma Ukwaphulelwa kwe-TOMSA kwama-10%), ekuvunyelweni kwangaphambili impahla izothola invoyisi yemali egcwele emhlanganweni.
- Uma umfaki wesicelo engakwazi ukuthi avunyelwe ngaphambilini Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Umsizi Womphathi Wokusebenza uzonqaba isicelo Ohlelweni Lokugreda, futhi impendulo izonikwa Umhloli kanye Nesakhiwo:
  - Izicelo ezinqatshiwe ziba sohlelweni futhi zingasetshenziswa njengezibonelo ngokuzayo (uma Isakhiwo sivuma)
- Uma olunye ulwazi ludingeka noma kunezinto okumele kubhekanwe nazo ngaphambi kokuthi isicelo sivunyelwe ngaphambilini, Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza engacela olunye ulwazi maqondana nesicelo kumfaki wesicelo/ Umhloli:
  - Uma Umhloli ekhethwe ngesikhathi sokufaka isicelo, Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza engathumela umbuzo Kumhloli;
    - Umhloli uzobuyekeza isicelo bese sibhekwa futhi Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza ukubona ukuthi singavunyelwa yini.
  - Uma Umhloli engakhethwanga ngesikhathi sesicelo, Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza kumele anikele Ngomhloli Esakhiweni.
- Uma isicelo sivunyelwe ngaphambilini Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza ukuvunyelwa ngaphambilini kuyaqoshwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda futhi Isakhiwo sizonikwa inombolo ye-ID eyahlukile, futhi uhlelo luzobhala usuku lokuqinisekisa ukwamukela imigomo nemibandela:
  - Uma Isakhiwo sikhetha Umhloli efomini lokufaka isicelo, Isakhiwo siyamthola loyoMhloli;
  - Uma Isakhiwo singamkhetanga Umhloli, Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza unika Isakhiwo Umhloli ngokubheka uhlobo, oku-:
    - Izinombolo zephothifoliyo - ukuhlolwa kwezinzombolo ezikhona zephothifoliyo; ukwaba izicelo kusukela phansi kuya phezulu
    - Yindawo ethile - ukunikezwa kwabafaki bezicelo abasha Abahloli abasebenzi kuleyo ndawo.
- Uma selutholakale lonke ulwazi Ohlelweni Lokugreda, Uhlelo Lokugreda lukhipha i-invoyisi yemiyalelo ohlelweni Lwezimali yempahla enqabe ithuba Lokukhokhelwa yi-NDT kanye nalabo abangalethanga ulwazi oludingekayo ukuze bathole ukwaphulelwa (Ulwazi olukuma-invoyisi lufakwe Uhlelo Lokugreda kanye Nohlelo Lwama-Invoyisi Ezimali ngokolwazi olusuka Ohlelweni Lokugreda. Itafula lemali lihleli ohlelweni lokugreda kanye nohlelo lokugreda lubala inani kanye nama-akhawunti okwaba ama-invoyisi ngokubheka imali yegumbi kanye nenani lamagumbi kanye namatafula emali ohlelweni lokugreda afakwa ohlelweni Lwemali ngamatafula okuhlangana);
- Uhlelo Lwezimali lukhipha i-invoyisi ngokungenhla bese ludlulisela Esakhiweni kanye Nomhloli waso emahoreni angama-24, kodwa uma isikhathi sokubiza imali sivaliwe i-invoyisi izokhipha uma isikhathi sesivuliwe futhi izohlangana emhlanganweni wokuqala owenzeka emuva kokuvulwa kwesikhathi. bheka isigaba se 4.3.3 Ukubhekwa Kohlelo Lokukhokha;

---

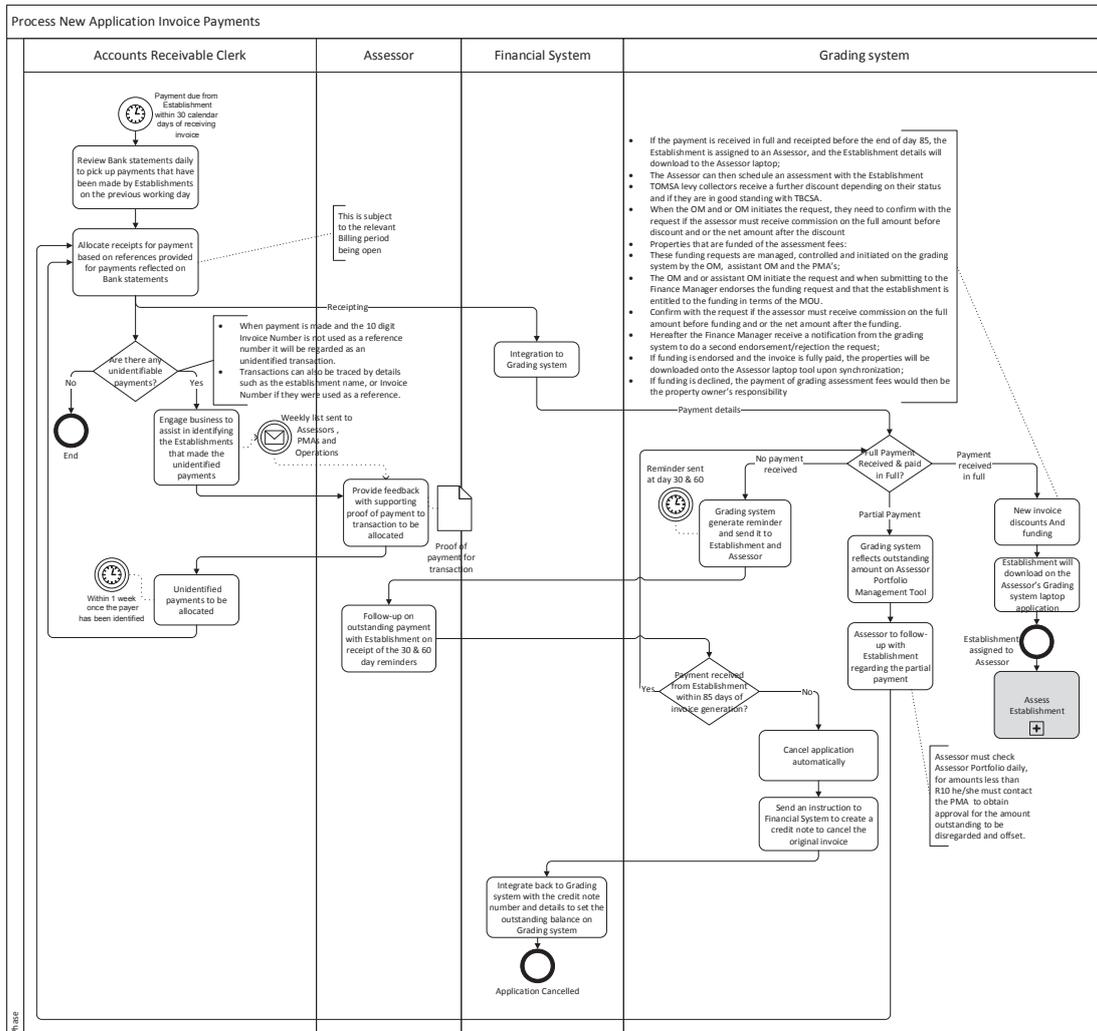
Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Uhlelo Lwezimali lubuyela Ohlelweni Lokugreda luqinisekisa ukuthi i-invoyisi isikhiphile futhi lusho nenombolo ye-invoyisi. Onke ama-invoyisi azoshaya umugqa bese yahlukaniswa ngokuzenzekela ngemeyili yokuhamba komsebenzi ngesikhathi sasemini osukwini kanye nantambama;
- Emuva kokuvunyelwa ngaphambilini sekuqediwe futhi ne-invoyisi yesicelo isiphakamisiwe, Isakhiwo sinezinsuku zekhalenda eziyi-14 zokukhansela ukuthi isicelo sigredwe. Uma Isakhiwo singakhokhi i-invoyisi ezinsukwini ezingama-85 kusukela ekuvunyelweni kwesicelo esisha, uhlelo lokugreda luzokhansela ngokuzenzakalela isicelo bese sifaka ngokuhlangana isaziso sesiKweletu (nenani kanye nokwabiwa kwama-akhawunti) Ohlelweni Lwezimali.
- Isinyathelo esilandelayo uhlelo Lokukhokhela i-Invoyisi.
- Umphathi Wokusebenza noma Isekela Lomphathi Wokusebenza uthumela Ohlwini Oluphezulu Lohlelo Lokugreda lazo zonke izicelo ezivunyelwe ngaphambilini, PMA's kanye Neklekhi Lezikweletu.

4.3.

Ukudluliswa Kokukhokhwa Kwe-invoiyisi Yesicelo Esisha Sokugreda



#### 4.3.1. Ukudluliswa Kokukhokhwa Kwe-invoyisi Yesicelo Esisha Sokugreda - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama

- Ukukhokhelwa kwe-invoyisi yobulunga obusha kumele kwenziwe yiSakhiwo ezinsukwini ezingama-30 zosuku lwe-invoyisi;
- Amakleghi Akwazi Ukuthola Ama-akhawunti abuyekeza izitatimende zasebhange ze-TGCSA njalo ngosuku ukubheka ukukhokhwa okwenziwe Yizakhiwo;
- : Amakleghi Akwazi Ukuthola Ama-akhawunti akhipha amarisidi okukhokhelwa, ngokubheka lokhu okulandelayo:
  - Inombolo ye-invoyisi iyavela Esitatimendeni Sasebhange;
  - Uma inombolo ye-invoyisi ingaveli Esitatimendeni Sasebhange, Ubufakazi Bokukhokha kumele bulwethwe kanye nokwahlukaniswa kweminingwane yokukhokha uma ngabe kukhokhelwe impahla engaphezu kweyodwa kusuka ezakhiweni esisodwa;
  - Lokhu kuqondene nesikhathi esifanele Sokukhokhiswa (bheka Ukubhekwa Kohlelo Lokukhokha ku 4.3.3 ngezansi)
  - Uma kukhona inkokhelo engaziwa ukuthi eyani Iklekhi Ekwazi Ukuthola Ama-akhawunti kumele ikhulume ibhizinisi (Abahloli, ama-PMA, TGCSA OM, Umphathi Wezokumaketha Ngokuxhumana) ukusiza ukubona Izakhiwo ezikhokhe imali engaziwa:
    - Uma kukhokhiwe futhi kungasetshenziswanga izinombolo eziyi-10 ze-invoyisi zisetshenziwe njengenombolo yenkomba yokukhokha lokho kukhokhwa kuzothathwa njengokungaziwa:
      - Ukukhokhwa kungalandelwa kuphela Ngenombolo Ye-invoyisi efanele.
    - Amakleghi Akwazi Ukuthola Ama-akhawunti azothumela uhla lwezinkokhelo ezingaziwa (Kumhloli, kuma-PMA, TGCSA OM, Umsizi we-OM we-TGCSA, Umphathi Wezokumaketha Kwezokuxhumana we-TGCSA) njalo ngeviki;
    - Ubufakazi Bokukhokha obufanele kumele buthunyelwe egatsheni Lezezimali: [debtors@southafrica.net](mailto:debtors@southafrica.net) isuka Esakhiweni noma Umhloli ukuqinisekisa ukukhokha okungaziwa okwenziwe Yizakhiwo.:
      - “Isiqinisekiso sokukhokha “kumele sibe nalokhu okulandelayo:
        - Usuku lokukhokha;
        - Igama lomzuzi;
        - Inombolo yenkomba evelayo esitatimendeni sasebhange se-TGCSA;
        - Ngaphezu kweminingwane yesiqiniseko sokukhokha, isakhiwo kumele siqinisekise ngokubhala ukuthi inombolo ye-invoyisi efanele kumele ifakwe khona.
    - Ukukhokhelwa okungaziwa kumele kunikelwe ezinsukwini eziyisihlanu uma omkhokhi esetholakele.
- Uma ukukhokhelwa sekwamukelwe Wuhlelo Lwezezimali kunokuhlenganisa Ohlelweni Lokugreda ukuthi kuvele ukuthi ukukhokha kwamukelekile.
  - Isakhiwo ngosuku olulandelayo luzoqopha Uhlelo Lokugreda kukhompuyutha yabo abayisebenzisayo njalo;
  - Uma Isakhiwo sesinikwe Umhloli, Umhloli engenza amalungiselelo okuphuma eyohlola Isakhiwo;

- Uma ingxenyana yokukhokha esuka Esakhiweni itholakele ezinsukwini ezingama-30 emuva kokuthola i-invoyisi lokhu okulandelayo kuyenzeka:
  - UHLELO LOKUGREDA luveza imali esele Ethuluzini Lomhloli Lokuphathwa Kwephothifoliyo;
  - Ukulandelela Komhloli Esakhiweni maqondana nengxenye ekhokhiwe:
    - Umhloli kumele abheke Iphothifoliyo Yomhloli njalo, ngezimali ezingaphansi kuka-R10 kumele axhumane ne-MPA ukuthola imvume yokuthi imali ekweletwayo isuse.
  - Isakhiwo ngeke siqophele ekhompuyutheni Yomhloli ngaphambi kokuthi i-invoyisi isikhokhelwe yonke.
- Uma Isakhiwo singakhokhanga ezinsukwini ezingama-30 zokuthola i-invoyisi okulandelayo kuzokwenzeka:
  - Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhipha isikhumbuzo ngosuku lwama-30 kanye nolwama-60 mayelana nama-invoyisi bese lisisa Esakhiweni kanye Nakumhloli;
  - Umhloli kumele alandelele mayelana nemali engakhokhwanga Yisakhiwo;
  - Uma Isakhiwo singakhokhi noma kunjalo ezinsukwini ezingama-85 kusuka osukwini lwe-invoyisi, Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhansela isicelo ngokuzenzekela:
    - Irekhodi Lesakhiwo ligcinwe Ohlelweni Lwesakhiwo futhi lingasetshenziswa njengesibonelo (Kuphela uma Isakhiwo sinike imvume);
    - Uhlelo Lokugreda luzothumela umyalelo ngamatafula okuhlangana Ohlelweni Lwezezimali ukuthi kwakhiwe isaziso sesiKweletu sokukhansela i-invoyisi yokuqala uma ingakakhokhelwa ezinsukwini ezingama-85 kusukela osukwini le-invoyisi;
    - Uhlelo Lwezezimali lubuyisela Ohlelweni Lokugreda nenombolo yesaziso sesikweletu kanye ngeminingwane ukuhlela imali esele Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
  - Uma imali ikhokhwe ngokugcwele futhi yamukelwa ngaphambi kokuthi kuphela izinsuku ezingama-85, Isakhiwo sinikwa Umhloli, futhi iminingwane Yesakhiwo izoqopheka kukhompuyutha Yomhlelo;
  - Umhloli engahlela ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo

#### 4.3.2. Ukukhokhelwa kanye Nokwaphulelwa Kwe-invoyisi

- Abaqoqi belevi be-TOMSA bathola okunye okwaphulelwa ngokwesikhundla sabo (inkontileka ekhona) futhi uma besesimeni esihle ne-TBCSA. Lokhu kwaphulelwa kuphethwe, kulawulwa futhi kuqalwa ohlelweni lokugreda lwe-TGCSA kanye Ne-OM yomsizi we-TGCSA (*Lapho ukwaphulelwa kwe-TOMSA kungakathinteki ngokuzenzalela*);
- Lapho i-TGCSA OM noma i-OM yomsizi we-TGCSA iqala futhi ivumela isicelo, kudingeka ukuthi baqinisekise isicelo/ ukuvumela uma Umhloli kumele athole umyalelo maqondana nenani selilonke lemali noma imali isiyonke emuva kokwaphulelwa;
- Impahla ekhokhelwa imali yabo yokuhlolwa:
  - Izicelo zezimali ziphathwe, zilawulwa ziphinde ziqalwe ohlelweni lokugreda yi-TGCSA OM, Umsizi we-OM kanye nama-PMA;
  - I-TGCSA noma i-OM yomsizi we-TGCSA engaqala ukwengeza izimali zangaphambilini esigabeni sokuvunyelwa ngaphambilini kwezicelo ezintsha.

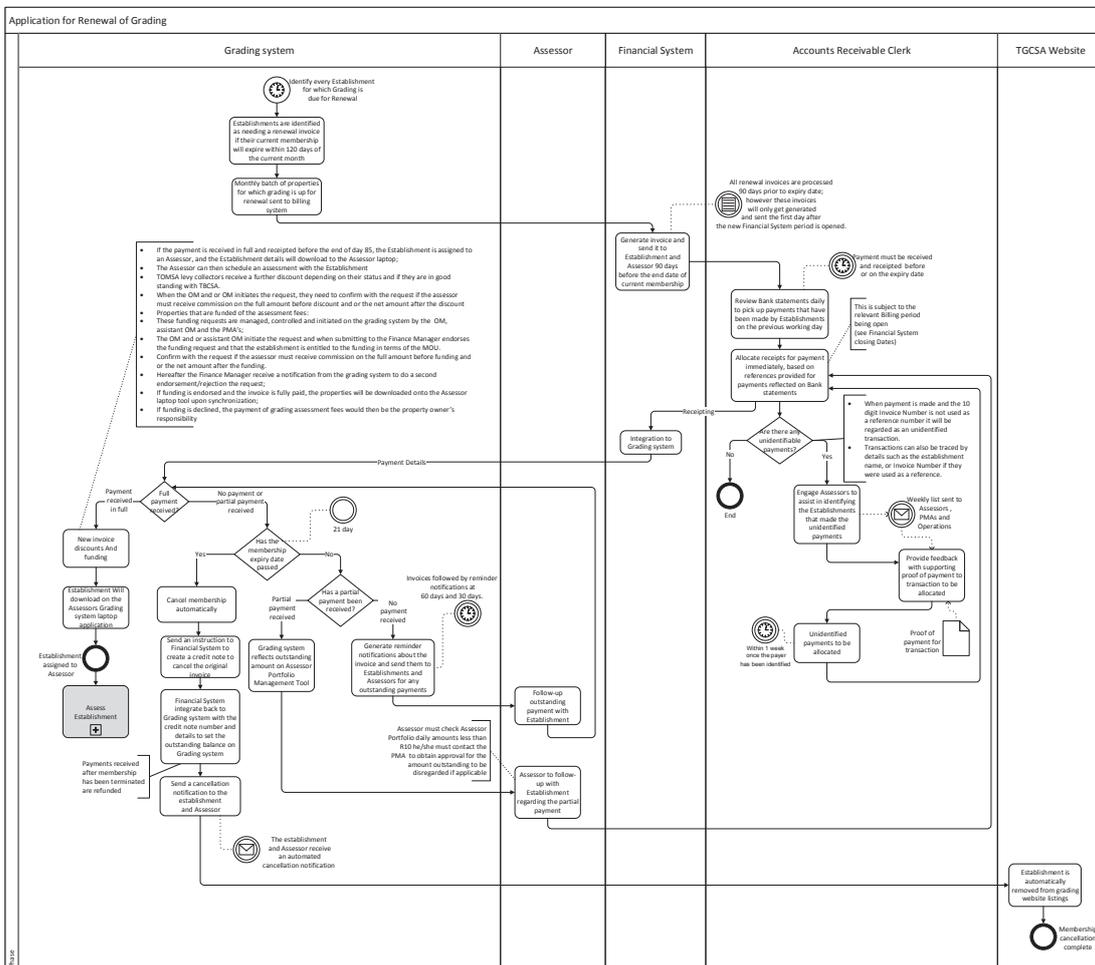
- ; Uma izimali sezivunyelwe futhi nama-invoyisi ekhokhelwe ngokugcwele, impahla izoqoshelwa kukhompuyutha Yomhloli;
- Uma izimali zinqatshelwe, ukukhokwa kwemali yokuhlolwa kuzobe umsebenzi womnikazi wempahla.

#### 4.3.3. Okubhekwayo Uma Kudluliswa Izimali Ezikhokhwayo

- Zonke izimali ezikhokhwe ku-TGCSA zenzelwa amarisidi njalo ngosuku ngaphandle kwamakolidi, izinsuku zokuvala ZEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA kanye nezimpelasonto;
  - Isitatimende Se-akhawunti Yasebange se-TGCSA siyahlolwa njalo ngosuku ukubona imali ekhokhiwe esesitatimendeni sangosuku lwangayizolo;
  - Imali ekhokhiwe engena ku-akhawunti yasebange ye-TGCSA namhlanje ingathatha amahora angama-24 ukuthi ibonakale futhi yenzelwe irisidi kanye noma ngosuku olulandelayo lokusebenza uma ikhokhwe ngempelasonto ngaphandle kwezinsuku zokuvala ZEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA, isikhathi sokuvala ZEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA kuZibandlela/Masingana njalo ngonyaka, ezinye izinsuku ngokwekhalenda LEZOKUVAKASHA EZINGIZIMU AFRIKA lapho iklekhi le-AR lizobe lingekho noma iholidi) okuzodinga izinsuku ezisithupha zokusebenza;
- Iyatsha Lezezimali kumele livale ezezimali njalo ngenyanga, futhi izinsuku zokuvala kumele Umyango wezezimali uzisho ekuqaleni Konyaka Wezimali;
- Payments reflecting on TGCSA bank statement during the billing closure period can only be receipted after the first day when the new period is opened; however, these receipts will be captured in the first three working days after month end closing date. Therefore, these transactions will integrate to Grading System only once the same has been receipted in the new period. Izimali ezikhokhiwe ezivela esitatimendeni sasebange se-TGCSA ngesikhathi sokuvalwa kwezezimali zingakhishelwa amarisidi emuva kosuku lokuqala lokuvulwa kwesikhathi esisha; kodwa, lamarisidi azofakwa ezinsukwini ezintathu zokusebenza emuva kokuphela kwenyanga yosuku lokuvalwa. Ngalokho, lezi zimali zizofakwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda kuphela uma sekwenziwe irisidi esikhathini esisha.
- Ukufakwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda kuzokwenzeka ngosuku olulandelayo emuva kokwenza irisidi Ohlelweni Lwegatsha Lwezezimali. Uma isikhathi sokukhokha imali Segatsha Lezezimali sesivuliwe, Isb. ekupheleni kwenyanga kuNdasa, isikhathi sikaNdasa sizovalwa kuphela mhla ziz-11 kuMbasa ka-2016 (njengokuba lisho Ikhalenda Legatsha Lezezimali maqondana nezinsuku ezizovalwa ngonyaka olandelayo). Ngalokho, ukwenza amarisidi kwemali etholwe ku-akhawunti yasebange ye-TGCSA yesikhathi sezinsuku ezimbalwa zenyanga (kuncike ukuthi ukuphela kwenyanga akukho ngempelasonto) kanye nakusukela sisi-1 kuMbasa ka-2016 kuzokwenzelwa irisidi mhla ziyi-12 kuMbasa ka-2016 (okuhlanganiswa mhla ziyi-13 kuMbasa ka-2016) mhla ziyi-13 kuMbasa ka-2016 ( Okuhlanganiswa mhla ziyi-14 kuMbasa ka-2016), mhla ziyi-14 kuMbasa ka-2016 ( Okuhlanganiswa mhla ziyi-15 kuMbasa ka-2016);
- Ngalokho, njengokuba kwenziwe isibonelo ngenhla, ukwenza amarisidi ekuvalweni kokuphela kwezinnyanga kuzokwenzeka ezinsukwini ezintathu zokuqala zokusebenza emuva kokuvalwa kokuphela kwenyanga;

- Okunye ukwenza amarisidi enyangeni kuzokwenziwa ezinsukwini eziMbili zokusebenza, kodwa, ukwenza amarisidi kwenziwa kuphela lapho isakhiwo sisebenzise inombolo efanele yenkomba ye-invoyisi;
- Enye imali efakiwe lapho inombolo yenkomba ye-invoyisi ingasetshenziswanga, Umhloli kumele ahambise i-POP esuka esakhiweni kanye nesiqinisekiso esisuka esakhiweni inombolo ye-invoyisi ebiyenzelwe ukukhokha (QAPHELA: Umhloli akukwazi ukuqinisekisa ngokumela isakhiwo);
- Yonke imali ekhokhiwe engaziwa, izofakwa ohlwini lwezimali ezingaziwa oluzothunyelwa kubo bonke Abahloli & ama-MPA njalo ngevikingaphandle kwezinsuku zokuvala ZEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA, isikhathi sokuvala SEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA kuZibandlela/Masingana njalo ngonyaka, ezinye izinsuku ngokwekhalenda LEZOKUVAKASHA EZINGIZIMU AFRIKA lapho iklekhi le-AR lizobe lingekho noma iholidi);
  - QAPHELA: Uma Umhloli engakwazi ukubona imali ekhokhiwe engaziwa, kumele athole i-POP yasebhange & nesiqinisekiso lapho i-invoyisi ibikhokwe yisakhiwo bese ehambisa lolu lwazi emnyangweni wezikweletu KWEZOKUVAKASHA ZASENINGIZIMU AFRIKA (Ngeke kwenziwe amarisidi ngokuqagela noam imininingwane esuka kumhloli - ulwazi oluzokwamukelwa i-POP & nokuqinisekiswa okusuka esakhiwo); Isibonelo, Lapho isakhiwo sisebenzise inombolo yenkomba okungeyona, isakhiwo kumele sihlENZEKE i-POP & nesiqinisekiso senombolo ye-invoyisi esiyikhokhelayo kumhloli. Umhloli udlulisela ulwazi olufanayo ezikweletini ZEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA. Kubalulekile ukuqaphela ukuthi Umhloli akukwazi ukuqinisekisa inombolo ye-invoyisi ngokwakhe esikhundleni sesakhiwo.
- Amadiphazithi amasheke athatha izinsuku Eziyishumi futhi akwazi ukuthi kwenziwe amarisidi awo ngosuku lokuqala lokusebenza ezinsukwini Eziyishumi;
- Ukukhokha okuncane kumele kulandelelwe abahloli ngokushesha kanye nangansuku zonke. Abahloli kumele basebenzise ithuluzi le-APM ukuphatha onke ama-invoyisi angakakhokhelwa. Ama-PMA okuphatha kanye nokulandelela kwabahloli ezimalini ezingakakhokwa kanye nalapho abahloli bengaphethe izimali ezingakakhokhwa ngokwethuluzi lama-PMA kumele aqaphele okufanayo ekubhekweni kokusebenza komhloli konyaka;
- Ama-PMA alandelele ukushoda isb. imali eshodayo ewu-R10 & ngaphansi - ama-PMA kumele aqinisekise ukuthi kuchaziwe ukuthi Yingani lezi zimali kumele zaphulwe futhi nokuthi isicelo sokwaphulela sifinyelele kuMphathi Wezezimali okungenani ezinsukwini eziyisishiyagalombini zokusebenza ngaphambi kosuku lokukhanselwa kwempahla (Lapho kunesidingo).

4.4. Application for Renewal of Grading Isicelo Sokuvuselelwa Kokugredwa



**4.4.1. Isicelo Sokuvuselelwa Kokugredwa - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama Kohlelo**

- Ngemininingwane egcwele yohlelo lokuvuselela, bheka i-CR162
- Uhlelo Lokugreda luzobona zonke Izakhiwo ekumele Kuvuselelwe Ukugredwa kwazo;
- Izakhiwo zithunyelwa imeyili phakathi kwezinsuku eziyi-180 kanye no-120 ukuthi zivume imigomo kanye nemibandela kuqala bese i-invoyisi iyakhishwa. Uma imigomo & nemibandela yamukeliwe, i-invoyisi izokhishwa njengokuba kuchaziwe ngezansi. Uma kungenjalo, sizophelelwa yisikhathi futhi sizokhanselwa uma usuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi selufikile. Amalunga angaphumeleli ukungena athunyelwa i-invoyisi noma kunjalo kanye nokwamukela Imigomo njengokuba kwenziwa kulesi sigaba sokukhokha.
- Izakhiwo ezitholakala ukuthi zidinga ukuvuselela i-invoyisi uma ubulunga bazo buzophelelwa yisikhathi ezinsukwini ezingama-90 zosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi kwezakhiwo;
- Uhlelo Lokugreda luzothumela iqoqo lempahla eneminingwane ye-invoyisi ngamatafula okuhlangana lapho ukugreda kumele kuvuselelwe Ohlelweni Lwezezimali (uhlelo lokubiza imali) njalo ngenyanga;
- Ohlelweni Lwezezimali ama-invoyisi ayakhishwa bese ethunyelwa ngemeyili yoMkhandlu Wokugreda Wezokuvakasha kanye Nomhloli enyangeni yezinsuku ezingama-90 ngaphambi kosuku lomqamula juqu yobulunga (usuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi), nezikhumbuzo ezithunyelwa njalo ezinsukwini ezingama-30 emuva kwalokho:
  - Onke ama-invoyisi okuvuselela ayadluliswa enyangeni yezinsuku ezingama-90 ngaphambi kosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi, ngalokho, lama-invoyisi azokhishwa aphinde ahanjiswe kuphela ngosuku lokuqala emuva kokuvulwa Kohlelo Lwezezimali olusha.
- Iklekhi Elithola Ama-akhawunti kumele libuyekeze izitatimende zasebhangwe ze-TGCSA njalo ngosuku ukubona imali ekhokhwe Yizakhiwo.:
  - Iklekhi Elithola Ama-akhawunti kumele abe amarisidi email ekhokhiwe, ngokwesigaba 4.3.1:
    - Lokhu kuncike esikhathini Sokubiza imali esifanele (bheka Ukubhekwayo Uma Kudluliswa Ukukhokhwa 4.3.3 ngenhla)
- Imali kumele ikhokhwe lungakafiki usuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi lobulunga obukhona, imali kumele yamukelwe futhi yenzelwe irisidi ngaphambi noma ngosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi;
- Uma ingekho imali ekhokhiwe, Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhipha izikhumbuzo mayelana nama-invoyisi, ngosuku lwama-60 kanye nosuku lwama-30 ngaphambi kosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi futhi luthumele izikhumbuzo Ezakhiweni kanye Nakumhloli;
- Uma imali ingakhokhwanga futhi ingenzelwanga irisidi (ukwaphulelwa uma kunesidingo) ngosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi kanye nasezinsukwini Eziyishumi, ubulunga besakhiwo buphelelwa yisikhathi kanje:
  - Ubulunga Besakhiwo buyakhanselwa ngokuzenzakalela Uhlelo Lokugreda emuva kwezinsuku ezingama-21 emuva kokuphelelwa yisikhathi sobulunga, kodwa irekhodi Lesakhiwo ligcinwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
  - Uhlelo Lokugreda luzothumela umyalelo Ohlelweni Lwezezimali ukuthi lwakhe isikweletu ukukhansela i-invoyisi yokuqala eyenzeka ngosuku lokuqala emuva kokuhambisa;

- Uhlelo Lwezezimali lubuyisela emuva OHLELWENI LOKUGREDA nenombolo yesikweletu kanye neminingwane okwenza imali ekweletwayo Ohlelweni Lokugreda, isaziso esizenzakalayo Sokukhanselwa Kobulunga sithunyelwe Esakhiweni;
- Isakhiwo siyasuswa ngokuzenzakalela ohlwini lokugreda lwewebhusayithi Ngolwesithathu olulandelayo ntambama uma Uhlelo Lwezezimali, Uhlelo Lokugreda kanye neWebhusayithi sekwazi.
- Uma imali itholwe emuva kokupheliswa kobulunga okulandelayo kuzokwenzeka:
  - Imali leyo izothathwa njengemali engaziwa uma isakhiwo singafaki isicelo;
  - Ukumakethwa Kwebhizinisi Kwe-TGCSA kuzodingeka ukuthi kuthole imvume ye-CQAP kanye ne-CFO ukuthi kwabiwe ama-invoyisi amasha emuva kokuthi isakhiwo sesifake isicelo esisha;
  - Isakhiwo siyasuswa ngokuzenzakalela kuwebhusayithi yohlu lokugred.

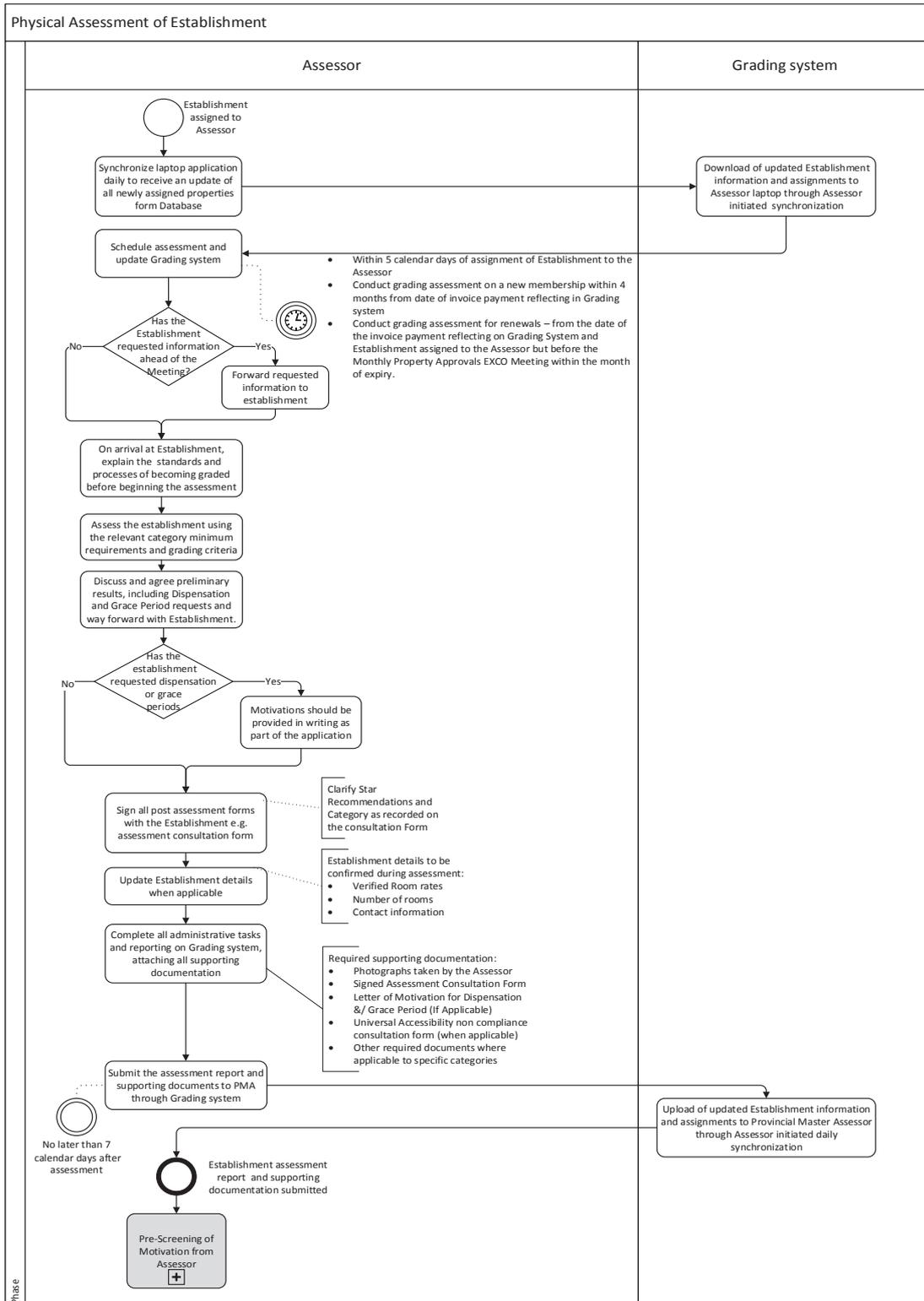
#### 4.4.2. Ukukhokhelwa kanye Nokwaphulelwa I-invoyisi

- Mayelana nokukhokhelwa kanye Nokwaphulelwa, Bheka 4.3.2

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

#### 4.5. Ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo



**4.5.1. Ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo kungenziwa kuphela uma Isakhiwo sinikwe Umhleli;
- Umhloli kudingeka ukuthi afake ulwazi Lohlelo Lokugreda kukhompuyutha njalo ukufaka impahla entsha efakiwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
- Ulwazi Lwesakhiwo luzofakwa kukhompuyutha Yohlelo Lokugreda kanye nokunikwa okugcinwe kukhompuyutha Yomhloli;
- Umhloli kumele ashedule ukuqokwa kanye nokubuyezwa Kohlelo Lokugreda:
  - Ukuhlolwa kumele kushedulwe ezinsukwini eziyi-5 zekhalenda zokunikwa Kwesakhiwo Umhloli;
  - Umhloli uzobe esefaka usuku olusheduliwe kukhompuyutha yethuluzi Lohlelo Lokugreda, ukuze kugcinwe ubufakazi futhi akhumbule usuku lokuhlola;
  - : Umhloli kumele enze ukuhlola kokugreda ngaphakathi kwalezi zikhathi ezinqunyiwe:
    - Mayelana nezicelo ezintsha - ezinyangeni ezi-4 zekhalenda kusukela osukwini lokuvela Ohlelweni Lokugreda kokukhokhelwa kwe-invoyisi;
    - Mayelana nokuvuselelwa - kusukela osukwini lokuvela Ohlelweni Lokugreda kokukhokhelwa kwe-invoyisi kanye Nesakhiwo esinikwe Umhloli kodwa ngaphambi Komhlangano we-EXCO Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla enyangeni yokuphelelwa yisikhathi;
    - Uma Umhloli engalandeli izikhathi ezishiwo, impahla izokhishwa ethuluzini lakhe bese inikwe abanye Abahloli ukuqinisekisa ukuthi imithetho yebhizinisi iyalandelwa.
  - Uma Isakhiwo sicele ulwazi ngaphambi kokuhlolwa ukuqoka Umhloli kumele anike ulwazi Kusakhiwo.
- Ekufikeni Esakhiweni, Umhloli kumele achaze amazanga kanye nezinhlelo zokugredwa ngaphambi kokuhlolwa;
- Umhloli kumele ahlole Isakhiwo esebenzisa uhlobo olufanele lwezimfuneko kanye nohlobo lokugreda;
- Umhloli kumele adingide futhi avume imiphumela eyandulelayo, okuhlanganisa Ukuxolelwa kanye Nesikhathi Somusa kanye nenqubekela phambili Yesakhiwo:
  - Uma impahla ingahlangabezani ne-MER kodwa befuna ukuqalisa futhi bekwazi ukuqalisa izimfuneko, incwadi Yesikhathi Somusa yenziwa yimpahla;
  - Uma impahla ingahlangabezani ne-MER futhi ingakwazi ukuqalisa izimfuneko ngezizathu ezizwakalayo, Incwadi Yesicelo Sokuxolelwa yenziwa impahla;
  - Uma isakhiwo sicele ukuxolelwa noma isikhathi somusa, izizathu kumele zihlinzekwe ngokubhala njengengxenywe yesicelo.
- Umhloli kumele asayine onke amafomu uma sekuqediwe ukuhlola Nesikhungo isb. ifomu lokuxoxisana ngokuhlola:
  - Umhloli kumele acacise izincomo ezisemqoka kanye nohlobo njengokuba kurikhodiwe Efomini lokuhlana.
- Umhloli kumele afake eminye imininingwane Yesakhiwo lapho kunesidingo:
  - Imininingwane Yesakhiwo kumele iqinisekiswa ngesikhathi sokuhlola;

- Imali eqinisekisiwe Yamagumbi;
- Inani lamagumbi;
- Imininingwane yokuxhumana.
- Umhloli kumele aqede yonke imisebenzi yakhe yokuphatha kanye nokubika Ngohlelo Lokugreda, ngokufaka imiqulu esekelayo:
  - Imiqulu edingekayo yokweseka ihlanganisa:
    - Izithombe ezithathwe Ngumhloli;
    - Ifomu Lokuhlangana Lokuhlolwa elisayiniwe;
    - Incwadi Enencazelo Yokuchithwa &/ Isikhathi Somusa (Uma Kunesidingo)
    - Ukutholakala kwefomu lokuhlangana lokungalandeli (lapho kunesidingo)
    - Eminye imiqulu edingekayo efanele yezinhlobo ezithile.
- Umhloli kumele ahambise ukuhlola kanye nemiqulu esekelayo ku-PMA Ngohlelo Lokugreda kungakadluli ezinsuku eziyi-7 emuva kokuhlolwa;
- Uhlelo Lokugreda lufaka ulwazi olubuyekeziwe Lwesakhiwo kanye nokunikelwa Kumhloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe ngokufaka komhloli ulwazi kukhompuyutha njalo;
- Uma ukuhlolwa kanye nemiqulu eyesekayo Kwesakhiwo sekuhanjisiwe, Umhloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe uzoqala uhlelo lokuskrina lwangaphambilini

**Inqubo Yomhloli Yokuvakashela Endaweni**

1. Ngaphambi kanye nangosuku lokuhlola Umhloli kumele afonele ikhasimende ngomhlangano.
2. Umhlelo uzokwenza ukuhlola ngendlela elandelayo:

<b>Impahla entsha</b>	<b>Impahla evuselelwayo</b>
<b>Gcwalisa uhlu lokuhlola lwe-MER-</b> Lokhu kuzonquma ukuthi ngabe impahla iyifanele yini inkanyezi eshiwo yokugreda kanye nohlobo okufakwe isicelo salo.	<b>Gcwalisa uhlu lokuhlola lwe-MER (izimfuneko)-</b> Lokhu kuzonquma ukuthi ngabe impahla iyifanele yini inkanyezi eshiwo yokugreda kanye nohlobo okufakwe isicelo salo.
<b>Gwalisa uhlu lokuhlola Ikhwalithi-</b> Loku kuzonquma ukuthi iphuzu lokuthi impahla izoqongelela futhi lokhu kuyasho ukuthi iyiphi inkanyezi yokugreda impahla esifanelayo.	<b>Gwalisa uhlu lokuhlola Ikhwalithi-</b> Loku kuzonquma ukuthi iphuzu lokuthi impahla izoqongelela futhi lokhu kuyasho ukuthi iyiphi inkanyezi yokugreda impahla esifanelayo.
<b>Gcwalisa uhlu lokuhlola lwe-AU-</b> Ifomu lonke kumele ligcwaliswe uma kwenzelwa impahla entsha ukuze kubonwe ukuthi impahla ikufanele yini ukugredwa ngokwe-UA. Futhi ukubona ukuthi kungenzeka yini ukuthi impahla yenze ukugredwa kwe-UA.	<b>Gcwalisa uhlu lokuhlola lwe-AU (ukutholakala kuwo wonke umuntu)-</b> Ifomu lonke kumele ligcwaliswe uma kwenzelwa impahla entsha ukuze kubonwe ukuthi impahla ikufanele yini ukugredwa ngokwe-UA. Uma impahla ingakwazanga futhi isaphinda ingakwazi ukugredwa uhlu lokuhlola lungamakwa njengokungekho.
<b>Ukusayini ifomu le-UA lokungafakwa-</b> Uma impahla ingakwazanga ukugredwa ngokwe-UA bazogcwalisa baphinde basayine ifomu lokwamukela lokho.	<b>Ukusayini ifomu le-UA lokungafakwa-</b> (ukutholakala kuwo wonke umuntu). Leli fomu ligcwaliswe laphela futhi lasayinwa uma lungekho uhla lokuhlolwa lwe-UA uma impahla ingakakulungeli ukugredwa kwe-UA ekuhlolweni kwayo kokuvuselelwa.
<b>Gcwalisa umbiko Wokuvakasha-</b>	<b>Gcwalisa umbiko Wokuvakasha-</b>

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

Lo mbiko uhlanganisa imininingwane efinqwiwe yempahla. Izindawo zokwenziwa ncono kanye nezindawo zamandla kanye nokufingqwa kwezinga lempahla. Izinga linquma umphumela wokugredwa ngokwenkanyezi.	. Lo mbiko uhlanganisa imininingwane efinqwiwe yempahla. Izindawo zokwenziwa ncono kanye nezindawo zamandla kanye nokufingqwa kwezinga lempahla. Izinga linquma umphumela wokugredwa ngokwenkanyezi.
<b><u>Ukugcwalisa kanye nokusayina ifomu Lokuhlangana-</u></b> Leli fomu kumele Lisayinwe Umhloli kanye nomnikazi wempahla ngokuvumelana ngomphumela wokuholwa okwenzekile kanye nokugredwa ngokwenkanyezi okunconyiwe kwempahla. Leli fomu lazise ikhasimende ukuthi lilindele ini emuva kokuthi kuvunyelwe ukugreda.	<b><u>Ukugcwalisa kanye nokusayina ifomu Lokuhlangana-</u></b> Leli fomu kumele Lisayinwe Umhloli kanye nomnikazi wempahla ngokuvumelana ngomphumela wokuholwa okwenzekile kanye nokugredwa ngokwenkanyezi okunconyiwe kwempahla. Leli fomu lazise ikhasimende ukuthi lilindele ini emuva kokuthi kuvunyelwe ukugreda.
<b><u>Ukugcwalisa ithempulethi yezithombe sokuhlolwa-</u></b>  Izithombe ezihambisana nokuhlolwa zifakwa kule thempulethi. Lokhu kusiza ekuvumeleni ngaphambilini kwempahla njengoma i-PMA ingabona ukuthi yini ehleliwe. Amathempulethi ezithombe e-UA ayafuneka nawo ukuze akhombise ukuthi impahla ikufanele noma ayikufanele ukuthi isetshenziswe yiwo wonke umuntu. (Izithombe ezintsha kumele zisetshenziswe, uma kunanoma yiziphi izithombe zeminyaka edlulile ezisetshenzisiwe Umhloli kumele akudalule lokho futhi abeke ngesizathu)	<b><u>Ukugcwalisa ithempulethi yezithombe sokuhlolwa-</u></b>  Izithombe ezihambisana nokuhlolwa zifakwa kule thempulethi. Lokhu kusiza ekuvumeleni ngaphambilini kwempahla njengoma i-PMA ingabona ukuthi yini ehleliwe. Amathempulethi ezithombe e-UA ayafuneka nawo ukuze akhombise ukuthi impahla ikufanele noma ayikufanele ukuthi isetshenziswe yiwo wonke umuntu. (Izithombe ezintsha kumele zisetshenziswe, uma kunanoma yiziphi izithombe zeminyaka edlulile ezisetshenzisiwe Umhloli kumele akudalule lokho futhi abeke ngesizathu)
<b><u>Ukuhlola okungaphumelelanga-</u></b> Impahla engahambisani nezimfuneko zokugreda ukulinganiswa kwenkanyezi ethile, kumele ihanjiswe nokugreda okungaphumelelanga. Incazelo ebhaliwe kanye nezithombe kuyadingeka ukuchaza ukuhambisa okungaphumelelanga.	<b><u>Ukuhlola okungaphumelelanga-</u></b> Impahla engahambisani nezimfuneko zokugreda ukulinganiswa kwenkanyezi ethile, kumele ihanjiswe nokugreda okungaphumelelanga. Incazelo ebhaliwe kanye nezithombe kuyadingeka ukuchaza ukuhambisa okungaphumelelanga.
	<b><u>- Ukunyuselwa</u></b> Lapho impahla yenze ncono ezakhiweni zabo okuzoba nomthelela ekugredweni kwayo, incazelo ebhaliwe kanye nesithombe kuyadingeka ukuveza ushintsho olufunekayo.
	<b><u>Ukwehlisa</u></b> Lapho impahla yehlisiwe ekugredweni kwenkanyezi, incazelo ebhaliwe kanye nesithombe kumele kuhlinzekwe isimo sezakhiwo esizohambisana nokugredwa kwenkanyezi okunconyiwe.

**Izicelo Zesikhathi Somusa**

- Isikhathi somusa yisikhathi esinikwe impahla ukuze isizwe ekwenzeni izimfuneko ezidingekayo ukuze ihambisane nezinga elifanele efakelwa isicelo kulo;
- Isikhathi somusa siyizinyanga ezintathu kodwa izinyanga eziyisithupha zivumelekile;
- Impahla kudingeka iqonde ukuthi ngeke bathole iplakhu yabo yokugreda kuze kuba isikhathi somusa esiceliwe siphela ngokufanele. Ukuqinisekisa okubhaliwe kanye nezithombe ezidingekayo njengesiqinisekiso sokuqeda isikhathi somusa;
- Incwadi yesikhathi somusa idinga ukuba ne-logo yempahla futhi isayinwe umnikazi wempahla noma umphathi okhona;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

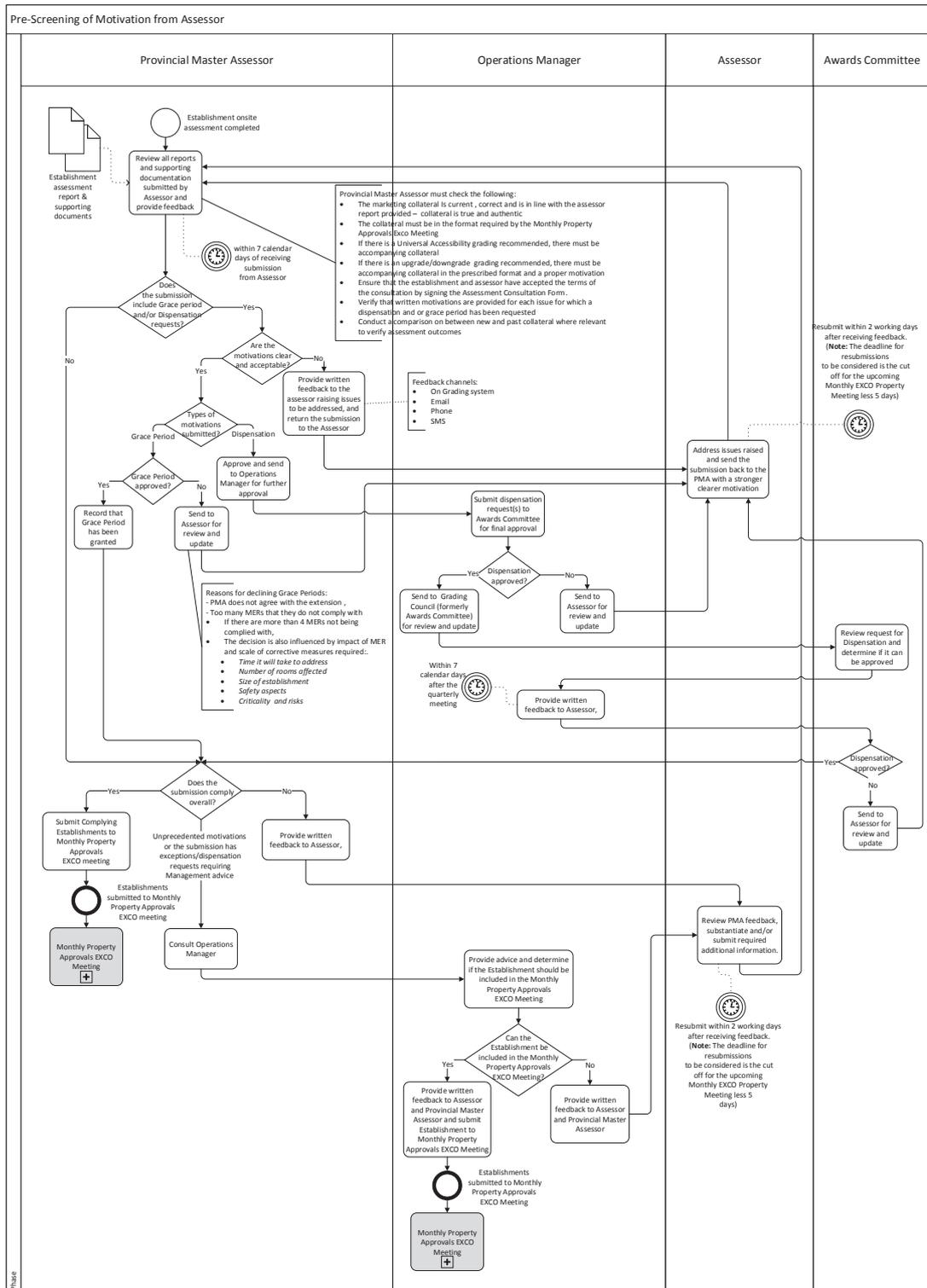
Company Confidential

- Umhloli uzohambisa incwadi yesikhathi somusa kanye nemiqulu yokuhlolwa ukuthi i-PMA ibheke;
- Usuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi isakhiwo asikwazi ukushintsha ukuvumela isikhathi somusa;
- Ukuvuselelwa kwama-invoyisi kukhishwa enyangeni ezinsukwini ezingama-90 ngaphambi kokuphelelwa yisikhathi noma ngabe kukhona isikhathi somusa;
- Uma isikhathi somusa sinqantshiwe, kuzothunyelwa umyalezo Kumhloli mayelana ngalokho ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda Zomhlangano Wanyanga zonke we-Exco Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla;
- Umhloli uzobheka impendulo esuka ku-PMA bese eyihambisa olunye ulwazi olwengeziwe. (izinsuku ezi-2 zokusebenza zokuhambisa kabusha ziyasebenza zokuthi impahla ihanjiswe Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvumela Impahla we-EXCO ongaphelelwa yisikhathi ngaphansi kosuku olu-1)
- I-PMA izobheka impendulo enye futhi uma igculisekile izohambisa impahla emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO.

#### Izicelo Zokukhululwa

- Ukukhululwa kunika imvume ukuthi impahla ingabe nezimfuneko ezithile ngenxa yezizathu ezifanele ezivunyelwe Umkhandlu Wokugreda;
- Isicelo sokukhululwa sizobhekwa Umhloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe (PMA) ekubhekweni kwe-PMA (ekuskrinweni kwangaphambilini) futhi uma i-PMA ivumelana nezizathu zokukhululwa bazothumela isicelo Kophethe Ukubheka;
- Umphathi Wokusebenza uzobheka isicelo sokukhululwa furhi uma evumela isicelo noma incazelo yaso, kuzodluliselwa Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO.
- Ukukhululwa kuzobhekwa emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO futhi uma bevumelana kuhanjiswa Ekomidini Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi, Ukuhanjiswa kwemiboo, ukuze kuvunyelwe. Ikomidana Lokuqinisekisa Ikhwalithi lizoveza ukuvuma/ukunqaba isicelo sokukhululwa ezinsukwini eziMbili (2) zokusebenza.
- Uma ukukhululwa kuvunyelwe Yikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi, impahla izoyiswa komunye Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-Exco ukuze kuvunyelwe ukugredwa kwayo;
- Uma ukukhululwa kunqatshiwe Yikomidana Lokuqinisekisa Ikhwalithi, isinqumo sizodluliselwa Kumhloli nempenduli yenqubekela phambili;
- Umhloli kumele azise abempahla ngenqubekela phambili ngaphambi kokuhambisa futhi Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO.

4.6. Incazelo Esuka Kumhloli Yokuhlolwa Ngaphambilini



#### 4.7. Ingaphambi kokuhlolwa Kwembangela okusuka Kumhloli- Incazelo Yamagama

- Uma umbiko wokuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo kanye nemiqulu eyesekayo kuhanjisiwe, Umhloli Ophezulu Wesifundazwe (PMA) engabheka izinto ezilethiwe esisuka Kubahloli.
- The PMA must review all reports and supporting documentation submitted by Assessor: I-PMA kumele ibheke onke imibiko kanye nemiqulu eyesekelayo okuhanjisiwe Umhloli:
  - Okufakiwe Isakhiwo, kanye nayo yonke imiqulu eyesekayo efanele eqediwe ngesikhathi sokuhlolwa;
  - I-PMA kumele ibheke ukuhanjiswa bese ihlinzeka impendulo ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda emuva kokuhanjiswa Umhloli:
    - Impendulo igcinwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda, futhi kumele idowulodiwe njalo;
    - Kodwake, impendulo maqondana Nohlelo Lokugreda ingalandelwa okunye ukuxhumana, okungaba imeyili, i-SMS kanye ncingo okwenziwa kuphela uma kunesimo esiphuthumayo, isb. uma kusondele ukuphela kwesikhathi.
- I-PMA kumele ibheke:
  - Ukuhambisana kokumaketha okwamanje, kusesimeni esifanele futhi kuhambisana nombiko wokuhlola ohlinzekiwe - ukuhambisana kuyiniso futhi kuyakholakala;
  - Ukuhambisana kumele kube sesimeni esidingekayo Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-Exco;
  - Uma kunokugredwa kokukutholakala Kwawo Wonke umuntu, kumele kube nokuhambisana;
  - Uma kunokwenyuswa/ukwehliswa okunconyiwe, kumele kube nokuhambisana kwendlela enqunyiwe kanye nencazelo efanele;
  - Uma kunesincomo sokugreda okungaphumelelanga, kumele kube nokuhambisana kwendlela enqunyiwe kanye nencazelo efanele;
  - Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi Isakhiwo kanye Nohloli bamukele imibandela yomhlangano ngokusayina Ifomu Lomhlangano Wokuhlola;
  - Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi incazelo ebhaliwe ihlinzekiwe udaba nodaba lapho ukukhululwa kanye nesikhathi somusa kuceliwe;
  - Ukwenza ukuqhathanisa phakathi kokuhambisana okusha kanyenokwangaphambilini lapho kufanele ukuqinisekisa imiphumela yokuhlola.
- Ukuhambisa kuhlanganisa izicelo Zesikhathi Somusa/ noma Ukukhululwa i-PMA kumele ibheke ukuthi izizathu zicacile futhi zamukelekile:
  - If the motivations are not clear and acceptable the PMA must: Uma izizathu zingacacile futhi zingamukelekile i-PMA kumele:
    - Provide written feedback to the Assessor raising issues to be addressed, and return the submission to the Assessor; Ihlinzeke ngempendulo Umhloli ngokukhuluma ngezinto ezibhekiwe, bese ibuyisela ukuhambisa Kumhloli;
    - Umhloli kumele akhulume ngezinto eziphakamisiwe bese ebuyisela ku-PMA nesizathu esiqinile futhi esicacile;

- Uma sezicacile futhi zamukelekile ukuvunyelwa okufanele kumele kunikezelwe:
  - Ukukhululwa:
    - I-PMA kumele ivume Ukukhululwa bese ithumela Umphathi Wokusebenza ukuthi aphinde avumele, Ukukhululwa kuzokwethulwa Emhlanganweni Wazinyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-Exco;
    - Umhlangano Wazinyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-Exco uzovumela bese uhambisa izicelo zokukhululwa emhlanganweni Wekomidana Lokuqinisekisa Ikhwalithi ukuze ivunyelwe okokugcina;
    - Ikomidana Lokuqinisekisa Ikhwalithi lizobheka Ukukhululwa bese linquma ukuthi lingakuvumela yini;
    - Umhloli kumele anike impendulo Kumhloli ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda emuva komhlangano wekota yonyaka Wekomidana Lokuqinisekisa Ikhwalithi;
    - Uma ukukhula kungavumelwanga yinoma yibaphi abanegunya lokuvuma, kuzobuyiselwa kumhloli ukuthi abheke kabusha:
      - Umhloli kumele akhulume ngezinto eziphakamisiwe bese ebuyisela ku-PMA esizathi esicacile.
    - . Uma ukukhulula kuvunyiwe, kumele kuqoshwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda.
  - Izikhathi Zomusa:
    - Uma Isikhathi Somusa singavunyelwa yinoma yibaphi abanegunya lokuvuma, kuzobuyiselwa Kumhloli ukuthi abheke futhi:
      - Umhloli kumele akhulume ngezinto eziphakamisiwe bese ebuyisela ku-PMA esizathi esicacile.
    - Izizathu zokunqaba Izikhathi Zomusa:-
      - I-PMA ayivumelani nokwengezwa;
      - Ama-MER amaniningi awalandeli:
        - Uma kunama-MER angaphezu kwa-4 angalandelwanga;
        - Umthelela wesinqumo ama-MER kanye nezinye izinto ezidingekayo:
          - Kuzothatha isikhathi ukubhekana;
          - Inani lamagumbi athintekayo;
          - Usayizi Wesakhiwo;
          - Ezokuphepha;
          - Ubungozi.
      - Uma Isikhathi Somusa sinikiwe kumele kuqoshwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda.
  - Umhloli kumele anqume ukuthi ukuhambisa ngakunye kuhambisana nezimfuneko sezisonke zokugreda (ngokubheka ukukhululeka kanye Nezikhathi Zomusa okuceliwe, uma kufanele)
    - Uma ukuhambisa kuhambisana nakho konke i-PMA izohambisa ukulandela Kwesakhiwo Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwezakhiwo we-EXCO.
    - Noma ngabe yikuphi ukuhambisa okungalandeli nhlobo, hlinzeka impendulo ebhaliwe Yomhloli:
      - Umhloli kumele abheke impendulo ye-PMA bese eyesekela kanye/noma ahambise eminye imininigwane emahora angama-48 okuthola impendulo;

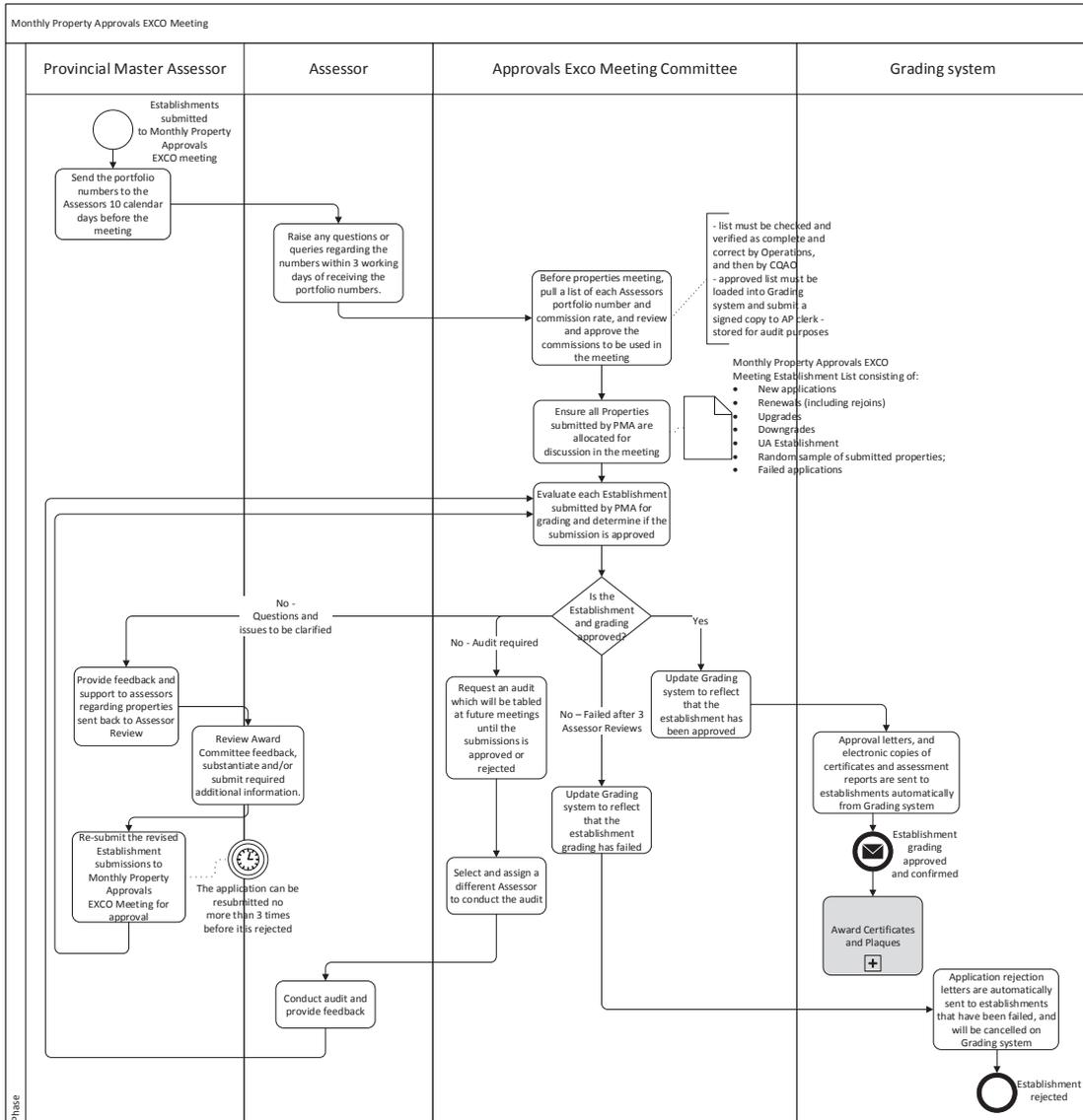
---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Isikhathi esiwumqamulajuqu sokuhambisa futhi ukuphela Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO ozayo ngaphansi kwezinsuku eziyi-5.
- Ukuhambisa noma yikuphi okuqukethe incazelo engakaze ibe khona noma ukuhambisa okunesicelo sokukhululwa okucela iseluleko Sabaphathi, i-PMA ixoxisana Nomphathi Wokusebenza:
  - Umphathi Wokusebenza kumele ahlinzeke iseluleko bese enquma ukuthi Isakhiwokufanele yini ukuthi sifakwe Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvumela Impahla we-EXCO.
    - Umphathi Wezokusebenza uzophendula ngokubhala ebhalela Umhloli kanye Nomhloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe ebeka ukuthi bengasihambisa noma cha isakhiwo Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvumela Impahla we-EXCO.
- Zonke Izakhiwo ezifanele ezihanjiswa Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvumela Impahla we-EXCO zingabhekwa ngesikhathi somhlangano.

4.8. Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla



#### 4.8.1. Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-Exco - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama

Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla ujoye ukubanjwa phakathi nenyanga phakathi kwamhla ziyi-12 kanye namhla ziyi-15 enyangeni. Umhlangano uhanjelwa okungenani Yilunga elilodwa Lekomidi le-Exco Kwezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika, ithimba Lokusebenza (Umphathi Wokusebenza & Nomsizi Womphathi, ama-PMA) kanye Nomphathi Wokumaketha.

Usihlalo Womhlangano kujwayele ukuba yi-CQAO. Umhlangano uhlukaniswe waba yizigaba ezi-2, ukudingida udaba lokugreda kanye nokubhekwa kwempahla kanye nokuvumela.

- Ukuze sigredwe, Isakhiwo kumele sibhekwe futhi sihanjiswe Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO;
- Ngaphambi Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO, ithimba lokusebenza elibamba iqhaza Ekomidini Lomhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO (Umphathi Wokusebenza & Nomsizi Womphathi, ama-PMA) kumele likhiphe uhlu lwenombolo yephothifoliyo Yomhloli ngamunye kanye nenani lekhomishana, kanye nokubhekwa kanye nokuvumela ukuthi isetshenziswe emhlanganweni:
  - Izinombolo zephothifoliyo kumele zithunyelwe yi-PMA Kubahloli ezinsukwini eziyi-10 ngaphambi komhlangano;
    - Qaphela: izinombolo zephothifoliyo zilungiswa ekuphileni kwenyanga edlule, ngalokho ushintsho kumele kwenziwe ngaphambi kokuphela kwenyanga.
  - Abahloli kumele baphakamise noma iyiphi imibuzo abanayo yezinombolo ezinsukwini ezi-3 emuva kokuthola izinombolo zephothifoliyo;
  - Uhla kumele lubhekwe bese luyaqinisekiswa ukuthi luphelele futhi lufanele Abezokusebenza, bese kuba i-CQAO bese luyasayinwa ngosuku olu-1 lokusebenza ngaphambi komhlangano;
  - Uhla oluvunyelwe kumele lufakwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda kanye nekhophi esayiniwe kumele kuhanjiswe Eklekhini Lama-akhawunti Akhokhekayo kanye Nomphathi Wezezimali ngosuku olulodwa emuva Komhlangano Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla - lubekwe ngezinhloso zokucwaninga;
- Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO uzobheka ukuhanjiswa ngakunye uphinde uqinisekise ukuthi Impahla ehanjiswe yi-PMA idingidiwe emhlanganweni:
  - Umhlangano Udingida uhlu Lomhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO oluqukethe:
    - Izicelo ezintsha;
    - Ukuvuselela (okuhlanganisa nokuhlanganisa kabusha)
    - Ukukhuphula;
    - Ukwehlisa
    - Ukutholakala Kuwo Wonke Umuntu Kwesakhiwo;
    - Amasampula empahla ahanjisiwe;
    - Izicelo ezingaphumelanga...

- Ikomidi Lomhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO lizobheka Isakhiwo ngasinye esihanjiswe ku-PMA ukuze sigredwe bese linquma ukuthi ngabe ukuhanjiswa lokho kungavunyelwa yini.
  - Ekubhekeni impahla, umhlangano ubheka:
    - Izithombe ezilethwe Umhloli (Zamanje vs Nazangonyaka Odlulile);
    - Imibiko Yokuvakasha;
    - Izakhiwo se-UA;
    - Imiqule efanele emaqondana nohlobo lwesicelo isb. Iphemithi yokugcina izilwane Kumaloji Ezilwane)
    - Uhla lokuhlola Ikhwalithi (uma kunokukhathazeka) kanye newebhusayithi, uma kufanele.
  - Uma isakhiwo kanye nokugreda okufakelwe isicelo sivunyelwe Ikomidi Lomhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO kumele lifake lokho Ohlelweni Lokugreda ukuthi luveze ukuthi kuvunyiwe:
    - Izincwadi zokuvuma kanye namakhophi obuchwepheshe ezithifiketi kanye nemibiko yokuhlola kuthunyelwa Esakhiweni ngokuzenzekela kusuka Ohlelweni Lokugreda emuva kokuthi ukuvunyelwa emhlanganweni kurekhodiwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
    - Emahoreni angama-24 emuva komhlangano, Ama-oda Okuthenga Omhloli (PO's) akhishwe ngokuhambisana nenani lempahla ehanjiswe kuloyo mhlangano.
  - Uma Isakhiwo kanye nokugreda okufakelwe isicelo kungakavunyelwa, lokhu okuthathu kungasebenza:
    - Imibuzo kanye nezinkinga ezizophakanyiswa:
      - I-PMA kumele inikele ngempendulo kanye nokweseka Abahloli maqondana nempahla ebuyiselwe emuva ukuthi lbhekwe Umhloli;
      - I-MPA kanye Nomhloli kumele babheke impendulo Yomhloli bese besekele futhi/noma bahambise olunye olwazi oludingekayo;
      - Umhloli kumele aqinisekise futhi aphenzule imibuzo umhlangano oyibuzayo. Umhloli ekuphenduleni kwakhe imibuzo uzonika izizathu zesinqumo sakhe sangaphambilini maqondana nokugreda. Ukubhekwa kwangaphambilini okwenziwa yi-PMA kuzophinda kusize Umhloli futhi babeke izizathu zabo, uma bevumelana nezincwadi Zomhloli;
      - Ngosizo lokuhlola ngaphambilini olwenziwa yi-PMA Umhloli engahambisa kabusha Isakhiwo esibuyekeziwe Somhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO ukuze sivunyelwe:
        - Isicelo singaphinda sihanjiswe hhayi ngaphezulu kwesikhathi ezi-3 ngaphambi kokuthi siqatshelwe.
    - Ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku kuzodingeka:
      - Ikomidi lizocela ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku okuzobhekwa emihlanganweni elandelayo kuze kuba ukuhanjiswa kuyavunyelwa noma kuyanqatshwa;
      - Ikomidi kumele likhethe liphinde linikezele Ngomhloli ohlukile (hhayi Umhloli ohlole Isakhiwo kuqala) ukuthi acwaninge amabhuku;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- QAPHELA: *Ibhizinisi le-TGCSA ludinga ukwenza Uhlelo lwe-CR ngokushesha ukuze Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhipha ngokuzenzakalela isaziso semeyili kanye ne-PO ekhishwe uhlelo ukucwaninga ukukhokha komhloli, njengokuba lokhu kwenziwa ngemanuwali*
- Umhloli uzobe esenza ukucwaninga kwamabhuku bese enika impendulo. Impendulo izobhekwa Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO.
- Isicelo sokugreda sizonqatshelwa emuva kokungaphumeleli ukuhlangabezana nezimfuneko, nasemuhla Kokubuyekwezwa Abahloli aba-3:
  - Ikomidi lizokwazisa Uhlelo Lokugreda ukuthi lukhombise ukuthi ukugredwa Kwesakhiwo akuphumelelanga;
  - Izincwadi zokunqatshelwa zithunyelwe ngokuzenzakalela Esakhiweni esingaphumelelanga ukuthi sigredwe, ubulunga buzokhanselwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda.
- Izakhiwo ezivunyelwe ukugreda futhi zaqinisekisa zizonikwa Imiklomelo Izitifiketi kanye Namaplakhu.

#### Imiklomelo Yokugreda

Ukuvunyelwa kobulunga bokugredwa ngokwenkanyezi

Uma Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa (MPAEM) usivumela Isakhiwo, banikwa izinkanyezi ze-TGCSA ezisuka enkanyezini e-1 kuya ezinkanyezini ezi-5 ezinhlobeni zokugreda ezilandelayo

1. Iloji Yemvelo/Yezilwane
2. Indawo Yokuhlala Ehlelekile
  - a. Ishotela;
  - b. Noma Iloji
3. Indawo yokuhlala yezivakashi:
  - a. Indawo yokulala & nesidlo sasekuseni/
  - b. Indlu Esehlatini
  - c. Indlu Yezivakashi
4. Ukuziphekela
  - a. Kwamuntu ngamunye;
  - b. Iholide elihlanganyelwe)
5. Izivakashi ezihamba nezikhwama kanye nehostela;
6. Indawo yokuhlala eyikharavane kanye Nokukhempa;
7. Izindawo Zemilangano, Imibukiso kanye Nemicimbi Ethile

#### Ukugreda kwe-UA

Uma Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO uvumela Isakhiwo ukuthi sihlolwe ngokwe-UA, baklonyeliswa bgezinga le-UA lokugreda elisuka ezingeni loku-1 kuya ku-3 ezinhlobeni ezilandelayo ze-UA:

1. Ukukwazi ukuhamba;
2. Ukuxhumana;
3. Ukubonakala.

#### Izinto ezenziwa emuva kwemiklomelo:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

Ukuvunyelwa komhlangano uhlelo oluzenzakalelayo kanye nazo zonke izimpendulo (isb. izincwadi ezivumayo kanye Nemibiko Yezivakashi) kuthumeleka kumakhasimende ngokuzenzakalela Ohlelweni Lokugreda, isikhathi esiningi emahoreni ayi-24 Omhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO.

NB: This process must be automated for accuracy during production and to avoid human error. Umsizi Womphathi Wokusebenza uzokhipha ngemanuwali uhla oluvunyelwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda futhi uzoveza uhla impahla okumele zithole amaplahku kanye nezitifiketi (lokhu kuhlanganisa: Ukushitshwa kwezinhlobo, ukukhuphula & nokwehlisa, i-UA kanye nesikhathi somusa siphelile sokunikwa amaplahku). Uhla lube seluthunyelwa Kwabezokumaketha ukuthi bakhiphe amaplahku kanye nezitifiketi.

Izitifiketi kanye Namaplahku zikhishwa ithimba Lezokumaketha le-TGCSA, Ama-oda Okuthenga kanye Nokukhokha kuphathwa Ithimba Lezezimali.

Izinto ezenziwa Emuva Kwemiklomelelo ezisezingeni eliphezulu ziba nalokhu okulandelayo:

- Ithimba lokusebenza livumele umhlangano;
- Isaziso esisuka emhlanganweni siyathunyelwa Ezakhiweni zonke sinalokhu okulandelayo:
  - Imibiko yokuhlola;
  - Imihlahlandlela Yobunkampani;
  - Izithombe zezinkanyezi ezincike ezingeni elitholiwe (kusuka ku-1 kuya ku-5)
  - Isitifiketi sobuchwepheshe sokugreda;
  - Ithuba liba khona lapha ukuhlinzeka ngokukwazi ukuthola ukusetha ideshibhodi.
- **Amaprojekthi akhokhelwe kanye Nelevi yempahla ye-TOMSA:**
  - Izakhiwo ezifanele ukukhokhelwa kanye namalevi e-TOMSA kumele zikhokhele ama-invoyisi azo njengokuba kukhonjisiwe kuma-invoyisi anesaphulelo;
  - Uhla lempahla ekhokhelwe oluvunyelwe emhlanganweni wamanje luyakhishwa futhi ludluliselwe ku-G45 ukucela izaphulelo/amakhredithi okufanele ukuthi kusetshenziswe;
  - Uhla oluseceleni lwempahla olufanele ilevi ye-TOMSA nalo luthunyelwa e-G45 ngenhloso eyodwa.
- **Izicelo zesikhathi Somusa, Ukukhululwa kanye Namaplahku:**
  - Ama-PMA ahambisa ahambisa uhlu lwezicelo Zesikhathi Somusa, Ukukhululwa kanye Namaplahku zalezo zinsuku ezine ngaphambi kokuhlangana Nomsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza ukuze kurekhodwe.
- **Ukuhlanganiswa phakathi Kohlelo Lokugreda kanye Nohlelo Lwezezimali:**
  - Ama-PO athunyelwa Kubahloli, abahloli okumele bahambise ama-invoyisi kuma-PO athile ezinsukwini esi-3;
  - Umyango Wezezimali wamukela imali futhi uthumele lokho ku-CQAO ukuze kuvunyelwe ngokokugcina;
  - Ukuthunyelwa kwezinto ngobuchwepheshe kwenzeka ngosuku noma ngaphambi kosuku lokugcina lokusebenza njalo ngenyanga.
- **Imibiko Yokuvakasha, Uhla Olwenziwa Emuva Kwemiklomelelo kanye Nezitifiketi Zobuchwepheshe:**
  - Imibiko Yokuvakasha kanye Nezitifiketi Zobuchwepheshe kuyakhishwa bese kuhanjiswa kumakhasimende kususwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda ngemeyili:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Imeyili ikhishwa ngokobuchwepheshe bese ihanjiswa ekhasimendeni ukulazisa maqondana ngomphumela womhlangano. Ukubhekwa kwangaphambilini okufanele kwe-PMA kukhoshiwe kumeyili. (Bheka isibonelo ngezansi).



Uyabingelwa X

Ukulandelela ukuvakasha kwakho uzohlolwa singaqinisekisa ukuthi umbiko we XX usuyatholakala ukuthi uwubheke.

Isistifiketi sokugreda sakho, izithombe se-jpeg selogo ye-TGCSA kanye nezinkanyezi zakho okuzosetshenziswa Ekumaketheni kukhona ukuthi ukuthole.

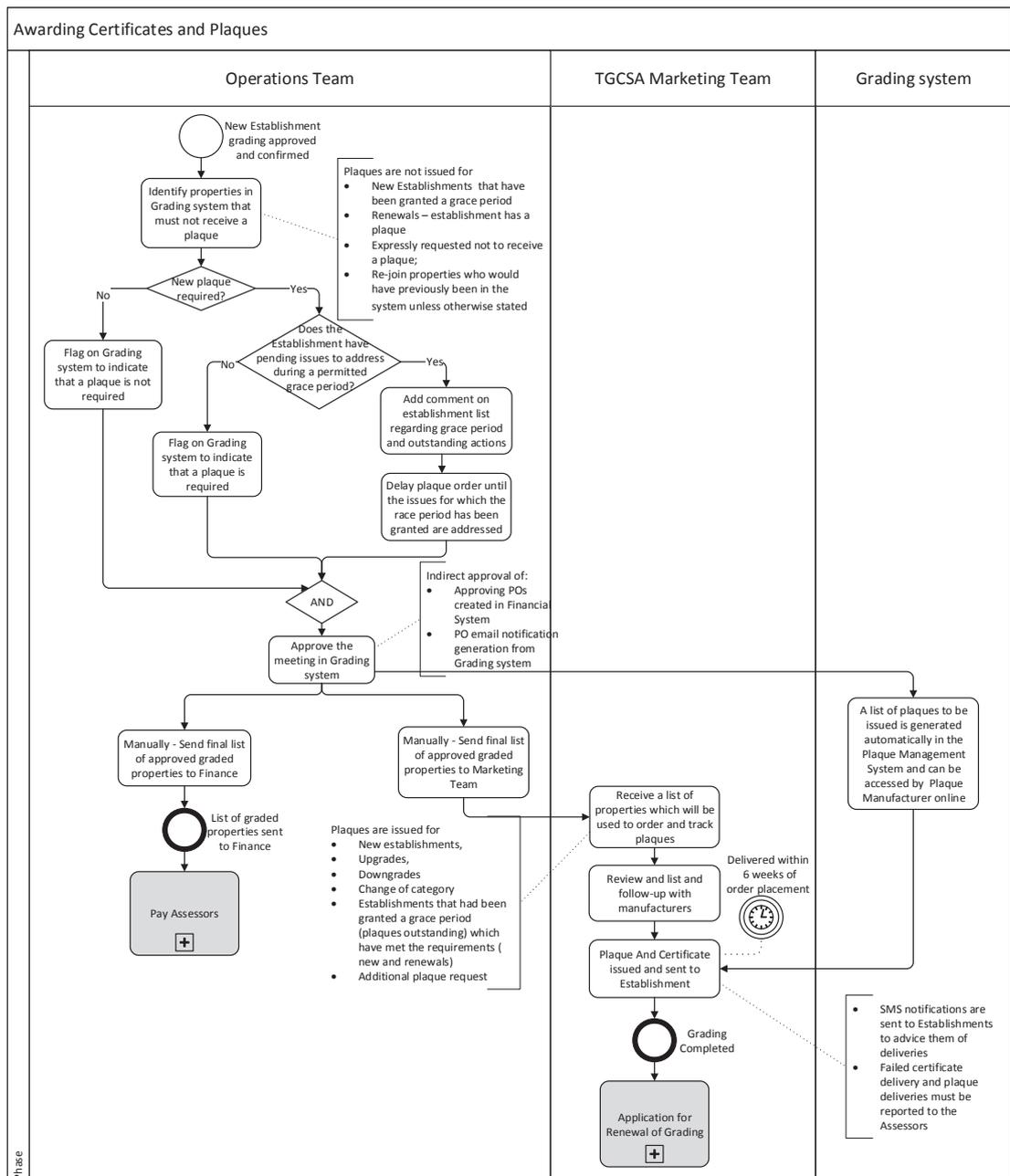
Uyacelwa ukuthi usebenzise ilinki elandelayo futhi usebenzise imininingwane yakho yokungena ukuthola umbiko:

Ilinki: <http://application.tourismgrading.co.za/asp/elecreport/elecreportlogin.asp>

I-Id Yokuhlolwa: X  
Ikhodi yokubona: X

Ozithobayo  
The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA)

4.9. Ukunikezela Ngezitifiketi kanye Namaplahku



**4.9.1. Ukunikezela Ngezitifiketi kanye Namaplahku**

- Ngokwejwayelekile, amaplahku akhishelwa:
  - Izakhiwo ezintsha ezinikwe isikhathi somusa;
  - Ukuvuselelwa - Isakhiwo sineplakhu ngohlobo olufanele;
  - Sicele ukuthola iplakhu;
  - Ukujoyina kabusha impahla ebisohlelweni ngaphambilini ngaphandle uma kushiwo ngokunye isb. ukujoyina kabusha ukukhuphula noma ukwehlisa kanye nokushintsha uhlobo;
- Ithimba Elisebenzayo lizoveza Ohlelweni Lokugreda ukuthi iplakhu ayidingakali;
- Uma iplakhu entsha idingeka kumele kuqhubeka nokubhekwa ukuqinisekisa ukuthi inga-odwa yini, futhi isinqumo kumele siqoshwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda:
  - Abezikusebenza kumele babheke ukuthi isikhungo asinazo yini izinto ezingakaqedwa ngesikhathi somusa esivunyiwe:
    - : Uma kunezikhathi somusa, esifakelwe isicelo bese savunyelwa:
      - Ithimba Lokusebenza luzofaka umbono ohlwini Lesakhiwo mayelana nesikhathi somusa kanye nezenzo ezingakaqedwa;
  - Uma kunezinto ezihambisana nokuqedwa komusa, kuzobe nokubambezeleka koku-oda amaplahku kuze kube izinkinga ezinjalo Umhloli kanye PMA babhekana nazo
  - Uma ukubheka sekuqediwe kanye nethimba Elisebenzayo kumele lithumele uhla lokugcina oluvunyelwe lwempahla evunyelwe okuhlanganisa ukunikezelwa kwamaplahku Ethimbeni Lezezimali, kanye Nethimba Lezokumaketha;
  - Uhlelo Lokugreda luthumela isaziso Kubakhiqizi Bamaplahku abakwazi ukuthola ama-oda amaplahku plakathi Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
    - Ukungenelela kwamanje kwemanuwali ohlwini Langemuva Kwemikomelo, Umkhiqizi Wamaplahku uthola uhlu Kumsizi Wezokumaketha alusebenzisa ekukhiqizeni.
  - Uhla lwempahla egrediwe oluthunyelwe Kwezezimali luzosetshenziswa ukweseka uhlelo Lokukhokhela Abahloli;
  - Uhla olufanayo Lwezakhiwo lusetshenziswa Ithimba Lokumaketha kanye Momkhiqizi Wamaplahku kuma-oda amaplahku:
    - Ithimba lokumaketha luthola uhla lwempahla ezosetshenziswa uku-oda amaplahku kanye nokubheka ama-oda eplakhu;
    - Ithimba lokumaketha lizobheka uhla kanye nokulandelela kubabambi beqhaza;
    - Amaplahku akhishelwa;
      - Izakhiwo ezintsha;
      - Ukukhuphula;
      - Ukwehlisa;
      - Ukushintsha kohlobo;
      - Izakhiwo esezinikwe isikhathi somusa (amaplahku akweletwayo) ezihambisana nezimfuneko (kusebenza esicelweni ezintsha kanye nokuvuselela);
      - Isicelo seplakhu esisha.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

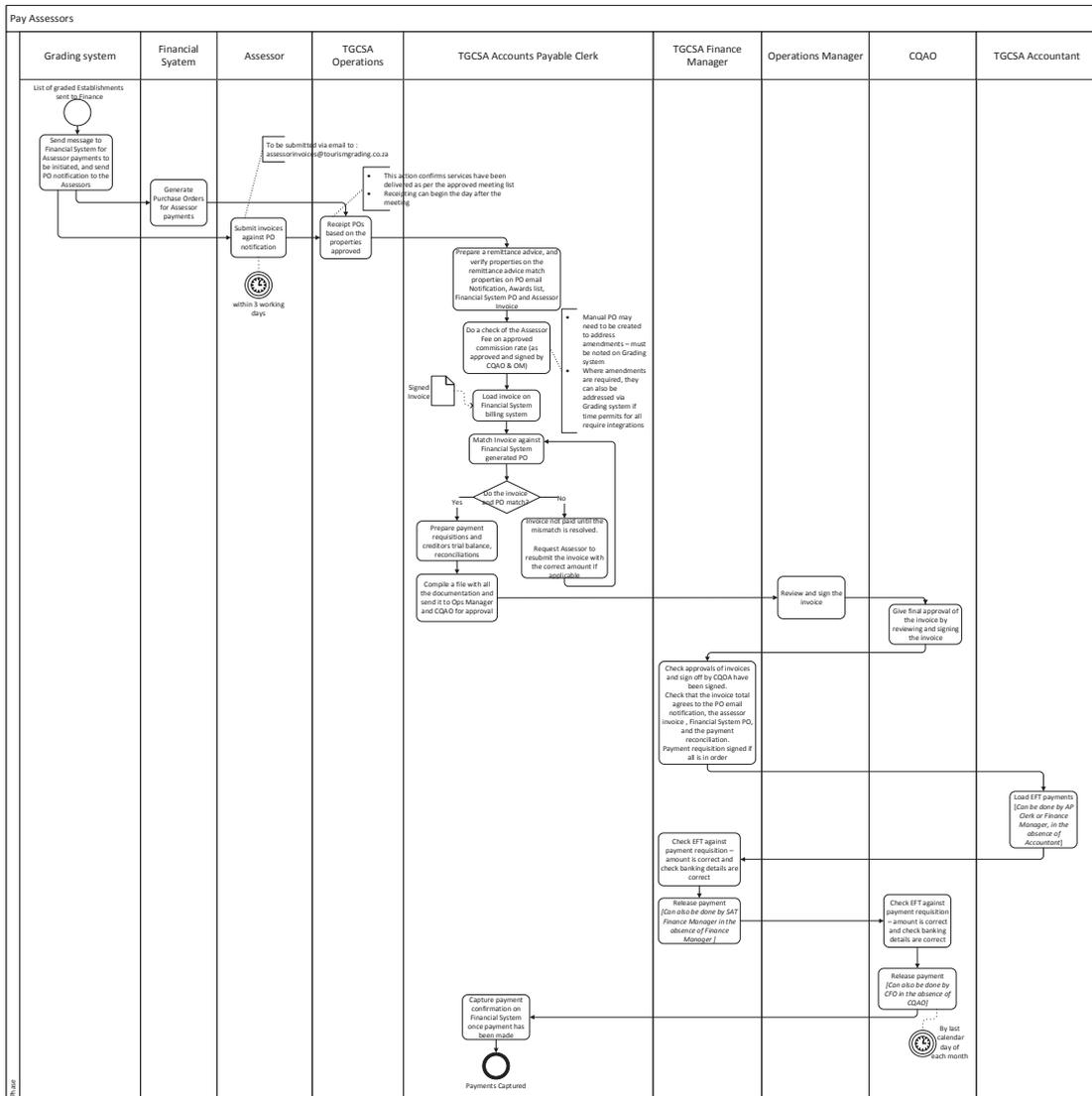
Company Confidential

- Amaplakhu kanye Nezitifiketi kukhishiwe futhi kwathunyelwa Ezakhiweni, emavikini ayi-8 Omhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla:
  - Isakhiwo sithola isaziso se-SMS ibazisa ngosuku kanye nesikhathi ukuposa okuzokwenzeka ngalo.
- Uma Ukugreda sekuqediwe, uhlelo olulindelekilw uhlelo oluhlanganisa Isakhiwo sifaka isicelo Sokuvuselelwa Kokugreda esikhatheni esiwunyaka;
- Uma noma yimaphi amaplakhu noma izitifiketi noma kungabuyiselwa Eposini, Abahloli abafanele bayaziswa.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

4.10. Ukukhokhelwa Kwabahloli



**4.10.1. Ukukhokhelwa Kwabahloli - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Emuva kokuthi umhlangano wokuvunyelwa kwempahla usuvunyelwe futhi nomyalezo wokuhlangana usuthunyelwe Ohlelweni Lwezezimali Wuhlelo Lokugreda ukuze ukukhokhelwa Komhloli kuqaliswe ngokuphakamisa Ama-oda Okuthenga. Uhlelo Lokugreda luthumela ngemeyili isaziso se-PO Kubahloli;
- *QAPHELA: NGEZICELO ZEKUCWANINGWA KWAMABHUKU (Ibhizinisi le-TGCSA lidinga ukwenza ngokushesha Uhlelo lwe-CR ukuze Uhlelo Lokugreda likhiphe ngokuzenzakalela isaziso se-PO ngemeyili ukuze kubungulwe ukukhokhelwa komhloli, njengokuba lokhu kwenziwa ngemanuwali)*
- Uhlelo Lwezezimali lukhipha Ama-oda Okuthenga okukhokhelwa Umhloli;
- Abahloli kumele bahambise ama-invoyisi aphenyule isaziso se-OP ngesikhathi sekhelenda esifanele.
- Ithimba Lokusebenza kumele lenze amarisidi Ama-oda Okuthenga:
  - Isenzo lesi siqinisekisa ukuthi amasevisi alethiwe ngokohla oluvunyelwe lomhlangano;
  - Ukwenza amarisidi kungaqala ngosuku emuva komhlangano futhi kumele kuqediwe.
- Iklekhi Lama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo lilungisa incwadi eqinisekisa ukukhokha, bese liqinisekise ukuqondaniseka kokukhokha kanye nempahla Esazisweni semeyili se-OP, uhla Lwemiklomo, Uhlelo Lwezimali lwe-OP kanye Ne-invoyisi Yomhloli;
- Iklekhi Lama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo lizobheka Imali Yomhloli ngokubheka inani lekhomishana elivumelekile njengokuba litholiwe ebhizinisini kanye nanjengokuba libheke futhi lavunyelwa bese lasayinwa Umphathi Wezokusebenza kanye ne-CQAO;
- Uhlelo lwezezimali olukhiphe ama-PO lungadinga ukwakhiwa ukuze lubhekane nezichibiyelo - ibhizinisi le-TGCSA kumele liyale Abasingathi bohlelo lokugreda ukuthi baqaphele Uhlelo Lokugreda lwama-PO akhishwe Ohlelweni Lwezezimali olungangenanga ohlelweni lokuhlangana;
- Iklekhi Lama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo kumele lufake bonke ama-invoyisi abahloli Ohlelweni Lwezezimali;
- Iklekhi Lama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo kumele liqhathanise Ama-invoyisi Nohlelo Lwezezimali olukhiphe i-PO:
  - Uma i-invoyisi kanye ne-PO kungaqhathaniseki neklekhi Lama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo akumele ikhokhelwe i-invoyisi kuze kube kuyasombululeka lokho, kodwa uma i-PO incane kune-invoyisi kungakhokhwa ngokwemali ye-PO:
    - The clerk may request the TGCSA Operations to request from the assessor to resubmit the invoice with the correct amount (if applicable). Iklekhi lingacela Ukusebenza kwe-TGCSA kumhloli ukuthi aphinde ahambise i-invoyisi enemali efanele (uma kunesidingo).
  - If the invoice and PO match the Accounts Payable Clerk must do the following: Uma i-invoyisi kanye ne-PO kufana Iklekhi Lama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo kumele lenze lokhu okulandelayo:
    - Prepare payment requisitions and creditors trial balance, reconciliations and compile a file for payment; Lilungise izidingo zokukhokha kanye ngokulungisa amabhuku ezikweletu, ukubuyisa kanye nokwenza ifayela lokukhokha;
    - Ungoti wokugcina amabhuku uzobuyekeza futhi abheke ukuthi amalungiselelo angenhla enziwe ngokufanele;

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

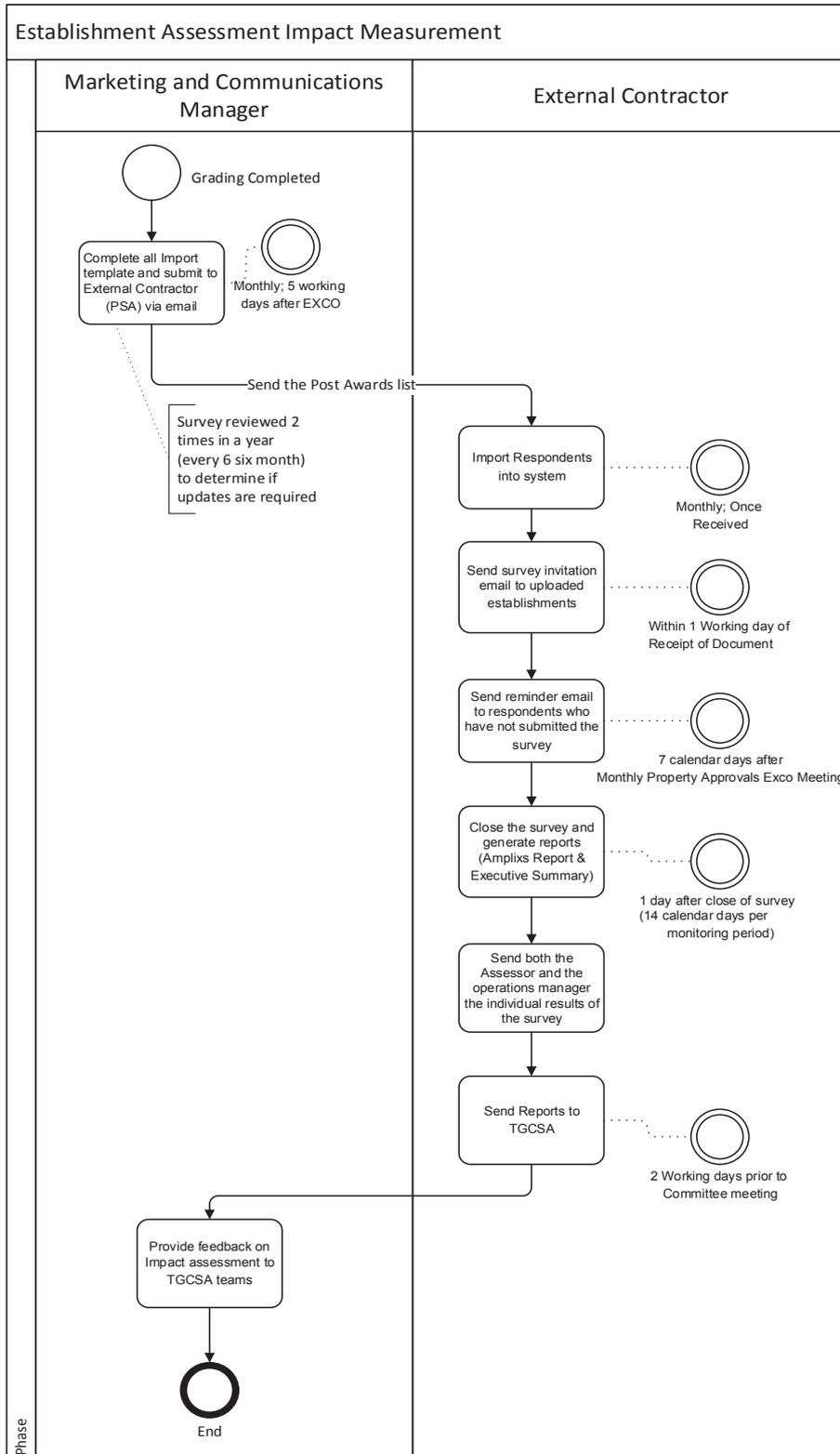
- Ifayela elinemiqulu yonke liyahanjiswa Kumphathi Wezokusebenza kanye ne-CQAO ukuze livunyelwe;
- Umphathi Wezokusebenza kumele abuyekeze futhi asayine i-invoyisi okuqinisekisa ukuthi ukubheka okulandelayo kwenziwe:
  - Inani lekhomishana Ngokosayizi wephothifoliyo Yomhloli, yinani Umhloli abize lona Ezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika;
  - Ukuthi impahla evela ku-invoyisi Yomhloli ivela ohlwini lemiklomelo evunyiwe yikomidi;
  - I-akhawunti yephothifoliyo Yomhloli ifanele futhi iyiqiniso Yomhloli ngamunye njengokuba kuvela ohlwini olusayiniwe oluhanjiswa Egatsheni Lezezimali (Lisayinwe yi-CQAO kanye ne-TGCSA OM) eliveza izinombolo ekuphileni kwenyanga nenyanga okusetshenziswa ukunquma inani lekhomishana.
  - Uhla olusayiniwe lwahanjiswa lufanele futhi luyiqiniso futhi lolo hla luyavumelana nezinombolo ezivela ohlelweni lokugreda;
  - Ukuthi izinombolo zephothifoliyo zomhloli esisohlelweni lokugreda ziyiqiniso, zifanele ngokuphela kwenyanga ngayinye futhi uyayivuma incazelo yebhizinisi elihlinzeke eyenza izinombolo zephothifoliyo Yomhloli.
- I-CQOA inika ukuvumela kokugcina kwe-invoyisi ngokuthola kanye nokusayina i-invoyisi;
- Umcwaningi mabhuku Kkumele afake imalo yenkokhelo ngohlelo lwe-EFT:
  - Lokhu kungenziwa Iklekhi le-AP uma engekho Umcwaningi mabhuku we-TGCSA.
- Umphathi Wezezimali we-TGCSA kumele abheke umqulu wokukhokha ngendlela elandelayo:
  - Bheka ukuthi i-invoyisi isiyonke iyahambisana nombiko wemeyili we-OP, i-invoyisi Yomhlelo, Uhlelo Lwezezimali lwe-PO, kanye nokubuyisana nokukhokha.
- . Uma okungenhla kwenziwe Umphathi Wezezimali we-TGCSA kumele asayine umyalelo wokukhokha.
- Umphathi Wezezimali we-TGCSA kumele abheke i-EFT eyiqhathanisa nomyalelo wokukhokha - ukubheka ukuthi imali iyiyi yini kanye nokubheka ukuthi imininingwane yasebhangwe iyafana neku-invoyisi Yomhloli:
  - Uma iphuzu elingenhla IIAHLE Umphathi Wezezimali ku-TGCSA engakhipha izimali ngokukhipha kokuqala (uma engekho Umphathi Wezezimali we-TGCSA, Umphathi Wezezimali we-SAT engenza ukukhipha kokuqala) bese kuthi ukukhipha kwesibili kwe-CFO kanye ekungabini bikho kwe-CFO kwenziwa yi-CQAO.
  - I-CFO (CQAO) kumele iphinde ibheke i-EFT eyiqhathanisa nomyalelo wokukhokha ukuqinisekisa ukuthi imali ifanele futhi nemininingwane yebhange ifanele, ngaphambi kokukhipha imali ekhokhayo.
    - Uma yonke into ilungile i-CFO (CQAO) kumele ihlinzeke ukuvumela kwesibili ukukhipha imali yokukhokhela;
    - Lokhu kumele kwenziwe ngosuku lokugcina ngenyanga ngayinye.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Iklekhi Yama-akhawunti Akhokhelekayo kumele lifake isiqinisekiso sokukhokha Ohlelweni Lwezezimali uma imali isikhokhiwe futhi i-POP isiphrintiwe futhi futhi yafakwa nomyalelo wokukhokhelwa.

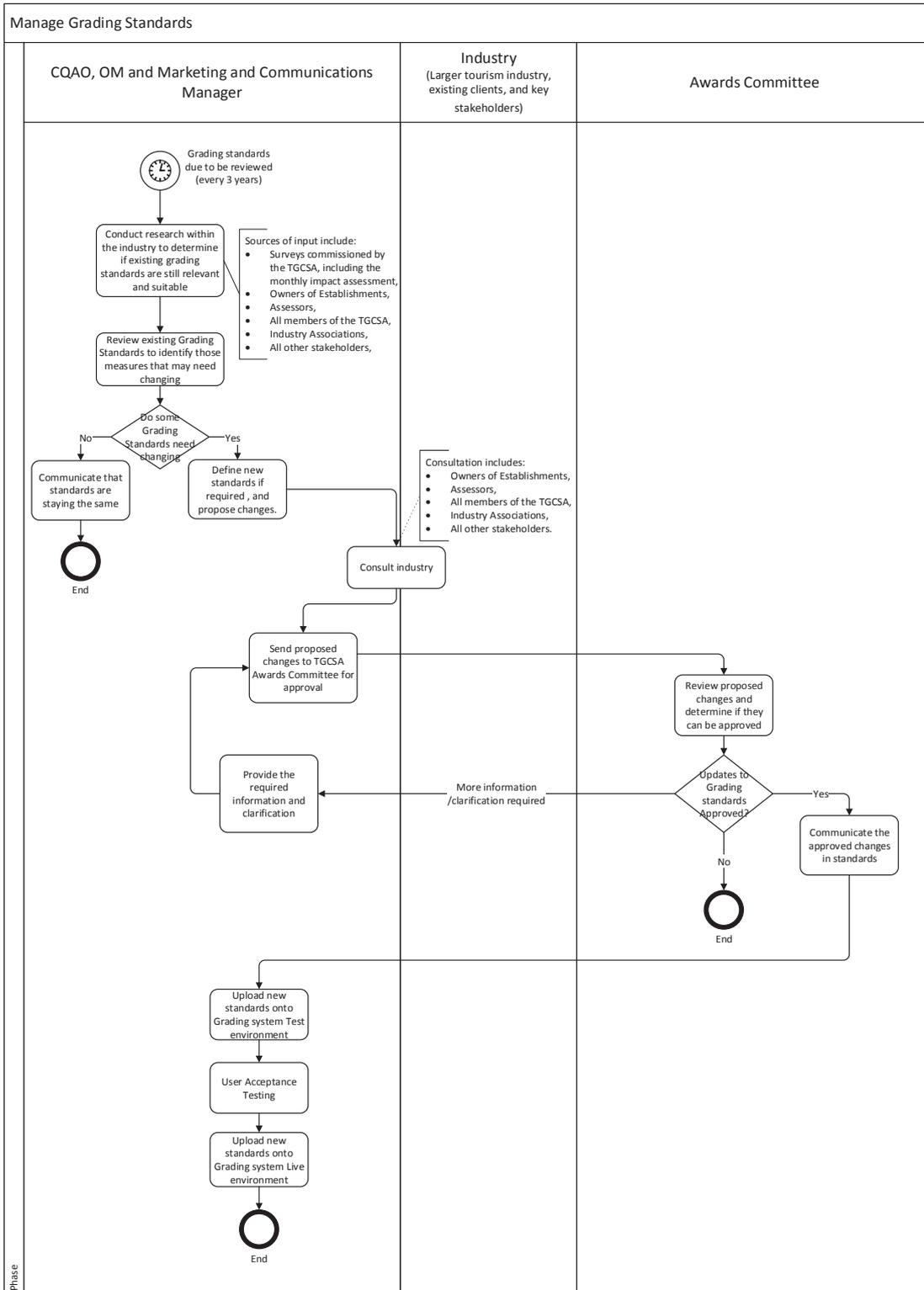
4.11. Ukukalwa Komthelela Wokuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo



**4.11.1. Ukukalwa Komthelela Wokuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Ukukalwa Komthelela Wokuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo kwenziwa njalo ngenyanga emuva kokuthi kuqedwe ukugredwa:
  - Okuqokethwe kanye nohlaka kocwaningo kumele kubuyekwe ezinyangeni eziyi-6 futhi zishintshiwe uma kunesidingo.
- Ithimba lokusebenza kumele lithumele uhla Lwamva Kwemiklomo Kusonkontileka Wangaphandle ukuthi aqale ucwaningo;
- Isonkontileka Wangaphandle uzofaka abaphenduli bangaphandle ohlelweni lwakhe;
- Usonkontileka Wangaphandle uzothumela amameyili amemela uzwaningo esakhiwe asuka ohlwini oluthathwe ngaphandle osukwini olu-1 lokusebenza lokuthola ithempulathi ethathwe ngaphandle;
- Usonkontileka Wangaphandle uzothumela amameyili akhumbuza abaphenduli abangakahambisi ocwaningweni ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda emuva kokuthi amameyili okumema ethunyelwe;
- Usonkontileka Wangaphandle uzovala ucwaningo bese ekhipha imibiko (Umbiko kanye Nokufingwa) emuva kosuku olu-1 kuvalwe ucwaningo (ezinsukwini eziyi-14 emuva Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla We-EXCO odlulile);
- Usonkontileka Wangaphandle uzothumelela Umhloli kanye nomphathi Wezokusebenza imiphumela yocwaningo;
- Usonkontileka Wangaphandle uzothumela imibiko ku-TGCSA ezinsukwini ezi-2 ngaphambi Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla We-EXCO;
- Umphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana uzohlinzeka impendulo ngomthelela wokuhlolwa emathimbeni e-TGCSA.

4.12. Ukuphatha Amazinga Okugreda



**4.12.1. Ukuphatha Amazinga Okugreda - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Amazinga okugreda ayabuyekwezwa njalo eminyakeni emi-3;
- I-CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana uzoqala uhlelo ngokwenza ucwaningo phakathi embonini ukunquma ukuthi amazinga okugreda akhona asafanele yini. Imithombo ihlanganisa:
  - Ucwangingo olukhomishinwe yi-TGCSA, okuhlanganisa umthelela wanyanga zonke wokuhlolwa;
  - Abanikazi Bezakhiwo;
  - Abahloli;
  - Onke amalunga e-TGCSA;
  - Ososeshini Bemboni;
  - Nabo bonke ababambe iqhaza.
- I-CQAO, Umphathi Wezokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana kanye nethimba le-TGCSA lizobheka Amazinga Okugreda akhona ukubona lezo zindlela ezingadinga ukushintshwa;
- Uma engekho amazinga adinga ukushintshwa, bazoxhumana nababambe iqhaza kanye nemboni ukuthi amazinga azohlala enjalo;
- Uma kukhona amazinga adinga ukushintshwa, azochaza amazinga amasha uma kunesidingo bese become ukuthi kube noshintsho emazingeni akhona;
- I-CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana bazoxoxisana nemboni bese bebhaka imibono yemboni:
  - Abanikazi Bezakhiwo;
  - Abahloli;
  - Onke amalunga e-TGCSA;
  - Ososeshini Bemboni;
  - Nabo bonke ababambe iqhaza.
- I-CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana bazothumela ushintsho olunconyiwe Ekomidaneni Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi ukuthi livume;
- Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi libheka izincomo zokushintsha ezenziwa bese linquma ukuthi ngabe bayaluvumela yini:
  - Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi ludinga ulwazi kanye nokucaciselwa ngolwazi:
    - I-CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana bazohlinzeka ngolwazi oludingekayo kanye nokucacisa, bathumele futhi ushintsho ukuthi Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi livumele.
  - Uma Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi lingavumeli ushintsho, lokho kusho ukuthi amazinga ngeke ashintshwe:
    - I-CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana Baxhumana nababambe iqhaza kanye nemboni besho ukuthi amazinga awashintshi.

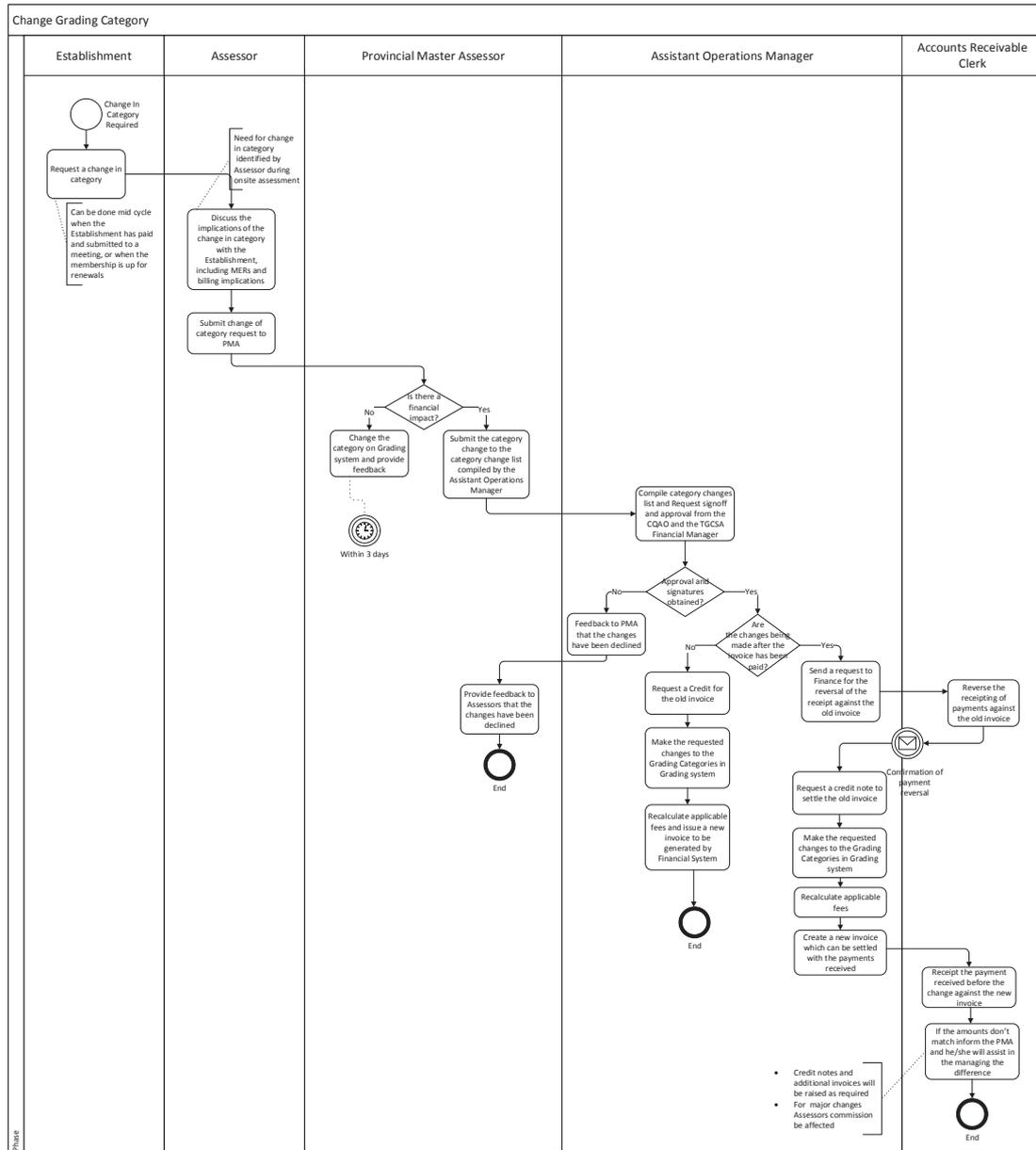
---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Uma ushintsho luvunyelwe Ikomidana Eliqinisekisa Ikhwalithi, -CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana baxoxisana ngoshintsho oluvunyelwe lwamazinga nembali:
  - I-CQAO, Umphathi Wokusebenza kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana bazobheka lezi zinto ezilandelayo:
    - I-TGCSA izofaka amazinga amasha endaweni Yokuhlolwa Kohlelo Lokugreda;
    - I-TGCSA izokwenza Ukuhlolwa Kokwamukela Kwabasebenzisi endaweni YoKUHLOLWA Kohlelo Lokuhlolwa Lokugreda;
    - I-TGCSA izofaka amazinga amasha endaweni Yohlelo Lokugreda.

4.13. Ukushintshwa Kohlobo Lokugreda



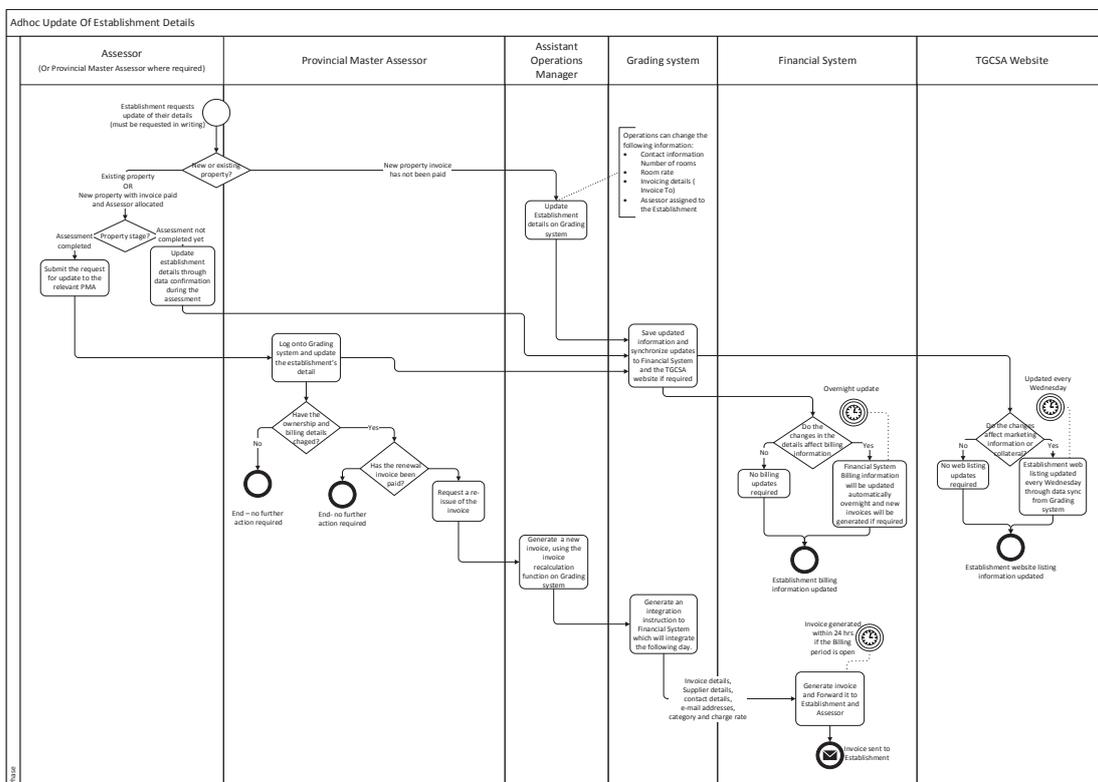
**4.13.1. Ukushintshwa Kohlobo Lokugreda - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Izakhiwo zigredwa ngohlobo oluthile kanti ukushintsha kohlobo kwenziwa kuphela ngokubalwa kabusha kwe-invoyisi ngesikhathi i-invoyisi ingakakhokhelwa. Ukubalwa kabusha kwenziwa yi-TGCSA OM kanye ne-TGCSA OM;
- Ukushintshwa kohlobo kungenziwa uma ubulunga buzovuselelwa, kodwa lolu shintsho kumele lwenziwe ithimba lama-Op ngaphambi kokuthi i-invoyisi evuselelayo iphuma enyangeni ezinsukwini ezingama-90 ngaphambi kosuku lokuphela kwesikhathi;
- Lapho ukukhokha sekwenzelwe irisidi kanye nokushintshwa kohlobo sekuceliwe, ilapho impahla ibonwa njengesekela elincane, ukuthi ikwazi ukuthi yenze lolu shintsho oluchazwa yisicelo esicela ushintsho lohlobo kumele sihanjise Yithimba Lokusebenza ku-CQAO kanye ne-CFO ukuze sivunyelwe njengoba imali engenayo izothinteka wushintsho. Lolu hlelo okwamanje isicelo senziwa ngemanuwali, i-G45 kanye Nethimba Lokusebenza bamatasa nohlobo lohlelo oluzenzekalayo olugcwele;
  - Futhi lapho impahla ihanjise Emhlanganweni wanyanga zonke wokuvunyelwa kwempahla, uhlelo olufanayo kumele lulandelwe isb. incazelo yesicelo soshintsho lohlobo kumele ihanjise ukuze ivunyelwe njengokuba imali engenayo izothinteka ngalolu shintsho.
- Umhloli uzodingida imiphumela yokushintshwa kohlobo Nesakhiwo okuhlenganisa i-MER kanye nokukhokha:
  - Isidingo soshintsho sijwayele ukubonwa ngesikhathi sokuhlola indawo;
  - Umhloli kumele aphakamisa ushintsho lohlobo uma ebona ukuthi sikhona isidingo soshintsho lohlobo.
- Umhloli uzokwaziswa i-PMA yakhe ngesidingo soshintsho bese ehambisa isicelo soshintsho lohlobo ngokubhalela i-PMA;
- Uma kungekho izimali ezidingekayo, i-PMA izoshintsha uhlobo bese ihlinzeka ngempendulo ezinsukwini ezi-3 zekhalenda emuva kokuthola isicelo emuva kokuthola imvume ku-CQAO kanye ne-CFO;
- Uma kukhona imali ekhokhwayo oshintshweni olucelwayo luzofakwa ohlwini loshintsho olwenziwe Umsizi Wokuphathwa Kokusebenza noma Umphathi Wokusebenza futhi ushintsho oluvunyelwe yi-CQAO kanye ne-CFO ngaphambi kokuthi kwenziwe;
- Uma ukuvunyelwa kanye nokusayina okudingekayo kungatholwanga Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza uhlinzeka impendulo ku-PMA ukuthi ushintsho lunqatshiwe:
  - Ama-PMA azothumela impendulo Kubahloli ukuthi ushintsho lunqatshiwe.
- Uma izimvume kanye nokusayina okudingekayo kutholiwe, ushintsho lungenziwa ngale ndlela elandelayo:
  - Uma ushintsho lwenziwe ngaphambi kokuthi kukhokhelwe i-invoyisi ingakhokhelwa (imvume ayidingeki):
    - Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza uzoshintsha uhlobo oluceliwe aphinde abale kabusha ukuskrinwa kokuhlolwa/ ukuskrinwa kwemali Yohlelo Lokugreda, emuva kwalokho

isikweletu sokukhokhela isikweletu esidala kuzokhishwa ngokuzenzakalela ekhlanganiseni Kohlelo Lokugreda & Nohlelo Lwezezimali ngosuku olulodwa;

- o Uma ushintsho lwenziwe emuva kokukhokhwa kwe-invoyisi (imvume iyadingeka njengangenhla):
  - Ithimba Lezokusebenza kumele lithole imvume Ngokwezikhulu Eziphezulu;
  - Lapho imvume itholakele yokushintshwa kohlobo lapho kungekho imali edingakalayo, i-akhawunti yerevenyu kuphela engelona iqiniso (irevenyu izokwabiwa ku-akhawunti Yerevenyu engelona iqiniso). NB: Lolu hlelo lusabhekisiswa.

4.14. Ukubuyekwezwa kwe-Adhoc Yemininingwane Yesakhiwo

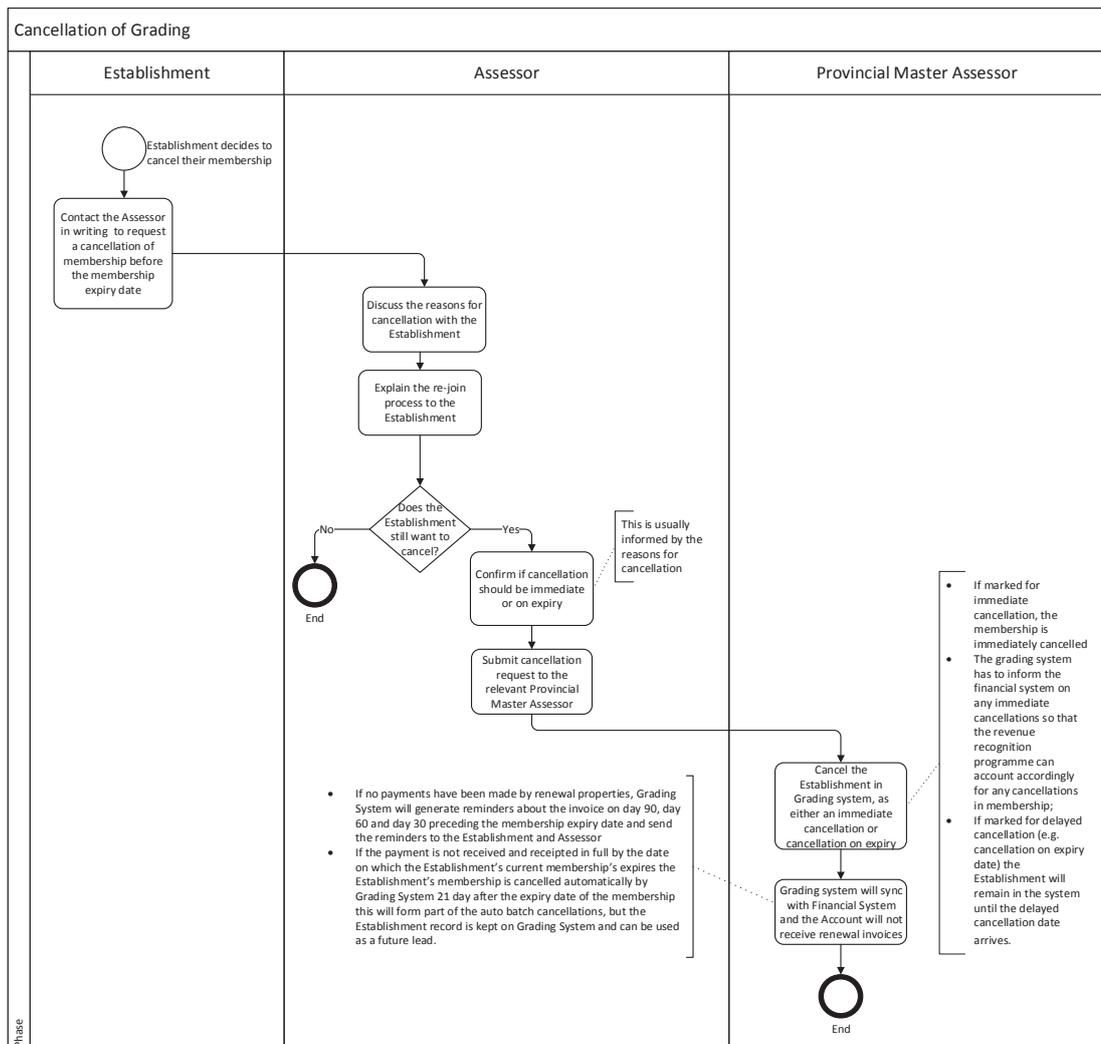


**4.14.1. Ukubuyekwezwa kwe-Adhoc Yemininingwane Yesakhiwo - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Isakhiwo singacela imininingwane yokubuyekwezwa nganoma yisiphi isikhathi:
  - Kumele kube yisicelo esibhaliwe.
- Uma Isakhiwo siyimpahla evela ikhona noma impahla entsha i-invoyisi yakhona esikhokhiwe futhi Umhloli esenikeliwe, ushintsho lungenziwe Umhloli ophethe Isakhiwo ngokuqinisekisa ngolwazi ngesikhathi sokuhlola (i-PMA ingenza ushintsho uma kunesidingo):
  - Umhloli (noma i-PMA) kumele afake Ohlelweni Lokugreda kanye nokubuyekwezwa kwemininingwane Yesakhiwo;
  - Ngazo zonke izikhathi (ngaphambi nangemuva kokuhlola), i-PMA ingenza ushintsho Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
  - Uma ushintsho oluhambisana nobunini, kanye ne-invoyisi yokwenziwa kabusha ingakakhokhwa, i-PMA kumele icele ukukhishwa kabusha kwe-invoyisi yokwenziwa kabusha Kumsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza emininigwaneni yokuxhumana emisha yabanikazi/yabaphathi besakhiwo:
    - Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza noma Umphathi Wezokusebenza uzokhipha i-invoyisi entsha, esebenzisa ukubalwa kabusha kwe-invoyisi Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
    - Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhipha isihlanganisi okuya Ohlelweni Lwezezimali oluzohlanganisa ngosuku olulandelayo;
    - Uhlelo Lwezezimali luzokhipha i-invoyisi entsha bese luyihambisa Esakhiweni kanye Nakumhloli.
  - Uma kuwushintsho oluhambisana nokushintshwa kobunini, kanti futhi ne-invoyisi yokuvuselela seyikhokhelwe, asikho isidingo sokuphinde kukhishwe i-invoyisi. Ubulunga obukhona kumele buze buphelelewe yisikhathi, ekuvuselelweni kwama-invoyisi amasha kuzophakanyiswa nemininigwane yokuxhumana emisha yabanikazi/abaphathi abasha besakhiwo.
  - Uma ushintsho kungolwempahla entsha kanye ne-invoyisi ingakakhokhwa, Umsizi Wezokusebenza noma Umphathi Wezokusebenza uzokwazi ukubuyekwezwa imininingwane elandelayo Yesakhiwo:
    - Imininingwane yokuxhumana;
    - Inombolo yamagumbi;
    - Libiza malini igumbi ngalinye;
    - Imininingwane ye-invoyisi (i-invoyisi Iya);
    - Umhleli onikelwe Isakhiwo isb. Ukusula Komhloli.
  - Umphathi Wezokusebenza noma Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza engacela i-invoyisi entsha, ezokhishwa Ohlelweni Lwezezimali.
- Uma ushintsho selwenziwe Uhlelo Lokugreda luzocina ulwazi olushintshiwe bese lushintsha Ohlelweni Lwezezimali kanye Nakuwebhusayithi ngesikhathi ukufakwa kolwazi kudatabhesi kufuneka:
  - Uma ukushintsha kwemininingwane kuthinta imininingwane yokukhokha Uhlelo Lwezezimali luzoshintsha imininingwane ngokuzenzakalela ngobusuku obubodwa nenombolo ye-invoyisi ehlanganisiwe;

- o Uma ushintsho lithinta imininingwane yokumaketha noma ukuhlangana uhla Lwesakhiwo ku-webhu luyashintshwa njalo ngolwesithathu ngokushintshwa kobuchwepheshe Kohlelo Lokugreda.

4.15. Ukukhanselwa Kobulunga



4.15.1. Ukukhanselwa Kobulunga -Ukuchazwa Kobulunga

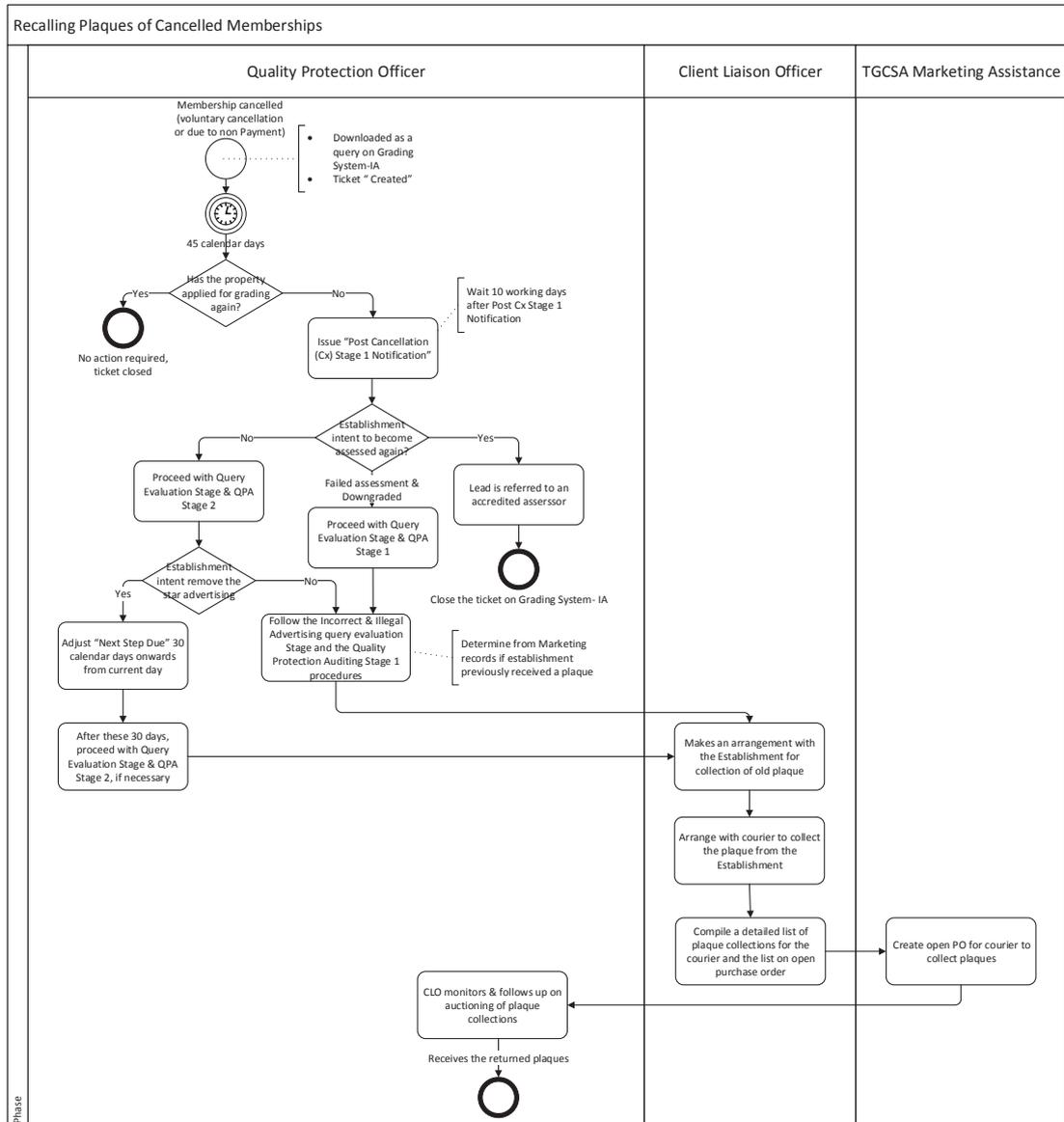
- Uma isakhiwo siquma ukukhansela ubulunga baso, kumele sithinte Umhloli ukucela ukuthi kukhanselwe ubulunga ngokubhala ngaphambi kokuphelelwa yisikhathi kobulunga obukhona;
- Umhloli kumele adingide izizathu zokukhansela ubulunga Nesakhiwo;
- Umhloli kumele aphinde achazele isakhiwo ngohlelo lokuphinda sijoyine;
- Uma Isakhiwo sisafuna ukuqeda ubulunga, Umhlolu kumele aqinisekise ukukhansela ngokushesha noma ekuphelelweni yisikhathi:
- o Lokhu kuzokwenziwa emuva kwezizathu zokukhansela.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- I-PMA izohambisa uhla lokukhansela Kumphathi Wezokusebenza noma Umsizi Wakhe uzokwethula emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wempahla we-EXCO nezizathu zokukhansela:
  - Uma ukuhambisa sekusayiniwe Umphathi Wezokusebenza & i-CQAO ukuthi kukhanselwe ngosuku lokugcina lomhlangano Wanyanga zonke wempahla we-EXCO, uhla lungathunyelwa e-G45 ukuze kukhanselwe ekugcineni;
- I-PMA izokhansela Isakhawo Ohlelweni Lokugreda, ngokushesha noma ekuphelelweni yisikhathi:
  - Uma kukhanselwe ngokushesha, ubulunga bukhanselwe ngokushesha;
  - Uhlelo lokugreda kumele lazise uhlelo lwezezimali ngokukhanselwa ngokushesha ukuze uhlelo lwerevenyu luzosebenza ngokufanele ekukhanselweni kobulunga;
  - Uma kumakwe ukuthi kuzodileywa ukukhanselwa (isb. kukhanselwa ngosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi) Isakhiwo sizogcina ohlelweni kuze kube usuku lokukhansela luyafika.
- Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokwabela Uhlelo Lwezezimali kanti Isakhiwo ngeke sithole ukuvuselelwa kwama-invoyisi;
- Ayikho imali ekhokhiwe yimpahla evuselelwayo, Uhlelo Lokugreda luzokhipha izikhumbuzo ngama-invoyisi ngosuku lwama-60 kanye nosuku lwama-30 ngaphambi kokuphelelwa yisikhathi kwama-invoyisi futhi luzothumela izikhumbuzo Esakhiweni kante Nakumhloli;
- Uma kungakhokhwa futhi ingekho irisidi yokukhokha ngokugcwele (ngokwaphulelwa uma kufanele) ngosuku ubulunga Besakhiwo obuphelelwa yisikhathi ngalo lokhu okulandelayo kuzokwenzeka:
  - Ubulunga Besakhiwo buzokhanselwa ngokuzenzakalela Uhlelo Lokugreda ezinsukwini ezingama-21 emuva kokuphelelwa yisikhathi sobulunga lokhu kuzobe yingxenywe yokukhanselwa ngokuzenzakalela, kodwa irekhodi Lesakhiwo lizogcinwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda futhi lingasetshenziswa njengesibonelo.

4.16. Ukubuyezwa Kwamaplahku kanye Nobulunga Obukhanseliwe



4.16.1. Ukubuyezwa Kwamaplahku kanye Nobulunga Obukhanseliwe - Incazelo Ngamagama

- Uma ukukhanselwa kobulunga Ohlelweni Lokugreda kutholiwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda - IA “Uhla Lwezinto Ezisazokwenziwa” njengokuba umbuzo/ithikithi “okwenziwe”;
- Kulesi sigaba ithikithi elisesigabeni 0 Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA;
- Ezinsukwini ezingama-45 kusuka ngosuku lokukhanselwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda i-QPO ibheka ukuthi Isakhiwo siqedile yini ukuthi ukufaka isicelo ku-intanethi ukuze sigredwe:

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Uma kunesicelo esenziwe ku-intanethi (isimo sokuba yilunga “Hleli”) emuva kokuthi kukhanseliwe, akukho okunye okumele kwenziwe futhi i-QPO ivala ithikithi Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA;
- Uma singafakwanga isicelo ku-intanrthi emuva kokukhanselwa, i-QPO izokhipha Imeyili Yesaziso esisemuva kokukhanselwa (Cx) Isigaba 1:
  - Uma Isakhiwo siphendule i-QPO ngenhloso yokuphinda sihlolwe futhi, ukugreda kudlulisalwa kumhloli ofanele, ngokwezincwadi Zomsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza we-TGCSA noma Umhloli Ophezulu Esifundazweni kanye ne-QPO bavala ithikithi;
  - Uma isakhiwo siphendule ku-QPO ngesizathi sokususa ukukhangiswa kwezinkanyezi zonke i-QPO ikhuluma Nesakhiwo ngokufanele bese kulungiswa “Isinyathelo Esilandelayo” Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA kuya ezinsukwini ezingama-30 kusukela kulolo suku;
    - Emuva kwezinsuku ezishiwo ngenhla zekhalenda i-QPO izoqhubeka Nezinga Lokuhlolwa Kwemibuzo kanye Nesigaba se-QPA 2, uma kunokuvezwa okungekho emthethweni kwezinkanyezi kungabonwa.
  - Uma Isakhiwo singaphenduli sdalo ezinsukwini eziyishumi zokusebenza ezingeni 1 Lengemuva lokukhansel Isaziso Semeyili se-QPO sizoqhubeka nale nqubo:
    - Izinga Lokubhekwa Kwemibuzo Yokukhangisa okungelona iqiniso futhi okungekho emthethweni njengokuba kushiwo endimeni 4.18;
    - Izinga lesi-2 Ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku Ukuvikela Ikhwalithi njengokuba kushiwo endimeni 4.19.
  - Uma iplakhu ingakhishwanga noma inganqunywanga ngokuqiniseka leyo plakhu yatholwa yisakhiwo, akukho okunye okumele kwenziwe futhi ithikithi livaliwe.
- Ukukhansela ngenxa yokuhlola “okungaphumelelanga (Uhlobo lomthembo “Uhla Lwemiklomo: Aluphumelelanga”), kanye nokwehlisa, i-QPO izolandela inqubo egcwele ukukhipha incwadi eya Esakhiweni, ngokuqala ngale nqubo:
  - Izinga Lokubhekwa Kwemibuzo Yokukhangisa okungelona iqiniso futhi okungekho emthethweni njengokuba kushiwo endimeni 4.17
  - Izinga lesi-2 Ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku Ukuvikela Ikhwalithi njengokuba kushiwo endimeni 4.18.
    - Lapha i-QPO noma i-CLO kumele banqume ngokwamrekhodi Ezokumaketha e-TGCSA ukuthi isakhiwo ngabe sasithola ngempela yini iplakhu, ngaphambili i-CLO ingathinta isakhiwo ukulungiselela Ukubuyiswa kwe-plakhu;
    - Uma kungatholakali ngokuqinisekisa ukuthi isakhiwo siyitholile iplakhu yokugreda ngaphambilini, i-CLO ayikwazi ukuthinta sona ukwenza amalungiselelo okubuyisela iplakhu.
- Uma iplakhu yakhishwa ngokweqiniso ngaphambilini futhi isakhiwo asifaki esicelo futhi ukuthi sihlolwe, i-CLO Ethimbeni Lokumaketha kumele ithinte Isakhiwo, ukwenza izinhlelo zokulanda iplakhu emdala:
  - I-CLO iziphinda ihlelele ukuthi EZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU AFRIKA ziqoke ozolanda iplakhu Esakhiweni:

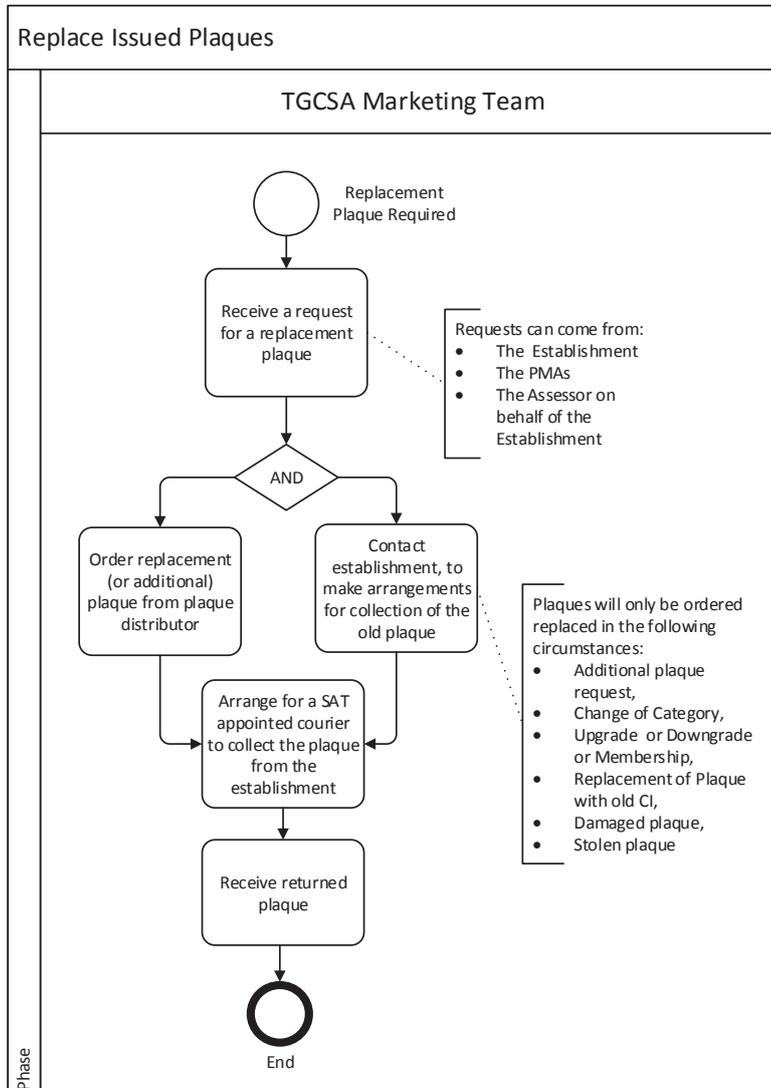
---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Uhla lwamaplahku okumele alandwe ethunyelwe ngekhoriya futhi akhokhelwa Ngokwe-oda Elivulelekile elakhiwe Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA.
  - I-CLO ilandelela iphinde ibheke ukulandwa kwamaplahku ngokohla Lwamaplahku okumele alandwe.
- Uhlelo luphela lapho i-CLO noma i-QPO ithola iplakhu ebuyisiwe. Iplakhu ebuyisiwe ikhiyelwa ekhabetheni futhi ukhiye wekhabethe ugcinwa yi-QPO.
- KODWA uma Iplakhu yaku-intanethi kanye Nohlelo Lokuphathwa Kwesitifiketi kusetshenziswa ngokugcwele “Icala” “Lokutholwa Kweplakhu” kuzophakanyiswa Ohlelweni Lokugreda, ngokufaka ngokuzenzakalela “icala” Kuplahku eku-intanethi kanye Nohlelo Lokuphathwa Kwesitifiketi ukuthi umhlinzeki wezinsiza weplakhu ukwenza:

4.17. Ukushintshwa Kwamaplakhu Akhishiwe



4.17.1. Ukushintshwa Kwamaplakhasi Akhishiwe - Ukuchazwa Ngokwamagama

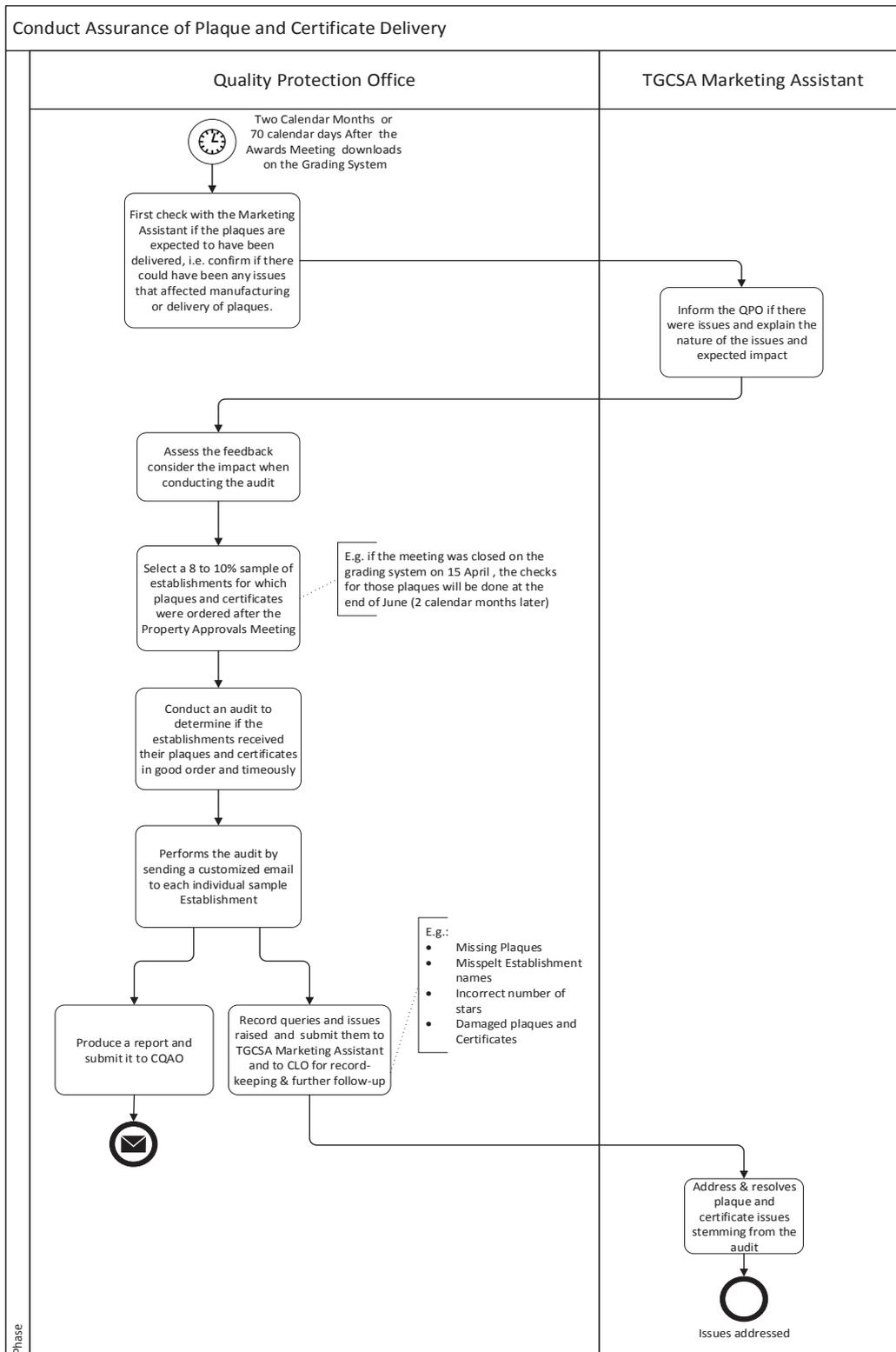
- Ithimba Lezokumaketha LeTGCSA lizothola isicelo sokushintshwa kweplakha:
  - Isicelo singasuka:
    - Esakhiweni;
    - Kuma-PMA;
    - Umhlole emele Isakhiwo.
- Ithimba Lezokumaketha le-TGCSA lizothinta Isakhiwo, ukwenza izinhlelo zokulandwa kweplakhasi elidala (ngaphandle uma lintshontshiwe):
  - Iplakhasi lizo-odwa noma lishintshwe ezimweni ezilandelayo:

- Isakhiwo sicele iplakhu eyengeziwe uma benendawo yokungena engaphezu kweyodwa;
- Ukushintsha Uhlobo;
- Ukukhuphula noma Ukwehlisa ubulunga;
- Iplakhasi elintshontshiwe;
- Iplakasi elifile;
- Ukushintshwa kweplakhasi nge-CI emdala.
- Ithimba Lezokumaketha le-TGCSA lizohlelelaikhoriya eqokiwe ye-TGCSA ukuthi ilanda iplakhasi.
- Ngesikhathi ezifanayo Ithimba Lezokumaketha le-TGCSA lizo-oda iplakhasi etsha (eyengeziwe) kubenzi bamaplakhasi;
- Ithimba Lezokumaketha le-TGCSA lizothatha iplakhasi elibuyisiwe.

#### 4.17.2. Ukulawulwa kwangaphakathi kanye nokuphathwa kwamaplakhu abuyisiwe

- I-MA, CLO kanye ne-QPO kungathola amaplakhu abuyisiwe ngezizathu ezahlukene ngokwemisebenzi yezikhundla;
- Amaplakhu engabuyiswa kuphela ku-TGCSA empahleni eyizindawo zokuhlala njengesinqumo sokugcina ku-SOP, ngenxa yobuncane bendawo yokubeka ezakhiweni Zezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika;
- Amaplakhu kumele abuyiselwe nganoma yiziphi izizathu azothathwa futhi asetshenziswe futhi abakhiqizi bamaplakhu abaqokwe yi-TGCSA;
- Amaplakhu atholwe emagcekeni Ezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika, kunerejista yeplakhu ebhalisiwe, egcinwe ngaphansi “KOKUMAKETHA” kufolda ye-TGCSA ye G-drive, lapho igama lezinombolo kanye/noma impahla okumaqondana neplakhu ebuyisiwe erekhodwe khona;
- Iplakhu ebuyisiwe ibese igcinwe egumbini lokugcina izinto Kwezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika noma ikhiyelwa ekhabethehi ehhovisi le-TGCSA, kuzoncika ekutheni indawo ikhona kuphi
  - Indawo yokubeka (igumbi lokubeka izinto elingaphansi noma ikhabethe lasehhovisi le-TGCSA) nayo irekhodiwe kurejista yeplakhu ephakathi nendawo, wshiwo ngenhla
- Umphathi: Ukuphathwa Kwezokuvakasha eNingizimu Afrika kugcina izikhiye zegumbi eliphansi lokugcina izinto;
- I-QPO igcina izikhiye zekhabethe lamaplakhu abuyisiwe emahhovisi e-TGCSA.
- Amaplakhu aseginwe iminyaka emibili noma ngaphezulu kusukela ngoNtulikazi ka-2016 kuya phambili azosetshenziswa futhi, ngemvume kanye nokusayina kwe-CQAO.

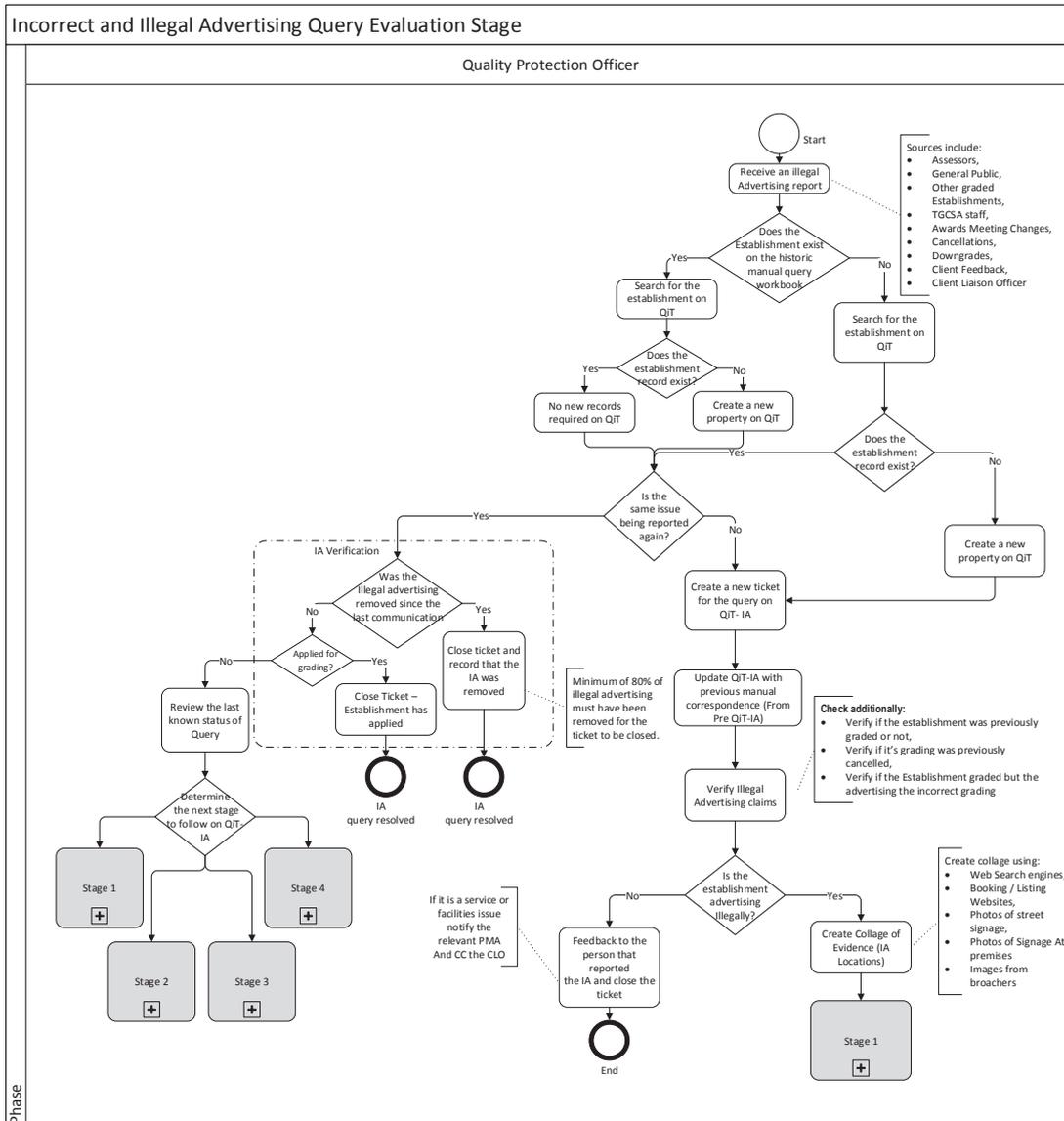
4.18. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuphathwa kanye Nokudiliviwa Kwezitifiketi



#### 4.18.1. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuphathwa kanye Nokudiliviwa Kwezitifiketi - Ukuchazwa Ngokubhala

- I-QPO kumele yenze ukucwaninga amabhuku kokudiliviwa Kwamaplahku kanye nezitifiketi, ezinyangeni ezimbili zekhalenda noma ezinsukwini ezingama-70 zekhakenda emuva kokuthi Umhlangano Ovumela Impahla ufakwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
- I-QPO kumele iqale ibheke Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA uma amaplahku elindeleke ukuthi ahanjiswe, isb. ukuqinisekisa ukuthi uma kungaba khona izinkinga ezithinta ukukhiqizwa noma ukudiliviwa kwamaplahku;
- Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA uzotshela i-QPO uma kukhona izinkinga bese eyachaza isimo senkinga kanye nokuthinteka okulindeleka;
- I-QPO izohlola impendulo bese ibhaka umthelela uma yenza ukucwaninga amabhuku;
- I-QPO izokhetha isampula elisuka ku-8 kuya ku 10% lezakhiwo amaplahku kanye nezitifiketi ezi-odwe khona emuva kokuthi Umhlangano Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla ifakwa:
  - Isb. uma umhlangano wawumhla ziyi-15 kuMbaso, amasheke alawo maplahku azoqedwa ekuphileni kukaNhlanguvana.
- I-QPO izokwenza ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku le-8 kuya ku-10% ukunquma ukuthi izakhiwo ziwatholile ngendlela efanele kanye nangesikhathi esifanele yini amaplahku kanye nezitifiketi zawo;
- I-QPO yenza ukucwaninga amabhuku ngokuthumela imeyili kuzo zonke Izakhiwo ezisesampuleni;
- I-QPO izokhipha umbiko futhi uhambise ku-CQAO njalo ngenyanga;
- -QPO izorekhoda imibuzo kanye nezinkinga okuphakanyiswe Izakhiwo eziyisampula bese ikuhambisa Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA kanye Nesikhulu Esibhekelele Amakhasimende (CLO) ukuthi bakusombululo:
  - Isb.:
    - Amaplahku kanye/noma izitifiketi okungakatholwa
    - Amaplahku alahlekile
    - Amagama Ezakhiwo angabhalwanga ngokufanele;
    - Izinombolo zezinkanyezi ezingafanele;
    - Amaplahku noma izitifiketi okumoshekile.
- Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA uzobheka futhi asombulule izinkinga zamaplahku kanye nezitifiketi ezivela ekucwaningweni kwamabhuku;
- I-CLO izogcinwa irekhodi ilandlele Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA ekusombululeni kwalesi zinkinga.

4.19. Isigaba Sokubheka Imibuzo



#### 4.19.1. Isigaba Sokubheka Imibuzo - Incazelo Ngokubha

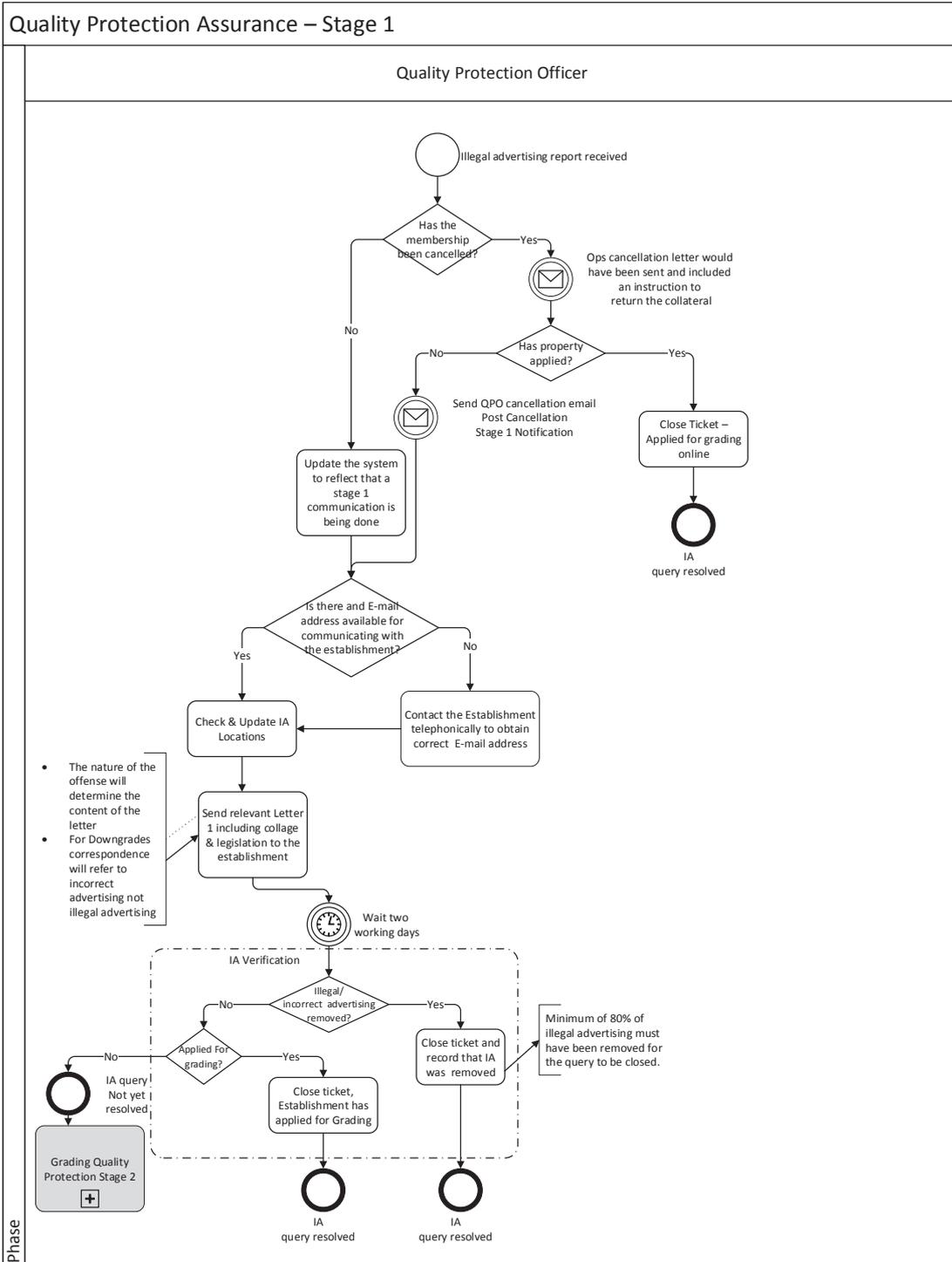
- I-QPO ithatha imibuzo Yokukhangisa okungekho emthethweni emithonje elandelayo:
  - Abahloli;
  - Umphakathi;
  - Ezinye Izakhiwo Ezigrediwe;
  - Abasebenzi be-TGCSA;
  - Umhlangano Woshintsho Lwemiklomelo;
  - Ukukhanselwa;
  - Ukwehliswa;
  - Impendulo yamakhasimende;
  - Isikhulu Esibhekelele Amakhasimende (CLO)
- Ukubheka ukuthi Isakhiwo sikhona encwadini yomlando yemanuwali yemibuzo (amarekhodi angaphambilini e-MS Excel);
- Ukubhekwa Kohlelo Lokugredwa Lesakhiwo;
- Ukunquma ukuthi amarekhodi Esakhiwo akhona Ohlelweni Lokugreda:
  - Uma engekho, kwakhiwe impahla entsha Ohlelweni Lokugreda;
  - Uma ekhona, kuzobhekwa ukuthi isibhekiwe yini imibuzo ngaphambilini Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA noma kumanuwali yangaphambilini ye-MS Excel.
    - Uma kusetshenziwe ngawo ngaphambilini Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA, izigaba zokuqinisekisa zohlelo IA (kuzophindwa ukuhlolwa kwemibuzo bese kulandelwa isigaba esilandelayo esifanele);
    - Uma kusetshenziwe ngawo ngaphambilini kumanuwali MS Excel kuphela kodwa isakhiwo sikhona Ohlelweni Lokugreda:
      - Kwakhiwe ithikithi elisha lwemibuzo Yohlelo Lokugreda-IA
      - Kuzovuselelwa Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA lemanuwali yangaphambilini (kusukela ngaphambi kokuthi kube Sohlelweni Lokugreda-IA)
    - Uma kungumbuzo omusha, kuzokwakhiwa ithikithi elisha lombuso Wohlelo Lokugreda-IA bese kuqhutshekwa esigabeni sokuqinisekisa.
- Izigaba zokuqinisekisa ukukhangisa okungekho emthethweni (IA):
  - Uma umbuzo sekusetshenziwe ngawo ngaphambilini, kumele kubhekwe ukuthi sisifakile yini isicelo sokugredwa:
    - Uma kukhona isicelo esikhona Ohlelweni Lokugreda Esakhiweni, imibuzo ye-IA iyasonjululwa futhi i-QPO ivala ithikithi;
    - Uma kungekho isicelo esikhona Ohlelweni Lokugreda Sesakhiwo;
      - Kubhekwa isimo esaziwayo sangaphambilini kanye nokuhambisana nemibuzo;
      - Kubhekwa ukuthi izindawo ezingama-80% noma ngaphezulu ze-IA ziqinisekisiwe;
      - Uma izindawo ezingama-80% noma ngaphezulu ziqinisekisiwe, imibuzo ye-IA iyasonjululwa futhi i-QPO ivala udaba;
        - Uma amaphesenti angaphansi kwama-80% e-IA eqinisekisiwe, i-QPO inquma isigaba esilandelayo Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA, okungahlanganisa ukwengezwa kwendawo.

- Uma kungumbuzo omusha
  - Ukuqinisekiswa ukuthi isakhiwo besigrediwe ngaphambilini noma cha;
  - Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi ukugredwa akukhanselwanga yini ngaphambilini;
  - Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi Isakhiwo esigrediwe kodwa sikhanga inani lezinkanyezi elingelona iqiniso;
  - Ukusho ukuthi isakhiwo sikhanga ngokungemthetho:
    - Uma kungelona iqiniso, kumele sihlizwe impendulo kumuntu obike i-IA bese kuvalwa ithikithi:
      - Uma kuyinkinga yesevisi noma yesakhiwo, kwaziswe i-CLO emuva kokuvalwa kwethikithi.
      - Uma kuyiqiniso, Kwenziwe Inhlangukisa Yobufakazi (Izindawo ze-IA) ngokusebenzisa lokhu okulandelayo:
        - Ukusesha ku-intanethi;
        - Ukubhukga / Ukubalwa Kwamawebhusayithi;
        - Izithombe zezimpawu zomgwaqo;
        - Izithombe zezimpawu ngaphakathi esakhiweni;
        - Izithombe zamabroshe.
- Ukuqhubekela esigabeni esifanele Sohlelo Lokugreda-IA.
  - Lokhu kuzokwenza ukuthi imeyili ithunyelwe isakhiwo (ngokuzenzakalela izokhopho i-CLO) nezinezelo ezilandelayo:
    - Incwadi ehloniphekile efanele;
    - Inhlangukisa yezibonelo zokukhangisa okungekho emthethweni;
    - Umqulu onesigaba esifanele soMthetho.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

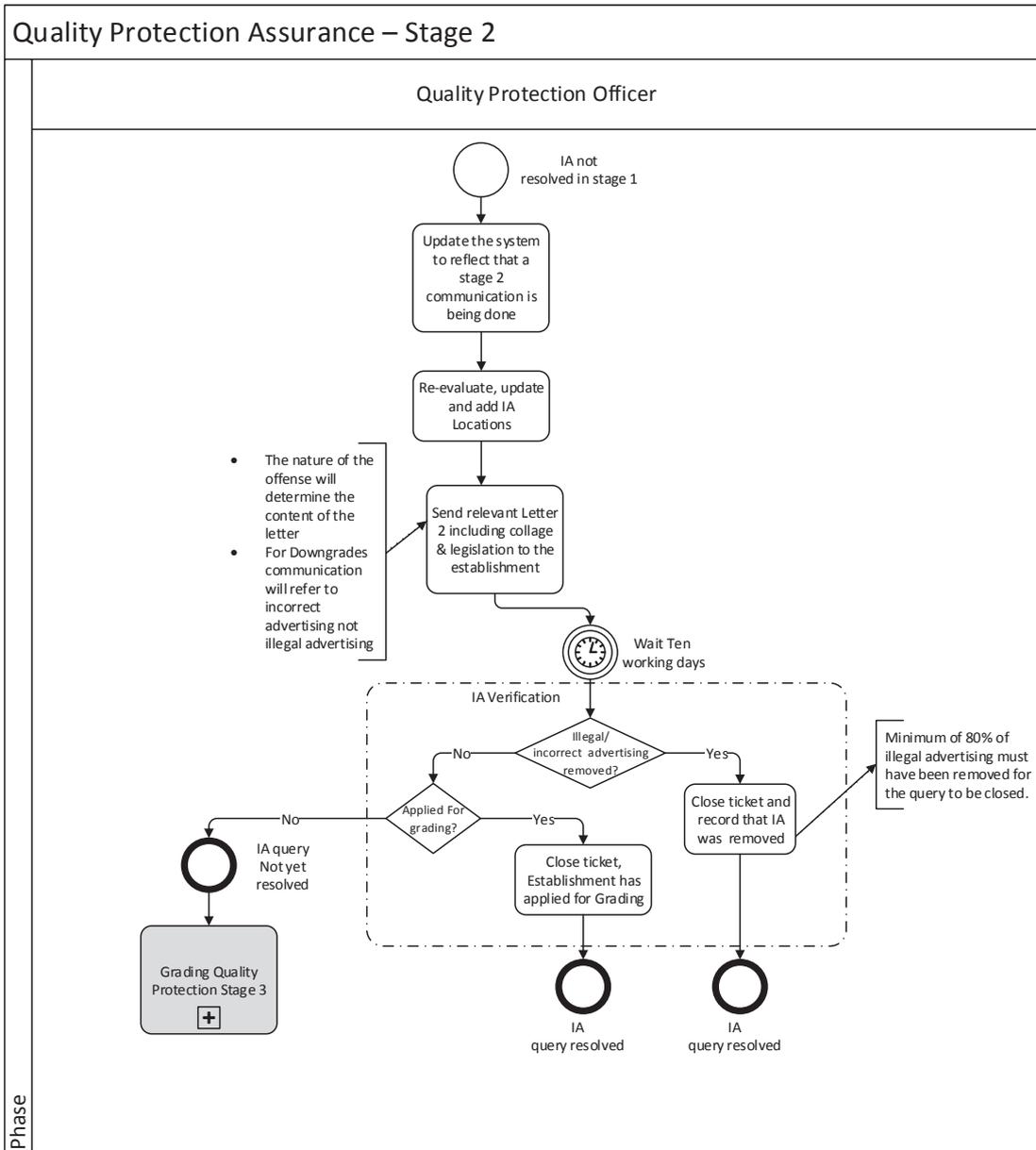
4.20. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba soku-1



**4.20.1. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba soku-1 - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- Ukunquma ukuthi ngabe Isakhiwo ngaphambilini sasinobulunga obukhanseliwe:
  - Uma kunjalo, Imeyili Yokukhansela kumele ukube yathunyelwa Esakhiweni, pkuhlanganisa, umyalelo wokuthi sikhishwe futhi sibuyiselwe enkanyezini yokuhlanganyela:
    - Uma impahla ifake isicelo sokugredwa:
      - Imibuzo ye-IA iyasombululwa bese i-QPO ivala ithikithi.
    - Uma lungekho uhlelo laku-intanethi Lohlelo Lokugreda:
      - I-QPO ithumela Isakhiwo imeyili Yokukhansela emuva Kwesigaba soku-1
  - Uma Kungenjalo, i-QPO ibuyekeza Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA ukuveza ukuthi isigaba soku-1 sesenziwe.
- I-QPO ibheka ukuthi likhona yini ikheli lemeyili elikhona ohlelweni olukhona
  - Uma Kungenjalo, kuthintwa Isakhiwo ngocingo ukuthola imeyili esebenzayo
    - I-QPO ithatha ikheli lemeyili elifanele Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA (ku “Alt Email”)
- I-QPO iphenya futhi ithatha izindawo se-IA;
- I-QPO ithumela Incwadi 1 efanele nenhlanganisela kanye nemiqulu yomthetho:
  - Uhlobo lwecala luzonquma okuqokethwe encwadini;
  - Ukwehliswa kuzobhekisa ekukhangisweni okungelona iqiniso hhayi ukukhangise okungekho emthethweni.
- Emuva kwezinsuku ezimbili zokusebenza, i-QPO iphinde ilandela Izigaba Zokukhangisa Okungemthetho okukhulunywe ngakho endimeni Yesigaba Sokubhekwa Kwemibuzo;
- Uma imibuzo ye-IA ingakususwa kuze kube yilapha, Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA luzokuveza ukuthi isigaba esilandelayo silindelwe ukuthi senziwe ngokwe-SLA Yohlelo Lokugreda-IA;
- I-QPO ingaseqa Isigaba Sohlelo Lokugreda uma:
  - I-IA sekuqediwe ngayo ngaphambilini yi-QPO noma yinoma ubani obambe iqhaza ngokusebenzisa imanuwali
  - Uma isimo, ubunjalo kanye nesigqi secala elithile sivumela.
- Esimeni esinjalo, i-QPO izothathwa amanothi Ohlelo Lokugreda-IA maqondana nokuphendula kwemanuwali yangaphambilini noma maqondana nobunjalo becala.

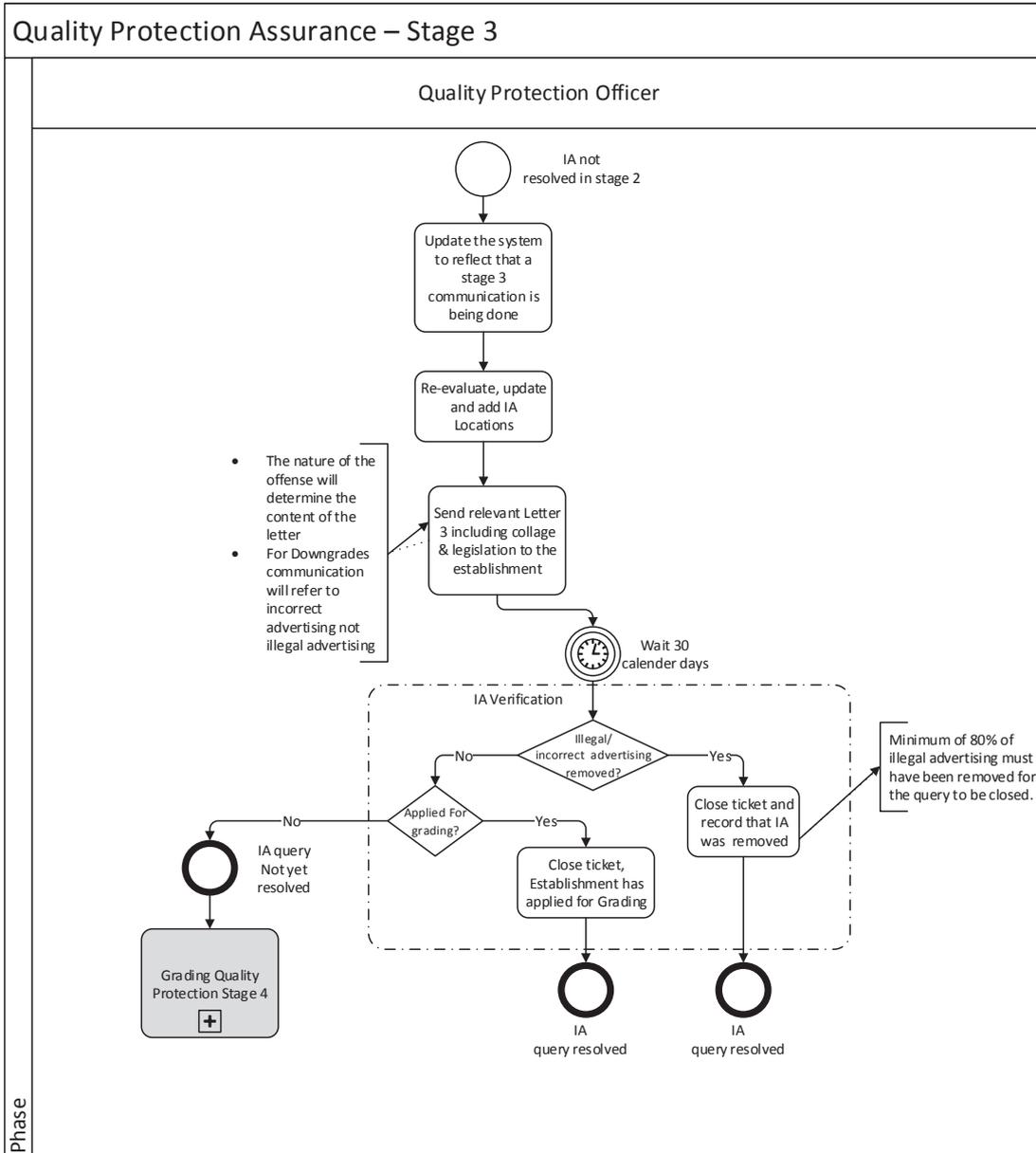
#### 4.21. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba sesi-2



**4.21.1. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba sesi-2 - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

- I-QPO ibuyekeza Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA ukuthi luveze ukuthi Isigaba sesi-2 sesiqediwe;
- I-QPO iphinde ibheke, ibuyekezwe iphinde yengeze izindawo ze-IA lapho kunesidingo;
- I-QPO ithumela isakhiwo incwadi efanele yesi-2 okuhlanganisa imiqulu eyinhlanganisela & nomthetho;
  - Isimo secala sizonquma okuqukethwe yincwadi;
  - Ukwehliswa kuzobhekisa ekukhangisweni okungelona iqiniso hhayi ukukhangise okungekho emthethweni.
- Emuva kwezinsuku eziyishumi zokusebenza, i-QPO iphinde ilandela Izigaba Zokukhangisa Okungemthetho okukhulunywe ngakho endimeni Yesigaba Sokubhekwa Kwemibuzo;
- Uma imibuzo ye-IA ingakususwa kuze kube yilapha, Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA luzokuveza ukuthi isigaba esilandelayo silindelwe ukuthi senziwe ngokwe-SLA Yohlelo Lokugreda-IA;
- I-QPO ingaseqa Isigaba Sohlelo Lokugreda uma:
  - I-IA sekuqediwe ngayo ngaphambilini yi-QPO noma yinoma ubani obambe iqhaza ngokusebenzisa imanuwali;
  - Uma isimo, ubunjalo kanye nesigqi secala elithile sivumela.
- Esimeni esinjalo, i-QPO izothathwa amanothi Ohlelo Lokugreda-IA maqondana nokuphendula kwemanuwali yangaphambilini noma maqondana nobunjalo becala.

4.22. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba sesi-2



**4.22.1. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba sesi-3 - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama**

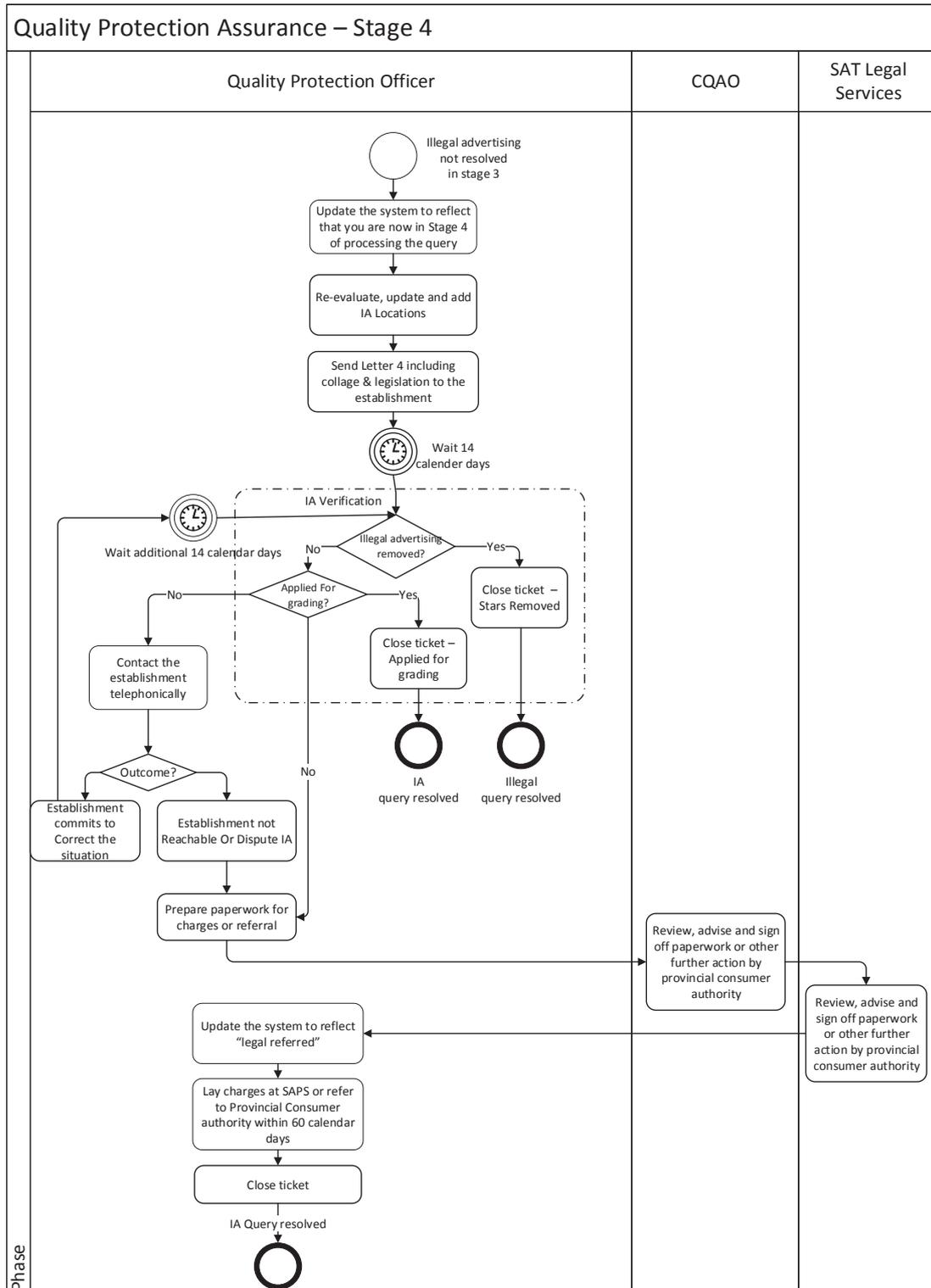
- I-QPO ibuyekeza Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA ukuthi lubeze ukuthi Isigaba sesi-3 sesiqediwe;
- I-QPO iphinde ibheke, ibuyekwezwe iphinde yengeze izindawo ze-IA lapho kunesidingo;
- I-QPO ithumela isakhiwo incwadi efanele yesi-3 okuhlanganisa imiqulu eyinhlanganisela & nomthetho;
  - Isimo secala sizonquma okuqukethwe yincwadi;
  - Ukwehliswa kuzobhekisa ekukhangisweni okungelona iqiniso hhayi ukukhangise okungekho emthethweni.
- Emuva kwezinsuku ezingamashumi amathathu zokusebenza, i-QPO iphinde ilandela Izigaba Zokukhangisa Okungemthetho okukhulunywe ngakho endimeni Yesigaba Sokubhekwa Kwemibuzo;
- Uma imibuzo ye-IA ingakususwa kuze kube yilapha, Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA luzokuveza ukuthi isigaba esilandelayo silindelwe ukuthi senziwe ngokwe-SLA Yohlelo Lokugreda-IA;
- I-QPO ingaseqa Isigaba Sohlelo Lokugreda uma:
  - I-IA sekuqediwe ngayo ngaphambilini yi-QPO noma yinoma ubani obambe iqhaza ngokusebenzisa imanuwali
  - Uma isimo, ubunjalo kanye nesigqi secala elithile sivumela.
- Esimeni esinjalo, i-QPO izothathwa amanothi Ohlelo Lokugreda-IA maqondana nokuphendula kwemanuwali yangaphambilini noma maqondana nobunjalo becala.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

---

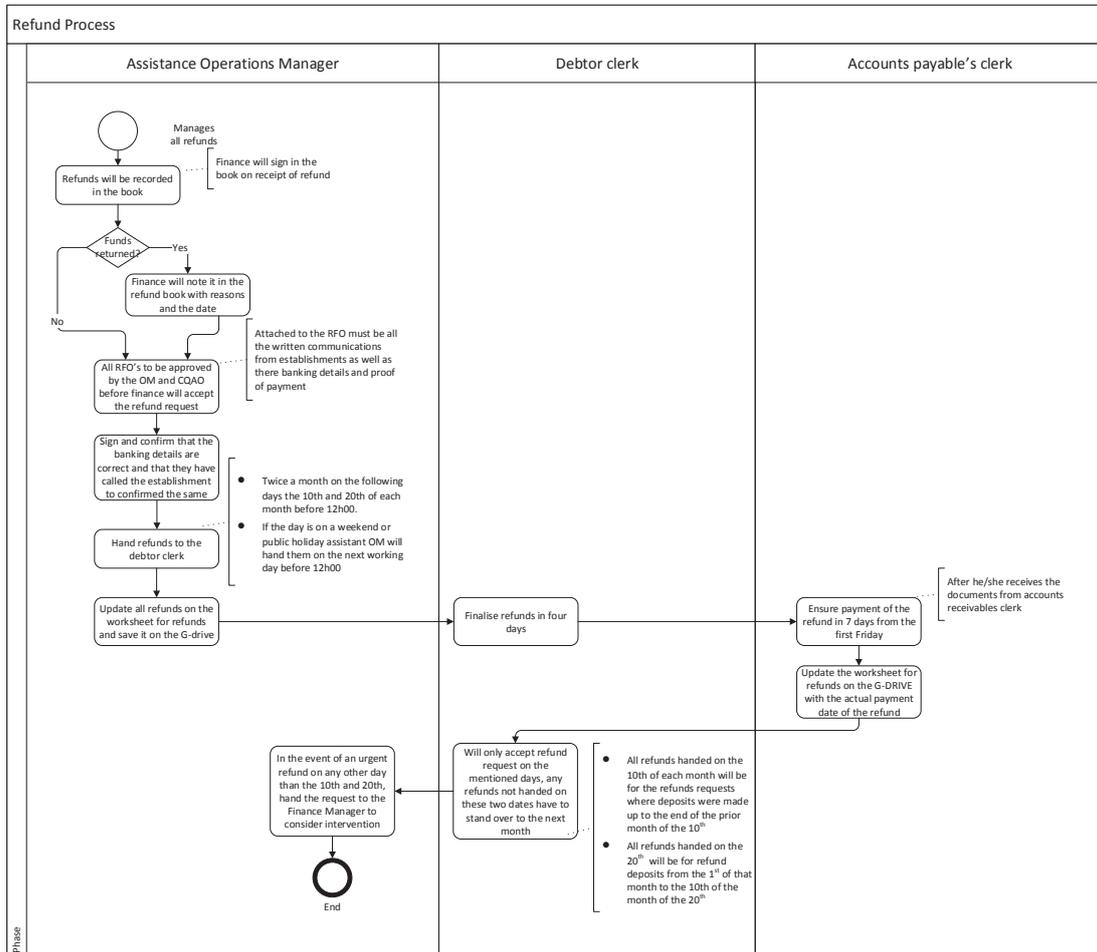
4.23. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba sesi-4



4.23.1. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi - Isigaba sesi-2 - Ukuchazwa Ngamagama

- I-QPO ibuyekeza Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA ukuthi luveze ukuthi Isigaba sesi-4 sesiqediwe;
- I-QPO iphinde ibheke, ibuyekezwe iphinde yengeze izindawo ze-IA lapho kunesidingo;
- I-QPO ithumela isakhiwo incwadi efanele yesi-4 okuhlanganisa imiqulu eyinhlanganisela & nomthetho;
- Eznsukwini eziyi-14 zekhalenda, kuzobhekwa ukuthi Isakhiwo sisifakile yini izicelo sokugreda:
  - Uma kunesicelo esikhona Ohlelweni Lokugreda Sesakhiwo, imibuzo ye-IA isombululiwe futhi i-QPO iyalivala ithikithi;
  - Uma singekho isicelo esikhona Ohlelweni Lokugreda Sesakhiwo;
    - Ukubuyekezwa kwezimo kanye nokuhambisana kombuzo;
    - kuzobhekwa ukuthi ama-80% noma ngaohezulu e-IA eqinisekisiwe yini:
      - Uma ama-80% e-IA eqinisekisiwe, imibuzo ye-IA iyasombululwa futhi i-QPO ivala ithikithi;
      - Uma kungaphansi kwama-80% e-IA eqinisekisiwe, i-QPO ithinta Isakhiwo ngocingo ukuvikela izinyathelo zomthetho:
        - Uma Isakhiwo sizibophezela ukulungisa isimo, i-QPO ivumela ezinye izinsuku ezengeziwe eziyi-14 zekhalenda ngaphambi kokuphinda kokuphindwa Kwezinyathelo Zokuqinisekisa Ukukhangisa Okungekho Emthethweni (IA) njengokuba kushiwoendimeni Yesigaba Sokubhekwa Kwemibuzo:
          - Uma Izinyathelo Zokuqinisekisa Ukukhangisa Okungekho Emthethweni (IA) zinomphumela ogculisayo: imibuzo iyasombululwa bese i-QPO ivala ithikithi.
          - Uma Izinyathelo Zokuqinisekisa Ukukhangisa Okungekho Emthethweni (IA) zinomphumela ongagculisi, i-QPO ilungisa amaphepha amacala noma ukudlulisela Ezikhulwini Zezabathengi Esifundazweni;
        - Uma Isakhiwo singatholakali ngocingo noma siphikisana ne-IA:
          - i-QPO ilungisa amaphepha amacala noma ukudlulisela Ezikhulwini Zezabathengi Esifundazweni;
  - I-CQAO ibheka, iyale bese isayina la maphepha;
  - I-QPO ibuyekeza Uhlelo Lokugreda-IA ukuthi luveze ukuthi “ludluliselwe kwezomthetho”
  - Ezomthetho ZEZOKUVAKASHA ENINGIZIMU zizobheka, ziyale zisayina la maphepha;
  - I-QPO inezinsuku ezingama-60 zekhalenda emuva kokusayinwa Kwezomthetho ukuthi ivule icala ku-SAPS noma idlulisele udaba Ehhovisi Lwezabathengi ukuthi luphenywe kabanzi
  - I-QPO ivala ithikithi Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA.

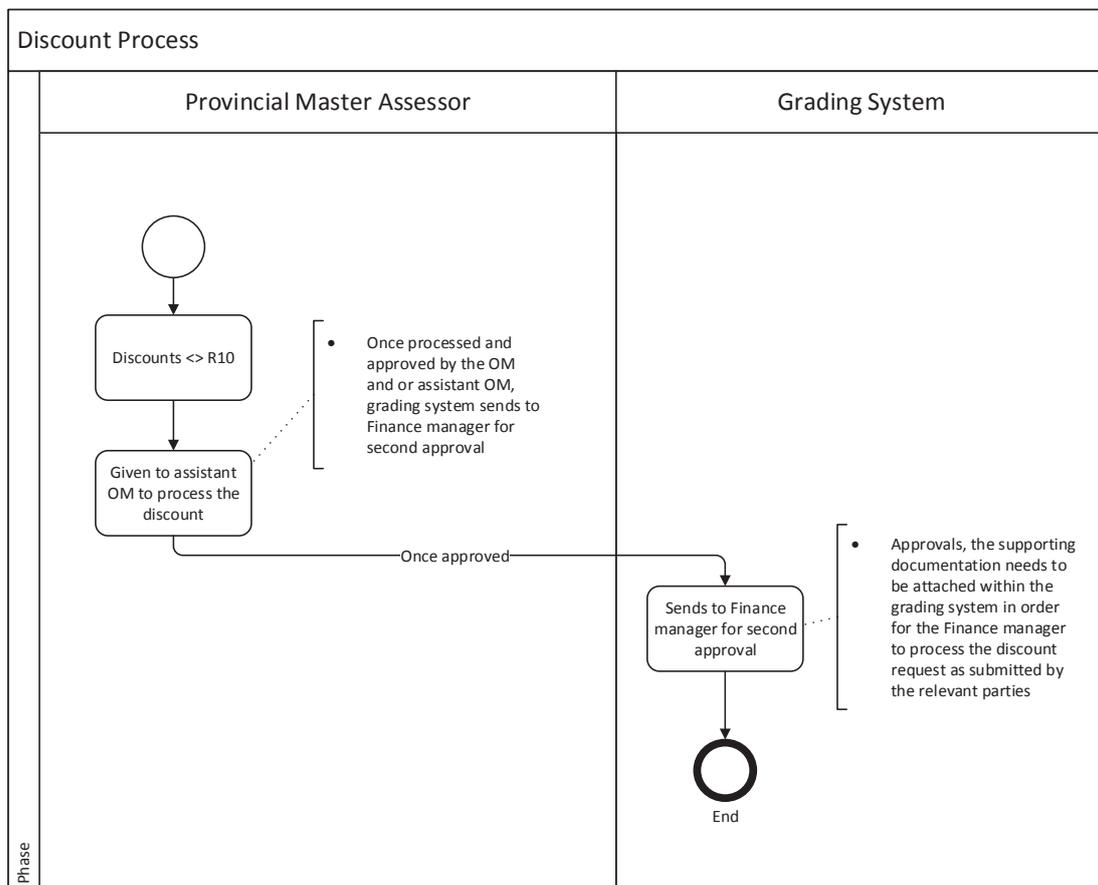
4.24. Uhlelo Lokubuyiswa Kwemali



**4.24.1. Uhlelo Lokubuyisa Imali -Incazelo Ngamagama**

- Umsizi we-OM uphatha zonke izimali ezibuyiselwe emuva.
  - Zonke izimali ezibuyiselwe emuva zizorekhodwa ebhukwini futhi owezimali uzosayina ebhukwini ekutholweni kwemali ebuyiselwayo.
  - Imali ebuyiselwayo ibuyiselwa Kumsizi we-OM, owezimali uzobhala ebhukwini leziMali ezibuyiswayo nezizathu kanye nosuku.
- Yonke i-RFO izovunyelwa Umpathi WEzokusebenza kanye ne-CQAP ngaphambi kokuthi owezimali avumele isicelo sokubuyisela imali;
- Kumele kufakwe i-RFO kukho konke ukuxhumana okusuka ezakhiweni kanye neminingwane yazo yasebhangwe esuka kubabhengi bazo kanye nobufakazi bokukhokha;
- Ithimba lokusebenza kumele liphinde lisayine futhi liainisekise ukuthi iminingwane yebhangwe iyiqiniso futhi selisithintile isakhiwo ukuqinisekisa okufanayo;
- Umsizi we-OM uzokhipha imali ebuyiselwayo ayise eklekhini lezikweleti kabili ngenyanga ezinsukwini ezilandelayo, ziyi-10 kanye nahla zingama-20 njalo ngenyanga ngaphambi kwehora le-12. Uma usuku lungempelasonto noma liyiholidi Umsizi we-OM uzoyikhipha ngosuku olulandelayo lokusebenza ngaphambi kwehora le-12;
- Umsizi we-OM uzophinda abuyekeze zonke izimali okumele zibuyiselwe emuva ashadini lazo bese eligcin ku G-drive;
- Iklekhi lezikweletu lizoba nezinsuku ezine ukuthi liqede bese linika Iklekhi Elikhokhela Ama-akhawunti.
- Iklekhi elikhokhela ama-akhawunti lizoqinisekisa ukubuyiselwa kwemali ezinsukwini eziyi-7 kusukela Ngolwesihlanu lokuqala emuva kokuthola imiqulu esuka eklekhini elithola ama-akhawunti;
- Iklekhi elikhokhela ama-akhawunti lizobuyekeza ishadi leziMali ezibuyiselwayo eliku G-DRIVE ngosuku lokukhokhwa kwemali;
- Yonke imali ebuyiselwayo inikwe iklekhi elithathayo ngomhla ziyi-10 njalo ngenyanga owezicelo zokubuyiselwa izimali lapho amadiphozithi ayenzwe ekuphileni kwenyanga ngaphambi nkenyanga yomhla ziyi-10;
- Zonke izimali ezibuyiswayo zinikwa iklekhi elitholayo mhla zingama-20 kuzobe kungeyokubuyiselwa kwamadiphozithi asekelo mhla zi-1 kuleyo Nyanga kuya mhla ziyi-10 kwenyanga yomhla zingama-20;
- Amaklekhi athola imali azovumela izicelo zokubuyiselwa ima ezinsukwini ezidalulwe ngenhla, noma yikuphi ukubuyiselwa kwemali okungalethwanga kulezi zinsuku ezimbili kumele zimele inyanga elandelayo;
- Lapho kunemali okumele ibuyiselwe ngokushesha kunoma yiluphi usuku ngaphandle kwamhla ziyi-10 kanye namhla zingama-20, umsizi womphathi wezokusebenza uzodingida isicelo Nomphathi Wezezimali ukuthi angenelele.

**4.25. Uhlelo Lokubuyisa Imali**

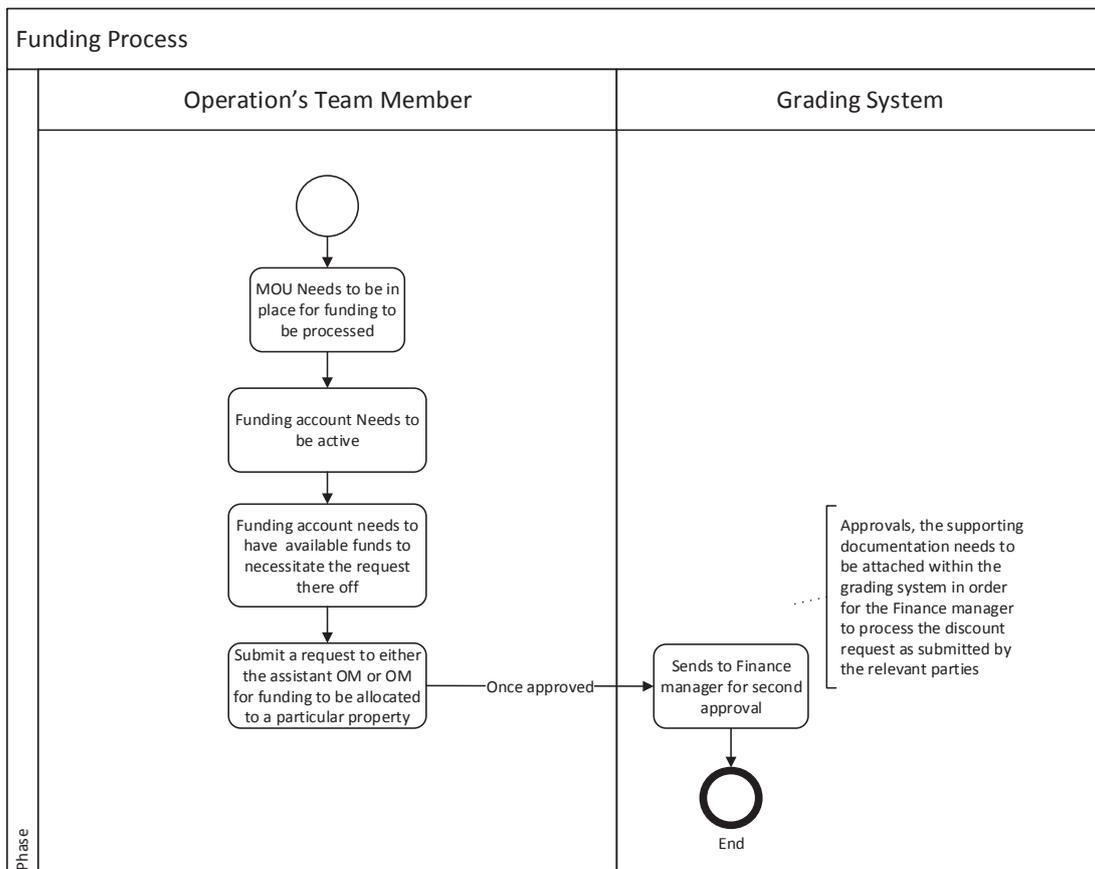


**4.25.1. Uhlelo Lokubuyisa Imali -Incazelo Ngamagama**

- Ukwaphulelwa okungaphansi kuka-R10
  - I-PMA ingathola imvume ku-CQAO bese inikwe umsizi we-OM ukuthi eqhube ukwaphulela;
  - Uma sekuqhutshiwe futhi kwavunyelwa yi-OM kanye noma umsizi we-OM, uhlelo lokugreda luthumela umphathi Wezezimali ukuthi zivunyelwe okwesibili;
  
- Ukwaphulelwa okungaphezulu kuka-R10
  - I-PMA ingathola imvume ku-CQAO bese inikwe umsizi we-OM ukuthi enze ukwaphulela;
  - Uma sekwenziwe futhi kwavunyelwa yi-OM kanye noma i-OM, uhlelo lokugreda luthumela ku,phathi Wezezimali ukuthi enze ukuvumela kwesibili uma kunesidingo;

- Ukuthola ukuvunyelwa kokubili okungenhla, imiqulu esekelayo kumele ifakwe ohlelweni lokugreda ukuze umphathi Wezezimali ezokwenza ukwaphulela okuceliwe njengokuba kulethwe abathintekayo.

**4.26. Imali - Uhlelo**



**4.26.1. Imali - Ukuchazwa Ngokwamagama**

- Ukuze imali idluliswe, kubalulekile ukuthi i-MOU isendaweni futhi i-akhawunti yemali iyasebenza futhi inemali ekhona yesicelo esinjalo. Okulandelayo kumele kwenzeke:
  - Ilunga lethimba Lwezokusebenza elibhekelele izimali lizohambisa isicelo kumsizi we-OM noma i-OM ukuze imali yabelwe impahla ethile.
  - Ithimba lezokusebenza kumele ligcine amarekhodi ayo yonke imiqulu eyesekelayo azo zonke izicelo zezimali (ukugcina ngokuphepha okuceliwe kwe-AG, ukucwaningea kwamabhuku kwangaphakathi, ezezimali, njll.)

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 770 - PART 7**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 7 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



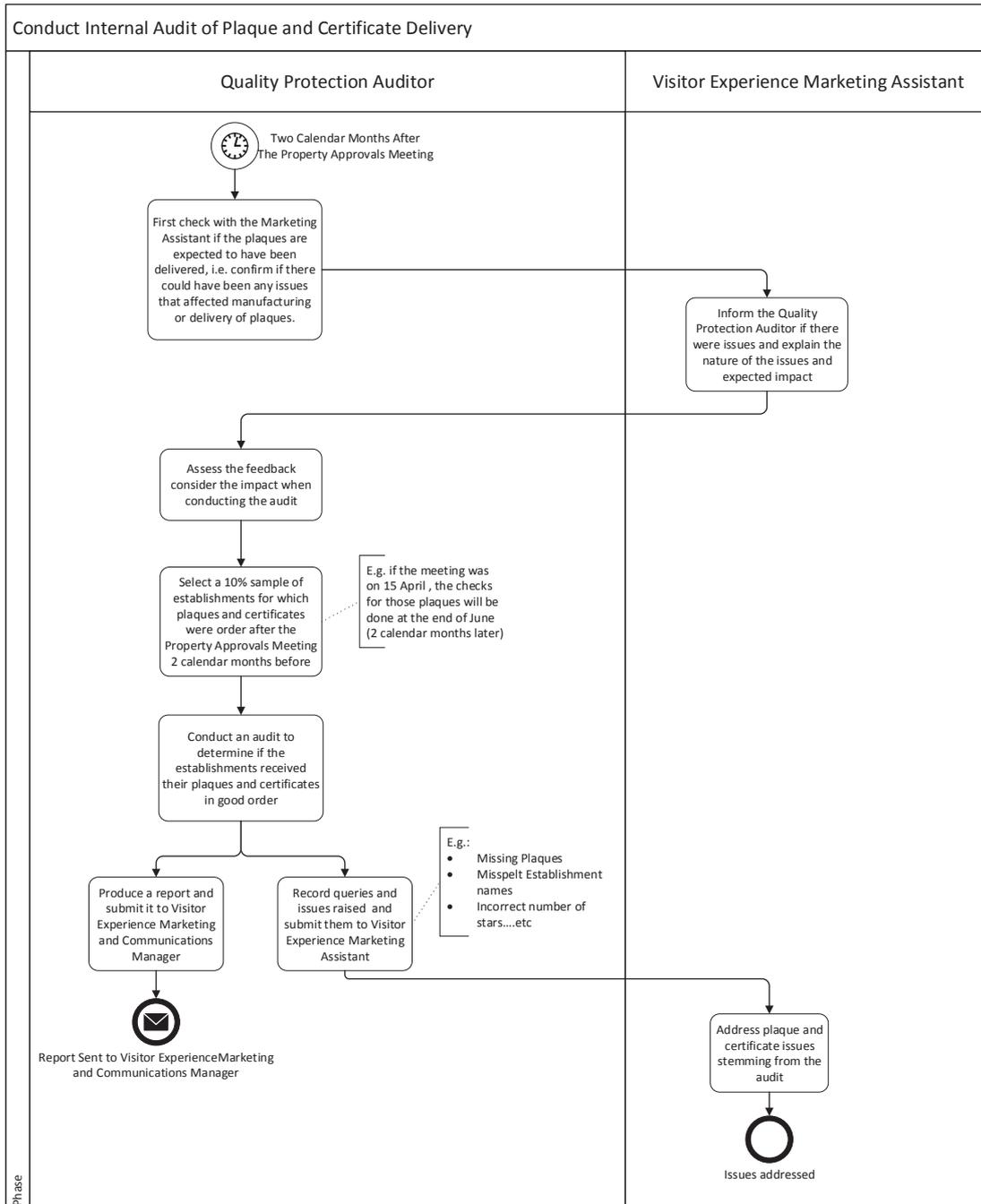
**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- Uma uhlelo zelufakiwe futhi lavunya yi-OM kanye nomsizi we-OM, uhlelo lokugreda imali izophuma ngokuzenzakalela uma kunemali ku-akhawunti yemali;
- Ithimba lezokusebenza kumele ligcine amarekhodi ayo yonke imiqulu eyesekelayo azo zonke izicelo zezimali (ukugcina ngokuphepha okuceliwe kwe-AG, ukucwaningea kwamabhuku kwangaphakathi, ezezimali, njll.)

#### 4.27.      **Impendulo Yamakhasimende**



**4.27.1. Impendulo Yamakhasimende -Incazelo ngamagama**

- Umsebenzi wesikhulu esibhekelele amakhasimende ukuthatha izimpendulo ezisuka kubabambi benqaza bangaphakathi kanye nabangaphandle okuhlanganisa Izakhiwo ezigrediwe / nezingagredwana, Umhloli, ababambi beqhaza bemboni kanye nezivakashi.
  - Ngaphakathi (Izakhiwo, Abahloli, abasebenzi BEZAZOKUVAKASHA EZINGIZIMU AFRIKA, i-NTD, Ikomidi lephothifoliyo, njll.)
  - Ngaphandle (Izimboni ezimukela izivakashi isb. ososeshini, amagatsha e-APEX & kanye nokuvakasha njll.)
- Izimpendulo zihanjiswa ngendlela elandelayo:
  - Iwebhusayithi:
    - Ikhazimende lingena ku: [www.tourismgrading.co.za](http://www.tourismgrading.co.za);
      - Likhethe okumayelana ne-TGCSA;
      - Likhethe ukuxhumana;
      - Lithumele impendulo
  - Imeyili:
    - Ikhazimende lithumela imeyili ku: [feedback@tourismgrading.co.za](mailto:feedback@tourismgrading.co.za)
  - Ucingo:
    - Ikhazimende lithinta ku: 011 895 3013
- I-CLO ithola Ipendulo esuka Esakhiweni maqondana nalokhu okulandelayo:
  - Imibuzo Ngobulunga Bokugreda (Ama-invoyisi, amaplakhu ezitifiketi zokugreda, isimo Sokugreda, njll.)
  - Kugredwa kanjani;
  - Izimali zokugreda kanye nemibuzo ngohlobo lokugreda.
- I-CLO ithola Ipendulo esuka Kubahloli maqondana nalokhu okulandelayo:
  - Ukwenza amarisithi okukhokha;
  - Izicelo ze-invoyisi;
  - Izicelo zokuhlanganiswa kwezokumaketha Ezakhiweni (izitifiketi zokugreda / amaplakhu, uhla lwewebhusathi, njll.)
  - Ukusizwa ngebhakede lwezinto ezitholwayo;
  - Ukusizwa ngemibuzo ehambelana nokuhlola.
- I-CLO ithola Ipendulo esuka kumakhasimende angaphandle maqondana nalokhu okulandelayo:
  - Umphakathi owejwayelekile noma ababambi beqhaza bemboni:
    - Impatho Ezakhiweni ezigrediwe kanye nezingagrediwe (Okuhle & Nokubi);
    - Ukuqinisekiswa kwezimo sokugreda;
- Izinyathelo ezithathwayo uma kufakwa imibuzo ngemeyili / Iwebhusayithi:
  - Ukwaziswa okuzenzakalelayo kuthunyelwa ngemeyili Kubathengi kuqinisekisa irisidi kanye nokwazisa umthengi ngezikhathi zokusebenza ze-TGCSA.
  - Ipendulo yokubhekwa kwe-CLO, kuncike ekwehlukani:
    - Isombulula, iphendula umthengi futhi uvala umbuzo;
    - Ithumela umbuzo emuntwini ofanele / umnyango (i-CLO kumele ikhoshwe kukho konke ukuxhumana).
      - Uma ingekho impendulo emahoreni angama-48, ithumela isikhumbuzo;
      - Uma ingekho impendulo emuva kwamahora angama-48, idlulisela kumphathi ofanele;
      - Kuphela ekutholeni imvume esuka kubantu abafanele / iminyango ukuthi umbuzo ususombululiwe i-CLO iyawuvala.
- Izinyathelo uma umbuzo ufakwe ngocingo:
  - I-CLO icela ikhasimende lithumele umbuzo ngemeyili:

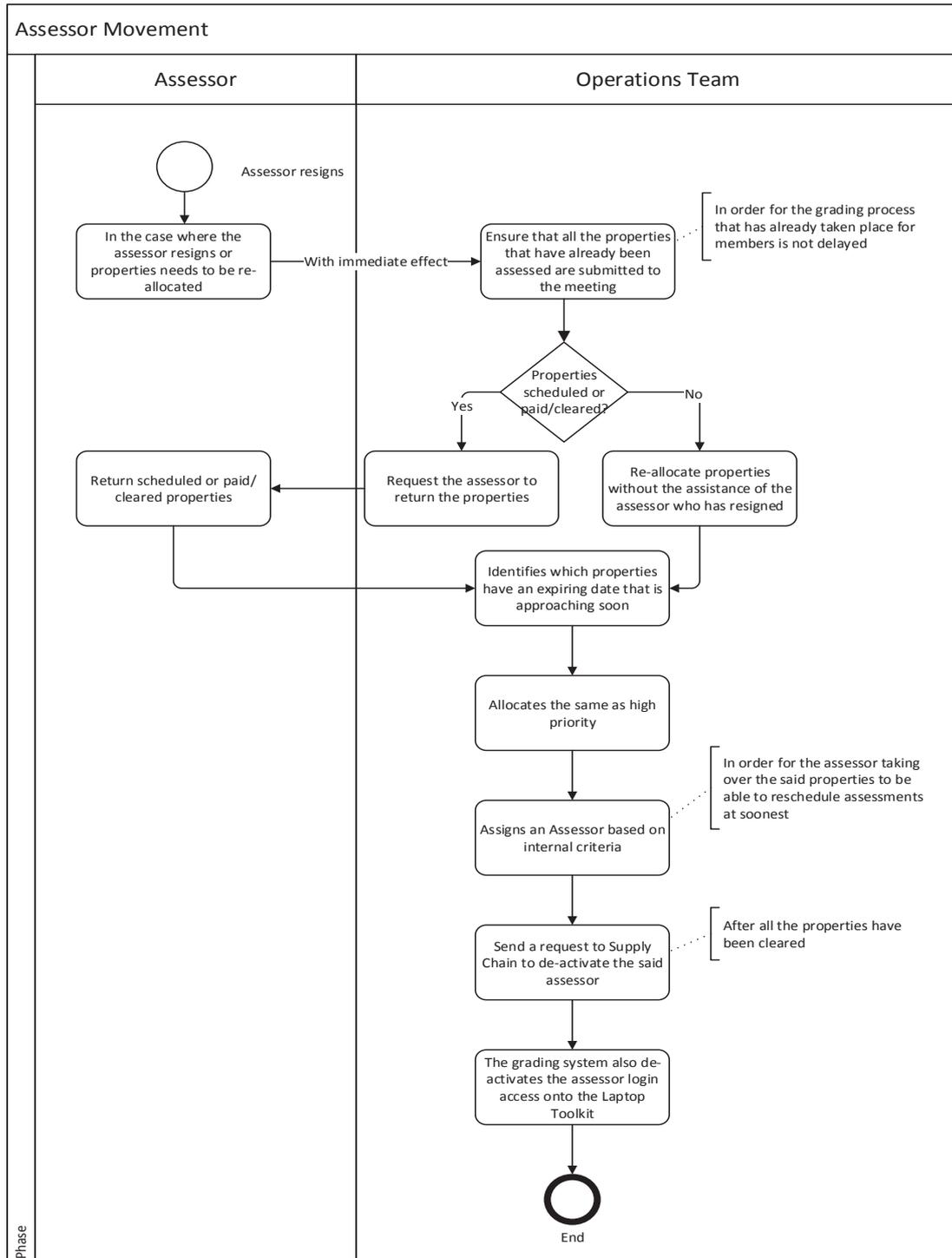
---

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

- I-CLO ilandela imeyili / Iwebhusayithi engenhla.
- Ikipha imibiko yangaphakathi kanye nangaphandle yazinyanga zonke bese ihambisa Kumphathi Wezokuxhumana kanye Nezokumaketha njalo Ngolwesine lokuqala enyangeni.

**4.28. Ukuhamba Komhloli**



**4.28.1. Ukuhamba Komhloli - Ukuchazwa Ngokwamagama**

- Odabeni lapho Umhloli esula emsebenzini, lokhu okulandelayo kuyenzeka empahleni abenikwe yona;
- Ngokushesha, ithimba le-Ops liqinisekise ukuthi impahla yonke esihloliwe ihanjiswa emhlanganweni.
  - Ukuze uhlelo lokugreda oselwenziwe lungabambezeleki.

- Impahla esisheduliwe noma esikhokhelwe, Umhloli uyacelwa ukuthi abuyise leyo mpahla;
- Impahla engakhokhelwa, ithimba le-Ops liphinde liyabe impahla ngaphandle kokusizwa Umhloli osesulile emsebenzini;
- ; Ithimba le-Ops libona ukuthi iyiphi impahla enosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi maduze;
- Ithimba le-Ops laba ngokubaluleka okufanayo;
- Ithimba le-Ops lithola Umhloli ngokohlobo lwangaphakathi;
  - Ukuze umhloli othatha izintambo empahleni akwazi ukushedulela maduze.
- Ukwabiwa kwempahla, ithimba le-Ops ngokulandela uhlobo Ngokwenqubo Eyejwayelekile Yokusebenza.
- Emuva kokuthi yonke impahla isikhokhelwe; uhlelo luyathunyelwa ukuthi luvalele umhloli onjalo futhi nohlelo lokugreda luvalele ukuthi agene Kutookit yekhompuyutha.

#### 5. UKUKHULULWA KNAY NOKUPHUMA ECELENI NOHLELO

Izicelo ezingaphandle kohlelo oluchazwe ngenhla kumele zihanjiswe Ethimbeni Lokusebenza ukuthi zibekwe futhi kukhulunywe ngazo Emhlanweni Wanyanga Zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO.

Umhlangano ungakhuluma ngezicelo ezinjalo ngokubuyekeza idata, okwazisa ngoshintsho ohlelweni,

#### 6. UKULAWULA KANYE NEZINDLELA

Ukufakwa kokulawulwa kanye ngezindlela ezifanele ohlelweni/enqubeni.

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

Indlela	Okuqondiwe	Umuntu Ofanele
Ukuvunyelwa ngaphambilini kwezicelo ezintsha	Njalo	Abaphathi Bezokusebenza
Uwabiwa Kwamarisidi Okukhokha Okutholiwe (Izicelo Ezintsha kanye Nokuvuselela)	Njalo	Iklekhi Elithola Ama-akhawunti
Ukwabiwa Kwemali ekhokhiwe wngaziwa	Evikini eli-1 (ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zwkhalenda) emva kokuthi umkhokhi wayo esetholakele	Iklekhi Elithola Ama-akhawunti
Ukusetha umhlangano yokuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo endaweni yaso	Ezinsukwini ezi-3 zokusebenza emuva kokuthi isakhiwo sinikwe Umhloli	Umhloli
Ukwenza ukuhlola Kokugreda Kobulunga Obusha	Ezinyangeni ezi-4 zekhalenda zokukhokhwa kwe-invoyisi	Umhloli
Ukwenziwa ukuhlola Kokugreda kokuvuselelwa Kobulunga	Ngaphambi kokuphelelwa yisikhathi: isb. phakathi kosuku lokwenzelwa irisidi kanye nokunikwa Umhloli kuya ngaphambi Komhlangano Wnyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO enyangeni yokuphelelwa yisikhathi	Umhloli
Ukuhambisa imibiko yokuhlola & nemiqulu eyesekayo	Ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda zokwenziwa kokuhlolwa	Umhloli
Imibiko ebuyekeziwe Yokuhlola	Ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda zokuhanjiswa	I-PMA
Isikhathi sokuhanjiswa Kwezakhiwo Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO	Usuku lokusebenza ngaphambi komhlangano	I-PMA
impendulo Yokubuyekwezwa Komhloli	ezinsukwini ezi-2 zokusebenza	Umhloli
Inani lokuBuyekwezwa elivumelekile ekuhanjisweni	3	Umhloli

Process Name: TGCSA Grading Operating Processes

Company Confidential

Indlela	Okuqondiwe	Umuntu Ofanele
Ukuhanjiswa kwama-invoyisi ngokwesaziso se-PO	Ezinsukwini ezi-3	Umhloli
Ukukhokhelwa Kwabahloli	Usuku lokugcina enyangeni	I-CQAO
Ukubuyekezwa Kwamazinga Okugreda	Njalo eminyakeni emi-3	I-CQAO & Nezokumaketha kanye Nomphathi Wezokuxhumana
Ukusayinwa Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO	Emahoreni angama-24 Omhlangano	I-CQAO
Ukwenziwa Kokucwaningwa Kwamabhuku kokudiliviwa Kweplakhu kanye Nesitifiketi	Ezinyangeni ezi-2 zekhalenda emuva Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO	I-QPA

**7. IZINKOMBA****7.1. Imiqulu efanele**

Uhlobo Lomqulu	Inombolo Yomqulu	Igama Lomqulu
Inkontileka	N/A	Isivumelwano Sobulingani Besevisi
Inkontileka	N/A	Imigomo kanye Nemibandela Yokugreda

**7.2. Amafomu Afanele**

Uhlobo Lomqulu	Inombolo Yomqulu	Igama Lomqulu
Ifomu	N/A	Ifomu Lesicelo Sokugredwa Ku-intanethi
Ifomu	N/A	Ifomu Lomhlangano
Ifomu	N/A	Uhlu lokuhlola le-MER
Ifomu	N/A	Uhlu lokuhlola Ikhwalithi
Ifomu	N/A	Uhlu lokuhlola le-UA
Ifomu	N/A	Ifomu Lokukhishwa le-UA
Ifomu	N/A	Umbiko Wokuvakasha
Ithempulethi	N/A	Ithempulethi yezithombe sokuhlola

**8. IZINENEZELO**

Azikho

English	Zulu
<b>4.3. Process New Application Invoice Payments</b>	<b>4.3. Ukudluliswa Kokukhokhwa Kwe-invoyisi Yesicelo Elisha Sokugreda</b>
Accounts Receivable Clerk	Iklekhi Akwazi Ukuthola Ama-akhawunti
Assessor	Umdloli
Financial System	Uhlelo Lwezezimali
Payment due from Establishment within 30 calendar days of receiving invoice	Ukukhokhelwa kwe-invoyisi yobulunga obusha kumele kwenziwe yiSakhiwo ezinsukwini ezingama-30 zosuku lwe-invoyisi;
Review Bank statements daily to pick up payments that have been made by Establishments on the previous working day	Ukubuyekeza izitatimende zasebhange ze-TGCSA njalo ngosuku ukubheka ukukhokhwa okwenziwe Yizakhiwo
Allocate receipts for payment based on references provided for payments reflected on Bank statements	Ukukhipha amarisidi okukhokhelwa ngokwezinkomba ezihlinzekwa imali ekhokhiwe evela ezitatimendeni zasebhange
Are there any unidentifiable payments?	Ikhona imali ekhokhiwe engaziwa
No	Cha
End	Ukuphela
Yes	Yebo
Engage business to assist in identifying the Establishments that made the unidentified payments	Ukubandakanya ibhizinisi ukusiza Isakhiwo esikhokhe imali engaziwa
Receipting when payment is made and the 10 digit Invoice Number is not used as a reference number it will be regarded as an unidentified transaction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Transactions can also be traced by details such as the establishment name, or Invoice Number if they were used as a reference.</li> </ul>	Ukwenza amarisidi <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uma kukhokhiwe futhi kungasetshenziswanga izinombolo eziyi-10 ze-invoyisi zisetshenziwe njengenombolo yenkomba yokukhokha lokho kukhokhwa kuzothathwa njengokungaziwa.</li> <li>Ukukhokha kungalandelwa ngemininingwane njengegama lesakhiwo, noma Inombolo ye-invoyisi uma isetshenziwe njengenkomba</li> </ul>
Weekly list sent to Assessors , PMAs and Operations	Uhla Lweviki luthunyelwa Kubahloli, ama-PMA kanye Nabezokusebenza
Provide feedback with supporting proof of payment to transaction to be allocated	Ukuhlineka impendulo nobufakazi obesekayo ukuthi imali yabiwe
Proof of payment for transaction	Ubufakazi bokukhokha
Follow-up on outstanding payment with Establishment on receipt of the 30 & 60 day reminders	Ukulandelela imali ekweletwayo yisakhiwo kurisidi ezikhumbuzweni zezinsuku ezingama-60
Proof of payment for transaction	Ubufakazi bokukhokha
Integration to Grading system	Ukuhlanganisa Ohlelweni Lokugreda
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the payment is received in full and receipted before the end of day 85, the Establishment is assigned to an Assessor, and the Establishment details will</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uma imali ikhokhiwe ngokugcwele futhi kwenzelwa irisidi ngaphambi kokuphela kwezinsuku ezingama-85, Isakhiwo sinikwa Umdloli, imininingwane</li> </ul>

<p>download to the Assessor laptop;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Assessor can then schedule an assessment with the Establishment TOMSA levy collectors receive a further discount depending on their status and if they are in good standing with TBCSA.</li> <li>• When the OM and or OM initiates the request, they need to confirm with the request if the assessor must receive commission on the full amount before discount and or the net amount after the discount</li> <li>• Properties that are funded of the assessment fees:</li> <li>• These funding requests are managed, controlled and initiated on the grading system by the OM, assistant OM and the PMA's;</li> <li>• The OM and or assistant OM initiate the request and when submitting to the Finance Manager endorses the funding request and that the establishment is entitled to the funding in terms of the MOU.</li> <li>• Confirm with the request if the assessor must receive commission on the full amount before funding and or the net amount after the funding.</li> <li>• Hereafter the Finance Manager receive a notification from the grading system to do a second endorsement/rejection the request;</li> <li>• If funding is endorsed and the invoice is fully paid, the properties will be downloaded onto the Assessor laptop tool upon synchronization;</li> <li>• If funding is declined, the payment of grading assessment fees would then be the property owner's responsibility</li> </ul>	<p>Yesakhiwo izofakwa kukhompuyutha Yomhloli;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Umhloli engashedula ukuhlola nabakoleki belevi ye-TOMSA Yesakhiwo bathola okunye ukwaphulelwa ngokwesimo saso futhi uma sisendaweni efanele ne-TBCSA.</li> <li>• Uma i-OM noma i-OM iqala isicelo, kudingeka ukuthi baqinisekise isicelo ukuthi umhloli kumele athole imali egcwele ngaphambi kwesaphulelo kanye noma imali egcwele emuva kwesaphulelo</li> <li>• Impahla ekhokhelwe yezimali zokuhlolwa</li> <li>• Lezi zicelo ezikhokelwe zezimali zokuhlolwa:</li> <li>• Lezi zicelo zezimali ziphethwe, ziyalawulwa futhi ziqalwa ohlelweni lokugreda yi-OM, umsizi we-OM kanye nama-PMA;</li> <li>• I-OM kanye noma umsizi we-OM uqala isicelo futhi uma ehambisa umphathi Wezezimali uyasivumela isicelo semali kanye nokuthi Isakhiwo sinelungelo lokuthola ngokwemigomo ye-MOU.</li> <li>• Ukuqinisekisa isicelo ukuthi ngabe umhloli kumele athole imali ngokwekhomishini ngokugcwele ngaphambi kwemali noma imali isiyonke emuva kwemali</li> <li>• Lapha Umphathi Wezezimali uthola isaziso esisuka ohlelweni lokugreda ukuthi enze ukuvumela/ukunqaba kwesibili kwesicelo;</li> <li>• Uma imali ivunyelwe futhi i-invoyisi ikhokhelwe ngokugcwele, impahla izofakwa kukhompuyutha yomhloli;</li> <li>• Uma imali inqatshelwe, ukukhokhela kokuhlolwa kokugreda kuzoba umsebenzi womnikazi wempahla</li> </ul>
Payment details	Imininingwane yokukhokha
Reminder sent at day 30 & 60	Isikhumbuzo esithunyelwa ngosuku lwama-30 & 60
No payment received	Akukho ukukhokha okutholakele
Full Payment Received & paid in Full?	Ukukhokhelwa okugcwele Kutholakele & Kukhokhwe Ngokugcwele
Partial Payment	Ukukhokhwa kwengxenywe
Grading system reflects outstanding amount on Assessor Portfolio Management Tool	Uhlelo Lokugreda luveza imali ekweltwayo EthuluziniLokuphathwa Kwephothifoliyo Yomhloli

Grading system generate reminder and send it to Establishment and Assessor	Uhlelo lokugreda lukhipha isikhumbuzo bese lisithumela Esakhiweni kanye Nomhloli
Payment received from Establishment within 85 days of invoice generation?	Imali ekhokhiwe esuka Esakhiweni ezinsukwini ezingama-85 zokukhishwa kwe-invoyisi?
Cancel application automatically	Ukukhanselwa kwesicelo ngokuzenzakalela
Send an instruction to Financial System to create a credit note to cancel the original invoice	Ukuthunyelwa komyalelo Ohlelweni Lwezezimali ukuthi lwakhe isikweletu ukukhansela i-invoyisi yokuqala
Integrate back to Grading system with the credit note number and details to set the outstanding balance on Grading system	Ukubuyisela Ohlelweni Lokugreda nenombolo yesikweletu kanye neminingwane ukusetha inani Ohlelweni Lokugreda
Application cancelled	Ukukhanselwa Kwesicelo
New invoice discounts And funding	Isaphulelo kanye nemali ye-invoyisi entsha
Establishment will download on the Assessor's Grading system laptop application	Isakhiwo sizofaka ohlelweni lomhloli Lokugreda kukhompuyutha
Establishment assigned to Assessor	Isakhiwo esinikwe Umhloli
Assess Establishment	Ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo
Assessor must check Assessor Portfolio daily, for amounts less than R10 he/she must contact the PMA to obtain approval for the amount outstanding to be disregarded and offset.	Umhloli kumele abheke iphotifoloyi njalo, ngezimali ezingaphansi kuka R10 kumele axhumane i-PMA ukuthola imvume yemali ekweletwayo ukuthi isuswe.
<b>4.4 Application for Renewal of Grading</b>	<b>Isicelo Sokuvuselelwa Kokugredwa</b>
Identify every Establishment for which Grading is due for Renewal	Ukubona Isakhiwo ngasinye okumele Sivuselelwe
Establishments are identified as needing a renewal invoice if their current membership will expire within 120 days of the current month	Izakhiwo ezitholakala ukuthi zidinga ukuvuselelwa i-invoyisi yobulunga baso bamanje buzophelwa yisikhathi ezinsukwini eziyi-120 zenyanga yaamanje
Monthly batch of properties for which grading is up for renewal sent to billing system	Impahla eningi yanyanga zonke okumele igredelwe ukuvusekelwe ithunyelwa ohlelweni olubiza imali
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the payment is received in full and receipted before the end of day 85, the Establishment is assigned to an Assessor, and the Establishment details will download to the Assessor laptop;</li> <li>• The Assessor can then schedule an assessment with the Establishment</li> <li>• TOMSA levy collectors receive a further discount depending on their status and if they are in good standing with TBCSA.</li> <li>• When the OM and or OM initiates the request, they need to confirm with the request if the assessor must receive commission on the full amount before discount and or the net amount after the</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uma imali ekhokhiwe itholakele ngokugcwele ngaphambi kokuphela kosuku lwama-85, Isakhiwo sinikwa Umhloli, bese kuthi iminingwane izongena kukhompuyutha Yomhloli;</li> <li>• Umhlelo engashedulela ukuhlola Isakhiwo;</li> <li>• Abaqoqi belevi be-TOMSA bathola okunye ukwaphulelwa kuncike esimweni sabo kanye nokuthi basesimeni esihle-TBCSA.</li> <li>• Uma i-OM iqala isicelo, kudingeka ukuthi baqinisekise nesicelo ukuthi Umhloli kumele athole inani eligcwele lokwaphulelwa futhi noma imali egcwele</li> </ul>

<p>discount Properties that are funded of the assessment fees:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• These funding requests are managed, controlled and initiated on the grading system by the OM, assistant OM and the PMA's;</li> <li>• The OM and or assistant OM initiate the request and when submitting to the Finance Manager endorses the funding request and that the establishment is entitled to the funding in terms of the MOU.</li> <li>• Confirm with the request if the assessor must receive commission on the full amount before funding and or the net amount after the funding.</li> <li>• Hereafter the Finance Manager receive a notification from the grading system to do a second endorsement/rejection the request;</li> <li>• If funding is endorsed and the invoice is fully paid, the properties will be downloaded onto the Assessor laptop tool upon synchronization;</li> <li>• If funding is declined, the payment of grading assessment fees would then be the property owner's responsibility</li> </ul>	<p>emuva kwesaphulelo sempahla ekhokhelwa imali yokuhlolwa</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lezi zicelo zemali ziphathwe, ziyalawulwa futhi ziqalwe ohlelweni lokugreda yi-MO noma umsizi we-OM kanye ne-PMA;</li> <li>• I-OM kanye nomsizi we-OM uqala isicelo futhi lapho ehambisa Kumphathi Wezezimali uvuma isicelo semali kanye nokuthi isakhiwo sifanele ukuthola imali ngokwemigomo ye-MOU.</li> <li>• Ukuqinisekisa nesicelo ukuthi umhloli kumele athole imali yekhomishini egcwele ngaphambi kwemali kanye noma imali isiyonke emuva kokukhokhelwa.</li> <li>• Lapha Umphathi Wezezimali uthola isaziso esisuka ohlelweni lokugreda ukuthi avume/anqabe okwesibili isicelo;</li> <li>• Uma imali ivunyelwe futhi i-invoyisi ikhokhelwe ngokugcwele, impahla izofakwa kukhompuyutha yomhloli;</li> <li>• Uma imali inqatshelwe, ukukhokhela izimali zokuhlolwa kokugreda kuzoba umsebenzi womphathi</li> </ul>
Payment Details	Imininingwane yokukhokha
Assessor to follow- up with Establishment regarding the partial payment	Umdloli uzolandeleva Isakhiwo maqondana nokukhokha ingxeny
Follow-up outstanding payment with Establishment	Uzolandeleva ukukhokwa kwesikweletu Kwesakhiwo
Assessor must check Assessor Portfolio daily amounts less than R10 he/she must contact the PMA to obtain approval for the amount outstanding to be disregarded if applicable	Umdloli kumele abheke imali engaphansi kuka-R10 yephothifoliyo njalo kumele axhumane ne-PMA ukuthola imvume yemali ekweletwayo ukuthi ingathathwa njengesebenzayo
Generate reminder notifications about the invoice and send them to Establishments and Assessors for any outstanding payments	Ukuphuma kwesikhumbuzo mayelana ne-invoyisi bese sithunyelwa Esakhiweni kanye Nakumhloli mayelana nemali ekweletwayo
No payment received	Ayikho imali etholiwe
Invoices followed by reminder notifications at 60 days and 30 days.	I-invoyisi ilandelwa yisikhumbuzo ezinsukwini wzingama-60 kanye nama-30
Has a partial payment been received?	Ngabe ingxeny yemali itholakele?
Grading system reflects outstanding amount on Assessor Portfolio Management Tool	Uhlelo Lokugreda luveza imali ekweletwayo Ethuluzini Lomhloli Lokuphatha Iphothifoliyo
Has the membership expiry date passed	Ngabe usuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi lobulunga selufikile?

partial payment received	Ukutholwa kwengxenywe yemali
Cancel membership automatically	Ukukhansela ubulunga ngokuzenzakalela
Send an instruction to Financial System to create a credit note to cancel the original invoice	Ukuthunyelwa komyalela Ohlelweni Lwezezimali ukuthi lwakhe isikweletu ukukhansela i-invoyisi yokuqala
New invoice discounts And funding	i-invoyisi yokwaphulelwa kanye nemali
Establishment Will download on the Assessors Grading system laptop application	Isakhiwo sizothatha uhlelo lokugreda kukhompuyutha Yomhloli
Establishment assigned to Assessor	Umhloli unikwa Isakhiwo
Assess Establishment	Ukuhlola Isakhiwo
Payments received after membership has been terminated are refunded	Imali ekhokhwe emuva kokuthi kuqedwe ubulunga ibuyiselwa emuva
The establishment and Assessor receive an automated cancellation notification	Isakhiwo kanye Nomhloli bathola isaziso sokukhansela esizenzekalelayo
All renewal invoices are processed 90 days prior to expiry date; however these invoices will only get generated and sent the first day after the new Financial System period is opened	Konke ukuvuselelwa kwe-invoyisi kuyenziwa ezinsukwini ezingama-90 ngaphambi kosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi; kodwa lama-invoyisi azokhishwa bese eyathunyelwa osukwini lokuqala emuva kokuvulwa Kohlelo Lwezezimali olusha
Generate invoice and send it to Establishment and Assessor 90 days before the end date of current membership	Ukukhishwa kwe-invoyisi kanye nokuyithumela Esakhiweni kanye Nakumhloli ezinsukwini ezingama-90 ngaphambi kosuku lokuphela kobulunga
Payment must be received and receipted before or on the expiry date	Imali kumele itholakale futhi yenzelwe irisidi ngaphambi noma ngosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi
Review Bank statements daily to pick up payments that have been made by Establishments on the previous working day	Ukubhekwa kwesitatimende sasebhangwe njalo ukubheka imali ekhokhwe Yisakhiwo ngosuku lwangaphambilini lokusebenza
This is subject to the relevant Billing period being open (see Financial System closing Dates)	Lokhu kuncike esikhathini esifanele sokubizwa kwemali ukuthi sivuliwe yini (bheka izinsuku zokuvalwa Kohlelo Lwezezimali)
Allocate receipts for payment immediately, based on references provided for payments reflected on Bank statements	Ukukhishwa kwamarisidi okukhokha ngokushesha, ngokwenkomba ehlinzekiwe yokukhokha okuvela esitatimendeni sasebhangwe
Receipting	Ukwenza irisidi
Integration to Grading system	Ukufaka Ohlelweni Lokugreda
Engage Assessors to assist in identifying the Establishments that made the unidentified payments	Khuluma naahloli ukuthi basize ekuboneni Izakhiwo ezikhokhe imali engaziwa
No	Cha
End	Yebo

When payment is made and the 10 digit Invoice Number is not used as a reference number it will be regarded as an unidentified transaction. Transactions can also be traced by details such as the establishment name, or Invoice Number if they were used as a reference.	Uma imali ikhokhiwe kodwa inombolo ye-invoyisi enezinombolo eziyi-10 yenkomba ayisetshenziswanga, kuzothathwa njengemali engaziwa Imali ekhokhiwe ingalandelelwa ngemininingwane enjengegama lesakhiwo, noma Inombolo Ye-invoyisi uma kusetshenziswe njengenkomba
Engage Assessors to assist in identifying the Establishments that made the unidentified payments	Ukukhuluma nabahloli ukuthi basize ukubona Izakhiwo ezikhokhe imali engaziwa
Weekly list sent to Assessors , PMAs and Operations	Uhla lweviki luthunyelwa Kubahloli, ama-PMA kanye Nabezokusebenza
Provide feedback with supporting proof of payment to transaction to be allocated	Ukunikela impendulo nebufakazi obesekelayo bokukhokha imali ezokwabiwa
Proof of payment for transaction	Ubufakazi bokukhokha
Unidentified payments to be allocated	Imali engaziwa iyabiwa
Within 1 week once the payer has been identified	Evikini eli-1 amuva kokuthi umkhoki etholakele
Establishment is automatically removed from grading website listings	Isakhiwo sisusiwe ngokuzenzakalela ohlwini lokugreda kuwebhusayithi
Membership cancellation complete	Ukukhanselwa kobulunga kuqedliwe
<b>4.5. Physical Assessment of Establishment</b>	<b>4.5 Ukuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo</b>
Establishment assigned to Assessor	Isakhiwo sinikwa Umhloli
Synchronize laptop application daily to receive an update of all newly assigned properties form Database	Ukusakhronaza ikhompuyutha ukuthola ulwazi lwayo yonke impahla
Schedule assessment and update Grading system	Ukuhlola okusheduliwe kanye nokubuyekeza uhlelo lokugreda
Establishment requested information ahead of the Meeting?	Ukutholakala kolwazi oluceliwe ngaphambili komhlangano?
No	Cha
Yes	Yebo
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Within 5 calendar days of assignment of Establishment to the Assessor</li> <li>• Conduct grading assessment on a new membership within 4 months from date of invoice payment reflecting in Grading system</li> <li>• Conduct grading assessment for renewals – from the date of the invoice payment reflecting on Grading System and Establishment assigned to the Assessor but before the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting within the</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ezinsukwini ezi-5 zekhalenda zokunikwa Isakhiwo Umhloli</li> <li>• Ukwenza ukuhlola ukugreda ebulungeni ezinyangeni ezi-4 kusukela osukwini lokukhokhelwa kwe-invoyisi Ohlelweni Lokugreda</li> <li>• Ukwenza ukuhlola kokugreda kokuvuselela – kusukela osukwini lapho imali ivela Ohlelweni Lokugreda kanye Nesakhiwo esinikwe Umhloli kodwa</li> </ul>

month of expiry.	ngaphambi Komhlangano Wayanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO enyangeni yokuphelelwa yisikhathi
Forward requested information to establishment	Dlulisa ulwazi oluceliwe esakhiweni
arrival at Establishment, explain the standards and processes of becoming graded before beginning the assessment	Ukufika esakhiweni, ukuchaza amazing kanye nezinhlalo zokugredwa ngaphambi kokuqala ukuhlola
Assess the establishment using the relevant category minimum requirements and grading criteria	Hlola isakhiwo ngokusebenzisa uhlobo olufanele lokugreda
Discuss and agree preliminary results, including Dispensation and Grace Period requests and way forward with Establishment.	Dingida bese kuvunyelwana ngemiphumela, okuhlanganisa Ukukhipha kanye Nesikhathi Somusa kanye nenqubekela phambili Nesakhiwo
Has the establishment requested dispensation or grace periods	Ngabe isakhiwo sicele ukukhishwa noma isikhathi somusa
Motivations should be provided in writing as part of the application	Izincazelo kumele zihlinzekwe engxenyeni yokubhala yesicelo
Sign all post assessment forms with the Establishment e.g. assessment consultation form	Ukusayina onke amafomu emuva kokuhlola isb. ifomu lokuhlangana kokuhlola
Clarify Star Recommendations and Category as recorded on the consultation Form	Cacisa inkanyezi enconyiwe kanye nohlobo njengokuba kubhaliwe efomini lokuhlangana
Update Establishment details when applicable	Ukubuyekeza imininingwane Yesakhiwo uma kunesidingo
Establishment details to be confirmed during assessment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Verified Room rates</li> <li>• Number of rooms</li> <li>• Contact information</li> </ul>	Imininingwane yesakhiwo okumele iqinisekiswa ngesikhathi sokuhlola <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Imali Yegumbi Eqinisekiwe</li> <li>• Inani lamagumbi</li> <li>• Imininingwane yokuxhumana</li> </ul>
Complete all administrative tasks and reporting on Grading system, attaching all supporting documentation	Ukuqedwa kwayo yonke imisebenzi yokuphatha kanye nokubika Ohlelweni Lokugreda, kufakwe yonke imiqulu yokweseka
Required supporting documentation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photographs taken by the Assessor</li> <li>• Signed Assessment Consultation Form</li> <li>• Letter of Motivation for Dispensation &amp;/ Grace Period (If Applicable)</li> <li>• Universal Accessibility non compliance consultation form (when applicable) consultation form (when applicable)</li> <li>• Other required documents where applicable to specific categories</li> </ul>	Imiqulu yokweseka efunekayo: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izithombe ezithathwe Umhloli</li> <li>• Ifomu elisayiniwe Lokuhlangana Lokuhlola</li> <li>• Incwadi yencazelo Yokukhishwa &amp;/ Yesikhathi Somusa (uma kunesidingo)</li> <li>• Ifomu lomhlangano wokuhambisana nokutholakala kuwo wonke umuntu (uma kufanele)</li> <li>• Neminye imiqulu efanele ezinhlobeni ezithile</li> </ul>
Submit the assessment report and supporting documents to PMA through Grading system	Ukuhambisa umbiko wokuhlola Kanye nemiqulu eyesekayo ku-PMA Ngohlelo Lokugreda
No later than 7 calendar days after assessment	Ngaphani kwezinsuku eziyi-7 emuva kokuhlola
Establishment assessment report and supporting documentation submitted	Ukuhambisa umbiko wokuhlola kwesakhiwo kanye nemiqulu eyesekayo
Pre-Screening of Motivation from Assessor	Ukuchazwa kokubhekwa kwangaphambili okusuka Kumhloli

4.6. Pre-Screening of Motivation from Assessor	4.6 Incazelo Esuka Kumhloli Yokuhlolwa Ngaphambilini
Establishment onsite assessment completed	Ukuhlolwa kwendawo yesakhiwo kuqedliwe
Review all reports and supporting documentation submitted by Assessor and provide feedback	Ukubhekwa kwayo yonke imibiko Kanye nemiqulu eyesekayo kuhanjiswe Umhloli kanye nokunika impendulo
Establishment assessment report & supporting documents	Umbiko wokuhlolwa kwesakhiwo & nemiqulu eyesekayo
within 7 calendar days of receiving submission from Assessor	Ezinsukwini eziyi-7 zekhalenda zokuthola ukuhambisa okusuka Umhloli
Does the submission include Grace period and/or dispensation requests?	Ngabe ukuhambisa kuhlenganisa Isikhathi somusa kanye/noma ukukhishwa
<p>Provincial Master Assessor must check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The marketing collateral is current, correct and is in line with the assessor report provided – collateral is true and authentic</li> <li>• The collateral must be in the format required by the Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting</li> <li>• If there is a Universal Accessibility grading recommended, there must be accompanying collateral</li> <li>• If there is an upgrade/downgrade grading recommended, there must be accompanying collateral in the prescribed format and a proper motivation</li> <li>• Ensure that the establishment and assessor have accepted the terms of the consultation by signing the Assessment Consultation Form.</li> <li>• Verify that written motivations are provided for each issue for which a dispensation and or grace period has been requested</li> <li>• Conduct a comparison on between new and past collateral where relevant to verify assessment outcomes</li> </ul>	<p>Umhloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe kumele abheke lokhu okulandelayo:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukuhlenganiswa kwezokumaketha okwamanje, kuyiqiniso futhi kuhambisana nombiko womhloli - ukuhlenganiswa kuyiqiniso</li> <li>• Ukuhlenganiswa kumele kube yindlela edingwa Umhlangani Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla We-EXCO</li> <li>• Uma kunesincomo Sokutholakala kuwo wonke umuntu esikhona, kumele kube nokuhlenganisa okuhambisana naso ngendlela enqunyiwe kanye nencazelo efanele</li> <li>• Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi isakhiwo kanye nomhloli bamukele imigomo yokuhlenganisa ngokusayina Ifomu Lokuhlangana Lokuhlola</li> <li>• Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi incazelo ebhaliwe ihlinzekiwe yodaba ngalunye lapho ukukhishwa kanye noma isikhathi somusa kuceliwe</li> <li>• Ukwenza ukuqhathanisa lapho ukuhlenganisa okusha kanye nokudala lapho kufanele ukuqinisekisa imiphumela</li> </ul>
Yes	Yebo
Are the motivations clear and acceptable?	Izincazelo zicacile futhi zamukelekile?
Resubmit within 2 working days after receiving feedback. (Note: The deadline for resubmissions to be considered is the cut	Ukuphinde kuhanjiswe ezinsukwini ezi-2 emuva kokuthola impendulo. (Qaphela:
Types of motivations	Izinhlobo zezincazelo
Grace Period submitted?	Isikhathi somusa sihanjisiwe?
Provide written feedback to the assessor raising issues to be addressed, and return the submission to the Assessor	Ukuhlinzeka impendulo ebhaliwe kumhloli eveza izinto okumele kubhekanwe nazo, bese kubuyiswa ukuhambisa Kumhloli
Approve and send to Operations	Ukuvumela bese kuhanjiswa Kwezokusebenza

Record that Grace Period has been granted	Ukurekhoda ukuthi Isikhathi Somusa sivunyelwe
Reasons for declining Grace Periods: - PMA does not agree with the extension , - Too many MERs that they do not comply with • If there are more than 4 MERs not being complied with, • The decision is also influenced by impact of MER and scale of corrective measures required:. • Time it will take to address • Number of rooms affected • Size of establishment • Safety aspects • Criticality and risks	Izizathi zokunqabela Isikhathi Somusa: - I-PMA ayivumelani nokuqhutshekwa, - Kunama-MER amaningi angahambisani  • Uma kunama-MER angaphezu kwa-4 okungahanjiswa nawo, • Isinqumo siphinde sathelwa ukuthinteka kwe-MER kanye nesikali sezindlela zokulungisa okudingekayo:. • Isikhathi okuzosithatha ukubhekana nakho • Inani lamagumbi athintekayo • Ubukhulu besakhiwo • Izindlela zokuphepha • Ubungozi
Does the submission comply overall	Ngabe ukuhambisa kuyahambisana nayo yonke into
Submit Complying Establishments to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO meeting	Hambisa izakhiwo ezihambisanayo zomhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO
Unprecedented motivations or the submission has exceptions/dispensation requests requiring Management advice	Incazelo entsha noma ukuhambisa kwezicelo zokukhululwa/ukukhishwa okudinga umbono Wabaphathi
Provide written feedback to Assessor,	Hlinzeka impendulo ebhaliwe Kumhloli,
Establishments submitted to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO meeting	Izakhiwo ezihanjiswe Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla WE-exco
Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting	Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO
Consult Operations Manager	Xoxisana Nomphathi Wezezokusebenza
Establishments submitted to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting	Izakhiwo ezihanjiswe Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla WE-exco
Provide written feedback to Assessor and Provincial Master Assessor	Hlinzeka impendulo ebhaliwe Kumhloli kanye Nakumhloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe
Can the Establishment be included in the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting?	Ngabe Isakhiwo singafakwa Emhlanganweni Wanyanga Zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO?
Provide advice and determine if the Establishment should be included in the Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting	Ukuhlinzeka kanye nokunquma ukuthi ngabe Isakhiwo kufanele sifakwe Emhlanganweni Wanyanga Zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO?
Resubmit within 2 working days after receiving feedback. (Note: The deadline for Resubmissions to be considered is the cut off for the upcoming Monthly EXCO Property Meeting less 5 days)	Phinda kuhanjiswe ezinsukwini ezi-2 emuva kokuthola impendulo (Isaziso: Usuku lomnqamula juqu ukuphinda kuhanjiswe ukuze kuthathwe ingaphansi kwezinsuku ezi-5 zomhlangano ozayo Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla)
Review PMA feedback, substantiate and/or submit required additional information.	Ukubuyekezwa kwempendulo ye-PMA, ukuchaza kanye/noma ukuhambisa eminye imininingwane.

Send to Assessor for review and update	Ukuthumela kumhloli ukuthi abheke aphinde abuyekeze
Dispensation approved	Ukukhishwa kuvunyelwe
Review request for Dispensation and determine if it can be approved	Ukubheka isicelo sokukhishwa bese kunqunywa ukuthi singavunyelwa yini
Send to Council (formerly Awards Committee) for review and update	Ukuthimela Emkhandlwini (owaziwa Ngekomidi Lemiklomelo)
Within 7 calendar days after the quarterly meeting Assessor for review and update	Ezinsukwini eziyisi-7 zekhalenda emuva komhlangano wekota Umhloli ukuthi abheke
<b>4.8. Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting</b>	<b>4.8. Umhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla</b>
Establishments submitted to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO meeting	Isakhiwo sihambisile Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla
Send the portfolio numbers to the Assessors 10 calendar days before the meeting	Hambisa izinombolo zephothifoliyo kuMhloli ezinsukwini eziyi-10 zekhalenda ngaphambi komhlangano
Raise any questions or queries regarding the numbers within 3 working days of receiving the portfolio	Phakamisa yonke imibuzo maqondana nezinombolo ezinsukwini ezi-3 zokuthola iphothifoliyo
Before properties meeting, pull a list of each Assessors portfolio number and commission rate, and review and approve the commissions to be used in the meeting	Ngaphambi komhlangano wempahla, khipha uhla lwenombolo Yomhloli ngamunye yephothifoliyo kanye nemali yekhomishini, bese ubuyekeza kanye nokukumela amakhomishini ukuthi asetshenziswe emhlanganweni
Ensure all Properties submitted by PMA are allocated for discussion in the meeting	Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi yonke Impahla ehanjiswe i-PMA ifakiwe ukuthi kukhulunywe ngayo emhlanganweni
Evaluate each Establishment submitted by PMA for grading and determine if the submission is approved	Ukubheka Isakhiwo ngasinye esihanjiswe ku-PMA ukuze sigredwe bese kunqunywa ukuthi ukuhanjiswa kuyavunyelwa
Is the Establishment and grading approved?	Ngabe Isakhhiwo kanye nokugreda kuvunyelwe?
Update Grading system to reflect that the establishment has been approved	Buyekeza uhlelo Lokugreda ukuthi kubonakale ukuthi isakhiwo sivunyelwe
No – Failed after 3 Assessor Reviews	Cha – Asiphumelelanga emuva kokuthi sibhekwe Abahloli aba-3
Select and assign a different Assessor to conduct the audit	Khetha bese kunikwa abahloli abahlukene ukuthi benze ukucwaninga amabhuku
Conduct audit and provide feedback	Ukwenziwa kokucwaninga kwamabhuku bese kuhlinzekwa impendulo
The application can be resubmitted no more than 3 times before it is rejected	Isicelo singaphinda sihanjiswe ngaphansi kwezikhathi ezi-3 ngaphambi kokuthi siinqatshelwe
Re-submit the revised Establishment submissions to Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting for approval	Ukuhanjiswa kabusha Kwesakhiwo esebhekwe kabusha Emhlanganweni Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla kuthi sivunyelwe
Review Award Committee feedback, substantiate and/or submit required additional information.	Impendulo Yokubheka Kwekomidi Lokuklomelisa, ukweseka kanye/noma ukuhambisa imininingwane eyengeziwe.

Provide feedback and support to assessors regarding properties sent back to Assessor Review	Ukuhlinzeka impendulo kanye nokweseka kubahloli maqondana nempahla ebuyiselwe emuva ukuthi ibhekwe
No - Questions and issues to be clarified	Akukho – imibuzo okumele icaciswe
No - Audit required	Akukho – Ukucwangingwa kwamabhuku okudingekayo
- list must be checked and verified as complete and correct by Operations and then by CQAO - approved list must be recorded into Grading System and submit a signed copy of AP clerk – stored for audit purposes	-uhla kumele lubhekwe futhi luqinisekiswa njengoluphelele Abezokusebenza kanye ne-CQAO -uhla oluvunyelwe kumele lurekhodwe Ohlelweni Lokugreda bese kuhanjiswa ikhophiesayiniwe yeklekhi le-AP – kubekelwe izinhloso zokucwangingwa kwamabhuku
Monthly Property Approvals EXCO Meeting Establishment List consist of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New Applications</li> <li>• Renewals (including rejoins)</li> <li>• Upgrades</li> <li>• Downgrades</li> <li>• UA Establishment</li> <li>• Random sample of submitted properties</li> <li>• Failed Application</li> </ul>	Uhla Lomhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla lunalokhu okulandelayo: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izicelo ezintsha</li> <li>• Ukuvuselelwa (okuhlenganisa nokujoyina futhi)</li> <li>• Ukukhuphuka</li> <li>• Ukwehla</li> <li>• Izakhiwo ze=-UA</li> <li>• Isampula lempahla elilethiwe</li> <li>• Izicelo ezinqatshelwe</li> </ul>
Approval letters, and electronic copies of certificates and assessment reports are sent to establishments automatically from Grading system	Izincwadi zokuvumela, kanye namakhophi obuchwepheshe ezitifiketi kanye nemibiko yokuhlola kuthunyelwa ezakhiweni ngokuzenzakalela kusuka ohlelweni Lokugreda
Establishment grading approved and confirmed	Ukugredwa kwesakhiwo kuvunyelwe futhi kwaqinisekiswa
Award Certificates and Plaques	Ukuklonyeliswa ngezitifiketi kanye namaplakhu
Application rejection letters are automatically sent to establishments that have been failed, and will be cancelled on Grading system	Izincwadi zezicelo ezinqatshiwe zithunyelwa izakhiwo ezingaphumelelanga ngokuzenzakalela, bese ziyakhanselwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda
Establishment rejected	Sakhiwo asivunyelwanga
<b>4.9 Awarding Certificates and Plaques</b>	<b>4.9. Ukunikezela Ngezitifiketi kanye Namaplakhu</b>
New Establishment grading approved and confirmed	UKugredwa kwesakhiwo esisha kuvunyelwe futhi kwaqinisekiswa
Identify properties in Grading system that must not receive a plaque	Ukubona izakhiwo ohlelweni Lokugreda okungamele zithola iplakhu
Plaques are not issued for <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New Establishments that have been granted a grace period</li> <li>• Renewals – establishment has a plaque</li> <li>• Expressly requested not to receive a plaque;</li> </ul>	Amaplakhu awakhishelwa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izakhiwo ezintsha ezinikwe isikhathi somusa</li> <li>• Ukwenzowa kabusha – isakhiwo sinalo iplakhu</li> <li>• Sicelile ukuthi singanikwa iplakhu</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Re-join properties who would have previously been in the system unless otherwise stated</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izakhiwo ezijoyina kabusha ebezisohlelweni ngaphambilini ngaphandle uma kubekwa ngokunye</li> </ul>
New plaque required?	Iplakhu entsha iyadingeka
Does the Establishment have pending issues to address during a permitted grace period	Ngabe isakhiwo sinezinkinga ezingakaxazululwa okumele zixazululwe ngesikhathi somusa esivunyelwe
Flag on Grading system to indicate that a plaque is not required	Ifulegi elisohlelweni Lokugreda liveza ukuthi iplakhu eyidingeki
Flag on Grading system to indicate that a plaque is required	Ifulegi elisohlelweni Lokugreda luveza ukuthi iplakhu iyadingeka
Add comment on establishment list regarding grace period and outstanding actions	Ukufakwa kombono ohlwini lwezakhiwo maqondana nesikhathi somusa kanye nezinto ezingakenziwa
Delay plaque order until the issues for which the grace period has been granted are addressed	Kumiswe i-oda leplakhu kuze kuba izinkinga zesikhathi somusa esivunyelwe ziyaxazululwa
Indirect removal of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approving POs created in Financial System</li> <li>PO email notification generation from grading system</li> </ul>	Ukukhishwa okungaqondile ko-: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Kokwenziwa ngcono kwama-PO akhiwe Ohlelweni Lwezimali</li> <li>Ukukhishwa kwesaziso semeyili se-PO esisuka ohlelweni lokugreda</li> </ul>
Approve the meeting Grading system	Ukwenziwa ngcono umhlangano Wohlelo Lokugreda
Manually – Send final list of approved graded properties to Finance	Ngemanuwali – ukuhanjiswa kohla lwempahla egrediwe Kwezezimali
List of graded properties sent to Finance	Uhla lwempahla egrediwe luthunyelwe Kwezezimali
Pay Assessors	Ukukhokhelwa kwabahloli
Manually - Send final list of approved graded properties to Marketing Team	Ngemanuwali – ukuthumela uhla lokugcina lwempahla evunyelwe Ethimbeni Lokumaketha
Plaques are issued for <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>New establishments,</li> <li>Upgrades,</li> <li>Downgrades</li> <li>Change of category</li> <li>Establishments that had been granted a grace period (plaques outstanding) which have met the requirements (new and renewals)</li> <li>Additional plaque request</li> </ul>	Amaplakhu athunyelwe <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izakhiwo ezintsha</li> <li>Ukukhushulwa</li> <li>Ukwehliswa</li> <li>Ukushintswa kohlobo</li> <li>Izakhiwo ezinikwe isikhathi somusa (ezikweletwa amaplakhu) ezihambisana nezimfuneko (ezintsha kanye nezivuselelwayo)</li> <li>Izicelo zamaplakhu ezengeziwe</li> </ul>
Application for Renewal of Grading	Izicelo Zokuvuselels ukugreda
Grading Completed	Ukugreda kuphelile
Plaque And Certificate issued and sent to Establishment	Amaplakhu kanye Nezitifiketi ziyanikezwa bese zithunyelwa esakhiweni
Review and list and follow-up with manufacturer	Ukubheka kanye nokwenza uhla kanye nokulandelela umkhqizi
Delivered within 6 weeks of order placement	Ukudiliva emavikini ayi-6 okwenziwa kwe-oda
Receive a list of properties which will be used to	Ukuthola uhlu lwempahla oluzosetshenziswa

order and track plaques	ukwena i-oda kanye nokulandelela amaplakhu
A list of plaques to be issued is generated automatically in the Plaque Management System and can be accessed by Plaque Manufacturer online	Uhla lwamaplakhu azokhishwa lukhishwa ngokuzenzakalela Ohlelweni Lokuphathwa Kwama-plakhu futhi lungatholakala ku-intanethi Umkhiqizi Wamaplakhu
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SMS notifications are sent to Establishments to advise them of deliveries</li> <li>Failed certificate delivery and plaque deliveries must be reported to the Assessors</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izaziso zama-SMS ziyathinyelwa Ezakiweni ukuzazsa ngokudiliva</li> <li>Ukudiliviwa okungaphumelelanga kwezitifiketi kanye nama-plakhu kumele kubikwe Kubahloli</li> </ul>
<b>4.10. Payment of Assessors</b>	<b>4.10. Ukukhokhelwa Kwabahloli</b>
Grading system	Uhlelo lokugreda
Financial System	Uhlelo Lwezezimali
Assessor	Umhloli
TGCSA Operations	Ezokusebenza ze-TGCSA
TGCSA Account Payable Clerk	Iklekhi Lokukhokhelwa kwama-Akhawunti
TGCSA Finance Manager	Umphathi Wezezimali we-TGCSA
Operational Manager	Umphathi Wezokusebenza
CQAO	CQAO
TGCSA Accountant	Owezezimali
List of graded Establishments sent to Finance	Uhla lwezakhiwo ezigrediwe luthunyelwa Kwezezimali
Send message to Financial System for Assessor payments to be initiated, and send PO notification to the Assessors	Kuthunyelwa umyalezo wokukhokhelwa Komhloli ukuthi kuqalwe, bese kuthunyelwa se-PO Kubahloli
Generate	Ukukhipha
Submit invoices against PO notification	Ukuhanjiswa kwama-invoyisi ngmyalezo we-PO
within 3 working days	Ezinsukwini ezi-3
To be submitted via email to : assessorinvoices@tourismgrading.co.za	Kuhanjiswe ngemeyili ku: assessorinvoices@tourismgrading.co.za
This action confirms services have been delivered as per the approved meeting list Receipting can begin the day after the meeting	Isenzo siqinisekisa amasevisi eziwe nengokuba kuvunyelwene ohlwini lomhlangano, ukwamukela kungaqala emuva komhlangano
Receipt POs based on the properties approved	Amarisidi ama-PO ngokempahla evunyelwe
Prepare a remittance advice, and verify properties on the remittance advice match properties on PO email Notification, Awards list, Financial System PO and Assessor Invoice	Ukulungiswa kwesiyalo, bese kuqinisekiswa impahla ngokwesiyalo kuhambisane nempahla nesaziso semeyili ye-PO, uhla Lwemiklomo, Uhlelo Lwezezimali lwe-PO kanye ne-Invoyisi Yomhloli
Do a check of the Assessor Fee on approved commission rate (as approved and signed by CQAO & OM)	Ukuhlolwa kwemali omhloli yekhomishini (njengokub kuvunyiwe futhi kwasayinwa yi-CQAO & OM)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manual PO may need to be created to address amendments – must be noted on Grading system</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Imanuwali we-PO ingadinga ukuthi yenziwe ukubhekana nezichibiyelov-kumele kushiwo ohlelweni Lokugreda</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where amendments are required, they can also be addressed via Grading system if time permits for all require integrations</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lapho izichibiyelo zidingeka khona, kungabhekanwa nazo ohlelweni Lokugreda uma isikhathi sivumela konke ukuhlangana</li> </ul>
Signed Invoice	i-invoyisi esayiniwe
Load invoice on Financial System billing system	Ukufakwa kwe-invoyisi Ohlelweni Lokugreda
Match Invoice against Financial System generated PO	Ukuqhathanisa i-invoyisi ne-PO ekhishwe Uhlelo Lwezezimali
Do the invoice and PO match	Ngabe i-invoyisi kanye ne-PO kuyafana
Prepare payment requisitions and creditors trial balance, reconciliations	Lungisa ukukhokha kanye nokulinganiswa kwezezikweleti, ukubuyisana
Compile a file with all the documentation and send it to Ops Manager and CQAO for approval	Ukwenza ifayela elinayo yonke imiqulu bese ithunyelwa Kumphathi we-Ops kanye ne-CQAO ukuze livunyelwe
Invoice not paid until the mismatch is resolved Request Assessor to resubmit the invoice with the correct amount If applicable	i-invoyisi ayikhokhelwa kuze kube ukungafani kuyasombululwa Kucelwa umhloli ukuthi aphinde ahambise i-invoyisi enenani eliyiqiniso uma kufanele
Capture payment confirmation on Financial System once payment has been made	Ukubhalwa kwesiqiniseko sokukhokha Ohlelweni Lwezezimali uma sekukhokhiwe
Check EFT against payment requisition – amount is correct and check banking details are correct	Ukubheka e-EFT kanye nokukhokha – inani lemali liyiqiniso kanye neminingwane yebhange iyiqiniso
Check approvals of invoices and sign off by CQOA have been signed. Check that the invoice total agrees to the PO email notification, the assessor invoice, Financial System PO, and the payment reconciliation. Payment requisition signed if all is in order	Ukubhekwa kwezimvume zama-invoyisi kanye nokusayina yi-CQOA kwenziwe, Ukubheka ukuthi i-invoyisi isiyonke iyavumelana nesaziso se-PO semeyili, i-invoyisi ymhloli, Uhelo Lwezezimali lwe-PO, kanye nokubuyisana kwenkokhelo. Ukukhokhelwa kusayiniwe uma kwenziwe kahle
Review and sign the invoice	Ukubheka kanye nokusayina i-invoyisi
Give final approval of the invoice by reviewing and signing the invoice	Ukunika ukuvumela kokugcina kwe-invoyisi ngokubheka kanye nokusayina kwe-invoyisi
Load EFT payments [Can be done by AP Clerk or Finance Manager, in the absence of Accountant]	Ukufaka imali nge-EFT [kungenziwa iklekhi le-AP noma Umphathi Wezezimali, uma umcwangingi mabhuku engekho]
Check EFT against payment requisition – amount is correct and check banking details are correct	Ukubheka i-EFT nemali ekhokhiwe – imali iyiqiniso kanye neminingwane yebhange iyiqiniso – inani liyiqiniso kanye neminingwane iyiqiniso
Release payment [Can also be done by CFO in the absence of CQAO]	Ukukhishwa kwemali [Nakho kungenziwa yi-CFO uma i-CQAO ingekho]
By last calendar day of each month	Ngosuku lokugcina lwekhalenda lwenyanga ngayinye

<b>4.11. Establishment Assessment Impact Measurement</b>	<b>4.11. Ukukalwa Komthelela Wokuhlolwa Kwesakhiwo</b>
Marketing and Communications Manager	Umphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana
External Contractor	Usonkontileka wangaphandle
Grading Completed	Ukugredwa kuediwe
Complete all Import template and submit to External Contractor (PSA) via email	Ukugcwaliswa kwawo wonke amathempulethi asuswa ngaphandle kanye nokuhambisa Kusonkontileka Wangaphandle (PSA) ngemeyili
Monthly; 5 working days after EXCO	Njalo ngenyanga, ezinsukwini ezi-5 emuva kwe-EXCO
Send the Post Awards list	Ukuthunyelwa kohla lwangaphambi Kokuklonyeliswa
Survey reviewed 2 times in a year (every 6 six month) to determine if updates are requiredn	Ucwaningo lubheka ka-2 ngonyaka (njalo ezinyangeni eziyi-6) ukunquma ukuthi kukhona yini okumele kufakwe
Import Respondents into system	Ukufaka abaphenduli ohlelweni
Monthly; Once Received	Njalo ngenyanga; emuva kokuthi Kubhekiwe
Send survey invitation email to uploaded establishments	Ukuthumela isimemo socwaningo ngemeyili ezakhiweni esezifakiwe
Within 1 Working day of Receipt of Document	Osukwini olu-1 lokwenziwa Kwerisidi Yomqulu
Send reminder email to respondents who have not submitted the survey	Ukuthunyelwa kwemeyili eyisikhubuzo kubaphenduli abangakahambisa ucwaningo
7 calendar days after Monthly Property Approvals Exco Meeting	Ezinsukwini eziyi-7 emuva Komhlangano Wanyanga zonke Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla we-EXCO
Close the survey and generate reports (Amplix Report & Executive Summary)	Ukuvalwa kocwaningo kanye nokukhishwa kombiko (Umbiko We-Amplix & Nokufingqwa Kwabaphathi)
1 day after close of survey (14 calendar days per monitoring period)	Usuku olu-1 emuva kokuvalwa ombiko (ezinsukwini eziyi-14 ngesikhathi sokubheka)
Send both the Assessor and the operations manager the individual results of the survey	Ukuthumela Umhloli kanye nomphathi wezokusebenza imiphumela yocwaningo
Send Reports to TGCS	Ukuthumela Imibiko ku-TGCSA
Provide feedback on Impact assessment to TGCSA teams	Ukuhlinzeka impendlo ngomthelela wokuhlola emathimbei e-TGCSA
End	Ukuphela
2 Working days prior to Committee meeting	Ezinsukwini ezi-2 zokusebenza ngaphambi komhlangano wekomidi
<b>4.12. Manage Grading Standards</b>	<b>4.12. Ukuphatha Amazinga Okugreda</b>
Manage Grading Standards	Ukuphatha Amazinga Okugreda
CQAO, OM and Marketing and Communications Manager	i-CQAO, OM kanye Nomphathi Wezokumaketha kanye Nezokuxhumana
Industry (Larger tourism industry, existing clients, and key stakeholders)	Imbono (imboni enkulu yezokuvakasha, amakhasimende akhona, kanye nabambi beqhaza ababalulekile)
Awards Committee	Iklomidi lemiklomelo
Grading standards due to be reviewed (every 3	Amazinga okugreda okumele abhekwe

years	(eminyakeni emi-3)
Conduct research within the industry to determine if existing grading standards are still relevant and suitable	Ukwenza ucwango embonini ukunquma ukuthi ukugreda okukhona kusafanele yini
Sources of input include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Surveys commissioned by the TGCSA, including the monthly impact assessment,</li> <li>• Owners of Establishments,</li> <li>• Assessors,</li> <li>• All members of the TGCSA,</li> <li>• Industry Associations,</li> <li>• All other stakeholders,</li> </ul>	Imithombo yemibono ihlanganisa: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ucwango olwenziwa yi-TGCSA, okuhlanganisa umthelela wanyanga zonke wocwango,</li> <li>• Abanikazi bezakhiwo,</li> <li>• Abahloli,</li> <li>• Onke amalunga e-TGCSA,</li> <li>• Ososeshini bemboni,</li> <li>• Nabo bonke ababambe iqhaza,</li> </ul>
Review existing Grading Standards to identify those measures that may need changing	Ukubheka Amazinga Okugreda akhona ukubona ukuthi lezo zindlela ezingadinga ukushintshwa
Do some Grading Standards need changing	Ukwenza Amazinga Okugreda angadinga ukushintswa
No	Cha
Communicate that standards are staying the same	Ukusho ukuthi amazing ahlala kanjalo
End	Ukuphela
Yes	Yebo
Define new standards if required , and propose changes	Ukuncoma amazing amasha uma edingeka, bese kushiwo ushintsho
Consult industry	Ukuxoxisana nemboni
Send proposed changes to TGCSA Award Committee for approval	Ukuthumela ushintsho olunconyiwe Ekomidini Lokuklomelisa Lwe-TGCSA ukuze luvunyelwe
Provide the required information and clarification	Ukuhlizeka ulwazi kanye nokucacisa okudingekayo
Upload new standards onto Grading System Test environment	Ukufaka amazing amasha Endaweni Yokuhlolwa Kohlelo Lokugreda
User Acceptance Testing	Ukuhlola Okuvumenyelwe Kumsebenzisi
Upload new standards onto Grading system live Environment	Ukufaka Amazing amasha endaweni Yohlelo Lokugreda Ngqo
End	Ukuphela
More information / clarification required	Olunye ulwazi / nokucacisa okudingekayo
Review proposed changes and determine if they can be approved	Ukubheka ushintsho olunconyiwe kanye nokunquma ukuthi lungavunyelwa yini
Updates to Grading Standards Approved?	Ukwaziswa ukuthi Amazinga Okugreda Avunyelwe?
Yes	Yebo
Communicate the approved changes in standards	Xoxisana ngoshintsho oluvunyelwe ngokwamazinga
No	Cha
End	Ukuphela
<b>4.13. Change Grading Category</b>	<b>4.13. Ukushintshwa Kohlobo Lokugreda</b>
Establishment	Isakhiwo
Assessor	Umdloli
Provincial Master Assessor	Umdloli Omkhulu Wesifundazwe
Assistant Operations Manager	Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenzi

Accounts Receivable Clerk	Iklekhi Ethola Ama-akhawunti
Change In Category Required	Ukushintswa Kohlobo Okudingekayo
Request a change in category	Ukucelwa koshintsho lohlobo
Can be done mid cycle when the Establishment has paid and submitted to a meeting, or when the membership is up for renewals	Kungenziwa phakathi nesekile uma Isakhiwo sesikhokhe saphinda sahambisa emhlananweni, noma uma ubulunga sekumele buvuselelwe
Need for change in category identified by Assessor during onsite assessment	Isidingo soshintsho lohlobo sibonakale Umhloli ngesikhathi sokuhlola endaweni
implications of the change in category with the Establishment, including MERs and billing implications	Ukushintsha kohlobo Nesakhiwo, okuhlanganisa ama-MER kanye nemali
Submit change of category request to PMA	Ukuhambisa isicelo soshintsho lohlobo ku-PMA
Is there a financial impact	Ukhona umthelela wemali?
No	Cha
Change the category on Grading system and provide feedback	Ushintsho lohlobo Ohlelweni Lokugreda kanye nokunikela ngempendulo
Within 3 days	Ezinsukwini ezi-3
Submit the category change to the category change list compiled by the Assistant Operations Manager	Ukuhambisa ukushintsha uhlobo ohlwini lokushintshwa kohlelo Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza
Compile category changes list and Request signoff and approval from the CQAO and the TGCSA Financial Manager	Ukuhlanganisa uhla lokushintsha kohlobo kanye Nesicelo sokusayina kanye nemvume esuka ku-CQAO kanye Nomphathi Wezezimali we-TGCSA
Approval and signatures obtained?	Ngabe ukuvunyelwa kanye nokusayina kutholakele?
No	Cha
Provide feedback to Assessors that the changes have been declined	Nikeza impendulo Kubahloli ethi ushintsho lunqatshiwe
End	Ukuphela
Yes	Yebo
Are the changes being made after the invoice has been	Ngabe ushintsho olwenziwe lwenziwe emuva kokukhokhwa kwe-invoyisi
No	Cha
Request a Credit for the old invoice	Isicelo Sesikweletu se-invoyisi
Make the requested changes to the Grading Categories in Grading system	Ukwenza ushintsho oluceliwe Lohlobo Lokugreda ohlelweni Lokugreda
Recalculate applicable fees and issue a new invoice to be generated by Financial System	Ukuphinda kubalwe izimali ezifanele bese kukhishwa i-invoyisi entsha okuzokhishwa Uhlelo Lokugreda
End	Ukuphela
Yes	Yebo
Send a request to Finance for the reversal of the receipt against the old invoice	Ukuthunyelwa isicelo Kwezezimali ukuthi kubuyiselwe irisidi ye-invoyisi endala
Reverse the receipting of payments against the old invoice	Ukubuyisela emuva ukwenziwa kwamrisidi email eyakhokhelwa i-invoyisi endala
Confirmation of payment reversal	Ukuqinisekisa ukubuyiselwa emuva kokukhokha
Request a credit note to settle the old invoice	Isicelo sesikweletu ukukhokhela i-invoyisi endala
Make the requested changes to the Grading Categories in Grading system	Ukwenza ushintsho oluceliwe Ohlobeni Lokugreda ohlelweni Lokugreda
Recalculate applicable fees	Ukuphinda kubalwe imali efanele

Create a new invoice which can be settled with the payments received	Ukwenziwa kwe-invoyisi entsha engakhokhelwa ngemali etholiwe
Receipt the payment received before the change against the new invoice	Ukwenza irisidi yemali etholakele ngaphambi kokuthi kwenziwe ushi lwe-invoyisi entsha
If the amounts don't match inform the PMA and he/she will assist in the managing the difference	Uma izimali zingahambelani kwazisw i-PMA izosiza ukulungisa ukwehlukana
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Credit notes and additional invoices will be raised as required</li> <li>• For major changes Assessors commission be affected</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izikweletu kanye nama-invoyisi amanye azophakanyiswa njengokuba kudingeka</li> <li>• Ushintsho olukhulu ikhomishini Yomhloli iyathinteka</li> </ul>
<b>4.14. Adhoc Update of Establishment Details</b>	<b>4.14. Ukubuyekwezwa kwe-Adhoc Yemininingwane Yesakhiwo</b>
Establishment requests update of their details (must be requested in writing)	Ukubhekwa kwesicelo sesakhiwo emininigwaneni yakhona (kumele kucelwe ngokubhala)
New or existing property	Impahla entsha noma endala
Existing Or property New property and Assess with invoice paid or allocated	Impahla entsha noma endala kanye Nokuhlolwa ne-invoyisi ekhokhiwe noma eyabiwe
Property stage?	Isigaba sempahla?
Assessment completed	Ukuhlolwa kuqediwe
Submit the request for update to the PMA	Ukuhambisa isicelo ukufaka ku-PMA
Is there a financial impact?	Ukhona umthelela ezimalini?
Update establishment details through data confirmation during the assessment	Ukufaka imininigwane yesakhiwo ngokuqinisekisa ulwazi ngesikhathi sokuhlolwa
New property invoice has not been paid	i-invoyisi entsha yempahla engakhokhwa
Update the establishment's Detail on Grading system	Ukufaka imininigwane yesakhiwo ohlelweni Lokugreda
Log onto the Grading system and update establishment's detail	Ukungena ohlelweni Lokugreda kanye nokufaka imininigwane yesakhiwo
Have the ownership and billing details changed	Ukuba nobunini kanye nokushintshwa kweminigwane yokubiza imali
No	Cha
End – no further addition required	Ukuphela – akukho okunye okumele kwengezwe
Yes	Yebo
Has the renewal invoice been paid	Ngabe i-invoyisi entsha ikhokhiwe
Request are-	Izicelo
Generate a new invoice, using the invoice recalculation function on Grading system	Ukukhishwa kwe-invoyisi, ngokusebenzisa i-invoyisi ephinde yabalwa ohlelweni Lokugreda
Update Establishment details on Grading system	Ukufaka imininigwane Yesakhiwo Ohlelweni Lokugreda
Operations can change the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact information</li> <li>• Number of rooms</li> <li>• Room rate</li> <li>• Invoicing</li> </ul>	Ezokusebenza zingashintsha imininigwane elandelayo <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Iminigwane yokuxhumana</li> <li>• Inani lamagumbi</li> <li>• Imali yegumbi</li> <li>• Uku-invoyisa</li> </ul>
Save updated information and synchronize updates to Financial System and the TGCSA website if required	Ukugcina imininigwane kanye nokusekronaza ukufaka Ohlelweni Lwezezimali kanye newebhusayithi ye-TGCSA uma kudingeka

Generate an integration instruction to Financial System which will integrate the following day.	Ukukhipha umyalelo wokuhlangana Ohlelweni Lwezezimali oluzohlangana ngosuku olulandelayo.
Invoice details, Supplier details, contact details, e-mail addresses, category and charge rate	Imininingwane ye-invoyisi, imininingwane yomhlinzeki, imininingwane yokuxhumana, uhlobo kanye nemali
Invoice sent to Establishment	I-invoyisi ethunyelwe Esakhiweni
Generate invoice and Forward it to Establishment and Assessor	Ukukhishwa kwe-invoyisi kanye nokuthunyelwa kwayo Esakhiweni kanye Nomholi
Invoice generated Financial System which will integrate the following day.	i-invoyisi ekhishwe Ohlelweni Lwezezimali okuhlanganiswa ngosuku olulandelayo
Establishment billing information updated	Ukufakwa kwemininingwane yokubizwa
Financial System Billing information will be updated automatically overnight and new invoices will be generated if required	Imininingwane Yokubiza Yohlelo Lwezezimali izofakwa ngokuzenzakalela ebusuku kanye nama-invoyisi amasha azokhishwa uma kudingeka
Do the changes in the details affect billing information	Ngabe ushintsho emininingwaneni luthinta ilwazi lokubiza
No billing updates required	Akukho ukufakwa kokubiza okudingekayo
Establishment billing information updated	Ukufakwa kolwazi lokubiza kwesakhiwo
No web listing updates required	Alukho ukufakwa kohla lwe-webhu oludingekayo
Do the changes affect marketing information or collateral	Ngabe ushintsho luthinta ulwazi lokumaketha noma ukuhlangana
Establishment website listing information updated	Uhla lwemininingwane yebhusayithi yesakhiwo lufakiwe
<b>4.14. Cancellation of Membership</b>	<b>4.14 ukukhanselwa Kobulunga</b>
Establishment decides to cancel their membership	Isakhiwo sikhetha ukukhansela ubulunga
Contact the Assessor in writing to request a cancellation of membership before the membership expiry date	Thintana Nomholi ngokubhala ukucela ukukhansela ubulunga ngaphambi kosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi
Discuss the reasons for cancellation with the Establishment	Dingida izizathu zokukhansela Nesakhiwo
Explain the re-join process to the Establishment	Chaza uhlelo lokuphinda ujoyine Esakhiweni
Does the Establishment still want to cancel?	Ngabe Isakhiwo sisafuna ukukhansela?
Confirm if cancellation should be immediate or on expiry	Ukuqisekisa kokukhansela kumele kube okwamanje noma ngosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi
This is usually informed by the reasons for cancellation	Lokhu kwenziwa yizizathu zokukhansela
Submit cancellation request to the relevant Provincial Master Assessor	Hambisa isicelo sokukhansela Kumholi Omkhulu Esifundazweni ofanele
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If no payments have been made by renewal properties, Grading System will generate reminders about the invoice on day 90, day 60 and day 30 preceding the membership expiry date and send the reminders to the Establishment and Assessor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uma ingekho imali ekhokhiwe ekuvuselelweni kwempahla, Uhlelo Lokugreda kukhipha izikhumbuzo maqondana ne-invoyisi ngosuku lwama-90, lwama-60 kanye nolwama-30 ngaphambi kosuku lokuphelelwa</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the payment is not received and receipted in full by the date on which the Establishment's current membership's expires the Establishment's membership is cancelled automatically by Grading System 21 day after the expiry date of the membership this will form part of the auto batch cancellations, but the Establishment record is kept on Grading System and can be used as a future lead.</li> </ul>	<p>yisikhathi sobulunga futhi lutumela izikhubuzo Esakhiweni kanye Nakumhloli</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uma imali ingatholakalanga futhi ayangenzelwa irisidi ngokugcwele ngosuku ubulunga Besakhiwo buphelelwa yisikhathi ubulunga besakhiwo obukhona buyakhanselwa ngokuzenzakalela Ohlelweni Lokugreda osukwini lwama-21 emuva kosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi kobulunga lokhu kuzoba yingxenywe yobuningi bokukhanselwa ngokuzenzakalela, kodwa irekhodi Lesakhiwo liyagcinwa Ohlelweni Lokugreda futhi lingasetshenziswa kusasa njengesibonelo</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If marked for immediate cancellation, the membership is immediately cancelled</li> <li>The grading system has to inform the financial system on any immediate cancellations so that the revenue recognition programme can account accordingly for any cancellations in membership;</li> <li>If marked for delayed cancellation (e.g. cancellation on expiry date) the Establishment will remain in the system until the delayed cancellation date arrives</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uma kumakwe njengokukhansela kwamanje, ubulunga bukhanselwa ngokushesha</li> <li>Uhlelo Lokugreda kumele lazise uhlelo lwezezimali ngokukhansela kokushesha ukuze izinhlelo ezibona irevenyu zithathe ngokufanele ukukhanselwa noma yikuphi kobulunga</li> <li>Uma kumakwe njengokukhansela okudileyile (isb. Ukukhansela ngosuku lokuphelelwa yisikhathi) Isakhiwo sizoba sohlelweni kuze kube usuku lokukhansela luyafika</li> </ul>
Grading system will sync with Financial System and the Account will not receive renewal invoices	Uhlelo lokugreda luzosebenzisana Nohlelo Lwezezimali bese i-akhawunti ngeke ithole i-invoysi evuselelwe
Cancel the Establishment in Grading system, as either an immediate cancellation or cancellation on expiry	Ukukhansela Isakhiwo Ohlelweni Lokugreda, njengokukhansela ngokushesha noma ngokukhansela ngokuphelelwa yisikhathi
Membership cancelled (voluntary cancellation or due to non-Payment)	Ubulunga buyakhanselwa (ukukhansela ngokuvolontiya noma ngenxa yokungakhokhi)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Downloaded as a query on Grading System-IA</li> <li>Ticket "Created"</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Okuthathwe njengombuzo Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA</li> <li>Ithikithi "Elenziwe"</li> </ul>
45 calendar days	Ezinsukwini ezingama-45 zekhalenda
Has the property applied for grading again?	Ngabe impahla ifake isicelo sokugreda futhi
Wait 10 working days after Post Cx Stage 1 Notification	Linda izinsuku eziyi-10 zokusebenza Emuva Komlayezo Cx Wesigaba 1
No action required, ticket closed	Akukho okumele kwenziwe
Issue "Post Cancellation (Cx) Stage 1 Notification	Ukukhipha "Emuva kokukhansela (Cx) umyalelo wesigaba 1
Establishment intent to become assessed again?	Ngabe isakhiwo siqonde ukuhinda sihlolwe futhi
Proceed with Query Evaluation Stage & QPA	Proceed with Query Evaluation Stage & QPA
Failed assessment & Downgraded	Ukungaphumeleli ekuhlolweni & Nokwehliswa
Lead is referred to an accredited assessor	Ukuhola kudluliselwa kumhloli ofanele
Establishment intent remove the star advertising	Isakhiwo siqonde ukususa ukukhangisa

	kwenkanyezi
Adjust "Next Step Due" 30 calendar days onwards from current day	Ukulungisa "Isigaba Esilandelayo" izinsuku ezingama-30 zekhalenda kuya phambili kusukela ngaloluya suku
After these 30 days, proceed with Query Evaluation Stage & QPA Stage 2, if necessary	Emuva kwezinsuku ezingama-30, qhubeka Nesigaba Sokubhekwa Kombuzo & QPA isigaba 2, uma kunesidingo
Proceed with Query Evaluation Stage & QPA Stage 1	Qhubeka Nesigaba Sokubheka Umbuzo & ne-QPA isigaba 1
Follow the Incorrect & Illegal Advertising query evaluation Stage and the Quality Protection Auditing Stage 1 procedures	Landela isigaba sokubheka Ukukhangisa Okungesilo iqiniso & Okungekho emthethweni kanye nenqubo
Close the ticket on Grading System- IA	Ukuvala ithikithi Ohlelweni Lokugreda-IA
Determine from Marketing records if establishment previously received a plaque	Ukunquma emarekhodini Ezokumakethat ukuthi ngabe isakhiwo sesike sayithola yini iplakhu
CLO monitors & follows up on auctioning of plaque collections	i-CLO iyaqapha & iyalandelela ukudayiswa kwamaplakhu
Receives the returned plaques	Ukuthatha amaplakhu abuyisiwe
Makes an arrangement with the Establishment for collection of old plaque	Wenza amalungiselelo Nesakhiwo ukuze kulandwe amaplakhu amadala
Arrange with courier to collect the plaque from the Establishment	Ukulungisa ikhoiya ukulanda amaplakhu Esakhiweni
Compile a detailed list of plaque collections for the courier and the list on open purchase order	Ukuhlanganisa uhla lwamaplakhu okumele alandwe ukuze akhoriywe kanye nohla lokwenza i-oda lokuthenga
<b>4.17. Replace Issued Plaques</b>	<b>4.17. Ukushintshwa Kwamaplakhu Akhishiwe</b>
TGCSA Marketing Team	Ithimba le-TGCSA Lezokumaketha
Replacement Plaque Required	Ukushintshwa kweplakhu edingekayo
Receive a request for a replacement plaque	Ukuthola isicelo sokushintshwa kweplakhu
Requests can come from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Establishment The PMAs</li> <li>The Assessor on behalf of the Establishment</li> </ul>	Izicelo zingasuka: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Esakhiweni sama-PMA</li> <li>Umhloli emele isakhiwo</li> </ul>
Order replacement (or additional) plaque from plaque distributor	Uku-oda iplakhu (noma ezokwengeza) ezoshintsha kumdayisi wamaplakhu
Contact establishment, to make arrangements for collection of the old plaque	Ukuxhumana nesakhiwo, ukwenza amalungiselelo ukuthi kulandwe iplakhu endala esakhiweni
Arrange for a SAT appointed courier to collect the plaque from the establishment	Ukulungisa ukuthi i-SAT eqokiwe ukukhoriya ukuthi izolanda iplakhu esakhiweni
Plaques will only be ordered replaced in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Additional plaque request,</li> <li>Change of Category,</li> <li>Upgrade or Downgrade or Membership,</li> <li>Replacement of Plaque with old CI,</li> <li>Damaged plaque, Stolen plaque</li> </ul>	Amaplakhu engu-oda kuphela ukuthi ashintshwe ezimeni ezilandelayo: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izicelo zamaplakhu okwengeza,</li> <li>Ukushintsha kohlobo</li> <li>Ukunyusa noma ukwehlisa noma ubulunga,</li> <li>Ukushintsha iplakhu ene-CI endala,</li> <li>Iplakhu efile, entshontshiwe</li> </ul>

Receive returned plaque	Ukuthola iplakhu ebuyisiwe
<b>4.18. Conduct Assurance of Plaque and Certificate Delivery</b>	<b>4.18. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuphathwa kanye Nokudiliviwa Kwezitifiketi</b>
Quality Protection Office	Ihhovisi Lokuvikela Ikhwalithi
TGCSA Marketing Assistant	Umsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA
Two Calendar Months or 70 calendar days After the Awards Meeting downloads on the Grading System	Ezinyangeni ezimbili zekhalenda noma ezinsukwini ezingama-70 emuva kokufaka emhlanganweni wemiklomelo ohlelweni lokugreda
First check with the Marketing Assistant if the plaques are expected to have been delivered, i.e. confirm if there could have been any issues that affected manufacturing or delivery of plaques.	Kuqala bheka umsizi wezokumaketha ukuthi amaplakhu alindlekile yini ukuthi adiliviwe, isb. Qinisekisa ukuthi kungaba khona izinkinga ezithinta ukukhiqizwa noma ukudiliviwa kwamaplakhu
Inform the QPO if there were issues and explain the nature of the issues and expected impact	Ukwazisa i-QPO ukuthi ngabe zikhona yini izinkinga bese uchaza uhlobo lwezinkinga kanye nomthelela olindlelekile
Assess the feedback consider the impact when conducting the audit	Ukuhlola impendulo bese ubheka umthelela ongaba khona uma kwenziwa ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku
g. if the meeting was closed on the grading system on 15 April , the checks for those plaques will be done at the end of June (2 calendar months later)	g. uma umhlangano uvaliwe ohlelweni lokugreda mhla ziyi-15 ku-Ephreli, ukubhekwa kwamaplakhu kuzoqedwa ekupheleni kuka-Juni (ezinyangeni ezi-2)
Select a 8 to 10% sample of establishments for which plaques and certificates were ordered after the Property Approvals Meeting	Ukukhethwa isampula eli-8 kuya ku-10% kwesakhiwo lapho amaplakhu kanye nezitifiketi ku-odiwe emuva Komhlangano Wokuvumela Impahla
Conduct an audit to determine if the establishments received their plaques and certificates in good order and timeously	Ukwenza ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku ukunquma ukuthi izakhiwo ziwatholile amaplakhu kanye nezitifiketi zawo ngokufanele
Produce a report and submit it to CQAO	Ukukhipha umbiko bese uhanjiswa ku-CQAO
Record queries and issues raised and submit them to TGCSA Marketing Assistant and to CLO for record- keeping & further follow-up	Ukurekhodwa kwemibuzo kanye nezinkinga okuphakanyisiwebese kuhanjiswa Kumsizi Wezokumaketha we-TGCSA kanye ne-CLO ngezinhloso zokugcina amarekhodi & nokunye ukulandelela
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Missing Plaques</li> <li>• Misspelt Establishment names</li> <li>• Incorrect number of stars</li> <li>• Damaged plaques and Certificates</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amaplakhu alahlekile</li> <li>• Amagama ezakhiwo angabhalwanga kahle</li> <li>• Inombolo yezinkanyezi okungeyona</li> <li>• Amaplakhu kanye nezitifiketi okumoshakele</li> </ul>
Address & resolves plaque and certificate issues stemming from the audit	Ukubhekana & nokusombulula izinkinga zeplakhu kanye nezitifiketi okuphuma ekucwaningweni kwamabhuku
Issues addressed	Izinkinga okubhekenwe nazo
<b>4.19. Query Evaluation Stage</b>	<b>4.19. Isigaba Sokubheka Imibuzo</b>
Quality Protection Officer	Isikhulu esivikela Ikhwalithi
Start	Ukuqala
Receive an illegal Advertising report	Ukuthola umbiko wokukhangisa okungekho

	emthethwemi
Does the Establishment exist on the historic manual query workbook	Ngabe isakhiwo sikhona ebhukwini lokusebenza lomlando lemanuwali?
Sources include	Imithombo ihlanganisa
Assessors, General Public, Other graded Establishments, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TGCSA staff,</li> <li>• Awards Meeting Changes,</li> <li>• Cancellations,</li> <li>• Downgrades,</li> <li>• Client Feedback,</li> <li>• Client Liaison Officer</li> </ul>	Abahloli, Umphakathi, ezinye izakh ezigrediwe, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Abasebenzi be-TGCSA</li> <li>• Umhlangano Woshintsho lwemiklomelo</li> <li>• Ukukhanselwa</li> <li>• Ukwehlisa</li> <li>• Impendulo yamakhasimende,</li> <li>• Isikhulu Esibhekelela Amakhasimende</li> </ul>
Search for the establishment on QiT	Ukubheka isakhiwo ku-QiT
Does the establishment No rd exist?	Ngabe inomblo yesakhiwo ikhona?
No new records required on QiT	Alikho irekhodi Elisha elidingekayo ku-QiT
Create a new property on QiT	Ukwakha impahla entsha ku-QiT
Is the same issue being reported again?	Ngabe udaba olufanayo olubikwyo futhi?
IA Verification	Ukuqinisekisa kwe-IA
Was the Illegal advertising removed since the last communication	Ngabe ukukhangisa okungekho emthethweni kususiwe emuva kwenkulumo yokugcina?
Close ticket and record that the IA was removed	Ukuvala ithikithi kanye nokurekhoda ukuthi i-IA yasuswa
Applied for grading?	Ngabe sifakiwe isicelo sokugreda?
Close ticket – establishment has applied	Ukuvala ithikithi – isakhiwo sisifakile isicelo
Review the last known status of query	Ukubheka isimo sokugcina esaziwayo sombuzo
Determine the next stage to follow on QiT- IA	Ukunquma isigaba esilandelayo ukulandela ku-QiT – IA
Stage 1	Isigaba souk-1
Stage 2	Sogaba sesi-2
Stage 3	Isigaba sesi-3
Stage 4	Isigaba sesi-4
IA query resolved	Umbuzo we-IA usombululiwe
Minimum of 80% of legal advertising must have been moved for the ticket to be closed	Okungenani ama-80% okukhangisa okusemthethweni kususiwe ukuze ithikithi livalwe
If it is a service or facilities issue notify the relevant PMA And CC the CLO	Uma kuyinkinga yesevisi noma izakhiwo tshela i-PMA kanye ne-CC ye-CLO efanele
Feedback to the person that reported the IA and close the ticket	Impendulo eya kumuntu obike i-IA kanye nokuvalwa kwethikithi
Is the establishment advertising Illegally?	Ngabe isakhiwo sikhanga ngokungemthetho?
Verify Illegal Advertising claims	Ukuqinisekisa imibiko yokukhangisa ngokungemthetho
Does the establishment record exist?	Ngabe irekhodi lesakhiwo likhona?
Create a new property on QiT	Ukwakhiwa kwempahla entsha ku-QiT
Create a new ticket for the query on QiT- IA	Ukwakhiwa kwethikithi elisha lombuzo ku-QiT – IA
Additionally Verify if the establishment was previously graded or not, Verify if it's grading was previously cancelled,	Okunye qinisekisa ukuthi isakhiwo besigrediwe ngaphambilini noma cha, Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi ukugredwa kwaso

Verify if the Establishment graded but the advertising the incorrect grading	kwakhanselwa ngaphambilini Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi isakhiwo sigrediwe kodwa sikhanga okungelona iqiniso
Create collage using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web Search engines Booking / Listing</li> <li>• Websites, Photos of street signage,</li> <li>• Photos of Signage At premises</li> <li>• Images from brochures</li> </ul>	Ukwenza ukuhlanganisa: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukubheka kuwebhu ukubhukha / nohla</li> <li>• Amawebhusayithi, izithombe zezimpawu zomgwaqo</li> <li>• Izithombe zamabhrosha</li> </ul>
Create Collage of Evidence (IA Locations)	Ukwenziwe kokuhlanganisa kobufakazi (Izindawo ze-IA)
Create collage using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web Search engines, Booking / Listing</li> <li>• Websites, Photos of street signage,</li> <li>• Photos of Signage At premises</li> <li>• Images from brochures</li> </ul>	Ukwenza ukuhlanganisa: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukubheka kuwebhu ukubhukha / nohla</li> <li>• Amawebhusayithi, izithombe zezimpawu zomgwaqo</li> <li>• Izithombe zamabhrosha</li> </ul>
<b>4.20. Quality Protection Assurance – Stage 1</b>	<b>4.20. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalithi – Isigaba soku-1</b>
Quality Protection Officer	Isikhulu esivikela Ikhwalithi
Illegal advertising report received	Umbiko wokukhangisa okungemthetho utholakele
Ops cancellation letter would have been sent and included an instruction to return the collateral	Incwadi yokukhansela ye-Ops ingathunyelwa futhi ihlanganise umyalelo ukubuyisa ukuhlanganisa
Has the membership been cancelled?	Ngabe ubulunga bukhanseliwe?
Has property applied?	Ngabe isakhiwo sifake isicelo?
Send QPO cancellation email Post Cancellation Stage 1 Notification	Ukuthumela imeyili ye-QPO yokukhansela emuva kwesaziso sokukhansela
Is there and E-mail address available for communicating with the establishment?	Ngabe kukhona futhi ikheli lemeyili elikhona kuyaxhumneka ngalo nesakhiwo?
Contact the Establishment telephonically to obtain correct E-mail address	Ukuthintwa kwesakhiwo ngocingo ukuthola imeyili eyiqiniso
Check & Update IA Locations	Ukubheka & nokufaka Izindawo ze-IA
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The nature of the offense will determine the content of the letter</li> <li>• For Downgrades correspondence will refer to incorrect advertising not illegal advertising</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uhlobo lwecala luzonquma okuqukethwe incwadi</li> <li>• Ukwehlisa kuzokwenziwa uma kwenziwe ukukhangisa okungekhona hhayi okungekho emthethweni</li> </ul>
Send relevant Letter 1 including collage & legislation to the establishment	Ukuthumela incwadi efanele yoku-1 ehlanganisa ukuhlangana & nomthetho esakhiweni
Wait two working days	Ukulinda izinsuku ezi-2 zokusebenza
IA Verification	Ukuqinisekisa i-IA
Illegal/ incorrect advertising removed?	Ukukhangisa okungelona iqiniso/okungekho emthethweni kususiwe?
Applied For grading?	Sifakiwe isicelo sokugreda?
IA query Not yet resolved	Umbuzo we-IA awukasombululwa?
Grading Quality Protection Stage 2	Isigaba sesi-2 sokuvikela Ikhwalithi Yokugreda
Close ticket, Establishment has applied for Grading	Ukuvalwa kwethikithi, Isakhiwo sisifakile isicelo sokugreda
Close ticket and record that IA was removed	Ukuvala ithikithi kanye nokuvalwa kwerekhodi ukuthi i-IA isusiwe

Minimum of 80% of illegal advertising must have been removed for the query to be closed.	Okungenani ama-80% okukhangisa okungekho emthethweni kumele kususwe ukuze umbuzo uvalwe.
<b>4.21. Quality Protection Assurance – Stage 2</b>	<b>4.21. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi – Isigaba sesi-2</b>
IA not resolved in stage 1	i-IA ayisombululwanga esigabeni soku-1
Update the system to reflect that a stage 2 communication is being done	Ukubuyekeza uhlelo ukuthi luveze ukuthi ukuxhumana ezingeni lesi-2 kuyenziwa
Re-evaluate, update and add IA Locations	Ukubheka futhi, ukufaka kanye nokwengeza izindawo ze-IA
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The nature of the offense will determine the content of the letter</li> <li>For Downgrades communication will refer to incorrect advertising not illegal advertising</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uhlobo lwecala luzonquma okuqukethwe incwadi</li> <li>Ukwehlisa kuzokwenziwa uma kwenziwe ukukhangisa okungekhona hhayi okungekho emthethweni</li> </ul>
Send relevant Letter 2 including collage & legislation to the establishment	Ukuthumela incwadi efanele yesi-2 ehlanganisa ukuhlangana & nomthetho esakhiweni
Wait Ten working days	Ukulinda izinsuku eziyishumi zokusebenza
IA Verification	Ukuqinisekisa i-IA
Illegal/ incorrect advertising removed?	Ukukhangisa okungelona iqiniso/okungekho emthethweni kususwe?
Applied For grading?	Sifakiwe isicelo sokugreda?
Close ticket, Establishment has applied for Grading	Ukuvalwa kwethikithi, Isakhiwo sisifakile isicelo sokugreda
Close ticket and record that IA was removed	Ukuvala ithikithi kanye nokuvalwa kwerekhodi ukuthi i-IA isusiwe
Minimum of 80% of illegal advertising must have been removed for the query to be closed.	Okungenani ama-80% okukhangisa okungekho emthethweni kumele kususwe ukuze umbuzo uvalwe.
IA query Not yet resolved	Inking ayikasombululwa namanje?
Grading Quality Protection Stage 3	Isigaba sesi-2 sokuvikela Ikhwalithi Yokugreda
IA query resolved	Inkinga ye-IA isombululiwe
<b>4.22. Quality Protection Assurance – Stage 3</b>	<b>4.22 Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi – Isigaba sesi-3</b>
Quality Protection Officer	Isikhulu esivikela Ikhwalithi
Update the system to reflect that a stage 3 communication is being done	Ukubuyekeza uhlelo ukuthi luveze ukuthi ukuxhumana ezingeni lesi-2 kuyenziwa
-evaluate, update and add IA Locations	Ukubheka, ukufaka kanye nokwengeza Izindawo ze-IA
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The nature of the offense will determine the content of the letter</li> <li>For Downgrades communication will refer to incorrect advertising not illegal advertising</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uhlobo lwecala luzonquma okuqukethwe incwadi</li> <li>Ukwehlisa kuzokwenziwa uma kwenziwe ukukhangisa okungekhona hhayi okungekho emthethweni</li> </ul>
Send relevant Letter 3 including collage & legislation to the establishment	Ukuthumela incwadi efanele yesi-3 ehlanganisa ukuhlangana & nomthetho esakhiweni
Wait 30 calendar days	ukulinda izinsuku ezingama-30 zokusebenza
IA Verification	Ukuqinisekisa i-IA
Illegal/ incorrect advertising removed?	Ukukhangisa okungelona iqiniso/okungekho emthethweni kususwe?

<b>4.23. Quality Protection Assurance – Stage 4</b>	<b>4.23. Ukuqinisekiswa Kokuvikelwa Kwekhwalthi – Isigaba sesi-4</b>
Illegal advertising not resolved in stage 3	Ukukhangisa okungekho emthethweni akukasombululwa esigabeni sesi-3
Update the system to reflect that you are now in Stage 4 of processing the query	Ukufaka ohlelweni ukuthi luvze ukuthi usesigabeni sesi-4 sombuzo
Re-evaluate, update and add IA Locations	Ukubheka, ukufaka kanye nokwengeza Izindawo ze-IA
Send Letter 4 including collage & legislation to the establishment	Ukuthumela incwadi efanele yesi-3 ehlanganisa ukuhlangana & nomthetho esakhiweni
Wait 14 calendar days	Ukulinda izinsuku eziyi-14 zekhalenda
Illegal advertising removed?	Ukukhangisa okungekho emthethweni kusesiwe?
Applied For grading?	Ngabe sifakiwe isicelo sokugreda?
Close ticket – Applied for grading	Ukuvala ithikithi – sifakiwe isicelo sokugreda
Illegal query resolved	Umbuzo ongekho emthethweni usombululiwe
IA query resolved	Umbuzo we-IA usombululiwe
Update the system to reflect “legal referred”	Ukufaka ohlelweni ukuthi kuvele “kuddluliselwe emthethweni”
to Provincial Consumer authority within 60 calendar days	Kuziphathimandla Zabathengi Zesifundazwe ezinsukwini ezingama-60 zekhalenda
Close ticket	Ukuvala thikithi
IA Query resolved	Umbuzo we-IA usombululiwe
Review, advise and sign off paperwork or other further action by provincial consumer authority	Ukubuyekeza, ukuyla kanye nokusayina amaphepha noma omunye umnyakazo Weziphathimandla Zabathengi Esifundazweni
<b>4.24. Refund Process</b>	<b>4.24. Uhlelo Lokubuyiswa Kwemali</b>
Assistance Operations Manager	Umsizi Womphathi Wezokusebenza
Debtor clerk	Iklekhi lezikweletu
Accounts payable’s clerk	Iklekhi elithola ama-akhawunti
Manages all refunds	Ukuphatha yonke imali ebuyiswayo
Finance will sign in the book on receipt of refund	Igatsha lezezimali lizosayina ibhuku ekutholeni imali ebuyisiwe
Funds	Izimali
refund book with reasons and the date	Ibhuku lokubuyiswa kwemali elinezizathu kanye nosuku
Attached to the RFO must be all the written communications from establishments as well as there banking details and proof of payment	Okufakiwe ku-RFO kumele kube yikho konke ukuxhumana okusuka ezakhiweni kanye neminingwa yebhange kanye nobufakazi bokukhokha
Sign and confirm that the banking details are correct and that they have called the establishment to confirmed the same	Ukusayina kanye nokuqinisekisa ukuthi iminingwane yebhange iyiqiniso futhi nokuthi basithintile isakhiwo ukuqinisekisa okufanayo
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Twice a month on the following days the 10th and 20th of each month before 12h00.</li> <li>If the day is on a weekend or public holiday assistant OM will hand them on the next working day before 12h00</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Kabili ngenyanga ezinsukwini ezilandelayo mhla ziyi-10 kanye namhla zingama-20 kwenyanga ngayinye ngaphambi kwehora le-12h00</li> <li>Uma usuku lungempelasonto noma kuyiholidi umsizi we-MO uzoletsha ngosuku olulandelayo lokusebenza</li> </ul>

	ngaphambi kwehora le-12h00
Hand refunds to the debtor clerk	Ukunika imali ebuyisiwe kuklekhi lezikweletu
Update all refunds on the worksheet for refunds and save it on the G-drive	Ukubuyekeza yonke imali ebuyiswayo eshadini lokusebenza lezimali ezibuyiswayo bese kugcinwa ku g-drive
In the event of an urgent refund on any other day than the 10th and 20th, hand the request to the Finance Manager to consider intervention	Lapho kudingeka ukuthi kubuyiswe imali ngokushesha nganoma yiluphi usuku ngaphandle kwamhla ziyi-10 kanye namhla zingama-20, hambisa isicelo Kumphathi Wezezimali ukuthi abheke ukuthi angangenelela kanjani
Finalise refunds in four days	Qeda ngezimalu ezibuyiswayo ezinsukwini ezine
Will only accept refund request on the mentioned days, any refunds not handed on these two dates have to stand over to the next month	Yamukela kuphela izicelo zokubuyiselwa imali ngezinsuku ezishiwo, noma yiziphi izimali ezibuyiswayo ezinikwanga ngalezi zinsuku ezimbili kumele zilinde inyanga elandelayo
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All refunds handed on the 10th of each month will be for the refunds requests where deposits were made up to the end of the prior month of the 10<sup>th</sup></li> <li>All refunds handed on the 20th will be for refund deposits from the 1st of that month to the 10th of the month of the 20th</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Zonke izimali ezibuyiswayo ezilethwe mhla ziyi-10 enyangeni ngayinye kuzoba ezezicelo zokubuyiselwa izimali lapho amadiphozithi ayenziwe ekupheleni kwenyanga engaphabi kwamhla ziyi-10</li> <li>Zonke izimali ezibuyiswayo ezilethwe mhla zingama-20 kuzoba yizimali ezibuyiswayo zamadiphozithi enziwe mhla zizi-1 kuleyo nyanga kuya nhla ziyi-10 enyangeni yamhla ziyi-20</li> </ul>
Ensure payment of the refund in 7 days from the first Friday	Qinisekisa ukukhokha kwemali ebuyiselwayo ezinsukwini eziyi-7 kusukela ngolwesihlanu lokuqala
Update the worksheet for refunds on the G-DRIVE with the actual payment date of the refund	Ukufaka eshadini lkusebenza ku g-drive usuku lokukhokha kwemali ebuyiselwa emuva
After he/she receives the documents from accounts receivables clerk	Emuva kokuthola imiqulu esuka eklekhini elithola ama-akhawunti
<b>4.25. Discount Process</b>	<b>4.25. Uhlelo lokwaphulelwa</b>
Discount Process	Uhlelo lokwaphulelwa
Provincial Master Assessor	Umlholi Omkhulu Wesifundazwe
Discounts <> R10	Izaphulelo <> R10
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Once processed and approved by the OM and or assistant OM, grading system sends to Finance manager for second approval</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uma sekufakiwe futhi kwavunyelwa yi-OM kanye noma Umsizi we-OM, uhlelo lokugreda luthumela kumphathi Wezezimali ukuze kuvunyelwe okwesibili</li> </ul>
Given to assistant OM to process the discount	Kunikwa umsizi we-OM ukuthi enze ukwaphulela
Once approved	Uma kuvunyelwe
Sends to Finance manager for second approval	Kuthunyelwa kumphathi Wezezimali ukuze kuvunyelwe ukwesibili
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approvals, the supporting documentation needs to be attached within the grading system in order for the Finance manager to process the</li> </ul>	Ukuvunyelwa, imiqulu eyesekayo kudingeka ukuthi kufakwe ohlelweni lokugreda ukuze Umphathi Wezezimali abheke isicelo sokwaphulelwa njengokuba kulethiwe abantu

discount request as submitted by the relevant parties	abafanele
End	Ukuphela
<b>4.26. Funding – Process</b>	<b>4.26 Imali – Uhlelo</b>
<b>Grading System</b>	<b>Uhlelo Lokugreda</b>
Operation’s Team Member	Ilunga Lethimba Lezokusebenza
MOU Needs to be in place for funding to be processed	I-MOU kudingeka ibe kahle ukuze imali ifakwe
Funding account Needs to be active	Ama-akhawunti email kumele asebenze
Funding account needs to have available funds to necessitate the request there off	Ama-akhawunti email kumele abe nemali ukuze isidingo sesicelo senzeke
Submit a request to either the assistant OM or OM for funding to be allocated	Ukuhambisa isicelo kumsizi we-OM noma i-OM ukuze imali ifakwe
Once approved	Uma kuvunyiwe
Sends to Finance manager for second approval	Thumela kumphathi Wezezimali ukuze kuvunyelwe okwesibili
Approvals, the supporting documentation needs to be attached within the grading system in order for the Finance manager to process the discount request as submitted by the relevant parties	Ukuvunyelwa, imiqulu eyesekayo kudingeka ukuthi kufakwe ohlelweni lokugreda ukuze Umphathi Wezezimali abheke isicelo sokwaphulelwa njengokuba kulethiwe abantu abafanele
End	Ukuphela
<b>4.26. Customer Feedback</b>	<b>4.27. Impendulo yamakhasimende</b>
Conduct Internal Audit of Plaque and Certificate Delivery	Ukwenziwa Kokucubungula Kwamabhuku kokudiliviwa kwamaplahku kanye nezitifiketi
Quality Protection Auditor	Umcwaningi mabhuku ovikela ikhwalithi
First check with the Marketing Assistant if the plaques are expected to have been delivered, i.e. confirm if there could have been any issues that affected manufacturing or delivery of plaques.	Kuqala bheka Umsizi Wezokumketha ukuthi amaplahku alindelwe ukuthi adiliviwe, isb. Qinisekisa ukuthi azikho izinkinga ezingaba khona ezinomthelela ekukhiqizweni kanye nasekudilivweni kwamaplahku
Inform the Quality Protection Auditor if there were issues and explain the nature of the issues and expected impact	Tshela Umceaningi Mabhuku Ovukela Ikhwalithi uma kunezinkinga bese uchaza uhlobo lwezinkinga kanye nomthelela ongalindeleka
Assess the feedback consider the impact when conducting the audit	Hlola impendulo bese uyawubheka umthelela ngesikhathi wenza ukucwaningwa kwamabhuku
Select a 10% sample of establishments for which plaques and certificates were order after the Property Approvals Meeting 2 calendar months before	Khetha isampula lama-10% lezakhiwo lapho amaplahku kanye nezitifiketi kwaku-odiwe emuva Komhlangano Wokuvunyelwa Kwempahla eznyangeni ezi-2 zekhalenda ngaphambilini
Conduct an audit to determine if the establishments received their plaques and certificates in good order	Ukwenza ukucwaninga amabhuku ukunquma ukuthi izakhiwo zithola amaplahku kanye nezitifiketi ngendlela efanele
Produce a report and submit it to Visitor Experience Marketing and Communications Manager	Khapha umbiko bese uwuhambisa Kumphathi WWezivakashi Wezokumaketha kanye Nokuxhumana
Record queries and issues raised and submit them to Visitor Experience Marketing Assistant	Ukurekhoda imibuzo kanye nezinkinga eziphakamisiwe bese kuhanjiswa Kumsizi Wezivakashi Wezokumaketha



Responsible Tourism Requirements

Level 1

## Izifuneko Ezifanele Zezokuvakasha Izinga loku-1 (isisekelo)

## Uhlaka Lokugcina 03 March 2017

A: Ukuphatha kanye Nokusebenza Okugcinakayo	Isisekelo	Akungeni
1 <b>Inhlangano kumele ilandele imithetho, izimvume kanye namaphemithi kukazwelonke, yesifundazwe kanye nendawo, njengokuba kungadingeka.</b> Ibhizinisi libhalisile no-SARS libhalisela i-VAT, PAYE kanye nentela futhi konke kukhokhelwe (isitifiketi sokukhokha intela)	✓	
Ibhizini libhalisile ne-CIPRO kanye/noma linemvume yokusebenza	✓	
Ibhizinisi likubhalisele ukukhokhela intela kanye nemali ethelwayo	✓	
Ibhizinisi linemvume efanele ukudayisa iziphuzo	✓	
Ibhizinisi likhokha ilevi efanele okuthuthukiswa kwamakhono	✓	
Zonke izisebenzi ziyibhalisele i-UIF futhi zikhokhelwa ngokufanele	✓	
Ibhizinisi likhokha ilevi yezempilo kanye nokuphepha	✓	
Ukulandela umthetho Wokugquguzela Ukutholakala Kokwazisa	✓	
Ibhizinisi likhokha imali efanele ye-SAMRO kanye ne-SAMPO	✓	
2 <b>Inhlangano kumele isungule inqubomgomo ebhekene nezokuvakasha efanele ubunjalo bayo kanye nesilinganiso sayo, futhi iyazibhekelela izinkinga zemvelo, zesiko, zomnotho, izinga, zezempil kanye nezokuphepha</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
Inqubomgomo yezokuvakasha efanele futhi egcinakayo	✓	
3 <b>Inhlangano kumele yenze uhlelo lokuqwashisa kanye nokuqesha abasebenzi kunqubomgomo yayo</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
Abasebenzi bathole ukuqeqeshwa kunqubomgomo yenhlangano efanele	✓	
Izisebenzi ziyayazi inqubomgomo efanele yenhlangano yezokuvakasha	✓	
Izisebenzi ziyayiqonda futhi ziyayisebenzisa inqubomgomo yenhlangano yezokuvakasha	✓	
4 <b>Ukukhangiswa kwezinto kumele kube yiqiniso futhi kuphelele, akumele kuthembise izinto ezingekho enhlanganweni futhi akumele kusho izinto ezingelona iqiniso magondana nokugcineka.</b> Zonke izinto zokukhangisa mayelana nebhizinisi/ inhlangano (okuphrintiwe, ngokobuchwepheshe, ezinkundleni zokuxhumana, njll.) ziyiqiniso futhi ziphelele futhi azithembisi izinto ezingekho futhi akumele zisho izinto ezingelona iqiniso maqondana nokugcineka	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	✓	

1 of 4

Level 1

Responsible Tourism Requirements

B: Umphakathi kanye Nesiko		Isisekelo	Akungeni
5	Inhlangano kumele ibambe iqhaza ekuvikeleni izindawo ezibalulekile zomlando, zasendulo, zamasiko kanye nezomoya futhi ezingaphakathi kwezakhiwo zayo.	✓	
	Izindawo ezibalulekile zomlando, zasendulo, zesiko kanye/noma zomoya ziboniwe ngaphakathi kwezakhiwo	✓	
	Kunenqubomgomo ekhona ukuvikela izindawo eziqokiwe	✓	
	Izindawo eziqokiwe zivikelwe ngokufanele		
6	Izinto ezenziwa yinhlangano yezokuvakasha akumele zibeke engozini imihlinzeko yezinsiza eziyisisekelo, njengamanzi, amandla, indlela yokuphila, emiphakathini eseduze	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Izinto ezenziwa enhlanganweni akumele ibeke engozini ukuhlinzekwa kwamanzi emiphakathini eseduze	✓	
	Izinto ezenziwa inhlangano zingabeki engozini ukuhlinzekwa kwamandla emiphakathini eseduze	✓	
	Izinto ezenziwa inhlangano zingabeki engozini ukuhlinzekwa kwezinsiza zokuphila emiphakathini eseduze	✓	
	Izinto ezenziwa inhlangano zingabeki engozini ukuhlinzekwa kwezinsiza eziyisisekelo emiphakathini eseduze	✓	
7	Inhlangano kumele ihlinzeka amathuba okuthi izivakashi zithenge imikhikizo kanye nezinsiza zendawo	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Imikhikizo kanye nezinsiza kwendawo kudayiswa esitolo senhlangano	✓	✓
	Kanye/noma izivakashi zihlinzeka ngethuba lokuthenga imikhikizo kanye nezinsiza zendawo kubadayisi bazo (kungaba ngaphakathi noma ngaphandle)	✓	
8	Ubuciko bomlando noma basendulo akumele budayiswe, bushintshaniswe noma bukhangiswe, ngaphandle kuvunyelwa umthetho	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Abukho ubufakazi bobuciko bomlando noma basendulo obudayiswayo, bushintshaniswe noma bukhangiswe	✓	
9	Inhlangano kumele ihlinzeka abasebenzi ngolwazi nge-HIV/AIDS kanye nezempilo jikelele	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Inhlangano inenqubomgomo efanele yeHIV/AIDS kanye nezinye izifo	✓	
	Izisebenzi ziyayazi futhi ziyayiqonda inqubomgomo yenhlangano ye-HIV/AIDS kanye nezifo ezifanayo	✓	
	Izisebenzi zilutholile uqeqesho lwenqubomgomo yenhlangano ye-HIV/AIDS kanye nezifo ezifanayo	✓	
	Inhlangano yenza ukuthi olufanele ukuthi lutholakale mayelana ne-HIV/AIDS kanye nezifo ezifanayo	✓	
	Inhlangano ihlinzeka ngokweseka okufanele ekuvimbeleni i-HIV/AIDS kanye nezifo ezifanayo	✓	

Level 1

## Responsible Tourism Requirements

C: Ezomnotho		Isisekelo	Akungeni
10	Inhlangano kumele isebenzise izinhlelo zokulingana ukuqasha kanye nokuhphula, maqondana nobuhlanga, ubuili kanye nokukhubazeka sokukhubazeka	✓	
	Inhlangano ikhombisa izinhlelo zokulingana ekuqashweni kwezisebenzi	✓	
	Inhlangano ikhomisa izinhlelo zokukhushulwa kwezisebenzi ezilungile futhi ezinokulingana	✓	
11	<b>Inhlangano kumele ihlinzeka amathuba okuqeqeshwa kwezisebenzi maqondana nezinto ezenziwa enhlanganweni</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Inhlangano inenqubomgomo yokuqeqeshwa kanye nokuthuthukiswa kwabasebenzi	✓	
	Inhlangano ihlinzeka ukuqeqeshwa okufanele futhi okujwayelekile kanye namathuba okuthuthuka kwabasebenzi	✓	
	Amakhono kanye nolwazi lwabasebenzi kuthuthukiswa ngendlela etanele kangokuba bakwazi ukuhlinzeka isevisi asezingeni eliphezulu eyenza ncono ukuvakasha kwamakhasimende	✓	
12	<b>Inhlangano kumele ithenge amasevisi kanye nemikhiziqo kwendawo futhi ishintshanise ngokufanele, lapho kukhona, kanye nezinto ezibhekwayo ukwenza ncono</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Isakhiwo seseka izinyathelo zomphakathi	✓	
	Isakhiwo seseka abakhiziqi bendawo futhi sithenga ngobuningi uma sikwazi	✓	
13	<b>Inhlangano kumele iveze ikhombise ukweseka izitolo ezincane</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Ubufakazi bokuthengwa kwempahla ethengwe ezitolo ezincane	✓	
	Ubufakazi bokuthenga impahla esetolo esincane esingaphakathi	✓	✓
14	<b>Inhlangano kumele ikhokhele abasebenzi iholo lokuphila eilangana noma elingaphezu kwehlo langokomthetho</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Abaphathi baqinisekise ukuthi abasebenzi bakhokhelwa iholo eilanganayo noma elingaphezulu kwehlo langokomthetho ngokomkhakha wokwamukela izivakashi	✓	
15	<b>Inhlangano kumele ingavumeli ukusebenzi kwezingane, ukusebenza ngempopo kanye nokusetshenziswa ngokocansi</b>	Isisekelo	Akungeni
	Inhlangano inenqubomgomo evikela ukusetshenziswa kwezingane, okuhlanganisa abalingisi abayizingane	✓	
	Inhlangano inenqubomgomo evikela ukusebenza ngempopo	✓	
	Inhlangano inenqubomgomo evikela ukusetshenziswa ngokocansi	✓	
	Abasebenzi baqeqeshiwe, bayazi, ngenqubomgomo emayelana nokusetshenziswa kwezingane, ukusebenza ngempopo kanye ngokusetshenziswa ngokocansi.	✓	
	Inhlangano ayinazo abasebenzi (bakanomphele, besikhashana noma nesikhathi esithile) abangaphansi kweminyaka eyi-15	✓	
	Abukho ubufakazi bokusetshenziswa ngenkani enhlanganweni	✓	
	Abalingisi abayizingane bavikelwe	✓	
	Abukho ubufakazi bokusetshenziswa ngokocansi enhlanganweni	✓	

3 of 4

Level 1

Responsible Tourism Requirements

D: Ezemvelo	Isisekelo	Akungeni
<p>16 Inhlango kumele ikale ukusetshenziswa kwamandla, ikhombisa yonke imithombo yamandla ngokwamaphesenti okusetshenziswa, futhi kumele isebenzise izindlela zobuningi ukwehlisa izinga lokusetshenziswa</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>
<p>Ama-TV, izitero, ama-DVD kanye neminye imishini yobuchwepheshe kumele kucishwe (kungalindi) phakathi kokuvakasha kwezivakashi</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Amabhalbu onga ugesi asetshenziswa ukukhanyisa izakhiwo</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Izinyathelo ezikhona zamandla/ ukushisa ngesola</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>17 Inhlango kumele ikale ukusetshenziswa kwamanzi, ngokuveza yonke imithombo ngokwamaphesenti alho konke ukusetshenziswa, futhi kumele isebenzise izindlela ezobuningi ukwehlisa izinga lokusebenzisa kanye nokwenyusa ukuphinda kusetshenziswa amanzi asetshenziwe</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>
<p>Izinto zokusebenzisa amanzi ezifanele kumele zifakwe</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Izinto zokonga amanzi zibe khona</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Izivakashi azishintshi ithawula kanye nelineni. Izivakashi ziyatshelwa ukuthi zingenza kanjani ukuthi zingakhethi lesevisi</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Ingadi iniselwa ekuseni kanye nantambama ukugwema ukusha kwamanzi</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Ukwenziwa kabusha kwengadi kumele kwehlise izinga lamanzi asetshenziswayo</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Ukwehlisa isitsha sokufasha kuwo wonke noma emathoyilethi amaningi</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>18 Inhlango kumele isungule uhlelo lokuphathwa kwemfucuzo, olubhekana nemfucuzo eqinile kanye newuketshezi, nendlela yobuningi yokwehlisa imfucuzo ekhizwayo</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>
<p>Isakhiwo sinohlelo lokusebenzisa futhi isb. Uplastiki, iphepha, ingilazi, amakani, amakhethrij ephrinta, amabhethri, njll. kuhlukanisiwe futhi kusetshenziswa kabusha</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Ubufakazi bokukhetha ukusebenzisa kabusha imikhiqizo yephepha (isb. Amafomu, amaminyu, amaseviyethi, incwadi yenhlango, iphepha lokufothokhopho, njll.)</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>19 Inhlango kumele ilandele izimfuneko zikazwelonke noma zomhlaba wonke ezibheka ukushintshanisa okubaliwe, okubeka engozini izinhlobo zemvelo futhi yazise izivakashi ngeelezi zimfuneko species</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>
<p>Abukho ubufakazi bokushintshanisa kwezilwane ezisengozini noma eziphelayo ohlwini</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Ubufakazi bokulandelela izimfuneko zikazwelonke noma zomhlaba wonke uma kunobufakazi bokushintshanisa okusohlwini, izinhlobo zezilwane ezisengozini yokuphela. Lapho izivakashi zitsheliwe ngelezi zimfuneko (ubufakazi buhlinzekiwe)</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>20 Inhlango akumele ibe nanoma yiziphi izilwane zasendle ngaphandle kwezimvume ezifanele</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>
<p>Abukho ubufakazi bokuba khona kwezilwane zasendle ngaphandle ngaphandle kwezimvume ezifanele</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Amaphemithi afanele futhi asebenzayo ezilwane zasendle ezikhona</p>	<p>✓</p>	
<p>Ukuxhumana (ukuthinta) phakathi kwezivakashi kanye nezilwane zasendle</p>	<p>✓</p>	

**Yokugcina**  
03 kuNdasa 2017

Hotel Accommodation

**Izimfuneko ezisemqoka**  
**Indawo yokuhlala eyihhotela**

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana															
A: Ngaphandle	Ihhotela	Ihhotela Elincane	Ihhotela Eilwumuzi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	Akungeni	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
1. Ingaphandle Isakhiwo															
2. Amagrawundi kanye nezingadi	Ihhotela	Ihhotela Elincane	Ihhotela Eilwumuzi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5						
3. Indawo yokupaka/ Indawo yokungena ushayela/ Indawo yokusayina	Ihhotela	Ihhotela Elincane	Ihhotela Eilwumuzi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5						
Ukuhlinzeka indawo yokupaka efanele	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Izimpawu ezikhombisa indlela - izimo ezamukelekile, ezibonakalayo, ezifanele inhlolo.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Indawo yokupaka ehlanzekile, enakekelwayo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Indawo yokupaka ekhanyiswe kahle	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Uthixo lokwenzelwa lukhona (amahora ayi-18 ngosuku) lapho imoto yesivakashi ipakwa yizisebenzi ezizibophezele endaweni yokungena/ yokuphuma (ingaphandle uma indawo yokupaka ingaphambili kwehhotela)	✓	✓	✓	✓											*
Izindawo zokupaka zezivakashi ezivalekile zikhona	✓	✓	✓												*
Indawo yokukwehlisa yezimoto evalekile (noma into yokukwilela esimeni sezulu ekufeni/ ekuhambeni kwezivakashi)	✓	✓	✓												*
4. Ezokuphepha	Ihhotela	Ihhotela Elincane	Ihhotela Eilwumuzi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5						
Ezokuphepha ezifanele, ezihambisana nenhlolo ezakhiweni zonke ngazo zonke izikhathi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Omele abaphethe / isithulu esiphuzulu kunazo zonke endaweni esibhekela ezokuphepha sititolakale ocingweni amahora angama-24 ngosuku, izinsuku eziyi-ngesiviki.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Ulwazi lwezimo eziphuthumayo (okuhlanganisa izimbobo zochingo ezifanele) & izimpawu zokuphuma kanye nenqubo kubekwe obala tuthi nencacelo ibholakale uma ifunwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Indawo yokuhlangana ihlinzekelwe izivakashi uma kwezeka kuba nesimo esiphuthumayo sokuthi kumele ziphume	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Izivakashi zikwazi ukungena ezakhiweni esiphaphile.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*
Ukuphepha kwezivakashi kuthathelwa phezu, eliseqopheleni eliphuzulu (Isb. ezokuphepha zasendaweni, ezokuphepha zangasese, abezimo eziphuthumayo, ezokuphepha zasebusuku, amabhathi nesimo esiphuthumayo, umsakazo wangaphakathi wokukhumana, umsakazo wokukhumana namaphoyisa endawo, ukuphepha okufanele endaweni ekalwe, iforamu E qapha Umphakathi, Ividiyo khamera eqophayo (CCTV), abeseka ngokwelapha abangashayelwa ucingo, njll.)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*						*

Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana										
Ihotel	Ihotel Elincane	Ihotel Elwumzi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi azi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	Inkanyezi eyo-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2
<b>B: Ingenye yamagumbi okulala (isexwayiso: kuzholwa igumbi elisezingeni eliphansi)</b>										
<b>5 Ingenye Yokungena Egumbini okulala kanye Nezokuphepha</b>										
Ulwazi ngokuthi uluhuna kanjani usizo kanye nenqubo yokuphuma odabeni lapho kunesimo esiphuthumayo kumele kubekwe obala emagumbini ezivakashi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa ngezimo eziphuthumayo (igridi enye kagesi) kukhona egumbini lezivakashi ngalinye (ijeneretha, ifhoshi, okokukhanyisa kwesola, njll.)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Zonke izivalo zegumbi okulala kumele zikhetyeke/ziphephe (ngaphakathi kanye nangaphandle kwegumbi okulala)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Isikhye sesivakashi se-sibill sangaphakathi (ngaphandle kokuphazanyiswa abasebenzi)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Umshini wokuphepha wesibill uyahlizakwa, uba seduze namagumbi okulala (Isb. Engadini, emgwaqeni, njll.)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Imibobo yokubona ngaphandle ezivalweni zamagumbi okulala	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yesisefo endaweni ephephile ikhona uma iceliwe.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Isisefo sasegumbini (esifanele imakethe)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>6 Imibhede, Izisekelo zemibhede &amp; Nomatras</b>										
Imibhede engosofa kanye nomatras abathofozelayo akumelekile ezindaweni zemibhede	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Imibhede ihlizakwe ngokwendlela yokulala elhangiswe	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Kumele kube nendawo yokugibela embhedeni emacaleni omabili uma umbhede ungasentshizwa abantu ababili.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ibhodi lekhandla lombhede elisesimeni esivumelekile liphephile	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Yonke imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa awusayizi ovumelekile noma miikhulu. Amacala avumelekile ombhede omuntu oyedwa: L188cm x W92cm.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Yonke imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa awusayizi 3/4. Amacala ombhede omuntu oyedwa 3/4: L200cm x W107cm.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Yonke imibhede yokulala awusayizi ovumelekile noma ngaphezulu. Amacala ombhede wabantu ababili: L188cm x W137cm	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Yonke imibhede yokulala unobude bemibhede ye-Queen noma i-King noma ngaphezulu. Amacala: Ombhede we-Queen L200cm x W152cm, Umbhede we-King L188cm x W180cm noma imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa L188cm x W92cm	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Imibhede yodonga egibele kumele ifakwe ilada	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>7 Imibhede &amp; Namalineni</b>										
Izivikeli zomatras kanye nesivikeli zemizambelo kuyadingeka ukuthi kufakwe enicamelweni kanye nasemibhedeni.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Zonke izinto zombhede kumele zifakwe kahle futhi zibe usayizi ofanele (amashidi kumele ahengwe kumatras okungenani u-6 kuya ku-8cm)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Yonke imibhede kumele ingabi amabala, izimboho kanye nokuguga.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Isihdi elifakwe angaphansi kanye neduveni <b>NOMA</b> isihdi elifakwe, isihdi langaphezulu, ingubo kanye nesihdi elindalwa ngaphezulu embhedeni ngamunye.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Isihdi elifakwe angaphansi kanye neduveni <b>NOMA</b> isihdi elifakwe, isihdi langaphezulu, ingubo kanye nesihdi elindalwa ngaphezulu ngokuthatha lombhede ngamunye.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Eziinye izinto zombhede ziyatholakala uma zicelwa.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Eziinye izingubo ziyatholakala egatsheni - kuncike endaweni kanye nesikhathi sonyaka	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Eziinye izingubo ziyatholakala egatsheni - kuncike endaweni kanye nesikhathi sonyaka	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Umbhede ngamunye unomcamelo owordwa onesikhawama sawo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*



Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

Umzamo uyenziva ukwehlisa izinga lomlando ngokubheka usayizi kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nesikhundla sesivakashi.	✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elincane	✓	Ihotela Eilwumuzi	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>12 Ukuhlawula kwamazinga okushisa &amp; Nokushayisa ngomoya</b>	✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elincane	✓	Ihotela Eilwumuzi	✓	Akungeni	Iinkanyezisi eyo-inkanyezisi ezi-1	Iinkanyezisi ezi-2	Iinkanyezisi ezi-3	Iinkanyezisi ezi-4	Iinkanyezisi ezi-5	*
Ukushayisa ngomoya okufanele egumbini ngalinye.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Uthotho lokushayisa kanye nekokushayisa okufanele iwezinga ngokwenkanyezisi ezisishenziswa, olungaphathwa umuntu egatsheni ukuthi lube sezingeni elifunwa yisivakashi ngokwendawo yesakhiwo.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>13 Ukuqhanyisa, Amanandla kanye Namaswishi</b>	✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elincane	✓	Ihotela Eilwumuzi	✓	Akungeni	Iinkanyezisi eyo-inkanyezisi ezi-1	Iinkanyezisi ezi-2	Iinkanyezisi ezi-3	Iinkanyezisi ezi-4	Iinkanyezisi ezi-5	*
Amaswishi alula aqakama emnyango wegumbi ngalinye	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa okukodwa eduze nombhedo egumbini lokulala ngalinye. Egumbini lokulala lamawele, okokukhanyisa okuphakathi nembhedo kumelekile.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa kwaseduze nombhedo endleleni yokulala ngalinye okubekwe eduzane lapho isivakashi esingakwazi ukufikela khona uma silele.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa okubili eduze nembhedo yamawele.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ukuhlazeka kokukhanyisa okuphela etafuleni lokugqoka/deski (ilambu lokufunda)	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Izindawo zamandla ezingasenzi futhi ezisishenziswa uma zidingeka egumbini ngalinye	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Izindawo /iplagi enamandla amaningi kukhona uma kuceliwe.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Iplagi enamandla amaningi ahlanganisiwe enombobo ye USB kanye nezindawo zamaplagi - okubekwe noma okuseduze nedeski/ netafula eliseduze kumbhedo futhi kutholalele kalula	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>14 Izinto zikagesi</b>	✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elincane	✓	Ihotela Eilwumuzi	✓	Akungeni	Iinkanyezisi eyo-1	Iinkanyezisi ezi-2	Iinkanyezisi ezi-3	Iinkanyezisi ezi-4	Iinkanyezisi ezi-5	*
Umshini wokomisa izinwele uyatholakala uma uceliwe	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Umshini wokomisa izinwele (ongama 1 600W) uyahlazekwa egumbini ngalinye	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Izindawo zepilagi yomshini wokomisa izinwele iseduze nesibuko	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Umabonakude egumbini lezivakashi ngalinye, onerimothi esebenzayo yokulawula	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Iphaneli elinganyayo, umabonakude osezingeni eliphezulu egatsheni ngalinye, onerimothi ongama-1ntshi angama-32 ubukhulu	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ombonakude babekwa endaweni efanekile futhi babe bakhulu ngokwanele ukuthi isikrini sibonakale embhedeni	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Qaphela- lapho kugredwa ombonakude abanikazi/ abasebenzisi bayagqoguzelwa ukuthi bathenge ombonakude abasezingeni eliphezulu abahlazekwa ngokukwazi ukubuka ngokwe-intanethi abawusayizi ofanele ukubuka ngokunethezeka.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Abakhululekile ukuveza amshaneli akhona kuphela	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amananeli amaningi (amashaneli ayi-9) akhona egumbini ngalinye. Ukukhethwa kwamashaneli fanele kube okulungile ngokwemakethe.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amananeli amaningi (amashaneli ayi-12) akhona egumbini ngalinye. Ukukhethwa kwamashaneli fanele kube okulungile ngokwemakethe.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amananeli amaningi (amashaneli ayi-12) akhona egumbini ngalinye. Ukukhethwa kwamashaneli fanele kube okulungile ngokwemakethe.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
u-Wi-Fi ukhona kuyo yonke indawo esakhiweni (izindawo zomphakathi kanye namagumbi ezivakashi). Ngaphandle uma ungadonsi uthelelani egumbini lokulala ngalinye noma okufanayo nangaphakathi, indlela e-2 yokuxhumana). Qaphela: abanikazi/ abasebenzisi bayakhuthazwa ukuthi babhekhe ubuchwepheshe obusha ukuxhumana ngaphakathi.	✓		✓		✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>15 Isibuko &amp; Nokokukhanyisa Isibuko</b>	✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elincane	✓	Ihotela Eilwumuzi	✓	Akungeni	Iinkanyezisi eyo-inkanyezisi ezi-1	Iinkanyezisi ezi-2	Iinkanyezisi ezi-3	Iinkanyezisi ezi-4	Iinkanyezisi ezi-5	*



Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

		✓	✓	Ihotel Elincane	✓	Ihotela Elwumuzi		Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*	*
Amagumbi okugezela kumele ahlanganiswe namagumbi okulala.		✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elwumuzi				*	*	*	*	*	*
19 <b>Ukwenziswa Kwaphansi kanye Nesilingi</b>		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ingaphezulu elingangeni amanzi luyahlizweka ezindongeni, phansi kanye nakumasilingi.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
20 <b>Ukukhanyisa Kanye Nokushayisa ngomoya</b>		✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elwumuzi				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanyisa okulawulwa umuntu ngamunye		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanya okwanele ukukhanyisa igumbi lokugezela		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Umthombo wokukhanyisa okuphendene nangaphambili kuhlizweka endishini yokugeza kanye nasasibukweni		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ukushayisa ngomoya okwanele fuhi okufanele egumbini lokugezela		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
21 <b>Ukulungisa Kanye Nokufaka</b>		✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elwumuzi				*	*	*	*	*	*
Zonke izindishi, obhavu kanye namashawa kuhlizweka namanzi anele ashisayo kanye nabandayo		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Izindishi, obhavu kanye namashawa okuhlizweka ukhamba kwamanzi okuqinile fuhi okushintshaka kalula.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amarayili/amarekhi/amashalofu kwamathawula kwanele inani izivakashi ezisegatsheni unit		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Isibuko esikhanyiswe kahle kumele sibekwe ngaphezulu noma eduze kwendishi yokugeza izandla.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo eyanele yazo zonke izivakashi.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo evulekile ekwazi ukuhlalisa abasizi bezivakashi ngokwenani elivunyelwe yindawo yezivakashi.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ukunakwa kwamawindi ukuginisekisa uburiffti.		✓	✓	✓	✓			✓	*	*	*	*	*	*
Amagumbi okulala ahlanganisa i-WC (Ithoyilethi) elineshilo nesivalo		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amagumbi okugezela okungenani amandishi eyodwa yokugeza izandla		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Onke amathoyilethi ahlanganisa ubhavu noma ishawa (ishawa esikhundleni sobhavu nayo ivumelekile)		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Onke amagumbi okugezela aneshawa eseceleni		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Onke amagumbi okugezela eneshawa kanye nobhavu okuseceleni.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amakhetshisi eshawa avumelekile. Kumele engabi namabala, engadabuki, angabi nambobo fuhi kungabi agugile.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ishawa kumele ibe nesikrini (amakhetshini eshawa awavumelekile)		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Ibhuka leziphahla.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amathuka amabili ahlukeno		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
22 <b>Okokwesula</b>		✓	Ihotela	✓	Ihotela Elwumuzi				*	*	*	*	*	*
Umata wokugeza uhlizweka.		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Umata wokwesula		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amathawula ehlanzekile, amunca amanzi okugeza ahlizwekiwe ngokwegumbi lokulala		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*
Amathawula okusula izandla ahlizwekiwe fuhi amunca amanzi kanye namathawula okugeza amakhulu ahlizwekiwe ngokwegumbi lokulala ngalinye		✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*	*



Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

	Ihhotela	Ihhotela Elincane	Ihhotela Elwumuzi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5	Inkanyezi e-6	Inkanyezi e-7	Inkanyezi e-8	Inkanyezi e-9	Inkanyezi e-10
I-hob engamapuleti ama-2			✓				*	*	*					*
I-hob engamapuleti ama-3 noma ama-4			✓											*
I-hob engamapuleti ama-4			✓											*
Iferi yokukhipha umoya			✓	✓										*
Ifriji encane enendawo yeqhwa			✓				*	*	*					*
Ifriji enendawo yeqhwa			✓											*
Umshini wokugesa izitsha izinsiza zokugesa izitsha (izinsiza zokugesa zikhona uma zidingeka)			✓	✓										*
Umngqomo ombobozwe wokulahla udoti, onento ngaphakathi			✓				*	*	*					*
Iketela			✓				*	*	*					*
Ithosta			✓	✓			*	*	*					*
Ibhenda			✓	✓										*
Umshini wekhofi			✓	✓										*
<b>30 Izitsha kanye namabhodwe</b>														
Izipuni, izimfologo, izipuni zedizethi kanye nezipuni ezincane okwanele izivakashi eziseqatsheni			✓				*	*	*					*
Ibhokisi lezipuni noma okokuhlukanisa ishalofu			✓											*
Izingilazi zokuphuzwa - Ezanele inani lezivakashi sezizomke egatsheni			✓				*	*	*					*
Amapuleti edina, amapuleti aseceleni, izitsha kanye nemaki yekhoti/yetye noma inkomishi yetye kanye nesoso kwanele inani lezivakashi eziseqatsheni			✓				*	*	*					*
Amabhodwe ama-2/ amasosipani ahlukene ngokosayizi			✓				*	*	*					*
Amabhodwe ama-3 noma ngaphezulu/ amasosipani ahlukene ngosayizi (amancane, aphakathi kanye namakhulu)			✓											*
Ipani lokuthosa			✓				*	*	*					*
Amapani ama-2 noma ngaphezulu awosayizi abehlukene			✓											*
Ithibhoti			✓				*	*	*					*
Izitsha sikhukela			✓				*	*	*					*
Isethi yezinongo			✓				*	*	*					*
Amaglavu kahhavini noma okufanayo			✓				*	*	*					*
Indwangu yetafula noma omata (okwanele izivakashi eziseqatsheni)			✓				*	*	*					*
Izitshane sokusika (esakhiwe ngento ehlanzekile, engangeni manzi)			✓				*	*	*					*
Izitsha smasaladi			✓				*	*	*					*
Okokuphaka amasaladi			✓				*	*	*					*
Ithileyi lokosa			✓				*	*	*					*
Izipuni sokhuni noma okufanayo			✓				*	*	*					*



Core Requirements

Hotel Accommodation

Ibhala	Ihotel	Ihotel Elincane	Ihotel Elwumuzi	Akungeni	Inkanyesi e-1	Inkanyesi e-2	Inkanyesi e-3	Inkanyesi e-4	Inkanyesi e-5
<b>35 Ibhala, indawo yokuphumula &amp; Nezindawo zokuhlala</b>									
Onke amabhala, izindawo zokuphumula kanye nezindawo zokuhlala kumele kube namatafula, izitulo kanye nenigaphezulu okufanele. Zonke izindawo zokuhlala kumele zibe usayizi ovumelele luthi zibe nenfemisa ukuhlazeka indawo efanele ukuthi izivakashi zihambe phakathi kwayo.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yeebha ayidingeki, kodwa indawo yomphakathi kumele ibe khona lapho kuphuzwa khona iziphuzo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Iziphuzo ziyahlazeka	✓	✓	✓						
Iziphuzo ziyahlazeka emini kanye nangamahora asebusuku afanele	✓	✓	✓						
<b>36 Ukwenziwa kwaphansi, isilingi, Ukusetha &amp; Nokhosi</b>									
Umzamo ofanele uyenziswa ukwehlisa izinga lomlando ngokubheka usayizi kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nezingqongilezi lesivakashi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>37 Ukukhanyisa, Ukushisa/Okubandisa &amp; Nokushayisa ngomoya</b>									
Amazanga amukelele okukhanyisa abekwe ngokufanele ukuzo kube nokuphepha kanye nokunethezeka kuzo zonke izindawo zomphakathi okukhanyisa nokukhanyisa okwanele ezitebhisini naphansi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ukulawula amazanga okushisa kanye nokushayisa ngomoya.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>38 Ezinye izindawo zomphakathi okukhanyisa Amaphasiji &amp; Nezitebhisi</b>									
Amaphasiji kanye nezitebhisi kumele kungabi nezithikamezi. Kukhanyiswe amahora angama-24, kodwa kumele kuhlonishwe abalwela amandla. Izimpawu ezikombisa indlela eya ezindaweni zokuzijabulisa, emagatsheni kanye nasendaweni yokwamukela izivakashi (uma kunesidingo) kumele zigqame.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>39 Izindawo zamathoyilethi</b>									
Onke amathoyilethi ayahlanzwa ngokwejoyela, ayabhekwa futhi ashayiswa ngomoya ngokufanele. Izinto ezidingekayo zihlinzekwe: indishi yokugaya nenisipho, into yokomisa izandla, ifihoyilethi elineshilo kanye nesivato, okokukhanyisa okumbozwe (awekho amahlabhu asobala noma izintambo), isibuko, ihhuka emnyango, umgqomo kadoti, umgqomo ovalwe wokulahlala udoti (wabesifazane).	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Izakhiwo zamathoyilethi amakhulu, aseqophelweni aliphuzulu luthi amaningi, enezinto ezifana namathawula ezandla, izinto zokugaya ezisenzingeni eliphuzulu kanye nezinsiza.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>40 Amakhehi</b>									
Ikheshi iyadingeka lapho kunegatsha lezivakashi elinezithezi ezingaphezu kwezimbili noma ezingaphezu kwesithezi sokungena isib. Isithezi sesithathu.	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
<b>F: Ezokudla &amp; Neziphuzo (uma zikhona)</b>									
<b>41 Ukuhlazeka kokudla</b>									
Indawo yokudla isidlo santambama ihlinzekwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Isidlo sasekuseni sihlinzekwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Isidlo sasebusuku sihlinzekwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Isidlo sasebusuku sihlinzekwe endaweni yokudlela	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Isidlo sasemini sihlinzekwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Meal times as advertised	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
<b>42 Ifenisha</b>									
	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*







Guest Accommodation

Core Requirements

**Izimumeko ezisemqoka  
Indawo yokuhlala yezivakashi**

**Uhlaqa Lokugcina  
03 kuNdasa 2017**

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana										
A: Ingaphandle	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba esehlahlani	Indawo yokulala & Nesidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	
1	Ingaphandle lesakhiwo				Inkanyezi e-1					
2	Amagrawundi kanye nezingadi		Indawo yokulala & Nesidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	
3	Indawo yokupaka/ Indawo yokungena ushayela/ Indawo yokusayina	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba esehlahlani	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	
	Ukuhlizeka indawo efanele inhlalo endaweni kanye/ noma izindawo zokupaka eziqokwe (indawo yokupaka eyodwa igumbi ngalinye. Indawo kanye nezimakethe kumele kubhekwe ngesikhathi sokuhlala)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Izimpawu ezikhombisa indlela - izimo ezamukelekile, ezibonakalayo, ezifanele inhlalo.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Indawo yokupaka ekhanyiswe kahle	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
4	Ezokuphepha	Indlu yezivakashi	Indawo yokulala & Nesidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	
	Ezokuphepha ezifanele, ezihambisana nenhlalo ezakhiweni zonke ngazo zonke izikhathi.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Omele abaphethe / Isikhulu esiphuzulu kunazo zonke endaweni esibhekile ezokuphepha sitholakele ocwangeni amahora angama-24 ngosuku, izinsuku eziyi-7 ngeviki.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Imulwazi lwezimo eziphuthumayo (okuhlanganisa izimbobo zocingo ezifanele) & izimpawu zokuphepha kanye nenqubo kubekwe obala futhi nencuzelo itholakale uma ifuniwe	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Indawo yokuhlangana ihinzelwe izivakashi uma kwenzeka kuba nesimo esiphuthumayo sokuthi kumele ziphume izivakashi zikwazi ukungena ezakhiweni eziphephile	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Ukuphepha kwezivakashi kuthathwa phezu, eliseqopheleni eliphuzulu (isb. ezokuphepha zasendaweni, ezokuphepha zangasese, abezimo eziphuthumayo, ezokuphepha zasebusuku, amabhathini esimiso esiphuthumayo, umsakazo wangaphakathi wokuxhumana, umsakazo wokuxhumana namaphoyisa endawo, ukuphepha okufanele endaweni ekaliwe, iforamu Eqapha Umphakathi, ividiyo khamera eqophayo (CCTV), abeseka ngokwelapha abangashayelwa ucingo, njll.)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
	Izihambeli ziyavunyelwa ukungena okungavinjeliwa futhi okuphephile ezindaweni zomphakathi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	



Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana										
Indlu yezivakasi	Indlu eyisithabath abasehlatshini	Indawo yokulala & Nesidlo sasekuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5		
<b>B: Ingxenywe yamagumbi okulala (isexwayiso: kuzohlolwa igumbi elisezingeni eliphansi)</b>										
<b>5 Ingxenywe Yokungena Egumbini lokulala kanye Nezokuphepha</b>										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Ulwazi maqondana nokusizwa ocingweni (okuhlalanganisa izimbombo zocingo) kanye nenqubo yokuphuma odabeni esimeni esiphuthumayo kumele ibekwe obala kuwo wonke amagatsha										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Okokukhanyisa kwezimo eziphuthumayo (okunye ngaphandle kukagesi) kumele kumele kube khona kuwo wonke amagatsha (isb. ijeneretha, ithoshi, okokukhanyisa kwesola, njll.)										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Yonke iminyango yemibhede kumele ikhiyike/ iphephe (ngaphakathi kanye nangaphandle kwegumbi lokulala) idavayisi yesibini yokuphepha izohimzeka ngaphakathi lapno kungeneka ngaphakathi emagatsheni sb. Amagatsha azimele, amagatsha angena engadini, njll.										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Indawo yesisefo endaweni ephaphile ikhona uma icelliwe.										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Isisefo sasegumbini (esifanele imakethe)										
<b>6 Imibhede, izisekelo zemibhede &amp; Nomatras</b>										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Imibhede engosofa abavumelekile ezindaweni zemibhede.										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Imibhede efakwe omatras abantofontofo ivumelekile										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Imibhede ihinzeke ngokwendlela yokulala ekhangisiwe										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Kumele kube nendawo yokugibela embhedeni emacaleni omabili uma umbhede ungasethenziswa abantu ababili.										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Ibhodi lekhandla lombhede elisesimeni esivumelekile liphephile - kungaba umcamelo omkhulu										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Ibhodi lekhandla lombhede elisesimeni esivumelekile liphephile										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Yonke imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa awusayizi ovumelekile noma mlkhulu. Amacala avumelekile ombhede omuntu oyedwa: L188cm x W92cm.										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Yonke imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa awusayizi 3/4. Amacala ombhede omuntu oyedwa 3/4: L200cm x W107cm.										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Yonke imibhede yokulala awusayizi ovumelekile noma ngaphezulu. Amacala ombhede wabantu ababili: L188cm x W137cm										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Yonke imibhede yokulala unobude bembhede ye-Queen noma i-King. Amacala: Ombhede we-Queen L200cm x W152cm, Umbhede we-King L188cm x W180cm noma imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa L188cm x W92cm										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Yonke imibhede yokulala unobude bembhede ye-Queen noma i-King noma ngaphezulu. Amacala: Ombhede we-Queen L200cm x W152cm, Umbhede we-King L188cm x W180cm noma imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa L188cm x W92cm										
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		
Uma kusethenziswa umbhede oyi-divan ingaphansi leseethi elinezipringi kumele kumbozwe ngendawo entofontofo noma lifakwe ishidi.										

## Core Requirements

7 Imibhedhe & Namalineni	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1				
					Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
Izivikeli zomatrasi kanye nezivikeli zemcamelo kuyadingeka ukuthi kufakwe emicamelweni kanye nasemibhedheni.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Zonke izinto zombhedhe kumele zifakwe kahle futhi zibe usayizi ofanele (amashidi kumele ahengwe kumatrasi okungenani u-6 kuya ku-8cm)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Yonke imibhedhe kumele ingabi amabala, izimbobo kanye nokuguga.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ishidi elifrakwe angaphansi kanye ne-ducti NOMA ishidi elifrakwe, ishidi langaphezulu, ingubo kanye neshidi elindlalwa ngaphezulu embhedheni ngamunye.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ishidi elifrakwe angaphansi kanye ne-ducti NOMA ishidi elifrakwe, ishidi langaphezulu, ingubo kanye neshidi elindlalwa ngaphezulu kanye neshidi elindlalwa ngaphezulu ngokuthatha lombhedhe ngamunye	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Eziyinye izinto zombhedhe ziyatholakala uma ziceliwe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Eziyinye izingubo ziyatholakala egumbini lokulala - kuncike endaweni kanye nesikhathi sonyaka	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umcamel owodwa endaweni yokulala ngayinye onesikhwama sawo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Imicamelo embili yendawo yokulala ngayinye	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Eminye imicamelo iyatholakala uma iceliwe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Imicamelo ethile iyatholakala uma iceliwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
8 Ifenisha	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	Indawo yokulala & Nesidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
Itafula eliseduze nombhedhe noma ishalofu, okubekweeduze kwazo zonke indawo yokulala.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Itafula elilodwa eliseduze nombhedhe engamawele livumelekile	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okungenani isihlalo esisodwa siyahlinzekwa egumbini ngalinye.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okungenani isihlalo esi-1 esinethezekile/ sendawo yokulala (ukwengeza edeskin/ esihlalweni setafula lokugqoka)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okungenani isihlalo esi-1 esinethezekile/ sendawo yokulala (ukwengeza edeskin/ esihlalweni setafula lokugqoka)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
I-deski kanye/noma itafula lokugqoka elinesitulo estianeke kanye nesibuko ngaphezulu kwe-deski/ itafula lizohlinzekwa okungenani egumbini lokulala elilodwa	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
I-deski kanye/noma itafula lokugqoka elinesitulo estianeke kanye nesibuko ngaphezulu kwe-deski/ itafula. Indawo yedeski kumele ibe nikulu ngokwanele ukuthi ibetsheziswe yideski kanye netafula lokugqoka kanye kanye - ngokunye ideski kanye netafula lokugqoka okuseceleni kumele kuhlinzekwe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isicilo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
9 Owoodllophu, Amashalofu & Nendawo Yokubeka Izikhwama	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ukuhlinzekwa kwendawo efanele yokuhlanga kwezimpahla/ uwoodllophu.									
Ukuhlinzekwa kwendawo yokuhlanga efanele evumela ukuthi kuhlangwe izimpahla ngobude bazo	✓	✓	✓						
Uwoodllophu omkhulu ngokwanele okwazi ukufaka eminye imicamelo, izingubo, njll.	✓	✓	✓						
Okungenani ishalofu eli-1 ngokwendawo yokulala ngayinye	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okungenani ishalofu eli-1 ngokwendawo yokulala ngayinye	✓	✓	✓						
Okungenani amashalofu avakalele ama-2 ngokwendlela yokulala ezimilela zokulala ezimilela kanye neshalofu elinodwa elivakalele lezindlela zokulala ezingaphezu kwezi-2	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
Okungenani amahanga ama-5 ngokwendlela yokulala ngayinye	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ukuhlinzekwa kwamahanga athile uma eceliwe	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa uwoodllophu okufanele	✓	✓	✓						*
Irekhi/ isitende kwezikhwama okufanele inhloso egunjini ngalinye	✓	✓	✓					*	*
10 Amakhethini & Okokumboza Amawindi	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isicilo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Okokumboza amawindi kumele kube kukhulu ngokwanele ukuthi kudonseke kalula futhi kuvale bonke ukukhulu kanye nobude bewindi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Onke amagumbi okulala aphantsi kumele ahlizelke ubumfihlo ngaphandle kokuvimbela ukukhanya kwemvelo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okokumboza amawindi kumele kuhlizelke ukumboza okugcwele.	✓	✓						*	*
11 Okwenziwa kwaphansi, isilingi, Ukusetha kanye Nokhonisi	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isicilo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Umzamo uyenziwa ukwehlisa izinga lomisingo ngokubheka usayizi kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nesikhundla sesivakashi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

12 Ukuhlawula kwamazinga okushisa & Nokushayisa ngomoya	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1				
					Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
Ukushayisa ngomoya okufanele egumbini ngalinye.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Uhlelo lokushisa kanye nelokubandisa olufanele lwezinga ngokwenkanyezi esetshenzisiwe, olungaphathwa umuntu egatsheni ukuthi lube sezingeni elifunwa yisivakashi endaweni yezakhiwo futhi kuzo zikhatshi zonyaka.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
13 Ukukhanyisa, Amandla kanye Nemaswishi	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1				
Inkanyezi e-1					Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
Amaswishi alula afakwa emyango wegumbi ngalinye.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa okukodwa eduze nombhede egumbini lokulala ngalinye. Egumbini lokulala lamawele, okokukhanyisa okuphakathi nemibhede kuvumelekile.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okukhanyisa kwaseduze nombhede endleleni yokulala ngalinye okubekwe eduzane lapho isivakashi esingakwazi ukufikela khona uma silele.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okokukhanyisa emaceleni amabili egumbi lokulala elinemibhede yamawele.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ukuhlizekwa kokukhanyisa okuqondile etafuleni lokugoka/ ideski (ilambu lokufunda)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Iplagi/ indawo yamandla amaningi ikhona uma iceliwe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Iplagi enamandla amaningi ananganiswe enemibobo ye USB kanye nezindawo zamaplagi - okubekwe noma okuseduze nedeski/ netatula eliseduze kombhede futhi kutholakale kalula	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
14 Izinto zikagesi	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1				
Inkanyezi e-1					Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
Umshini wokomisa izinwele uyatholakala uma uceliwe	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umshini wokomisa izinwele (ongama 1 600W) uyahlizekwa egumbini ngalinye	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yepilagi yomshini wokomisa izinwele iseduze nesibuko	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umbonakude egumbini lokuphumula	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umbonakude egumbini lezivakashi ngalinye, onerimothi esebenzayo yokulawula	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umbonakude olingene egumbini lezivakashi ngalinye, onerimothi esebenzayo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Iphaneli elinganayo, umbonakude osezingeni eliphezulu egatsheni ngalinye, onerimothi ongama-intshi angama-32 ubukhulu	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*





Core Requirements

20	Ukukhanyisa kanye Nokushayisa ngomoya	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabath abahlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isicelo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	
						Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-inkanyezi ezi-inkanyezi ezi-
	Ukukhanyisa okulawulwa umuntu ngamunye	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Ukukhanyisa okwanele ukukhanyisa igumbi lokugezela	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Umthombo wokukhanyisa okuqondene nangaphambili kuhlinzekwe endishini yokugeza kanye nasesibukweni	✓	✓	✓			*
	Ukushayisa ngomoya okwanele futhi okufanele egumbini lokugezela	✓	✓	✓		*	*
21	Ukulungisa kanye Nokufaka	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabath abahlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isicelo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	
	Zonke izindishi, obhavi kanye namashawa kuhlinzekwe namanzi anele ashisayo kanye nabandayo	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Izindishi, obhavi kanye namashawa okuhlinzeka ukuhamba kwamanzi okuqinile futhi okushinsheka kalula.	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Amareyili/amarekhi/amashalofu kwamathawula kwanele inani lezivakashi ezisegatsheeni unit	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Isibuko esikhanyiswe kahle kumele sibekwe ngaphezulu noma eduze kwendishi yokugeza izandla.	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Indawo eyanele yazo zonke izivakashi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Indawo evulekile ekwazi ukuhlalisa abasizi bezivakashi ngokwenani eivunyelwe yindawo yezivakashi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Ukunakwa kwamawindi ukuqinisekisa ubumfihlo.	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*
	Amagumbi okulala ahlanganisa i-WC (ithoyilethi) elinesihalo nesivalo	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Amagumbi okugezela okungenani anendishi eyodwa yokugeza izandla	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Onke amagumbi okugezela ahlanganisa ubhavi noma ishawa (ishawa esikhundleni sobhavi nayo ivumelekile)	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Onke amagumbi okugezela aneshawa eseceleni	✓	✓	✓			*
	Onke amagumbi okugezela eneshawa kanye nobhavi okuseceleni.	✓	✓	✓			*
	Amakhethezi eshawa avumelekile. Kumele engabi namabala, engadabuki, angabi namambo futhi kungabi agugile.	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Ishawa kumele ibe neskrini (amakhethezi eshawa awavumelekile)	✓	✓	✓			*
	Ibhuka leziphahla.	✓	✓	✓		*	*
	Amahhuka amabili ahlukene	✓	✓	✓			*

Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation

Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasekuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1
22 Okokwesula	Umata wokugeza uhlizekiwe.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Umata wokwesula	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Amathawula ehlanzekile, amunca amanzi okugeza ahlinzekiwe ngokwegumbi lokulala	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Amathawula okusula zandla ahlanzekile futhi amunca amanzi kanye namathawula okugeza amakhulu ahnzekiwe ngokwegumbi lokulala ngalinye	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ithawula lezandla elimunca amanzi, ehlanzekile, amashidi ama-2 okugeza (noma ithawula lokugeza kanye neshidi lokugeza) futhi ingubo yokugeza	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
23 Izinsiza		Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasekuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1
	Okokumboza isivalo sesihalo sethoyilethi kanye namasethi omata akuvumelekile	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Insipho egoqiwe, evaliwe kanye/noma nensipho ewuketshezi kuhlinzekiwe	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ishampu ihlinzekiwe.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Amathishu ahlinzekiwe	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Igumbi lokugezela lihlinzekiwe ngongqomo ovalekayo.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Igumbi longasese linephepha elihlanzekile kabili kanye nendawo yokulifaka kanye neroli lephepha lasethoyilethi eyodwa.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Igumbi lokugezela lihlinzekiwe ibhulashi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Inglazi yokuphuzi/ inkomishi kuhlinzekiwe egumbini lokulala ngalinye	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Izinto ezindingwa ngabantu ngokawehukana okunlanganisa isigqoko seshawa, okokugeza izinwele, ishawa jeli, into yokugcoba umzimba kanye nesikhwama sezinto zokugcoba.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Isibuko sihlinzekiwe egumbini lokulala noam lokugezela	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

D: Amakhishi (zamazgumbi/ amagatsha okuziphakela)

Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana	Indawo yokulala	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-1
24 Uhlolo lwekhishi	Indlu yezivakashi	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Isakhiwo/ indawo eyakhelwe ukwenza ukudla futhi efanelek maqondana nohlobo kanye nesitayela sesakhiwo	✓	✓	✓	✓

Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlithini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
25 Ezokuphepha	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
Impahla yezokuphepha emilweni zihlinzekiwe (sb. Ingubo yomlilo, isicisha mlilo, njll.)									
26 Ukwenziwa kwaphansi, Ukwenziwa kodonga kanye Nesilingi	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
Ingaphazulu elingangeni amanzi lihlinzekiwe ezindongeni, phansi kanye nakumasilingi									
27 Ukukhanyisa	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanyisa okuqondile kuzo zonke izindawo zokusebenza									
28 Ukufaka ifenisha kanye Nokufaka	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
kuvula iwindi noma ukukhipha umoya okunomthelela									
Okungenani ingaphezulu lomsebenzi elilodwa elihlanzekile futhi elithatha isikhathi eside									
Ukugeza usinki, ngamanzi ashisayo kanye nabandayo ahambayo, iplaki kanye nebhodi lokuchitha amanzi									
Indawo eyanele ukubeka izitsha, izipuni, izinto zasekhishini, izinto zokuhlanya kanye nezinto zezivakashi									
29 Izinto zogesi	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni									
Uhhavini wemakhrowevu	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
Uhhavini noma ukushintsha kwemkhrowevu									
I-hob engamapuleti ama-2	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
I-hob engamapuleti ama-4	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
Ifeni yokukhipha umoya	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Guest Accommodation

	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyenzi e-1	Inkanyenzi e-2	Inkanyenzi e-3	Inkanyenzi e-4	Inkanyenzi e-5
Ifriji encane enendawo yeqhwa	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ifriji enendawo yeqhwa	✓	✓	✓						*
Umshini wokugeza izitsha noma izinsiza zokugeza izitsha (izinsiza zokugeza zikhona uma zidingeka)	✓	✓	✓						*
Umgqomo omboziwe wokulaha udoti, onento ngaphakathi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Iketela	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Ithosta	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Blender	✓	✓	✓	✓					*
Umshini wekhofi	✓	✓	✓	✓					*
<b>30 Izitsha kanye namabhodwe</b>	<b>Indlu yezivakashi</b>	<b>Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini</b>	<b>Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni</b>	<b>Akungeni</b>	<b>Inkanyenzi e-1</b>	<b>Inkanyenzi e-2</b>	<b>Inkanyenzi e-3</b>	<b>Inkanyenzi e-4</b>	<b>Inkanyenzi e-5</b>
Izipuni, izimfologo, izipuni zedizithi kanye nezipuni ezincane okwanele izivakashi ezisegatsheni	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ibhokisi lezipuni noma okokuhlukanisa ishalofu	✓	✓	✓						*
Izingilazi zokuphuza - Ezanele inani lezivakashi sezizonke egatsheni	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Amapuleti/edina, amapuleti/aseceleni, izitsha kanye nemaki yekhoti/yetye noma imkomishi yetye kanye nesoso kwanele manzi lezivakashi ezisegatsheni	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Amabhodwe ama-2/ amasosipani ahlukene ngokosayizi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Amabhodwe ama-3 noma ngaphezulu/ amasosipani ahlukene ngosayizi ( amancane, aphakathi kanye namakhulu)	✓	✓	✓						*
Ipani lokuthosa	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Amapani ama-2 noma ngaphezulu awosayizi abehlukene	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ithibhothi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Izitsha sikashukelela	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Isethi yezinongo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Amagilavu kahhavini noma okufanayo	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indwangu yetafula noma omata (okwanele izivakashi ezisegatsheni)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Isethe sokusika (esakhiwe ngento ehlanzekile, engangeni manzi)	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Izitsha smasaladi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Okokuphaka amasaladi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ithileyi lokosa	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

30



Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
32 Igumbi letafula/ Indawo Yokudla Idina Okokuhlala kuhlinzekiwe etafuleni/ endaweni yokudla - Kwanele amagumbi okulala onke egatsheni	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

E: Izindawo zomphakathi									
Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana									
33 Ukuhlobisa Ukusetshenziswa kwezinto ezihhahayo kanye nobuciko. Izakhiwo ezihhahayo, izinto ezihhahayo kanye nobuciko.	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akukho				*	*
34 Ifenisha kanye Nokufaka Ukusetshenziswa kwezinto ezihhahayo kanye nobuciko.	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni					*
35 Ibha, Indawo yokuphumula & Nezindawo zokuhlala Indawo yokuphumula yebha ingahlanganyelwa phakathi kwabavakashiwe kanye nezivakashi. Indawo yokuphumula enokuhlala okunethezekile ukuthi izivakashi zikwazi ukungena usuku lonke kanye nantambama (uma inkulu ngokufanele lokhu kungahlinzekwa egumbini lokulala lezivakashi) Zonke izindawo zokuhlala kumele zibe usayizi ovumelekile tutshi zibe netemisha ukuminzeka indawo efanele ukuthi izivakashi zihambe phakathi kwayo. Indawo yokuphumula ehlanganyelwayo / Izindawo zokuhlala kumele zitholakale ngamahora afanele	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akukho				*	*
36 Ukwenziwa kwaphansi, Isilingi, Ukusetha & Nokhonisi	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni				*	*

Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation

37	Ukukhanyisa, Ukushisa/Ukubandisa & Nokushayisa ngomoya	Umzamo ofanele uyenziwa ukwehlisa izinga lomlando ngokubheka usayizi kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nezinga lesivakashi.	✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	✓	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Amazinga amukelele okukhanyisa abekwe ngokufanele ukuze kube nokuphepha kanye nokunethezeka kuzo zonke izindawo zomphakathi okuhlanganisa nokukhanyisa okwanele ezitebhisini naphansi.		✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*		*	*	*	*	*	*
	Ukulawula amazinga okushisa kanye nokushayisa ngomoya.		✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*		*	*	*	*	*	*
38	Ezinye izindawo zomphakathi okuhlanganisa Amaphasiji & Nezitebhisi	Amaphasiji kanye nezitebhisi kumele kungabi nezithikamezi. Kukhanyiswe amahora angama-24, kodwa kumele kuhlonishwe abalwela amandla.	✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni		Akungeni						
	izimpawu ezikhombisa indlela eya ezindaweni zokuzijabulisa, emagatseni kanye nasendaweni yokwamukela izivakashi (uma kunesidingo) kumele zigqame.		✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*		*	*	*	*	*	*
39	Izindawo zamathoyilethi	Onke amathoyilethi ayahlanzwa ngokweywayela, uyabhekwa futhi ashayiswa ngomoya ngokufanele. Izinto ezidingekayo zimzekiwe: indishi yokugeza nesapino, into yokomisa izandla, ithoyilethi elimesinelo kanye nesivalo, okokukhanyisa okumboziwe (awekho amabhalbu asobala noma izintambo), isibuko, inhuka emnyango, umgqomo kadoti, umgqomo ovaliwe wokulahlala udoti (wabesifazane).	✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni		Akungeni						
	Izakhiwo zamathoyilethi amakhulu, asepphelweni eliphezulu futhi amaningi enezinto ezifana namathawula ezandla, izinto zokugeza ezisezingeni eliphezulu kanye nezinsiza.		✓	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*		*	*	*	*	*	*

F: Isidlo sasakuseni kanye Nedima

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana

40	Isidlo sasakuseni		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni		Akungeni							
	Isidlo sasakuseni sikhazekile		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*			*	*	*	*	*	*
	Isidlo sasakuseni esikhazekile ngokwamukela uhlobo lwesireli, isinkwa kanye namakhondimenti.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*			*	*	*	*	*	*
	Ukudla okwanokunene okungile okushisayo kanye nokubandayo kuhlinzekelwa isidlo sasakuseni (isidlo sasakuseni kumele sikhanganise izinto eziyi-5; isidlo sasakuseni e sibandayo singahlanganisa isiriyeli, isinkwa, inyama ebandayo, izithelo kanye noshizi) nokunye okuhambisanayo okukhethiwe.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*			*	*	*	*	*	*
	Ukudla okusezingeni eliphezulu okushisayo kanye nokubandayo kukhona esidlweni sasakuseni futhi kulethwa ngezinga eliphezulu.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	✓	✓	*			*	*	*	*	*	*



Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
45 Ukwenziwa kwemenyu									
46 Ukuqasha amatafula	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Ukuqasha amatafula afanele ukudla okuzodlwa isb. Isidlo sasakuseni noma esantambama.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

G. Izinsiza ezejwayelekile kanye nomsebenzi

47 Ukwamukela, Ubungani Kanye Nendlela Yokuziphatha	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Umsebenzi onobuchwepheshe, onekhono futhi ofanele kanye nokubheka iminingwane kulindlekile	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
48 Ukubukeka Kwabasebenzi	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Izisebenzi ezisebenzayo kumele zibukeke njengochwepheshe futhi zihlanzekile.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
49 Indawo yokwamukela izivakashi / Indawo yokwamukela	Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Izivakashi kumele zihlangabezwe ophethwe ngokusemthethweni esakhiwe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo eqokawe yokuhlangana kanye nokubingelela. Likhona usizo emuva kwamahora okusebenzi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yokuhlangana kanye nokubingelelana ekhona yokungena kwezivakashi	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo ewulekile futhi ehehayo yokungena	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Ukuhumana okucacile maqondana nokuthi yisiphi isakhiwo okumele sibe khona ngokwesikhangiso, ibrosha, ngomlomo noma ezinye izindlela kuzo zonke izivakashi uma kuceliwe.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Guest Accommodation

Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
50	Ukugcina, Ukungena, Ukuphuma & Nomsbenzi wenjwayelo	Uthetha lwesikhathi esifanele sokugcina indawo kanye nokungena, okuhlanganisa ukuthatha amarekhodi esitakashi kanye nokuphendula imibuzo yezivakashi.	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Lonke ulwazi oluhlinzekwe ezivakashini okuhlanganisa isakhiwo sempahla, izakhiwo ezikhona kanye nenqubo yokuphuma ngezimo eziphuthumayo, njl.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Iphapha lesikweletu kumele libe neminingwane efanele futhi libhalwe ngokugqamile futhi lichazwe.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
51	Uloncolo		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Uloncolo wosuku olulodwa noma ukomisa kuhlinzekiwe isikhathi esisinsuku eziyi-3 ngeviki.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Uloncolo wosuku olulodwa noma ukomisa kuhlinzekiwe isikhathi esisinsuku eziyi-5 ngeviki.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Izikhwama zolondolo kanye nohla lwemali ekhokhwayo zivakashi ziyahlinzekwa ngakho endaweni yokwemukela izivakashi, nokuweza izinsuku omsbenzi ongenziwa ngazo.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Izikhwama zolondolo kanye nohla lwemali ekhokhwayo zivakashi ziyahlinzekwa ngakho egumbini.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
52	Ukudla & Neziphuzo		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Umsbenzi ongavimbeli futhi olungile. Abasebenzi abaqeqeshiwe futhi abangochwepheshe.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Abasebenzi bakhombisa ukudla okusemazingeni eliphezulu, ulwazi lwemikhqizo yeziphuzo kanye newayini kanye namakhono omsebenzi.		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
53	Ezokuxhumana kanye nezakhiwo		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3
	Izakhiwo kumele zenze izinto ezisetsheziswayo zebhimisi zibe khona uma kwenzeka (isb. Ikhompyutha, inthanethi, iphrinta, njll.)		Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlahlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isidlo sasakuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3

H: Ukugcina indlu

Core Requirements

Guest Accommodation

Indlu yezivakashi	Indlu eyisithabathaba ehlathini	Indawo yokulala kanye nokudla isicelo sasekuseni	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓	✓						
✓	✓	✓						

54

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

Core Requirements

## Izimfuneko ezisemqoka Izivakashi zobhakha kanye Namahostela

## Uhlaka lokucina 03 kuNdasa 2017

A: Ingaphandle		Kuyangena						
		Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
1	Isakhiwo sangaphandle							
2	Amagrawundi kanye Nezingadi	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
3	Indawo yokupaka/ Indawo yokungena ushayela/ Indawo yokusayina	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Ukuhlizeka indawo yokupaka efanele inhlalo kanye/ noma ukuqokwa kwezinye izindawo zokupaka.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Iziphawu ezikhombisa indlela - izimo ezamukelekile, ezibonakalayo, ezifanele inhlalo.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo yokupaka ekhanyiswe kahle	✓		*	*	*	*	*
4	Ezokuphepha	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Ezokuphepha ezifanele, ezinambisana nenhlalo ezakhiweni zonke ngazo zonke izikhathi. (Ukuphepha kwezivakashi kuthathelwa phezulu futhi akuvimbeki)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Omiele abaphethe / Isikhulu esiphuzulu kunazo zonke endaweni esibhekela ezokuphepha sitholakele ocingweni amahora angama-24 ngosuku, izinsuku eziyi-7 ngeviki.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ulwazi lwezimo eziphuthumayo (okunhlanganisa izimombolo zocingo ezifanele) & izimpawu zokuphuma kanye nenqubo kubekwe obala futhi nencazelo itholakale uma ifuniwe	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo yokuhlalanga ihlinzekelwe izivakashi uma kwenzeka kuba nesimo esiphuthumayo sokuthi kumele ziphume	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Izivakashi zihlinzekwa ngokuthi ziyayezwe zonke izindawo zokuphuma uma kwenzeka kuba nesimo esiphuthumayo kanye nemininqwane ebalulekile ngesikhathi sokufika.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Izivakashi zikwazi ukungena ezakhiweni eziphephile	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Izivakashi ziyavunyelwa ukungena okungavinjelwa futhi okuphephile ezindaweni zomphakathi	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ucingo luya tholakala endaweni yokwamukela izivakashi (umakhalekhukhwini noma ucingo)	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

Core Requirements

5	Amandla kanye no-WiFi	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
	Ugesi ofanele kumele uhlizekwe (kungangaba yilona omkhulu). Lapho ugesi ungekho, kumele kukaciswe. Lapho ugesi ukhona, ubekwe endaweni etanefe, izindawo zamandla (indawo ye-USB kanye nezindawo zamapijari) okokusebenzisa ugesi ngokuphepha.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	uWi-Fi uzoze ukhona esakhiweni sonke noma njengokuba kuchaziwe, endaweni/ ezindaweni eziqokiwe.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

Amagumbi okulala ayimifihlo kanye namagumbi okulala ahlanganyelwe (qaphela:ukuhlolwa kuzokwenziwa egumbini elisezingeni eliphansi)

Kuyangena								
6	Igumbi lokulala/ Usayizi Wegumbi Lokulala Abantu Abaningi	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
	Onke amagumbi okulala kanye namagumbi okulala abantu abaningi kumele abe nendawo eyanele ukuvumela ukuthi izivakashi zizambe ngokukhulelaka futhi zikwazi ukufinyelela kuyo yonke ifenisha egumbini. Kumele kukwazekwe ukuthi kuvulwe amadrowa kanye neminyango kahle).	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ukuvumela isikhala sombhede nephansi esi-5m <sup>2</sup> .	✓				*	*	
	Amagumbi amaningi avulekile/ okulala abantu abaningi. Ukuvumela isikhala sombhede nephansi esi-7m <sup>2</sup> .	✓						*
7	Ukungena egumbini lokulala, Nezokuphepha	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
	Ulwazi maqondana nokusizwa ocwangeni (okuhlalanganisa izimbobo zocingo) kanye nenqubo yokuphuma odabeni esimeni esiphuthumayo kumele ibekwe obala kuwo wonke amagatsha	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Okokukhanyisa kwezimo eziphuthumayo (okunye ngaphandle kokagesi) kumele kumele kube khona kuwo wonke amagatsha (isb. Jeneretha, ithoshi, okokukhanyisa kwesola, njll.)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Iminyango yokungena emagumbini angasese kumele kukhiyeke/ kuphephe (kusukela ngaphakathi kanye nangaphandle kwegatsha)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo yesisefo endaweni ephephile ikhona uma iceliwe.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Isisefo sasegumbini	✓						*

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

8	Imibhede, izisekelo zemibhede & Nomatras	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
	Osofa abavumelekile ukuthi basetshenziswe njengemibhede	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Yonke imibhede kumele ibe sesimweni esilungile	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Bonke omatras benziwe ngento entofontofo noma ingaphakathi lespringi (noma okufanayo)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Kumele kube nendawo yokugibela embhedeni emacaleni omabili uma umbhede ungasetshenziswa abantu ababili.	✓				*	*	*
	Ibhodi lekhandla lombhede esivumelekile - umcamelo omkhulu	✓		*	*			
	Ibhodi lekhandla lombhede elisesimeni esivumelekile liphephile	✓			*	*	*	*
	Ubukhulu bemibhede yomuntu oyedwa: L188cm x W91cm.	✓			*	*	*	*
	Ubukhulu bemibhede yabantu ngababili: L188cm x W137cm.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Imibhede egibeleni kumele ibe mibili ukuya phezulu	✓			*	*	*	*
	Ilada noma okufanayo kumele kuhlizekwe ukugibele ngaphezulu	✓		*	*	*	*	*
9	Imibhede & Namalineni	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
	Yonke imibhede yesivakashi esisha kumele ihlanzeke	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Zonke izinto zokumboza umbhede kumele zifakwe kahle futhi zibe wosayizi abafanele	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Yonke imibhede kumele ingabi amabala, izimboho kanye nokuguga.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Yonke imibhede esetshenziswayo kumele ifakwe ishidi laphansi, umcamelo kanye nesikhwama somceme kanye neduvedl kanye nengubo. Ishidi langaphezulu kanye nengubo kungalethwa uma kushintshwa iduvedl	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Imicamelo emi-2 endaweni yokulala ngayinye emagumbini okulala angasese	✓						*
	Omatras abambozwe ngokokuvikela omatras (emagumbini okulala angasese kanye nasemagumbini okulala iming)	✓						*

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
10	<b>Ifenisha</b> Okungenani itatula emidwa egumbini elimombhede omkhulu kanye nelimombhede omncane (kungaba itatula tokugqoka elikhulu ngangendawo eseceleni kombhede)				*	*	
	Indawo yokulala ngayinyekumele ibe netafula eliseduze noma ishalofu, okuhlanganisa nemibhede elala iningi						*
	Amagumbi angasese okungenani anendawo eyodwa yokuhlala enethezekile/ isihlalo						*
	Amagumbi angasese azoba netafula lokugqoka elinesihlalo						*
11	<b>Owodilophu, Amashalofu &amp; Nendawo Yokubeka Izikhwama</b> Amagumbi okulala abantu abaningi kumele abe nezikhaye ezanele, amakhabethe akhanyayo noma amadrowa akhanyayo - okwanele igumbi lokulala. Amagumbi angasese kumele nendawo yokuhenga izimpahla * uwodilophu noma amahuka noma okufanayo Amagumbi alala abantu abaningi kumele ahlinzekwe ngezinto zokuhenga izimpahla isb. Amahuka asodongweni noma okomuntu ngarunye Owodilophu noma amakhabethe avulekile anendawo yokuhenga noma ireyili kuyahlinzekwa emagumbini angasese kanye namagumbi alala abantu abaningi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
			*	*	*	*	*
			*	*	*	*	*
			*	*	*	*	*
			*	*	*	*	*
12	<b>Amakhethini &amp; Okokumboza Amawindi</b> Amakhethenisi, amablayindi noma amashatha kuyahlinzekwa kuwo wonke amawindi okuhlanganisa amaphaneli ezingilazi kanye neminyango lapho kunesidingo ukuthi kube nobumfihlo kanye/ noma ukuvimbela ukukhanya	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
			*	*	*	*	*
13	<b>Okwenziwa kwaphansi, Isilingi, Ukusetha kanye Nokhonisi</b> Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kungahluka futhi noma yikuphi ukwenziwa kwaphansi okufanele inhliso, uma isimo sitanele (kwenze lula ukuhlamba futhi nokuhlanzeka kumele kucatshangelwe) Umzamo ofanele uyenziwa ukwehlisa izinga lomisingo ngokucabangela usayizi kanye nendawo kanye nesikhundla sesivakashi.	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
			*	*	*	*	*
			*	*	*	*	*
14	<b>Ukulawula kwamazinga okushisa &amp; Nokushayisa ngomoya</b> Ukushayisa ngomoya okufanele egumbini tokulala abantu abaningi noma igumbi angasese. Kumele okungenani kube newindawo elingenisa ukukhanya kwemvelo kanye nokushayisa umoya okufanele. Uma iwindi lingakwazi ukuvuleka noma ilincane uhlalo lokushayisa umoya oluhlukile kumele luhlinzekwe. Okokushisa okusodongeni (noma okufanele) kanye nesilingi/ ifeni ezimele egumbini ngalinye kuncike esimeni sezulu.	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyez i ezi-2	Izinkanyez i ezi-3	Izinkanyez i ezi-4	Izinkanyez i ezi-5
			*	*	*	*	*
			*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

15	Ukukhanyisa	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e-				
	Onke amabhalbhu okukhanyisa kumele abe nombala noma ambozwe ngaphandle uma ehlobisa. Okungenani okokukhanyisa okukodwa eduze kombhede noma ngaphezulu egumbini langamunye noma langababini lokulala. Umphede wangababini ungaba nokokukhanyisa okukodwa ngokuhlanganyela ekhanda lombhede noma phezulu. Okokukhanyisa okuseduze kwemibhede awekho emagumbini okulala abantu abaningi.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Okungenani okokukhanyisa okukodwa eduze kombhede noma phezulu egumbini lamgababini noma ngamunye.	✓					*	*
	Igumbi lokulala abantu abaningi kumele libe nephakathi nendawo noma okokukhanyisa igumbi.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Each dormitory bed should have an individual light.	✓						*
	Amashishi okukhanyisa ezindaweni ezifanele (eduze komnyango kanye naseduze kwemibhede)	✓						*
16	Izinsiza	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e-				
	Imigqomo yokulahla egumbini lokulala abantu abaningi ngalinye nakanye negumbi lokulala langasese	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Isibuko egumbini lokulala abantu abaningi ngalinye	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Isibuko egumbini langasese ngalinye (uma kungahlinzekwanga igumbi lokugeza elixhumene negumbi lokulala)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Umabonakude uhlinzekiwe egumbini langasese ngalinye	✓						
	Umshini wokomisa izinwele uhlinzekiwe emagumbini angasese	✓						*
	Umshini wokomisa izinwele uyatholakala uma uceliwe kanye nesiteshi sokomisa izinwele/ indawo kuhlinzekiwe endaweni yokuhlanganyela.	✓						*
	Ukuqhema akuvumelekile emagumbini okulala abantu abaningi luthi namagumbi okungabhenywa kuwo angasese ayahlinzekwa. Smoking not permitted in dormitories and non-smoking private rooms to be provided	✓		*	*	*	*	*



## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

		Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e- nkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezi				
19	<b>Amagumbi angase axhume namagumbi okulala</b>							
	Igumbi langase lokulala langase kumele libe negumbi langase elixhume nalo.	✓						*
	Zonke izindishi, amabhavu kanye namashawa okuhlinzekiwe kunamanzi anele ashisayo kanye nabandayo ngazo zonke izikhathi ezifanele	✓			*		*	*
20	<b>Ukulungiswa kanye nokufakwa: amagumbi okugezela axhume namagumbi okulala</b>	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e- nkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezi				
	Onke amathoyilethi, osinki, amashawa kanye nokunye ukuxhuma kumele kube sesimni esifanele esisebenzayo futhi ongenazo izindawo ezivisayo njengokukayeka, kanye nezihlalo zamathoyilethi ezilimele.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Amarayili/amarakhi/amashalofu kwamathawula kwanele inani lezivakashi ezisegatsheni unit	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Isibuko esikhanyiswe kahle kumele sibekwe ngaphezulu noma eduze kwendishi yokugeza izandla.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo eyanele yazo zonke izivakashi.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ithoyilethi ngalinye kumele libe: Nesivalo sesihlalo sethoyilethi, okokubamba iroli yethoyilethi kanye nethishu, umgomo kadoti ovaliwe, ukushayiswa ngomoya okufanele ngokukhipha umoya ngefeni noma ukuvulwa kwewindi, ibhulashi lethoyilethi kanye nesibambo.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Amagumbi okugezela okungenani anendishi eyodwa yokugeza izandla	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Onke amagumbi okugezela enesha kanye nobhavu okuseceleni.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Amakhethe nishi eshawa avumelekile. Kumele engabi namabala, engadabuki, angabi nambobo futhi kungabi agugile.	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Awekho amakhethe nishi eshawa azosetshenziswa - Onke amashawa kumele avalwe ngezivalo zengilazi eziqinile (kuvumelekile uma ukwakhiwa kwesakhiwo kungazivumeli izivalo, lapho amakhethe nishi asezingeni eliphezulu noma okufanayo kulindelekile)	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ihuka lezimpahla	✓		*	*	*	*	*
21	<b>Usayizi wegumbi langase</b>	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e- nkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezi				
	All bathrooms should have sufficient space to allow for comfortable freedom of movement for guests and access to all fittings	✓		*	*	*	*	*
22	<b>Towelling: En-Suite bathrooms</b>	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e- nkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezi				
	All guests in private and en-suite rooms provided with individual towel and soap upon arrival	✓		*	*	*	*	*
23	<b>Flooring and Ceiling</b>	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyenzi e- nkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezinkanyenzi ezi				
	Ngaphezulu elingangeni amanzi lizohlinzekwa ezindongeni, phansi kanye nakusilingi.	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

24	Ukukhanyisa kanye Nokushayisa ngomoya	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezi e- nkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezi			
	Isiwishi yokukhanyisa iseduze nendawo yokungena endlini yangasese.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Ukukhanyisa okwanele endlini yangasese	✓		*	*	*	*
	Onke amawindi asendlini yangasese kumele adimiswe noma okufanayo ukujinisekisa ubumthiyo bezivakashi. Noma, amawindi engambozwa ngekhethezi elingabonisi, ibiyindi noma ishatha.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Ukushayisa ngomoya okufanele futhi okwanele endlini yangasese	✓		*	*	*	*
<b>Izindawo zomphakathi</b>							
25	Izindawo zokuhlala kanye Nokudla	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezi e- nkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezi			
	Indawo yokudlela yezivakashi ikhona.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Indawo yokudlela yezivakashi inkulu ngokwanele ukuqakatha imingqi ezivakashi ezisesakhiweni (kubalwa kuma-25% imani ezivakashitotali ezikwazi ukuthi ziqukathwe)	✓		*	*	*	*
	Indawo yokuphumula eyodwa noam indawo yokunethezeka (indawo yokudlela ingasetshenziswa njengendawo yokuphumula noma yokunethezeka)	✓		*	*	*	*
	Uma kuhlinzekwa kuphela izindawo zokudlela kanye/ noma izindawo zokuphumula ezingaphandle indawo kumele imbozwe ukukwela izivakashi esimeni sezulu esingesihle (izulu, ilanga, njl.)	✓		*	*	*	*
	Umabonakude uhlizekiwe endaweni yokuhlanganyela (ufanele inhloso)	✓	✓				*
26	Ukukhanyisa, Ukushayisa/Ukubandisa & Nokushayisa ngomoya	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezi e- nkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezi			
	Amazinga avumelilele okukhanya abekwe endaweni efanele futhi enethezeka yomphakathi, okunanganisa ukukhanya okufanele ezitebhisini nasendaweni yokufika	✓		*	*	*	*
	Ukuawuliwa okuvumelilele kwamazinga okushisa kanye nokushayisa ngomoya (uhlelo lokushayisa ngomoya kumele luhlinzekwe uma igumbi/ indawo kungenalo iwindi elivulekayo)	✓		*	*	*	*
27	Ezinye izindawo zomphakathi ezihlanganisa amaphasishi & nezitebhisi	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezi e- nkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezi			
	Amaphasiji awavalelekile. Akhanyisiwe kahle amahora angama-24, nokho izinyathelo zamandla kumele zihlonishwe.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Izipawu ezicacile, ezikhomba indlela eya emagumbini okulala kanye nendawo yokwamukela izivakashi (lapho kudingeka).	✓		*	*	*	*
	Lonke ulwazi lwezimo eziphuthumayo kanye nophawu kumele kubekwe ngokugqamile ezindaweni zomphakathi.	✓		*	*	*	*
28	Izindawo zamathoyilethi	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezi e- nkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezinkanyezi ezi			

## Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation		Core Requirements									
		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Onke amathoyilethi ahlanzwa ngokweywayela, ayabhekwa futhi ashayiswa ngomoya ngokufanele. Izinto ezininzi kwayo: imisini yokugeza nentsipho, into yokomisa izandla, i-tv, i-tyeli, i-inesimato kanye nesivato saso, okokukhanyisa okumboziwe (akukho ntambo ezisobala noma amabhalbhu), isibuko, ihhuka, umgqomo kadoti ovaliwe kanye nezikwama zodoti wabesifazane.		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>Izinto zokudla kanye neziphuzo</b>											
<b>Kuyangena</b>											
<b>Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela</b>		<b>Akungeni</b>									
29	Uma ukudla kanye/noma iziphuzo zihlinzekwa, abasebenzi kumele bakhombise ulwazi olufanele lomkhqizo futhi bahlinzeke ngosizo olunomthelela.	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Konke ukudla kumele kubekwe, kulungiswe futhi kuhanjise ngokuhlazeka.		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>Ikhishi lokuhlanganyela</b>		<b>Akungeni</b>									
30	Ikhishi lokuziphakela kwezivakashi kumele lihlinzekwe.	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Konke ukulungiswa, ifenisha, izitsha, izingilazi kumele kube sesimweni ezivumelekile futhi okusebenzisekayo.		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Inani elifanele lezitsha kanye nezingilazi kumele kuhlinzekele inani elingama-25% labahlali nganoma yisiphi isikhanthi		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yokubeka eyanele yokubeka izitsha, izipuni, yikhishi kanye nempahla yokuhlazeka.		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Amapuleti ashisayo anele okupheka ukudla.		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Uhhavini, imakhrowevi kanye nezindawo zokosa inyama kuhlinzeke		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ifriji ekhishini		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Usinki onebhodi lokudonsa kanye nokuhlinzekwa kwamanzi ahambayo ekhishini		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Izinto ezikhona zokubilisa amanzi (iketela, igiza, njll.) ekhishini ngalinye		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ingaphezulu lokuhlazeka elifodwa ekhishini ngalinye		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo eyanele yokuthi izivakashi zibeke ukudla kwazo (okuhlanganisa nokomile) ekhishini ngalinye		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Iwindi elivulekile noma uhlelo lokushayisa ngomoya olufanele ekhishini ngalinye		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Umgqomo kadoti ovallekile ekhishini ngalinye		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Isicishamililo kanye nengubo yomilo kukhona ekhishini ngalinye		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yeqhwa efriji		✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

ithosta	✓	✓							*	*
IhHAVINI wemakhrowevu	✓	✓							*	*
UhhAVINI kanye/ noma uhhAVINI oshintshayo wemakhrowevu	✓	✓							*	*
Insipho yezandla kanye nensipho yokugeza izitsha engamanzi kuhlizekiwe	✓								*	*
Anakhambi kanye nezipayisi ezahlukene.	✓								*	*

Ezinye izinto										
Kuyangena										
Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezisi e-nkanyezisi ezinkanyezisi ezinkanyezisi ezi								
31 Ukuhlunjwa kwezingubo, Ukuneka kanye Nokomisa	✓									
Izinto zokomisa kanye nokuneka izingubo ezimanzi kumele kuhlizekiwe noma uhlelo lukalondolo kumele lube khona	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Usinki wokuhlunza izingubo onamanzi ahambayo kumele uhlizekiwe noma uhlelo lukalondolo kumele luhlizekiwe.	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
I-ayina kanye nebhodi loku-ayina kumele kuhlizekiwe ekhishini elihlanganyelwe, ulondolo noma indawo yokomisa.	✓									*
Imishini yokuhlamba izingubo (kungaba yilena esebenzisa imali ewuhlweza) kumele ibe khona ukuthi isetshenziswe yizivakashi	✓									*
Imishini yokomisa izingubo (kungaba yilena esebenzisa imali ewuhlweza) kumele ibe khona ukuthi isetshenziswe yizivakashi	✓									*

Ezinye izinto										
Kuyangena										
Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	nkanyezisi e-nkanyezisi ezinkanyezisi ezinkanyezisi ezi								
32 Ubumnene	✓									
Abasebenzi kumele babe nozwelo futhi banake futhi bakhombise ubumnene kuzo zonke izivakashi ngaso sonke.	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Izisebenzi kumele zihlanzeke, zigqoke ngokuhlazeka futhi ngendlela efanele, babe nosizo futhi banake izivakashi	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Kumele kube nezinga elithile lolwazi lwezivakashi olukhona, ikakhuukazi maqondana nezindawo eziseduze abazithandayo futhi nezinto ezenziwayo.	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Backpacker/ Hostel Accommodation

	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
33	Indawo yokwamukela izivakashi / Ukubingelela & Nokuhlangana						
	Izivakashi kumele zihlangabezwe uma zifika ophethe esakhiweni	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Ukuxhumana okucacile maqondana nokuthi isakhawo sifihlizeka imi kwenziwe ukuthi kube khona ngesikhangiso, obrosha, ngomlomo noma ngenye indlela kuzo zonke izivakashi uma zicelile.	*	*	*	*	*	*
34	Ezinye izinto	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Idamu lokubhukuda esetshenziswa yizivakashi						
	Indawo yokosa inyama esetshenziswa yizivakashi						
	Indawo yokubeka izikhwama ngokufika kusen esikhathi/ ukuhamba sesedlule isikhathi						
	Imoto noma okufanayo okuhlinzekelwe izivakashi						
	Usizo lokubhukhela ukuvakasha lukhona						

## Ukugcinwa kwendlu

## Kuyangena

	Isivakashi sobhakha / Ihostela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
35	Ukuhlanzeka						
	Izinga eliphezulu lokuhlanzeka kumele ligcinwe esakhiweni sonke ngazo zonke izikhathi.	*	*	*	*	*	*
36	Amagumbi okulala kanye Namagumbi okugezela	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Onke amagumbi okulala kanye namagumbi okugezela ayahlanzwa njalo.		*	*	*	*	*
	Onke amalineri, okuntanganisa nezingubo kumele kushintshwe okungenani ezinsukwini ezi-7 noma uma kucela isivakashi esisha. Isivakashi siyakwazi ukukhetha "ukungashintshi".		*	*	*	*	*
	Onke amathawula kanye amalineri kumele kushintshwe okungenani ezinsukwini ezi-2 noma uma kucela isivakashi esisha. Isivakashi siyakwazi ukukhetha "ukungashintshi".		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Venues  
**IZIMFUNENKO EZISEMQOKA**  
**Izindawo**

**Uhlaka Lokugcina**  
03 KuNdasa 2017

A: Ngaphandle											
Ukusebenza ngokoHlotshana											
Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
1 Ingaphandle lesakhiwo	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo ebonakalayo yokwamukela / indawo yokungena esakhiwo											
Indawo yesivalo & nendawo yokungena ebonakalayo											
Zonke izindawo kumele zikhanyiswe, kanye nezitebhisi											
2 Amagrawundi kanye Nezingadi	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
3 Indawo yokupaka / Indawo yokungena ushayela / Indawo yezimpawu	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
Ukulinzeka kwezindawo zokupaka ngaphakathi / noma ezilungiselelwe ngaphambilini - ezanele zezihambeli. Uma kunesidingo imoto ingahlinzekwa phakathi ngendawo yokupaka iya endaweni yomcimbi.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umzila wokungena kanye nophawu lokupaka okucacile	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yokuhamba noma indlela ephakathi kwendawo eqokwe yokupaka kanye nendawo yomcimbi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Indawo evalekile yokungena noma izinawo ezifanayo zokuma zezicubuthwane kanye namabhasi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						*
4 Izindawo amabhasi athatha / abele	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
Indawo ecaacisiwe yokuvumela izithunywa / izivakashi zigibele noma zehle ngokuphepha	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
5 Indawo yokulayisha / namatheku	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
Indawo yokulayisha engemuva yalo lonke lwemicimbi ebanjelwe endaweni.	✓	✓	✓	✓					*	*	*

**B: Amagumbi kanye Nezindawo Ezeseka Umcimbi**

Ukusebenza ngokoHlotshana

## Core Requirements

## Venues

	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
6 Izindawo	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Amagumbi akhiyekeyo/ noma avikelelele												*
Abasebenzi abahlanzayo abazibophezele abakhona kuyo yonke imicimbi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						*

Core Requirements

Venues

		Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eh-hotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
7	<b>Ifenisha</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	ifenisha eyanele ukuze kwenziwe okungenani indawo engama-60% yemihlangano/ yemicimbi ngesikhathi esisodwa. Ukutholakala kwefenisha eyanele ukuze kwenziwe indawo yayo yonke imihlangano/ imicimbi												
8	<b>Ukukhanyiswa kwendawo</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eh-hotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
	Ukukhanyisa okufanele igumbi ngalinye/ kwendawo igumbi ngalinye/ indawo okukhanyiswe ngokufanele futhi okusebenza ngokuzimela (kuyasebenza ezindaweni ezahlukene)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Okokhanyisa okunezinto zokudimisa egumbini/ endaweni ngayinye	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
9	<b>Ukupholiswa Kwendawo</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eh-hotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
	Ukupholiswa okufanele kwegumbi/ kwendawo ngayinye igumbi ngalinye / indawo nobhelo lokulawula amazinga okushisa oliwulwa futhi olufanele ngokuzimela (isigandisi moya) (olusebenzi ezingxenyeni ezincane)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
10	<b>Amandla endawo</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eh-hotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
	Amandla angaphakathi afanele endaweni ngayinye / egumbini ngalinye igumbi ngalinye / indawo ngayinye kunamandla alawulwa ngokuzimela (kungakuhle uma kuyizigaba ezi-3)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Amakhebula kagesi akhunywe kahle ukuthi angene endaweni	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ukuba khona kwezixhumantsi zikagesi kanye namapiraki ahlukeni kanye/ noma izindawo zamapiraki ezikhona endaweni yonke	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
11	<b>Amathuluzi okukhuma kanye nawezithombe-msindo</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eh-hotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
	Ukutholakala kwezinto zesiteji kanye namathuluzi ezithombe-msindo isokunokudla ephakanyisiwe, indawo yokudansa, ishadi, isicrini, i-projecta, imakrofooni.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ukutholakala kwezinye izinto zesiteji kanye namathuluzi ezithombe-msindo (okufanele ohotsheni lwemicimbi engabanjwa)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ukutholakala kwanoma yisiphi isiteji kanye nezithombe-msindo (okufanele ohotsheni lwemicimbi engabanjwa)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ukutholakala kweteknoloji eseqophelelweni eliphuzulu lamathuluzi esiteji kanye nezithombe-msindo zendawo (okufanele ohotsheni lwemicimbi engabanjwa)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Igumbi ngalinye/ indawo ngayinye inokokhuma ngaphakathi ngothelaphoni (kungaba ithekoloji ye-VOIP)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*





## Core Requirements

## Venues

	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eH-otela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5	
16	Umgodi wezinsiza (ukuxhumana namanzi, amanzi, ipayipi lokuchitha)												
17	<b>Igumbi/a magumbi okulala (kusebenza kuphela emagumbini okubambela umhlangano kanomphelela)</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eH-otela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Amatafula makhulu ngokufanele ukusethenziswa yinani lezithunywa elikhangisiwe	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Izihlalo zamagumbi okubambela umhlangano ezanele ukusethenziswa yinani lezithunywa elikhangisiwe	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Izihlalo zegumbi okubambela umhlangano ezinengenunwa eliphakeme, izihlalo zegumbi lokubamba imhlangano ezijikayo	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Igumbi lokubamba imhlangano ngalinye, lineskrini/I-TV okufanele	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Iprojectha ikhona egumbini lokubamba imhlangano ngalinye	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Inethwekhi etholaka kalula futhi eyanele kanye ne-power points	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Indawo yesiteshi setiye/ ikhofi kanye nesokudla	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Umshini Wekhofi/ Wecapuccino	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Ifriji	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Izinto ezihhayo zesakhiwo, izinto ezingabukwa, ubucio kanye nezinto zobuciko.	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
18	<b>Ukwamukelwa kwezihambi/ indawo yeziqubuthwane</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eH-otela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Igumbi lomhlangano/ indawo engasethenziswa njengendawo yokubamba omhlangano ngasese.	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓					*
	Indawo yangasese, eyakhiwe ngenhloso, enesimo sokushisa esilawulekayo (indawo yokubambala)			✓	✓								*
	Indlu yangasese kanye/noma indlu yokugezela ehlanganiswa negumbi lokulala			✓	✓								*
19	<b>Isikhungo sezokuxhumana</b>	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eH-otela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Indawo noma igumbi elenziwe ukuthi luhlangazane nezimfuneko ezithile zezokuxhumana.	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓			*	*	*
	Isikhungo esizibophezele, esakhiwe ngenhloso yokuhlangabezana nezimfuneko ezithile zezokuxhumana.				✓			✓					*
	Ukutholaka kukagesi, okokuxhumana, I-inthanethi kanye no Wi-Fi esikhungweni sezokuxhumana				✓			✓					*

Core Requirements

Venues	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
20 Indawo yokugcina	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yokugcina engagcina amathuluzi omcimbi ebusuku												
Indawo yokubeka ekhiyekayo etholakayo emcimbinini ngamunye obanjelwe endaweni	✓	✓	✓	✓							*	*
21 Ikhovisi lamathikithi / Isitolo samathikithi	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Indawo, noma igumbi lokubhekana nokudayiswa kwamathikithi omcimbi	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓	*	*	*	*	*

C: izindawo zophakathi (izindawo ezingaphakathi kwendawo ezingasetshenziswa yizithunywa/ yizivakashi. Kuhlengisa amaphasiji, amgumbi okuphumula, izindawo zokwamukela izivakashi, izindawo zokubhalisa, izindawo zokuhlenganyela...nll.)

Ukusebenziseka ngokoHlotshana	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
22 izimpawu	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
yokupaka izimoto, indawo yokuphuma, indawo yokungena, izindlu zangasese, izikhungo, toilets, medical facilities and function or meeting venues.	Izinga lehhotela	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Izimpawu kumele zigqame kahle, zibonakale kude futhi kungancono uma zikhanya ebusuku.		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
23 Ukuhlotshiswa	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Ukusetshenziswa kwezinto ukuthi zibehe futhi zibe wubuciko.	Izinga lehhotela	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
Izakhiwo ezizhehayo, izinto ezizhehayo, ubuciko kanye nento yobuciko.		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓						
24 Igumbi lokuphumula/ nendawo yokuhlala	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Onke amagumbi okuphumula kanye nezindawo zokuhlala kumele zibe nezitulo, amatatula kanye nengaphandle okwanele komcimbi.	Izinga lehhotela	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Zonke izindawo zokuhlala kumele zibe yisakhiwo esvumelekile ukuhlinzeka indawo engene ukuthi izivakashi/ izithunywa zihambe kalula endaweni leyo		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
25 Ukwenzwa kwaphansi, isilingi, Ukusetha & Nokukhombisa	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi e-hhotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Umzamo ofanele wenzwe ukwehlisa izinga lomzindo ngokucabangela ubukhulu kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nezinga lesivakashi.		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Venues	Izinga lehhotele	Isikhongo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemcimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
26 Ukukhanyisa, Ukushisa/Ukubandisa & Nokushayisa ngomoya Amazinga avumelekile okushisa abekwe ngokufanele ngokuphepha kanye nokumethhezeka kwezindawo zomphakathi, okuhlanganisa ukukhanya okwanele ezitebhisini kanye naphansi Ukulawulwa kokushisa kanye nokushayisa ngomoya okuvumelekile.	Izinga lehhotele	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
27 Ukuxhumana kanye namandla Ukutholalala kwamanandla ezindaweni zomphakathi Ukutholalala kuka Wi-Fi ezindaweni zomphakathi (uma ungadonsi)	Izinga lehhotele	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Venues

	#REFI	#REFI	#REFI	#REFI	#REFI	#REFI	#REFI	#REFI	Akukho	1-inkanyezi	2-inkanyezi	3-inkanyezi	4-inkanyezi	5-inkanyezi
28	Isikhungo/izinsiza Zabizhini Amatshuzi aseNovis ezinsiza zebizimisi atholakeka kaIura isb. Umshini wokufotokhophisa, owokuprinta, i-intanethi (ukukhuma)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				*	*	*
	Umshini wokufotokhophisa imibala. Kanye nowokuprinta imibala uyatholakeka	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					*	*
29	I-deski/ indawo yokwamukela izivakashi	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi ehhotelela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni						
	I-deski/ indawo yokwamukela izivakashi ikhona endaweni	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					*	*	*
30	Indawo/ ideski yolwazi	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi ehhotelela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni						
	Olwejwayelele Lwezokuvakasha luyatholakeka I-deski/ indawo yolwazi eqokwe yatholakeka ngaphakathi endaweni (I-apha kungaba i-deski/ indawo yokwamukela izivakashi) ngezokuvakasha, indawo kanye nolunye ulwazi. I-deski yolwazi eimabasebenzi - iyabasebenza ngamahora ahanle okusebenza ezisebenzi (Ulwazi ngendawo kanye nezokuvakasha luhlinzekiwe)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			*	*	*	*	*
31	Amakheshi – Yabasebenzi kanye Nempahla	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi ehhotelela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni						
	Ikheshi iyadengeka lapho kunezindawo ezinezitezi ezimathu noma ngaphuzulu noma ngaphansi kwendawo yokungena. Ikheshi iyadengeka una kunezindawo ezinezitezi ezimibili noma ngaphuzulu noma ngaphansi kwendawo yokungena. Amakheshi ahlukile abagqibeli kanye nempahla	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
32	Imishini yezitebhisi yokukhuphuka nokwehla kanye Nezitebhisi	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi ehhotelela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni						
	Imishini yezitebhisi yokwehla nokwenyuka kumele ifakwe lapho kungeke kukwazi ukuthi kufakwe amakheshi ukuze kufakwe imingqi labahambi ngezinyawoto ebholidini. Izitebhisi kanye nezindawo zokufakela kumele kukhanyiswe kahle Izinto zokubambalela kumele kufakwe ezitebhisi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
33	Izindlu zangasese kanye Nezindlu zokuphumula	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi ehhotelela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemici mbi	Akungeni						
	Izindlu zangasese ezishayiswe kahle ngomoya ezingxenyeni ezahlukenisiwe zangasese Indishi yokugeza kanye nensipho Insipho ewuketshezi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓



Venues

Core Requirements

	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHhotelela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutthano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemicimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
37 Ukwenzwa kwaphansi, isilingi, Ukusetha & nokukhonisha Umzamo ofanele wenziwe ukwehlisa izinga lomsindo ngokucabangela ubukhulu kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nezinga lesivakashi.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
38 Ukuvezwa kwemenyu Ukuvezwa kwemenyu ngobuchwepheshe luthi ngokufanele othotsnemi olunanjisela (ngokubhala, ngomlomo, amalebula, njll.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Venues

	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHotel	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemcimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
39 Ukuqashwa kwamatafula Ukuqashwa kwamatafula okufanelele nokudla okuzolethwa	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
40 Ikhwaitshi yokudla kanye nolungiswa kwaokho Konke ukudla kwenziwe kahle futhi kuhanjiswa ngezinqa lokushisa elifanele Umhlizako owenzelwe ngokwezimfuneko zokudla kahle Ukukhetha noma ukudla okuningi okumele kukhethwe kukho Ukudla okufanele amakhasimende akhetha kukho Ukukhetha kwamakhasimende ukudla okushisayo kanye nokubandayo Ukudla okwathuthukene okusezingeni eiphezulu tuthi okungiswe kahle okusezingeni lomhlabano wonke amakhasimende azokhetha kukho.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5

E: Ukusebenza

	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi eHotel	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemcimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
41 Ukwamukela, Ubungani & Nendlela yokubuka izinto Umsebenzi wobuchwepheshe, wekhono kanye nolwanele kanye nokubukwa kwemimingwane kumele kulindelwe	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
42 Ukubukeka Kwabasebenzi Abasebenzi abasebenzayo kumele babonwe ngomfaniswano noma okufanayo Abasebenzi kumele bagqoke amabheji	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
43 Ukudayisa / Ukuhlanganisa Umcimbi / Ukuphatha Ukwesekwa komcimbi kuyahlinzekwa kumakhasimende Ukubhekana nemibuzo, ukuqashwa kanye nezikhatalazo ngokushesha kanye nokucophelela. Ulwazi lonke lwezinhlelo zokubukha, ukukhokha kanye nokukhansela luyacaciswa ekhasimendeni. Izinsiza kanye nezakhiwo okuhlilizekwa yindawo kudazwe kahle ngokuyinqiniso kumakhasimende.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5

Core Requirements

Venues

44	Isikhungo somhlangano ngaphakathi ethotela	Isikhungo somhlangano / sombukiso	Isikhungo sombutshano	Indawo Yemici mbi	Indawo yomlando	Indawo yemcimbi	Akungeni	Inkanyesi e-1	Inkanyesi ezi-2	Inkanyesi ezi-3	Inkanyesi ezi-4	Inkanyesi ezi-5
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

**Uhlaka Lokugcina**  
03 KuNdasa 2017

Caravan and Camping  
**Izimfuneko Ezisemqoka**  
**Ikharavani kanye Nezindawo Zokukhempa kanye Namapaki**

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana									
A: Ngaphandle	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
1 Isakhiwo sangaphandle									
2 Amagrawundi kanye nezingadi	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
3 Indawo yokupaka, Indawo yokungena kanye Nendawo yokusayinela ukupaka	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
Ukuhlizeka ngendawo efanele/ noma izindawo zokupaka eziqokwe (ngokwejwayelekele indawo yokupaka eyodwa endaweni)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Uphawu olulayela indlela ngaphakathi kanye nangaphandle kwendawo - olusesimeni esamukelekele, olubonakalayo, olufanele inhloso.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Uphawu olulayela indlela ukuyalela indlela izivakashi ngaphakathi endaweni	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Uphawu lwezinyathelo zokwehlisa isiminyamina sezimoto olubekiwe futhi lwamakwa	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	
Imigwaqo engangenwa amanzi, eyakhiwe kahle, evumela ukungena mahhala kuzo zonke izindawo.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
4 Ukukhanyiswa kwangaphandle	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
Izindlela ezikhaswe kahle (okufanele kwezemvelo futhi okwehlisa ukugcola kokukhanya)	✓			*	*	*	*	*	
Indawo yokungena esikhungweni (indawo yokugera, nezindawo zokuhlala, njll.) ekhanyiswe ngokufanele.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Imigwaqo yangaphakathi ikhanyiswe ngokufanele	✓								
5 Ukuphepha kanye nokuvikeleka	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5	
Izindlela zokuphepha kanye nokuvikeleka ezifanele inhloso yazo endaweni yonke ngazo zonke izikhathi.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Omele-Abaphathi / Omele-Abaphathi abaknulu endaweni obhekela ukuphepha kanye nokuvikeleka uyathokakala ngocingo ngamahora angama-24 ngosuku, izinsuku ezi-7 ngeviki.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Udwazi ngezimo lweziphuthumayo (kakhulukazi izimbobo zocingo ezifanele) & nophawu lokuphuma kanye nenqubo ebekwe ngokugqamile kanye nencazelo/uhambo okutholalayo ngesicelo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	
Indawo yokuphepha ihlinzekiwe ukuthi isetshenziswe yizivakashi uma kwenzeka kuba nesimo esiphuthumayo sokukhishwa noma ukukhishwa izivakashi zinendawo yokungena endaweni evikelekele.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	



Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

Izinkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi e-2	Izinkanyezi e-3	Izinkanyezi e-4	Izinkanyezi e-5	Izinkanyezi e-6	Izinkanyezi e-7	Izinkanyezi e-8	Izinkanyezi e-9	Izinkanyezi e-10
<b>8 Inqanaba Yokushawa kanye Noyokubhava kanye nezindawo Zokugqoka</b>									
Ubumfihlo buhlizekwe phakathi kwezinye zokushawa kanye nezokubhava	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Zonke izindawo zokushawa/ukubhava ngokuhlanganyela zinendawo yokungena endaweni yeseduze eyomile yokuneka izimpahla, ukugqoka, njll.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ishibalo/ indawo yokuhlala engxenyeni ngayinye yokushawa/ nokubhava	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Okungenani ihhuka lwezimpahla elilodwa elibekwe engxenyeni yokushawa (indawo eyomile kodwa eseduze neshawa/nobhava)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Amahhuka angaphezu kwelidoda abekwe engxenyeni yeshawa (indawo eyomile kodwa eseduze neshawa/nobhava)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Indishi/ istende okuzinlele kuzohlizekwa engxenyeni yeshawa/ yobhava ngakunye.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ishawa noma ubhava kumele ukufakwe kahle kushawa ngayinye kanye naseduzane namabhava	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ishawa kumele ibe neshingo noma ikhethenisi elisezingeni elifanele	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Izihengo zezivalo zeshawa	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Akumele kushibikwe phansi noma omata uma kusetsheziswa ishawa.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Umpompi weshawa kumele ube sezingeni eliphezulu, ukhiphe amanzi kahle	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Imigibhe yokubambelela ukuziphatha kumele ibe khona okungenani engxenyeni kabhava owodwa, yethoyilethi eyodwa kanye neyeshawa eyodwa ezindimi zangasese zabesifazane nezabesifisa.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Imigibhe yokubambelela ukuziphatha kumele irakwe ezinkanyeni ezimbili noma ngaphezulu zobhava, zethoyilethi kanye nezeshawa ezindimi zangasese zabesifisa nezabesifazane.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>9 Izinkanyezi zamathoyilethi</b>									
Ubumfihlo buhlizekwe phakathi kwezakhiwo zamathoyilethi.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Yonke iminyango iyakhiyeka ngaphakathi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Amathoyilethi kumele abe nezihlalo sethoyilethe kanye nesivalo sethoyilethe okwahlukene, futhi kumele kube sesimani esilungile	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Onke amathoyilethi kumele ahlizekwe ngemigqomo enezivalo elahlekayo (kanye/ umgqomo wokuhlazeka/ nezikhwama ethoyilethi labesifazane)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ithoyilethi ngalinye lifakwe into yokufaka ithishu kanye nethishu (ithishu ephelpha linye kumele). Amaroli ethishu angasebenzi kumele abe khona.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ithoyilethi ngalinye kumele ibe nento yokufaka ithishu kanye nethishu (emaphelpha mabili). Amaroli angasebenzi kumele abe khona.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ithoyilethi ngayinye ibhulishi lasehoyilethi kanye nesibambo salo	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Indawo yokuchama yabesifisa kumele inukiswe kamnandi futhi kuqinisekise ukuthi ayinaphunga.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Okungenani ihhuka elilodwa leziphahle/ isikhwama engxenyeni yethoyilethi ngalinye	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Umgibhe wokubambelela kumele ufakwe okungenani engxenyeni eyodwa yezakhiwo zethoyilethi labesifazane kanye nelabesifisa	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Umgibhe wokubambelela kumele ufakwe ngaphezu kwengxenyeni eyodwa yethoyilethi labesifisa kanye nelabesifazane	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

	Ikharavani & Nendawo yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
10 Ikhemikhali yethoyilethi Ethathekayo kanye Nendawo Yokulahlia								
Indawo yokulahlia udoti wekhemikhali wethoyilethi wekharavani noma ikhempa kumele kuhlinzekwe endaweni eseduze nendawo yokugeza. Ukuhlinzekwa kwepam noma ubheseni wobumba noma wentsimbi nohlelo lokutlasa kanye nepayipi lokutlamba ulula ikhasethi lekhemikhali yethoyilethi ephathekayo.	✓						*	*
Indawo iwaliwe noma ingaphansi futhi ihlinzekwe ngokokukhanyisa	✓						*	*
Indawo yekhemikhali yethoyilethi ephathekayo kumele ibe isakhiwo esehlukanisiwe endaweni evaluekile.	✓						*	*
11 Izinto zokugeza izandla kanye nokuzomisa	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
Ithawula eliyiphepha noma umshini womoya wokomisa izandla kumele kuhlinzekwe izinhloso zokomisa izandla. Noma, ithawula lezandla, elihlanzekile, elingenawo amabala, elinunca amanzi, eliwukotini kumele ihlinzekwe futhi lishimshwe njalo ngosuku.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Umshini okhipha insipho ewukethezi kumele uhlinzekwe. Noma, insipho yokugeza izandla esongiwe kumele ihlinzekwe njalo ngosuku ezindishini zokugeza izandla.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓			*	*	*	*
Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Ukusebenza ngokholotshana							
✓							
Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*
✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
✓	✓						*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

17	Ukulungisa kanye Nokufaka	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Umgomo wokulahlia ombozoibe kumele uhlinzekwe	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Isitofu okungenani esinamaulet amabili kumele sihlizekiwe ekhishini lekhempu	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Usinki wokuwasha, onompompi wamanzi ashisayo kanye nabandayo, iplagi kanye nebhodi lokomisa lezivakashi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Osiniki ababili bokuwasha, onompompi wamanzi ashisayo kanye nabandayo, iplagi kanye nebhodi lokomisa lezivakashi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Irekhi yokomisa izitsha ehlanzekile.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Isiqandisi esifanele kanye nezakhiwo zeqwa ezingasetshenziswa izivakashi ezihamba ngaphandle kwalesi sakhiwo (in all camp kitchenkuwo wonke amakhishi amakhempu)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Itafula elinezihlo ezilingene lhlizekiwe kuwo wonke amakhishi okukhempa	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Isitsha samanzi ashisayo sihlizekiwe ukwenza itiyi noma ikhofi emakhishini ekhempu	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Isitsha milo esifanele semililo yasekhishini sibekwe phakathi noma endaweni yokungena esakhiweni.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Uma ikhishi lisendaweni evalakile, kumele kube nendawo yokuvula iwindi ngaphandle.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo engaphezulu esebenzayo futhi ehlanzekile ikhona	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Ingaphezulu lamakhishi elingaseshi ukuguga, elisizingeni eliphezulu, elingenazo izimpawu zokuvithizeka kanye nezimpawu ezibonakayo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Umsanelo, imophu, isiwolo kanye nebulaishi kuhlinzekiwe ekhishini lokukhempa	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Amapayipi angaphansi kwendishi yokugeza kumele aboizwe kanye tuthi amapayipi amanzi engabonakali ngaphansi noma ngaphezulu kosinki kanye namakhawunta.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
18	<b>Ukwenziswa kwephansi kanye Nesilingi</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Ingaphezulu elingangeni amanzi kumele lhlizekiwe ezindongeni, phansi kanye nakusilingi. Iphansi kumele lifakwe ngento enenza lingashibiliki.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Isilingi ifakwe. Iphezulu elifulelwe ngotshani lolu hlobo lwesilingi alufakwanga	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
19	<b>Izindonga: Ukufaka amathayili kanye Nokupenda</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Izindonga zipendiwe noma zifakwe amathayili	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Izindonga ezifakwe amathayili, amathayili avala okungenani ama-50% obude bodonga kusukela phansi kuya phezulu (kusilingi lefakwe amathayili ku 5-star)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
20	<b>Ukushayisa umoya kanye nokukhanyisa</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
	Ukukhanyisa kwazo zonke izindawo zokusebenza.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Amaswishi okukhanyisa kumele abekwe emnyango wekhishi lekhempu.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*

Caravan and Camping	Core Requirements																														
Ukusayisa umoya okufanele kanye nokukhipha ngewindi elivulekile noma ienti yokukhipha kuhlinzekwe kuwo wonke amakhshi okukhempa. Noma, uhlelo lokusayisa ngomoya olufanele kumele luhlinzekwe	✓																														✓

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

D: Ilondolo kanye Nezindawo Zokomisa		Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana				✓			
		Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
21	<b>Izinhlolo zelondolo kanye Nezindawo Zokomisa</b> Uma sidingeka futhi singekho endaweni eseduze, isakhiwo selondolo kumele siliinzeke uku thi ssetshenziswe yizivakashi Olondolo kumele babe nendawo eyanele ukuthi zizivakashi zihambe futhi zingene yonke indawo Ilondolo akumele ibe ezindaweni zokugezela noma ezindlini zangasese. Indawo yolondolo kumele kube yindawo engabonaka noma evalekile.	✓			*	*	*	*	*
22	<b>Ukulungisa kanye Nokufaka</b> Ulondolo kumele okungenani ube nomshini wokuwasha (osebenza ngemali eyinsimbi noma ngediski uvumelekile) kanye/noma osinki abade bokuwasha ngezandla. Imiyalelo yokusebenzisa impahla ecacile nezindleko zokuyisebenzisa kanye nendlela evumelekile yokukhokha kumele iciswe. Isicsha mfilio esifanele semililo yasekhishini sibekwe phakathi noma endaweni yokungena esakhiweni. Amanzi ahlanzekile abandayo kanye nashisayo kumele abe khona ngazo zonke izikhathi, ngaphandle uma kukhangisiwe. Indawo yokomisa/yokuneka kumele ihlinzekwe ukuthi isetshenziswe yizivakashi. Indawo yokosa/ yokuneka ingabi sobala Umshanelo, imophu, isiwolo kanye nebhulashi kumele kuhlizekwe kulondolo ngayinye (uma yehluksisiwe nekhishi lokukhempa) Okungena ngaphhezulu elilodwa lokulungisa izimpahla kanye nokuzigoqa kumele lihlinzekwe Amandla kagesi akhona endaweni yelondolo Ibhodi loku-ayina kumele lihlinzekwe endaweni yelondolo Amapayipi angaphansi kosinki bokuwasha kumele ambozwe kahle futhi amapayipi amanzi engabonakali.	✓	Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
23	<b>Ukushayisa ngomoya kanye nokukhanyisa</b> Ukukhanyiswa okufanele kwazo zonke izindawo Amaswishi okukhanyisa abekwe emnyango wesakhiwe Uma esendaweni evalekile, kumele kube nendawo yokuvula iwindi ngaphandle. Noma, ukushayisa ngomoya okufanele kwesakhiwo kumele kuhlizekwe	✓	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	*	*	*	*	*
24	<b>Izindonga: ukufaka amathayela kanye nokupenda</b> Zonke izindonga kumele zipendwe noma zifakwe amathayela	✓	Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5

## Core Requirements

## Caravan and Camping

25	Ukwenziwa kwephansi kanye Nesilingi	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Ingaphezulu elingabonakalisi iihlinzekiwe ezindongeni kanye nakumasilingi. Iphansi lizogandwa ngento eyenza kungasheleli. Isilingi ifakwe. Endini efuliwe ngotshani lolu hlobo lwesilingi alufakwa	✓			*	*	*	*
<b>Ukusebenza ngokholotshana</b>								
26	Ubukhulu kanye Nokukalwa Kwezindawo	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Izindawo zamakharavani kanye nezokukhempa zihlinzekiwe ukuthi zisetshenziswe yizivakashi Zonke izindawo zekharavani kanye nezokukhempa kumele zibe sendaweni okungenaka kalula kuyo Amakharavani noma amathende okusezindaweni eziseduze kumele zifaneleke futhi zibe sebangeni elifanele Ikhavarani/umhambane nendiwana/ithende kanye nemoto edonsa inqola futhi kumele kube nesikhala esanele ukuthi kumiswe ithende eliseceleni uma kunesidingo ngaphakathi endaweni. Izindawo zamakharavani okungenani 10m x 12m Zonke izindawo kumele zimakwe zibe nku lu ngokwanele, kube lula ukungena kuzo futhi zinezhezeke Zonke izindawo kumele zininikele zininombolo ukuze zibonakale kalula Izindawo ezikalwe isb. Ezinamatshe, izitshalo, olayini abapendiwe, ezinohango lwemithi, uthango lwezinkuni njll. Zonke izindawo ziqondile Izindawo kumele zibe nomthunzi - kungaba owezihlala noma okunye Inani elifanele lezindawo zangase noma eziseceleni	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

Zonke izindawo zekharavani kanye nokuhempha kumele zibe negezulu elilinganayo kanye namapayipi amanzi afanele	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Imisele embiwe amakhempha ngaphambi kokuthi ahambe endawenkumele igqishwe futhi ilinganiswe ngokushesha.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ingaphezulu lokuhempha ingaba noqshani ngexenye noma indawo yonke, ingaphezulu elinamatshana elenziwe kahle, isitubhu esenziwe ngezitini noma inhlangothi yengaphezulu (ukhonkolo awutuneki)	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Amakhempha kumele awuyelwe ukufaka izikhonkwane phakathi kwezitina noma amabholo.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Isitubhe esenziwe ngezitini kumele okungenani zibe yindawo engama 3m x 5m	✓	✓	*	*	*	✓	*	*	*

## Core Requirements

## Caravan and Camping

29	Izindawo zamandla kagesi	Ikhavarani & Nendawo yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
	Uma ugesi ungahlinzekwanga endaweni eyodwa noma ngaphezulu, lokhu kumele kucaciswe	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Izindawo ezivumela amaharavani kumele zihlinzekwe ngogesi, ngaphandle uma kukhangiswe ngokunye.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Okungenani kumele kube nendawo yokukhipha ugesi eyondwa endaweni	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Kumele kube nezindawo zokukhipha ugesi ezi-4 ubuningi ngokwesigubhu samandla esisodwa.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Izindawo ezivumela nendawo zamandla kumele ibe ama-25m ubukhulu ukuvimela ukuthi kusebenziswe amakhodi amade. Akumele kube nezintambo ezinde ezidabula umgwaqo, izindlela zokuhamba kanye nezinye izindawo zokukhempa.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Zonke izindawo zamandla ezindaweni zekharavani kanye nokukhempa kumele zihambisane namazinga e-SAABS 10142, ziqinisekisiwe futhi zihambisane namazinga omthetho (isb, ibhokisi likagesi kumele lingangeri amanzi, lifakwe nesekehethi kanye nazo zonke izintambo ezixhunyiwe kumele kuvalelwe ngaphakathi ebhokisini lamandla ukuvimbela noma yikuphi ukuthintana okuyingozi nezintambo ezisobala).	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Onke amabhokisi amandla kumele afakwe ngokuwikelwka eposini ngobude kanye nasendaweni zivakashi ziyibona kahle.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Izindawo zamandla okungenani kumele zibe ngama- 108m kude nendawo yamanzi.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo ngayinye kumele ibe nendawo yayo yogesi engokho ngaphansi kwe- 10A indawo nendawo ibe nesekehethi eyahlukile.	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
30	<b>Indawo yamanzi kanye Nepayipi lokuchitha amanzi</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
	Ompompi bamanzi okulula ukuthi batholekale kanye nephresha efanele ekhona ukusetshenziswa yizivakashi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Bonke ompompi abaphezulu, ababonakala ngokugqamile futhi ababekwe ngobude obufanele	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Okungenani ompompi o-1 wezindawo eziyi 3-4AT least 1 tap for every 3-4	✓	✓						*
	Okungenani ompompi o-1 wezindawo ezi-2	✓	✓						*
	Uhlelo lokuchitha amanzi kumele lufakwe empompini ngamunye ukuthi amanzi asetshenzisiwe ahambe	✓	✓					*	*
31	<b>Imigqomo kadoti</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
	Izindawo zihlinzekwe ngemigqomo kadoti elahlekayo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Yonke imigqomo iyachithwa futhi igezwe njalo ngosuku	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
	Imigqomo elahlekayo ihlanganisiwe futhi inezizivalo	✓	✓					*	*
	Okungenani kumele kube nomigqomo o-1 wezindawo ezi 3-4	✓	✓					*	*
	Okungenani kumele kube nomigqomo o-1 wezindawo ezi-2	✓	✓					*	*



Caravan and Camping		Core Requirements							
		Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
37	Ukwenziwa kwephansi kanye Nesilingi		✓						
	Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kumele kufanele inhloso		✓						

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

38 Amathoyilethi omphakathi	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Amathoyilethi omphakathi engaba awobulili bonke	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Indishi yokuqeda izandla namanzi ahambayo kanye nensipho kuzohlizekwa	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Isibuko phezu kwendishi	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Isihlalo sethoyilethi kanye nesivalo	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Uhlelo lokomisa izandla (ithawula elihlanzekile, ithawula lephepha noma uhlelo lomoya oshisayo wokomisa)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanya okumbozawe	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Ihuka emnyango wengxenyane	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Umgqomo ovaliwe wokulahla kanye/noma izikhwama zokuhlazeka	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Iphepha lasethoyilethi kanye nento yokufaka amaroli ethoyilethi	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Ibhulashi lethoyilethi elinesibambo	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

G: Ukucina indlu								
Ukusebenza ngokohlotskana								
39 Izindlu zangasese / Nezokugezela	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Zonke izindawo zokugezela kumele zihlanzwe ngokugcwele, okungenani njalo ngosuku .	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Abasebenzi basezindaweni zokugezela kumele baqaphele ukuhlazwa kwazo, ikakhulukazi ngezikhathi ezimatatasata	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
40 Amakhishi Okukhempa	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Onke amakhishi okukhempa kumele ahlanzwe ngokugcwele, okungenani njalo ngosuku.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
Abasebenzi basekhisini abasebenzayo kumele babheke ukuhlazwa okunye, ikakhulukazi ngezikhathi ezimatatasata	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
41 Olondolo kanye Nezindawo Zokomisa	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Olondolo kumele bahlanzwe ngokugcwele okungenani njalo ngosuku	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
42 Izindawo zomphakathi	Ikharavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
Zonke izindawo zomphakathi kanye namaqhawe kumele kuhlazwe ngokugcwele okungenani njalo ngosuku zonke izindawo, amakhawuntla, ifenisha kanye naphantsi kukhombise ukuthi kugcinwe kahle	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

H: Indawo Yomphakathi Yokosa kanye Namaziko		Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana					Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana							
		Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star					
43	Ukulungiswa kanye nokufakwa	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Inawo yokosa kanye Namaziko kumele kubonakale kahle futhi kuvalwe kahle endaweni yokosa		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Indawo yokosa kumele ihlantzwe njalo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Amagridi okosa inyama ahlinzekiwe		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Izinto zokosa inyama zihlinzekiwe (njengamatongi, izimfologo, amarekhi amalahlle. Njll.)		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Izinto zokuhlala zihlinzekiwe (zanele ubukhulu bendawo yokosa/ziko)		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Itrafula/ingaphezulu lomsebenzi kuhlinzekiwe (kwanele ubukhulu bendawo yokosa/ziko)		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
44	Ukushayisa n ngomoya kanye nokukhanyisa	Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5					
Ukwakhiwa kweziko kanye nendawo yokosa kumele kuvumele ukushayisa komoya okufanele kanye nokuphume kwentuthu yenyama eyosiwe		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Ukukhanya okufanele kuzo zonke izindawo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Amaswishi okukhanyisa abekwe endaweni yokungena yesakhiwo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
45	Ukwenziwa kwaphansi	Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5					
Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kumele kufanele inhliso		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
I: Izakhiwo zezokuzijabulisa (Isb. Amagumbi ezemidlalo, igumbi le-TV, njl. Okuhlenganisa impahla)		Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana					Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana							
		Ikhavani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	1-Star	2-Star	3-Star	4-Star	5-Star					
46	Ukulungisa, Ukufakwa kanye Nempahla	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Uma izakhiwo zokuzijabulisa zikhona, kumele zibe nempahla efanele		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Izakhiwo kumele zibe kwe endaweni efanele futhi zibe sesimani esihle		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
i-TV emibabala enerimothi okusebenzayo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Umbonakude ubukhulu bawo bufanele igumbi/ indawo yokuhlala		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Ukutholakala kwendawo yokudonisa yamashaneli		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Amashaneli amaningi (okungenani amashaneli ayi-9 ubuncane) atholakalayo ku-TV. Ukuqokwa kwamashaneli kumele kuhambisane nezizimkethe ezihlinzekwayo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Amashaneli amaningi (okungenani amashaneli ayi-12 ubuncane) atholakalayo ku-TV ngayinye. Ukuqokwa kwamashaneli kumele kuhambisane nezizimkethe ezihlinzekwayo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					
Amashaneli amaningi (amashaneli ayi >12) atholakalayo ku-TV ngayinye. Ukuqokwa kwamashaneli kumele kuhambisane nezizimkethe ezihlinzekwayo		✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*					

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

U Wi-Fi uyatholakala. Ngaphandle uma ungadonsi	✓								*	*	*
Indawo yokuhlala efanele futhi esebenzayo	✓								*	*	*
	✓								*	*	*
<b>47 Ukushayisa umoya kanye Nokukhanyisa</b>											
Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa											
Indawo yokukhempa											
Akungeni											
Inkanyezisi e-1											
Inkanyezisi ezi-2											
Inkanyezisi ezi-3											
Inkanyezisi ezi-4											
Inkanyezisi ezi-5											
Inkanyezisi ezi-6											
Inkanyezisi ezi-7											
Inkanyezisi ezi-8											
Inkanyezisi ezi-9											
Inkanyezisi ezi-10											
<b>48 Ukwenziwa kwephansi kanye Nesilingi</b>											
Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa											
Indawo yokukhempa											
Akungeni											
Inkanyezisi e-1											
Inkanyezisi ezi-2											
Inkanyezisi ezi-3											
Inkanyezisi ezi-4											
Inkanyezisi ezi-5											
Inkanyezisi ezi-6											
Inkanyezisi ezi-7											
Inkanyezisi ezi-8											
Inkanyezisi ezi-9											
Inkanyezisi ezi-10											
<b>49 Amawindi, Izivalo kanye Namafremu</b>											
Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa											
Indawo yokukhempa											
Akungeni											
Inkanyezisi e-1											
Inkanyezisi ezi-2											
Inkanyezisi ezi-3											
Inkanyezisi ezi-4											
Inkanyezisi ezi-5											
Inkanyezisi ezi-6											
Inkanyezisi ezi-7											
Inkanyezisi ezi-8											
Inkanyezisi ezi-9											
Inkanyezisi ezi-10											
<b>50 Amawindi aphukile</b>											
	✓										
<b>51 Ezinye izakhiwo zokuzijabulisa (is. Isiziba sokubhukuda, indawo yokudlala abantwana, into yokugxumaguma, njl.)</b>											
Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa											
Indawo yokukhempa											
Akungeni											
Inkanyezisi e-1											
Inkanyezisi ezi-2											
Inkanyezisi ezi-3											
Inkanyezisi ezi-4											
Inkanyezisi ezi-5											
Inkanyezisi ezi-6											
Inkanyezisi ezi-7											
Inkanyezisi ezi-8											
Inkanyezisi ezi-9											
Inkanyezisi ezi-10											
<b>J. Izitolo, amabha amabhodlela stolo kanye/noma izindawo zokudla</b>											
<b>51 Ukulungiswa, ukufakwa kanye nempahla</b>											
Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa											
Indawo yokukhempa											
Akungeni											
Inkanyezisi e-1											
Inkanyezisi ezi-2											
Inkanyezisi ezi-3											
Inkanyezisi ezi-4											
Inkanyezisi ezi-5											
Inkanyezisi ezi-6											
Inkanyezisi ezi-7											
Inkanyezisi ezi-8											
Inkanyezisi ezi-9											
Inkanyezisi ezi-10											
Ukudla okufanele okutholakayo											

Core Requirements

Caravan and Camping

Ukwahlukana komkhqizo kanye nokwahlukana okuphezulu futhi okufanele imakethe	✓								*
Okwahlukana kokudla okutholakayo	✓								*
Ukukhetwa okwahlukane komkhqizo oyikhwalthi kanye/noma ukudla okwenziwe ekhaya okutholakayo. Ukuthengwa kwemikhqizo yendawo	✓								*
Ukutholakala kokudla okwahlukene kahle	✓								*
Amashalofu ahlelwe kahle futhi istokwe siyabonakala ukuthi sibiza malini	✓								*
<b>52 Ukushayisa umoya kanye Nokukhanyisa</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-1				
Zonke izifundo, izindawo zokudla, amabhodilela-stolo, njl. Kumele kushayiswe ngomoya ngokufanele ngokuvulwa kwama-windi maqondana nomoya ovulelekile noma uhlelo lokushayisa ngomoya olufanele kumele luhlinzekwe	✓			*	*	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanyisa okufanele kuzo zonke izindawo	✓			*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>53 Izindonga: Amathayili kanye nokupenda</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-1				
Zonke izindonga zipendwe futhi/noma zifakwe amathayela	✓			*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>54 Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kanye nesilingi</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-1				
Kumele phansi kwenziwe ngendlela efanele inhloso	✓			*	*	*	*	*	*

**K. Izinsiza ezihlinzekwayo**

Ukusebenza ngokohlotshana

<b>55 Ukufika kanye Nokubhaliswa kokufika</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-1				
Izinhlalo zokupaka, ukuhlonjwa kwendawo kanye nezakhiwo, kuvezwe noma kutholakale	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
Abasebenzi ababeka amakhavarani kanye nabamisa amathende kumele basizwe	✓	✓							*
<b>56 Ukubuleka kwabasebenzi</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-1				
Abasebenzi kumele bagqoke izimpahla ezihlanzekile	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>57 Ulwazi lwezokuvakasha</b>	Ikhavarani & Nendawo Yokukhempa	Indawo yokukhempa	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-1				
Ulwazi lwezokuvakasha luyatholakala (endaweni yokwamukela izivakashi noma efanayo) - ezindaweni ezihethayo (oluhambisana nemakethe kanye nendawo)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

**Uhlaka Lokugcina**  
03 kuNdasa 2017

Self-Catering Accommodation

**Izimfuneko Ezisemqoka**  
**Indawo yokuhlala lapho izivakashi ziziphakela**

A: Ingaphandle	Ukusebenza ngokholotskana									
	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1
Isakhiwo sangaphandle	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Indawo yokwamukela izivakashi kanye/noma Reception and/or unit entrances clearly identifiable and well lit at night.										
2. Amagrawundi kanye Nezingadi										
3. Indawo yokupaka/ Indawo yokungena ushayela/ Indawo yokusayina										
Ukuhlinzeka indawo yokupaka efanele	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Izipawu ezikhombisa indlela - izimo ezamukelekile, ezibonakalayo, ezifanele inhloso.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Indawo yokupaka ehlanzekile, enakelwayo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Indawo yokupaka ekhanyiswe kahle	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Izindawo zokupaka zezivakashi ezivalekile zikhona	✓	✓								
h. Ezokuphepha										
Ezokuphepha ezifanele, ezihambisana nenhloso ezakhiweni zonke ngazo zonke izikhathi.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Omele abaphethe / isikhulu esiphuzulu kunazo zonke endaweni esiphikelele ezokuphepha sitholakale ocingweni amahora angama-24 ngosuku, izinsuku eziyi-7 ngeviki.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Ulwazi lwezimo eziphuthumayo (okuhlangamisa izimboho zocingo ezifanele) & izimpawu zokuphepha kanye nenqubo kubekwe obala futhi nencazelo itholakale uma ifuniwe	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Izindlela zokuxhumana nabasebenzi amahora angama-24 ngosuku lapho kunesimo esiphuthumayo kumele zihlinzekwe futhi zikhangiswe egatsheni.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Indawo yokuhlangana ihlinzekelwe izivakashi uma kwenzeka kuba nesimo esiphuthumayo sokuthi kumele ziphume	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Izivakashi zikwazi ukungena ezakhiweni eziphephile	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Ukuphepha kwezivakashi kuthathelwa phuzulu, eliseqopheleni eliphuzulu (nsb. ezokuphepha zasendaweni, ezokuphepha zangasese, abezimo eziphuthumayo, ezokuphepha zasebusuku, amabhatini esimo esiphuthumayo, umsakazo wangaphakathi wokuxhumana, umsakazo wokuxhumana namaphoyisa endawo, ukuphepha okufanele endaweni ekalwe, iforamu Eqapha Umphakathi, ividiyo khamera eqophayo (CCTV), abeseka ngokwelapha abangashayelwa ucingo. njll.)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Izivakashi ziyavunyelwa ukungena okungavinjelwa futhi okuphephile ezindaweni zomphakathi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*
Ucingo luya tholakala endaweni yokwamukela izivakashi (umakhalakhukhwini noma ucingo)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*		*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

B: Ingxenywe yamagumbi okulala (isexwayiso: kuzohlolwa igumbi elisezingeni eliphansi)		Ukusebenza ngokholots'hana									
5	Ingxenywe Yokungena Egumbini Lokulala kanye Nezokuphepha	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Izinkanyezi ezi-2	Izinkanyezi ezi-3	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5	Izinkanyezi ezi-4	Izinkanyezi ezi-5
	Ulwazi maqondana nokusizwa ocingweni (okuhlanganisa izimbobo zocingo) kanye nenqubo yokuphuma odabeni esimeni esiphuthumayo kumele ibekwe obala kuwo wonke amagatsha Okokukhanyisa kwezimo eziphuthumayo (okunye ngaphandle kukages) kumele kumele kube khona kuwo wonke amagatsha (isb. Jjeneretha, ithoshi, okokukhanyisa kwesola, njll)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Onke amagatsha angaphandle/ neminyango yokungena kumele kukhiyeke/ kuphephe (kusukela ngaphakathi kanye nangaphandle kwegatsha) idivayisi yezibili yokuphepha izohlizweka ngaphakathi laplo kungenteka ngaphakathi emagatsheni isb. Amagatsha azimele, amagatsha angena engadini, njll.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo yesisefo endaweni ephephile ikhona uma iceliwe.	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
	Isisefo sasegumbini	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
6	Imibhede, iziselelo zemibhede & Nomatras (kukhona egumbini lokulala ngalinye egatsheni) Osora abavumelekile ukuthi basetshenziswe njengemibhede kodwa bengasetshenziswa ukwengeza, njengendawo yokulala yesikhathana yabantwana abaneminyaka eyi-12 noma ngaphansi. Imibhede ihlizweke ngokwendlela yokulala ekhangisiwe Kumele kube nendawo yokugibela embhedeni emacaleni omabili uma umbhede ungasetshenziswa abantu ababili. Unlobo lokulala ngalinye ludinga ibhodi lekhandla lombhede Ibhodi lekhandla lombhede elisesimeni esivumelekile liphephile Yonke imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa awusayizi ovumelekile noma miikhulu. Amacala avumelekile ombhede omuntu oyedwa: L188cm x W92cm. Yonke imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa awusayizi 3/4. Amacala ombhede omuntu oyedwa 3/4: L200cm x W107cm. Yonke imibhede yokulala awusayizi ovumelekile noma ngaphezulu. Amacala ombhede wabantu ababili: L188cm x W137cm Yonke imibhede yokulala unobude bemibhede ye-Queen noma i-King noma ngaphezulu. Amacala: Ombhede we-Queen L200cm x W152cm, Umbhede we-King L188cm x W180cm noma imibhede elala umuntu oyedwa L188cm x W92cm Uma kusetshenziswa umbhede oyi-divan ingaphansi lesethi elinezipiringi kumele kumbozwe ngendwangu entofontofo. Imibhede enendlela yokulala eyodwa efakwe omatras ivumelekile Uma kusetshenziswa umbhede owusofa, kumele ufakwe indwangu entofontofo. Imibhede yodonga egibelele kumele ifakwe ilada	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7	Imibhede & Namalineni (uma ikhona egumbini lokulala ngalinye egatsheni ngalinye) Izivikeli zomatras kanye nezivikeli zemacamelob kuyadingeka ukuthi kufakwe emicamelweni kanye nasemibhedeni. Zonke izinto zombhede kumele zifakwe kahle futhi zibe usayizi ofanele (amashidi kumele ahengwe kumatras okungenani u-6 kuya ku-8cm) Yonke imibhede kumele ingabi amabala, izimbobo kanye nokuguga. Isitidi elifakwe angaphansi kanye neduvadi NOWA isitidi elifakwe, isitidi langaphezulu, ingubo kanye neshidi elincalwa ngaphezulu embhedeni ngamunye.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓



## Core Requirements

## Self-Catering Accommodation

		✓	✓	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezisi e-1	Izinkanyezisi ezi-2	Izinkanyezisi ezi-3	Izinkanyezisi ezi-4	Izinkanyezisi ezi-5
11	Okokumboza amawindi kumele kuhlizelwe ukumboza okugcwele.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
12	Okwenzwa kwaphansi, isilingi, ukusetha kanye nokhonisi (kukhona egumbini lokulala ngalinye legatsha ngalinye) Umzamo uyenziwa ukwehlisa izinga lomlando ngokubheka usayizi kanye nendawo yesakhiwo kanye nesikhundla sesivakashi.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
13	Ukulawula kwamazinga okushisa & Nokushayisa ngomoya (kukhona egumbini lokulala ngalinye legatsha ngalinye) Ukushayisa ngomoya okufanele egumbini ngalinye. Umthetho lokushisa kanye nelokubandisa olufanele lwezininga ngokwenkanyezisi esetsenzisiwe, olungaphathwa unumtu egatshezi ukuthi lube sezizingeni elifunwa yisivakashi endaweni yesakhiwo futhi kuzo zonke izikhathi zonyaka.	✓	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*
14	Ukukhanyisa, Amandla kanye Namaswishi (kukhona egumbini lokulala ngalinye egatshezi ngalinye) Ama-swishi alula afakwa emnyango wegumbi ngalinye Okokukhanyisa okukodwa eduze nomibhedo egumbini lokulala ngalinye. Egumbini lokulala lamawele, okokukhanyisa okuphakathi nemibhedo kuvumelekile. Okokukhanyisa okubili eduze nemibhedo yamawele. Okokukhanyisa kwaseduze nomibhedo endleleni yokulala ngalinye okubekwe eduze lapho isivakashi esingakwazi ukufikela khona uma silele. Ukuhlizelwa kokukhanyisa okuqondile etafuleni lokugqoka/ideski (iliambu lokufunda) Izindawo zamandla ezingasenzi futhi ezisetsheziwe uma zidingeka egumbini ngalinye	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezisi e-1	Izinkanyezisi ezi-2	Izinkanyezisi ezi-3	Izinkanyezisi ezi-4	Izinkanyezisi ezi-5
15	Izinto zikagesi (zikhona egatshezi ngalinye) Umshini wokomisa izinwele uyatholalala uma uceliwe Umshini wokomisa izinwele (ongama 1 600W) uyahlizelwa egatshezi ngalinye Indawo yeplagi yomshini wokomisa izinwele iseduze nesibuko Uma kuhlizelwe umabonakude egatshezi, lokho kusho ukuthi umabonakude oseceleni uyadingeka okungenani egumbini ellodwa	✓	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Izibuko & Nokokukhanyisa Izibuko Izibuko esiwusayizi ofanele esinokokukhanyisa okufanele okungenani egumbini lokulala ellodwa Izibuko esigcwele esinokokukhanyisa okuqondile okungenani egumbini lokulala ellodwa/egumbini lokugeza Izibuko esikhanyiswe kahle etafuleni lokugqoka esiseduze nendawo yeplagi okungenani embhedeni owodwa	✓	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezisi e-1	Izinkanyezisi ezi-2	Izinkanyezisi ezi-3	Izinkanyezisi ezi-4	Izinkanyezisi ezi-5









Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

Ummese wokucweca	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ummese wenyama (noma okufanayo)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ispuni sokuphaka	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Okokuphatha amaqanda/ i-spatula	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Into yokuphendula inyama uma kunesakhiwo sokushisa inyama)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Igretha	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Okokucweca izithelo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Izitsha sokuhlanganisa	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Izitsha zokuhlanganisa ezingaphezu kwesi-1	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ikholenda	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ispuni esinezimbobo	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ispuni eside esiynkomishana	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ujeke	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Izitsha sokugcina (ngaphezu kwesi-1)	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
<b>31 Izinto zokuhlamba kanye Nolondolo</b>			Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1						
Ithawula letiye	✓	✓	Kuhlanganyelwe	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ibhulashi noma isipontshi sokuwasha	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Indwangu yendishi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Izinto eztyisisekelo sokuhlamba izitsha uma umshini wokuhlamba izitsha uhlinzekwe - ngaphandle uma kushiwo ukuthi lokhu akuhlinzekiwe)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Idastipani kanye nebhulashi	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Umshayelo (noma okokuhlamba okuhlinzekiwe)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Ibhakede elinemophu (noma okokuhlamba okuhlinzekiwe)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
I-ayina kanye nebhodi loku-ayina (noma ulondolo)	✓	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

**E: Igumbi lokuhlala, igumbi lokudla kanye Nendawo yokuhlala ngaphandle**

<b>32 Ifenisha kanye Nokufaka</b>										
In dawo yokuhlala yangaphakathi noma yangaphandle ekwazi ukuhlinzeka ngendawo yokulala	✓	✓		*	*	*	*	*	*	*
In dawo yokuhlala yangaphakathi ehlinzeka ngendawo yokulala	✓	✓								
In dawo yokuhlala yangaphandle ekwazi ukuhlinzeka ngendawo yokulala	✓	✓	✓							
Izakhiwo zangaphakathi zokudlela (ezihlinzeka ngendawo yokulala)	✓	✓								

Self-Catering Accommodation	Core Requirements										
Ifenisha yeplastiki ayivumelekile	✓	✓							*	*	*
Ukunaikelwa kwamawindi ukuqinisekisa ubumfihlo	✓	✓						*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
33 <b>Ukwenziswa kwaphansi, Isilingi &amp; Nolkhronisi</b>	✓	✓		*	*	*	*
Umzamo ofanele uyenziwa ukwehlisa izinga lomsindo ngokubheka usayizi kanye nendawo yesakhwo kanye nezinga lesivakashi.							
34 <b>Ukuliwulwa kwamazinga okushisa</b>	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
Uthlelo lokushisa kanye nokubandisa olufanele ngokwezinga lwenkanyezi efakelwe isicelo, lungalawulwa umuntu ngokwegatsha ngalinye ukuthi lube yilokho okufunwa yisivakashi ngokwendawo yesakhwo futhi ngazo zonke izikhathi zonyaka.							
35 <b>Izakhiwo zokuzijabulisa</b>	✓	✓	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
Lapho omabonakude bengahlizweka emagatshe, kumele kube nomabonakude owusayizi ofanele obakwe endaweni yokuhlala okungeneka kalula kuyona onokuhlala okunethekile.							
Iphaneli elinganayo, umabonakude osezingeni eliphezulu egatshehi ngalinye, onerimothi ongama-intshi angama-32 ubukhulu (uma kufanele imakethe)							
Lapho behlinzekiwe, omabonakude kumele babekwe endaweni efanele futhi babe bakhulu ngokwanele ukuthi isikrini sibonakale							
Qaphele: lapho kugredwa omabonakude abanikazi/ abasebenzisi bayaguquzelwa ukuthi bathenge omabonakude abasezingeni eliphezulu abahlizweka ngokukwazi ukubuka ngokwe-intanethi abawusayizi ofanele ukubuka ngokunethekile.							
Abakhululekile ukuveza amashaneli akhona kuphela							
Amashaneli amaningi (amashaneli ayi-9) akhona egumbini ngalinye. Ukukhethwa kwamashaneli fanele kube okulungile ngokwemakethe.							
Amashaneli amaningi (amashaneli ayi-12) akhona egumbini ngalinye. Ukukhethwa kwamashaneli fanele kube okulungile ngokwemakethe.							
Amashaneli amaningi (amashaneli ayi-12) okulinganisa nezimiso zomsakazo ezikhona egumbini ngalinye. Ukukhethwa kwamashaneli kufanele kube okulungile ngokwemakethe							
u-Wi-Fi ukhona kuyo yonke indawo esakhiweni (izindawo zomphakathi kanye namagumbi ezivakashi). Ngaphandle uma ungasidoni							
Omabonakude babekwa endaweni efanele futhi babe bakhulu ngokwanele ukuthi isikrini sibonakale endaweni yokuhlala							
Iplagi yamandla amaningi iyatholakala uma iceliwe.							
Iplagi ehlanganisiwe yamandla amaningi enembobo ye-USB kanye namapoyinti eplagi kuhlinzekiwe egatshehi ngalinye - kutholakala kalula							
<b>F: Izindawo zomphakathi (kuhlanganisa zonke izindawo ezitholakalayo zomphakathi, okuhlanganisa izindawo zokuphumula, amabha, izindawo zokwamukela izivakashi, amagumbi/ izindawo zokuzijabulisa, njll.)</b>							
36 <b>Ukuhlobisa</b>	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
Ukusetshenziswa kwezinto ezihayo kanye nobuciko.		✓	✓		*	*	*
Izakhiwo ezihayo, izinto ezihayo kanye nobuciko.		✓	✓				*
37 <b>Ifenisha kanye Nokufaka</b>	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
38 <b>Ibha, Indawo yokuphumula &amp; Nezindawo zokuhlala</b>	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
Onke amabha, izindawo zokuphumula kanye nezindawo zokuhlala kumele kube namatafuta, izitulo kanye nengaphezulu okufanele.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 898 - PART 8**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 635

25 May  
Mei 2018

No. 41650

**PART 8 OF 8**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



9 771682 584003

41650



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**



Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
49	<b>Ikwalithi Yokudla kanye Nokulungiswa kwakho</b>						
	Konke ukudla kulungiswe kahle futhi kwaphakwa emazingeni okushisa afanele	✓	✓	*	*	*	*
	Umhlinzeko owenzelwe ukudla okwahlukeni	✓	✓		*	*	*
	Ukudla okwahlukeni okusezingeni eliphezulu kanye nokulungiswa kwakho okusezingeni lomhlabane.	✓	✓				*
50	<b>Izinga Lesidlo sasekuseni kanye nokulungiswa kwakho</b>	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Isidlo sasekuseni esihlinzekwa ngokwamukela uhlubo lwasireli, isinkwa kanye namakhondimenti.	✓	✓	*	*		
	Ukudla okwahlukeni okulungile okushisayo kanye nokubandayo kuhlinzekelwa isidlo sasekuseni (isb. isidlo sasekuseni kumele sihlanganise izinto ezi-5; isidlo sasekuseni esibandayo singahlananisa isiryeli, isinkwa, inyama ebandayo, izithelo kanye noshizi) nokunye okuhambisanayo okukhethiwe.	✓	✓		*	*	*
	Ukudla okusezingeni eliphezulu okushisayo kanye nokubandayo kukhona esidweni sasekuseni futhi kulethwa ngezinga eliphezulu.	✓	✓				*
	Izivakashi zihlinzekwa ngezinhlobo eziningi zezindlela zokuphekwa kwamaqanda, okuhlanganisa ukuthoswa, ukubiliswa evuliwe, ukubiliswa evaliwe kanye nokuthosa okungavuthiswa.	✓	✓		*	*	*
	Konke ukudla kwenziwe kahle futhi kuphakwe esimeni sokushisa esifanele.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*
	Imihlinzeko yenzelwe ukudla okwahlukeni	✓	✓	*	*	*	*

<b>H: Izinga ezejwayelekile kanye nomsebenzi</b>							
	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
51	<b>Ukwamukela, Ubungani kanye Nendlela Yokuziphatha</b>	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Umsebenzi wenziwa ngokwezifiso kanye nokubhekwa kwayo yonke imininigwane kulindlekile.	✓		*	*	*	*
52	<b>Ukubukeka Kwabasebenzi</b>	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Izisebenzi ezisebenzayo kumele zibukeke njengochwepheshe futhi zihlanzekile.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Izisebenzi ezisebenzayo zigqoka amabheji anamagama azo ngazo zonke izikhathi	✓		*	*	*	*
53	<b>Indawo yokwamukela izivakashi / Ukubingelelana &amp; Nokuhlangana</b>	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Izivakashi zihlangabezwa omele isakhiwo onegunya	✓		*	*	*	*
	Ukuhlangana kanye nokubingelelana okuhlinzekwa egatsneni noma ekuphatheni/ indawo yokwamukela izivakashi. Ukusebenza amahora angaphezu kwajwayelekile kuyahlinzekwa.	✓		*	*	*	*
54	<b>Ukugcina, Ukugcina, Ukuphuma &amp; Nomsbenzi wenjwayelo</b>	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Umlalo lwesikhathi esifanele sokugcina indawo kanye nokugcina, okuhlanganisa ukuthatha amarekhodi esivakashi kanye nokuphendula imibuzo yezivakashi.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Lonke ulwazi oluhlinzekwe ezivakashini okuhlanganisa isakhiwo sempahla, izakhiwo ezikhona kanye nenqubo yokuphuma ngezimo eziphuthumayo, njll.	✓		*	*	*	*
	Iphetha lesikwiletu kumele libe nemininigwane efanele futhi libhalwe ngokugqamile futhi lichazwe.	✓		*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

55	Ulonolo	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
	Izakhiwo zikalondolo zihlinzekiwe kanye nezakhiwo zokomisa (egatsheni noma endaweni yomphakathi)	✓	✓	✓		*		*
	Umshini wokuhlamba izimpahla oseqophelweni eliphuzulu kanye nomshini wokomisa izimpahla kuyadingeka egatsheni ngalinye NOMA ezokuhlamba zihlinzekiwe NOMA isakhiwo somphakathi esiseqophelweni eliphuzulu (okunemishini yokuhlamba izimpahla eyanele)	✓	✓	✓				*

I: Ukugcinwa kwendlu								
Ukusebenza ngokholotshana								
	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
56	Amagumbi okulala kanye namegumbi okugezela	✓	✓		*	*	*	*
	Izivakashi zizotshelwa ngesikhathi/ngaphambi kokuqalwa kwenqubo yokuhlamba	✓	✓					*
	Abahlanzayo bakhona egatsheni njalo	✓	✓					*

J: Ilonolo yomphakathi kanye Nendawo Yokomisa Izimpahla (uma kukhona)								
Ukusebenza ngokholotshana								
	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4	Inkanyezi ezi-5
57	Uhlobo lolondolo kanye Nezindawo Zokomisa Izimpahla		✓					
	Lolondolo kumele babe nendawo eyanele ukuhlamba kwezivakashi kanye nokukwazi ukufinyelela kuyo yonke indawo	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Indawo yolondolo ifihlekile ayibonwa umphakathi jikelele futhi ivaliwe.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
58	Ukulungiswa kanye Nokufaka		✓					
	Ulonolo kumele ube futhi urakwe okungenani umshini wokuhlamba izimpahla (umshini osebenzisa imali uvumelekile) kanye/noma nosinki wokuhlamba izimpahla ngerandla.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Imiyalelo ecacile yokusebenzisa yonke imishini kanye nempahla okunezindawo zokusebenzisa kanye nezindlela ezivumelekile zokukhokha kumele zivezwe ngokucacile.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Iscishamilo esifanele esiqoqiwe futhi esifanele imililo yasekhisini kumele sibekwe eduze noma endaweni yokungena esakhiweni.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Okungenani ingaphezulu elilodwa lokusebenza lokutungisa kanye nokugoqa izimpahla kumele lihlinzekwe	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Amandla kagesi akhona endaweni kalondolo	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Amabhodi oku-ayina ahlinzekiwe endaweni kalondolo	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Amapayipi angaphansi lukaasinki wokuhlamba izimpahla kumele asikrinwe ngokufanele futhi amapayipi amanzi kumele engabonakali.	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
59	Ukushayisa ngomoya kanye nokukhanyisa		✓					
	Okokukhanyisa okufanele kuzo zonke izindawo	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Amaswishi okukhanyisa abekwe endaweni yokungena esakhiweni	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
	Uma ebekwe endaweni evalekile, kumele kube nendawo yangaphandle yokuvula iwindi. Norma, ukushayisa ngomoya kwezakhiwo kumele kuhlinzekwe	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
59	Izindonga: ukuthayela kanye nokupenda		✓					
	Zonke izindonga zipendwi noma zifakwe amathayiji	✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
60 <b>Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kanye Nesilingi</b>								
ingaphezulu elivimbela amanzi lilihlizekiwe ezindongeni kanye nakumasilingi. Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kuzofakwa into eyenza ukuthi kungashibiki.		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Isilingi ifrakiwe. Indlu efuleliwe ngotshani ayingeni ohlwini lwezindlu ezidinga isilingi		✓	✓					

<b>K: Izindawo zomphakathi zokushisa inyama kanye namabhoma (uma kukhona)</b>								
	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
61 <b>Ukulungiswa kanye nokufaka</b>								
Indawo yokushisa inyama kanye namabhoma kumele kubonakale futhi Braai kube nento yokumboza indawo yokushisa inyama efanele		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Indawo yokushisa inyama ihlanzwa njalo ngosuku		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Amagridi okushisa inyama ahlizekiwe		✓	✓					
Izinsiza zokushisa inyama zihlizekiwe (amathongi, izimfologo, amarekhe amalahle, njll.)		✓	✓					
Izinto zokuhlala zihlizekiwe (zanele usayizi wendawo yokushisa inyama/bhoma)		✓	✓					
Itfula/ ingaphezulu lokusebenza kuhlizekiwe (kwanele usayizi wendawo yokushisa inyama/ bhoma)		✓	✓					
62 <b>Ukushayisa ngomoya kanye nokukhanyisa</b>								
Ukwakhiwa kwebhoma kanye nendawo yokushisa inyama kumele kuvumele ukushayisa ngomoya okwanele kanye nokuphuma kwentuthu yenyama eshisiwe		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanya okwanele kuzo zonke izindawo		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Amaswishi yokukhanyisa abekwe endaweni yokungena esakhiweni		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
63 <b>Ukwenziwa kwaphansi</b>								
Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kumele kuba okufanele inhloso		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*

<b>L: Izakhiwo zokuzijabulisa (isb. Igumbi lemidlalo, igumbi le-TV, njll. okuhlanganisa nemishini) (uma kukhona)</b>								
	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi e-2	Inkanyezi e-3	Inkanyezi e-4	Inkanyezi e-5
64 <b>Ukulungisa, Ukufaka kanye Nempahla</b>								
Uma izakhiwo zokuzijabulisa zikhona, kumele zibe nempahla efanele		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Izakhiwo kumele zibekwe endaweni eseduze futhi zibe sesimani esihle		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
I-TV esebenzayo yesithombe esibalabala enerimothi		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Umbonakude ongusayizi ofanele igumbi/ indawo yokuhlala		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Ukutholalala kwendawo yokudonisa yamashaneli		✓	✓	*	*	*	*	*
Amashaneli amaningi (okungenani amashaneli ayi-9 ubuncane) atholalayo ku-TV. Ukuqokwa kwamashaneli kumele kuhambisane nezezimakethe		✓	✓					
Amashaneli amaningi (okungenani amashaneli ayi-12 ubuncane) atholalayo ku-TV ngayinye. Ukuqokwa kwamashaneli kumele kuhambisane nezezimakethe ezihlizekiwayo		✓	✓				*	*
Amashaneli amaningi (amashaneli ayi >12) atholalayo ku-TV ngayinye. Ukuqokwa kwamashaneli kumele kuhambisane nezezimakethe ezihlizekiwayo		✓	✓					*



Core Requirements

Self-Catering Accommodation

	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
70 <b>Ukushayisa umoya kanye Nokukhanyisa</b> Zonke izitolo, izindawo zokudla, amabhotlela-stolo, njl. Kumele kushayiswe ngomoya ngokufanele ngokuvulwa kwamawindi maqondana nomoya ovulelekile noma uhlelo lokushayisa ngomoya olufanele kumele luhlinzekwe		✓	✓	*	*	*	*
Ukukhanyisa okufanele kuzo zonke izindawo		✓	✓	*	*	*	*
71 <b>Izindonga: Amathayili kanye nokupenda</b> Zonke izindonga zipendiwe futhi/noma zifakwe amathayela	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
		✓	✓	*	*	*	*
72 <b>Ukwenziwa kwaphansi kanye nesilingi</b> Kumele phansi kwenziwe ngendlela efanele inhloso	Kukhethekile	Kuhlanganyelwe	Akungeni	Inkanyezi e-1	Inkanyezi ezi-2	Inkanyezi ezi-3	Inkanyezi ezi-4
		✓	✓	*	*	*	*

**DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY**  
**NOTICE 280 OF 2018**

**STANDARDS ACT, 2008**  
**STANDARDS MATTERS**

In terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act No. 8 of 2008), the Board of the South African Bureau of Standards has acted in regard to standards in the manner set out in the Schedules to this notice.

**SECTION A: DRAFTS FOR COMMENTS**

The following draft standards are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South Africa National standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

<b>Draft Standard No. and Edition</b>	<b>Title, scope and purport</b>	<b>Closing Date</b>
SANS 50169 Ed 2	<i>Personal eye-protection - Filters for welding and related techniques - Transmittance requirements and recommended utilisation.</i> Specifies the scale numbers and transmittance requirements for filters intended to protect operators performing work involving welding, braze-welding, air-arc gouging and plasma jet cutting.	2018-07-10
SANS 50171 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Infrared filters - Transmittance requirements and recommended use.</i> Specifies the scale numbers and transmittance requirements for filters for protection against infrared radiation.	2018-07-10
SANS 50172 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye protection - Sunglare filters for industrial use.</i> Specifies the scale numbers, transmittances and related requirements for sunglare filters for industrial use.	2018-07-10
SANS 50166 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection – Specifications.</i> Specifies functional requirements for various types of personal eye-protectors and incorporates general considerations such as: designation; classification; basic requirements applicable to all eye-protectors; various particular and optional requirements; allocation of requirements, testing and application; marking; information for users.	2018-07-10
SANS 50168 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Non-optical test methods.</i> Specifies non-optical test methods for eye-protectors, the requirements for which are contained in other European Standards.	2018-07-10
SANS 50170 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Ultraviolet filters - Transmittance requirements and recommended use.</i> Specifies the scale numbers and transmittance requirements for filters for protection against ultraviolet radiation.	2018-07-10
SANS 80601-2-71 Ed 1	<i>Medical electrical equipment - Part 2-71: Particular requirements for the basic safety and essential performance of functional near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) equipment.</i> Applies to the basic safety and essential performance of functional NIRS equipment intended to be used by themselves, or as a part of an ME system, for the production of functional NIRS equipment output for adjunctive diagnostic purposes, hereinafter referred to as ME equipment.	2018-07-10
SANS 1034 Ed 3	<i>Safety of private swimming pools.</i> Lays down responsibilities, principles, methods, and planning techniques for the protection of children from the hazards of swimming pools situated on private premises, and makes recommendations for the design and installation of typical protective devices that are intended to prevent a child from gaining access to a swimming pool.	2018-07-24

**SCHEDULE A.1: AMENDMENT OF EXISTING STANDARDS**

The following draft amendments are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South African National Standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

<b>Draft Standard No. and Edition</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Scope of amendment</b>	<b>Closing Date</b>
SANS 729 Ed 1.02	<i>Live aquaculture abalone</i>	Amended to update a referenced standard.	2018-07-16
SANS 1654 Ed 2.2	<i>DC-powered (battery-operated) machines for use in hazardous locations in mines</i>	Amended to update referenced standards, and the requirements for marking on repairer's plate.	2018-07-24

**SCHEDULE A.2: WITHDRAWAL OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS**

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following published standards are issued for comments with regard to the intention by the South African Bureau of Standards to withdraw them.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

**SCHEDULE A.3: WITHDRAWAL OF INFORMATIVE AND NORMATIVE DOCUMENTS**

In terms of section 24(5) of the Standards Act, the following documents are being considered for withdrawal.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

**SECTION B: ISSUING OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS****SCHEDULE B.1: NEW STANDARDS**

The following standards have been issued in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport

**SCHEDULE B.2: AMENDMENT/AMENDED STANDARDS**

The following standards have been amended in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 434:2018 Ed 6.1	<i>General Protective Clothing. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.1.</i> Amended to update the requirements for interlocking slide fasteners, the figure on example of a warning label, and the subclause on dimensions.
SANS 1083:2018 Ed 2.6	<i>Aggregates from natural sources - Aggregates for concrete. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.6.</i> Amended to update the requirements for coarse aggregate, the table on fine aggregate for concrete, the table on coarse aggregate for concrete (new sieve sizes) and to add a table on coarse aggregate for concrete (old sieve sizes).
SANS 1362:2018 Ed 2.9	<i>Sewing threads. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.9.</i> Amended to update referenced standards, to include a new type ticket 36 staple polyester thread, to add a new subclause on heat resistance of sewing thread, and to update the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1550-2:2018 Ed 2.2	<i>Motor vehicle tyres and rims - Dimensions and loads Part 2: Passenger car tyres. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.2.</i> Amended to update referenced standards, and to move reference to legislation to the foreword.

**SCHEDULE B.3: WITHDRAWN STANDARDS**

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following standards have been withdrawn.

Standard No. and year	Title
SANS 51075:1999 Ed 1	<i>Timber structures - Test methods - Joints made with punched metal plate fasteners.</i>
SANS 54250:2010 Ed 1	<i>Timber structures - Product requirements for prefabricated structural members assembled with punched metal plate fasteners.</i>

SANS 156:2007 Ed 3.3	<i>Moulded-case circuit-breakers.</i>
SANS 767-1:2016 Ed 3	<i>Earth leakage protection units Part 1: Fixed earth leakage protection circuit-breakers.</i>
SANS 1329-5:2014 Ed 1.5	<i>Retro-reflective and fluorescent warning signs for road vehicles Part 5: Retro-reflective chevron decals.</i>
SANSN 6195:2006 Ed 1.1	<i>Examination for the presence of viable Shigella organisms in foods.</i>
SANS 8914:1990 Ed 1	<i>Microbiology - General guidance for the detection of Vibrio parahaemolyticus.</i>
SANS 61241-4:2001 Ed 1	<i>Electrical apparatus for use in the presence of combustible dust Part 4: Type of protection "pD".</i>

#### **SCHEDULE B.4: ESTABLISHMENT OR DISBANDMENT OF TECHNICAL COMMITTEES**

In terms of section 4(2) (l) the South African Bureau of Standards has established/disbanded the following technical committees:

<b>Technical Committee No.:</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Scope</b>

If your organization is interested in participating in these committees, please send an e-mail to [Dsscomments@sabs.co.za](mailto:Dsscomments@sabs.co.za) for more information.

#### **SCHEDULE 5: ADDRESSES OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN BUREAU OF STANDARDS OFFICES**

The addresses of offices of the South African Bureau of Standards where copies of the standards mentioned in this notice can be obtained, are as follows:

1. Gauteng Head Office, 1 Dr Lategan Road, Groenkloof, Private Bag X191, Pretoria 0001.
2. Western Cape Regional Office, SABS, Liesbeek Park Way, Rosebank, PO Box 615, Rondebosch 7701.
3. Eastern Cape Regional Office, SABS, 30 Kipling Road, cor. Diaz and Kipling Roads, Port Elizabeth, PO Box 3013, North End 6056.
4. KwaZulu-Natal Regional Office, SABS, 15 Garth Road, Waterfall Park, Durban, PO Box 30087, Mayville 4058.

## DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY

## NOTICE 281 OF 2018

STANDARDS ACT, 2008  
STANDARDS MATTERS

In terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act No. 8 of 2008), the Board of the South African Bureau of Standards has acted in regard to standards in the manner set out in the Schedules to this notice.

## SECTION A: DRAFTS FOR COMMENTS

The following draft standards are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South Africa National standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title, scope and purport	Closing Date
SANS 50169 Ed 2	<i>Personal eye-protection - Filters for welding and related techniques - Transmittance requirements and recommended utilisation.</i> Specifies the scale numbers and transmittance requirements for filters intended to protect operators performing work involving welding, braze-welding, air-arc gouging and plasma jet cutting.	2018-07-10
SANS 50171 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Infrared filters - Transmittance requirements and recommended use.</i> Specifies the scale numbers and transmittance requirements for filters for protection against infrared radiation.	2018-07-10
SANS 50172 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye protection - Sunglare filters for industrial use.</i> Specifies the scale numbers, transmittances and related requirements for sunglare filters for industrial use.	2018-07-10
SANS 50166 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Specifications.</i> Specifies functional requirements for various types of personal eye-protectors and incorporates general considerations such as: designation; classification; basic requirements applicable to all eye-protectors; various particular and optional requirements; allocation of requirements, testing and application; marking; information for users.	2018-07-10
SANS 50168 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Non-optical test methods.</i> Specifies non-optical test methods for eye-protectors, the requirements for which are contained in other European Standards.	2018-07-10
SANS 50170 Ed 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Ultraviolet filters - Transmittance requirements and recommended use.</i> Specifies the scale numbers and transmittance requirements for filters for protection against ultraviolet radiation.	2018-07-10
SANS 80601-2-71 Ed 1	<i>Medical electrical equipment - Part 2-71: Particular requirements for the basic safety and essential performance of functional near-infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) equipment.</i> Applies to the basic safety and essential performance of functional NIRS equipment intended to be used by themselves, or as a part of an ME system, for the production of functional NIRS equipment output for adjunctive diagnostic purposes, hereinafter referred to as ME equipment.	2018-07-10
SANS 1034 Ed 3	<i>Safety of private swimming pools.</i> Lays down responsibilities, principles, methods, and planning techniques for the protection of children from the hazards of swimming pools situated on private premises, and makes recommendations for the design and installation of typical protective devices that are intended to prevent a child from gaining access to a swimming pool.	2018-07-24

## SCHEDULE A.1: AMENDMENT OF EXISTING STANDARDS

The following draft amendments are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South African National Standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Scope of amendment	Closing Date
SANS 729 Ed 1.02	<i>Live aquaculture abalone</i>	Amended to update a referenced standard.	2018-07-16
SANS 1654 Ed 2.2	<i>DC-powered (battery-operated) machines for use in hazardous locations in mines</i>	Amended to update referenced standards, and the requirements for marking on repairer's plate.	2018-07-24

**SCHEDULE A.2: WITHDRAWAL OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS**

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following published standards are issued for comments with regard to the intention by the South African Bureau of Standards to withdraw them.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

**SCHEDULE A.3: WITHDRAWAL OF INFORMATIVE AND NORMATIVE DOCUMENTS**

In terms of section 24(5) of the Standards Act, the following documents are being considered for withdrawal.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

**SECTION B: ISSUING OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS****SCHEDULE B.1: NEW STANDARDS**

The following standards have been issued in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport

**SCHEDULE B.2: AMENDMENT/AMENDED STANDARDS**

The following standards have been amended in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 434:2018 Ed 6.1	<i>General Protective Clothing. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.1.</i> Amended to update the requirements for interlocking slide fasteners, the figure on example of a warning label, and the subclause on dimensions.
SANS 1083:2018 Ed 2.6	<i>Aggregates from natural sources - Aggregates for concrete. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.6.</i> Amended to update the requirements for coarse aggregate, the table on fine aggregate for concrete, the table on coarse aggregate for concrete (new sieve sizes) and to add a table on coarse aggregate for concrete (old sieve sizes).
SANS 1362:2018 Ed 2.9	<i>Sewing threads. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.9.</i> Amended to update referenced standards, to include a new type ticket 36 staple polyester thread, to add a new subclause on heat resistance of sewing thread, and to update the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1550-2:2018 Ed 2.2	<i>Motor vehicle tyres and rims - Dimensions and loads Part 2: Passenger car tyres. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.2.</i> Amended to update referenced standards, and to move reference to legislation to the foreword.

**SCHEDULE B.3: WITHDRAWN STANDARDS**

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following standards have been withdrawn.

Standard No. and year	Title
SANS 51075:1999 Ed 1	<i>Timber structures - Test methods - Joints made with punched metal plate fasteners.</i>
SANS 54250:2010 Ed 1	<i>Timber structures - Product requirements for prefabricated structural members assembled with punched metal plate fasteners.</i>

SANS 156:2007 Ed 3.3	<i>Moulded-case circuit-breakers.</i>
SANS 767-1:2016 Ed 3	<i>Earth leakage protection units Part 1: Fixed earth leakage protection circuit-breakers.</i>
SANS 1329-5:2014 Ed 1.5	<i>Retro-reflective and fluorescent warning signs for road vehicles Part 5: Retro-reflective chevron decals.</i>
SANSN 6195:2006 Ed 1.1	<i>Examination for the presence of viable Shigella organisms in foods.</i>
SANS 8914:1990 Ed 1	<i>Microbiology - General guidance for the detection of Vibrio parahaemolyticus.</i>
SANS 61241-4:2001 Ed 1	<i>Electrical apparatus for use in the presence of combustible dust Part 4: Type of protection "pD".</i>

#### **SCHEDULE B.4: ESTABLISHMENT OR DISBANDMENT OF TECHNICAL COMMITTEES**

In terms of section 4(2) (1) the South African Bureau of Standards has established/disbanded the following technical committees:

<b>Technical Committee No.:</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Scope</b>

If your organization is interested in participating in these committees, please send an e-mail to [Dsscomments@sabs.co.za](mailto:Dsscomments@sabs.co.za) for more information.

#### **SCHEDULE 5: ADDRESSES OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN BUREAU OF STANDARDS OFFICES**

The addresses of offices of the South African Bureau of Standards where copies of the standards mentioned in this notice can be obtained, are as follows:

1. Gauteng Head Office, 1 Dr Lategan Road, Groenkloof, Private Bag X191, Pretoria 0001.
2. Western Cape Regional Office, SABS, Liesbeek Park Way, Rosebank, PO Box 615, Rondebosch 7701.
3. Eastern Cape Regional Office, SABS, 30 Kipling Road, cor. Diaz and Kipling Roads, Port Elizabeth, PO Box 3013, North End 6056.
4. KwaZulu-Natal Regional Office, SABS, 15 Garth Road, Waterfall Park, Durban, PO Box 30087, Mayville 4058.

**DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY  
NOTICE 282 OF 2018**

**INTERNATIONAL TRADE ADMINISTRATION COMMISSION OF  
SOUTH AFRICA**

In accordance with the provisions in the Anti-Dumping Regulations (ADR) of the International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (the Commission), any definitive anti-dumping duty shall be terminated on a date not later than five years from the date of imposition, unless the authorities determine, in a review initiated before that date on their own initiative or upon a duly substantiated request made by or on behalf of the domestic industry, that the expiry of the duty would be likely to lead to continuation or recurrence of dumping and injury.

The Commission hereby notifies all interested parties that, unless a duly substantiated request is made by or on behalf of the Southern African Customs Union (SACU) industry, indicating that the expiry of the duty would be likely to lead to continuation or recurrence of dumping and injury, the following anti-dumping duties will expire during 2019:

	<b>PRODUCT</b>	<b>COUNTRY</b>	<b>RATE OF ANTI-DUMPING DUTY</b>	<b>DATE OF IMPOSITION OF THE DUTY</b>	<b>DATE OF EXPIRY OF DUTY</b>
1	Frozen Potato Chips	Belgium	5.81% - 30.77%	08/08/14	07/08/19
2	Frozen Potato Chips	Netherlands	12.52% - 16.42%	08/08/14	07/08/19
3	Wire ropes	China	113,25%	08/08/14	07/08/19
4	Wire ropes	Germany	93% - 96%	08/08/14	07/08/19
5	Wire ropes	United Kingdom	76.17%	08/08/14	07/08/19
6	Gypsum Plasterboard	Indonesia	34.6%	01/08/14	31/07/19
7	Gypsum Plasterboard	Thailand	45%	01/08/14	31/07/19
8	Soda Ash	USA	8% - 40%	19/06/14	18/06/19

**PROCEDURAL FRAMEWORK**

The Commission will conduct its investigation in accordance with the relevant sections of the ITA Act and the ADR, with due regard to the World Trade Organisation Agreement on Implementation of Article VI of the GATT 1994 (the Anti-Dumping Agreement). The ITA Act and the ADR are available from the Commission's website ([www.itac.org.za](http://www.itac.org.za)) or from the Trade Remedies section, on request.

Manufacturers of the subject products listed above in the SACU, who wish to submit a request for the duty to be reviewed prior to the expiry thereof, are requested to do so within the time limit set out below. In the instances where no replies are received from the SACU manufacturers within these time limits, the Commission will recommend the termination of the duties on the date of expiry.

SACU manufacturers, who do submit a request within the time limit set out above, are requested to submit duly substantiated information indicating that the expiry of the duty would be likely to lead to continuation or recurrence of dumping and material injury to the Commission, on the dates as specified below:

	PRODUCT	COUNTRY	RATE OF ANTI-DUMPING DUTY	DATE OF IMPOSITION OF THE DUTY	DATE OF EXPIRY OF DUTY
1	Frozen Potato Chips	Belgium	5.81% - 30.77%	08/08/14	07/08/19
2	Frozen Potato Chips	Netherlands	12.52% -16.42%	08/08/14	07/08/19
3	Wire ropes	China	113,25%	08/08/14	07/08/19
4	Wire ropes	Germany	93% - 96%	08/08/14	07/08/19
5	Wire ropes	United Kingdom	76.17%	08/08/14	07/08/19
6	Gypsum Plasterboard	Indonesia	34.6%	01/08/14	31/07/19
7	Gypsum Plasterboard	Thailand	45%	01/08/14	31/07/19
8	Soda Ash	USA	8% - 40%	19/06/14	18/06/19

The Commission will consider the information submitted in order to determine whether *prima facie* evidence exist to justify the initiation of a review. Should the Commission decide to initiate a review, notice will be given in the *Government Gazette* and other parties, being exporters and importers of the subject products, will be requested to comment and provide information.

### **CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION**

Please note that if any information is considered to be confidential then a non-confidential version of the information must be submitted for the public file, simultaneously with the confidential version. In submitting a non-confidential version the following rules are strictly applicable and parties must indicate:

- Where confidential information has been omitted and the nature of such information;
- Reasons for such confidentiality;

- A summary of the confidential information which permits a reasonable understanding of the substance of the confidential information; and
- In exceptional cases, where information is not susceptible to summary, reasons must be submitted to this effect.

These rules applies to all correspondence with and submissions to the Commission, which unless indicated to be confidential and filed together with a non-confidential version, will be placed on the public file and be made available to other interested parties.

If a party considers that any document of another party, on which that party is submitting representations, does not comply with the above rules and that such deficiency affects that party's ability to make meaningful representations, the details of the deficiency and the reasons why that party's rights are so affected must be submitted to the Commission in writing forthwith (and at the latest 14 days prior to the date on which that party's submission is due).

Failure to do so timeously will seriously hamper the proper administration of the investigation, and such party will not be able to subsequently claim an inability to make meaningful representations on the basis of the failure of such other party to meet the requirements.

Subsection 33(1) of the ITA Act provides that any person claiming confidentiality of information should identify whether such information is *confidential by nature* or is *otherwise confidential* and, any such claims must be supported by a written statement, in each case, setting out how the information satisfies the requirements of the claim to confidentiality. In the alternative, a sworn statement should be made setting out reasons why it is impossible to comply with these requirements.

Section 2.3 of the ADR provides as follows:

*"The following list indicates "information that is by nature confidential" as per section 33(1)(a) of the Main Act, read with section 36 of the Promotion of Access to Information Act (Act 2 of 2000):*

- (a) *management accounts;*
- (b) *financial accounts of a private company;*
- (c) *actual and individual sales prices;*
- (d) *actual costs, including cost of production and importation cost;*
- (e) *actual sales volumes;*
- (f) *individual sales prices;*
- (g) *information, the release of which could have serious consequences for the person that provided such information; and*
- (h) *information that would be of significant competitive advantage to a competitor;*

*Provided that a party submitting such information indicates it to be confidential."*

## **ADDRESS**

The requests by manufacturers in the SACU of the subject products, and the duly substantiated information indicating what the effect of the expiry of the duties will be, must be submitted in writing to the following address:

### **Physical address**

The Senior Manager: Trade Remedies 1  
International Trade Administration  
Commission

**Block E** – Uuzaji Building

The DTI Campus  
77 Meintjies Street

SUNNYSIDE

PRETORIA

SOUTH AFRICA

### **Postal address**

The Senior Manager: Trade Remedies1  
Private Bag X753

Pretoria

0001

SOUTH AFRICA

## **PROCEDURES AND TIME LIMITS**

Manufacturers in the SACU of the subject products listed above, who wish to submit a request for the duty to be reviewed prior to the expiry thereof, are requested to do so not later than close of business on **25 June 2018**.

SACU manufacturers who do submit a request before **25 June 2018**, should submit duly substantiated information, indicating that the expiry of the duty would be likely to lead to continuation or recurrence of dumping and material injury, to the Commission.

It should be noted that the investigation process is complex and the Commission is subject to strict time limits within which to complete the investigation. Late submissions will therefore not be accepted, except with the prior written consent of the Commission. The Commission will give due consideration to written requests for an extension of not more than 14 days on good cause shown (properly motivated and substantiated), if received prior to the expiry of the original period. Merely citing insufficient time is not an acceptable reason for extension.

The information submitted by any party may need to be verified by the Investigating Officers in order for the Commission to take such information into consideration. The Commission may verify the information at the premises of the party submitting the information, within a short period after the submission of the information to the Commission.

Parties should therefore ensure that the information submitted will subsequently be available for verification.

It is planned to do the verification of the information submitted by the exporters within three to five weeks subsequent to submission of the information. This period will only be extended if it is not feasible for the Commission to do it within this time period or upon good cause shown, and with the prior written consent of the Commission, which should be requested at the time of the submission. It should be noted that unavailability of, or inconvenience to consultants will not be considered to be good cause.

Parties should also ensure when they engage consultants that they will be available at the requisite times, to ensure compliance with the above time frames. Parties should also ensure that all the information requested in the applicable questionnaire is provided in the specified detail and format. The questionnaires are designed to ensure that the Commission is provided with all the information required to make a determination in accordance with the rules of Anti-Dumping Agreement. The Commission may therefore refuse to verify information that is incomplete or does not comply with the format in the questionnaire, unless the Commission has agreed in writing to a deviation from the required format. A failure to submit an adequate non-confidential version of the response that complies with the rules set out above under the heading *Confidential Information* will be regarded as an incomplete submission.

Parties, who experience difficulty in furnishing the information required, or submitting in the format required, are therefore urged to make written applications to the Commission at an early stage for permission to deviate from the questionnaire or provide the information in an alternative format that can satisfy the Commission's requirements. The Commission will give due consideration to such a request on good cause shown.

Any interested party may request an oral hearing at any stage of the investigation in accordance with Section 5 of the ADR, provided that the party indicates reasons for not relying on written submission only. The Commission may refuse an oral hearing if granting such hearing will unduly delay the finalisation of a determination.

Parties requesting an oral hearing shall provide the Commission with a detailed agenda for, and a detailed version, including a non-confidential version, of the information to be discussed at the oral hearing at the time of the request.

If the required information and arguments are not received in a satisfactory form within the time limit specified above, or if verification of the information cannot take place, the Commission may disregard the information submitted and make a finding on the basis of the facts available to it.

**Enquiries may be directed to the Senior Manager: Trade Remedies I, Ms Carina Janse van Vuuren, at telephone (012) 394-3594 or at fax (012) 394-0518.**

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT  
NOTICE 283 OF 2018

**INVITATION BY THE MINISTER OF TRANSPORT FOR APPLICATION  
OR NOMINATION FOR APPOINTMENT TO THE CIVIL AVIATION  
APPEAL COMMITTEE**

**Civil Aviation Appeal Committee Members**

Appeal Committee is a statutory body constituted in terms of section 122 of the Civil Aviation Act 2009, (Act No. 13 of 2009), and is appointed to consider appeals lodged against decisions taken by the Director of Civil Aviation in terms of Section 120(2) of the Act.

An Appeal Committee consists of Presiding Officer and two members. The Presiding Officer should have not less than ten years' experience as an attorney or advocate. Members should have suitable technical knowledge and experience in Civil Aviation or any special skills, qualifications and expertise or experience in matters concerning Aviation. In addition, candidates are required to have: ● Aviation Legal background and experience ● Technical Aviation experience ● Legal background ● Dispute Resolution ● Aviation Management ● Rules governing ICAO. Applicants are required to indicate the Committees/Boards they are currently serving. Candidates must be of professional standing and possess suitable and recognized qualifications.

Successful candidates will be appointed on a part-time basis for a period of three years, and remuneration will be based on preparation and attendance of meetings, in accordance with the applicable National Treasury Regulations.



transport

Department:  
Transport  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Applications by and/or nominations of suitably qualified persons, accompanied by a brief motivation, CV, certified copies of qualification certificates and ID should be posted, hand delivered or e-mailed to the Acting Director-General, Department of Transport, Private Bag X193, Pretoria, 0001; or 159 Forum Building, Corner Struben and Bosman Streets, Pretoria; or [Appeal@dot.gov.za](mailto:Appeal@dot.gov.za), respectively. For the attention of Ms. Patience Mabasa.

For enquiries contact Ms Patience Mabasa at:  
012 309 3278

The closing date for the applications and/or nominations is 08 June 2018

---

**BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS**

---

**BOARD NOTICE 68 OF 2018****BEFORE THE DISCIPLINARY TRIBUNAL OF THE ENGINEERING COUNCIL OF SOUTH AFRICA****HELD AT ECSA HEAD QUARTERS ON THE 12<sup>th</sup> FEBRUARY 2018**

In the matter between:

**ECSA****(Complainant)****And****PR. Eng. 691287****(Respondent)**

---

Publication in terms of section 32(5) of the Engineering Profession Act, 46 of 2000 ("The Act") of the finding and sanction imposed by a Disciplinary Tribunal at a disciplinary hearing, into the alleged improper conduct of a registered person.

---

**NATURE OF OFFENCE:**

**Guilty** of contravention of Rule 3(2)(j) of the Rules of Conduct for Registered Persons promulgated under Board Notice 41 of 2017, Government Gazette number 40691 of 17 March 2017.

**SANCTION**

1. The Respondent in terms of the provisions of section 32(3)(a)(i) of the Act, is cautioned and reprimanded not to conduct himself in the manner he did in future.
2. The Respondent is liable for the amount of R5 000.00 (Five Thousand Rand) in terms of section 32(3)(a)(ii) of the Act.

**BOARD NOTICE 69 OF 2018****ROAD ACCIDENT FUND ACT, 1996  
(Act No. 56 of 1996)****ROAD ACCIDENT FUND REGULATIONS, 2008**

The Acting Chief Executive Officer, duly authorised by the Board of the Road Accident Fund, acting in terms of regulation 5(2) of the Road Accident Fund Regulations 2008, made under section 26 of the Road Accident Fund Act, No. 56 of 1996, hereby gives notice of the adjustment of the medical tariff provided for in section 17(4B)(b), first published in GN R. 711 in *Government Gazette* 31249 of 21 July 2008; and amended by BN 106 published in *Government Gazette* 35449 of 22 June 2012; and by BN 130 published in *Government Gazette* 36592 of 28 June 2013; and by BN 53 published in *Government Gazette* 37653 of 23 May 2014; and by BN 107 published in *Government Gazette* 38803 of 22 May 2015; and by BN 158 published in *Government Gazette* 40293 of 23 September 2016 ; and by BN 92 published in *Government Gazette* 40860 of 26 May 2017.

**ADJUSTMENT OF TARIFF**

1. The tariff provided for in section 17(4B) (b) is adjusted with effect from 1 April 2018 by increasing the tariff by 5.5%.
2. The adjustment provided for in paragraph 1 above applies to claims that have not been finally determined by settlement or judgment on the day of publication of this notice.

**BOARD NOTICE 70 OF 2018****FINANCIAL SECTOR CONDUCT AUTHORITY (FSCA)****FINANCIAL MARKETS ACT, 2012****PROPOSED AMENDMENTS TO THE A2X TRADING RULES:  
PUBLICATION FOR COMMENT**

The Financial Sector Authority (FSCA) hereby gives notice under section 71(3)(b)(ii) of the Financial Markets Act, 19 of 2012 that the proposed amendments to the A2X Trading Rules have been published on the official website of the FSCA ([www.fsc.co.za](http://www.fsc.co.za)) for public comment. All interested persons who have any objections to the proposed amendments are hereby called upon to lodge their objections with FSCA, at the following email address: [Michael.Kabai@fsc.co.za](mailto:Michael.Kabai@fsc.co.za) within a period of 14 business days from the date of publication of this notice.

**J A BOYD****FINANCIAL SECTOR CONDUCT AUTHORITY**

**BOARD NOTICE 71 OF 2018****SAFETY AND SECURITY  
SECTOR EDUCATION AND TRAINING  
AUTHORITY****NOMINATIONS FOR MEMBERS TO SERVE ON THE CHAMBER  
COMMITTEES OF SAFETY AND SECURITY SETA (SASSETA)**

The Accounting Authority of Safety and Security SETA hereby invites suitable qualified organised employers, organised employee organisations and relevant government departments within the safety and security sector to nominate individuals for appointment as members of the SETA's Chamber Committees as detailed below.

In terms of the Skills Development Act of 1998 (Act No. 97 of 1998) as amended and Safety and the Constitution of the Safety and Security SETA, a Chamber Committee must consist of an equal number of members representing organised labour and organised employers. It is not restricted to Members of the Accounting Authority, critical interest groups, interested professional groups and community organisations that have an identifiable interest in skills development in the sector may apply. The Safety and Security SETA consist of the following Chambers, each of which must have its own Committee:

- Corrections and Private Prisons Chamber
- Defence Chamber
- Justice and Constitutional Development Chamber
- Legal Services Chamber
- Policing Chamber
- Private Security Chamber, and
- State Security Chamber.

**Nominations must be submitted in writing and with the following details:**

- 1. Full names and address of the persons or organisation nominating candidate;**
- 2. A curriculum vitae of the candidate which must include:**
  - candidate's full names, identity number, gender and race;
  - contact address, telephone, and email address;
  - certified copies of all qualifications;
  - and at least two names and contact details of references;
- 3. A signed Acceptance of Nomination Letter from a candidate.**

**Strict compliance with the nomination requirements is essential.**

Email nominations to: [chambers@sasseta.org.za](mailto:chambers@sasseta.org.za) or alternatively hand delivered to: Riverview Office Park, Janadel Avenue, Halfway Gardens 1685

**CLOSING DATE FOR THE APPLICATIONS: 19 JUNE 2018.**

Enquiries can be directed to: Ms Boniswa Witbooi, at Tel: (011) 087 5578  
Ms Tsholofelo Nyamathe, at Tel: (011) 087 5501

**NB: Late application will not be considered and accepted. Correspondence will be limited to successful candidate on or before 31 July 2018.**

Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001  
Contact Centre Tel: 012-748 6200. eMail: info.egazette@gpw.gov.za  
Publications: Tel: (012) 748 6053, 748 6061, 748 6065